CHEM 107: TEXTBOOK



Greg Hershey Suryn
Gettysburg College

LibreTexts™

Chem 107 Textbook

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide and accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 08/24/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions

- 1.1: Introduction
- 1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory
- 1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory
- 1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
- 1.5: Chemical Formulas
- 1.6: The Periodic Table
- 1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
- 1.8: Chemical Nomenclature
- 1.9: Key Terms
- 1.10: Key Equations
- 1.11: Summary
- 1.12: Exercises

2: Composition of Substances and Solutions

- 2.1: Introduction
- 2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
- 2.3: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas
- 2.4: Molarity
- 2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations
- 2.6: Key Terms
- 2.7: Key Equations
- 2.8: Summary
- 2.9: Exercises

3: Stoichiometry of Chemical Reactions

- 3.1: Introduction
- 3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
- 3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
- 3.4: Reaction Stoichiometry
- 3.5: Reaction Yields
- 3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
- 3.7: Key Terms
- 3.8: Key Equations
- 3.9: Summary
- 3.10: Exercises

4: Electronic Structure and Periodic Properties

- 4.1: Introduction
- 4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
- 4.3: The Bohr Model
- 4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
- 4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
- 4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties

- 4.7: Key Terms
- 4.8: Key Equations
- 4.9: Summary
- 4.10: Exercises

5: Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry

- 5.1: Introduction
- 5.2: Ionic Bonding
- 5.3: Covalent Bonding
- 5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
- 5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance
- 5.6: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds
- 5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
- 5.8: Key Terms
- 5.9: Key Equations
- 5.10: Summary
- 5.11: Exercises

6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding

- 6.1: Introduction
- 6.2: Valence Bond Theory
- 6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
- 6.4: Multiple Bonds
- 6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory
- 6.6: Key Terms
- 6.7: Key Equations
- 6.8: Summary
- 6.9: Exercises

7: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry

- 7.1: Introduction
- 7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
- 7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
- 7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
- 7.5: Key Terms
- 7.6: Summary
- 7.7: Exercises

8: Organic Chemistry

- 8.1: Introduction
- 8.2: Hydrocarbons
- 8.3: Alcohols and Ethers
- 8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters
- 8.5: Amines and Amides
- 8.6: Key Terms
- 8.7: Summary
- 8.8: Exercises

9: Liquids and Solids

- 9.1: Introduction
- 9.2: Intermolecular Forces
- 9.3: Properties of Liquids
- 9.4: Phase Transitions
- 9.5: Phase Diagrams
- 9.6: The Solid State of Matter
- 9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
- 9.8: Key Terms
- 9.9: Key Equations
- 9.10: Summary
- 9.11: Exercises

10: Solutions and Colloids

- 10.1: Introduction
- 10.2: The Dissolution Process
- 10.3: Electrolytes
- 10.4: Solubility
- 10.5: Colligative Properties
- 10.6: Colloids
- 10.7: Key Terms
- 10.8: Key Equations
- 10.9: Summary
- 10.10: Exercises

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions

This chapter will describe some of the fundamental chemical principles related to the composition of matter, including those central to the concept of molecular identity.

2.1: Introduction
2.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory
2.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory
2.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
2.5: Chemical Formulas
2.6: The Periodic Table
2.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
2.8: Chemical Nomenclature
2.9: Key Terms
2.10: Key Equations
2.11: Summary
2.12: Exercises

This page titled 2: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.1: Introduction

Lung diseases and lung cancers are among the world's most devastating illnesses partly due to delayed detection and diagnosis. Most noninvasive screening procedures aren't reliable, and patients often resist more accurate methods due to discomfort with the procedures or with the potential danger that the procedures cause. But what if you could be accurately diagnosed through a simple breath test?

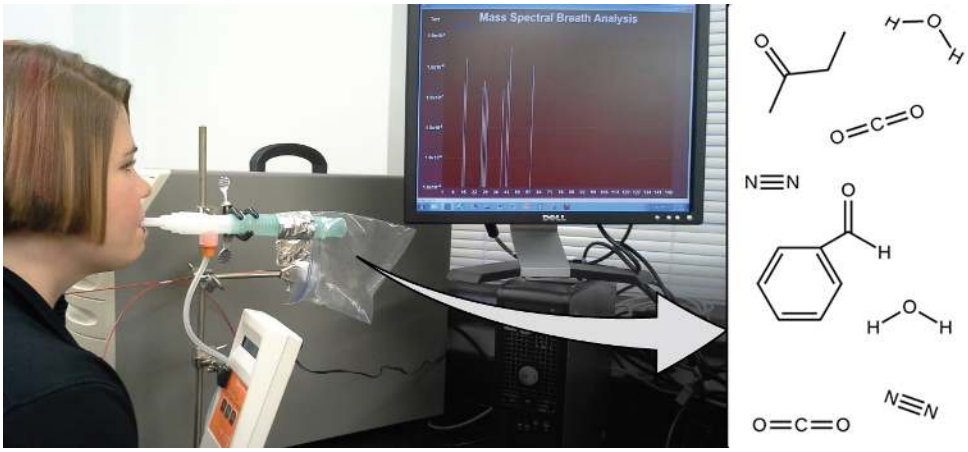


Figure 1.1.1: Analysis of molecules in an exhaled breath can provide valuable information, leading to early diagnosis of diseases or detection of environmental exposure to harmful substances. (credit: modification of work by Paul Flowers)

Early detection of biomarkers, substances that indicate an organism’s disease or physiological state, could allow diagnosis and treatment before a condition becomes serious or irreversible. Recent studies have shown that your exhaled breath can contain molecules that may be biomarkers for recent exposure to environmental contaminants or for pathological conditions ranging from asthma to lung cancer. Scientists are working to develop biomarker “fingerprints” that could be used to diagnose a specific disease based on the amounts and identities of certain molecules in a patient’s exhaled breath. In Sangeeta Bhatia's lab at MIT, a team used substances that react specifically inside diseased lung tissue; the products of the reactions will be present as biomarkers that can be identified through mass spectrometry (an analytical method discussed later in the chapter). A potential application would allow patients with early symptoms to inhale or ingest a "sensor" substance, and, minutes later, to breathe into a detector for diagnosis. Similar research by scientists such as Laura López-Sánchez has provided similar processes for lung cancer. An essential concept underlying this goal is that of a molecule’s identity, which is determined by the numbers and types of atoms it contains, and how they are bonded together. This chapter will describe some of the fundamental chemical principles related to the composition of matter, including those central to the concept of molecular identity.

This page titled 1.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.0: Introduction** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- State the postulates of Dalton's atomic theory
- Use postulates of Dalton's atomic theory to explain the laws of definite and multiple proportions

The earliest recorded discussion of the basic structure of matter comes from ancient Greek philosophers, the scientists of their day. In the fifth century BC, Leucippus and Democritus argued that all matter was composed of small, finite particles that they called *atomos*, a term derived from the Greek word for "indivisible." They thought of atoms as moving particles that differed in shape and size, and which could join together. Later, Aristotle and others came to the conclusion that matter consisted of various combinations of the four "elements"—fire, earth, air, and water—and could be infinitely divided. Interestingly, these philosophers thought about atoms and "elements" as philosophical concepts, but apparently never considered performing experiments to test their ideas.

The Aristotelian view of the composition of matter held sway for over two thousand years, until English schoolteacher John Dalton helped to revolutionize chemistry with his hypothesis that the behavior of matter could be explained using an atomic theory. First published in 1807, many of Dalton's hypotheses about the microscopic features of matter are still valid in modern atomic theory. Here are the postulates of Dalton's atomic theory.

1. Matter is composed of exceedingly small particles called atoms. An atom is the smallest unit of an element that can participate in a chemical change.
2. An element consists of only one type of atom, which has a mass that is characteristic of the element and is the same for all atoms of that element (Figure 1.2.1). A macroscopic sample of an element contains an incredibly large number of atoms, all of which have identical chemical properties.

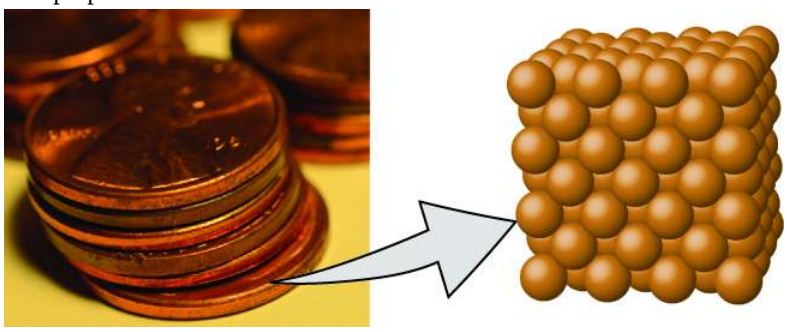


Figure 1.2.1: A pre-1982 copper penny (left) contains approximately 3 10^{22} copper atoms (several dozen are represented as brown spheres at the right), each of which has the same chemical properties. (credit: modification of work by "slgckgc"/Flickr)

3. Atoms of one element differ in properties from atoms of all other elements.
4. A compound consists of atoms of two or more elements combined in a small, whole-number ratio. In a given compound, the numbers of atoms of each of its elements are always present in the same ratio (Figure 1.2.2).

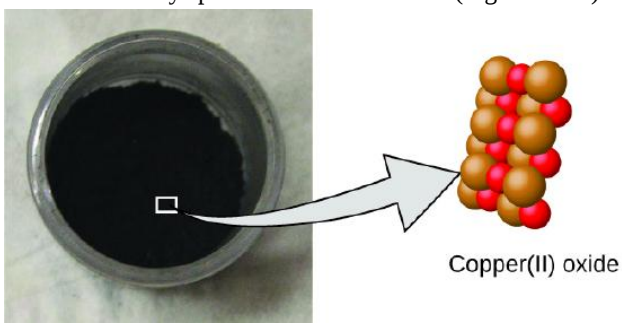


Figure 1.2.2: Copper(II) oxide, a powdery, black compound, results from the combination of two types of atoms—copper (brown spheres) and oxygen (red spheres)—in a 1:1 ratio. (credit: modification of work by "Chemicalinterest"/Wikimedia Commons)

5. Atoms are neither created nor destroyed during a chemical change, but are instead rearranged to yield substances that are different from those present before the change (Figure 1.2.3).

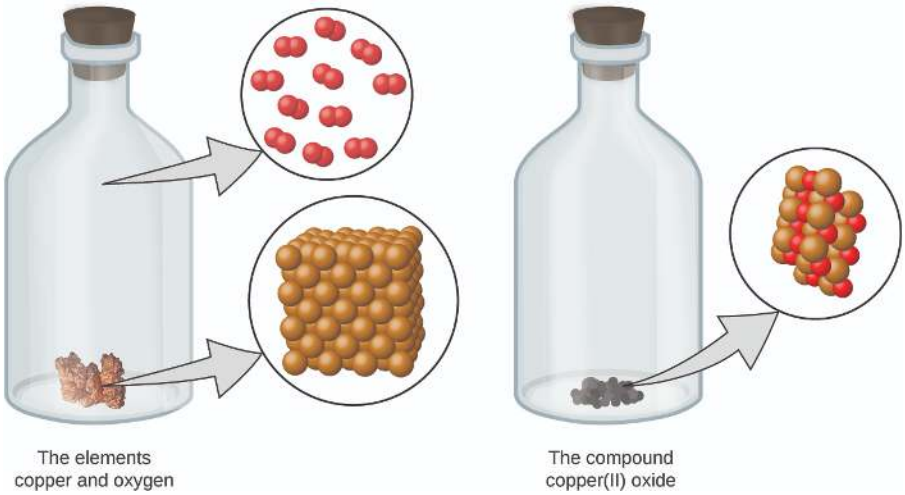


Figure 1.2.3: When the elements copper (a shiny, red-brown solid, shown here as brown spheres) and oxygen (a clear and colorless gas, shown here as red spheres) react, their atoms rearrange to form a compound containing copper and oxygen (a powdery, black solid). (credit copper: modification of work by http://images-of-elements.com/copper.php)

Dalton's atomic theory provides a microscopic explanation of the many macroscopic properties of matter that you've learned about. For example, if an element such as copper consists of only one kind of atom, then it cannot be broken down into simpler substances, that is, into substances composed of fewer types of atoms. And if atoms are neither created nor destroyed during a chemical change, then the total mass of matter present when matter changes from one type to another will remain constant (the law of conservation of matter).

✔ Example 1.2.1: Testing Dalton's Atomic Theory

In the following drawing, the green spheres represent atoms of a certain element. The purple spheres represent atoms of another element. If the spheres touch, they are part of a single unit of a compound. Does the following chemical change represented by these symbols violate any of the ideas of Dalton's atomic theory? If so, which one?



Solution

The starting materials consist of two green spheres and two purple spheres. The products consist of only one green sphere and one purple sphere. This violates Dalton's postulate that atoms are neither created nor destroyed during a chemical change, but are merely redistributed. (In this case, atoms appear to have been destroyed.)

? Exercise 1.2.1

In the following drawing, the green spheres represent atoms of a certain element. The purple spheres represent atoms of another element. If the spheres touch, they are part of a single unit of a compound. Does the following chemical change represented by these symbols violate any of the ideas of Dalton's atomic theory? If so, which one?



Answer

The starting materials consist of four green spheres and two purple spheres. The products consist of four green spheres and two purple spheres. This does not violate any of Dalton's postulates: Atoms are neither created nor destroyed, but are redistributed in small, whole-number ratios.

Dalton knew of the experiments of French chemist Joseph Proust, who demonstrated that *all samples of a pure compound contain the same elements in the same proportion by mass*. This statement is known as the law of definite proportions or the law of constant composition. The suggestion that the numbers of atoms of the elements in a given compound always exist in the same ratio is consistent with these observations. For example, when different samples of isooctane (a component of gasoline and one of the standards used in the octane rating system) are analyzed, they are found to have a carbon-to-hydrogen mass ratio of 5.33:1, as shown in Table 2.1.

Table 2.1: Constant Composition of Isooctane

Sample	Carbon	Hydrogen	Mass Ratio
A	14.82 g	2.78 g	
B	22.33 g	4.19 g	
C	19.40 g	3.64 g	

It is worth noting that although all samples of a particular compound have the same mass ratio, the converse is not true in general. That is, samples that have the same mass ratio are not necessarily the same substance. For example, there are many compounds other than isooctane that also have a carbon-to-hydrogen mass ratio of 5.33:1.00.

Dalton also used data from Proust, as well as results from his own experiments, to formulate another interesting law. The law of multiple proportions states that *when two elements react to form more than one compound, a fixed mass of one element will react with masses of the other element in a ratio of small, whole numbers*. For example, copper and chlorine can form a green, crystalline solid with a mass ratio of 0.558 g chlorine to 1 g copper, as well as a brown crystalline solid with a mass ratio of 1.116 g chlorine to 1 g copper. These ratios by themselves may not seem particularly interesting or informative; however, if we take a ratio of these ratios, we obtain a useful and possibly surprising result: a small, whole-number ratio.

This 2-to-1 ratio means that the brown compound has twice the amount of chlorine per amount of copper as the green compound.

This can be explained by atomic theory if the copper-to-chlorine ratio in the brown compound is 1 copper atom to 2 chlorine atoms, and the ratio in the green compound is 1 copper atom to 1 chlorine atom. The ratio of chlorine atoms (and thus the ratio of their masses) is therefore 2 to 1 (Figure 1.2.4).

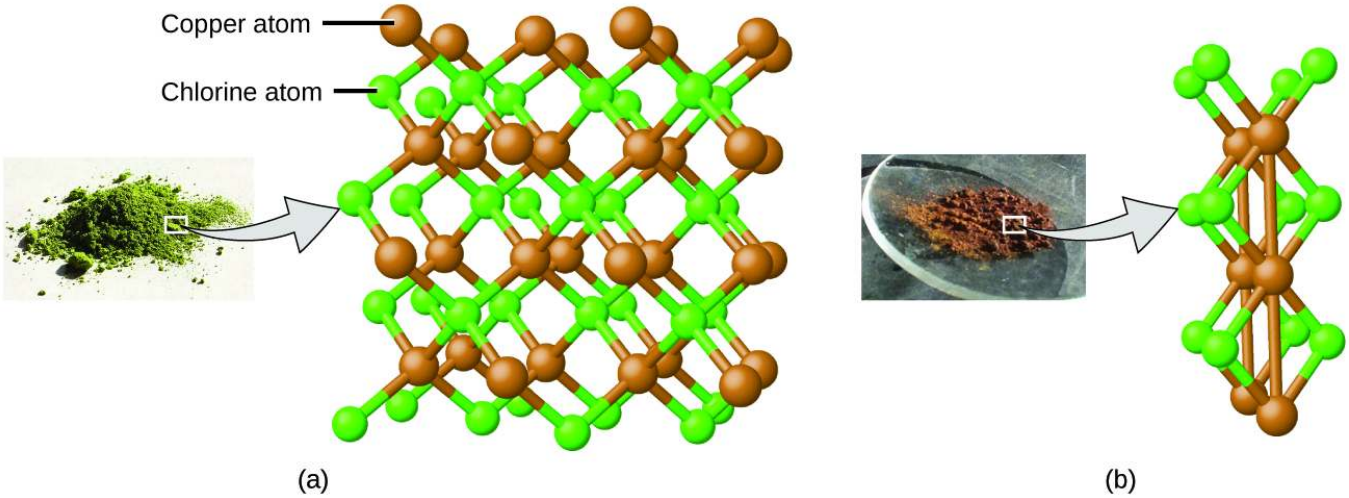


Figure 1.2.4: Compared to the copper chlorine compound in (a), where copper is represented by brown spheres and chlorine by green spheres, the copper chlorine compound in (b) has twice as many chlorine atoms per copper atom. (credit a: modification of work by "Benjah-bmm27"/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by "Walkerma"/Wikimedia Commons)

Example 1.2.2: Laws of Definite and Multiple Proportions

A sample of compound A (a clear, colorless gas) is analyzed and found to contain 4.27 g carbon and 5.69 g oxygen. A sample of compound B (also a clear, colorless gas) is analyzed and found to contain 5.19 g carbon and 13.84 g oxygen. Are these data an example of the law of definite proportions, the law of multiple proportions, or neither? What do these data tell you about substances A and B?

Solution

In compound A, the mass ratio of oxygen to carbon is:

In compound B, the mass ratio of oxygen to carbon is:

The ratio of these ratios is:

This supports the law of multiple proportions. This means that A and B are different compounds, with A having one-half as much oxygen per amount of carbon (or twice as much carbon per amount of oxygen) as B. A possible pair of compounds that would fit this relationship would be A = CO and B = CO_2.

Exercise 1.2.1

A sample of compound X (a clear, colorless, combustible liquid with a noticeable odor) is analyzed and found to contain 14.13 g carbon and 2.96 g hydrogen. A sample of compound Y (a clear, colorless, combustible liquid with a noticeable odor that is slightly different from X's odor) is analyzed and found to contain 19.91 g carbon and 3.34 g hydrogen. Are these data an example of the law of definite proportions, the law of multiple proportions, or neither? What do these data tell you about substances X and Y?

Answer

In compound X, the mass ratio of carbon to hydrogen is In compound Y, the mass ratio of carbon to hydrogen is The ratio of these ratios is This small, whole-number ratio supports the law of multiple proportions. This means that X and Y are different compounds.

This page titled 1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.1: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Outline milestones in the development of modern atomic theory
- Summarize and interpret the results of the experiments of Thomson, Millikan, and Rutherford
- Describe the three subatomic particles that compose atoms
- Define isotopes and give examples for several elements

If matter is composed of atoms, what are atoms composed of? Are they the smallest particles, or is there something smaller? In the late 1800s, a number of scientists interested in questions like these investigated the electrical discharges that could be produced in low-pressure gases, with the most significant discovery made by English physicist J. J. Thomson using a cathode ray tube. This apparatus consisted of a sealed glass tube from which almost all the air had been removed; the tube contained two metal electrodes. When high voltage was applied across the electrodes, a visible beam called a cathode ray appeared between them. This beam was deflected toward the positive charge and away from the negative charge, and was produced in the same way with identical properties when different metals were used for the electrodes. In similar experiments, the ray was simultaneously deflected by an applied magnetic field, and measurements of the extent of deflection and the magnetic field strength allowed Thomson to calculate the charge-to-mass ratio of the cathode ray particles. The results of these measurements indicated that these particles were much lighter than atoms (Figure 1.3.1).

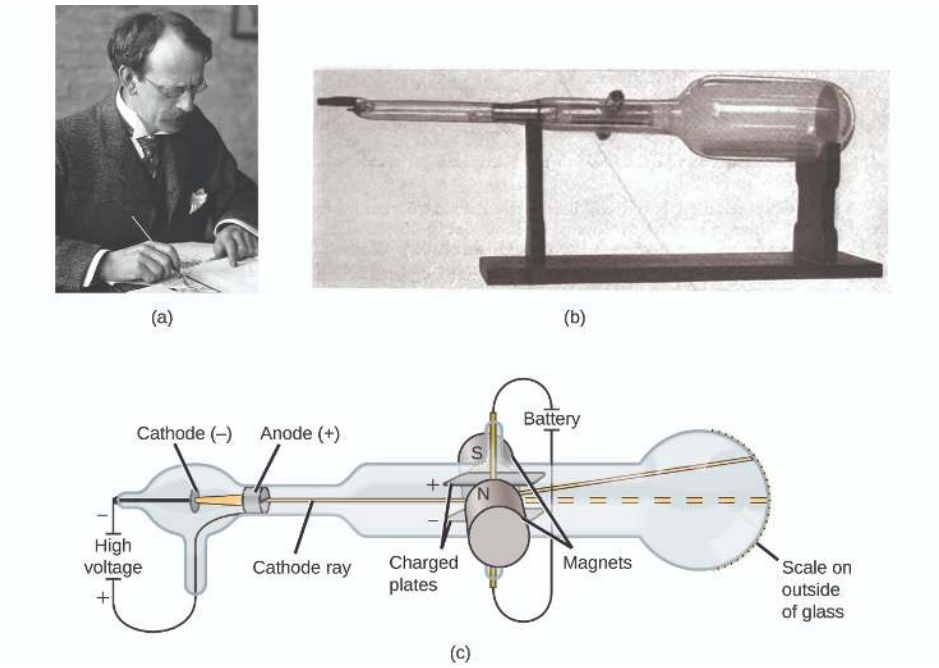


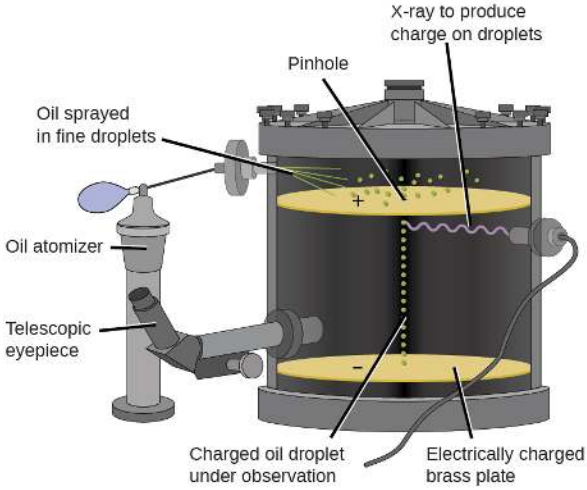
Figure 1.3.1: (a) J. J. Thomson produced a visible beam in a cathode ray tube. (b) This is an early cathode ray tube, invented in 1897 by Ferdinand Braun. (c) In the cathode ray, the beam (shown in yellow) comes from the cathode and is accelerated past the anode toward a fluorescent scale at the end of the tube. Simultaneous deflections by applied electric and magnetic fields permitted Thomson to calculate the mass-to-charge ratio of the particles composing the cathode ray. (credit a: modification of work by Nobel Foundation; credit b: modification of work by Eugen Nesper; credit c: modification of work by "Kurzon"/Wikimedia Commons)

Based on his observations, here is what Thomson proposed and why: The particles are attracted by positive (+) charges and repelled by negative (−) charges, so they must be negatively charged (like charges repel and unlike charges attract); they are less massive than atoms and indistinguishable, regardless of the source material, so they must be fundamental, subatomic constituents of all atoms. Although controversial at the time, Thomson's idea was gradually accepted, and his cathode ray particle is what we now call an electron, a negatively charged, subatomic particle with a mass more than one thousand-times less that of an atom. The term "electron" was coined in 1891 by Irish physicist George Stoney, from "*electr*ic i*on*."

Link to Learning

Click here to hear Thomson describe his discovery in his own voice.

In 1909, more information about the electron was uncovered by American physicist Robert A. Millikan via his "oil drop" experiments. Millikan created microscopic oil droplets, which could be electrically charged by friction as they formed or by using X-rays. These droplets initially fell due to gravity, but their downward progress could be slowed or even reversed by an electric field lower in the apparatus. By adjusting the electric field strength and making careful measurements and appropriate calculations, Millikan was able to determine the charge on individual drops (Figure 1.3.2).



Oil drop	Charge in coulombs (C)
A	4.8×10^{-19} C
B	3.2×10^{-19} C
C	6.4×10^{-19} C
D	1.6×10^{-19} C
E	4.8×10^{-19} C

Figure 1.3.2: Millikan's experiment measured the charge of individual oil drops. The tabulated data are examples of a few possible values.

Looking at the charge data that Millikan gathered, you may have recognized that the charge of an oil droplet is always a multiple of a specific charge, 1.6 10^{-19} C. Millikan concluded that this value must therefore be a fundamental charge—the charge of a single electron—with his measured charges due to an excess of one electron (1 times 1.6 10^{-19} C), two electrons (2 times 1.6 10^{-19} C), three electrons (3 times 1.6 10^{-19} C), and so on, on a given oil droplet. Since the charge of an electron was now known due to Millikan's research, and the charge-to-mass ratio was already known due to Thomson's research (1.759 10^{11} C/kg), it only required a simple calculation to determine the mass of the electron as well.

Scientists had now established that the atom was not indivisible as Dalton had believed, and due to the work of Thomson, Millikan, and others, the charge and mass of the negative, subatomic particles—the electrons—were known. However, the positively charged part of an atom was not yet well understood. In 1904, Thomson proposed the "plum pudding" model of atoms, which described a positively charged mass with an equal amount of negative charge in the form of electrons embedded in it, since all atoms are electrically neutral. A competing model had been proposed in 1903 by Hantaro Nagaoka, who postulated a Saturn-like atom, consisting of a positively charged sphere surrounded by a halo of electrons (Figure 1.3.3).

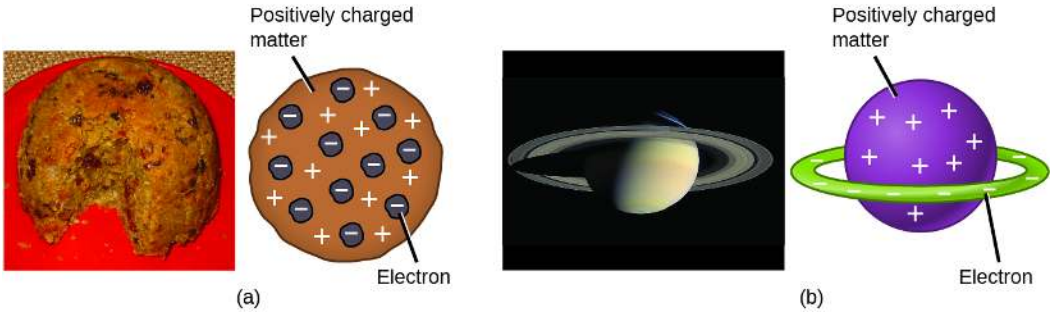


Figure 1.3.3: (a) Thomson suggested that atoms resembled plum pudding, an English dessert consisting of moist cake with embedded raisins ("plums"). (b) Nagaoka proposed that atoms resembled the planet Saturn, with a ring of electrons surrounding a positive "planet." (credit a: modification of work by "Man vyi"/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by "NASA"/Wikimedia Commons)

The next major development in understanding the atom came from Ernest Rutherford, a physicist from New Zealand who largely spent his scientific career in Canada and England. He performed a series of experiments using a beam of high-speed, positively charged alpha particles (α particles) that were produced by the radioactive decay of radium; α particles consist of two protons and two neutrons (you will learn more about radioactive decay in the chapter on nuclear chemistry). Rutherford and his colleagues Hans Geiger (later famous for the Geiger counter) and Ernest Marsden aimed a beam of α particles, the source of which was embedded in a lead block to absorb most of the radiation, at a very thin piece of gold foil and examined the resultant scattering of the α particles using a luminescent screen that glowed briefly where hit by an α particle.

What did they discover? Most particles passed right through the foil without being deflected at all. However, some were diverted slightly, and a very small number were deflected almost straight back toward the source (Figure 1.3.4). Rutherford described finding these results: "It was quite the most incredible event that has ever happened to me in my life. It was almost as incredible as if you fired a 15-inch shell at a piece of tissue paper and it came back and hit you."[1]

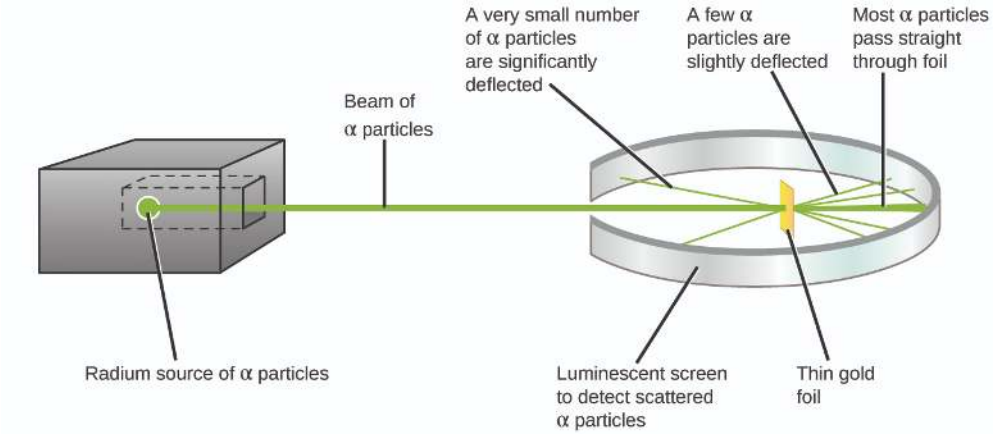


Figure 1.3.4: Geiger and Rutherford fired α particles at a piece of gold foil and detected where those particles went, as shown in this schematic diagram of their experiment. Most of the particles passed straight through the foil, but a few were deflected slightly and a very small number were significantly deflected.

Here is what Rutherford deduced: Because most of the fast-moving α particles passed through the gold atoms undeflected, they must have traveled through essentially empty space inside the atom. Alpha particles are positively charged, so deflections arose when they encountered another positive charge (like charges repel each other). Since like charges repel one another, the few positively charged α particles that changed paths abruptly must have hit, or closely approached, another body that also had a highly concentrated, positive charge. Since the deflections occurred a small fraction of the time, this charge only occupied a small amount of the space in the gold foil. Analyzing a series of such experiments in detail, Rutherford drew two conclusions:

1. The volume occupied by an atom must consist of a large amount of empty space.
2. A small, relatively heavy, positively charged body, the nucleus, must be at the center of each atom.

Link to Learning

View this simulation of the Rutherford gold foil experiment. Adjust the slit width to produce a narrower or broader beam of α particles to see how that affects the scattering pattern.

This analysis led Rutherford to propose a model in which an atom consists of a very small, positively charged nucleus, in which most of the mass of the atom is concentrated, surrounded by the negatively charged electrons, so that the atom is electrically neutral (Figure 1.3.5). After many more experiments, Rutherford also discovered that the nuclei of other elements contain the hydrogen nucleus as a "building block," and he named this more fundamental particle the proton, the positively charged, subatomic particle found in the nucleus. With one addition, which you will learn next, this nuclear model of the atom, proposed over a century ago, is still used today.

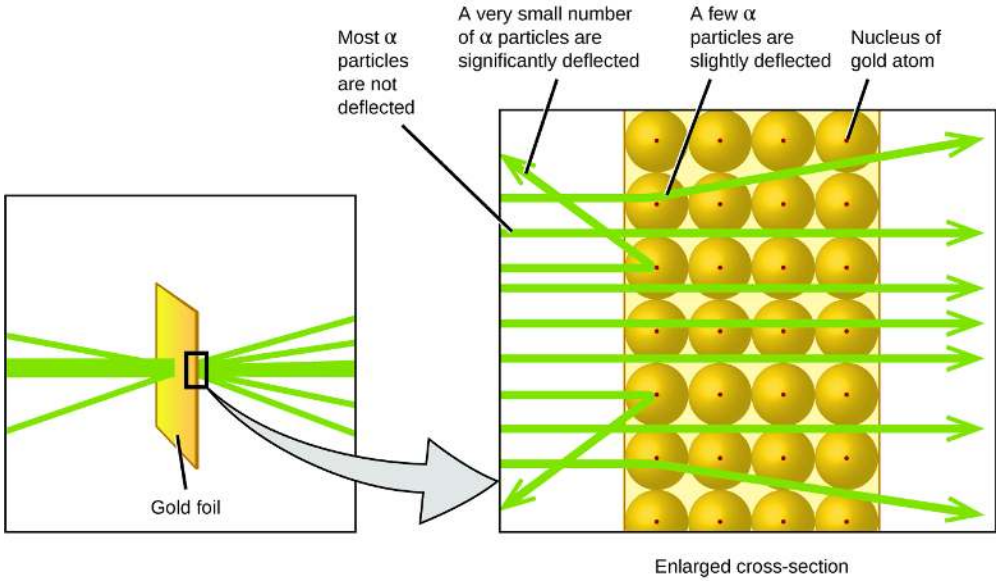


Figure 1.3.5: The α particles are deflected only when they collide with or pass close to the much heavier, positively charged gold nucleus. Because the nucleus is very small compared to the size of an atom, very few α particles are deflected. Most pass through the relatively large region occupied by electrons, which are too light to deflect the rapidly moving particles.

Link to Learning

The Rutherford Scattering simulation allows you to investigate the differences between a "plum pudding" atom and a Rutherford atom by firing α particles at each type of atom.

Another important finding was the discovery of isotopes. During the early 1900s, scientists identified several substances that appeared to be new elements, isolating them from radioactive ores. For example, a "new element" produced by the radioactive decay of thorium was initially given the name mesothorium. However, a more detailed analysis showed that mesothorium was chemically identical to radium (another decay product), despite having a different atomic mass. This result, along with similar findings for other elements, led the English chemist Frederick Soddy to realize that an element could have types of atoms with different masses that were chemically indistinguishable. These different types are called isotopes—atoms of the same element that differ in mass. Soddy was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1921 for this discovery.

One puzzle remained: The nucleus was known to contain almost all of the mass of an atom, with the number of protons only providing half, or less, of that mass. Different proposals were made to explain what constituted the remaining mass, including the existence of neutral particles in the nucleus. As you might expect, detecting uncharged particles is very challenging, and it was not until 1932 that James Chadwick found evidence of neutrons, uncharged, subatomic particles with a mass approximately the same as that of protons. The existence of the neutron also explained isotopes: They differ in mass because they have different numbers of neutrons, but they are chemically identical because they have the same number of protons. This will be explained in more detail later in this chapter.

Footnotes

- 1Ernest Rutherford, "The Development of the Theory of Atomic Structure," ed. J. A. Ratcliffe, in *Background to Modern Science*, eds. Joseph Needham and Walter Pagel, (Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1938), 61–74. Accessed September 22, 2014, https://ia600508.us.archive.org/3/it...e032734mbp.pdf.

This page titled 1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.2: Evolution of Atomic Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Write and interpret symbols that depict the atomic number, mass number, and charge of an atom or ion
- Define the atomic mass unit and average atomic mass
- Calculate average atomic mass and isotopic abundance

The development of modern atomic theory revealed much about the inner structure of atoms. It was learned that an atom contains a very small nucleus composed of positively charged protons and uncharged neutrons, surrounded by a much larger volume of space containing negatively charged electrons. The nucleus contains the majority of an atom's mass because protons and neutrons are much heavier than electrons, whereas electrons occupy almost all of an atom's volume. The diameter of an atom is on the order of 10^{-10} m, whereas the diameter of the nucleus is roughly 10^{-15} m—about 100,000 times smaller. For a perspective about their relative sizes, consider this: If the nucleus were the size of a blueberry, the atom would be about the size of a football stadium (Figure 1.4.1).



Figure 1.4.1: If an atom could be expanded to the size of a football stadium, the nucleus would be the size of a single blueberry. (credit middle: modification of work by "babyknight"/Wikimedia Commons; credit right: modification of work by Paxson Woelber)

Atoms—and the protons, neutrons, and electrons that compose them—are extremely small. For example, a carbon atom weighs less than 2×10^{-23} g, and an electron has a charge of less than 2×10^{-19} C (coulomb). When describing the properties of tiny objects such as atoms, we use appropriately small units of measure, such as the atomic mass unit (amu) and the fundamental unit of charge (e). The amu was originally defined based on hydrogen, the lightest element, then later in terms of oxygen. Since 1961, it has been defined with regard to the most abundant isotope of carbon, atoms of which are assigned masses of exactly 12 amu. (This isotope is known as "carbon-12" as will be discussed later in this module.) Thus, one amu is exactly $\frac{1}{12}$ of the mass of one carbon-12 atom: 1 amu = 1.6605×10^{-24} g. (The **Dalton** (Da) and the **unified atomic mass** unit (u) are alternative units that are equivalent to the amu.) The fundamental unit of charge (also called the elementary charge) equals the magnitude of the charge of an electron (e) with e = 1.602×10^{-19} C.

A proton has a mass of 1.0073 amu and a charge of 1+. A neutron is a slightly heavier particle with a mass 1.0087 amu and a charge of zero; as its name suggests, it is neutral. The electron has a charge of 1− and is a much lighter particle with a mass of about 0.00055 amu (it would take about 1800 electrons to equal the mass of one proton). The properties of these fundamental particles are summarized in Table 1.4.1. (An observant student might notice that the sum of an atom's subatomic particles does not equal the atom's actual mass: The total mass of six protons, six neutrons, and six electrons is 12.0993 amu, slightly larger than 12.00 amu. This "missing" mass is known as the mass defect, and you will learn about it in the chapter on nuclear chemistry.)

Table 1.4.1: Properties of Subatomic Particles

Name	Location	Charge (C)	Unit Charge	Mass (amu)	Mass (g)
electron	outside nucleus	$-1.602\ 10^{-19}$	1−	0.00055	$0.00091\ 10^{-24}$
proton	nucleus	$1.602\ 10^{-19}$	1+	1.00727	$1.67262\ 10^{-24}$

Name	Location	Charge (C)	Unit Charge	Mass (amu)	Mass (g)
neutron	nucleus	0	0	1.00866	$1.67493\ 10^{-24}$

The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom is its **atomic number** (Z). This is the defining trait of an element: Its value determines the identity of the atom. For example, any atom that contains six protons is the element carbon and has the atomic number 6, regardless of how many neutrons or electrons it may have. A neutral atom must contain the same number of positive and negative charges, so the number of protons equals the number of electrons. Therefore, the atomic number also indicates the number of electrons in an atom. The total number of protons and neutrons in an atom is called its **mass number** (A). The number of neutrons is therefore the difference between the mass number and the atomic number: A – Z = number of neutrons.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{atomic number } (Z) &= \text{number of protons} \\ \text{mass number } (A) &= \text{number of protons} + \text{number of neutrons} \\ A - Z &= \text{number of neutrons} \end{aligned}$$

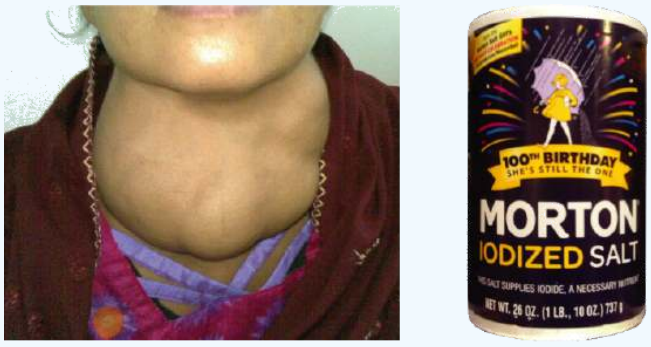
Atoms are electrically neutral if they contain the same number of positively charged protons and negatively charged electrons. When the numbers of these subatomic particles are *not* equal, the atom is electrically charged and is called an **ion**. The charge of an atom is defined as follows:

$$\text{Atomic charge} = \text{number of protons} - \text{number of electrons}$$

As will be discussed in more detail later in this chapter, atoms (and molecules) typically acquire charge by gaining or losing electrons. An atom that gains one or more electrons will exhibit a negative charge and is called an **anion**. Positively charged atoms called **cations** are formed when an atom loses one or more electrons. For example, a neutral sodium atom (Z = 11) has 11 electrons. If this atom loses one electron, it will become a cation with a 1+ charge (11 − 10 = 1+). A neutral oxygen atom (Z = 8) has eight electrons, and if it gains two electrons it will become an anion with a 2− charge (8 − 10 = 2−).

Example 1.4.1: Composition of an Atom

Iodine is an essential trace element in our diet; it is needed to produce thyroid hormone. Insufficient iodine in the diet can lead to the development of a goiter, an enlargement of the thyroid gland (Figure 1.4.2).



(a) (b)

Figure 1.4.2: (a) Insufficient iodine in the diet can cause an enlargement of the thyroid gland called a goiter. (b) The addition of small amounts of iodine to salt, which prevents the formation of goiters, has helped eliminate this concern in the US where salt consumption is high. (credit a: modification of work by “Almazi”/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by Mike Mozart)

The addition of small amounts of iodine to table salt (iodized salt) has essentially eliminated this health concern in the United States, but as much as 40% of the world’s population is still at risk of iodine deficiency. The iodine atoms are added as anions, and each has a 1− charge and a mass number of 127. Determine the numbers of protons, neutrons, and electrons in one of these iodine anions.

Solution

The atomic number of iodine (53) tells us that a neutral iodine atom contains 53 protons in its nucleus and 53 electrons outside its nucleus. Because the sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons equals the mass number, 127, the number of neutrons is

74 (127 − 53 = 74). Since the iodine is added as a 1− anion, the number of electrons is 54 [53 – (1–) = 54].

? Exercise 1.4.1

An ion of platinum has a mass number of 195 and contains 74 electrons. How many protons and neutrons does it contain, and what is its charge?

Answer

78 protons; 117 neutrons; charge is 4+

Chemical Symbols

A chemical symbol is an abbreviation that we use to indicate an element or an atom of an element. For example, the symbol for mercury is Hg (Figure 1.4.3). We use the same symbol to indicate one atom of mercury (microscopic domain) or to label a container of many atoms of the element mercury (macroscopic domain).



Figure 1.4.3: The symbol Hg represents the element mercury regardless of the amount; it could represent one atom of mercury or a large amount of mercury.

The symbols for several common elements and their atoms are listed in Table 1.4.2. Some symbols are derived from the common name of the element; others are abbreviations of the name in another language. Most symbols have one or two letters, but three-letter symbols have been used to describe some elements that have atomic numbers greater than 112. To avoid confusion with other notations, only the first letter of a symbol is capitalized. For example, Co is the symbol for the element cobalt, but CO is the notation for the compound carbon monoxide, which contains atoms of the elements carbon (C) and oxygen (O). All known elements and their symbols are in the periodic table (also found in Appendix A).

Table 1.4.2: Some Common Elements and Their Symbols

Element	Symbol	Element	Symbol
aluminum	Al	iron	Fe (from *ferrum*)
bromine	Br	lead	Pb (from *plumbum*)
calcium	Ca	magnesium	Mg
carbon	C	mercury	Hg (from *hydrargyrum*)
chlorine	Cl	nitrogen	N
chromium	Cr	oxygen	O
cobalt	Co	potassium	K (from *kalium*)
copper	Cu (from *cuprum*)	silicon	Si
fluorine	F	silver	Ag (from *argentum*)
gold	Au (from *aurum*)	sodium	Na (from *natrium*)

Element	Symbol	Element	Symbol
helium	He	sulfur	S
hydrogen	H	tin	Sn (from *stannum*)
iodine	I	zinc	Zn

Traditionally, the discoverer (or discoverers) of a new element names the element. However, until the name is recognized by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC), the recommended name of the new element is based on the Latin word(s) for its atomic number. For example, element 106 was called unnilhexium (Unh), element 107 was called unnilseptium (Uns), and element 108 was called unniloctium (Uno) for several years. These elements are now named after scientists (or occasionally locations); for example, element 106 is now known as *seaborgium* (Sg) in honor of Glenn Seaborg, a Nobel Prize winner who was active in the discovery of several heavy elements. Element 109 was named in honor of Lise Meitner, who discovered nuclear fission, a phenomenon that would have world-changing impacts; Meitner also contributed to the discovery of some major isotopes, discussed immediately below.

Link to Learning

Visit this site to learn more about IUPAC, the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry, and explore its periodic table.

Isotopes

The symbol for a specific isotope of any element is written by placing the mass number as a superscript to the left of the element symbol (Figure 1.4.4). The atomic number is sometimes written as a subscript preceding the symbol, but since this number defines the element's identity, as does its symbol, it is often omitted. For example, magnesium exists as a mixture of three isotopes, each with an atomic number of 12 and with mass numbers of 24, 25, and 26, respectively. These isotopes can be identified as ^{24}Mg, ^{25}Mg, and ^{26}Mg. These isotope symbols are read as "element, mass number" and can be symbolized consistent with this reading. For instance, ^{24}Mg is read as "magnesium 24," and can be written as "magnesium-24" or "Mg-24." ^{25}Mg is read as "magnesium 25," and can be written as "magnesium-25" or "Mg-25." All magnesium atoms have 12 protons in their nucleus. They differ only because a ^{24}Mg atom has 12 neutrons in its nucleus, a ^{25}Mg atom has 13 neutrons, and a ^{26}Mg has 14 neutrons.

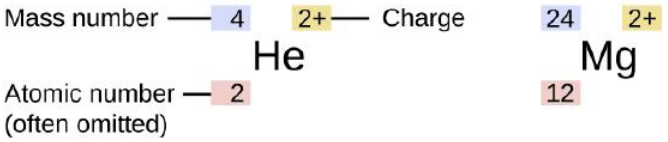


Figure 1.4.4: The symbol for an atom indicates the element via its usual two-letter symbol, the mass number as a left superscript, the atomic number as a left subscript (sometimes omitted), and the charge as a right superscript.

Information about the naturally occurring isotopes of elements with atomic numbers 1 through 10 is given in Table 1.4.3. Note that in addition to standard names and symbols, the isotopes of hydrogen are often referred to using common names and accompanying symbols. Hydrogen-2, symbolized ^{2}H, is also called deuterium and sometimes symbolized D. Hydrogen-3, symbolized ^{3}H, is also called tritium and sometimes symbolized T.

Table 1.4.3: Nuclear Compositions of Atoms of the Very Light Elements

Element	Symbol	Atomic Number	Number of Protons	Number of Neutrons	Mass (amu)	% Natural Abundance
hydrogen	$^{1}_{1}$H (protium)	1	1	0	1.0078	99.989
	$^{2}_{1}$H (deuterium)	1	1	1	2.0141	0.0115
	$^{3}_{1}$H (tritium)	1	1	2	3.01605	— (trace)

Element	Symbol	Atomic Number	Number of Protons	Number of Neutrons	Mass (amu)	% Natural Abundance
helium	$^{3}_{2}\mathrm{He}$	2	2	1	3.01603	0.00013
	$^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$	2	2	2	4.0026	100
lithium	$^{6}_{3}\mathrm{Li}$	3	3	3	6.0151	7.59
	$^{7}_{3}\mathrm{Li}$	3	3	4	7.0160	92.41
beryllium	$^{9}_{4}\mathrm{Be}$	4	4	5	9.0122	100
boron	$^{10}_{5}\mathrm{B}$	5	5	5	10.0129	19.9
	$^{11}_{5}\mathrm{B}$	5	5	6	11.0093	80.1
carbon	$^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$	6	6	6	12.0000	98.89
	$^{13}_{6}\mathrm{C}$	6	6	7	13.0034	1.11
	$^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$	6	6	8	14.0032	— (trace)
nitrogen	$^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N}$	7	7	7	14.0031	99.63
	$^{15}_{7}\mathrm{N}$	7	7	8	15.0001	0.37
oxygen	$^{16}_{8}\mathrm{O}$	8	8	8	15.9949	99.757
	$^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O}$	8	8	9	16.9991	0.038
	$^{18}_{8}\mathrm{O}$	8	8	10	17.9992	0.205
fluorine	$^{19}_{9}\mathrm{F}$	9	9	10	18.9984	100
neon	$^{20}_{10}\mathrm{Ne}$	10	10	10	19.9924	90.48
	$^{21}_{10}\mathrm{Ne}$	10	10	11	20.9938	0.27
	$^{22}_{10}\mathrm{Ne}$	10	10	12	21.9914	9.25

Link to Learning

Use this Build an Atom simulator to build atoms of the first 10 elements, see which isotopes exist, check nuclear stability, and gain experience with isotope symbols.

Atomic Mass

Because each proton and each neutron contribute approximately one amu to the mass of an atom, and each electron contributes far less, the **atomic mass** of a single atom is approximately equal to its mass number (a whole number). However, the average masses of atoms of most elements are not whole numbers because most elements exist naturally as mixtures of two or more isotopes.

The mass of an element shown in a periodic table or listed in a table of atomic masses is a weighted, average mass of all the isotopes present in a naturally occurring sample of that element. This is equal to the sum of each individual isotope's mass multiplied by its fractional abundance.

$$\text{average mass} = \sum_i (\text{fractional abundance} \times \text{isotopic mass})_i$$

For example, the element boron is composed of two isotopes: About 19.9% of all boron atoms are $^{10}\mathrm{B}$ with a mass of 10.0129 amu, and the remaining 80.1% are $^{11}\mathrm{B}$ with a mass of 11.0093 amu. The average atomic mass for boron is calculated to be:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{boron average mass} &= (0.199 \times 10.0129\ \text{amu}) + (0.801 \times 11.0093\ \text{amu}) \\ &= 1.99\ \text{amu} + 8.82\ \text{amu} \\ &= 10.81\ \text{amu}\end{aligned}$$

It is important to understand that no single boron atom weighs exactly 10.8 amu; 10.8 amu is the average mass of all boron atoms, and individual boron atoms weigh either approximately 10 amu or 11 amu.

Example 1.4.2: Calculation of Average Atomic Mass

A meteorite found in central Indiana contains traces of the noble gas neon picked up from the solar wind during the meteorite's trip through the solar system. Analysis of a sample of the gas showed that it consisted of 91.84% ^{20}Ne (mass 19.9924 amu), 0.47% ^{21}Ne (mass 20.9940 amu), and 7.69% ^{22}Ne (mass 21.9914 amu). What is the average mass of the neon in the solar wind?

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\text{average mass} &= (0.9184 \times 19.9924\ \text{amu}) + (0.0047 \times 20.9940\ \text{amu}) + (0.0769 \times 21.9914\ \text{amu} \\ &= (18.36 + 0.099 + 1.69)\ \text{amu} \\ &= 20.15\ \text{amu}\end{aligned}$$

The average mass of a neon atom in the solar wind is 20.15 amu. (The average mass of a terrestrial neon atom is 20.1796 amu. This result demonstrates that we may find slight differences in the natural abundance of isotopes, depending on their origin.)

Exercise 1.4.2

A sample of magnesium is found to contain 78.70% of ^{24}Mg atoms (mass 23.98 amu), 10.13% of ^{25}Mg atoms (mass 24.99 amu), and 11.17% of ^{26}Mg atoms (mass 25.98 amu). Calculate the average mass of a Mg atom.

Answer

24.31 amu

We can also do variations of this type of calculation, as shown in the next example.

Example 1.4.3: Calculation of Percent Abundance

Naturally occurring chlorine consists of ^{35}Cl (mass 34.96885 amu) and ^{37}Cl (mass 36.96590 amu), with an average mass of 35.453 amu. What is the percent composition of Cl in terms of these two isotopes?

Solution

The average mass of chlorine is the fraction that is ^{35}Cl times the mass of ^{35}Cl plus the fraction that is ^{37}Cl times the mass of ^{37}Cl.

$$\text{average mass} = \left(\text{fraction of } {}^{35}Cl \times \text{ mass of } {}^{35}Cl\right) + \left(\text{fraction of } {}^{37}Cl \times \text{ mass of } {}^{37}Cl\right)$$

If we let *x* represent the fraction that is ^{35}Cl, then the fraction that is ^{37}Cl is represented by 1.00 − *x*.

(The fraction that is ^{35}Cl + the fraction that is ^{37}Cl must add up to 1, so the fraction of ^{37}Cl must equal 1.00 − the fraction of ^{35}Cl.)

Substituting this into the average mass equation, we have:

$$\begin{aligned}35.453amu &= (x \times 34.96885amu) + [(1.00 - x) \times 36.96590amu] \\ 35.453 &= 34.96885x + 36.96590 - 36.96590x \\ 1.99705x &= 1.513 \\ x &= \frac{1.513}{1.99705} = 0.7576\end{aligned}$$

So solving yields: $x = 0.7576$, which means that $1.00 - 0.7576 = 0.2424$. Therefore, chlorine consists of 75.76% ^{35}Cl and 24.24% ^{37}Cl.

Exercise 1.4.3

Naturally occurring copper consists of ^{63}Cu (mass 62.9296 amu) and ^{65}Cu (mass 64.9278 amu), with an average mass of 63.546 amu. What is the percent composition of Cu in terms of these two isotopes?

Answer

69.15% Cu-63 and 30.85% Cu-65

Link to Learning

Visit this site to make mixtures of the main isotopes of the first 18 elements, gain experience with average atomic mass, and check naturally occurring isotope ratios using the Isotopes and Atomic Mass simulation.

As you will learn, isotopes are important in nature and especially in human understanding of science and medicine. Let's consider just one natural, stable isotope: Oxygen-18, which is noted in the table above and is referred to as one of the environmental isotopes. It is important in paleoclimatology, for example, because scientists can use the ratio between Oxygen-18 and Oxygen-16 in an ice core to determine the temperature of precipitation over time. Oxygen-18 was also critical to the discovery of metabolic pathways and the mechanisms of enzymes. Mildred Cohn pioneered the usage of these isotopes to act as tracers, so that researchers could follow their path through reactions and gain a better understanding of what is happening. One of her first discoveries provided insight into the phosphorylation of glucose that takes place in mitochondria. And the methods of using isotopes for this research contributed to entire fields of study.

The occurrence and natural abundances of isotopes can be experimentally determined using an instrument called a mass spectrometer. **Mass spectrometry** (MS) is widely used in chemistry, forensics, medicine, environmental science, and many other fields to analyze and help identify the substances in a sample of material. In a typical mass spectrometer (Figure 1.4.5), the sample is vaporized and exposed to a high-energy electron beam that causes the sample's atoms (or molecules) to become electrically charged, typically by losing one or more electrons. These cations then pass through a (variable) electric or magnetic field that deflects each cation's path to an extent that depends on both its mass and charge (similar to how the path of a large steel ball rolling past a magnet is deflected to a lesser extent that that of a small steel ball). The ions are detected, and a plot of the relative number of ions generated versus their mass-to-charge ratios (a *mass spectrum*) is made. The height of each vertical feature or peak in a mass spectrum is proportional to the fraction of cations with the specified mass-to-charge ratio. Since its initial use during the development of modern atomic theory, MS has evolved to become a powerful tool for chemical analysis in a wide range of applications.

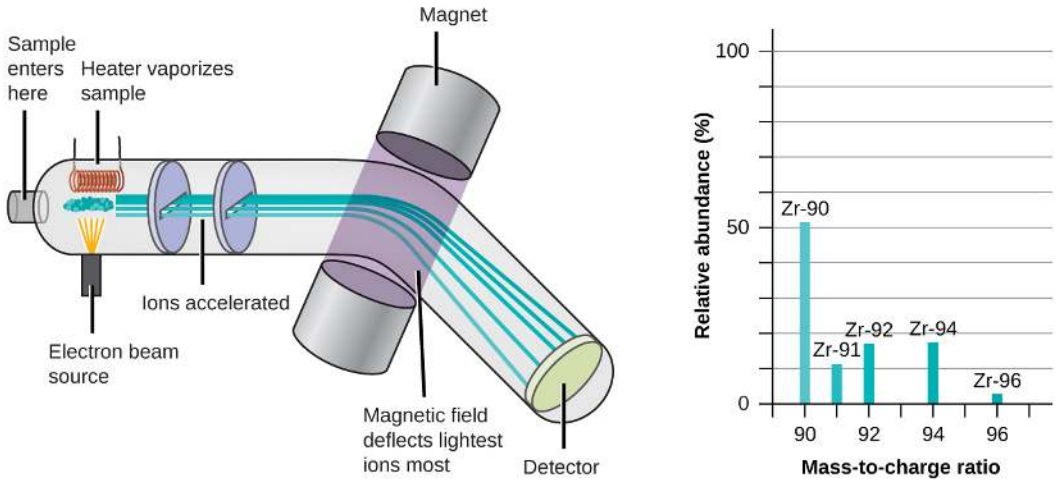


Figure 1.4.5: Analysis of zirconium in a mass spectrometer produces a mass spectrum with peaks showing the different isotopes of Zr.

Link to Learning

See an animation that explains mass spectrometry. Watch this video from the Royal Society for Chemistry for a brief description of the rudiments of mass spectrometry.

This page titled 1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.3: Atomic Structure and Symbolism** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.5: Chemical Formulas

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Symbolize the composition of molecules using molecular formulas and empirical formulas
- Represent the bonding arrangement of atoms within molecules using structural formulas

A molecular formula is a representation of a molecule that uses chemical symbols to indicate the types of atoms followed by subscripts to show the number of atoms of each type in the molecule. (A subscript is used only when more than one atom of a given type is present.) Molecular formulas are also used as abbreviations for the names of compounds.

The structural formula for a compound gives the same information as its molecular formula (the types and numbers of atoms in the molecule) but also shows how the atoms are connected in the molecule. The structural formula for methane contains symbols for one C atom and four H atoms, indicating the number of atoms in the molecule (Figure 1.5.1). The lines represent bonds that hold the atoms together. (A chemical bond is an attraction between atoms or ions that holds them together in a molecule or a crystal.) We will discuss chemical bonds and see how to predict the arrangement of atoms in a molecule later. For now, simply know that the lines are an indication of how the atoms are connected in a molecule. A ball-and-stick model shows the geometric arrangement of the atoms with atomic sizes not to scale, and a space-filling model shows the relative sizes of the atoms.

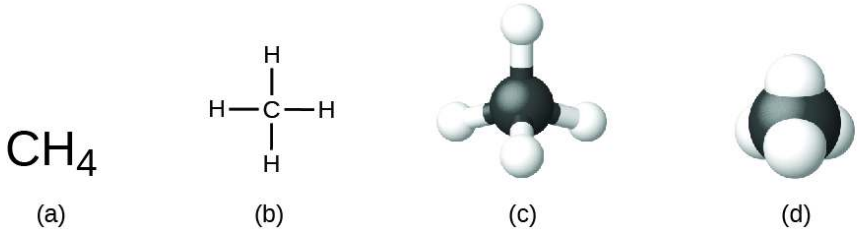


Figure 1.5.1 : A methane molecule can be represented as (a) a molecular formula, (b) a structural formula, (c) a ball-and-stick model, and (d) a space-filling model. Carbon and hydrogen atoms are represented by black and white spheres, respectively.

Although many elements consist of discrete, individual atoms, some exist as molecules made up of two or more atoms of the element chemically bonded together. For example, most samples of the elements hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen are composed of molecules that contain two atoms each (called diatomic molecules) and thus have the molecular formulas H_2, O_2, and N_2, respectively. Other elements commonly found as diatomic molecules are fluorine (F_2), chlorine (Cl_2), bromine (Br_2), and iodine (I_2). The most common form of the element sulfur is composed of molecules that consist of eight atoms of sulfur; its molecular formula is S_8 (Figure 1.5.2).

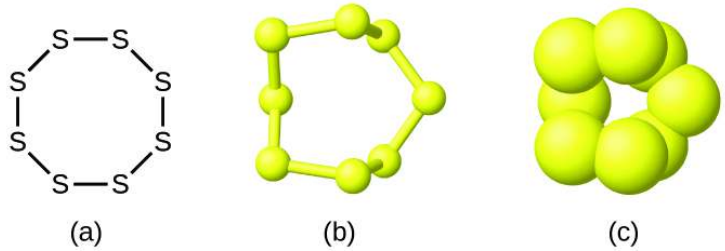


Figure 1.5.2 : A molecule of sulfur is composed of eight sulfur atoms and is therefore written as S_8. It can be represented as (a) a structural formula, (b) a ball-and-stick model, and (c) a space-filling model. Sulfur atoms are represented by yellow spheres.

It is important to note that a subscript following a symbol and a number in front of a symbol do not represent the same thing; for example, H_2 and 2H represent distinctly different species. H_2 is a molecular formula; it represents a diatomic molecule of hydrogen, consisting of two atoms of the element that are chemically bonded together. The expression 2H, on the other hand, indicates two separate hydrogen atoms that are not combined as a unit. The expression $2H_2$ represents two molecules of diatomic hydrogen (Figure 1.5.3).

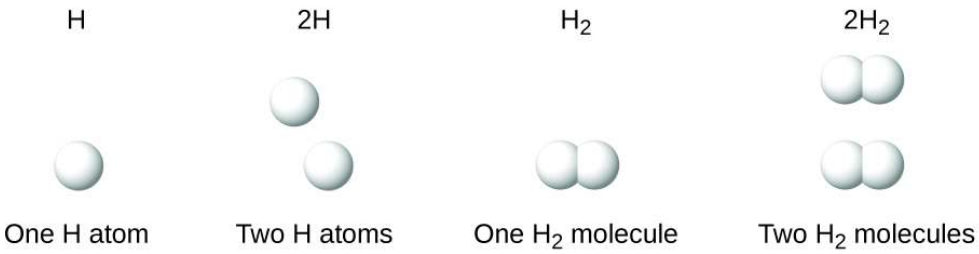


Figure 1.5.3 : The symbols H, 2H, H_2, and $2H_2$ represent very different entities.

Compounds are formed when two or more elements chemically combine, resulting in the formation of bonds. For example, hydrogen and oxygen can react to form water, and sodium and chlorine can react to form table salt. We sometimes describe the composition of these compounds with an empirical formula, which indicates the types of atoms present and *the simplest whole-number ratio of the number of atoms (or ions) in the compound*. For example, titanium dioxide (used as pigment in white paint and in the thick, white, blocking type of sunscreen) has an empirical formula of TiO_2. This identifies the elements titanium (Ti) and oxygen (O) as the constituents of titanium dioxide, and indicates the presence of twice as many atoms of the element oxygen as atoms of the element titanium (Figure 1.5.4).

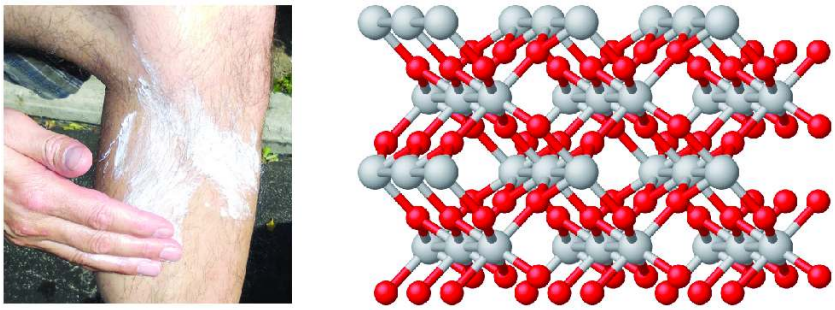


Figure 1.5.4 : (a) The white compound titanium dioxide provides effective protection from the sun. (b) A crystal of titanium dioxide, TiO_2, contains titanium and oxygen in a ratio of 1 to 2. The titanium atoms are gray and the oxygen atoms are red. (credit a: modification of work by “osseous”/Flickr)

As discussed previously, we can describe a compound with a molecular formula, in which the subscripts indicate the *actual numbers of atoms* of each element in a molecule of the compound. In many cases, the molecular formula of a substance is derived from experimental determination of both its empirical formula and its molecular mass (the sum of atomic masses for all atoms composing the molecule). For example, it can be determined experimentally that benzene contains two elements, carbon (C) and hydrogen (H), and that for every carbon atom in benzene, there is one hydrogen atom. Thus, the empirical formula is CH. An experimental determination of the molecular mass reveals that a molecule of benzene contains six carbon atoms and six hydrogen atoms, so the molecular formula for benzene is C_6H_6 (Figure 1.5.5).

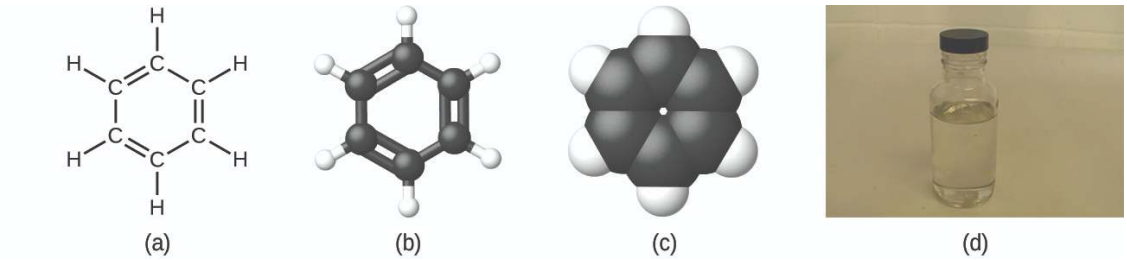
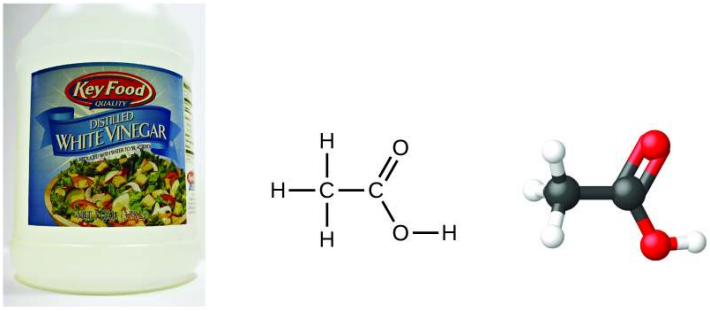


Figure 1.5.5 : Benzene, C_6H_6, is produced during oil refining and has many industrial uses. A benzene molecule can be represented as (a) a structural formula, (b) a ball-and-stick model, and (c) a space-filling model. (d) Benzene is a clear liquid. (credit d: modification of work by Sahar Atwa)

If we know a compound’s formula, we can easily determine the empirical formula. (This is somewhat of an academic exercise; the reverse chronology is generally followed in actual practice.) For example, the molecular formula for acetic acid, the component that gives vinegar its sharp taste, is $C_2H_4O_2$. This formula indicates that a molecule of acetic acid (Figure 1.5.6) contains two carbon atoms, four hydrogen atoms, and two oxygen atoms. The ratio of atoms is 2:4:2. Dividing by the lowest common

denominator (2) gives the simplest, whole-number ratio of atoms, 1:2:1, so the empirical formula is CH_2O. Note that a molecular formula is always a whole-number multiple of an empirical formula.



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 1.5.6: (a) Vinegar contains acetic acid, $C_2H_4O_2$, which has an empirical formula of CH_2O. It can be represented as (b) a structural formula and (c) as a ball-and-stick model. (credit a: modification of work by "HomeSpot HQ"/Flickr)

Example 1.5.1: Empirical and Molecular Formulas

Molecules of glucose (blood sugar) contain 6 carbon atoms, 12 hydrogen atoms, and 6 oxygen atoms. What are the molecular and empirical formulas of glucose?

Solution

The molecular formula is $C_6H_{12}O_6$ because one molecule actually contains 6 C, 12 H, and 6 O atoms. The simplest whole-number ratio of C to H to O atoms in glucose is 1:2:1, so the empirical formula is CH_2O.

Exercise 1.5.1

A molecule of metaldehyde (a pesticide used for snails and slugs) contains 8 carbon atoms, 16 hydrogen atoms, and 4 oxygen atoms. What are the molecular and empirical formulas of metaldehyde?

Answer

Molecular formula, $C_8H_{16}O_4$; empirical formula, C_2H_4O

Link to Learning

You can explore molecule building using an online simulation.

Portrait of a Chemist: Lee Cronin

What is it that chemists do? According to Lee Cronin (Figure 1.5.7), chemists make very complicated molecules by "chopping up" small molecules and "reverse engineering" them. He wonders if we could "make a really cool universal chemistry set" by what he calls "app-ing" chemistry. Could we "app" chemistry?



Figure 1.5.7: Chemist Lee Cronin has been named one of the UK's 10 most inspirational scientists. The youngest chair at the University of Glasgow, Lee runs a large research group, collaborates with many scientists worldwide, has published over 250 papers in top scientific journals, and has given more than 150 invited talks. His research focuses on complex chemical systems and their potential to transform technology, but also branches into nanoscience, solar fuels, synthetic biology, and even artificial life and evolution. (credit: image courtesy of Lee Cronin)

In a 2012 TED talk, Lee describes one fascinating possibility: combining a collection of chemical "inks" with a 3D printer capable of fabricating a reaction apparatus (tiny test tubes, beakers, and the like) to fashion a "universal toolkit of chemistry." This toolkit could be used to create custom-tailored drugs to fight a new superbug or to "print" medicine personally configured to your genetic makeup, environment, and health situation. Says Cronin, "What Apple did for music, I'd like to do for the discovery and distribution of prescription drugs."[2] View his full talk at the TED website.

It is important to be aware that it may be possible for the same atoms to be arranged in different ways: Compounds with the same molecular formula may have different atom-to-atom bonding and therefore different structures. For example, could there be another compound with the same formula as acetic acid, $C_2H_4O_2$? And if so, what would be the structure of its molecules?

If you predict that another compound with the formula $C_2H_4O_2$ could exist, then you demonstrated good chemical insight and are correct. Two C atoms, four H atoms, and two O atoms can also be arranged to form a methyl formate, which is used in manufacturing, as an insecticide, and for quick-drying finishes. Methyl formate molecules have one of the oxygen atoms between the two carbon atoms, differing from the arrangement in acetic acid molecules. Acetic acid and methyl formate are examples of isomers—compounds with the same chemical formula but different molecular structures (Figure 1.5.8). Note that this small difference in the arrangement of the atoms has a major effect on their respective chemical properties. You would certainly not want to use a solution of methyl formate as a substitute for a solution of acetic acid (vinegar) when you make salad dressing.

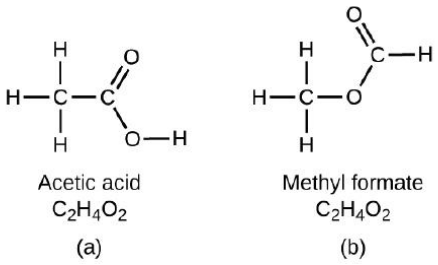


Figure 1.5.8: Molecules of (a) acetic acid and methyl formate (b) are structural isomers; they have the same formula ($C_2H_4O_2$) but different structures (and therefore different chemical properties).

Many types of isomers exist (Figure 1.5.9). Acetic acid and methyl formate are structural isomers, compounds in which the molecules differ in how the atoms are connected to each other. There are also various types of spatial isomers, in which the relative orientations of the atoms in space can be different. For example, the compound carvone (found in caraway seeds, spearmint, and mandarin orange peels) consists of two isomers that are mirror images of each other. *S*-(+)-carvone smells like caraway, and *R*-(−)-carvone smells like spearmint.

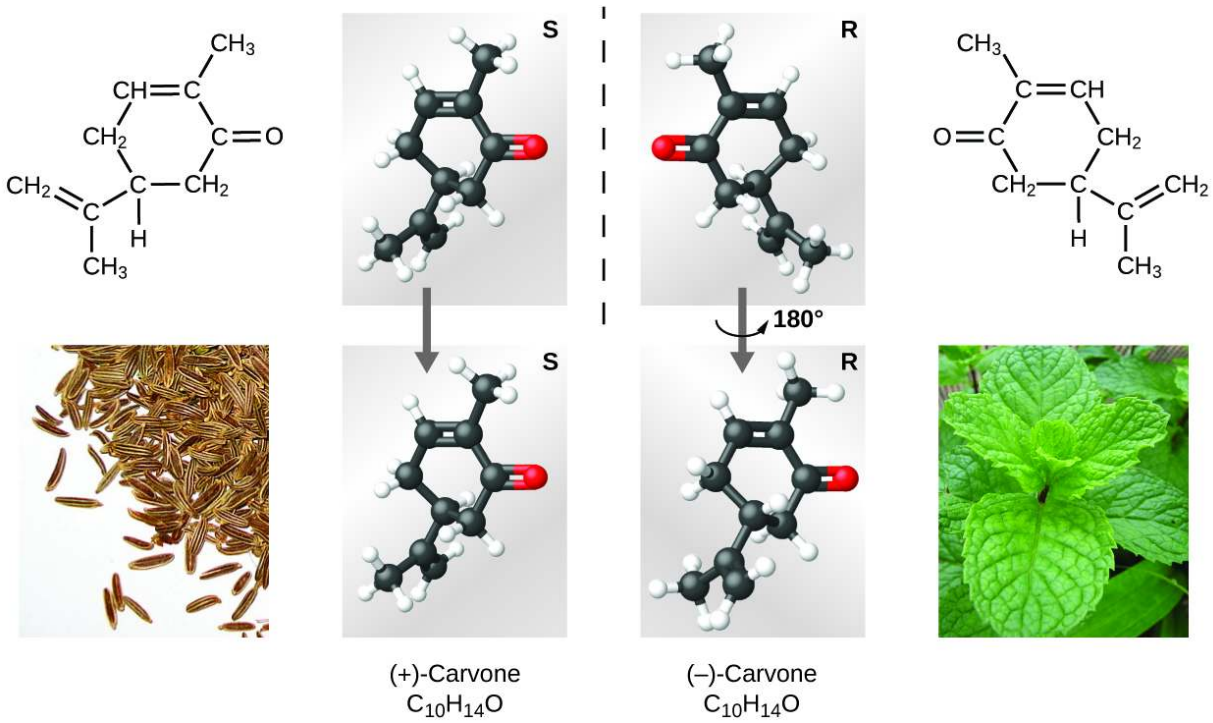


Figure 1.5.0: Molecules of carvone are spatial isomers; they only differ in the relative orientations of the atoms in space. (credit bottom left: modification of work by "Miansari66"/Wikimedia Commons; credit bottom right: modification of work by Forest & Kim Starr)

Link to Learning

Select this link to view an explanation of isomers, spatial isomers, and why they have different smells (select the video titled "Mirror Molecule: Carvone").

Footnotes

- 2Lee Cronin, "Print Your Own Medicine," Talk presented at TED Global 2012, Edinburgh, Scotland, June 2012.

This page titled 1.5: Chemical Formulas is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.4: Chemical Formulas** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.6: The Periodic Table

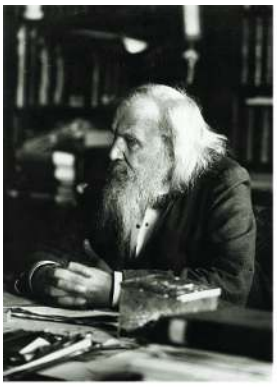
Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- State the periodic law and explain the organization of elements in the periodic table
- Predict the general properties of elements based on their location within the periodic table
- Identify metals, nonmetals, and metalloids by their properties and/or location on the periodic table

As early chemists worked to purify ores and discovered more elements, they realized that various elements could be grouped together by their similar chemical behaviors. One such grouping includes lithium (Li), sodium (Na), and potassium (K): These elements all are shiny, conduct heat and electricity well, and have similar chemical properties. A second grouping includes calcium (Ca), strontium (Sr), and barium (Ba), which also are shiny, good conductors of heat and electricity, and have chemical properties in common. However, the specific properties of these two groupings are notably different from each other. For example: Li, Na, and K are much more reactive than are Ca, Sr, and Ba; Li, Na, and K form compounds with oxygen in a ratio of two of their atoms to one oxygen atom, whereas Ca, Sr, and Ba form compounds with one of their atoms to one oxygen atom. Fluorine (F), chlorine (Cl), bromine (Br), and iodine (I) also exhibit similar properties to each other, but these properties are drastically different from those of any of the elements above.

Dimitri Mendeleev in Russia (1869) and Lothar Meyer in Germany (1870) independently recognized that there was a periodic relationship among the properties of the elements known at that time. Both published tables with the elements arranged according to increasing atomic mass. But Mendeleev went one step further than Meyer: He used his table to predict the existence of elements that would have the properties similar to aluminum and silicon, but were yet unknown. The discoveries of gallium (1875) and germanium (1886) provided great support for Mendeleev's work. Although Mendeleev and Meyer had a long dispute over priority, Mendeleev's contributions to the development of the periodic table are now more widely recognized (Figure 1.6.1).



(a)

Reihen	Gruppe I. — R^2O	Gruppe II. — RO	Gruppe III. — R^2O^3	Gruppe IV. RH^4 RO^2	Gruppe V. RH^3 R^2O^5	Gruppe VI. RH^2 RO^3	Gruppe VII. RH R^2O^7	Gruppe VIII. — RO^4
1	H=1							
2	Li=7	Be=9,4	B=11	C=12	N=14	O=16	F=19	
3	Na=23	Mg=24	Al=27,3	Si=28	P=31	S=32	Cl=35,5	
4	K=39	Ca=40	—=44	Ti=48	V=51	Cr=52	Mn=55	Fe=56, Co=59, Ni=59, Cu=63.
5	(Cu=63)	Zn=65	—=68	—=72	As=75	Se=78	Br=80	
6	Rb=85	Sr=87	?Yt=88	Zr=90	Nb=94	Mo=96	—=100	Ru=104, Rh=104, Pd=106, Ag=108.
7	(Ag=108)	Cd=112	In=113	Sn=118	Sb=122	Te=125	J=127	
8	Cs=133	Ba=137	?Di=138	?Ce=140	—	—	—	— — — —
9	(—)	—	—	—	—	—	—	
10	—	—	?Er=178	?La=180	Ta=182	W=184	—	Os=195, Ir=197, Pt=198, Au=199.
11	(Au=199)	Hg=200	Tl=204	Pb=207	Bi=208	—	—	
12	—	—	—	Th=231	—	U=240	—	— — — —

(b)

Figure 1.6.1: (a) Dimitri Mendeleev is widely credited with creating (b) the first periodic table of the elements. (credit a: modification of work by Serge Lachinov; credit b: modification of work by "Den fjättrade ankan"/Wikimedia Commons)

By the twentieth century, it became apparent that the periodic relationship involved atomic numbers rather than atomic masses. The modern statement of this relationship, the **periodic law**, is as follows: *the properties of the elements are periodic functions of their atomic numbers*. A modern **periodic table** arranges the elements in increasing order of their atomic numbers and groups atoms with similar properties in the same vertical column (Figure 1.6.2). Each box represents an element and contains its atomic number, symbol, average atomic mass, and (sometimes) name. The elements are arranged in seven horizontal rows, called **periods** or **series**, and 18 vertical columns, called **groups**. Groups are labeled at the top of each column. In the United States, the labels traditionally were numerals with capital letters. However, IUPAC recommends that the numbers 1 through 18 be used, and these labels are more common. For the table to fit on a single page, parts of two of the rows, a total of 14 columns, are usually written below the main body of the table.

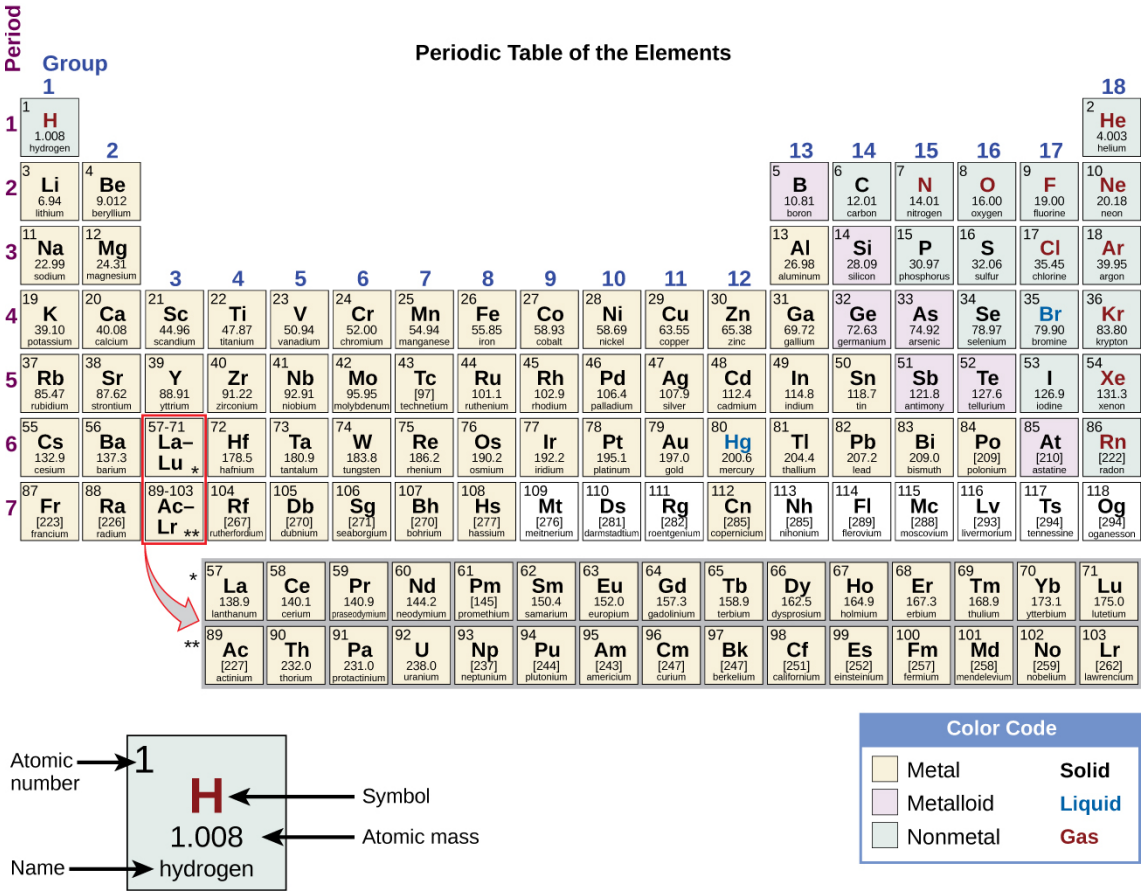


Figure 1.6.2: Elements in the periodic table are organized according to their properties.

Even after the periodic nature of elements and the table itself were widely accepted, gaps remained. Mendeleev had predicted, and others including Henry Moseley had later confirmed, that there should be elements below Manganese in Group 7. German chemists Ida Tacke and Walter Noddack set out to find the elements, a quest being pursued by scientists around the world. Their method was unique in that they did not only consider the properties of manganese, but also the elements horizontally adjacent to the missing elements 43 and 75 on the table. Thus, by investigating ores containing minerals of ruthenium (Ru), tungsten (W), osmium (Os), and so on, they were able to identify naturally occurring elements that helped complete the table. Rhenium, one of their discoveries, was one of the last natural elements to be discovered and is the last stable element to be discovered. (Francium, the last natural element to be discovered, was identified by Marguerite Perey in 1939.)

Many elements differ dramatically in their chemical and physical properties, but some elements are similar in their behaviors. For example, many elements appear shiny, are malleable (able to be deformed without breaking) and ductile (can be drawn into wires), and conduct heat and electricity well. Other elements are not shiny, malleable, or ductile, and are poor conductors of heat and electricity. We can sort the elements into large classes with common properties: **metals** (elements that are shiny, malleable, good conductors of heat and electricity—shaded yellow); **nonmetals** (elements that appear dull, poor conductors of heat and electricity—shaded green); and **metalloids** (elements that conduct heat and electricity moderately well, and possess some properties of metals and some properties of nonmetals—shaded purple).

The elements can also be classified into the main-group elements (or representative elements) in the columns labeled 1, 2, and 13–18; the transition metals in the columns labeled 3–12[3]; and inner transition metals in the two rows at the bottom of the table (the top-row elements are called lanthanides and the bottom-row elements are actinides; Figure 1.6.3). The elements can be subdivided further by more specific properties, such as the composition of the compounds they form. For example, the elements in group 1 (the first column) form compounds that consist of one atom of the element and one atom of hydrogen. These elements (except hydrogen) are known as **alkali metals**, and they all have similar chemical properties. The elements in group 2 (the second column) form compounds consisting of one atom of the element and two atoms of hydrogen: These are called **alkaline earth metals**, with similar properties among members of that group. Other groups with specific names are the **pnictogens** (group 15), **chalcogens** (group 16), halogens (group 17), and the **noble gases** (group 18, also known as inert gases). The groups can also be referred to by

the first element of the group: For example, the chalcogens can be called the oxygen group or oxygen family. Hydrogen is a unique, nonmetallic element with properties similar to both group 1 and group 17 elements. For that reason, hydrogen may be shown at the top of both groups, or by itself.

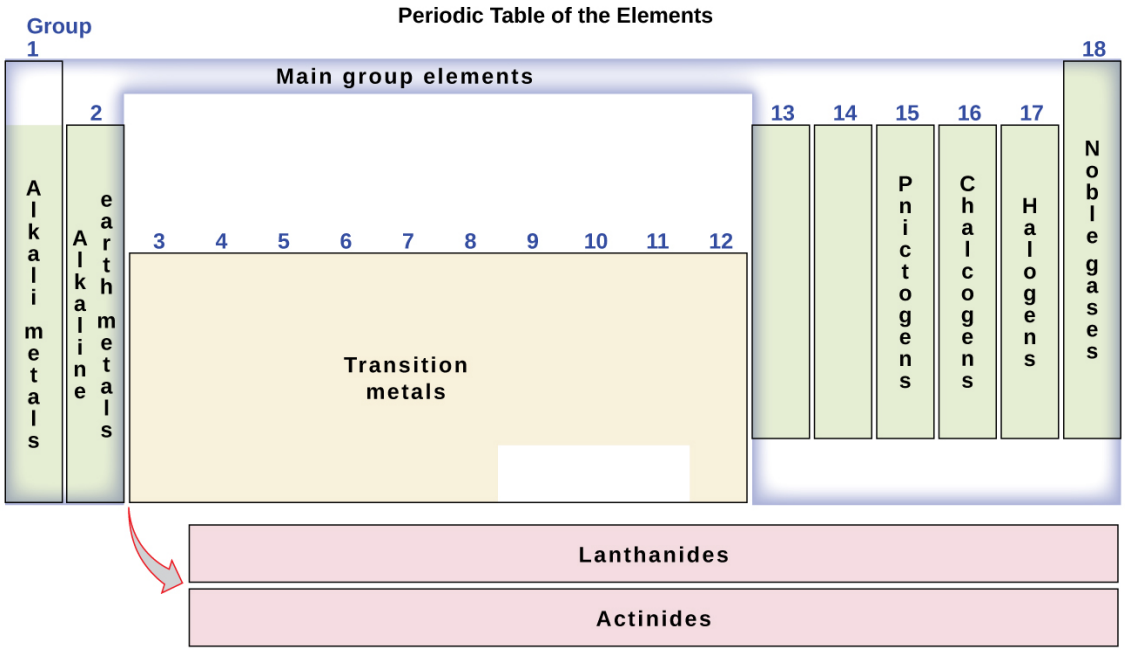


Figure 1.6.3: The periodic table organizes elements with similar properties into groups.

Link to Learning

Click on this link for an interactive periodic table, which you can use to explore the properties of the elements (includes podcasts and videos of each element). You may also want to try this one that shows photos of all the elements.

Example 1.6.1: Naming Groups of Elements

Atoms of each of the following elements are essential for life. Give the group name for the following elements:

a. chlorine
b. calcium
c. sodium
d. sulfur

Solution

The family names are as follows:

a. halogen
b. alkaline earth metal
c. alkali metal
d. chalcogen

Exercise 1.6.1

Give the group name for each of the following elements:

a. krypton
b. selenium
c. barium
d. lithium

Answer

(a) noble gas; (b) chalcogen; (c) alkaline earth metal; (d) alkali metal

As you will learn in your further study of chemistry, elements in groups often behave in a somewhat similar manner. This is partly due to the number of electrons in their outer shell and their similar readiness to bond. These shared properties can have far-ranging implications in nature, science, and medicine. For example, when Gertrude Elion and George Hitchens were investigating ways to interrupt cell and virus replication to fight diseases, they utilized the similarity between sulfur and oxygen (both in Group 16) and their capacity to bond in similar ways. Elion focused on purines, which are key components of DNA and which contain oxygen. She found that by introducing sulfur-based compounds (called purine analogues) that mimic the structure of purines, molecules within DNA would bond to the analogues rather than the "regular" DNA purine. With the normal DNA bonding and structure altered, Elion successfully interrupted cell replication. At its core, the strategy worked because of the similarity between sulfur and oxygen. Her discovery led directly to important treatments for leukemia. Overall, Elion's work with George Hitchens not only led to more treatments, but also changed the entire methodology of drug development. By using specific elements and compounds to target specific aspects of tumor cells, viruses, and bacteria, they laid the groundwork for many of today's most common and important medicines, used to help millions of people each year. They were awarded the Nobel Prize in 1988.

In studying the periodic table, you might have noticed something about the atomic masses of some of the elements. Element 43 (technetium), element 61 (promethium), and most of the elements with atomic number 84 (polonium) and higher have their atomic mass given in square brackets. This is done for elements that consist entirely of unstable, radioactive isotopes (you will learn more about radioactivity in the nuclear chemistry chapter). An average atomic weight cannot be determined for these elements because their radioisotopes may vary significantly in relative abundance, depending on the source, or may not even exist in nature. The number in square brackets is the atomic mass number (an approximate atomic mass) of the most stable isotope of that element.

Footnotes

- 3Per the IUPAC definition, group 12 elements are not transition metals, though they are often referred to as such. Additional details on this group’s elements are provided in a chapter on transition metals and coordination chemistry.

This page titled 1.6: The Periodic Table is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.5: The Periodic Table** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define ionic and molecular (covalent) compounds
- Predict the type of compound formed from elements based on their location within the periodic table
- Determine formulas for simple ionic compounds

In ordinary chemical reactions, the nucleus of each atom (and thus the identity of the element) remains unchanged. Electrons, however, can be added to atoms by transfer from other atoms, lost by transfer to other atoms, or shared with other atoms. The transfer and sharing of electrons among atoms govern the chemistry of the elements. During the formation of some compounds, atoms gain or lose electrons, and form electrically charged particles called ions (Figure 1.7.1).

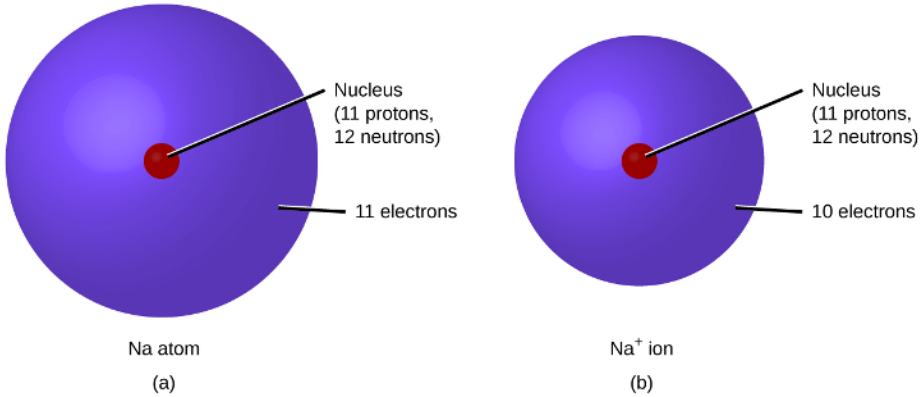


Table 1.7.1: (a) A sodium atom (Na) has equal numbers of protons and electrons (11) and is uncharged. (b) A sodium cation (Na^+) has lost an electron, so it has one more proton (11) than electrons (10), giving it an overall positive charge, signified by a superscripted plus sign.

You can use the periodic table to predict whether an atom will form an anion or a cation, and you can often predict the charge of the resulting ion. Atoms of many main-group metals lose enough electrons to leave them with the same number of electrons as an atom of the preceding noble gas. To illustrate, an atom of an alkali metal (group 1) loses one electron and forms a cation with a 1+ charge; an alkaline earth metal (group 2) loses two electrons and forms a cation with a 2+ charge, and so on. For example, a neutral calcium atom, with 20 protons and 20 electrons, readily loses two electrons. This results in a cation with 20 protons, 18 electrons, and a 2+ charge. It has the same number of electrons as atoms of the preceding noble gas, argon, and is symbolized Ca^{2+}. The name of a metal ion is the same as the name of the metal atom from which it forms, so Ca^{2+} is called a calcium ion.

When atoms of nonmetal elements form ions, they generally gain enough electrons to give them the same number of electrons as an atom of the next noble gas in the periodic table. Atoms of group 17 gain one electron and form anions with a 1− charge; atoms of group 16 gain two electrons and form ions with a 2− charge, and so on. For example, the neutral bromine atom, with 35 protons and 35 electrons, can gain one electron to provide it with 36 electrons. This results in an anion with 35 protons, 36 electrons, and a 1− charge. It has the same number of electrons as atoms of the next noble gas, krypton, and is symbolized Br^-. (A discussion of the theory supporting the favored status of noble gas electron numbers reflected in these predictive rules for ion formation is provided in a later chapter of this text.)

Note the usefulness of the periodic table in predicting likely ion formation and charge (Figure 1.7.2). Moving from the far left to the right on the periodic table, main-group elements tend to form cations with a charge equal to the group number. That is, group 1 elements form 1+ ions; group 2 elements form 2+ ions, and so on. Moving from the far right to the left on the periodic table, elements often form anions with a negative charge equal to the number of groups moved left from the noble gases. For example, group 17 elements (one group left of the noble gases) form 1− ions; group 16 elements (two groups left) form 2− ions, and so on. This trend can be used as a guide in many cases, but its predictive value decreases when moving toward the center of the periodic table. In fact, transition metals and some other metals often exhibit variable charges that are not predictable by their location in the table. For example, copper can form ions with a 1+ or 2+ charge, and iron can form ions with a 2+ or 3+ charge.

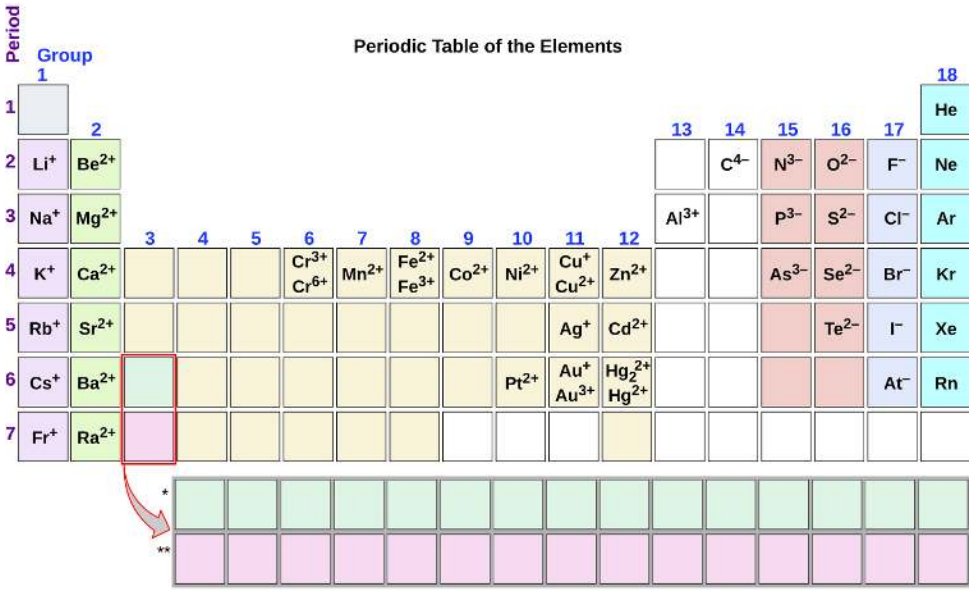


Table 1.7.2: Some elements exhibit a regular pattern of ionic charge when they form ions.

Example 1.7.1: Composition of Ions

An ion found in some compounds used as antiperspirants contains 13 protons and 10 electrons. What is its symbol?

Solution

Because the number of protons remains unchanged when an atom forms an ion, the atomic number of the element must be 13. Knowing this lets us use the periodic table to identify the element as Al (aluminum). The Al atom has lost three electrons and thus has three more positive charges (13) than it has electrons (10). This is the aluminum cation, Al^{3+}.

Exercise 1.7.1

Give the symbol and name for the ion with 34 protons and 36 electrons.

Answer

Se^{2-}, the selenide ion

Example 1.7.2: Formation of Ions

Magnesium and nitrogen react to form an ionic compound. Predict which forms an anion, which forms a cation, and the charges of each ion. Write the symbol for each ion and name them.

Solution

Magnesium's position in the periodic table (group 2) tells us that it is a metal. Metals form positive ions (cations). A magnesium atom must lose two electrons to have the same number electrons as an atom of the previous noble gas, neon. Thus, a magnesium atom will form a cation with two fewer electrons than protons and a charge of 2+. The symbol for the ion is Mg^{2+}, and it is called a magnesium ion.

Nitrogen's position in the periodic table (group 15) reveals that it is a nonmetal. Nonmetals form negative ions (anions). A nitrogen atom must gain three electrons to have the same number of electrons as an atom of the following noble gas, neon. Thus, a nitrogen atom will form an anion with three more electrons than protons and a charge of 3−. The symbol for the ion is N^{3-}, and it is called a nitride ion.

Exercise 1.7.2

Aluminum and carbon react to form an ionic compound. Predict which forms an anion, which forms a cation, and the charges of each ion. Write the symbol for each ion and name them.

Answer

Al will form a cation with a charge of 3+: Al^{3+}, an aluminum ion. Carbon will form an anion with a charge of 4−: C^{4-}, a carbide ion.

The ions that we have discussed so far are called monatomic ions, that is, they are ions formed from only one atom. We also find many polyatomic ions. These ions, which act as discrete units, are electrically charged molecules (a group of bonded atoms with an overall charge). Some of the more important polyatomic ions are listed in Table 1.7.1. Oxyanions are polyatomic ions that contain one or more oxygen atoms. At this point in your study of chemistry, you should memorize the names, formulas, and charges of the most common polyatomic ions. Because you will use them repeatedly, they will soon become familiar.

Table 1.7.1: Common Polyatomic Ions

Name	Formula	Related Acid	Formula
ammonium	NH_4^+		
hydronium	H_3O		
peroxide	O_2^{2-}		
hydroxide	OH^-		
acetate	CH_3COO^-	acetic acid	CH_3COOH
cyanide	CN^-	hydrocyanic acid	HCN
azide	N_3^-	hydrazoic acid	HN_3
carbonate	CO_3^{2-}	carbonic acid	H_2CO_3
bicarbonate	HCO_3^-		
nitrate	NO_3^-	nitric acid	HNO_3
nitrite	NO_2^-	nitrous acid	HNO_2
sulfate	SO_{42}^-	sulfuric acid	H_2SO_4
hydrogen sulfate	HSO_4^-		
sulfite	SO_3^{2-}	sulfurous acid	H_2SO_3
hydrogen sulfite	HSO_3^-		
phosphate	PO_4^{3-}	phosphoric acid	H_3PO_4
hydrogen phosphate	HPO_4^{2-}		
dihydrogen phosphate	$H_2PO_4^-$		
perchlorate	ClO_4^-	perchloric acid	$HClO_4$
chlorate	ClO_3^-	chloric acid	$HClO_3$
chlorite	ClO_2^-	chlorous acid	$HClO_2$
hypochlorite	ClO^-	hypochlorous acid	$HClO$
chromate	CrO_4^{2-}	chromic acid	H_2CrO_4
dichromate	$Cr_2O_7^{2-}$	dichromic acid	$H_2Cr_2O_7$

Name	Formula	Related Acid	Formula
permanganate	MnO_4^-	permanganic acid	$HMnO_4$

Note that there is a system for naming some polyatomic ions; -ate and -ite are suffixes designating polyatomic ions containing more or fewer oxygen atoms. Per- (short for “hyper”) and hypo- (meaning “under”) are prefixes meaning more oxygen atoms than -ate and fewer oxygen atoms than -ite, respectively. For example, perchlorate is ClO_4^-, chlorate is ClO_3^-, chlorite is ClO_2^- and hypochlorite is ClO^-. Unfortunately, the number of oxygen atoms corresponding to a given suffix or prefix is not consistent; for example, nitrate is NO_3^- while sulfate is SO_4^{2-}. This will be covered in more detail in the next module on nomenclature.

The nature of the attractive forces that hold atoms or ions together within a compound is the basis for classifying chemical bonding. When electrons are transferred and ions form, ionic bonds result. Ionic bonds are electrostatic forces of attraction, that is, the attractive forces experienced between objects of opposite electrical charge (in this case, cations and anions). When electrons are “shared” and molecules form, covalent bonds result. Covalent bonds are the attractive forces between the positively charged nuclei of the bonded atoms and one or more pairs of electrons that are located between the atoms. Compounds are classified as ionic or molecular (covalent) on the basis of the bonds present in them.

Ionic Compounds

When an element composed of atoms that readily lose electrons (a metal) reacts with an element composed of atoms that readily gain electrons (a nonmetal), a transfer of electrons usually occurs, producing ions. The compound formed by this transfer is stabilized by the electrostatic attractions (ionic bonds) between the ions of opposite charge present in the compound. For example, when each sodium atom in a sample of sodium metal (group 1) gives up one electron to form a sodium cation, Na^+, and each chlorine atom in a sample of chlorine gas (group 17) accepts one electron to form a chloride anion, Cl^-, the resulting compound, NaCl, is composed of sodium ions and chloride ions in the ratio of one Na^+ ion for each Cl^- ion. Similarly, each calcium atom (group 2) can give up two electrons and transfer one to each of two chlorine atoms to form $CaCl_2$, which is composed of Ca^{2+} and Cl^- ions in the ratio of one Ca^{2+} ion to two Cl^- ions.

A compound that contains ions and is held together by ionic bonds is called an ionic compound. The periodic table can help us recognize many of the compounds that are ionic: When a metal is combined with one or more nonmetals, the compound is usually ionic. This guideline works well for predicting ionic compound formation for most of the compounds typically encountered in an introductory chemistry course. However, it is not always true (for example, aluminum chloride, $AlCl_3$, is not ionic).

You can often recognize ionic compounds because of their properties. Ionic compounds are solids that typically melt at high temperatures and boil at even higher temperatures. For example, sodium chloride melts at 801 °C and boils at 1413 °C. (As a comparison, the molecular compound water melts at 0 °C and boils at 100 °C.) In solid form, an ionic compound is not electrically conductive because its ions are unable to flow (“electricity” is the flow of charged particles). When molten, however, it can conduct electricity because its ions are able to move freely through the liquid (Figure 1.7.3).

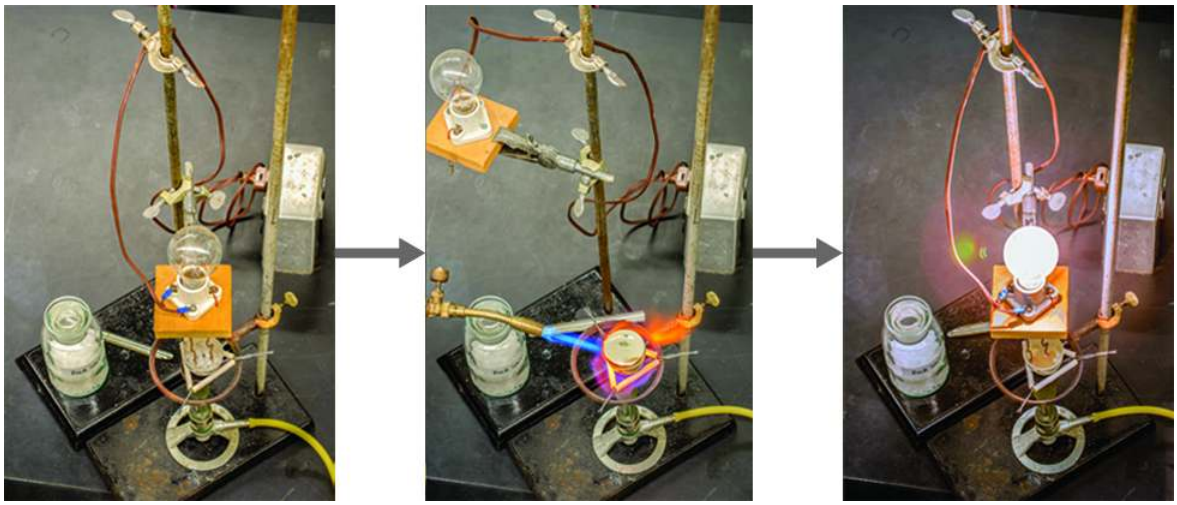


Table 1.7.3: Sodium chloride melts at 801 °C and conducts electricity when molten. (credit: modification of work by Mark Blaser and Matt Evans)

Link to Learning

Watch this video to see a mixture of salts melt and conduct electricity.

In every ionic compound, the total number of positive charges of the cations equals the total number of negative charges of the anions. Thus, ionic compounds are electrically neutral overall, even though they contain positive and negative ions. We can use this observation to help us write the formula of an ionic compound. The formula of an ionic compound must have a ratio of ions such that the numbers of positive and negative charges are equal.

Example 1.7.3: Predicting the Formula of an Ionic Compound

The gemstone sapphire (Figure 1.7.4) is mostly a compound of aluminum and oxygen that contains aluminum cations, Al^{3+}, and oxygen anions, O^{2-}. What is the formula of this compound?



Table 1.7.4: Although pure aluminum oxide is colorless, trace amounts of iron and titanium give blue sapphire its characteristic color. (credit: modification of work by Stanislav Doronenko via Wikipedia)

Solution

Because the ionic compound must be electrically neutral, it must have the same number of positive and negative charges. Two aluminum ions, each with a charge of 3+, would give us six positive charges, and three oxide ions, each with a charge of 2−, would give us six negative charges. The formula would be Al_2O_3.

Exercise 1.7.3

Predict the formula of the ionic compound formed between the sodium cation, Na^+, and the sulfide anion, S^{2-}.

Answer

Na_2S

Many ionic compounds contain polyatomic ions (Table 1.7.1) as the cation, the anion, or both. As with simple ionic compounds, these compounds must also be electrically neutral, so their formulas can be predicted by treating the polyatomic ions as discrete units. We use parentheses in a formula to indicate a group of atoms that behave as a unit. For example, the formula for calcium phosphate, one of the minerals in our bones, is $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. This formula indicates that there are three calcium ions (Ca^{2+}) for every two phosphate (PO_4^{3-}) groups. The PO_4^{3-} groups are discrete units, each consisting of one phosphorus atom and four oxygen atoms, and having an overall charge of 3−. The compound is electrically neutral, and its formula shows a total count of three Ca, two P, and eight O atoms.

Example 1.7.4: Predicting the Formula of a Compound with a Polyatomic Anion

Baking powder contains calcium dihydrogen phosphate, an ionic compound composed of the ions Ca^{2+} and $H_2PO_4^-$. What is the formula of this compound?

Solution

The positive and negative charges must balance, and this ionic compound must be electrically neutral. Thus, we must have two negative charges to balance the 2+ charge of the calcium ion. This requires a ratio of one Ca^{2+} ion to two $H_2PO_4^-$ ions. We

designate this by enclosing the formula for the dihydrogen phosphate ion in parentheses and adding a subscript 2. The formula is $Ca(H_2PO_4)_2$.

? Exercise 1.7.4

Predict the formula of the ionic compound formed between the lithium ion and the peroxide ion, O_2^{2-} (Hint: Use the periodic table to predict the sign and the charge on the lithium ion.)

Answer

Li_2O_2

Because an ionic compound is not made up of single, discrete molecules, it may not be properly symbolized using a *molecular* formula. Instead, ionic compounds must be symbolized by a formula indicating the relative numbers of its constituent ions. For compounds containing only monatomic ions (such as $NaCl$) and for many compounds containing polyatomic ions (such as $CaSO_4$), these formulas are just the empirical formulas introduced earlier in this chapter. However, the formulas for some ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions are not empirical formulas. For example, the ionic compound sodium oxalate is comprised of Na^+ and $C_2O_4^{2-}$ ions combined in a 2:1 ratio, and its formula is written as $Na_2C_2O_4$. The subscripts in this formula are not the smallest-possible whole numbers, as each can be divided by 2 to yield the empirical formula, $NaCO_2$. This is not the accepted formula for sodium oxalate, however, as it does not accurately represent the compound's polyatomic anion, $C_2O_4^{2-}$.

Molecular Compounds

Many compounds do not contain ions but instead consist solely of discrete, neutral molecules. These molecular compounds (covalent compounds) result when atoms share, rather than transfer (gain or lose), electrons. Covalent bonding is an important and extensive concept in chemistry, and it will be treated in considerable detail in a later chapter of this text. We can often identify molecular compounds on the basis of their physical properties. Under normal conditions, molecular compounds often exist as gases, low-boiling liquids, and low-melting solids, although many important exceptions exist.

Whereas ionic compounds are usually formed when a metal and a nonmetal combine, covalent compounds are usually formed by a combination of nonmetals. Thus, the periodic table can help us recognize many of the compounds that are covalent. While we can use the positions of a compound's elements in the periodic table to predict whether it is ionic or covalent at this point in our study of chemistry, you should be aware that this is a very simplistic approach that does not account for a number of interesting exceptions. Shades of gray exist between ionic and molecular compounds, and you'll learn more about those later.

✓ Example 1.7.5: Predicting the Type of Bonding in Compounds

Predict whether the following compounds are ionic or molecular:

a. KI, the compound used as a source of iodine in table salt
b. H_2O_2, the bleach and disinfectant hydrogen peroxide
c. $CHCl_3$, the anesthetic chloroform
d. Li_2CO_3, a source of lithium in antidepressants

Solution

a. Potassium (group 1) is a metal, and iodine (group 17) is a nonmetal; KI is predicted to be ionic.
b. Hydrogen (group 1) is a nonmetal, and oxygen (group 16) is a nonmetal; H_2O_2 is predicted to be molecular.
c. Carbon (group 14) is a nonmetal, hydrogen (group 1) is a nonmetal, and chlorine (group 17) is a nonmetal; $CHCl_3$ is predicted to be molecular.
d. Lithium (group 1) is a metal, and carbonate is a polyatomic ion; Li_2CO_3 is predicted to be ionic.

? Exercise 1.7.5

Using the periodic table, predict whether the following compounds are ionic or covalent:

a. SO_2
b. CaF_2

c. N_2H_4
d. $Al_2(SO_4)_3$

Answer

a. molecular
b. ionic
c. molecular
d. ionic

This page titled 1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.6: Molecular and Ionic Compounds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.8: Chemical Nomenclature

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Derive names for common types of inorganic compounds using a systematic approach

Nomenclature, a collection of rules for naming things, is important in science and in many other situations. This module describes an approach that is used to name simple ionic and molecular compounds, such as NaCl, $CaCO_3$, and N_2O_4. The simplest of these are **binary compounds**, those containing only two elements, but we will also consider how to name ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions, and one specific, very important class of compounds known as acids (subsequent chapters in this text will focus on these compounds in great detail). We will limit our attention here to inorganic compounds, compounds that are composed principally of elements other than carbon, and will follow the nomenclature guidelines proposed by IUPAC. The rules for organic compounds, in which carbon is the principle element, will be treated in a later chapter on organic chemistry.

Ionic Compounds

To name an inorganic compound, we need to consider the answers to several questions. First, is the compound ionic or molecular? If the compound is ionic, does the metal form ions of only one type (fixed charge) or more than one type (variable charge)? Are the ions monatomic or polyatomic? If the compound is molecular, does it contain hydrogen? If so, does it also contain oxygen? From the answers we derive, we place the compound in an appropriate category and then name it accordingly.

Compounds Containing Only Monatomic Ions

The name of a binary compound containing monatomic ions consists of the name of the cation (the name of the metal) followed by the name of the anion (the name of the nonmetallic element with its ending replaced by the suffix *–ide*). Some examples are given in Table 1.8.1.

Table 1.8.1: Names of Some Ionic Compounds

NaCl, sodium chloride	Na_2O, sodium oxide
KBr, potassium bromide	CdS, cadmium sulfide
CaI_2, calcium iodide	Mg_3N_2, magnesium nitride
CsF, cesium fluoride	Ca_3P_2, calcium phosphide
LiCl, lithium chloride	Al_4C_3, aluminum carbide

Compounds Containing Polyatomic Ions

Compounds containing polyatomic ions are named similarly to those containing only monatomic ions, i.e. by naming first the cation and then the anion. Examples are shown in Table 1.8.2.

Table 1.8.2: Names of Some Polyatomic Ionic Compounds

$KC_2H_3O_2$, potassium acetate	NH_4Cl, ammonium chloride
$NaHCO_3$, sodium bicarbonate	$CaSO_4$, calcium sulfate
$Al_2(CO_3)_3$, aluminum carbonate	$Mg_3(PO_4)_2$, magnesium phosphate

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Ionic Compounds in Your Cabinet

Every day you encounter and use a large number of ionic compounds. Some of these compounds, where they are found, and what they are used for are listed in Table 1.8.3. Look at the label or ingredients list on the various products that you use during the next few days, and see if you run into any of those in this table, or find other ionic compounds that you could now name or write as a formula.

Table 1.8.3: Everyday Ionic Compounds

Ionic Compound	Use
NaCl, sodium chloride	ordinary table salt
KI, potassium iodide	added to “iodized” salt for thyroid health
NaF, sodium fluoride	ingredient in toothpaste
$NaHCO_3$, sodium bicarbonate	baking soda; used in cooking (and as antacid)
Na_2CO_3, sodium carbonate	washing soda; used in cleaning agents
NaOCl, sodium hypochlorite	active ingredient in household bleach
$CaCO_3$ calcium carbonate	ingredient in antacids
$Mg(OH)_2$, magnesium hydroxide	ingredient in antacids
$Al(OH)_3$, aluminum hydroxide	ingredient in antacids
NaOH, sodium hydroxide	lye; used as drain cleaner
K_3PO_4, potassium phosphate	food additive (many purposes)
$MgSO_4$, magnesium sulfate	added to purified water
Na_2HPO_4, sodium hydrogen phosphate	anti-caking agent; used in powdered products
Na_2SO_3, sodium sulfite	preservative

Compounds Containing a Metal Ion with a Variable Charge

Most of the transition metals and some main group metals can form two or more cations with different charges. Compounds of these metals with nonmetals are named with the same method as compounds in the first category, except the charge of the metal ion is specified by a Roman numeral in parentheses after the name of the metal. The charge of the metal ion is determined from the formula of the compound and the charge of the anion. For example, consider binary ionic compounds of iron and chlorine. Iron typically exhibits a charge of either 2+ or 3+ (see Figure 2.29), and the two corresponding compound formulas are $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$. The simplest name, “iron chloride,” will, in this case, be ambiguous, as it does not distinguish between these two compounds. In cases like this, the charge of the metal ion is included as a Roman numeral in parentheses immediately following the metal name. These two compounds are then unambiguously named iron(II) chloride and iron(III) chloride, respectively. Other examples are provided in Table 1.8.4.

Table 1.8.4: Some Ionic Compounds with Variably Charged Metal Ions

Compound	Name
$FeCl_2$	iron(II) chloride
$FeCl_3$	iron(III) chloride
Hg_2O	mercury(I) oxide
HgO	mercury(II) oxide
SnF_2	tin(II) fluoride
SnF_4	tin(IV) fluoride

Out-of-date nomenclature used the suffixes *–ic* and *–ous* to designate metals with higher and lower charges, respectively: Iron(III) chloride, $FeCl_3$, was previously called ferric chloride, and iron(II) chloride, $FeCl_2$, was known as ferrous chloride. Though this naming convention has been largely abandoned by the scientific community, it remains in use by some segments of industry. For example, you may see the words *stannous fluoride* on a tube of toothpaste. This represents the formula SnF_2, which is more

properly named tin(II) fluoride. The other fluoride of tin is SnF_4, which was previously called stannic fluoride but is now named tin(IV) fluoride.

Ionic Hydrates

Ionic compounds that contain water molecules as integral components of their crystals are called **hydrates**. The name for an ionic hydrate is derived by adding a term to the name for the anhydrous (meaning "not hydrated") compound that indicates the number of water molecules associated with each formula unit of the compound. The added word begins with a Greek prefix denoting the number of water molecules (see Table 1.8.5) and ends with "hydrate." For example, the anhydrous compound copper(II) sulfate also exists as a hydrate containing five water molecules and named copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate. Washing soda is the common name for a hydrate of sodium carbonate containing 10 water molecules; the systematic name is sodium carbonate decahydrate.

Formulas for ionic hydrates are written by appending a vertically centered dot, a coefficient representing the number of water molecules, and the formula for water. The two examples mentioned in the previous paragraph are represented by the formulas

$$\text{copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate} \quad \mathrm{CuSO_4 \cdot 5\,H_2O}$$

$$\text{sodium carbonate decahydrate} \quad \mathrm{Na_2CO_3 \cdot 10\,H_2O}$$

Table 1.8.5: Nomenclature Prefixes

Number	Prefix	Number	Prefix
1 (sometimes omitted)	mono-	6	hexa-
2	di-	7	hepta-
3	tri-	8	octa-
4	tetra-	9	nona-
5	penta-	10	deca-

Example 1.8.1: Naming Ionic Compounds

Name the following ionic compounds

a. Fe_2S_3
b. CuSe
c. GaN
d. $MgSO_4{\cdot}7H_2O$
e. $Ti_2(SO_4)_3$

Solution

The anions in these compounds have a fixed negative charge (S^{2-}, Se^{2-}, N^{3-}, and and the compounds must be neutral. Because the total number of positive charges in each compound must equal the total number of negative charges, the positive ions must be Fe^{3+}, Cu^{2+}, Ga^{3+}, Mg^{2+}, and Ti^{3+}. These charges are used in the names of the metal ions:

a. iron(III) sulfide
b. copper(II) selenide
c. gallium(III) nitride
d. magnesium sulfate heptahydrate
e. titanium(III) sulfate

Exercise 1.8.1

Write the formulas of the following ionic compounds:

a. chromium(III) phosphide
b. mercury(II) sulfide
c. manganese(II) phosphate

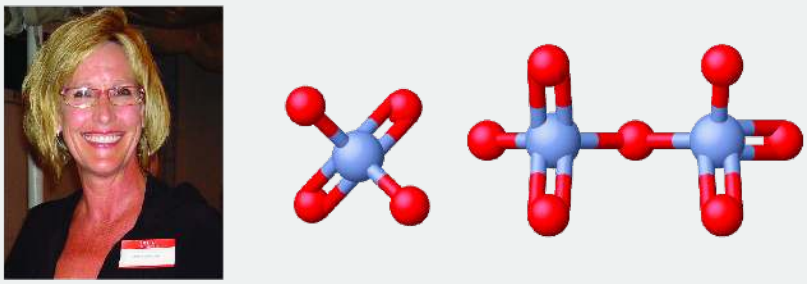
d. copper(I) oxide
e. iron(III) chloride dihydrate

Answer

(a) CrP; (b) HgS; (c) $Mn_3(PO_4)_2$; (d) Cu_2O; (e) $FeCl_3 \cdot 2H_2O$

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Erin Brockovich and Chromium Contamination

In the early 1990s, legal file clerk Erin Brockovich (Figure 1.8.1) discovered a high rate of serious illnesses in the small town of Hinckley, California. Her investigation eventually linked the illnesses to groundwater contaminated by Cr(VI) used by Pacific Gas & Electric (PG&E) to fight corrosion in a nearby natural gas pipeline. As dramatized in the film *Erin Brockovich* (for which Julia Roberts won an Oscar), Erin and lawyer Edward Masry sued PG&E for contaminating the water near Hinckley in 1993. The settlement they won in 1996—$333 million—was the largest amount ever awarded for a direct-action lawsuit in the US at that time.



(a) (b)

Figure 1.8.1: (a) Erin Brockovich found that Cr(VI), used by PG&E, had contaminated the Hinckley, California, water supply. (b) The Cr(VI) ion is often present in water as the polyatomic ions chromate, (left), and dichromate, (right).

Chromium compounds are widely used in industry, such as for chrome plating, in dye-making, as preservatives, and to prevent corrosion in cooling tower water, as occurred near Hinckley. In the environment, chromium exists primarily in either the Cr(III) or Cr(VI) forms. Cr(III), an ingredient of many vitamin and nutritional supplements, forms compounds that are not very soluble in water, and it has low toxicity. But Cr(VI) is much more toxic and forms compounds that are reasonably soluble in water. Exposure to small amounts of Cr(VI) can lead to damage of the respiratory, gastrointestinal, and immune systems, as well as the kidneys, liver, blood, and skin.

Despite cleanup efforts, Cr(VI) groundwater contamination remains a problem in Hinckley and other locations across the globe. A 2010 study by the Environmental Working Group found that of 35 US cities tested, 31 had higher levels of Cr(VI) in their tap water than the public health goal of 0.02 parts per billion set by the California Environmental Protection Agency.

Molecular (Covalent) Compounds

The bonding characteristics of inorganic molecular compounds are different from ionic compounds, and they are named using a different system as well. The charges of cations and anions dictate their ratios in ionic compounds, so specifying the names of the ions provides sufficient information to determine chemical formulas. However, because covalent bonding allows for significant variation in the combination ratios of the atoms in a molecule, the names for molecular compounds must explicitly identify these ratios.

Compounds Composed of Two Elements

When two nonmetallic elements form a molecular compound, several combination ratios are often possible. For example, carbon and oxygen can form the compounds CO and CO_2. Since these are different substances with different properties, they cannot both have the same name (they cannot both be called carbon oxide). To deal with this situation, we use a naming method that is somewhat similar to that used for ionic compounds, but with added prefixes to specify the numbers of atoms of each element. The name of the more metallic element (the one farther to the left and/or bottom of the periodic table) is first, followed by the name of the more nonmetallic element (the one farther to the right and/or top) with its ending changed to the suffix *–ide*. The numbers of atoms of each element are designated by the Greek prefixes shown in Table 1.8.5.

When only one atom of the first element is present, the prefix *mono-* is usually deleted from that part. Thus, CO is named carbon monoxide, and CO_2 is called carbon dioxide. When two vowels are adjacent, the *a* in the Greek prefix is usually dropped. Some other examples are shown in Table 1.8.6.

Table 1.8.6: Names of Some Molecular Compounds Composed of Two Elements

Compound	Name	Compound	Name
SO_2	sulfur dioxide	BCl_3	boron trichloride
SO_3	sulfur trioxide	SF_6	sulfur hexafluoride
NO_2	nitrogen dioxide	PF_5	phosphorus pentafluoride
N_2O_4	dinitrogen tetroxide	P_4O_{10}	tetraphosphorus decaoxide
N_2O_5	dinitrogen pentoxide	IF_7	iodine heptafluoride

There are a few common names that you will encounter as you continue your study of chemistry. For example, although NO is often called nitric oxide, its proper name is nitrogen monoxide. Similarly, N_2O is known as nitrous oxide even though our rules would specify the name dinitrogen monoxide. (And H_2O is usually called water, not dihydrogen monoxide.) You should commit to memory the common names of compounds as you encounter them.

Example 1.8.2: Naming Covalent Compounds

Name the following covalent compounds:

a. SF_6
b. N_2O_3
c. Cl_2O_7
d. P_4O_6

Solution

Because these compounds consist solely of nonmetals, we use prefixes to designate the number of atoms of each element:

a. sulfur hexafluoride
b. dinitrogen trioxide
c. dichlorine heptoxide
d. tetraphosphorus hexoxide

Exercise 1.8.2

Write the formulas for the following compounds:

a. phosphorus pentachloride
b. dinitrogen monoxide
c. iodine heptafluoride
d. carbon tetrachloride

Answer

(a) PCl_5; (b) N_2O; (c) IF_7; (d) CCl_4

Link to Learning

The following website provides practice with naming chemical compounds and writing chemical formulas. You can choose binary, polyatomic, and variable charge ionic compounds, as well as molecular compounds.

Binary Acids

Some compounds containing hydrogen are members of an important class of substances known as **acids**. The chemistry of these compounds is explored in more detail in later chapters of this text, but for now, it will suffice to note that many acids release hydrogen ions, H^+, when dissolved in water. To denote this distinct chemical property, a mixture of water with an acid is given a name derived from the compound's name. If the compound is a binary acid (comprised of hydrogen and one other nonmetallic element):

1. The word "hydrogen" is changed to the prefix *hydro-*
2. The other nonmetallic element name is modified by adding the suffix *-ic*
3. The word "acid" is added as a second word

For example, when the gas HCl (hydrogen chloride) is dissolved in water, the solution is called *hydrochloric acid*. Several other examples of this nomenclature are shown in Table 1.8.7.

Table 1.8.7: Names of Some Simple Acids

Name of Gas	Name of Acid
HF(*g*), hydrogen fluoride	HF(*aq*), hydrofluoric acid
HCl(*g*), hydrogen chloride	HCl(*aq*), hydrochloric acid
HBr(*g*), hydrogen bromide	HBr(*aq*), hydrobromic acid
HI(*g*), hydrogen iodide	HI(*aq*), hydroiodic acid
H_2S(*g*), hydrogen sulfide	H_2S(*aq*), hydrosulfuric acid

Oxyacids

Many compounds containing three or more elements (such as organic compounds or coordination compounds) are subject to specialized nomenclature rules that you will learn later. However, we will briefly discuss the important compounds known as **oxyacids**, compounds that contain hydrogen, oxygen, and at least one other element, and are bonded in such a way as to impart acidic properties to the compound (you will learn the details of this in a later chapter). Typical oxyacids consist of hydrogen combined with a polyatomic, oxygen-containing ion. To name oxyacids:

1. Omit "hydrogen"
2. Start with the root name of the anion
3. Replace *–ate* with *–ic*, or *–ite* with *–ous*
4. Add "acid"

For example, consider H_2CO_3 (which you might be tempted to call "hydrogen carbonate"). To name this correctly, "hydrogen" is omitted; the *–ate* of carbonate is replace with *–ic*; and acid is added—so its name is carbonic acid. Other examples are given in Table 1.8.8. There are some exceptions to the general naming method (e.g., H_2SO_4 is called sulfuric acid, not sulfic acid, and H_2SO_3 is sulfurous, not sulfous, acid).

Table 1.8.8: Names of Common Oxyacids

Formula	Anion Name	Acid Name
$HC_2H_3O_2$	acetate	acetic acid
HNO_3	nitrate	nitric acid
HNO_2	nitrite	nitrous acid
$HClO_4$	perchlorate	perchloric acid
H_2CO_3	carbonate	carbonic acid
H_2SO_4	sulfate	sulfuric acid
H_2SO_3	sulfite	sulfurous acid

Formula	Anion Name	Acid Name
H_3PO_4	phosphate	phosphoric acid

This page titled 1.8: Chemical Nomenclature is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.7: Chemical Nomenclature** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

1.9: Key Terms

actinide | inner transition metal in the bottom of the bottom two rows of the periodic table

alkali metal | element in group 1

alkaline earth metal | element in group 2

alpha particle (α particle) | positively charged particle consisting of two protons and two neutrons

anion | negatively charged atom or molecule (contains more electrons than protons)

atomic mass | average mass of atoms of an element, expressed in amu

atomic mass unit (amu) | (also, unified atomic mass unit, u, or Dalton, Da) unit of mass equal to of the mass of a ^{12}C atom

atomic number (Z) | number of protons in the nucleus of an atom

binary acid | compound that contains hydrogen and one other element, bonded in a way that imparts acidic properties to the compound (ability to release H^+ ions when dissolved in water)

binary compound | compound containing two different elements.

cation | positively charged atom or molecule (contains fewer electrons than protons)

chalcogen | element in group 16

chemical symbol | one-, two-, or three-letter abbreviation used to represent an element or its atoms

covalent bond | attractive force between the nuclei of a molecule's atoms and pairs of electrons between the atoms

covalent compound | (also, molecular compound) composed of molecules formed by atoms of two or more different elements

Dalton (Da) | alternative unit equivalent to the atomic mass unit

Dalton's atomic theory | set of postulates that established the fundamental properties of atoms

electron | negatively charged, subatomic particle of relatively low mass located outside the nucleus

empirical formula | formula showing the composition of a compound given as the simplest whole-number ratio of atoms

fundamental unit of charge | (also called the elementary charge) equals the magnitude of the charge of an electron (e) with $e = 1.602\ 10^{-19}$ C

group | vertical column of the periodic table

halogen | element in group 17

hydrate | compound containing one or more water molecules bound within its crystals

inert gas | (also, noble gas) element in group 18

inner transition metal | (also, lanthanide or actinide) element in the bottom two rows; if in the first row, also called lanthanide, or if in the second row, also called actinide

ion | electrically charged atom or molecule (contains unequal numbers of protons and electrons)

ionic bond | electrostatic forces of attraction between the oppositely charged ions of an ionic compound

ionic compound | compound composed of cations and anions combined in ratios, yielding an electrically neutral substance

isomers | compounds with the same chemical formula but different structures

isotopes | atoms that contain the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons

lanthanide | inner transition metal in the top of the bottom two rows of the periodic table

law of constant composition | (also, law of definite proportions) all samples of a pure compound contain the same elements in the same proportions by mass

law of definite proportions | (also, law of constant composition) all samples of a pure compound contain the same elements in the same proportions by mass

law of multiple proportions | when two elements react to form more than one compound, a fixed mass of one element will react with masses of the other element in a ratio of small whole numbers

main-group element | (also, representative element) element in groups 1, 2, and 13–18

mass number (A) | sum of the numbers of neutrons and protons in the nucleus of an atom

metal | element that is shiny, malleable, good conductor of heat and electricity

metalloid | element that conducts heat and electricity moderately well, and possesses some properties of metals and some properties of nonmetals

molecular compound | (also, covalent compound) composed of molecules formed by atoms of two or more different elements

molecular formula | formula indicating the composition of a molecule of a compound and giving the actual number of atoms of each element in a molecule of the compound.

monatomic ion | ion composed of a single atom

neutron | uncharged, subatomic particle located in the nucleus

noble gas | (also, inert gas) element in group 18

nomenclature | system of rules for naming objects of interest

nonmetal | element that appears dull, poor conductor of heat and electricity

nucleus | massive, positively charged center of an atom made up of protons and neutrons

oxyacid | compound that contains hydrogen, oxygen, and one other element, bonded in a way that imparts acidic properties to the compound (ability to release H^+ ions when dissolved in water)

oxyanion | polyatomic anion composed of a central atom bonded to oxygen atoms

period | (also, series) horizontal row of the periodic table

periodic law | properties of the elements are periodic function of their atomic numbers.

periodic table | table of the elements that places elements with similar chemical properties close together

pnictogen | element in group 15

polyatomic ion | ion composed of more than one atom

proton | positively charged, subatomic particle located in the nucleus

representative element | (also, main-group element) element in columns 1, 2, and 12–18

series | (also, period) horizontal row of the period table

spatial isomers | compounds in which the relative orientations of the atoms in space differ

structural formula | shows the atoms in a molecule and how they are connected

structural isomer | one of two substances that have the same molecular formula but different physical and chemical properties because their atoms are bonded differently

transition metal | element in groups 3–12 (more strictly defined, 3–11; see chapter on transition metals and coordination chemistry)

unified atomic mass unit (u) | alternative unit equivalent to the atomic mass unit

---

1.9: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **2.8: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

1.10: Key Equations

1.10: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **2.9: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

1.11: Summary

The ancient Greeks proposed that matter consists of extremely small particles called atoms. Dalton postulated that each element has a characteristic type of atom that differs in properties from atoms of all other elements, and that atoms of different elements can combine in fixed, small, whole-number ratios to form compounds. Samples of a particular compound all have the same elemental proportions by mass. When two elements form different compounds, a given mass of one element will combine with masses of the other element in a small, whole-number ratio. During any chemical change, atoms are neither created nor destroyed.

Although no one has actually seen the inside of an atom, experiments have demonstrated much about atomic structure. Thomson's cathode ray tube showed that atoms contain small, negatively charged particles called electrons. Millikan discovered that there is a fundamental electric charge—the charge of an electron. Rutherford's gold foil experiment showed that atoms have a small, dense, positively charged nucleus; the positively charged particles within the nucleus are called protons. Chadwick discovered that the nucleus also contains neutral particles called neutrons. Soddy demonstrated that atoms of the same element can differ in mass; these are called isotopes.

An atom consists of a small, positively charged nucleus surrounded by electrons. The nucleus contains protons and neutrons; its diameter is about 100,000 times smaller than that of the atom. The mass of one atom is usually expressed in atomic mass units (amu), which is referred to as the atomic mass. An amu is defined as exactly of the mass of a carbon-12 atom and is equal to 1.6605 10^{-24} g.

Protons are relatively heavy particles with a charge of 1+ and a mass of 1.0073 amu. Neutrons are relatively heavy particles with no charge and a mass of 1.0087 amu. Electrons are light particles with a charge of 1− and a mass of 0.00055 amu. The number of protons in the nucleus is called the atomic number (Z) and is the property that defines an atom's elemental identity. The sum of the numbers of protons and neutrons in the nucleus is called the mass number and, expressed in amu, is approximately equal to the mass of the atom. An atom is neutral when it contains equal numbers of electrons and protons.

Isotopes of an element are atoms with the same atomic number but different mass numbers; isotopes of an element, therefore, differ from each other only in the number of neutrons within the nucleus. When a naturally occurring element is composed of several isotopes, the atomic mass of the element represents the average of the masses of the isotopes involved. A chemical symbol identifies the atoms in a substance using symbols, which are one-, two-, or three-letter abbreviations for the atoms.

A molecular formula uses chemical symbols and subscripts to indicate the exact numbers of different atoms in a molecule or compound. An empirical formula gives the simplest, whole-number ratio of atoms in a compound. A structural formula indicates the bonding arrangement of the atoms in the molecule. Ball-and-stick and space-filling models show the geometric arrangement of atoms in a molecule. Isomers are compounds with the same molecular formula but different arrangements of atoms.

The discovery of the periodic recurrence of similar properties among the elements led to the formulation of the periodic table, in which the elements are arranged in order of increasing atomic number in rows known as periods and columns known as groups. Elements in the same group of the periodic table have similar chemical properties. Elements can be classified as metals, metalloids, and nonmetals, or as a main-group elements, transition metals, and inner transition metals. Groups are numbered 1–18 from left to right. The elements in group 1 are known as the alkali metals; those in group 2 are the alkaline earth metals; those in 15 are the pnictogens; those in 16 are the chalcogens; those in 17 are the halogens; and those in 18 are the noble gases.

Metals (particularly those in groups 1 and 2) tend to lose the number of electrons that would leave them with the same number of electrons as in the preceding noble gas in the periodic table. By this means, a positively charged ion is formed. Similarly, nonmetals (especially those in groups 16 and 17, and, to a lesser extent, those in Group 15) can gain the number of electrons needed to provide atoms with the same number of electrons as in the next noble gas in the periodic table. Thus, nonmetals tend to form negative ions. Positively charged ions are called cations, and negatively charged ions are called anions. Ions can be either monatomic (containing only one atom) or polyatomic (containing more than one atom).

Compounds that contain ions are called ionic compounds. Ionic compounds generally form from metals and nonmetals. Compounds that do not contain ions, but instead consist of atoms bonded tightly together in molecules (uncharged groups of atoms that behave as a single unit), are called covalent compounds. Covalent compounds usually form from two nonmetals.

Chemists use nomenclature rules to clearly name compounds. Ionic and molecular compounds are named using somewhat-different methods. Binary ionic compounds typically consist of a metal and a nonmetal. The name of the metal is written first, followed by the name of the nonmetal with its ending changed to *–ide*. For example, K_2O is called potassium oxide. If the metal can form ions with different charges, a Roman numeral in parentheses follows the name of the metal to specify its charge. Thus, $FeCl_2$ is iron(II)

chloride and $FeCl_3$ is iron(III) chloride. Some compounds contain polyatomic ions; the names of common polyatomic ions should be memorized. Molecular compounds can form compounds with different ratios of their elements, so prefixes are used to specify the numbers of atoms of each element in a molecule of the compound. Examples include SF_6, sulfur hexafluoride, and N_2O_4, dinitrogen tetroxide. Acids are an important class of compounds containing hydrogen and having special nomenclature rules. Binary acids are named using the prefix *hydro-*, changing the *–ide* suffix to *–ic*, and adding "acid;" HCl is hydrochloric acid. Oxyacids are named by changing the ending of the anion (*–ate* to *–ic* and *–ite* to *–ous*), and adding "acid;" H_2CO_3 is carbonic acid.

1.11: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **2.10: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

1.12: Exercises

1.

In the following drawing, the green spheres represent atoms of a certain element. The purple spheres represent atoms of another element. If the spheres of different elements touch, they are part of a single unit of a compound. The following chemical change represented by these spheres may violate one of the ideas of Dalton's atomic theory. Which one?



2.

Which postulate of Dalton's theory is consistent with the following observation concerning the weights of reactants and products? When 100 grams of solid calcium carbonate is heated, 44 grams of carbon dioxide and 56 grams of calcium oxide are produced.

3.

Identify the postulate of Dalton's theory that is violated by the following observations: 59.95% of one sample of titanium dioxide is titanium; 60.10% of a different sample of titanium dioxide is titanium.

4.

Samples of compound X, Y, and Z are analyzed, with results shown here.

Compound	Description	Mass of Carbon	Mass of Hydrogen
X	clear, colorless, liquid with strong odor	1.776 g	0.148 g
Y	clear, colorless, liquid with strong odor	1.974 g	0.329 g
Z	clear, colorless, liquid with strong odor	7.812 g	0.651 g

Do these data provide example(s) of the law of definite proportions, the law of multiple proportions, neither, or both? What do these data tell you about compounds X, Y, and Z?

5.

The existence of isotopes violates one of the original ideas of Dalton's atomic theory. Which one?

6.

How are electrons and protons similar? How are they different?

7.

How are protons and neutrons similar? How are they different?

8.

Predict and test the behavior of α particles fired at a "plum pudding" model atom.

a. Predict the paths taken by α particles that are fired at atoms with a Thomson's plum pudding model structure. Explain why you expect the α particles to take these paths.
b. If α particles of higher energy than those in (a) are fired at plum pudding atoms, predict how their paths will differ from the lower-energy α particle paths. Explain your reasoning.
c. Now test your predictions from (a) and (b). Open the Rutherford Scattering simulation and select the "Plum Pudding Atom" tab. Set "Alpha Particles Energy" to "min," and select "show traces." Click on the gun to start firing α particles. Does this match your prediction from (a)? If not, explain why the actual path would be that shown in the simulation. Hit the pause button, or "Reset All." Set "Alpha Particles Energy" to "max," and start firing α particles. Does this match your prediction from (b)? If not, explain the effect of increased energy on the actual paths as shown in the simulation.

9.

Predict and test the behavior of α particles fired at a Rutherford atom model.

a. Predict the paths taken by α particles that are fired at atoms with a Rutherford atom model structure. Explain why you expect the α particles to take these paths.
b. If α particles of higher energy than those in (a) are fired at Rutherford atoms, predict how their paths will differ from the lower-energy α particle paths. Explain your reasoning.
c. Predict how the paths taken by the α particles will differ if they are fired at Rutherford atoms of elements other than gold. What factor do you expect to cause this difference in paths, and why?
d. Now test your predictions from (a), (b), and (c). Open the Rutherford Scattering simulation and select the "Rutherford Atom" tab. Due to the scale of the simulation, it is best to start with a small nucleus, so select "20" for both protons and neutrons, "min" for energy, show traces, and then start firing α particles. Does this match your prediction from (a)? If not, explain why the actual path would be that shown in the simulation. Pause or reset, set energy to "max," and start firing α particles. Does this match your prediction from (b)? If not, explain the effect of increased energy on the actual path as shown in the simulation. Pause or reset, select "40" for both protons and neutrons, "min" for energy, show traces, and fire away. Does this match your prediction from (c)? If not, explain why the actual path would be that shown in the simulation. Repeat this with larger numbers of protons and neutrons. What generalization can you make regarding the type of atom and effect on the path of α particles? Be clear and specific.

10.

In what way are isotopes of a given element always different? In what way(s) are they always the same?

11.

Write the symbol for each of the following ions:

a. the ion with a 1+ charge, atomic number 55, and mass number 133
b. the ion with 54 electrons, 53 protons, and 74 neutrons
c. the ion with atomic number 15, mass number 31, and a 3− charge
d. the ion with 24 electrons, 30 neutrons, and a 3+ charge

12.

Write the symbol for each of the following ions:

a. the ion with a 3+ charge, 28 electrons, and a mass number of 71
b. the ion with 36 electrons, 35 protons, and 45 neutrons
c. the ion with 86 electrons, 142 neutrons, and a 4+ charge
d. the ion with a 2+ charge, atomic number 38, and mass number 87

13.

Open the Build an Atom simulation and click on the Atom icon.

(a) Pick any one of the first 10 elements that you would like to build and state its symbol.

(b) Drag protons, neutrons, and electrons onto the atom template to make an atom of your element.
State the numbers of protons, neutrons, and electrons in your atom, as well as the net charge and mass number.

(c) Click on "Net Charge" and "Mass Number," check your answers to (b), and correct, if needed.

(d) Predict whether your atom will be stable or unstable. State your reasoning.

(e) Check the "Stable/Unstable" box. Was your answer to (d) correct? If not, first predict what you can do to make a stable atom of your element, and then do it and see if it works. Explain your reasoning.

14.

Open the Build an Atom simulation.

a. Drag protons, neutrons, and electrons onto the atom template to make a neutral atom of Oxygen-16 and give the isotope symbol for this atom.
b. Now add two more electrons to make an ion and give the symbol for the ion you have created.

15.

Open the Build an Atom simulation.

a. Drag protons, neutrons, and electrons onto the atom template to make a neutral atom of Lithium-6 and give the isotope symbol for this atom.
b. Now remove one electron to make an ion and give the symbol for the ion you have created.

16.

Determine the number of protons, neutrons, and electrons in the following isotopes that are used in medical diagnoses:

a. atomic number 9, mass number 18, charge of 1−
b. atomic number 43, mass number 99, charge of 7+
c. atomic number 53, atomic mass number 131, charge of 1−
d. atomic number 81, atomic mass number 201, charge of 1+
e. Name the elements in parts (a), (b), (c), and (d).

17.

The following are properties of isotopes of two elements that are essential in our diet. Determine the number of protons, neutrons and electrons in each and name them.

a. atomic number 26, mass number 58, charge of 2+
b. atomic number 53, mass number 127, charge of 1−

18.

Give the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons in neutral atoms of each of the following isotopes:

a.
b.
c.
d.
e.

19.

Give the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons in neutral atoms of each of the following isotopes:

a.
b.
c.
d.
e.

20.

Click on the site and select the “Mix Isotopes” tab, hide the “Percent Composition” and “Average Atomic Mass” boxes, and then select the element boron.

a. Write the symbols of the isotopes of boron that are shown as naturally occurring in significant amounts.
b. Predict the relative amounts (percentages) of these boron isotopes found in nature. Explain the reasoning behind your choice.
c. Add isotopes to the black box to make a mixture that matches your prediction in (b). You may drag isotopes from their bins or click on “More” and then move the sliders to the appropriate amounts.
d. Reveal the “Percent Composition” and “Average Atomic Mass” boxes. How well does your mixture match with your prediction? If necessary, adjust the isotope amounts to match your prediction.
e. Select “Nature’s” mix of isotopes and compare it to your prediction. How well does your prediction compare with the naturally occurring mixture? Explain. If necessary, adjust your amounts to make them match “Nature’s” amounts as closely as possible.

21.

Repeat Exercise 2.20 using an element that has three naturally occurring isotopes.

22.

An element has the following natural abundances and isotopic masses: 90.92% abundance with 19.99 amu, 0.26% abundance with 20.99 amu, and 8.82% abundance with 21.99 amu. Calculate the average atomic mass of this element.

23.

Average atomic masses listed by IUPAC are based on a study of experimental results. Bromine has two isotopes, ^{79}Br and ^{81}Br, whose masses (78.9183 and 80.9163 amu, respectively) and abundances (50.69% and 49.31%, respectively) were determined in earlier experiments. Calculate the average atomic mass of bromine based on these experiments.

24.

Variations in average atomic mass may be observed for elements obtained from different sources. Lithium provides an example of this. The isotopic composition of lithium from naturally occurring minerals is 7.5% ^{6}Li and 92.5% ^{7}Li, which have masses of 6.01512 amu and 7.01600 amu, respectively. A commercial source of lithium, recycled from a military source, was 3.75% ^{6}Li (and the rest ^{7}Li). Calculate the average atomic mass values for each of these two sources.

25.

The average atomic masses of some elements may vary, depending upon the sources of their ores. Naturally occurring boron consists of two isotopes with accurately known masses (^{10}B, 10.0129 amu and ^{11}B, 11.00931 amu). The actual atomic mass of boron can vary from 10.807 to 10.819, depending on whether the mineral source is from Turkey or the United States. Calculate the percent abundances leading to the two values of the average atomic masses of boron from these two countries.

26.

The ^{18}O:^{16}O abundance ratio in some meteorites is greater than that used to calculate the average atomic mass of oxygen on earth. Is the average mass of an oxygen atom in these meteorites greater than, less than, or equal to that of a terrestrial oxygen atom?

27.

Explain why the symbol for an atom of the element oxygen and the formula for a molecule of oxygen differ.

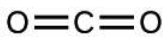
28.

Explain why the symbol for the element sulfur and the formula for a molecule of sulfur differ.

29.

Write the molecular and empirical formulas of the following compounds:

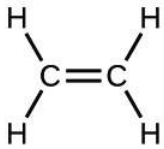
(a)



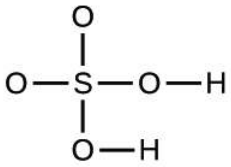
(b)



(c)



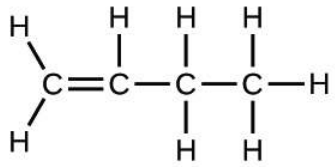
(d)



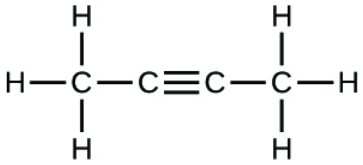
30.

Write the molecular and empirical formulas of the following compounds:

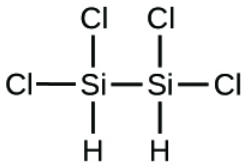
(a)



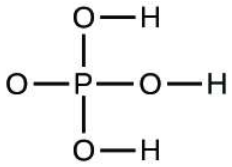
(b)



(c)



(d)



31.

Determine the empirical formulas for the following compounds:

a. caffeine, $C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$
b. sucrose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$
c. hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2
d. glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$
e. ascorbic acid (vitamin C), $C_6H_8O_6$

32.

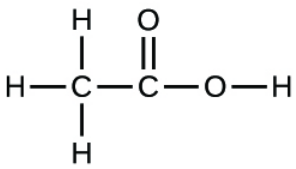
Determine the empirical formulas for the following compounds:

a. acetic acid, $C_2H_4O_2$
b. citric acid, $C_6H_8O_7$
c. hydrazine, N_2H_4
d. nicotine, $C_{10}H_{14}N_2$
e. butane, C_4H_{10}

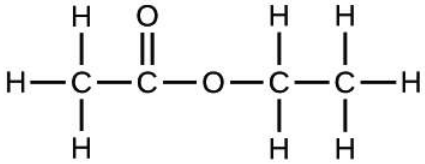
33.

Write the empirical formulas for the following compounds:

(a)



(b)



34.

Open the Build a Molecule simulation and select the “Larger Molecules” tab. Select an appropriate atom’s “Kit” to build a molecule with two carbon and six hydrogen atoms. Drag atoms into the space above the “Kit” to make a molecule. A name will appear when you have made an actual molecule that exists (even if it is not the one you want). You can use the scissors tool to separate atoms if you would like to change the connections. Click on “3D” to see the molecule, and look at both the space-filling and ball-and-stick possibilities.

a. Draw the structural formula of this molecule and state its name.
b. Can you arrange these atoms in any way to make a different compound?

35.

Use the Build a Molecule simulation to repeat Exercise 2.34, but build a molecule with two carbons, six hydrogens, and one oxygen.

a. Draw the structural formula of this molecule and state its name.
b. Can you arrange these atoms to make a different molecule? If so, draw its structural formula and state its name.
c. How are the molecules drawn in (a) and (b) the same? How do they differ? What are they called (the type of relationship between these molecules, not their names).?

36.

Use the Build a Molecule simulation to repeat Exercise 2.34, but build a molecule with three carbons, seven hydrogens, and one chlorine.

a. Draw the structural formula of this molecule and state its name.
b. Can you arrange these atoms to make a different molecule? If so, draw its structural formula and state its name.
c. How are the molecules drawn in (a) and (b) the same? How do they differ? What are they called (the type of relationship between these molecules, not their names)?

37.

Using the periodic table, classify each of the following elements as a metal or a nonmetal, and then further classify each as a main-group (representative) element, transition metal, or inner transition metal:

a. (i) carbon

(j) potassium

38.

Using the periodic table, classify each of the following elements as a metal or a nonmetal, and then further classify each as a main-group (representative) element, transition metal, or inner transition metal:

a. (i) rhenium

39.

Using the periodic table, identify the lightest member of each of the following groups:

a. noble gases
b. alkaline earth metals
c. alkali metals
d. chalcogens

40.

Using the periodic table, identify the heaviest member of each of the following groups:

a. alkali metals

b. chalcogens
c. noble gases
d. alkaline earth metals

41.

Use the periodic table to give the name and symbol for each of the following elements:

a. the noble gas in the same period as germanium
b. the alkaline earth metal in the same period as selenium
c. the halogen in the same period as lithium
d. the chalcogen in the same period as cadmium

42.

Use the periodic table to give the name and symbol for each of the following elements:

a. the halogen in the same period as the alkali metal with 11 protons
b. the alkaline earth metal in the same period with the neutral noble gas with 18 electrons
c. the noble gas in the same row as an isotope with 30 neutrons and 25 protons
d. the noble gas in the same period as gold

43.

Write a symbol for each of the following neutral isotopes. Include the atomic number and mass number for each.

a. the alkali metal with 11 protons and a mass number of 23
b. the noble gas element with 75 neutrons in its nucleus and 54 electrons in the neutral atom
c. the isotope with 33 protons and 40 neutrons in its nucleus
d. the alkaline earth metal with 88 electrons and 138 neutrons

44.

Write a symbol for each of the following neutral isotopes. Include the atomic number and mass number for each.

a. the chalcogen with a mass number of 125
b. the halogen whose longest-lived isotope is radioactive
c. the noble gas, used in lighting, with 10 electrons and 10 neutrons
d. the lightest alkali metal with three neutrons

45.

Using the periodic table, predict whether the following chlorides are ionic or covalent: KCl, NCl_3, ICl, $MgCl_2$, PCl_5, and CCl_4.

46.

Using the periodic table, predict whether the following chlorides are ionic or covalent: $SiCl_4$, PCl_3, $CaCl_2$, CsCl, $CuCl_2$, and $CrCl_3$.

47.

For each of the following compounds, state whether it is ionic or covalent. If it is ionic, write the symbols for the ions involved:

a. (f) Na_2O

48.

For each of the following compounds, state whether it is ionic or covalent, and if it is ionic, write the symbols for the ions involved:

a. (f) $Co(NO_3)_2$

49.

For each of the following pairs of ions, write the formula of the compound they will form:

a. Ca^{2+}, S^{2-}
b.
c. Al^{3+}, Br^{-}
d. Na^{+},
e. Mg^{2+},

50.

For each of the following pairs of ions, write the formula of the compound they will form:

a. K^+, O^{2-}
b.
c. Al^{3+}, O^{2-}
d. Na^+,
e. Ba^{2+},

51.

Name the following compounds:

a. (f) AlF_3

52.

Name the following compounds:

a. (f) ICl_3

53.

Write the formulas of the following compounds:

a. rubidium bromide
b. magnesium selenide
c. sodium oxide
d. calcium chloride
e. hydrogen fluoride
f. gallium phosphide
g. aluminum bromide
h. ammonium sulfate

54.

Write the formulas of the following compounds:

a. lithium carbonate
b. sodium perchlorate
c. barium hydroxide
d. ammonium carbonate
e. sulfuric acid
f. calcium acetate
g. magnesium phosphate
h. sodium sulfite

55.

Write the formulas of the following compounds:

a. (f) silicon dioxide

56.

Write the formulas of the following compounds:

a. (f) tin(IV) chloride

57.

Each of the following compounds contains a metal that can exhibit more than one ionic charge. Name these compounds:

a. (f) MoS_2

58.

Each of the following compounds contains a metal that can exhibit more than one ionic charge. Name these compounds:

a. (f) Fe_2O_3

59.

The following ionic compounds are found in common household products. Write the formulas for each compound:

a. (f) sodium bisulfate (the common name for sodium hydrogen sulfate)

60.

The following ionic compounds are found in common household products. Name each of the compounds:

a. (f) KI

61.

What are the IUPAC names of the following compounds?

a. manganese dioxide
b. mercurous chloride (Hg_2Cl_2)
c. ferric nitrate [$Fe(NO_3)_3$]
d. titanium tetrachloride
e. cupric bromide ($CuBr_2$)

This page titled 1.12: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.11: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Composition of Substances and Solutions

Quantitative aspects of the composition of substances and mixtures are the subject of this chapter.

3.1: Introduction
3.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
3.3: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas
3.4: Molarity
3.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations
3.6: Key Terms
3.7: Key Equations
3.8: Summary
3.9: Exercises

This page titled 3: Composition of Substances and Solutions is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.1: Introduction

Swimming pools have long been a popular means of recreation, exercise, and physical therapy. Since it is impractical to refill large pools with fresh water on a frequent basis, pool water is regularly treated with chemicals to prevent the growth of harmful bacteria and algae. Proper pool maintenance requires regular additions of various chemical compounds in carefully measured amounts. For example, the relative amount of calcium ion, Ca^{2+}, in the water should be maintained within certain limits to prevent eye irritation and avoid damage to the pool bed and plumbing. To maintain proper calcium levels, calcium cations are added to the water in the form of an ionic compound that also contains anions; thus, it is necessary to know both the relative amount of Ca^{2+} in the compound and the volume of water in the pool in order to achieve the proper calcium level. Quantitative aspects of the composition of substances (such as the calcium-containing compound) and mixtures (such as the pool water) are the subject of this chapter.



Figure 2.1.1: The water in a swimming pool is a complex mixture of substances whose relative amounts must be carefully maintained to ensure the health and comfort of people using the pool. (credit: modification of work by Vic Brincat)

2.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.0: Introduction** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Calculate formula masses for covalent and ionic compounds
- Define the amount unit mole and the related quantity Avogadro's number Explain the relation between mass, moles, and numbers of atoms or molecules, and perform calculations deriving these quantities from one another

Many argue that modern chemical science began when scientists started exploring the quantitative as well as the qualitative aspects of chemistry. For example, Dalton's atomic theory was an attempt to explain the results of measurements that allowed him to calculate the relative masses of elements combined in various compounds. Understanding the relationship between the masses of atoms and the chemical formulas of compounds allows us to quantitatively describe the composition of substances.

Formula Mass

An earlier chapter of this text described the development of the atomic mass unit, the concept of average atomic masses, and the use of chemical formulas to represent the elemental makeup of substances. These ideas can be extended to calculate the formula mass of a substance by summing the average atomic masses of all the atoms represented in the substance's formula.

Formula Mass for Covalent Substances

For covalent substances, the formula represents the numbers and types of atoms composing a single molecule of the substance; therefore, the formula mass may be correctly referred to as a molecular mass. Consider chloroform ($CHCl_3$), a covalent compound once used as a surgical anesthetic and now primarily used in the production of tetrafluoroethylene, the building block for the "anti-stick" polymer, Teflon. The molecular formula of chloroform indicates that a single molecule contains one carbon atom, one hydrogen atom, and three chlorine atoms. The average molecular mass of a chloroform molecule is therefore equal to the sum of the average atomic masses of these atoms. Figure 2.2.1 outlines the calculations used to derive the molecular mass of chloroform, which is 119.37 amu.

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	1	×	12.01	=	12.01
H	1	×	1.008	=	1.008
Cl	3	×	35.45	=	106.35
				Molecular mass	119.37

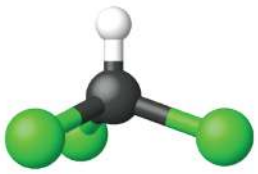


Figure 2.2.1: The average mass of a chloroform molecule, $CHCl_3$, is 119.37 amu, which is the sum of the average atomic masses of each of its constituent atoms. The model shows the molecular structure of chloroform.

Likewise, the molecular mass of an aspirin molecule, $C_9H_8O_4$, is the sum of the atomic masses of nine carbon atoms, eight hydrogen atoms, and four oxygen atoms, which amounts to 180.15 amu (Figure 2.2.2).

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	9	×	12.01	=	108.09
H	8	×	1.008	=	8.064
O	4	×	16.00	=	64.00
				Molecular mass	180.15

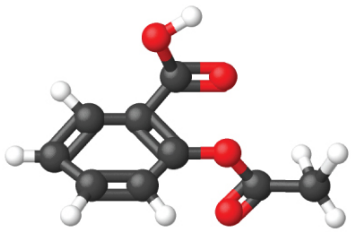


Figure 2.2.2: The average mass of an aspirin molecule is 180.15 amu. The model shows the molecular structure of aspirin, $C_9H_8O_4$.

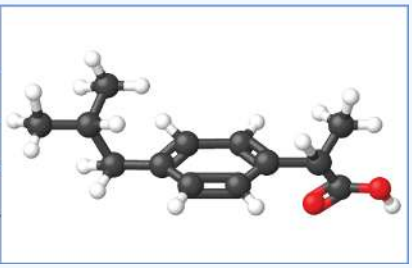
Example 2.2.1: Computing Molecular Mass for a Covalent Compound

Ibuprofen, $C_{13}H_{18}O_2$, is a covalent compound and the active ingredient in several popular nonprescription pain medications, such as Advil and Motrin. What is the molecular mass (amu) for this compound?

Solution

Molecules of this compound are composed of 13 carbon atoms, 18 hydrogen atoms, and 2 oxygen atoms. Following the approach described above, the average molecular mass for this compound is therefore:

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
C	13	×	12.01	=	156.13
H	18	×	1.008	=	18.144
O	2	×	16.00	=	32.00
				Molecular mass	206.27



Exercise 2.2.1

Acetaminophen, $C_8H_9NO_2$, is a covalent compound and the active ingredient in several popular nonprescription pain medications, such as Tylenol. What is the molecular mass (amu) for this compound?

Answer

151.16 amu

Formula Mass for Ionic Compounds

Ionic compounds are composed of discrete cations and anions combined in ratios to yield electrically neutral bulk matter. The formula mass for an ionic compound is calculated in the same way as the formula mass for covalent compounds: by summing the average atomic masses of all the atoms in the compound's formula. Keep in mind, however, that the formula for an ionic compound does not represent the composition of a discrete molecule, so it may not correctly be referred to as the "molecular mass."

As an example, consider sodium chloride, NaCl, the chemical name for common table salt. Sodium chloride is an ionic compound composed of sodium cations, Na^+, and chloride anions, Cl^-, combined in a 1:1 ratio. The formula mass for this compound is computed as 58.44 amu (see Figure 2.2.3).

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal
Na	1	×	22.99	=	22.99
Cl	1	×	35.45	=	35.45
				Formula mass	58.44

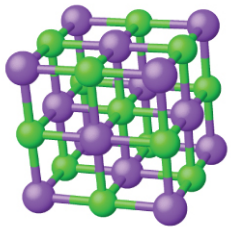


Figure 2.2.3: Table salt, NaCl, contains an array of sodium and chloride ions combined in a 1:1 ratio. Its formula mass is 58.44 amu.

Note that the average masses of neutral sodium and chlorine atoms were used in this computation, rather than the masses for sodium cations and chlorine anions. This approach is perfectly acceptable when computing the formula mass of an ionic compound. Even though a sodium cation has a slightly smaller mass than a sodium atom (since it is missing an electron), this difference will be offset by the fact that a chloride anion is slightly more massive than a chloride atom (due to the extra electron). Moreover, the mass of an electron is negligibly small with respect to the mass of a typical atom. Even when calculating the mass of an isolated ion, the missing or additional electrons can generally be ignored, since their contribution to the overall mass is negligible, reflected only in the nonsignificant digits that will be lost when the computed mass is properly rounded. The few exceptions to this guideline are very light ions derived from elements with precisely known atomic masses.

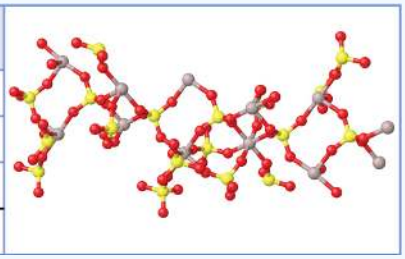
Example 2.2.2: Computing Formula Mass for an Ionic Compound

Aluminum sulfate, $Al_2(SO_4)_3$, is an ionic compound that is used in the manufacture of paper and in various water purification processes. What is the formula mass (amu) of this compound?

Solution

The formula for this compound indicates it contains Al^{3+} and SO_4^{2-} ions combined in a 2:3 ratio. For purposes of computing a formula mass, it is helpful to rewrite the formula in the simpler format, $Al_2S_3O_{12}$. Following the approach outlined above, the formula mass for this compound is calculated as follows:

Element	Quantity		Average atomic mass (amu)		Subtotal (amu)
Al	2	×	26.98	=	53.96
S	3	×	32.06	=	96.18
O	12	×	16.00	=	192.00
				Molecular mass	342.14



Exercise 2.2.2

Calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, is an ionic compound and a common anti-caking agent added to food products. What is the formula mass (amu) of calcium phosphate?

Answer

310.18 amu

The Mole

The identity of a substance is defined not only by the types of atoms or ions it contains, but by the quantity of each type of atom or ion. For example, water, H_2O, and hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2, are alike in that their respective molecules are composed of hydrogen and oxygen atoms. However, because a hydrogen peroxide molecule contains two oxygen atoms, as opposed to the water molecule, which has only one, the two substances exhibit very different properties. Today, sophisticated instruments allow the direct measurement of these defining microscopic traits; however, the same traits were originally derived from the measurement of macroscopic properties (the masses and volumes of bulk quantities of matter) using relatively simple tools (balances and volumetric glassware). This experimental approach required the introduction of a new unit for amount of substances, the *mole*, which remains indispensable in modern chemical science.

The *mole* is an amount unit similar to familiar units like pair, dozen, gross, etc. It provides a specific measure of *the number* of atoms or molecules in a sample of matter. One Latin connotation for the word “mole” is “large mass” or “bulk,” which is consistent with its use as the name for this unit. The mole provides a link between an easily measured macroscopic property, bulk mass, and an extremely important fundamental property, number of atoms, molecules, and so forth. A mole of substance is that amount in which there are $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$.

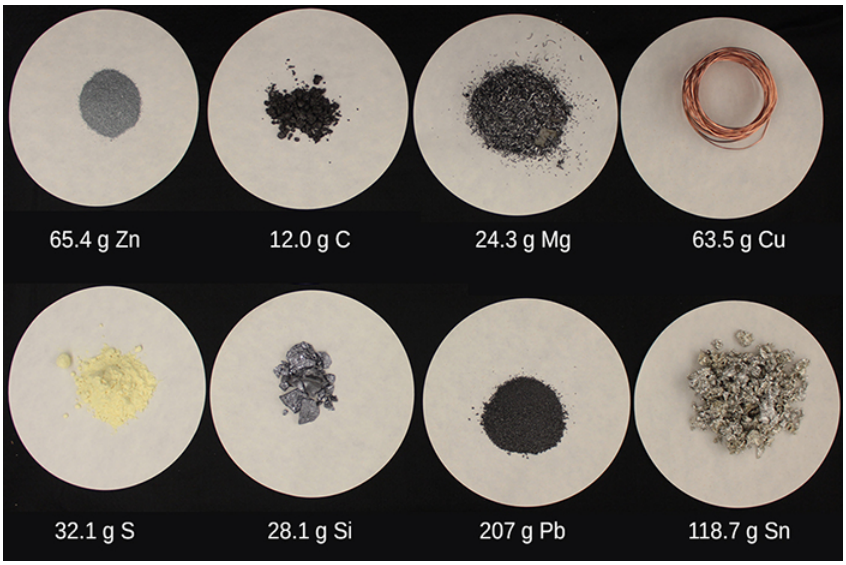


Figure 2.2.4: Each sample contains 6.022 10^{23} atoms —1.00 mol of atoms. From left to right (top row): 65.4 g zinc, 12.0 g carbon, 24.3 g magnesium, and 63.5 g copper. From left to right (bottom row): 32.1 g sulfur, 28.1 g silicon, 207 g lead, and 118.7 g tin. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

The molar mass of any substance is numerically equivalent to its atomic or formula weight in amu. Per the amu definition, a single ^{12}C atom weighs 12 amu (its atomic mass is 12 amu). A mole of ^{12}C weighs 12 g (its molar mass is 12 g/mol). This relationship holds for all elements, since their atomic masses are measured relative to that of the amu-reference substance, ^{12}C. Extending this principle, the molar mass of a compound in grams is likewise numerically equivalent to its formula mass in amu (Figure 2.2.5).



Figure 2.2.5: Each sample contains 6.02 10^{23} molecules or formula units—1.00 mol of the compound or element. Clock-wise from the upper left: 130.2 g of $C_8H_{17}OH$ (1-octanol, formula mass 130.2 amu), 454.4 g of HgI_2 (mercury(II) iodide, formula mass 454.4 amu), 32.0 g of CH_3OH (methanol, formula mass 32.0 amu) and 256.5 g of S_8 (sulfur, formula mass 256.5 amu). (credit: Sahar Atwa)

Element	Average Atomic Mass (amu)	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Atoms/Mole
C	12.01	12.01	6.022 10^{23}
H	1.008	1.008	6.022 10^{23}
O	16.00	16.00	6.022 10^{23}
Na	22.99	22.99	6.022 10^{23}
Cl	35.45	35.45	6.022 10^{23}

While atomic mass and molar mass are numerically equivalent, keep in mind that they are vastly different in terms of scale, as represented by the vast difference in the magnitudes of their respective units (amu versus g). To appreciate the enormity of the

mole, consider a small drop of water weighing about 0.03 g (see Figure 2.2.6). Although this represents just a tiny fraction of 1 mole of water (~18 g), it contains more water molecules than can be clearly imagined. If the molecules were distributed equally among the roughly seven billion people on earth, each person would receive more than 100 billion molecules.



Figure 2.2.6: The number of molecules in a single droplet of water is roughly 100 billion times greater than the number of people on earth. (credit: "tanakawho"/Wikimedia commons)

Link to Learning

The mole is used in chemistry to represent 6.022 10^{23} of something, but it can be difficult to conceptualize such a large number. Watch this video and then complete the "Think" questions that follow. Explore more about the mole by reviewing the information under "Dig Deeper."

The relationships between formula mass, the mole, and Avogadro's number can be applied to compute various quantities that describe the composition of substances and compounds, as demonstrated in the next several example problems.

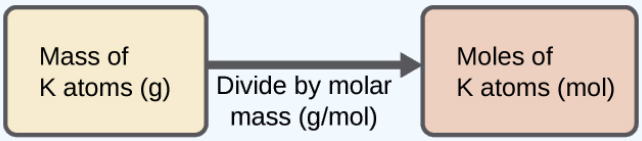
Example 2.2.3: Deriving Moles from Grams for an Element

According to nutritional guidelines from the US Department of Agriculture, the estimated average requirement for dietary potassium is 4.7 g. What is the estimated average requirement of potassium in moles?

Solution

The mass of K is provided, and the corresponding amount of K in moles is requested. Referring to the periodic table, the atomic mass of K is 39.10 amu, and so its molar mass is 39.10 g/mol. The given mass of K (4.7 g) is a bit more than one-tenth the molar mass (39.10 g), so a reasonable "ballpark" estimate of the number of moles would be slightly greater than 0.1 mol.

The molar amount of a substance may be calculated by dividing its mass (g) by its molar mass (g/mol):



The factor-label method supports this mathematical approach since the unit "g" cancels and the answer has units of "mol:"

$$4.7\ \cancel{\text{g K}}\left(\frac{\text{mol K}}{39.10\ \cancel{\text{g K}}}\right) = 0.12\ \text{mol K}$$

The calculated magnitude (0.12 mol K) is consistent with our ballpark expectation, since it is a bit greater than 0.1 mol,

Exercise 2.2.3

Beryllium is a light metal used to fabricate transparent X-ray windows for medical imaging instruments. How many moles of Be are in a thin-foil window weighing 3.24 g?

Answer

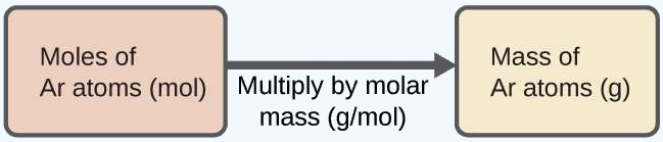
0.360 mol

Example 2.2.4: Deriving Grams from Moles for an Element

A liter of air contains 9.2 10^{-4} mol argon. What is the mass of Ar in a liter of air?

Solution

The molar amount of Ar is provided and must be used to derive the corresponding mass in grams. Since the amount of Ar is less than 1 mole, the mass will be less than the mass of 1 mole of Ar, approximately 40 g. The molar amount in question is approximately one-one thousandth (~10^{-3}) of a mole, and so the corresponding mass should be roughly one-one thousandth of the molar mass (~0.04 g):



In this case, logic dictates (and the factor-label method supports) multiplying the provided amount (mol) by the molar mass (g/mol):

$$9.2 \times 10^{-4}\ \cancel{\text{mol Ar}} \left(\frac{39.95\ \text{g Ar}}{\cancel{\text{mol Ar}}} \right) = 0.037\ \text{g Ar}$$

The result is in agreement with our expectations, around 0.04 g Ar.

Exercise 2.2.1

What is the mass of 2.561 mol of gold?

Answer

504.4 g

Example 2.2.5: Deriving Number of Atoms from Mass for an Element

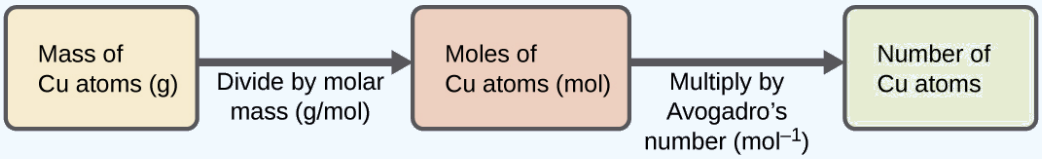
Copper is commonly used to fabricate electrical wire (Figure 2.2.7). How many copper atoms are in 5.00 g of copper wire?



Figure 2.2.7: Copper wire is composed of many, many atoms of Cu. (credit: Emilian Robert Vicol)

Solution

The number of Cu atoms in the wire may be conveniently derived from its mass by a two-step computation: first calculating the molar amount of Cu, and then using Avogadro's number (N_A) to convert this molar amount to number of Cu atoms:



Considering that the provided sample mass (5.00 g) is a little less than one-tenth the mass of 1 mole of Cu (~64 g), a reasonable estimate for the number of atoms in the sample would be on the order of one-tenth N_A, or approximately 10^{22} Cu atoms. Carrying out the two-step computation yields:

$$5.00\ \cancel{\text{g Cu}} \left(\frac{\cancel{\text{mol Cu}}}{63.55\ \cancel{\text{g Cu}}} \right) \left(\frac{6.022 \times 10^{23}\,\text{Cu atoms}}{\cancel{\text{mol Cu}}} \right) = 4.74 \times 10^{22}\ \text{Cu atoms}$$

The factor-label method yields the desired cancellation of units, and the computed result is on the order of 10^{22} as expected.

? Exercise 2.2.5

A prospector panning for gold in a river collects 15.00 g of pure gold. How many Au atoms are in this quantity of gold?

Answer

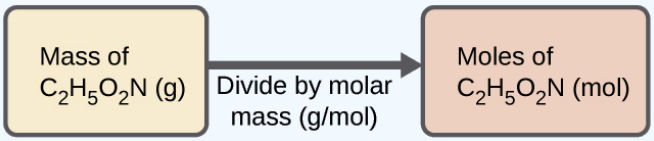
4.586×10^{22} Au atoms

✓ Example 2.2.6: Deriving Moles from Grams for a Compound

Our bodies synthesize protein from amino acids. One of these amino acids is glycine, which has the molecular formula $C_2H_5O_2N$. How many moles of glycine molecules are contained in 28.35 g of glycine?

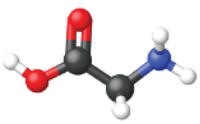
Solution

Derive the number of moles of a compound from its mass following the same procedure used for an element in Example 2.2.3:



The molar mass of glycine is required for this calculation, and it is computed in the same fashion as its molecular mass. One mole of glycine, $C_2H_5O_2N$, contains 2 moles of carbon, 5 moles of hydrogen, 2 moles of oxygen, and 1 mole of nitrogen:

Element	Quantity (mol element/ mol compound)		Molar mass (g/mol element)		Subtotal (g/mol compound)
C	2	×	12.01	=	24.02
H	5	×	1.008	=	5.040
O	2	×	16.00	=	32.00
N	1	×	14.007	=	14.007
Molecular mass (g/mol compound)					75.07



The provided mass of glycine (~28 g) is a bit more than one-third the molar mass (~75 g/mol), so the computed result is expected to be a bit greater than one-third of a mole (~0.33 mol). Dividing the compound's mass by its molar mass yields:

$$28.35\ \cancel{\text{g glycine}}\left(\frac{\text{mol glycine}}{75.07\ \cancel{\text{g glycine}}}\right) = 0.378\ \text{mol glycine}$$

This result is consistent with the rough estimate,

? Exercise 2.2.6

How many moles of sucrose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$, are in a 25-g sample of sucrose?

Answer

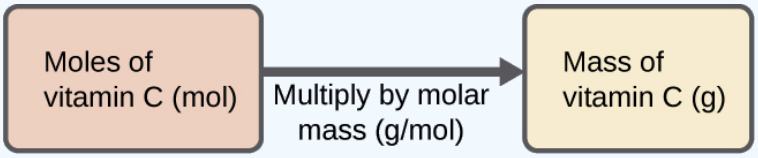
0.073 mol

✓ Example 2.2.7: Deriving Grams from Moles for a Compound

Vitamin C is a covalent compound with the molecular formula $C_6H_8O_6$. The recommended daily dietary allowance of vitamin C for children aged 4–8 years is 1.42 10^{-4} mol. What is the mass of this allowance in grams?

Solution

As for elements, the mass of a compound can be derived from its molar amount as shown:



The molar mass for this compound is computed to be 176.124 g/mol. The given number of moles is a very small fraction of a mole (~10^{-4} or one-ten thousandth); therefore, the corresponding mass is expected to be about one-ten thousandth of the molar mass (~0.02 g). Performing the calculation yields:

$$1.42 \times 10^{-4}\ \cancel{\text{mol vitamin C}}\left(\frac{176.124\ \text{g vitamin C}}{\text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{vitamin C}}}\right) = 0.0250\ \text{g vitamin C}$$

This is consistent with the anticipated result.

? Exercise 2.2.7

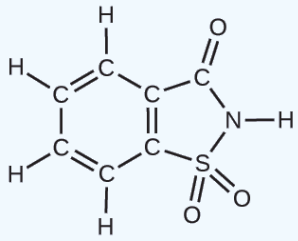
What is the mass of 0.443 mol of hydrazine, N_2H_4?

Answer

14.2 g

✓ Example 2.2.8: Deriving the Number of Atoms and Molecules from the Mass of a Compound

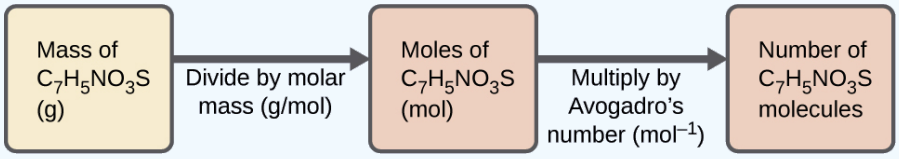
A packet of an artificial sweetener contains 40.0 mg of saccharin ($C_7H_5NO_3S$), which has the structural formula:



Given that saccharin has a molar mass of 183.18 g/mol, how many saccharin molecules are in a 40.0-mg (0.0400-g) sample of saccharin? How many carbon atoms are in the same sample?

Solution

The number of molecules in a given mass of compound is computed by first deriving the number of moles, as demonstrated in Example 2.2.6, and then multiplying by Avogadro's number:



Using the provided mass and molar mass for saccharin yields:

$$0.0400\ \text{g}\ \cancel{\text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S}}\left(\frac{\text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S}}}{183.18\ \text{g}\ \cancel{\text{CH}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S}}}\right)\left(\frac{6.022\times10^{23}\ \text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S molecules}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S}}}\right)$$
$$= 1.31\times10^{20}\ \text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S molecules}$$

The compound's formula shows that each molecule contains seven carbon atoms, and so the number of C atoms in the provided sample is:

$$1.31\times10^{20}\ \text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S molecules}\left(\frac{7\ \text{C atoms}}{1\ \text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{NO}_3\text{S molecule}}\right) = 9.17\times10^{20}\ \text{C atoms}$$

Exercise 2.2.8

How many C_4H_{10} molecules are contained in 9.213 g of this compound? How many hydrogen atoms?

Answer

9.545×10^{22} molecules C_4H_{10}

9.545×10^{23} atoms H

How Sciences Interconnect: Counting Neurotransmitter Molecules in the Brain

The brain is the control center of the central nervous system (Figure 2.2.8). It sends and receives signals to and from muscles and other internal organs to monitor and control their functions; it processes stimuli detected by sensory organs to guide interactions with the external world; and it houses the complex physiological processes that give rise to our intellect and emotions. The broad field of neuroscience spans all aspects of the structure and function of the central nervous system, including research on the anatomy and physiology of the brain. Great progress has been made in brain research over the past few decades, and the BRAIN Initiative, a federal initiative announced in 2013, aims to accelerate and capitalize on these advances through the concerted efforts of various industrial, academic, and government agencies (more details available at www.whitehouse.gov/share/brain-initiative).

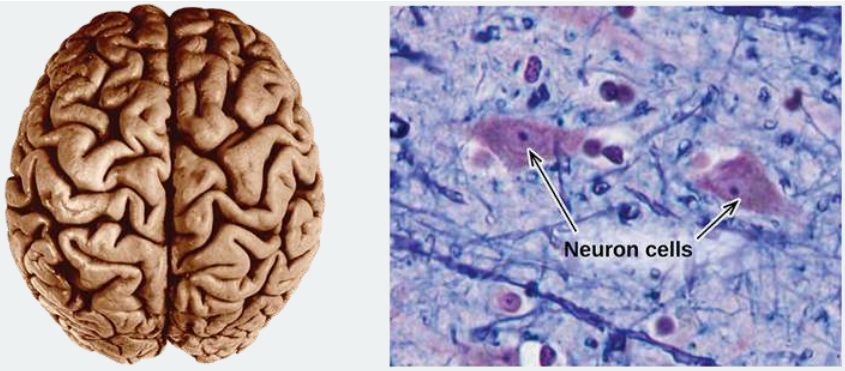


Figure 2.2.8: (a) A typical human brain weighs about 1.5 kg and occupies a volume of roughly 1.1 L. (b) Information is transmitted in brain tissue and throughout the central nervous system by specialized cells called neurons (micrograph shows cells at 1600× magnification).

Specialized cells called neurons transmit information between different parts of the central nervous system by way of electrical and chemical signals. Chemical signaling occurs at the interface between different neurons when one of the cells releases molecules (called neurotransmitters) that diffuse across the small gap between the cells (called the synapse) and bind to the surface of the other cell. These neurotransmitter molecules are stored in small intracellular structures called vesicles that fuse to the cell membrane and then break open to release their contents when the neuron is appropriately stimulated. This process is called exocytosis (see Figure 2.2.9). One neurotransmitter that has been very extensively studied is dopamine, $C_8H_{11}NO_2$. Dopamine is involved in various neurological processes that impact a wide variety of human behaviors. Dysfunctions in the dopamine systems of the brain underlie serious neurological diseases such as Parkinson's and schizophrenia.

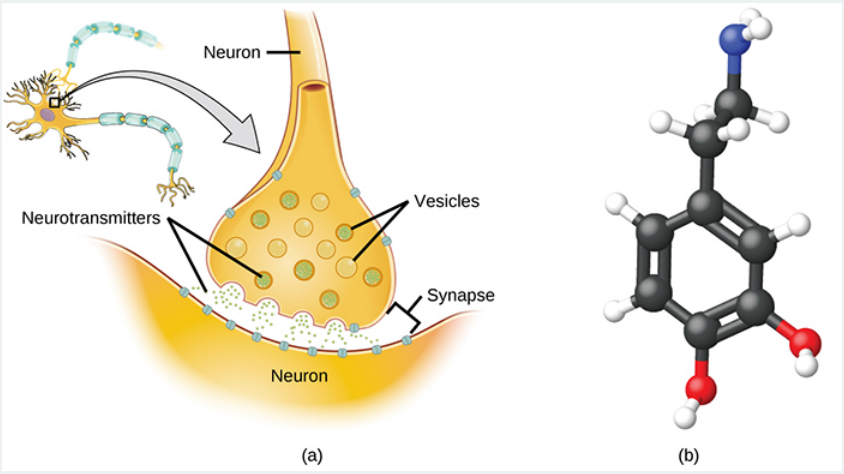


Figure 2.2.9: (a) Chemical signals are transmitted from neurons to other cells by the release of neurotransmitter molecules into the small gaps (synapses) between the cells. (b) Dopamine, $C_8H_{11}NO_2$, is a neurotransmitter involved in a number of neurological processes.

One important aspect of the complex processes related to dopamine signaling is the number of neurotransmitter molecules released during exocytosis. Since this number is a central factor in determining neurological response (and subsequent human thought and action), it is important to know how this number changes with certain controlled stimulations, such as the administration of drugs. It is also important to understand the mechanism responsible for any changes in the number of neurotransmitter molecules released—for example, some dysfunction in exocytosis, a change in the number of vesicles in the neuron, or a change in the number of neurotransmitter molecules in each vesicle.

Significant progress has been made recently in directly measuring the number of dopamine molecules stored in individual vesicles and the amount actually released when the vesicle undergoes exocytosis. Using miniaturized probes that can selectively detect dopamine molecules in very small amounts, scientists have determined that the vesicles of a certain type of mouse brain neuron contain an average of 30,000 dopamine molecules per vesicle (about 5×10^{-20} mol or 50 zmol). Analysis of these neurons from mice subjected to various drug therapies shows significant changes in the average number of dopamine molecules contained in individual vesicles, increasing or decreasing by up to three-fold, depending on the specific drug used.

> These studies also indicate that not all of the dopamine in a given vesicle is released during exocytosis, suggesting that it may be possible to regulate the fraction released using pharmaceutical therapies.

Footnotes

- 1Omiatek, Donna M., Amanda J. Bressler, Ann-Sofie Cans, Anne M. Andrews, Michael L. Heien, and Andrew G. Ewing. “The Real Catecholamine Content of Secretory Vesicles in the CNS Revealed by Electrochemical Cytometry.” *Scientific Report* 3 (2013): 1447, accessed January 14, 2015, doi:10.1038/srep01447.

This page titled 2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.1: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.3: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Compute the percent composition of a compound
- Determine the empirical formula of a compound
- Determine the molecular formula of a compound

The previous section discussed the relationship between the bulk mass of a substance and the number of atoms or molecules it contains (moles). Given the chemical formula of the substance, one may determine the amount of the substance (moles) from its mass, and vice versa. But what if the chemical formula of a substance is unknown? In this section, these same principles will be applied to derive the chemical formulas of unknown substances from experimental mass measurements.

Percent Composition

The elemental makeup of a compound defines its chemical identity, and chemical formulas are the most succinct way of representing this elemental makeup. When a compound's formula is unknown, measuring the mass of each of its constituent elements is often the first step in the process of determining the formula experimentally. The results of these measurements permit the calculation of the compound's **percent composition**, defined as the percentage by mass of each element in the compound. For example, consider a gaseous compound composed solely of carbon and hydrogen. The percent composition of this compound could be represented as follows:

$$\%H = \frac{\text{mass } H}{\text{mass compound}} \times 100\%$$
$$\%C = \frac{\text{mass } C}{\text{mass compound}} \times 100\%$$

If analysis of a 10.0-g sample of this gas showed it to contain 2.5 g H and 7.5 g C, the percent composition would be calculated to be 25% H and 75% C:

$$\%H = \frac{2.5gH}{10.0g\,\text{compound}} \times 100\% = 25\%$$
$$\%C = \frac{7.5gC}{10.0g\,\text{compound}} \times 100\% = 75\%$$

Example 2.3.1: Calculation of Percent Composition

Analysis of a 12.04-g sample of a liquid compound composed of carbon, hydrogen, and nitrogen showed it to contain 7.34 g C, 1.85 g H, and 2.85 g N. What is the percent composition of this compound?

Solution

To calculate percent composition, divide the experimentally derived mass of each element by the overall mass of the compound, and then convert to a percentage:

$$\%C = \frac{7.34gC}{12.04g\,\text{compound}} \times 100\% = 61.0\%$$
$$\%H = \frac{1.85gH}{12.04g\,\text{compound}} \times 100\% = 15.4\%$$
$$\%N = \frac{2.85gN}{12.04g\,\text{compound}} \times 100\% = 23.7\%$$

The analysis results indicate that the compound is 61.0% C, 15.4% H, and 23.7% N by mass.

Exercise 2.3.1

A 24.81-g sample of a gaseous compound containing only carbon, oxygen, and chlorine is determined to contain 3.01 g C, 4.00 g O, and 17.81 g Cl. What is this compound's percent composition?

Answer

12.1% C, 16.1% O, 71.79% Cl

Determining Percent Composition from Molecular or Empirical Formulas

Percent composition is also useful for evaluating the relative abundance of a given element in different compounds of known formulas. As one example, consider the common nitrogen-containing fertilizers ammonia (NH_3), ammonium nitrate (NH_4NO_3), and urea (CH_4N_2O). The element nitrogen is the active ingredient for agricultural purposes, so the mass percentage of nitrogen in the compound is a practical and economic concern for consumers choosing among these fertilizers. For these sorts of applications, the percent composition of a compound is easily derived from its formula mass and the atomic masses of its constituent elements. A molecule of NH_3 contains one N atom weighing 14.01 amu and three H atoms weighing a total of (3 1.008 amu) = 3.024 amu. The formula mass of ammonia is therefore (14.01 amu + 3.024 amu) = 17.03 amu, and its percent composition is:

$$\%N = \frac{14.01 amu N}{17.03 amu HH} \times 100\% = 82.27\%$$
$$\%H = \frac{3.024 amu H}{17.03 amu H} \times 100\% = 17.76\%$$

This same approach may be taken considering a pair of molecules, a dozen molecules, or a mole of molecules, etc. The latter amount is most convenient and would simply involve the use of molar masses instead of atomic and formula masses, as demonstrated Example 2.3.2. As long as the molecular or empirical formula of the compound in question is known, the percent composition may be derived from the atomic or molar masses of the compound's elements.

Example 2.3.2: Determining Percent Composition from a Molecular Formula

Aspirin is a compound with the molecular formula $C_9H_8O_4$. What is its percent composition?

Solution

To calculate the percent composition, the masses of C, H, and O in a known mass of $C_9H_8O_4$ are needed. It is convenient to consider 1 mol of $C_9H_8O_4$ and use its molar mass (180.159 g/mole, determined from the chemical formula) to calculate the percentages of each of its elements:

$$\%C = \frac{9 mol C \times \text{ molar mass } C}{\text{molar mass } C_9H_8O_4} \times 100 = \frac{9 \times 12.01 g/mol}{180.159 g/mol} \times 100 = \frac{108.09 g/mol}{180.159 g/mol} \times 100$$
$$\%C = 60.00\%C$$

$$\%H = \frac{8 mol H \times \text{ molar mass } H}{\text{molar mass } C_9H_8O_4} \times 100 = \frac{8 \times 1.008 g/mol}{180.159 g/mol} \times 100 = \frac{8.064 g/mol}{180.159 g/mol} \times 100$$
$$\%H = 4.476\%H$$

$$\%O = \frac{4 mol O \times \text{ molar mass}}{\text{molar mass } C_9H_8O_4} \times 100 = \frac{4 \times 16.00 g/mol}{180.159 g/mol} \times 100 = \frac{64.00 g/mol}{180.159 g/mol} \times 100$$
$$\%O = 35.52\%$$

Note that these percentages sum to equal 100.00% when appropriately rounded.

Exercise 2.3.2

To three significant digits, what is the mass percentage of iron in the compound Fe_2O_3?

Answer

69.9% Fe

Determination of Empirical Formulas

As previously mentioned, the most common approach to determining a compound's chemical formula is to first measure the masses of its constituent elements. However, keep in mind that chemical formulas represent the relative *numbers*, not masses, of atoms in the substance. Therefore, any experimentally derived data involving mass must be used to derive the corresponding numbers of atoms in the compound. This is accomplished using molar masses to convert the mass of each element to a number of moles. These molar amounts are used to compute whole-number ratios that can be used to derive the empirical formula of the substance. Consider a sample of compound determined to contain 1.71 g C and 0.287 g H. The corresponding numbers of atoms (in moles) are:

$$1.71 gC \times \frac{1 molC}{12.01 gC} = 0.142 molC$$

$$0.287 gH \times \frac{1 molH}{1.008 gH} = 0.284 molH$$

Thus, this compound may be represented by the formula $C_{0.142}H_{0.284}$. Per convention, formulas contain whole-number subscripts, which can be achieved by dividing each subscript by the smaller subscript:

$$C_{\frac{0.142}{0.142}} H_{\frac{0.234}{0.142}} \text{ or } CH_2$$

(Recall that subscripts of "1" are not written but rather assumed if no other number is present.)

The empirical formula for this compound is thus CH_2. This may or may not be the compound's *molecular formula* as well; however, additional information is needed to make that determination (as discussed later in this section).

Consider as another example a sample of compound determined to contain 5.31 g Cl and 8.40 g O. Following the same approach yields a tentative empirical formula of:

$$Cl_{0.150}O_{0.525} = Cl_{\frac{0.150}{0.150}} O_{\frac{0.525}{0.150}} = ClO_{3.5}$$

In this case, dividing by the smallest subscript still leaves us with a decimal subscript in the empirical formula. To convert this into a whole number, multiply each of the subscripts by two, retaining the same atom ratio and yielding Cl_2O_7 as the final empirical formula.

In summary, empirical formulas are derived from experimentally measured element masses by:

1. Deriving the number of moles of each element from its mass
2. Dividing each element's molar amount by the smallest molar amount to yield subscripts for a tentative empirical formula
3. Multiplying all coefficients by an integer, if necessary, to ensure that the smallest whole-number ratio of subscripts is obtained

Figure 2.3.1 outlines this procedure in flow chart fashion for a substance containing elements A and X.

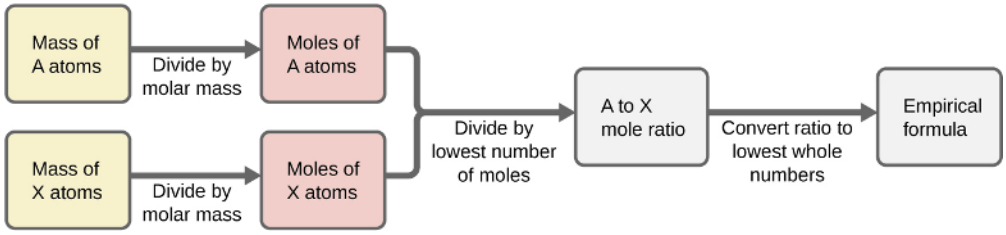


Figure 2.3.1: The empirical formula of a compound can be derived from the masses of all elements in the sample.

Example 2.3.3: Determining a Compound's Empirical Formula from the Masses of Its Elements

A sample of the black mineral hematite (Figure 2.3.2), an oxide of iron found in many iron ores, contains 34.97 g of iron and 15.03 g of oxygen. What is the empirical formula of hematite?



Figure 2.3.2: Hematite is an iron oxide that is used in jewelry. (credit: Mauro Cateb)

Solution

This problem provides the mass in grams of each element. Begin by finding the moles of each:

$$34.97gFe\left(\frac{molFe}{55.85g}\right)=0.6261molFe$$

$$15.03gO\left(\frac{molO}{16.00g}\right)=0.9394molO$$

Next, derive the iron-to-oxygen molar ratio by dividing by the lesser number of moles:

$$\frac{0.6261}{0.6261}=1.000molFe$$

$$\frac{0.9394}{0.6261}=1.500molO$$

The ratio is 1.000 mol of iron to 1.500 mol of oxygen ($Fe_1O_{1.5}$). Finally, multiply the ratio by two to get the smallest possible whole number subscripts while still maintaining the correct iron-to-oxygen ratio:

$$2\left(\mathrm{Fe_1O_{1.5}}\right)=\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$$

The empirical formula is $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$.

? Exercise 2.3.3

What is the empirical formula of a compound if a sample contains 0.130 g of nitrogen and 0.370 g of oxygen?

Answer

$\mathrm{N_2O_5}$

Link to Learning

For additional worked examples illustrating the derivation of empirical formulas, watch the brief video clip.

Deriving Empirical Formulas from Percent Composition

Finally, with regard to deriving empirical formulas, consider instances in which a compound's percent composition is available rather than the absolute masses of the compound's constituent elements. In such cases, the percent composition can be used to calculate the masses of elements present in any convenient mass of compound; these masses can then be used to derive the empirical formula in the usual fashion.

Example 2.3.4: Determining an Empirical Formula from Percent Composition

The bacterial fermentation of grain to produce ethanol forms a gas with a percent composition of 27.29% C and 72.71% O (Figure 2.3.3). What is the empirical formula for this gas?



Figure 2.3.3: An oxide of carbon is removed from these fermentation tanks through the large copper pipes at the top. (credit: "Dual Freq"/Wikimedia Commons)

Solution

Since the scale for percentages is 100, it is most convenient to calculate the mass of elements present in a sample weighing 100 g. The calculation is "most convenient" because, per the definition for percent composition, the mass of a given element in grams is numerically equivalent to the element's mass percentage. This numerical equivalence results from the definition of the "percentage" unit, whose name is derived from the Latin phrase *per centum* meaning "by the hundred." Considering this definition, the mass percentages provided may be more conveniently expressed as fractions:

$$27.29\%C = \frac{27.29gC}{100g\text{ compound}}$$
$$72.71\%O = \frac{72.71gO}{100g\text{ compound}}$$

The molar amounts of carbon and oxygen in a 100-g sample are calculated by dividing each element's mass by its molar mass:

$$27.29gC\left(\frac{molC}{12.01g}\right) = 2.272molC$$
$$72.71gO\left(\frac{molo}{16.00g}\right) = 4.544molO$$

Coefficients for the tentative empirical formula are derived by dividing each molar amount by the lesser of the two:

$$\frac{2.272molC}{2.272} = 1$$
$$\frac{4.544molO}{2.272} = 2$$

Since the resulting ratio is one carbon to two oxygen atoms, the empirical formula is CO_2.

Exercise 2.3.4

What is the empirical formula of a compound containing 40.0% C, 6.71% H, and 53.28% O?

Answer

CH_2O

Derivation of Molecular Formulas

Recall that empirical formulas are symbols representing the *relative* numbers of a compound's elements. Determining the *absolute* numbers of atoms that compose a single molecule of a covalent compound requires knowledge of both its empirical formula and its molecular mass or molar mass. These quantities may be determined experimentally by various measurement techniques. Molecular mass, for example, is often derived from the mass spectrum of the compound (see discussion of this technique in the previous chapter on atoms and molecules). Molar mass can be measured by a number of experimental methods, many of which will be introduced in later chapters of this text.

Molecular formulas are derived by comparing the compound's molecular or molar mass to its **empirical formula mass**. As the name suggests, an empirical formula mass is the sum of the average atomic masses of all the atoms represented in an empirical formula. If the molecular (or molar) mass of the substance is known, it may be divided by the empirical formula mass to yield the number of empirical formula units per molecule (*n*):

$$\frac{\text{molecular or molar mass (amu or } \frac{\text{g}}{\text{mol}})}{\text{empirical formula mass } (\text{amu or } \frac{\text{g}}{\text{mol}})} = n \text{ formula units/molecule}$$

The molecular formula is then obtained by multiplying each subscript in the empirical formula by *n*, as shown by the generic empirical formula A_xB_y:

$$(A_xB_y)_n = A_{nx}B_{ny}$$

For example, consider a covalent compound whose empirical formula is determined to be CH_2O. The empirical formula mass for this compound is approximately 30 amu (the sum of 12 amu for one C atom, 2 amu for two H atoms, and 16 amu for one O atom). If the compound's molecular mass is determined to be 180 amu, this indicates that molecules of this compound contain six times the number of atoms represented in the empirical formula:

$$\frac{180 \text{ amu / molecule}}{30 \frac{\text{amu}}{\text{formula unit}}} = 6 \text{ formula units / molecule}$$

Molecules of this compound are then represented by molecular formulas whose subscripts are six times greater than those in the empirical formula:

$$(CH_2O)_6 = C_6H_{12}O_6$$

Note that this same approach may be used when the molar mass (g/mol) instead of the molecular mass (amu) is used. In this case, *one mole* of empirical formula units and molecules is considered, as opposed to single units and molecules.

Example 2.3.5: Determination of the Molecular Formula for Nicotine

Nicotine, an alkaloid in the nightshade family of plants that is mainly responsible for the addictive nature of cigarettes, contains 74.02% C, 8.710% H, and 17.27% N. If 40.57 g of nicotine contains 0.2500 mol nicotine, what is the molecular formula?

Solution

Determining the molecular formula from the provided data will require comparison of the compound's empirical formula mass to its molar mass. As the first step, use the percent composition to derive the compound's empirical formula. Assuming a convenient, a 100-g sample of nicotine yields the following molar amounts of its elements:

$$(74.02 gC)\left(\frac{1 molC}{12.01 gC}\right) = 6.163 molC$$

$$(8.710 gH)\left(\frac{1 molH}{1.008 gH}\right) = 8.641 molH$$

$$(17.27 gN)\left(\frac{1 molN}{14.01 gN}\right) = 1.233 molN$$

Next, calculate the molar ratios of these elements relative to the least abundant element, N.

$$6.163\ \text{mol C}/1.233\ \text{mol N} = 58.641\ \text{mol H}/1.233\ \text{mol N} = 71.233\ \text{mol N}/1.233\ \text{mol N} = 1$$

$$\frac{1.233}{1.233} = 1.000 molN$$
$$\frac{6.163}{1.233} = 4.998 molC$$
$$\frac{8.624}{1.233} = 6.994 molH$$

The C-to-N and H-to-N molar ratios are adequately close to whole numbers, and so the empirical formula is C_5H_7N. The empirical formula mass for this compound is therefore 81.13 amu/formula unit, or 81.13 g/mol formula unit.

Calculate the molar mass for nicotine from the given mass and molar amount of compound:

$$\frac{40.57g\ \text{nicotine}}{0.2500mol\ \text{nicotine}} = \frac{162.3g}{mol}$$

Comparing the molar mass and empirical formula mass indicates that each nicotine molecule contains two formula units:

$$\frac{162.3g/mol}{81.13\frac{g}{\text{formula unit}}} = 2\ \text{formula units / molecule}$$

Finally, derive the molecular formula for nicotine from the empirical formula by multiplying each subscript by two:

$$(C_5H_7N)_2 = C_{10}H_{14}N_2$$

Exercise 2.3.1

What is the molecular formula of a compound with a percent composition of 49.47% C, 5.201% H, 28.84% N, and 16.48% O, and a molecular mass of 194.2 amu?

Answer

$C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$

This page titled 2.3: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.2: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.4: Molarity

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the fundamental properties of solutions
- Calculate solution concentrations using molarity
- Perform dilution calculations using the dilution equation

Preceding sections of this chapter focused on the composition of substances: samples of matter that contain only one type of element or compound. However, mixtures—samples of matter containing two or more substances physically combined—are more commonly encountered in nature than are pure substances. Similar to a pure substance, the relative composition of a mixture plays an important role in determining its properties. The relative amount of oxygen in a planet's atmosphere determines its ability to sustain aerobic life. The relative amounts of iron, carbon, nickel, and other elements in steel (a mixture known as an "alloy") determine its physical strength and resistance to corrosion. The relative amount of the active ingredient in a medicine determines its effectiveness in achieving the desired pharmacological effect. The relative amount of sugar in a beverage determines its sweetness (see Figure 2.4.1). This section will describe one of the most common ways in which the relative compositions of mixtures may be quantified.



Figure 2.4.1: Sugar is one of many components in the complex mixture known as coffee. The amount of sugar in a given amount of coffee is an important determinant of the beverage's sweetness. (credit: Jane Whitney)

Solutions

Solutions have previously been defined as homogeneous mixtures, meaning that the composition of the mixture (and therefore its properties) is uniform throughout its entire volume. Solutions occur frequently in nature and have also been implemented in many forms of manmade technology. A more thorough treatment of solution properties is provided in the chapter on solutions and colloids, but provided here is an introduction to some of the basic properties of solutions.

The relative amount of a given solution component is known as its **concentration**. Often, though not always, a solution contains one component with a concentration that is significantly greater than that of all other components. This component is called the solvent and may be viewed as the medium in which the other components are dispersed, or **dissolved**. Solutions in which water is the solvent are, of course, very common on our planet. A solution in which water is the solvent is called an **aqueous solution**.

A **solute** is a component of a solution that is typically present at a much lower concentration than the solvent. Solute concentrations are often described with qualitative terms such as **dilute** (of relatively low concentration) and **concentrated** (of relatively high concentration).

Concentrations may be quantitatively assessed using a wide variety of measurement units, each convenient for particular applications. **Molarity** (*M*) is a useful concentration unit for many applications in chemistry. Molarity is defined as the number of moles of solute in exactly 1 liter (1 L) of the solution:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}}$$

Example 2.4.1: Calculating Molar Concentrations

A 355-mL soft drink sample contains 0.133 mol of sucrose (table sugar). What is the molar concentration of sucrose in the beverage?

Solution

Since the molar amount of solute and the volume of solution are both given, the molarity can be calculated using the definition of molarity. Per this definition, the solution volume must be converted from mL to L:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}} = \frac{0.133\,\text{mol}}{355\,\text{mL} \times \frac{1\,\text{L}}{1000\,\text{mL}}} = 0.375M$$

Exercise 2.4.1

A teaspoon of table sugar contains about 0.01 mol sucrose. What is the molarity of sucrose if a teaspoon of sugar has been dissolved in a cup of tea with a volume of 200 mL?

Answer

0.05 *M*

Example 2.4.2: Deriving Moles and Volumes from Molar Concentrations

How much sugar (mol) is contained in a modest sip (~10 mL) of the soft drink from Example 2.4.1?

Solution

Rearrange the definition of molarity to isolate the quantity sought, moles of sugar, then substitute the value for molarity derived in Example 2.4.1, 0.375 *M*:

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \frac{\text{mol solute}}{L\text{ solution}} \\ \text{mol solute} &= M \times L\text{ solution} \\ &= 0.375\frac{\text{mol sugar}}{L} \times \left(10\,\text{mL} \times \frac{1\,\text{L}}{1000\,\text{mL}}\right) \\ &= 0.004\,\text{mol sugar} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 2.4.2

What volume (mL) of the sweetened tea described in Example 2.4.1 contains the same amount of sugar (mol) as 10 mL of the soft drink in this example?

Answer

80 mL

Example 2.4.3: Calculating Molar Concentrations from the Mass of Solute

Distilled white vinegar (Figure 2.4.2) is a solution of acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, in water. A 0.500-L vinegar solution contains 25.2 g of acetic acid. What is the concentration of the acetic acid solution in units of molarity?



Figure 2.4.2: Distilled white vinegar is a solution of acetic acid in water.

Solution

As in previous examples, the definition of molarity is the primary equation used to calculate the quantity sought. Since the mass of solute is provided instead of its molar amount, use the solute's molar mass to obtain the amount of solute in moles:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}} = \frac{25.2\ \text{g}\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}]\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}}{60.052\ \text{g}\ \text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}}}{0.500\ \text{L solution}} = 0.839\ \text{M}$$

Exercise 2.4.3

Calculate the molarity of 6.52 g of $CoCl_2$ (128.9 g/mol) dissolved in an aqueous solution with a total volume of 75.0 mL.

Answer

0.674 *M*

Example 2.4.4: Determining the Mass of Solute in a Given Volume of Solution

How many grams of NaCl are contained in 0.250 L of a 5.30-*M* solution?

Solution

The volume and molarity of the solution are specified, so the amount (mol) of solute is easily computed as demonstrated in Example 2.4.2:

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \frac{\text{mol solute}}{L\ \text{solution}} \\ \text{mol solute} &= M \times L\ \text{solution} \\ &= 5.30 \frac{\text{mol NaCl}}{\text{L}} \times 0.250 L \\ &= 1.325\ \text{mol NaCl} \end{aligned}$$

Finally, this molar amount is used to derive the mass of NaCl:

$$1.325\ \text{mol NaCl} \times \frac{58.44\ \text{g NaCl}}{1\ \text{mol NaCl}} = 77.4\ \text{g NaCl}$$

Exercise 2.4.4

How many grams of $CaCl_2$ (110.98 g/mol) are contained in 250.0 mL of a 0.200-*M* solution of calcium chloride?

Answer

5.55 g $CaCl_2$

When performing calculations stepwise, as in Example 2.4.4, it is important to refrain from rounding any intermediate calculation results, which can lead to rounding errors in the final result. In Example 2.4.4, the molar amount of NaCl computed in the first step, 1.325 mol, would be properly rounded to 1.32 mol if it were to be reported; however, although the last digit (5) is not significant, it must be retained as a guard digit in the intermediate calculation. If the guard digit had not been retained, the final calculation for the mass of NaCl would have been 77.1 g, a difference of 0.3 g.

In addition to retaining a guard digit for intermediate calculations, rounding errors may also be avoided by performing computations in a single step (see Example 2.4.5). This eliminates intermediate steps so that only the final result is rounded.

Example 2.4.5: Determining the Volume of Solution Containing a Given Mass of Solute

In Example 2.4.3, the concentration of acetic acid in white vinegar was determined to be 0.839 *M*. What volume of vinegar contains 75.6 g of acetic acid?

Solution

First, use the molar mass to calculate moles of acetic acid from the given mass:

$$\text{g solute} \times \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{g solute}} = \text{mol solute}$$

Then, use the molarity of the solution to calculate the volume of solution containing this molar amount of solute:

$$\text{mol solute} \times \frac{\text{L solution}}{\text{mol solute}} = \text{L solution}$$

Combining these two steps into one yields:

$$\text{g solute} \times \left(\frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{g solute}}\right) \times \left(\frac{\text{L solution}}{\text{mol solute}}\right) = \text{L solution}$$

$$75.6\ \text{g}\ CH_3CO_2H \left(\frac{\text{mol}\ CH_3CO_2H}{60.05\ \text{g}}\right) \left(\frac{\text{L solution}}{0.839\ \text{mol CH3}\ CO_2H}\right) = 1.50\ \text{L solution}$$

Exercise 2.4.5

What volume of a 1.50-*M* KBr solution contains 66.0 g KBr?

Answer

0.370 L

Dilution of Solutions

Dilution is the process whereby the concentration of a solution is lessened by the addition of solvent. For example, a glass of iced tea becomes increasingly diluted as the ice melts. The water from the melting ice increases the volume of the solvent (water) and the overall volume of the solution (iced tea), thereby reducing the relative concentrations of the solutes that give the beverage its taste (Figure 2.4.3).

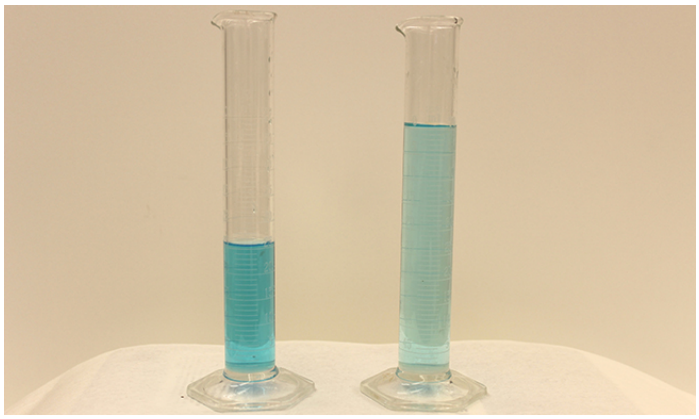


Figure 2.4.3: Both solutions contain the same mass of copper nitrate. The solution on the right is more dilute because the copper nitrate is dissolved in more solvent. (credit: Mark Ott)

Dilution is also a common means of preparing solutions of a desired concentration. By adding solvent to a measured portion of a more concentrated *stock solution*, a solution of lesser concentration may be prepared. For example, commercial pesticides are typically sold as solutions in which the active ingredients are far more concentrated than is appropriate for their application. Before they can be used on crops, the pesticides must be diluted. This is also a very common practice for the preparation of a number of common laboratory reagents.

A simple mathematical relationship can be used to relate the volumes and concentrations of a solution before and after the dilution process. According to the definition of molarity, the number of moles of solute in a solution (n) is equal to the product of the solution's molarity (M) and its volume in liters (L):

$$n = ML$$

Expressions like these may be written for a solution before and after it is diluted:

$$n_1 = M_1 L_1$$

$$n_2 = M_2 L_2$$

where the subscripts "1" and "2" refer to the solution before and after the dilution, respectively. Since the dilution process *does not change the amount of solute in the solution*, $n_1 = n_2$. Thus, these two equations may be set equal to one another:

$$M_1 L_1 = M_2 L_2$$

This relation is commonly referred to as the dilution equation. Although this equation uses molarity as the unit of concentration and liters as the unit of volume, other units of concentration and volume may be used as long as the units properly cancel per the factor-label method. Reflecting this versatility, the dilution equation is often written in the more general form:

$$C_1 V_1 = C_2 V_2$$

where \(C\) and \(V\) are concentration and volume, respectively.

Link to Learning

Use the simulation to explore the relations between solute amount, solution volume, and concentration and to confirm the dilution equation.

Example 2.4.6: Determining the Concentration of a Diluted Solution

If 0.850 L of a 5.00-*M* solution of copper nitrate, $Cu(NO_3)_2$, is diluted to a volume of 1.80 L by the addition of water, what is the molarity of the diluted solution?

Solution

The stock concentration, C_1, and volume, V_1, are provided as well as the volume of the diluted solution, V_2. Rearrange the dilution equation to isolate the unknown property, the concentration of the diluted solution, C_2:

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

$$C_2 = \frac{C_1V_1}{V_2}$$

Since the stock solution is being diluted by more than two-fold (volume is increased from 0.85 L to 1.80 L), the diluted solution's concentration is expected to be less than one-half 5 *M*. This ballpark estimate will be compared to the calculated result to check for any gross errors in computation (for example, such as an improper substitution of the given quantities). Substituting the given values for the terms on the right side of this equation yields:

$$C_2 = \frac{0.850L \times 5.00\,\frac{mol}{L}}{1.80L} = 2.36M$$

This result compares well to our ballpark estimate (it's a bit less than one-half the stock concentration, 5 *M*).

Exercise 2.4.6

What is the concentration of the solution that results from diluting 25.0 mL of a 2.04-*M* solution of CH_3OH to 500.0 mL?

Answer

0.102 *M* CH_3OH

Example 2.4.7: Volume of a Diluted Solution

What volume of 0.12 *M* HBr can be prepared from 11 mL (0.011 L) of 0.45 *M* HBr?

Solution

Provided are the volume and concentration of a stock solution, V_1 and C_1, and the concentration of the resultant diluted solution, C_2. Find the volume of the diluted solution, V_2 by rearranging the dilution equation to isolate V_2:

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

$$V_2 = \frac{C_1V_1}{C_2}$$

Since the diluted concentration (0.12 *M*) is slightly more than one-fourth the original concentration (0.45 *M*), the volume of the diluted solution is expected to be roughly four times the original volume, or around 44 mL. Substituting the given values and solving for the unknown volume yields:

$$V_2 = \frac{(0.45\,\text{M})(0.011\,\text{L})}{(0.12\,\text{M})}$$

$$= 0.041L$$

The volume of the 0.12-*M* solution is 0.041 L (41 mL). The result is reasonable and compares well with the rough estimate.

Exercise 2.4.7

A laboratory experiment calls for 0.125 *M* HNO_3. What volume of 0.125 *M* HNO_3 can be prepared from 0.250 L of 1.88 *M* HNO_3?

Answer

3.76 L

Example 2.4.8: Volume of a Concentrated Solution Needed for Dilution

What volume of 1.59 *M* KOH is required to prepare 5.00 L of 0.100 *M* KOH?

Solution

Given are the concentration of a stock solution, C_1, and the volume and concentration of the resultant diluted solution, V_2 and C_2. Find the volume of the stock solution, V_1 by rearranging the dilution equation to isolate V_1:

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

$$V_1 = \frac{C_2V_2}{C_1}$$

Since the concentration of the diluted solution 0.100 *M* is roughly one-sixteenth that of the stock solution (1.59 *M*), the volume of the stock solution is expected to be about one-sixteenth that of the diluted solution, or around 0.3 liters. Substituting the given values and solving for the unknown volume yields:

$$V_1 = \frac{(0.100\,\text{M})(5.00\,\text{L})}{1.59\,\text{M}}$$

$$= 0.314\,\text{L}$$

Thus, 0.314 L of the 1.59-*M* solution is needed to prepare the desired solution. This result is consistent with the rough estimate.

Exercise 2.4.8

What volume of a 0.575-*M* solution of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) can be prepared from 50.00 mL of a 3.00-*M* glucose solution?

Answer

0.261 L

This page titled 2.4: Molarity is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.3: Molarity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define the concentration units of mass percentage, volume percentage, mass-volume percentage, parts-per-million (ppm), and parts-per-billion (ppb)
- Perform computations relating a solution's concentration and its components' volumes and/or masses using these units

The previous section introduced molarity, a very useful measurement unit for evaluating the concentration of solutions. However, molarity is only one measure of concentration. This section will describe some other units of concentration that are commonly used in various applications, either for convenience or by convention.

Mass Percentage

Earlier in this chapter, percent composition was introduced as a measure of the relative amount of a given element in a compound. Percentages are also commonly used to express the composition of mixtures, including solutions. The mass percentage of a solution component is defined as the ratio of the component's mass to the solution's mass, expressed as a percentage:

$$\text{mass percentage} = \frac{\text{mass of component}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 100\%$$

Mass percentage is also referred to by similar names such as *percent mass*, *percent weight*, *weight/weight percent*, and other variations on this theme. The most common symbol for mass percentage is simply the percent sign, %, although more detailed symbols are often used including %mass, %weight, and (w/w)%. Use of these more detailed symbols can prevent confusion of mass percentages with other types of percentages, such as volume percentages (to be discussed later in this section).

Mass percentages are popular concentration units for consumer products. The label of a typical liquid bleach bottle (Figure 2.5.1) cites the concentration of its active ingredient, sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl), as being 7.4%. A 100.0-g sample of bleach would therefore contain 7.4 g of NaOCl.



Figure 2.5.1: Liquid bleach is an aqueous solution of sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl). This brand has a concentration of 7.4% NaOCl by mass.

Example 2.5.1: Calculation of Percent by Mass

A 5.0-g sample of spinal fluid contains 3.75 mg (0.00375 g) of glucose. What is the percent by mass of glucose in spinal fluid?

Solution

The spinal fluid sample contains roughly 4 mg of glucose in 5000 mg of fluid, so the mass fraction of glucose should be a bit less than one part in 1000, or about 0.1%. Substituting the given masses into the equation defining mass percentage yields:

$$\%\ \text{glucose} = \frac{3.75\ \text{mg glucose} \times \frac{1\ \text{g}}{1000\ \text{mg}}}{5.0\ \text{g spinal fluid}} = 0.075\%$$

The computed mass percentage agrees with our rough estimate (it's a bit less than 0.1%).

Note that while any mass unit may be used to compute a mass percentage (mg, g, kg, oz, and so on), the same unit must be used for both the solute and the solution so that the mass units cancel, yielding a dimensionless ratio. In this case, the solute mass unit in the numerator was converted from mg to g to match the units in the denominator. Alternatively, the spinal fluid mass unit in the denominator could have been converted from g to mg instead. As long as identical mass units are used for both solute and solution, the computed mass percentage will be correct.

? Exercise 2.5.1

A bottle of a tile cleanser contains 135 g of HCl and 775 g of water. What is the percent by mass of HCl in this cleanser?

Answer

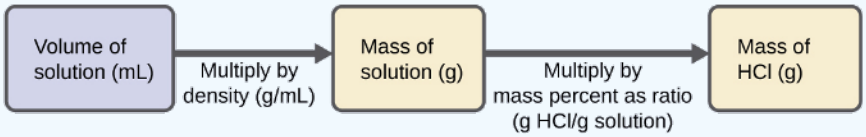
14.8%

✓ Example 2.5.2: Calculations using Mass Percentage

"Concentrated" hydrochloric acid is an aqueous solution of 37.2% HCl that is commonly used as a laboratory reagent. The density of this solution is 1.19 g/mL. What mass of HCl is contained in 0.500 L of this solution?

Solution

The HCl concentration is near 40%, so a 100-g portion of this solution would contain about 40 g of HCl. Since the solution density isn't greatly different from that of water (1 g/mL), a reasonable estimate of the HCl mass in 500 g (0.5 L) of the solution is about five times greater than that in a 100 g portion, or 5 40 = 200 g. In order to derive the mass of solute in a solution from its mass percentage, the mass of the solution must be known. Using the solution density given, convert the solution's volume to mass, and then use the given mass percentage to calculate the solute mass. This mathematical approach is outlined in this flowchart:



For proper unit cancellation, the 0.500-L volume is converted into 500 mL, and the mass percentage is expressed as a ratio, 37.2 g HCl/g solution:

$$500 mL\ \text{solution} \left(\frac{1.19\ \text{g solution}}{mL\ \text{solution}}\right)\left(\frac{37.2\ \text{g HCl}}{100\ \text{g solution}}\right) = 221\ \text{g HCl}$$

This mass of HCl is consistent with our rough estimate of approximately 200 g.

? Exercise 2.5.2

What volume of concentrated HCl solution contains 125 g of HCl?

Answer

282 mL

Volume Percentage

Liquid volumes over a wide range of magnitudes are conveniently measured using common and relatively inexpensive laboratory equipment. The concentration of a solution formed by dissolving a liquid solute in a liquid solvent is therefore often expressed as a

volume percentage, %vol or (v/v)%:

$$\text{volume percentage} = \frac{\text{volume solute}}{\text{volume solution}} \times 100\%$$

Example 2.5.3: Calculations using Volume Percentage

Rubbing alcohol (isopropanol) is usually sold as a 70%vol aqueous solution. If the density of isopropyl alcohol is 0.785 g/mL, how many grams of isopropyl alcohol are present in a 355 mL bottle of rubbing alcohol?

Solution

Per the definition of volume percentage, the isopropanol volume is 70% of the total solution volume. Multiplying the isopropanol volume by its density yields the requested mass:

$$(355\,\text{mL solution}) \left(\frac{70\,\text{mL isopropyl alcohol}}{100\,\text{mL solution}}\right) \left(\frac{0.785\,\text{g isopropyl alcohol}}{1\,\text{mL isopropyl alcohol}}\right) = 195\,\text{g isopropyl}$$

Exercise 2.5.3

Wine is approximately 12% ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH) by volume. Ethanol has a molar mass of 46.06 g/mol and a density 0.789 g/mL. How many moles of ethanol are present in a 750-mL bottle of wine?

Answer

1.5 mol ethanol

Mass-Volume Percentage

"Mixed" percentage units, derived from the mass of solute and the volume of solution, are popular for certain biochemical and medical applications. A **mass-volume percent** is a ratio of a solute's mass to the solution's volume expressed as a percentage. The specific units used for solute mass and solution volume may vary, depending on the solution. For example, physiological saline solution, used to prepare intravenous fluids, has a concentration of 0.9% mass/volume (m/v), indicating that the composition is 0.9 g of solute per 100 mL of solution. The concentration of glucose in blood (commonly referred to as "blood sugar") is also typically expressed in terms of a mass-volume ratio. Though not expressed explicitly as a percentage, its concentration is usually given in milligrams of glucose per deciliter (100 mL) of blood (Figure 2.5.2).



(a) (b)

Figure 2.5.2: "Mixed" mass-volume units are commonly encountered in medical settings. (a) The NaCl concentration of physiological saline is 0.9% (m/v). (b) This device measures glucose levels in a sample of blood. The normal range for glucose concentration in blood (fasting) is around 70–100 mg/dL. (credit a: modification of work by "The National Guard"/Flickr; credit b: modification of work by Biswarup Ganguly)

Parts per Million and Parts per Billion

Very low solute concentrations are often expressed using appropriately small units such as parts per million (ppm) or parts per billion (ppb). Like percentage ("part per hundred") units, ppm and ppb may be defined in terms of masses, volumes, or mixed mass-volume units. There are also ppm and ppb units defined with respect to numbers of atoms and molecules.

The mass-based definitions of ppm and ppb are given here:

$$\text{ppm} = \frac{\text{mass solute}}{\text{mass solution}} \times 10^6 \text{ ppm}$$

$$\text{ppb} = \frac{\text{mass solute}}{\text{mass solution}} \times 10^9 \text{ ppb}$$

Both ppm and ppb are convenient units for reporting the concentrations of pollutants and other trace contaminants in water. Concentrations of these contaminants are typically very low in treated and natural waters, and their levels cannot exceed relatively low concentration thresholds without causing adverse effects on health and wildlife. For example, the EPA has identified the maximum safe level of fluoride ion in tap water to be 4 ppm. Inline water filters are designed to reduce the concentration of fluoride and several other trace-level contaminants in tap water (Figure 2.5.3).



(a) (b)

Figure 2.5.3: (a) In some areas, trace-level concentrations of contaminants can render unfiltered tap water unsafe for drinking and cooking. (b) Inline water filters reduce the concentration of solutes in tap water. (credit a: modification of work by Jenn Durfey; credit b: modification of work by "vastateparkstaff"/Wikimedia commons)

Example 2.5.4: Calculation of Parts per Million and Parts per Billion Concentrations

According to the EPA, when the concentration of lead in tap water reaches 15 ppb, certain remedial actions must be taken. What is this concentration in ppm? At this concentration, what mass of lead (μg) would be contained in a typical glass of water (300 mL)?

Solution

The definitions of the ppm and ppb units may be used to convert the given concentration from ppb to ppm. Comparing these two unit definitions shows that ppm is 1000 times greater than ppb (1 ppm = 10^3 ppb). Thus:

$$15 \text{ ppb} \times \frac{1 \text{ ppm}}{10^3 \text{ ppb}} = 0.015 \text{ ppm}$$

The definition of the ppb unit may be used to calculate the requested mass if the mass of the solution is provided. Since the volume of solution (300 mL) is given, its density must be used to derive the corresponding mass. Assume the density of tap water to be roughly the same as that of pure water (~1.00 g/mL), since the concentrations of any dissolved substances should not be very large. Rearranging the equation defining the ppb unit and substituting the given quantities yields:

$$\text{ppb} = \frac{\text{mass solute}}{\text{mass solution}} \times 10^9 \text{ ppb}$$

$$\text{mass solute} = \frac{\text{ppb} \times \text{ mass solution}}{10^9 \text{ ppb}}$$

$$= \frac{15 \text{ ppb} \times 300 mL \times \frac{1.00 \text{ g}}{\text{mL}}}{10^9 \text{ ppb}} = 4.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ g}$$

Finally, convert this mass to the requested unit of micrograms:

$$4.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ g} \times \frac{1 \, \mu\text{g}}{10^{-6} \text{ g}} = 4.5 \, \mu\text{g}$$

? Exercise 2.5.4

A 50.0-g sample of industrial wastewater was determined to contain 0.48 mg of mercury. Express the mercury concentration of the wastewater in ppm and ppb units.

Answer

9.6 ppm, 9600 ppb

This page titled 2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.4: Other Units for Solution Concentrations** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

2.6: Key Terms

aqueous solution | solution for which water is the solvent

Avogadro's number (N_A) | experimentally determined value of the number of entities comprising 1 mole of substance, equal to $6.022\ 10^{23}\ mol^{-1}$

concentrated | qualitative term for a solution containing solute at a relatively high concentration

concentration | quantitative measure of the relative amounts of solute and solvent present in a solution

dilute | qualitative term for a solution containing solute at a relatively low concentration

dilution | process of adding solvent to a solution in order to lower the concentration of solutes

dissolved | describes the process by which solute components are dispersed in a solvent

empirical formula mass | sum of average atomic masses for all atoms represented in an empirical formula

formula mass | sum of the average masses for all atoms represented in a chemical formula; for covalent compounds, this is also the molecular mass

mass percentage | ratio of solute-to-solution mass expressed as a percentage

mass-volume percent | ratio of solute mass to solution volume, expressed as a percentage

molar mass | mass in grams of 1 mole of a substance

molarity (*M*) | unit of concentration, defined as the number of moles of solute dissolved in 1 liter of solution

mole | amount of substance containing the same number of atoms, molecules, ions, or other entities as the number of atoms in exactly 12 grams of ^{12}C

parts per billion (ppb) | ratio of solute-to-solution mass multiplied by 10^9

parts per million (ppm) | ratio of solute-to-solution mass multiplied by 10^6

percent composition | percentage by mass of the various elements in a compound

solute | solution component present in a concentration less than that of the solvent

solvent | solution component present in a concentration that is higher relative to other components

volume percentage | ratio of solute-to-solution volume expressed as a percentage

2.6: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.5: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

2.7: Key Equations

$$(A_xB_y)_n = A_{nx}B_{ny}$$

$$C_1V_1 = C_2V_2$$

2.7: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.6: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

2.8: Summary

The formula mass of a substance is the sum of the average atomic masses of each atom represented in the chemical formula and is expressed in atomic mass units. The formula mass of a covalent compound is also called the molecular mass. A convenient amount unit for expressing very large numbers of atoms or molecules is the mole. Experimental measurements have determined the number of entities composing 1 mole of substance to be 6.022 10^{23}, a quantity called Avogadro's number. The mass in grams of 1 mole of substance is its molar mass. Due to the use of the same reference substance in defining the atomic mass unit and the mole, the formula mass (amu) and molar mass (g/mol) for any substance are numerically equivalent (for example, one H_2O molecule weighs approximately18 amu and 1 mole of H_2O molecules weighs approximately 18 g).

The chemical identity of a substance is defined by the types and relative numbers of atoms composing its fundamental entities (molecules in the case of covalent compounds, ions in the case of ionic compounds). A compound's percent composition provides the mass percentage of each element in the compound, and it is often experimentally determined and used to derive the compound's empirical formula. The empirical formula mass of a covalent compound may be compared to the compound's molecular or molar mass to derive a molecular formula.

Solutions are homogeneous mixtures. Many solutions contain one component, called the solvent, in which other components, called solutes, are dissolved. An aqueous solution is one for which the solvent is water. The concentration of a solution is a measure of the relative amount of solute in a given amount of solution. Concentrations may be measured using various units, with one very useful unit being molarity, defined as the number of moles of solute per liter of solution. The solute concentration of a solution may be decreased by adding solvent, a process referred to as dilution. The dilution equation is a simple relation between concentrations and volumes of a solution before and after dilution.

In addition to molarity, a number of other solution concentration units are used in various applications. Percentage concentrations based on the solution components' masses, volumes, or both are useful for expressing relatively high concentrations, whereas lower concentrations are conveniently expressed using ppm or ppb units. These units are popular in environmental, medical, and other fields where mole-based units such as molarity are not as commonly used.

2.8: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.7: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

2.9: Exercises

1.

What is the total mass (amu) of carbon in each of the following molecules?

a. CH_4
b. $CHCl_3$
c. $C_{12}H_{10}O_6$
d. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

2.

What is the total mass of hydrogen in each of the molecules?

a. CH_4
b. $CHCl_3$
c. $C_{12}H_{10}O_6$
d. $CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$

3.

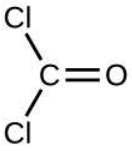
Calculate the molecular or formula mass of each of the following:

a. P_4
b. H_2O
c. $Ca(NO_3)_2$
d. CH_3CO_2H (acetic acid)
e. $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ (sucrose, cane sugar)

4.

Determine the molecular mass of the following compounds:

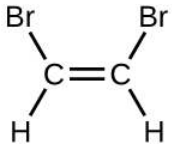
(a)



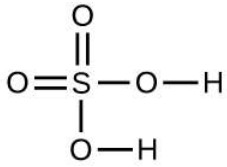
(b)



(c)



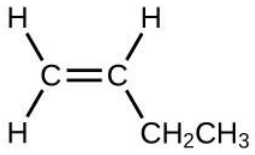
(d)



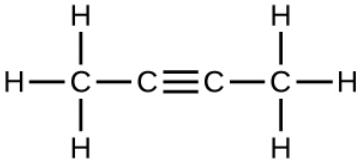
5.

Determine the molecular mass of the following compounds:

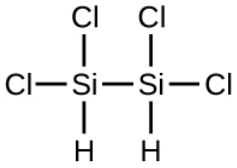
(a)



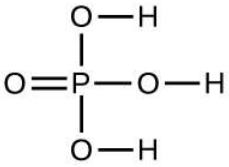
(b)



(c)



(d)



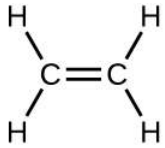
6.

Which molecule has a molecular mass of 28.05 amu?

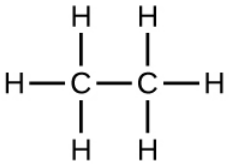
(a)



(b)



(c)



7.

Write a sentence that describes how to determine the number of moles of a compound in a known mass of the compound using its molecular formula.

8.

Compare 1 mole of H_2, 1 mole of O_2, and 1 mole of F_2.

a. Which has the largest number of molecules? Explain why.
b. Which has the greatest mass? Explain why.

9.

Which contains the greatest mass of oxygen: 0.75 mol of ethanol (C_2H_5OH), 0.60 mol of formic acid (HCO_2H), or 1.0 mol of water (H_2O)? Explain why.

10.

Which contains the greatest number of moles of oxygen atoms: 1 mol of ethanol (C_2H_5OH), 1 mol of formic acid (HCO_2H), or 1 mol of water (H_2O)? Explain why.

11.

How are the molecular mass and the molar mass of a compound similar and how are they different?

12.

Calculate the molar mass of each of the following compounds:

a. hydrogen fluoride, HF
b. ammonia, NH_3
c. nitric acid, HNO_3
d. silver sulfate, Ag_2SO_4
e. boric acid, $B(OH)_3$

13.

Calculate the molar mass of each of the following:

a. S_8
b. C_5H_{12}
c. $Sc_2(SO_4)_3$
d. CH_3COCH_3 (acetone)
e. $C_6H_{12}O_6$ (glucose)

14.

Calculate the empirical or molecular formula mass and the molar mass of each of the following minerals:

a. limestone, $CaCO_3$
b. halite, NaCl
c. beryl, $Be_3Al_2Si_6O_{18}$
d. malachite, $Cu_2(OH)_2CO_3$
e. turquoise, $CuAl_6(PO_4)_4(OH)_8(H_2O)_4$

15.

Calculate the molar mass of each of the following:

a. the anesthetic halothane, $C_2HBrClF_3$
b. the herbicide paraquat, $C_{12}H_{14}N_2Cl_2$
c. caffeine, $C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$
d. urea, $CO(NH_2)_2$
e. a typical soap, $C_{17}H_{35}CO_2Na$

16.

Determine the number of moles of compound and the number of moles of each type of atom in each of the following:

a. 25.0 g of propylene, C_3H_6
b. 3.06 10^{-3} g of the amino acid glycine, $C_2H_5NO_2$
c. 25 lb of the herbicide Treflan, $C_{13}H_{16}N_2O_4F$ (1 lb = 454 g)
d. 0.125 kg of the insecticide Paris Green, $Cu_4(AsO_3)_2(CH_3CO_2)_2$
e. 325 mg of aspirin, $C_6H_4(CO_2H)(CO_2CH_3)$

17.

Determine the mass of each of the following:

a. 0.0146 mol KOH

b. 10.2 mol ethane, C_2H_6
c. 1.6 10^{-3} mol $Na_2 SO_4$
d. 6.854 10^3 mol glucose, $C_6 H_{12} O_6$
e. 2.86 mol $Co(NH_3)_6Cl_3$

18.

Determine the number of moles of the compound and determine the number of moles of each type of atom in each of the following:

a. 2.12 g of potassium bromide, KBr
b. 0.1488 g of phosphoric acid, H_3PO_4
c. 23 kg of calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$
d. 78.452 g of aluminum sulfate, $Al_2(SO_4)_3$
e. 0.1250 mg of caffeine, $C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$

19.

Determine the mass of each of the following:

a. 2.345 mol LiCl
b. 0.0872 mol acetylene, C_2H_2
c. 3.3 10^{-2} mol $Na_2 CO_3$
d. 1.23 10^3 mol fructose, $C_6 H_{12} O_6$
e. 0.5758 mol $FeSO_4(H_2O)_7$

20.

The approximate minimum daily dietary requirement of the amino acid leucine, $C_6H_{13}NO_2$, is 1.1 g. What is this requirement in moles?

21.

Determine the mass in grams of each of the following:

a. 0.600 mol of oxygen atoms
b. 0.600 mol of oxygen molecules, O_2
c. 0.600 mol of ozone molecules, O_3

22.

A 55-kg woman has 7.5 10^{-3} mol of hemoglobin (molar mass = 64,456 g/mol) in her blood. How many hemoglobin molecules is this? What is this quantity in grams?

23.

Determine the number of atoms and the mass of zirconium, silicon, and oxygen found in 0.3384 mol of zircon, $ZrSiO_4$, a semiprecious stone.

24.

Determine which of the following contains the greatest mass of hydrogen: 1 mol of CH_4, 0.6 mol of C_6H_6, or 0.4 mol of C_3H_8.

25.

Determine which of the following contains the greatest mass of aluminum: 122 g of $AlPO_4$, 266 g of Al_2Cl_6, or 225 g of Al_2S_3.

26.

Diamond is one form of elemental carbon. An engagement ring contains a diamond weighing 1.25 carats (1 carat = 200 mg). How many atoms are present in the diamond?

27.

The Cullinan diamond was the largest natural diamond ever found (January 25, 1905). It weighed 3104 carats (1 carat = 200 mg). How many carbon atoms were present in the stone?

28.

One 55-gram serving of a particular cereal supplies 270 mg of sodium, 11% of the recommended daily allowance. How many moles and atoms of sodium are in the recommended daily allowance?

29.

A certain nut crunch cereal contains 11.0 grams of sugar (sucrose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) per serving size of 60.0 grams. How many servings of this cereal must be eaten to consume 0.0278 moles of sugar?

30.

A tube of toothpaste contains 0.76 g of sodium monofluorophosphate (Na_2PO_3F) in 100 mL.

a. What mass of fluorine atoms in mg was present?
b. How many fluorine atoms were present?

31.

Which of the following represents the least number of molecules?

a. 20.0 g of H_2O (18.02 g/mol)
b. 77.0 g of CH_4 (16.06 g/mol)
c. 68.0 g of C_3H_6 (42.08 g/mol)
d. 100.0 g of N_2O (44.02 g/mol)
e. 84.0 g of HF (20.01 g/mol)

32.

What information is needed to determine the molecular formula of a compound from the empirical formula?

33.

Calculate the following to four significant figures:

a. the percent composition of ammonia, NH_3
b. the percent composition of photographic fixer solution (“hypo”), $Na_2S_2O_3$
c. the percent of calcium ion in $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$

34.

Determine the following to four significant figures:

a. the percent composition of hydrazoic acid, HN_3
b. the percent composition of TNT, $C_6H_2(CH_3)(NO_2)_3$
c. the percent of SO_4^{2-} in $Al_2(SO_4)_3$

35.

Determine the percent ammonia, NH_3, in $Co(NH_3)_6Cl_3$, to three significant figures.

36.

Determine the percent water in $CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$ to three significant figures.

37.

Determine the empirical formulas for compounds with the following percent compositions:

a. 15.8% carbon and 84.2% sulfur
b. 40.0% carbon, 6.7% hydrogen, and 53.3% oxygen

38.

Determine the empirical formulas for compounds with the following percent compositions:

a. 43.6% phosphorus and 56.4% oxygen
b. 28.7% K, 1.5% H, 22.8% P, and 47.0% O

39.

A compound of carbon and hydrogen contains 92.3% C and has a molar mass of 78.1 g/mol. What is its molecular formula?

40.

Dichloroethane, a compound that is often used for dry cleaning, contains carbon, hydrogen, and chlorine. It has a molar mass of 99 g/mol. Analysis of a sample shows that it contains 24.3% carbon and 4.1% hydrogen. What is its molecular formula?

41.

Determine the empirical and molecular formula for chrysotile asbestos. Chrysotile has the following percent composition: 28.03% Mg, 21.60% Si, 1.16% H, and 49.21% O. The molar mass for chrysotile is 520.8 g/mol.

42.

Polymers are large molecules composed of simple units repeated many times. Thus, they often have relatively simple empirical formulas. Calculate the empirical formulas of the following polymers:

a. Lucite (Plexiglas); 59.9% C, 8.06% H, 32.0% O
b. Saran; 24.8% C, 2.0% H, 73.1% Cl
c. polyethylene; 86% C, 14% H
d. polystyrene; 92.3% C, 7.7% H
e. Orlon; 67.9% C, 5.70% H, 26.4% N

43.

A major textile dye manufacturer developed a new yellow dye. The dye has a percent composition of 75.95% C, 17.72% N, and 6.33% H by mass with a molar mass of about 240 g/mol. Determine the molecular formula of the dye.

44.

Explain what changes and what stays the same when 1.00 L of a solution of NaCl is diluted to 1.80 L.

45.

What information is needed to calculate the molarity of a sulfuric acid solution?

46.

A 200-mL sample and a 400-mL sample of a solution of salt have the same molarity. In what ways are the two samples identical? In what ways are these two samples different?

47.

Determine the molarity for each of the following solutions:

a. (f) 1.8 10^4 mg of HCl in 0.075 L of solution

48.

Determine the molarity of each of the following solutions:

a. (f) 0.000889 g of glycine, $C_2H_5NO_2$, in 1.05 mL of solution

49.

Consider this question: What is the mass of the solute in 0.500 L of 0.30 *M* glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, used for intravenous injection?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

50.

Consider this question: What is the mass of solute in 200.0 L of a 1.556-*M* solution of KBr?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

51.

Calculate the number of moles and the mass of the solute in each of the following solutions:

a. 2.00 L of 18.5 *M* H_2SO_4, concentrated sulfuric acid
b. 100.0 mL of 3.8 10^{-6} *M* NaCN, the minimum lethal concentration of sodium cyanide in blood serum
c. 5.50 L of 13.3 *M* H_2CO, the formaldehyde used to “fix” tissue samples
d. 325 mL of 1.8 10^{-6} *M* $FeSO_4$, the minimum concentration of iron sulfate detectable by taste in drinking water

52.

Calculate the number of moles and the mass of the solute in each of the following solutions:

a. 325 mL of 8.23 10^{-5} *M* KI, a source of iodine in the diet
b. 75.0 mL of 2.2 10^{-5} *M* H_2SO_4, a sample of acid rain
c. 0.2500 L of 0.1135 *M* K_2CrO_4, an analytical reagent used in iron assays
d. 10.5 L of 3.716 *M* $(NH_4)_2SO_4$, a liquid fertilizer

53.

Consider this question: What is the molarity of $KMnO_4$ in a solution of 0.0908 g of $KMnO_4$ in 0.500 L of solution?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

54.

Consider this question: What is the molarity of HCl if 35.23 mL of a solution of HCl contain 0.3366 g of HCl?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

55.

Calculate the molarity of each of the following solutions:

a. 0.195 g of cholesterol, $C_{27}H_{46}O$, in 0.100 L of serum, the average concentration of cholesterol in human serum
b. 4.25 g of NH_3 in 0.500 L of solution, the concentration of NH_3 in household ammonia
c. 1.49 kg of isopropyl alcohol, C_3H_7OH, in 2.50 L of solution, the concentration of isopropyl alcohol in rubbing alcohol
d. 0.029 g of I_2 in 0.100 L of solution, the solubility of I_2 in water at 20 °C

56.

Calculate the molarity of each of the following solutions:

a. 293 g HCl in 666 mL of solution, a concentrated HCl solution
b. 2.026 g $FeCl_3$ in 0.1250 L of a solution used as an unknown in general chemistry laboratories
c. 0.001 mg Cd^{2+} in 0.100 L, the maximum permissible concentration of cadmium in drinking water
d. 0.0079 g $C_7H_5SNO_3$ in one ounce (29.6 mL), the concentration of saccharin in a diet soft drink.

57.

There is about 1.0 g of calcium, as Ca^{2+}, in 1.0 L of milk. What is the molarity of Ca^{2+} in milk?

58.

What volume of a 1.00-*M* $Fe(NO_3)_3$ solution can be diluted to prepare 1.00 L of a solution with a concentration of 0.250 *M*?

59.

If 0.1718 L of a 0.3556-*M* C_3H_7OH solution is diluted to a concentration of 0.1222 *M*, what is the volume of the resulting solution?

60.

If 4.12 L of a 0.850 *M*-H_3PO_4 solution is be diluted to a volume of 10.00 L, what is the concentration of the resulting solution?

61.

What volume of a 0.33-*M* $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ solution can be diluted to prepare 25 mL of a solution with a concentration of 0.025 *M*?

62.

What is the concentration of the NaCl solution that results when 0.150 L of a 0.556-*M* solution is allowed to evaporate until the volume is reduced to 0.105 L?

63.

What is the molarity of the diluted solution when each of the following solutions is diluted to the given final volume?

a. 1.00 L of a 0.250-*M* solution of $Fe(NO_3)_3$ is diluted to a final volume of 2.00 L
b. 0.5000 L of a 0.1222-*M* solution of C_3H_7OH is diluted to a final volume of 1.250 L

c. 2.35 L of a 0.350-*M* solution of H_3PO_4 is diluted to a final volume of 4.00 L
d. 22.50 mL of a 0.025-*M* solution of $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ is diluted to 100.0 mL

64.

What is the final concentration of the solution produced when 225.5 mL of a 0.09988-*M* solution of Na_2CO_3 is allowed to evaporate until the solution volume is reduced to 45.00 mL?

65.

A 2.00-L bottle of a solution of concentrated HCl was purchased for the general chemistry laboratory. The solution contained 868.8 g of HCl. What is the molarity of the solution?

66.

An experiment in a general chemistry laboratory calls for a 2.00-*M* solution of HCl. How many mL of 11.9 *M* HCl would be required to make 250 mL of 2.00 *M* HCl?

67.

What volume of a 0.20-*M* K_2SO_4 solution contains 57 g of K_2SO_4?

68.

The US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) places limits on the quantities of toxic substances that may be discharged into the sewer system. Limits have been established for a variety of substances, including hexavalent chromium, which is limited to 0.50 mg/L. If an industry is discharging hexavalent chromium as potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$), what is the maximum permissible molarity of that substance?

69.

Consider this question: What mass of a concentrated solution of nitric acid (68.0% HNO_3 by mass) is needed to prepare 400.0 g of a 10.0% solution of HNO_3 by mass?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

70.

What mass of a 4.00% NaOH solution by mass contains 15.0 g of NaOH?

71.

What mass of solid NaOH (97.0% NaOH by mass) is required to prepare 1.00 L of a 10.0% solution of NaOH by mass? The density of the 10.0% solution is 1.109 g/mL.

72.

What mass of HCl is contained in 45.0 mL of an aqueous HCl solution that has a density of 1.19 g cm^{-3} and contains 37.21% HCl by mass?

73.

The hardness of water (hardness count) is usually expressed in parts per million (by mass) of $CaCO_3$, which is equivalent to milligrams of $CaCO_3$ per liter of water. What is the molar concentration of Ca^{2+} ions in a water sample with a hardness count of 175 mg $CaCO_3$/L?

74.

The level of mercury in a stream was suspected to be above the minimum considered safe (1 part per billion by weight). An analysis indicated that the concentration was 0.68 parts per billion. Assume a density of 1.0 g/mL and calculate the molarity of mercury in the stream.

75.

In Canada and the United Kingdom, devices that measure blood glucose levels provide a reading in millimoles per liter. If a measurement of 5.3 m*M* is observed, what is the concentration of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) in mg/dL?

76.

A throat spray is 1.40% by mass phenol, C_6H_5OH, in water. If the solution has a density of 0.9956 g/mL, calculate the molarity of the solution.

77.

Copper(I) iodide (CuI) is often added to table salt as a dietary source of iodine. How many moles of CuI are contained in 1.00 lb (454 g) of table salt containing 0.0100% CuI by mass?

78.

A cough syrup contains 5.0% ethyl alcohol, C_2H_5OH, by mass. If the density of the solution is 0.9928 g/mL, determine the molarity of the alcohol in the cough syrup.

79.

D5W is a solution used as an intravenous fluid. It is a 5.0% by mass solution of dextrose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) in water. If the density of D5W is 1.029 g/mL, calculate the molarity of dextrose in the solution.

80.

Find the molarity of a 40.0% by mass aqueous solution of sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4, for which the density is 1.3057 g/mL.

This page titled 2.9: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.8: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Stoichiometry of Chemical Reactions

This chapter will describe how to symbolize chemical reactions using chemical equations, how to classify some common chemical reactions by identifying patterns of reactivity, and how to determine the quantitative relations between the amounts of substances involved in chemical reactions—that is, the reaction *stoichiometry*.

3.1: Introduction
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
3.4: Reaction Stoichiometry
3.5: Reaction Yields
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
3.7: Key Terms
3.8: Key Equations
3.9: Summary
3.10: Exercises

This page titled 4: Stoichiometry of Chemical Reactions is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.1: Introduction

Solid-fuel rockets are a central feature in the world's space exploration programs, including the new Space Launch System being developed by the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) to replace the retired Space Shuttle fleet (Figure 3.1.1). The engines of these rockets rely on carefully prepared solid mixtures of chemicals combined in precisely measured amounts. Igniting the mixture initiates a vigorous chemical reaction that rapidly generates large amounts of gaseous products. These gases are ejected from the rocket engine through its nozzle, providing the thrust needed to propel heavy payloads into space. Both the nature of this chemical reaction and the relationships between the amounts of the substances being consumed and produced by the reaction are critically important considerations that determine the success of the technology.



Figure 3.1.1: Many modern rocket fuels are solid mixtures of substances combined in carefully measured amounts and ignited to yield a thrust-generating chemical reaction. (credit: modification of work by NASA)

This chapter will describe how to symbolize chemical reactions using chemical equations, how to classify some common chemical reactions by identifying patterns of reactivity, and how to determine the quantitative relations between the amounts of substances involved in chemical reactions—that is, the reaction *stoichiometry*.

This page titled 3.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.0: Introduction** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Derive chemical equations from narrative descriptions of chemical reactions.
- Write and balance chemical equations in molecular, total ionic, and net ionic formats.

An earlier chapter of this text introduced the use of element symbols to represent individual atoms. When atoms gain or lose electrons to yield ions, or combine with other atoms to form molecules, their symbols are modified or combined to generate chemical formulas that appropriately represent these species. Extending this symbolism to represent both the identities and the relative quantities of substances undergoing a chemical (or physical) change involves writing and balancing a **chemical equation**. Consider as an example the reaction between one methane molecule (CH_4) and two diatomic oxygen molecules (O_2) to produce one carbon dioxide molecule (CO_2) and two water molecules (H_2O). The chemical equation representing this process is provided in the upper half of Figure 3.2.1: , with space-filling molecular models shown in the lower half of the figure.

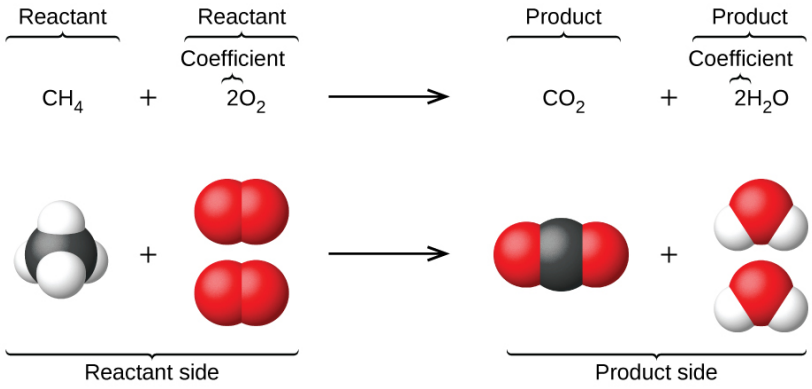


Figure 3.2.1: The reaction between methane and oxygen to yield carbon dioxide and water (shown at bottom) may be represented by a chemical equation using formulas (top).

This example illustrates the fundamental aspects of any chemical equation:

1. The substances undergoing reaction are called reactants, and their formulas are placed on the left side of the equation.
2. The substances generated by the reaction are called products, and their formulas are placed on the right side of the equation.
3. Plus signs (+) separate individual reactant and product formulas, and an arrow separates the reactant and product (left and right) sides of the equation.
4. The relative numbers of reactant and product species are represented by coefficients (numbers placed immediately to the left of each formula). A coefficient of 1 is typically omitted.

It is common practice to use the smallest possible whole-number coefficients in a chemical equation, as is done in this example. Realize, however, that these coefficients represent the *relative* numbers of reactants and products, and, therefore, they may be correctly interpreted as ratios. Methane and oxygen react to yield carbon dioxide and water in a 1:2:1:2 ratio. This ratio is satisfied if the numbers of these molecules are, respectively, 1-2-1-2, or 2-4-2-4, or 3-6-3-6, and so on (Figure 3.2.2). Likewise, these coefficients may be interpreted with regard to any amount (number) unit, and so this equation may be correctly read in many ways, including:

- *One* methane molecule and *two* oxygen molecules react to yield *one* carbon dioxide molecule and *two* water molecules.
- *One dozen* methane molecules and *two dozen* oxygen molecules react to yield *one dozen* carbon dioxide molecules and *two dozen* water molecules.
- *One mole* of methane molecules and *2 moles* of oxygen molecules react to yield *1 mole* of carbon dioxide molecules and *2 moles* of water molecules.

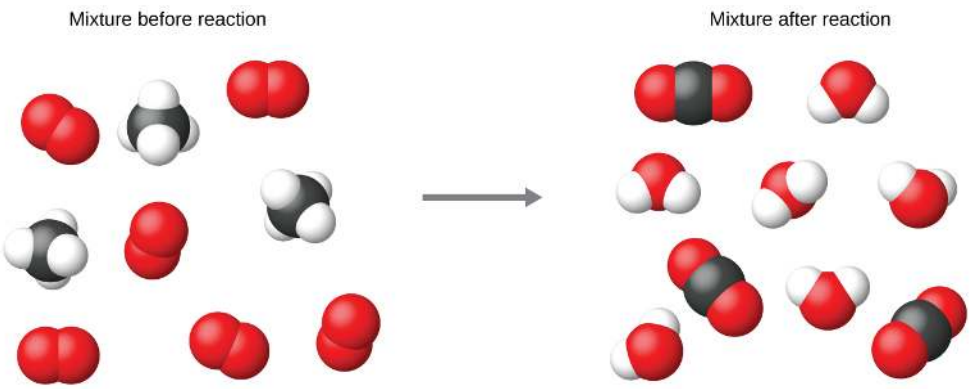


Figure 3.2.2: Regardless of the absolute numbers of molecules involved, the ratios between numbers of molecules of each species that react (the reactants) and molecules of each species that form (the products) are the same and are given by the chemical reaction equation.

Balancing Equations

The chemical equation described above in Figure 3.2.1 is **balanced**, meaning that equal numbers of atoms for each element involved in the reaction are represented on the reactant and product sides. This is a requirement the equation must satisfy to be consistent with the law of conservation of matter. It may be confirmed by simply summing the numbers of atoms on either side of the arrow and comparing these sums to ensure they are equal. Note that the number of atoms for a given element is calculated by multiplying the coefficient of any formula containing that element by the element's subscript in the formula. If an element appears in more than one formula on a given side of the equation, the number of atoms represented in each must be computed and then added together. For example, both product species in the example reaction, CO_2 and H_2O, contain the element oxygen, and so the number of oxygen atoms on the product side of the equation is

$$\left(1 CO_2 \text{ molecule} \times \frac{2O \text{ atoms}}{CO_2 \text{ molecule}}\right) + \left(2 H_2O \text{ molecules} \times \frac{1O \text{ atom}}{H_2O \text{ molecule}}\right) = 4O \text{ atoms}$$

The equation for the reaction between methane and oxygen to yield carbon dioxide and water is confirmed to be balanced per this approach, as shown here:

$$\mathrm{CH_4 + 2\,O_2 \longrightarrow CO_2 + 2\,H_2O}$$

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?
C	1 × 1 = 1	1 × 1 = 1	1 = 1, yes
H	4 × 1 = 4	2 × 2 = 4	4 = 4, yes
O	2 × 2 = 4	(1 × 2) + (2 × 1) = 4	4 = 4, yes

A balanced chemical equation often may be derived from a qualitative description of some chemical reaction by a fairly simple approach known as balancing by inspection. Consider as an example the decomposition of water to yield molecular hydrogen and oxygen. This process is represented qualitatively by an *unbalanced* chemical equation:

$$\mathrm{H_2O \longrightarrow H_2 + O_2} \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

Comparing the number of H and O atoms on either side of this equation confirms its imbalance:

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?
H	1 × 2 = 2	1 × 2 = 2	2 = 2, yes
O	1 × 1 = 1	1 × 2 = 2	1 ≠ 2, no

The numbers of H atoms on the reactant and product sides of the equation are equal, but the numbers of O atoms are not. To achieve balance, the *coefficients* of the equation may be changed as needed. Keep in mind, of course, that the *formula subscripts* define, in part, the identity of the substance, and so these cannot be changed without altering the qualitative meaning of the equation. For

example, changing the reactant formula from H_2O to H_2O_2 would yield balance in the number of atoms, but doing so also changes the reactant's identity (it's now hydrogen peroxide and not water). The O atom balance may be achieved by changing the coefficient for H_2O to 2.

$$2\,H_2O \longrightarrow H_2 + O_2 \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?
H	**2** × 2 = 4	1 × 2 = 2	4 ≠ 2, no
O	2 × 1 = 2	1 × 2 = 2	2 = 2, yes

The H atom balance was upset by this change, but it is easily reestablished by changing the coefficient for the H_2 product to 2.

$$2\,H_2O \longrightarrow 2\,H_2 + O_2 \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?
H	2 × 2 = 4	**2** × 2 = 4	4 = 4, yes
O	2 × 1 = 2	1 × 2 = 2	2 = 2, yes

These coefficients yield equal numbers of both H and O atoms on the reactant and product sides, and the balanced equation is, therefore:

$$H_2O \longrightarrow H_2 + O_2 \qquad \text{(balanced)}$$

Example 3.2.1: Balancing Chemical Equations

Write a balanced equation for the reaction of molecular nitrogen (N_2) and oxygen (O_2) to form dinitrogen pentoxide.

Solution

First, write the unbalanced equation.

$$N_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow N_2O_5 \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

Next, count the number of each type of atom present in the unbalanced equation.

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?
N	1 2 = 2	1 2 = 2	2 = 2, yes
O	1 2 = 2	1 5 = 5	2 ≠ 5, no

Though nitrogen is balanced, changes in coefficients are needed to balance the number of oxygen atoms. To balance the number of oxygen atoms, a reasonable first attempt would be to change the coefficients for the O_2 and N_2O_5 to integers that will yield 10 O atoms (the least common multiple for the O atom subscripts in these two formulas).

$$N_2 + 5\,O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,N_2O_5 \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?
N	1 × 2 = 2	**2** × 2 = 4	2 ≠ 4, no
O	**5** × 2 = 10	**2** × 5 = 10	10 = 10, yes

The N atom balance has been upset by this change; it is restored by changing the coefficient for the reactant N_2 to 2.

$$2\,N_2 + 5\,O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,N_2O_5 \qquad \text{(balanced)}$$

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?

Element	Reactants	Products	Balanced?
N	**2** × 2 = 4	2 × 2 = 4	4 = 4, yes
O	5 × 2 = 10	2 × 5 = 10	10 = 10, yes

The numbers of N and O atoms on either side of the equation are now equal, and so the equation is balanced.

Exercise 3.2.1

Write a balanced equation for the decomposition of ammonium nitrate to form molecular nitrogen, molecular oxygen, and water. (Hint: Balance oxygen last, since it is present in more than one molecule on the right side of the equation.)

Answer

$$2\,NH_4NO_3 \longrightarrow 2\,N_2{=}O_2 + 4\,H_2O$$

It is sometimes convenient to use fractions instead of integers as intermediate coefficients in the process of balancing a chemical equation. When balance is achieved, all the equation's coefficients may then be multiplied by a whole number to convert the fractional coefficients to integers without upsetting the atom balance. For example, consider the reaction of ethane (C_2H_6) with oxygen to yield H_2O and CO_2, represented by the unbalanced equation:

$$C_2H_6 + O_2 \longrightarrow H_2O + CO_2 \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

Following the usual inspection approach, one might first balance C and H atoms by changing the coefficients for the two product species, as shown:

$$C_2H_6 + O_2 \longrightarrow 3\,H_2O + 2\,CO_2 \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

This results in seven O atoms on the product side of the equation, an odd number—no integer coefficient can be used with the O_2 reactant to yield an odd number, so a fractional coefficient, is used instead to yield a provisional balanced equation:

$$C_2H_6 + \tfrac{7}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow 3\,H_2O + 2\,CO_2 \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

A conventional balanced equation with integer-only coefficients is derived by multiplying each coefficient by 2:

$$2\,C_2H_6 + 7\,O_2 \longrightarrow 6\,H_2O + 4\,CO_2 \qquad \text{(balanced)}$$

Finally with regard to balanced equations, recall that convention dictates use of the *smallest whole-number coefficients*. Although the equation for the reaction between molecular nitrogen and molecular hydrogen to produce ammonia is, indeed, balanced,

$$3\,N_2 + 9\,H_2 \longrightarrow 6\,NH_3$$

the coefficients are not the smallest possible integers representing the relative numbers of reactant and product molecules. Dividing each coefficient by the greatest common factor, 3, gives the preferred equation:

$$N_2 + 3\,H_2 \longrightarrow 2\,NH_3$$

Link to Learning

Use this interactive tutorial for additional practice balancing equations.

Additional Information in Chemical Equations

The physical states of reactants and products in chemical equations very often are indicated with a parenthetical abbreviation following the formulas. Common abbreviations include *s* for solids, *l* for liquids, *g* for gases, and *aq* for substances dissolved in water (*aqueous solutions*, as introduced in the preceding chapter). These notations are illustrated in the example equation here:

$$2\,Na(s) + 2\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2\,NaOH(aq) + H_2(g)$$

This equation represents the reaction that takes place when sodium metal is placed in water. The solid sodium reacts with liquid water to produce molecular hydrogen gas and the ionic compound sodium hydroxide (a solid in pure form, but readily dissolved in water).

Special conditions necessary for a reaction are sometimes designated by writing a word or symbol above or below the equation's arrow. For example, a reaction carried out by heating may be indicated by the uppercase Greek letter delta (Δ) over the arrow.

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3(s)} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathrm{CaO(s) + CO_2(g)}$$

Other examples of these special conditions will be encountered in more depth in later chapters.

Equations for Ionic Reactions

Given the abundance of water on earth, it stands to reason that a great many chemical reactions take place in aqueous media. When ions are involved in these reactions, the chemical equations may be written with various levels of detail appropriate to their intended use. To illustrate this, consider a reaction between ionic compounds taking place in an aqueous solution. When aqueous solutions of $CaCl_2$ and $AgNO_3$ are mixed, a reaction takes place producing aqueous $Ca(NO_3)_2$ and solid AgCl:

$$\mathrm{CaCl_2(aq) + 2\,AgNO_3(aq) \longrightarrow Ca(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,AgCl(s)}$$

This balanced equation, derived in the usual fashion, is called a **molecular equation** because it doesn't explicitly represent the ionic species that are present in solution. When ionic compounds dissolve in water, they may *dissociate* into their constituent ions, which are subsequently dispersed homogenously throughout the resulting solution (a thorough discussion of this important process is provided in the chapter on solutions). Ionic compounds dissolved in water are, therefore, more realistically represented as dissociated ions, in this case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{CaCl_2(aq)} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq)} \\
\mathrm{2\,AgNO_3(aq)} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{2\,Ag^+(aq) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq)} \\
\mathrm{Ca(NO_3)_2(aq)} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq)}
\end{aligned}$$

Unlike these three ionic compounds, AgCl does not dissolve in water to a significant extent, as signified by its physical state notation, *s*.

Explicitly representing all dissolved ions results in a **complete ionic equation**. In this particular case, the formulas for the dissolved ionic compounds are replaced by formulas for their dissociated ions:

$$\mathrm{Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq) + 2\,Ag^+(aq) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq) \longrightarrow Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq) + 2\,AgCl(s)}$$

Examining this equation shows that two chemical species are present in identical form on both sides of the arrow, $Ca^{2+}(aq)$ and These spectator ions—ions whose presence is required to maintain charge neutrality—are neither chemically nor physically changed by the process, and so they may be eliminated from the equation to yield a more succinct representation called a **net ionic equation**:

$$\begin{gathered}
\cancel{\mathrm{Ca^{2+}(aq)}} + \mathrm{2\,Cl^-(aq) + 2\,Ag^+(aq) + \cancel{2\,NO_3^-(aq)} \longrightarrow \cancel{Ca^{2+}(aq)} + \cancel{2\,NO_3^-(aq)} + 2\,AgCl(s)} \\
\mathrm{2\,Cl^-(aq) + 2\,Ag^+(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,AgCl(s)}
\end{gathered}$$

Following the convention of using the smallest possible integers as coefficients, this equation is then written:

$$\mathrm{Cl^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) \longrightarrow AgCl(s)}$$

This net ionic equation indicates that solid silver chloride may be produced from dissolved chloride and silver(I) ions, regardless of the source of these ions. These molecular and complete ionic equations provide additional information, namely, the ionic compounds used as sources of Cl^- and Ag^+.

✔ Example 3.2.2: Ionic and Molecular Equations

When carbon dioxide is dissolved in an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide, the mixture reacts to yield aqueous sodium carbonate and liquid water. Write balanced molecular, complete ionic, and net ionic equations for this process.

Solution

Begin by identifying formulas for the reactants and products and arranging them properly in chemical equation form:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + NaOH(aq) \longrightarrow Na_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l)} \qquad \text{(unbalanced)}$$

Balance is achieved easily in this case by changing the coefficient for NaOH to 2, resulting in the molecular equation for this reaction:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + 2\,NaOH(aq) \longrightarrow Na_2CO_3(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

The two dissolved ionic compounds, NaOH and $\mathrm{Na_2CO_3}$, can be represented as dissociated ions to yield the complete ionic equation:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + 2\,Na^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,Na^+(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

Finally, identify the spectator ion(s), in this case $\mathrm{Na^+}(aq)$, and remove it from each side of the equation to generate the net ionic equation:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + \cancel{2\,Na^+(aq)} + OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow \cancel{2\,Na^+(aq)} + CO_3^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

$$\mathrm{CO_2(aq) + OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow CO_3^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

Exercise 3.2.2

Diatomic chlorine and sodium hydroxide (lye) are commodity chemicals produced in large quantities, along with diatomic hydrogen, via the electrolysis of brine, according to the following unbalanced equation:

$$\mathrm{NaCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \xrightarrow{electricity} NaOH(aq) + H_2(g) + Cl_2(g)}$$

Write balanced molecular, complete ionic, and net ionic equations for this process.

Answer

$$\mathrm{2\,NaCl(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2\,NaOH(aq) + H_2(g) + Cl_2(g)} \quad \text{(molecular)}$$

$$\mathrm{2\,Na^+(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2\,Na^+(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq) + H_2(g) + Cl_2(g)} \quad \text{(complete ionic)}$$

$$\mathrm{2\,Cl^-(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2\,OH^-(aq) + H_2(g) + Cl_2(g)} \quad \text{(net ionic)}$$

This page titled 3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.1: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define three common types of chemical reactions (precipitation, acid-base, and oxidation-reduction)
- Classify chemical reactions as one of these three types given appropriate descriptions or chemical equations
- Identify common acids and bases
- Predict the solubility of common inorganic compounds by using solubility rules
- Compute the oxidation states for elements in compounds

Humans interact with one another in various and complex ways, and we classify these interactions according to common patterns of behavior. When two humans exchange information, we say they are communicating. When they exchange blows with their fists or feet, we say they are fighting. Faced with a wide range of varied interactions between chemical substances, scientists have likewise found it convenient (or even necessary) to classify chemical interactions by identifying common patterns of reactivity. This module will provide an introduction to three of the most prevalent types of chemical reactions: precipitation, acid-base, and oxidation-reduction.

Precipitation Reactions and Solubility Rules

A precipitation reaction is one in which dissolved substances react to form one (or more) solid products. Many reactions of this type involve the exchange of ions between ionic compounds in aqueous solution and are sometimes referred to as *double displacement*, *double replacement*, or *metathesis* reactions. These reactions are common in nature and are responsible for the formation of coral reefs in ocean waters and kidney stones in animals. They are used widely in industry for production of a number of commodity and specialty chemicals. Precipitation reactions also play a central role in many chemical analysis techniques, including spot tests used to identify metal ions and *gravimetric methods* for determining the composition of matter (see the last module of this chapter).

The extent to which a substance may be dissolved in water, or any solvent, is quantitatively expressed as its solubility, defined as the maximum concentration of a substance that can be achieved under specified conditions. Substances with relatively large solubilities are said to be soluble. A substance will precipitate when solution conditions are such that its concentration exceeds its solubility. Substances with relatively low solubilities are said to be insoluble, and these are the substances that readily precipitate from solution. More information on these important concepts is provided in a later chapter on solutions. For purposes of predicting the identities of solids formed by precipitation reactions, one may simply refer to patterns of solubility that have been observed for many ionic compounds (Table 3.3.1).

Table 3.3.1

Soluble Ionic Compounds	contain these ions	exceptions
	NH_4^+ group I cations: Li^+ Na^+ K^+ Rb^+ Cs^+	none
	Cl^- Br^- I^-	compounds with Ag^+, Hg_2^{2+}, and Pb^{2+}
	F^-	compounds with group 2 metal cations, Pb^{2+}, and Fe^{3+}

	$C_2H_3O_2^-$ HCO_3^- NO_3^- ClO_3^-	none
	SO_4^{2-}	compounds with Ag^+, Ba^{2+}, Ca^{2+}, Hg_2^{2+}, Pb^{2+} and Sr^{2+}
Insoluble Ionic Compounds	contain these ions	exceptions
	CO_3^{2-} CrO_4^{2-} PO_4^{3-} S^{2-}	compounds with group 1 cations and NH_4^+
	OH^-	compounds with group 1 cations and Ba^{2+}

A vivid example of precipitation is observed when solutions of potassium iodide and lead nitrate are mixed, resulting in the formation of solid lead iodide:

$$2\,\mathrm{KI(aq)} + \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbI_2(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{KNO_3(aq)}$$

This observation is consistent with the solubility guidelines: The only insoluble compound among all those involved is lead iodide, one of the exceptions to the general solubility of iodide salts.

The net ionic equation representing this reaction is:

$$\mathrm{Pb^{2+}(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{I^-(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbI_2(s)}$$

Lead iodide is a bright yellow solid that was formerly used as an artist's pigment known as iodine yellow (Figure 3.3.1). The properties of pure PbI_2 crystals make them useful for fabrication of X-ray and gamma ray detectors.

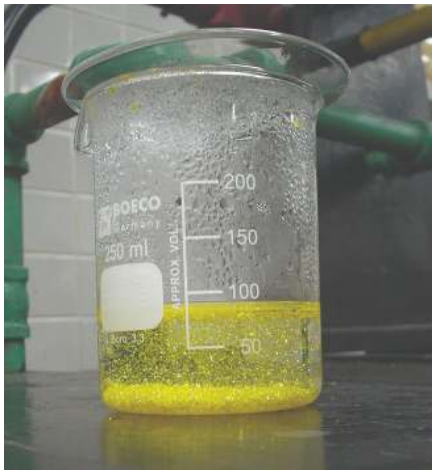


Figure 3.3.1: A precipitate of PbI_2 forms when solutions containing Pb^{2+} and I^- are mixed. (credit: Der Kreole/Wikimedia Commons)

The solubility guidelines in Table 3.3.1 may be used to predict whether a precipitation reaction will occur when solutions of soluble ionic compounds are mixed together. One merely needs to identify all the ions present in the solution and then consider if possible cation/anion pairing could result in an insoluble compound. For example, mixing solutions of silver nitrate and sodium chloride will yield a solution containing Ag^+, NO_3^-, Na^+, and Cl^- ions. Aside from the two ionic compounds originally present in the solutions, $AgNO_3$ and NaCl, two additional ionic compounds may be derived from this collection of ions: $NaNO_3$ and AgCl. The solubility guidelines indicate all nitrate salts are soluble but that AgCl is one of insoluble. A precipitation reaction, therefore, is predicted to occur, as described by the following equations:

$$\mathrm{NaCl(aq) + AgNO_3(aq) \longrightarrow AgCl(s) + NaNO_3(aq)} \quad \text{(molecular)}$$

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \longrightarrow AgCl(s)} \quad \text{(net ionic)}$$

Example 3.3.1: Predicting Precipitation Reactions

Predict the result of mixing reasonably concentrated solutions of the following ionic compounds. If precipitation is expected, write a balanced net ionic equation for the reaction.

a. potassium sulfate and barium nitrate
b. lithium chloride and silver acetate
c. lead nitrate and ammonium carbonate

Solution

(a) The two possible products for this combination are KNO_3 and $BaSO_4$. The solubility guidelines indicate $BaSO_4$ is insoluble, and so a precipitation reaction is expected. The net ionic equation for this reaction, derived in the manner detailed in the previous module, is

$$\mathrm{Ba^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) \longrightarrow BaSO_4(s)}$$

(b) The two possible products for this combination are $LiC_2H_3O_2$ and AgCl. The solubility guidelines indicate AgCl is insoluble, and so a precipitation reaction is expected. The net ionic equation for this reaction, derived in the manner detailed in the previous module, is

$$\mathrm{Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \longrightarrow AgCl(s)}$$

(c) The two possible products for this combination are $PbCO_3$ and NH_4NO_3. The solubility guidelines indicate $PbCO_3$ is insoluble, and so a precipitation reaction is expected. The net ionic equation for this reaction, derived in the manner detailed in the previous module, is

$$\mathrm{Pb^{2+}(aq) + CO_3^{2-}(aq) \longrightarrow PbCO_3(s)}$$

Exercise 3.3.1

Which solution could be used to precipitate the barium ion, Ba^{2+}, in a water sample: sodium chloride, sodium hydroxide, or sodium sulfate? What is the formula for the expected precipitate?

Answer

sodium sulfate, $\mathrm{BaSO_4}$

Acid-Base Reactions

An acid-base reaction is one in which a hydrogen ion, H^+, is transferred from one chemical species to another. Such reactions are of central importance to numerous natural and technological processes, ranging from the chemical transformations that take place within cells and the lakes and oceans, to the industrial-scale production of fertilizers, pharmaceuticals, and other substances essential to society. The subject of acid-base chemistry, therefore, is worthy of thorough discussion, and a full chapter is devoted to this topic later in the text.

For purposes of this brief introduction, we will consider only the more common types of acid-base reactions that take place in aqueous solutions. In this context, an **acid** is a substance that will dissolve in water to yield hydronium ions, H_3O^+. As an example, consider the equation shown here:

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) + H_2O(aq) \longrightarrow Cl^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)}$$

The process represented by this equation confirms that hydrogen chloride is an acid. When dissolved in water, H_3O^+ ions are produced by a chemical reaction in which H^+ ions are transferred from HCl molecules to H_2O molecules (Figure 3.3.2).

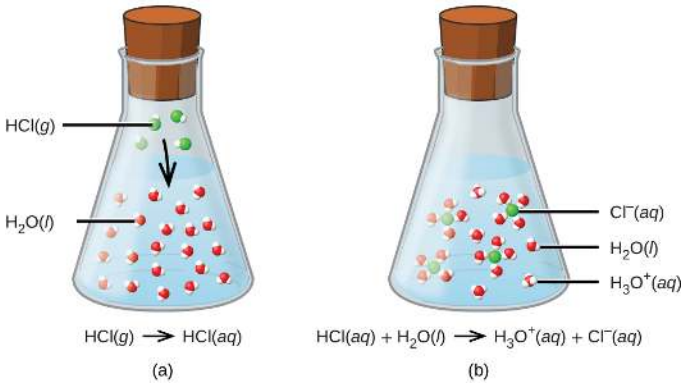


Figure 3.3.2: When hydrogen chloride gas dissolves in water, (a) it reacts as an acid, transferring protons to water molecules to yield (b) hydronium ions (and solvated chloride ions).

The nature of HCl is such that its reaction with water as just described is essentially 100% efficient: Virtually every HCl molecule that dissolves in water will undergo this reaction. Acids that completely react in this fashion are called **strong acids**, and HCl is one among just a handful of common acid compounds that are classified as strong (Table 3.3.2). A far greater number of compounds behave as **weak acids** and only partially react with water, leaving a large majority of dissolved molecules in their original form and generating a relatively small amount of hydronium ions. Weak acids are commonly encountered in nature, being the substances partly responsible for the tangy taste of citrus fruits, the stinging sensation of insect bites, and the unpleasant smells associated with body odor. A familiar example of a weak acid is acetic acid, the main ingredient in food vinegars:

$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons CH_3CO_2^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)}$$

When dissolved in water under typical conditions, only about 1% of acetic acid molecules are present in the ionized form,

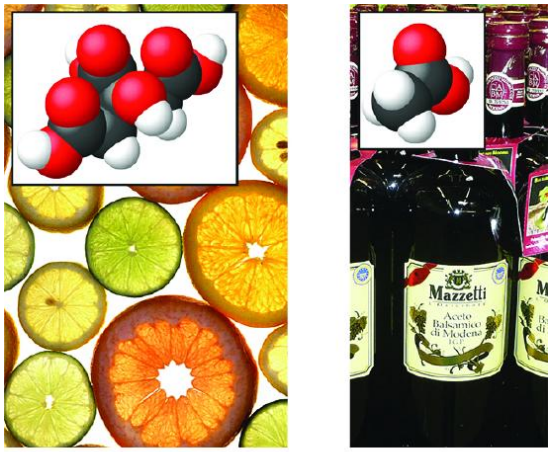


Figure 3.3.3: (a) Fruits such as oranges, lemons, and grapefruit contain the weak acid citric acid. (b) Vinegars contain the weak acid acetic acid. (credit a: modification of work by Scott Bauer; credit b: modification of work by Brücke-Osteuropa/Wikimedia Commons)

Table 3.3.2: Common Strong Acids

Compound Formula	Name in Aqueous Solution
HBr	hydrobromic acid
HCl	hydrochloric acid
HI	hydroiodic acid
HNO_3	nitric acid
$HClO_4$	perchloric acid
H_2SO_4	sulfuric acid

A base is a substance that will dissolve in water to yield hydroxide ions, OH^-. The most common bases are ionic compounds composed of alkali or alkaline earth metal cations (groups 1 and 2) combined with the hydroxide ion—for example, NaOH and $Ca(OH)_2$. Unlike the acid compounds discussed previously, these compounds do not react chemically with water; instead they dissolve and dissociate, releasing hydroxide ions directly into the solution. For example, KOH and $Ba(OH)_2$ dissolve in water and dissociate completely to produce cations (K^+ and Ba^{2+}, respectively) and hydroxide ions, OH^-. These bases, along with other hydroxides that completely dissociate in water, are considered **strong bases**.

Consider as an example the dissolution of lye (sodium hydroxide) in water:

$$\mathrm{NaOH(s) \longrightarrow Na^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)}$$

This equation confirms that sodium hydroxide is a base. When dissolved in water, NaOH dissociates to yield Na^+ and OH^- ions. This is also true for any other ionic compound containing hydroxide ions. Since the dissociation process is essentially complete when ionic compounds dissolve in water under typical conditions, NaOH and other ionic hydroxides are all classified as strong bases.

Unlike ionic hydroxides, some compounds produce hydroxide ions when dissolved by chemically reacting with water molecules. In all cases, these compounds react only partially and so are classified as **weak bases**. These types of compounds are also abundant in nature and important commodities in various technologies. For example, global production of the weak base ammonia is typically well over 100 metric tons annually, being widely used as an agricultural fertilizer, a raw material for chemical synthesis of other compounds, and an active ingredient in household cleaners (Figure 3.3.4). When dissolved in water, ammonia reacts partially to yield hydroxide ions, as shown here:

$$\mathrm{NH_3(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)}$$

This is, by definition, an acid-base reaction, in this case involving the transfer of H^+ ions from water molecules to ammonia molecules. Under typical conditions, only about 1% of the dissolved ammonia is present as ions.



Figure 3.3.4: Ammonia is a weak base used in a variety of applications. (a) Pure ammonia is commonly applied as an agricultural fertilizer. (b) Dilute solutions of ammonia are effective household cleansers. (credit a: modification of work by National Resources Conservation Service; credit b: modification of work by pat00139)

A **neutralization reaction** is a specific type of acid-base reaction in which the reactants are an acid and a base (but not water), and the products are often a salt and water

$$\mathrm{acid + base \longrightarrow salt + water}$$

To illustrate a neutralization reaction, consider what happens when a typical antacid such as milk of magnesia (an aqueous suspension of solid $Mg(OH)_2$) is ingested to ease symptoms associated with excess stomach acid (HCl):

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2(s) + 2\,HCl(aq) \longrightarrow MgCl_2(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

Note that in addition to water, this reaction produces a salt, magnesium chloride.

Example 3.3.2: Writing Equations for Acid-Base Reactions

Write balanced chemical equations for the acid-base reactions described here:

a. the weak acid hydrogen hypochlorite reacts with water
b. a solution of barium hydroxide is neutralized with a solution of nitric acid

Solution

(a) The two reactants are provided, HOCl and H_2O. Since the substance is reported to be an acid, its reaction with water will involve the transfer of H^+ from HOCl to H_2O to generate hydronium ions, H_3O^+ and hypochlorite ions, OCl^-.

$$\mathrm{HOCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons OCl^-(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)}$$

A double-arrow is appropriate in this equation because it indicates the HOCl is a weak acid that has not reacted completely.

(b) The two reactants are provided, $Ba(OH)_2$ and HNO_3. Since this is a neutralization reaction, the two products will be water and a salt composed of the cation of the ionic hydroxide (Ba^{2+}) and the anion generated when the acid transfers its hydrogen ion

$$\mathrm{Ba(OH)_2(aq) + 2\,HNO_3(aq) \longrightarrow Ba(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

? Exercise 3.3.2

Write the net ionic equation representing the neutralization of any strong acid with an ionic hydroxide. (Hint: Consider the ions produced when a strong acid is dissolved in water.)

Answer

$$\mathrm{H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Stomach Antacids

Our stomachs contain a solution of roughly 0.03 *M* HCl, which helps us digest the food we eat. The burning sensation associated with heartburn is a result of the acid of the stomach leaking through the muscular valve at the top of the stomach into the lower reaches of the esophagus. The lining of the esophagus is not protected from the corrosive effects of stomach acid the way the lining of the stomach is, and the results can be very painful. When we have heartburn, it feels better if we reduce the excess acid in the esophagus by taking an antacid. As you may have guessed, antacids are bases. One of the most common antacids is calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$. The reaction,

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3(s) + 2\,HCl(aq) \rightleftharpoons CaCl_2(aq) + H_2O(l) + CO_2(g)}$$

not only neutralizes stomach acid, it also produces $CO_2(g)$, which may result in a satisfying belch.

Milk of Magnesia is a suspension of the sparingly soluble base magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$. It works according to the reaction:

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)}$$

The hydroxide ions generated in this equilibrium then go on to react with the hydronium ions from the stomach acid, so that:

$$\mathrm{H_3O^+ + OH^- \rightleftharpoons 2\,H_2O(l)}$$

This reaction does not produce carbon dioxide, but magnesium-containing antacids can have a laxative effect. Several antacids have aluminum hydroxide, $Al(OH)_3$, as an active ingredient. The aluminum hydroxide tends to cause constipation, and some antacids use aluminum hydroxide in concert with magnesium hydroxide to balance the side effects of the two substances.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Culinary Aspects of Chemistry

Examples of acid-base chemistry are abundant in the culinary world. One example is the use of baking soda, or sodium bicarbonate in baking. $NaHCO_3$ is a base. When it reacts with an acid such as lemon juice, buttermilk, or sour cream in a batter, bubbles of carbon dioxide gas are formed from decomposition of the resulting carbonic acid, and the batter "rises." Baking powder is a combination of sodium bicarbonate, and one or more acid salts that react when the two chemicals come in contact with water in the batter.

Many people like to put lemon juice or vinegar, both of which are acids, on cooked fish (Figure 3.3.5). It turns out that fish have volatile amines (bases) in their systems, which are neutralized by the acids to yield involatile ammonium salts. This

reduces the odor of the fish, and also adds a “sour” taste that we seem to enjoy.



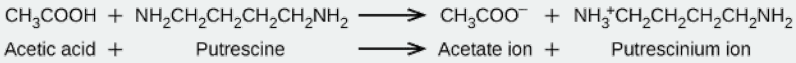


Figure 3.3.5: A neutralization reaction takes place between citric acid in lemons or acetic acid in vinegar, and the bases in the flesh of fish.

Pickling is a method used to preserve vegetables using a naturally produced acidic environment. The vegetable, such as a cucumber, is placed in a sealed jar submerged in a brine solution. The brine solution favors the growth of beneficial bacteria and suppresses the growth of harmful bacteria. The beneficial bacteria feed on starches in the cucumber and produce lactic acid as a waste product in a process called fermentation. The lactic acid eventually increases the acidity of the brine to a level that kills any harmful bacteria, which require a basic environment. Without the harmful bacteria consuming the cucumbers they are able to last much longer than if they were unprotected. A byproduct of the pickling process changes the flavor of the vegetables with the acid making them taste sour.

Link to Learning

Explore the microscopic view of strong and weak acids and bases.

Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

Earth’s atmosphere contains about 20% molecular oxygen, O_2, a chemically reactive gas that plays an essential role in the metabolism of aerobic organisms and in many environmental processes that shape the world. The term **oxidation** was originally used to describe chemical reactions involving O_2, but its meaning has evolved to refer to a broad and important reaction class known as *oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions*. A few examples of such reactions will be used to develop a clear picture of this classification.

Some redox reactions involve the transfer of electrons between reactant species to yield ionic products, such as the reaction between sodium and chlorine to yield sodium chloride:

$$2\,\mathrm{Na(s)} + \mathrm{Cl_2(g)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaCl(s)}$$

It is helpful to view the process with regard to each individual reactant, that is, to represent the fate of each reactant in the form of an equation called a **half-reaction**:

$$2\,\mathrm{Na(s)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Na^+(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

$$\mathrm{Cl_2(g)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-(s)}$$

These equations show that Na atoms *lose electrons* while Cl atoms (in the Cl_2 molecule) *gain electrons*, the “*s*” subscripts for the resulting ions signifying they are present in the form of a solid ionic compound. For redox reactions of this sort, the loss and gain of electrons define the complementary processes that occur:

$$\text{oxidation} = \text{loss of electrons}$$
$$\text{reduction} = \text{gain of electrons}$$

In this reaction, then, sodium is *oxidized* and chlorine undergoes **reduction**. Viewed from a more active perspective, sodium functions as a **reducing agent** (reductant), since it provides electrons to (or reduces) chlorine. Likewise, chlorine functions as an **oxidizing agent** (oxidant), as it effectively removes electrons from (oxidizes) sodium.

$$\text{reducing agent} = \text{species that is oxidized}$$
$$\text{oxidizing agent} = \text{species that is reduced}$$

Some redox processes, however, do not involve the transfer of electrons. Consider, for example, a reaction similar to the one yielding NaCl:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + Cl_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,HCl(g)}$$

The product of this reaction is a covalent compound, so transfer of electrons in the explicit sense is not involved. To clarify the similarity of this reaction to the previous one and permit an unambiguous definition of redox reactions, a property called *oxidation number* has been defined. The **oxidation number** (or **oxidation state**) of an element in a compound is the charge its atoms would possess *if the compound were ionic*. The following guidelines are used to assign oxidation numbers to each element in a molecule or ion.

1. The oxidation number of an atom in an elemental substance is zero.
2. The oxidation number of a monatomic ion is equal to the ion's charge.
3. Oxidation numbers for common nonmetals are usually assigned as follows:
   - Hydrogen: +1 when combined with nonmetals, −1 when combined with metals
   - Oxygen: −2 in most compounds, sometimes −1 (so-called peroxides, very rarely (so-called superoxides, positive values when combined with F (values vary)
   - Halogens: −1 for F always, −1 for other halogens except when combined with oxygen or other halogens (positive oxidation numbers in these cases, varying values)
4. The sum of oxidation numbers for all atoms in a molecule or polyatomic ion equals the charge on the molecule or ion.

Note: The proper convention for reporting charge is to write the number first, followed by the sign (e.g., 2+), while oxidation number is written with the reversed sequence, sign followed by number (e.g., +2). This convention aims to emphasize the distinction between these two related properties.

Example 3.3.3: Assigning Oxidation Numbers

Follow the guidelines in this section of the text to assign oxidation numbers to all the elements in the following species:

a. $\mathrm{H_2S}$
b. $\mathrm{SO_3^{2-}}$
c. $\mathrm{Na_2SO_4}$

Solution

(a) According to guideline 3, the oxidation number for H is +1.

Using this oxidation number and the compound's formula, guideline 4 may then be used to calculate the oxidation number for sulfur:

$$\text{charge on } H_2S = 0 = (2 \times +1) + (1 \times x)$$
$$x = 0 - (2 \times +1) = -2$$

(b) Guideline 3 suggests the oxidation number for oxygen is −2.

Using this oxidation number and the ion's formula, guideline 4 may then be used to calculate the oxidation number for sulfur:

$$\text{charge on } {SO_3}^{2-} = -2 = (3 \times -2) + (1 \times x)$$
$$x = -2 - (3 \times -2) = +4$$

(c) For ionic compounds, it's convenient to assign oxidation numbers for the cation and anion separately.

According to guideline 2, the oxidation number for sodium is +1.

Assuming the usual oxidation number for oxygen (−2 per guideline 3), the oxidation number for sulfur is calculated as directed by guideline 4:

$$\text{charge on } {SO_4}^{2-} = -2 = (4 \times -2) + (1 \times x)$$
$$x = -2 - (4 \times -2) = +6$$

? Exercise 3.3.3

Assign oxidation states to the elements whose atoms are underlined in each of the following compounds or ions:

a. $\mathrm{K\underline{N}O_3}$
b. $\mathrm{\underline{Al}H_3}$
c. $\mathrm{\underline{N}H_4^+}$
d. $\mathrm{H_2\underline{P}O_4^-}$

Answer

a. N, +5;
b. Al, +3;
c. N, −3;
d. P, +5

Using the oxidation number concept, an all-inclusive definition of redox reaction has been established. **Oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions** are those in which one or more elements involved undergo a change in oxidation number. (While the vast majority of redox reactions involve changes in oxidation number for two or more elements, a few interesting exceptions to this rule do exist Example 4.6.) Definitions for the complementary processes of this reaction class are correspondingly revised as shown here:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{oxidation} &= \text{increase in oxidation number}\\ \text{reduction} &= \text{decrease in oxidation number}\end{aligned}$$

Returning to the reactions used to introduce this topic, they may now both be identified as redox processes. In the reaction between sodium and chlorine to yield sodium chloride, sodium is oxidized (its oxidation number increases from 0 in Na to +1 in NaCl) and chlorine is reduced (its oxidation number decreases from 0 in Cl_2 to −1 in NaCl). In the reaction between molecular hydrogen and chlorine, hydrogen is oxidized (its oxidation number increases from 0 in H_2 to +1 in HCl) and chlorine is reduced (its oxidation number decreases from 0 in Cl_2 to −1 in HCl).

Several subclasses of redox reactions are recognized, including **combustion reactions** in which the reductant (also called a *fuel*) and oxidant (often, but not necessarily, molecular oxygen) react vigorously and produce significant amounts of heat, and often light, in the form of a flame. Solid rocket-fuel reactions are combustion processes. A typical propellant reaction in which solid aluminum is oxidized by ammonium perchlorate is represented by this equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{oxidation} &= \text{increase in oxidation number}\\ \text{reduction} &= \text{decrease in oxidation number}\end{aligned}$$

Link to Learning

Watch a brief video showing the test firing of a small-scale, prototype, hybrid rocket engine planned for use in the new Space Launch System being developed by NASA. The first engines firing at 3 s (green flame) use a liquid fuel/oxidant mixture, and the second, more powerful engines firing at 4 s (yellow flame) use a solid mixture.

Single-displacement (replacement) reactions are redox reactions in which an ion in solution is displaced (or replaced) via the oxidation of a metallic element. One common example of this type of reaction is the acid oxidation of certain metals:

$$\mathrm{Zn(s) + 2\,HCl(aq) \longrightarrow ZnCl_2(aq) + H_2(g)}$$

Metallic elements may also be oxidized by solutions of other metal salts; for example:

$$\mathrm{Cu(s) + 2\,AgNO_3(aq) \longrightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,Ag(s)}$$

This reaction may be observed by placing copper wire in a solution containing a dissolved silver salt. Silver ions in solution are reduced to elemental silver at the surface of the copper wire, and the resulting Cu^{2+} ions dissolve in the solution to yield a characteristic blue color (Figure 3.3.6).

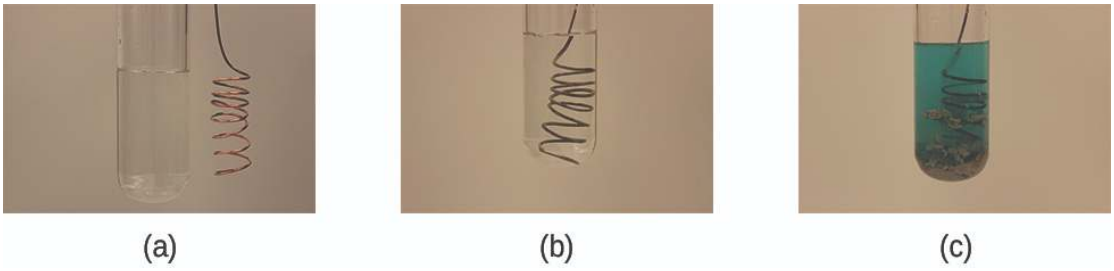


Figure 3.3.6: (a) A copper wire is shown next to a solution containing silver(I) ions. (b) Displacement of dissolved silver ions by copper ions results in (c) accumulation of gray-colored silver metal on the wire and development of a blue color in the solution, due to dissolved copper ions. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

Example 3.3.4: Describing Redox Reactions

Identify which equations represent redox reactions, providing a name for the reaction if appropriate. For those reactions identified as redox, name the oxidant and reductant.

a. $\mathrm{ZnCO_3(s) \longrightarrow ZnO(s) + CO_2(g)}$
b. $\mathrm{2\,Ga(l) + 3\,Br_2(l) \longrightarrow 2\,GaBr_3(s)}$
c. $\mathrm{2\,H_2O_2(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(l) + O_2(g)}$
d. $\mathrm{BaCl_2(aq) + K_2SO_4(aq) \longrightarrow BaSO_4(s) + 2\,KCl(aq)}$
e. $\mathrm{C_2H_4(g) + 3\,O_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,CO_2(g) + 2\,H_2O(l)}$

Solution

Redox reactions are identified per definition if one or more elements undergo a change in oxidation number.

a. This is not a redox reaction, since oxidation numbers remain unchanged for all elements.
b. This is a redox reaction. Gallium is oxidized, its oxidation number increasing from 0 in Ga(*l*) to +3 in $GaBr_3$(*s*). The reducing agent is Ga(*l*). Bromine is reduced, its oxidation number decreasing from 0 in Br_2(*l*) to −1 in $GaBr_3$(*s*). The oxidizing agent is Br_2(*l*).
c. This is a redox reaction. It is a particularly interesting process, as it involves the same element, oxygen, undergoing both oxidation and reduction (a so-called *disproportionation reaction)*. Oxygen is oxidized, its oxidation number increasing from −1 in H_2O_2(*aq*) to 0 in O_2(*g*). Oxygen is also reduced, its oxidation number decreasing from −1 in H_2O_2(*aq*) to −2 in H_2O(*l*). For disproportionation reactions, the same substance functions as an oxidant and a reductant.
d. This is not a redox reaction, since oxidation numbers remain unchanged for all elements.
e. This is a redox reaction (combustion). Carbon is oxidized, its oxidation number increasing from −2 in C_2H_4(*g*) to +4 in CO_2(*g*). The reducing agent (fuel) is C_2H_4(*g*). Oxygen is reduced, its oxidation number decreasing from 0 in O_2(*g*) to −2 in H_2O(*l*). The oxidizing agent is O_2(*g*).

Exercise 3.3.4

This equation describes the production of tin(II) chloride:

$$\mathrm{Sn(s) + 2\,HCl(g) \longrightarrow SnCl_2(s) + H_2(g)}$$

Is this a redox reaction? If so, provide a more specific name for the reaction if appropriate, and identify the oxidant and reductant.

Answer

Yes, a single-replacement reaction. $\mathrm{Sn(s)}$ is the reductant and $\mathrm{HCl(g)}$ is the oxidant.

Balancing Redox Reactions via the Half-Reaction Method

Redox reactions that take place in aqueous media often involve water, hydronium ions, and hydroxide ions as reactants or products. Although these species are not oxidized or reduced, they do participate in chemical change in other ways (e.g., by providing the elements required to form oxyanions). Equations representing these reactions are sometimes very difficult to balance by inspection, so systematic approaches have been developed to assist in the process. One very useful approach is to use the method of half-reactions, which involves the following steps:

1. Write the two half-reactions representing the redox process.
2. Balance all elements except oxygen and hydrogen.
3. Balance oxygen atoms by adding H_2O molecules.
4. Balance hydrogen atoms by adding H^+ ions.
5. Balance charge by adding electrons.
6. If necessary, multiply each half-reaction's coefficients by the smallest possible integers to yield equal numbers of electrons in each.
7. Add the balanced half-reactions together and simplify by removing species that appear on both sides of the equation.
8. For reactions occurring in basic media (excess hydroxide ions), carry out these additional steps:
   a. Add OH^- ions to both sides of the equation in numbers equal to the number of H^+ ions.
   b. On the side of the equation containing both H^+ and OH^- ions, combine these ions to yield water molecules.
   c. Simplify the equation by removing any redundant water molecules.
9. Finally, check to see that both the number of atoms and the total charges[1] are balanced.

Example 3.3.5: Balancing Redox Reactions in Acidic Solution

Write a balanced equation for the reaction between dichromate ion and iron(II) to yield iron(III) and chromium(III) in acidic solution.

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} + Fe^{2+} \longrightarrow Cr^{3+} + Fe^{3+}}$$

Solution

Step 1.Write the two half-reactions.

Each half-reaction will contain one reactant and one product with one element in common.

$$\mathrm{Fe^{2+} \longrightarrow Fe^{3+}}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} \longrightarrow Cr^{3+}}$$

Step 2. Balance oxygen atoms by adding $\mathrm{H_2O}$ molecules.

The iron half-reaction is already balanced, but the chromium half-reaction shows two Cr atoms on the left and one Cr atom on the right. Changing the coefficient on the right side of the equation to 2 achieves balance with regard to Cr atoms.

$$\mathrm{Fe^{2+} \longrightarrow Fe^{3+}}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+}}$$

Step 3. Balance charge by adding electrons.

The iron half-reaction does not contain O atoms. The chromium half-reaction shows seven O atoms on the left and none on the right, so seven water molecules are added to the right side.

$$\mathrm{Fe^{2+} \longrightarrow Fe^{3+}}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O}$$

Step 4. Balance hydrogen atoms by adding $\mathrm{H^+}$ ions.

The iron half-reaction does not contain H atoms. The chromium half-reaction shows 14 H atoms on the right and none on the left, so 14 hydrogen ions are added to the left side.

$$\mathrm{Fe^{2+} \longrightarrow Fe^{3+}}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14\,H^+ \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O}$$

Step 5. Balance charge by adding electrons.

The iron half-reaction shows a total charge of 2+ on the left side (1 Fe^{2+} ion) and 3+ on the right side (1 Fe^{3+} ion). Adding one electron to the right side brings that side's total charge to (3+) + (1−) = 2+, and charge balance is achieved.

The chromium half-reaction shows a total charge of (1 × 2−) + (14 × 1+) = 12+ on the left side (1 $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ion and 14 H^+ ions). The total charge on the right side is (2 × 3+) = 6 + (2 Cr^{3+} ions). Adding six electrons to the left side will bring that side's total charge to (12+ + 6−) = 6+, and charge balance is achieved.

$$\mathrm{Fe^{2+} \longrightarrow Fe^{3+} + e^-}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14\,H^+ + 6\,e^- \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O}$$

Step 6: Multiply the two half-reactions so the number of electrons in one reaction equals the number of electrons in the other reaction.

To be consistent with mass conservation, and the idea that redox reactions involve the transfer (not creation or destruction) of electrons, the iron half-reaction's coefficient must be multiplied by 6.

$$\mathrm{6\,Fe^{2+} \longrightarrow 6\,Fe^{3+} + 6\,e^-}$$

$$\mathrm{Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 6\,e^- + 14\,H^+ \longrightarrow 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O}$$

Step 7. Add the balanced half-reactions and cancel species that appear on both sides of the equation.

$$\mathrm{6\,Fe^{2+} + Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 6\,e^- + 14\,H^+ \longrightarrow 6\,Fe^{3+} + 6\,e^- + 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O}$$

Only the six electrons are redundant species. Removing them from each side of the equation yields the simplified, balanced equation here:

$$\mathrm{6\,Fe^{2+} + Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14\,H^+ \longrightarrow 6\,Fe^{3+} + 2\,Cr^{3+} + 7\,H_2O}$$

A final check of atom and charge balance confirms the equation is balanced.

	Reactants	Products
Fe	6	6
Cr	2	2
O	7	7
H	14	14
charge	24+	24+

? Exercise 3.3.5

In basic solution, molecular chlorine, Cl_2, reacts with hydroxide ions, OH^-, to yield chloride ions, Cl^-. and chlorate ions, ClO_3^-. HINT: This is a *disproportionation reaction* in which the element chlorine is both oxidized and reduced. Write a balanced equation for this reaction.

Answer

$$\mathrm{3\,Cl_2(aq) + 6\,OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow 5\,Cl^-(aq) + ClO_3^-(aq) + 3\,H_2O(l)}$$

Footnotes

- 1The requirement of “charge balance” is just a specific type of “mass balance” in which the species in question are electrons. An equation must represent equal numbers of electrons on the reactant and product sides, and so both atoms and charges must be balanced.

3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.2: Classifying Chemical Reactions** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.4: Reaction Stoichiometry

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the concept of stoichiometry as it pertains to chemical reactions
- Use balanced chemical equations to derive stoichiometric factors relating amounts of reactants and products
- Perform stoichiometric calculations involving mass, moles, and solution molarity

A balanced chemical equation provides a great deal of information in a very succinct format. Chemical formulas provide the identities of the reactants and products involved in the chemical change, allowing classification of the reaction. Coefficients provide the relative numbers of these chemical species, allowing a quantitative assessment of the relationships between the amounts of substances consumed and produced by the reaction. These quantitative relationships are known as the reaction's **stoichiometry**, a term derived from the Greek words *stoicheion* (meaning "element") and *metron* (meaning "measure"). In this module, the use of balanced chemical equations for various stoichiometric applications is explored.

The general approach to using stoichiometric relationships is similar in concept to the way people go about many common activities. Food preparation, for example, offers an appropriate comparison. A recipe for making eight pancakes calls for 1 cup pancake mix, cup milk, and one egg. The "equation" representing the preparation of pancakes per this recipe is

$$1 \text{ cup mix} + \frac{3}{4} \text{ cup milk} + 1 \text{ egg} \longrightarrow 8 \text{ pancakes}$$

If two dozen pancakes are needed for a big family breakfast, the ingredient amounts must be increased proportionally according to the amounts given in the recipe. For example, the number of eggs required to make 24 pancakes is

$$24 \ \cancel{\text{paneakes}} \times \frac{1 \text{ egg}}{8 \ \cancel{\text{paneakes}}} = 3 \text{ eggs}$$

Balanced chemical equations are used in much the same fashion to determine the amount of one reactant required to react with a given amount of another reactant, or to yield a given amount of product, and so forth. The coefficients in the balanced equation are used to derive **stoichiometric factors** that permit computation of the desired quantity. To illustrate this idea, consider the production of ammonia by reaction of hydrogen and nitrogen:

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,NH_3(g)}$$

This equation shows ammonia molecules are produced from hydrogen molecules in a 2:3 ratio, and stoichiometric factors may be derived using any amount (number) unit:

$$\frac{2 \text{ NH}_3 \text{ molecules}}{3 \text{ H}_2 \text{ molecules}} \text{ or } \frac{2 \text{ doz NH}_3 \text{ molecules}}{3 \text{ doz H}_2 \text{ molecules}} \text{ or } \frac{2 \text{ mol NH}_3 \text{ molecules}}{3 \text{ mol H}_2 \text{ molecules}}$$

These stoichiometric factors can be used to compute the number of ammonia molecules produced from a given number of hydrogen molecules, or the number of hydrogen molecules required to produce a given number of ammonia molecules. Similar factors may be derived for any pair of substances in any chemical equation.

Example 3.4.1: Moles of Reactant Required in a Reaction

How many moles of I_2 are required to react with 0.429 mol of Al according to the following equation (see Figure 3.4.1)?

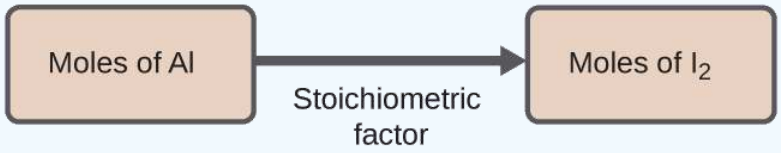
$$\mathrm{2\,Al + 3\,I_2 \longrightarrow 2\,AlI_3}$$



Figure 3.4.1: Aluminum and iodine react to produce aluminum iodide. The heat of the reaction vaporizes some of the solid iodine as a purple vapor. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

Solution

Referring to the balanced chemical equation, the stoichiometric factor relating the two substances of interest is The molar amount of iodine is derived by multiplying the provided molar amount of aluminum by this factor:



$$mol\,\mathrm{I_2} = 0.429\,\mathrm{mol\,Al} \times \frac{3\,\mathrm{mol\,I_2}}{2\,\mathrm{mol\,Al}}$$
$$= 0.644\,\mathrm{mol\,I_2}$$

? Exercise 3.4.1

How many moles of $Ca(OH)_2$ are required to react with 1.36 mol of H_3PO_4 to produce $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ according to the equation

Answer

2.04 mol

✓ Example 3.4.2: Number of Product Molecules Generated by a Reaction

How many carbon dioxide molecules are produced when 0.75 mol of propane is combusted according to this equation?

$$\mathrm{C_3H_8 + 5\,O_2 \longrightarrow 3\,CO_2 + 4\,H_2O}$$

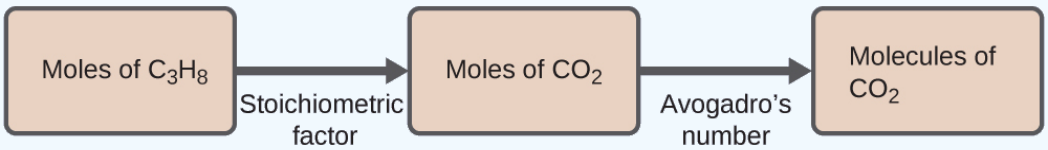
Solution

The approach here is the same as for Example 3.4.1, though the absolute number of molecules is requested, not the number of moles of molecules. This will simply require use of the moles-to-numbers conversion factor, Avogadro's number.

The balanced equation shows that carbon dioxide is produced from propane in a 3:1 ratio:

$$\frac{3\,\mathrm{mol\,CO_2}}{1\,\mathrm{mol\,C_3H_8}}$$

Using this stoichiometric factor, the provided molar amount of propane, and Avogadro's number,



$$0.75 mol\,\mathrm{C_3H_8} \times \frac{3 mol \mathrm{CO_2}}{1 mol\,\mathrm{C_3H_8}} \times \frac{6.022 \times 10^{23}\,\mathrm{CO_2\ molecules}}{mol\,\mathrm{CO_2}} = 1.4 \times 10^{24}\,\mathrm{CO_2\ molecules}$$

Exercise 3.4.2

How many NH_3 molecules are produced by the reaction of 4.0 mol of $Ca(OH)_2$ according to the following equation:

$$(NH_4)_2SO_4 + Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow 2\,NH_3 + CaSO_4 + 2\,H_2O$$

Answer

$4.8\ 10^{24}$ NH_3 molecules

These examples illustrate the ease with which the amounts of substances involved in a chemical reaction of known stoichiometry may be related. Directly measuring numbers of atoms and molecules is, however, not an easy task, and the practical application of stoichiometry requires that we use the more readily measured property of mass.

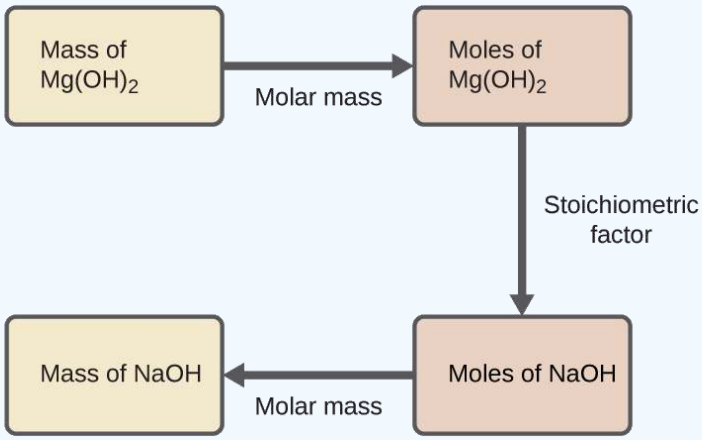
Example 3.4.3: Relating Masses of Reactants and Products

What mass of sodium hydroxide, NaOH, would be required to produce 16 g of the antacid milk of magnesia [magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$] by the following reaction?

$$MgCl_2(aq) + 2\,NaOH(aq) \longrightarrow Mg(OH)_2(s) + 2\,NaCl(aq)$$

Solution

The approach used previously in Example 3.4.1 and Example 3.4.2 is likewise used here; that is, we must derive an appropriate stoichiometric factor from the balanced chemical equation and use it to relate the amounts of the two substances of interest. In this case, however, masses (not molar amounts) are provided and requested, so additional steps of the sort learned in the previous chapter are required. The calculations required are outlined in this flowchart:



$$16g\,Mg(OH)_2 \times \frac{1mol\,Mg(OH)_2}{58.3g\,Mg(OH)_2} \times \frac{2\,mol\,NaOH}{1\,mol\,Mg(OH)_2} \times \frac{40.0\,g\,NaOH}{mol\,NaOH} = 22\,g\,NaOH$$

Exercise 3.4.3

What mass of gallium oxide, Ga_2O_3, can be prepared from 29.0 g of gallium metal? The equation for the reaction is:

$$4\,Ga + 3\,O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,Ga_2O_3$$

Answer

39.0 g

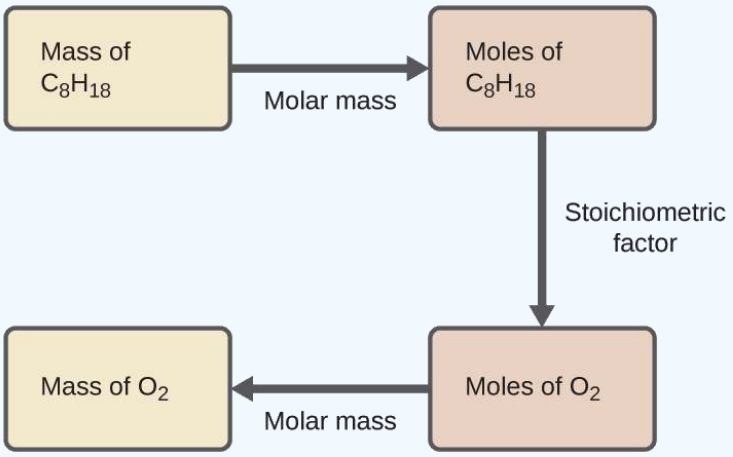
Example 3.4.4: Relating Masses of Reactants

What mass of oxygen gas, O_2, from the air is consumed in the combustion of 702 g of octane, C_8H_{18}, one of the principal components of gasoline?

$$2\,C_8H_{18} + 25\,O_2 \longrightarrow 16\,CO_2 + 18\,H_2O$$

Solution

The approach required here is the same as for the Example 3.4.3, differing only in that the provided and requested masses are both for reactant species.



$$702 g C_8H_{18} \times \frac{1 mol C_8H_{18}}{114.23 g G_8H_{18}} \times \frac{25 mol O_2}{2 mol C_8H_{18}} \times \frac{32.00 g O_2}{mol O_2} = 2.46 \times 10^3 g O_2$$

Exercise 3.4.4

What mass of CO is required to react with 25.13 g of Fe_2O_3 according to the equation $Fe_2O_3 + 3\,CO \longrightarrow 2\,Fe + 3\,CO_2$?

Answer

13.22 g

These examples illustrate just a few instances of reaction stoichiometry calculations. Numerous variations on the beginning and ending computational steps are possible depending upon what particular quantities are provided and sought (volumes, solution concentrations, and so forth). Regardless of the details, all these calculations share a common essential component: the use of stoichiometric factors derived from balanced chemical equations. Figure 3.4.2: provides a general outline of the various computational steps associated with many reaction stoichiometry calculations.

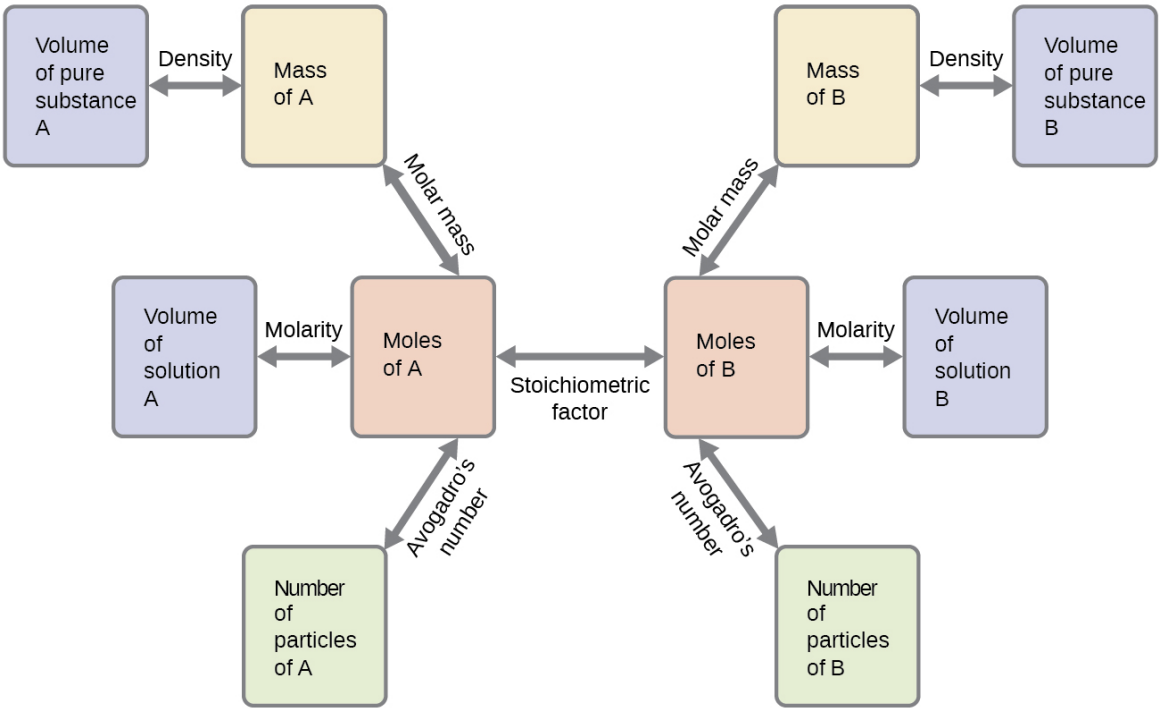


Figure 3.4.2: The flowchart depicts the various computational steps involved in most reaction stoichiometry calculations.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Airbags

Airbags (Figure 3.4.3) are a safety feature provided in most automobiles since the 1990s. The effective operation of an airbag requires that it be rapidly inflated with an appropriate amount (volume) of gas when the vehicle is involved in a collision. This requirement is satisfied in many automotive airbag systems through use of explosive chemical reactions, one common choice being the decomposition of sodium azide, NaN_3. When sensors in the vehicle detect a collision, an electrical current is passed through a carefully measured amount of NaN_3 to initiate its decomposition:

$$2\,NaN_3(s) \longrightarrow 3\,N_2(g) + 2\,Na(s)$$

This reaction is very rapid, generating gaseous nitrogen that can deploy and fully inflate a typical airbag in a fraction of a second (~0.03–0.1 s). Among many engineering considerations, the amount of sodium azide used must be appropriate for generating enough nitrogen gas to fully inflate the air bag and ensure its proper function. For example, a small mass (~100 g) of NaN_3 will generate approximately 50 L of N_2.



Figure 3.4.3: Airbags deploy upon impact to minimize serious injuries to passengers. (credit: Jon Seidman)

This page titled 3.4: Reaction Stoichiometry is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.3: Reaction Stoichiometry** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.5: Reaction Yields

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the concepts of theoretical yield and limiting reactants/reagents.
- Derive the theoretical yield for a reaction under specified conditions.
- Calculate the percent yield for a reaction.

The relative amounts of reactants and products represented in a balanced chemical equation are often referred to as *stoichiometric amounts*. All the exercises of the preceding module involved stoichiometric amounts of reactants. For example, when calculating the amount of product generated from a given amount of reactant, it was assumed that any other reactants required were available in stoichiometric amounts (or greater). In this module, more realistic situations are considered, in which reactants are not present in stoichiometric amounts.

Limiting Reactant

Consider another food analogy, making grilled cheese sandwiches (Figure 3.5.1):

$$1 \text{ slice of cheese} + 2 \text{ slices of bread} \longrightarrow 1 \text{ sandwich}$$

Stoichiometric amounts of sandwich ingredients for this recipe are bread and cheese slices in a 2:1 ratio. Provided with 28 slices of bread and 11 slices of cheese, one may prepare 11 sandwiches per the provided recipe, using all the provided cheese and having six slices of bread left over. In this scenario, the number of sandwiches prepared has been *limited* by the number of cheese slices, and the bread slices have been provided in *excess*.

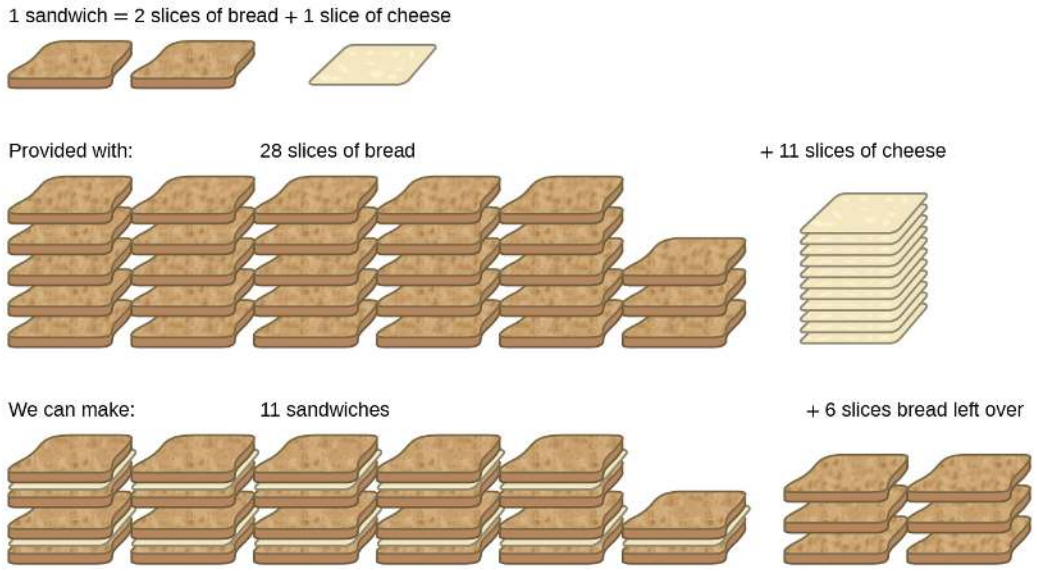


Figure 3.5.1: Sandwich making can illustrate the concepts of limiting and excess reactants.

Consider this concept now with regard to a chemical process, the reaction of hydrogen with chlorine to yield hydrogen chloride:

$$H_2(g) + Cl_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,HCl(g)$$

The balanced equation shows the hydrogen and chlorine react in a 1:1 stoichiometric ratio. If these reactants are provided in any other amounts, one of the reactants will nearly always be entirely consumed, thus limiting the amount of product that may be generated. This substance is the **limiting reactant**, and the other substance(s) is the **excess reactant**. Identifying the limiting and excess reactants for a given situation requires computing the molar amounts of each reactant provided and comparing them to the stoichiometric amounts represented in the balanced chemical equation. For example, imagine combining 3 moles of H_2 and 2 moles of Cl_2. This represents a 3:2 (or 1.5:1) ratio of hydrogen to chlorine present for reaction, which is greater than the stoichiometric

ratio of 1:1. Hydrogen, therefore, is present in excess, and chlorine is the limiting reactant. Reaction of all the provided chlorine (2 mol) will consume 2 mol of the 3 mol of hydrogen provided, leaving 1 mol of hydrogen unreacted.

An alternative approach to identifying the limiting reactant involves comparing the amount of product expected for the complete reaction of each reactant. Each reactant amount is used to separately calculate the amount of product that would be formed per the reaction's stoichiometry. The reactant yielding the lesser amount of product is the limiting reactant. For the example in the previous paragraph, complete reaction of the hydrogen would yield

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 3\ \text{mol } H_2 \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol } H_2} = 6\ \text{mol HCl}$$

Complete reaction of the provided chlorine would produce

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 2\ \text{mol } Cl_2 \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol } Cl_2} = 4\ \text{mol HCl}$$

The chlorine will be completely consumed once 4 moles of HCl have been produced. Since enough hydrogen was provided to yield 6 moles of HCl, there will be unreacted hydrogen remaining once this reaction is complete. Chlorine, therefore, is the limiting reactant and hydrogen is the excess reactant (Figure 3.5.2).

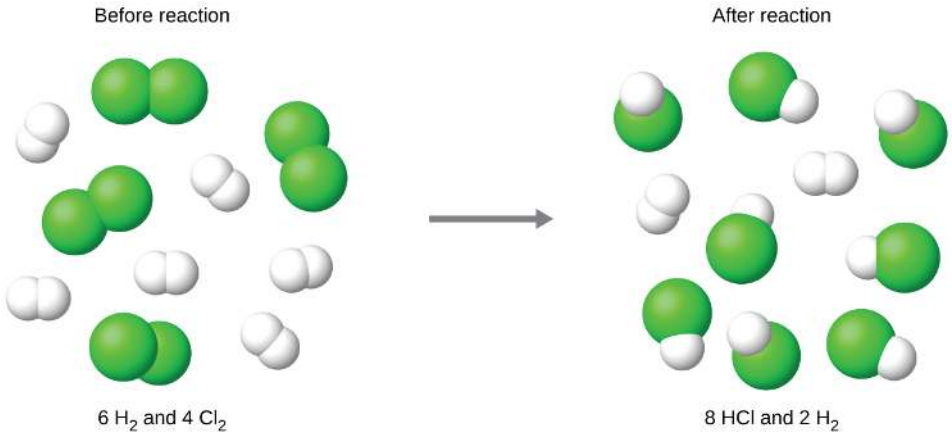


Figure 3.5.2: When H_2 and Cl_2 are combined in nonstoichiometric amounts, one of these reactants will limit the amount of HCl that can be produced. This illustration shows a reaction in which hydrogen is present in excess and chlorine is the limiting reactant.

Link to Learning

View this interactive simulation illustrating the concepts of limiting and excess reactants.

Example 3.5.1: Identifying the Limiting Reactant

Silicon nitride is a very hard, high-temperature-resistant ceramic used as a component of turbine blades in jet engines. It is prepared according to the following equation:

$$3Si(s) + 2N_2(g) \longrightarrow Si_3N_4(s)$$

Which is the limiting reactant when 2.00 g of Si and 1.50 g of N_2 react?

Solution

Compute the provided molar amounts of reactants, and then compare these amounts to the balanced equation to identify the limiting reactant.

$$molSi = 2.00gSi \times \frac{1molSi}{28.09gSi} = 0.0712molSi$$

$$molSi = 2.00gSi \times \frac{1molSi}{28.09gSi} = 0.0712molSi$$

The provided Si:N_2 molar ratio is:

$$\frac{0.0712 mol Si}{0.0535 mol N_2} = \frac{1.33 mol Si}{1 mol N_2}$$

The stoichiometric Si:N_2 ratio is:

$$\frac{3 mol Si}{2 mol N_2} = \frac{1.5 mol Si}{1 mol N_2}$$

Comparing these ratios shows that Si is provided in a less-than-stoichiometric amount, and so is the limiting reactant.

Alternatively, compute the amount of product expected for complete reaction of each of the provided reactants. The 0.0712 moles of silicon would yield

$$mol Si_3N_4 \text{ produced } = 0.0712 mol Si \times \frac{1 mol Si_3N_4}{3 mol Si^2} = 0.0237 mol Si_3N_4$$

while the 0.0535 moles of nitrogen would produce

$$\text{mol Si } N_4 \text{ produced } = 0.0535 mol N \times \frac{1 mol Si_3N_4}{2 mol N_2} = 0.0268 mol Si_3N_4$$

Since silicon yields the lesser amount of product, it is the limiting reactant.

? Exercise 3.5.1

Which is the limiting reactant when 5.00 g of H_2 and 10.0 g of O_2 react and form water?

Answer

O_2

Percent Yield

The amount of product that *may be* produced by a reaction under specified conditions, as calculated per the stoichiometry of an appropriate balanced chemical equation, is called the **theoretical yield** of the reaction. In practice, the amount of product obtained is called the **actual yield**, and it is often less than the theoretical yield for a number of reasons. Some reactions are inherently inefficient, being accompanied by *side reactions* that generate other products. Others are, by nature, incomplete (consider the partial reactions of weak acids and bases discussed earlier in this chapter). Some products are difficult to collect without some loss, and so less than perfect recovery will reduce the actual yield. The extent to which a reaction's theoretical yield is achieved is commonly expressed as its **percent yield**:

$$\text{percent yield } = \frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}} \times 100\% \tag{3.5.1}$$

Actual and theoretical yields may be expressed as masses or molar amounts (or any other appropriate property; e.g., volume, if the product is a gas). As long as both yields are expressed using the same units, these units will cancel when percent yield is calculated.

✓ Example 3.5.2: Calculation of Percent Yield

Upon reaction of 1.274 g of copper sulfate with excess zinc metal, 0.392 g copper metal was obtained according to the equation:

$$CuSO_4(aq) + Zn(s) \longrightarrow Cu(s) + ZnSO_4(aq)$$

What is the percent yield?

Solution

The provided information identifies copper sulfate as the limiting reactant, and so the theoretical yield is found by the approach illustrated in the previous module, as shown here:

$$1.274\ \text{g}\ \text{CuSO}_4 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{CuSO}_4}{159.62\ \text{g}\ \text{CuSO}_4} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{Cu}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{CuSO}_4} \times \frac{63.55\ \text{g}\ \text{Cu}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{Cu}} = 0.5072\ \text{g}\ \text{Cu}$$

Using this theoretical yield and the provided value for actual yield, the percent yield is calculated (via Equation 3.5.1 to be

$$\begin{aligned}\text{percent yield} &= \left(\frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}}\right) \times 100\% \\ &= \left(\frac{0.392\ \text{g}\ \text{Cu}}{0.5072\ \text{g}\ \text{Cu}_2}\right) \times 100\% \\ &= 77.3\%\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 3.5.2

What is the percent yield of a reaction that produces 12.5 g of the gas Freon CF_2Cl_2 from 32.9 g of CCl_4 and excess HF?

$$CCl_4 + 2\,HF \longrightarrow CF_2Cl_2 + 2\,HCl$$

Answer

48.3%

How Sciences Interconnect: Green Chemistry and Atom Economy

The purposeful design of chemical products and processes that minimize the use of environmentally hazardous substances and the generation of waste is known as *green chemistry*. Green chemistry is a philosophical approach that is being applied to many areas of science and technology, and its practice is summarized by guidelines known as the "Twelve Principles of Green Chemistry" (see details at this website). One of the 12 principles is aimed specifically at maximizing the efficiency of processes for synthesizing chemical products. The *atom economy* of a process is a measure of this efficiency, defined as the percentage by mass of the final product of a synthesis relative to the masses of *all* the reactants used:

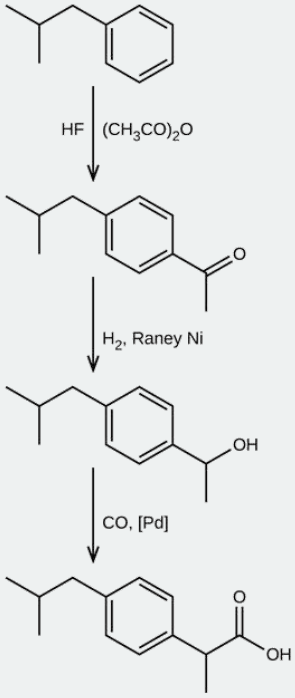
$$\text{atom economy} = \frac{\text{mass of product}}{\text{mass of reactants}} \times 100\%$$

Though the definition of atom economy at first glance appears very similar to that for percent yield, be aware that this property represents a difference in the *theoretical* efficiencies of *different* chemical processes. The percent yield of a given chemical process, on the other hand, evaluates the efficiency of a process by comparing the yield of product actually obtained to the maximum yield predicted by stoichiometry.

The synthesis of the common nonprescription pain medication, ibuprofen, nicely illustrates the success of a green chemistry approach (Figure 3.5.3). First marketed in the early 1960s, ibuprofen was produced using a six-step synthesis that required 514 g of reactants to generate each mole (206 g) of ibuprofen, an atom economy of 40%. In the 1990s, an alternative process was developed by the BHC Company (now BASF Corporation) that requires only three steps and has an atom economy of ~80%, nearly twice that of the original process. The BHC process generates significantly less chemical waste; uses less-hazardous and recyclable materials; and provides significant cost-savings to the manufacturer (and, subsequently, the consumer). In recognition of the positive environmental impact of the BHC process, the company received the Environmental Protection Agency's Greener Synthetic Pathways Award in 1997.



(a)



(b)

Figure 3.5.3: (a) Ibuprofen is a popular nonprescription pain medication commonly sold as 200 mg tablets. (b) The BHC process for synthesizing ibuprofen requires only three steps and exhibits an impressive atom economy. (credit a: modification of work by Derrick Coetzee)

This page titled 3.5: Reaction Yields is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.4: Reaction Yields** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the fundamental aspects of titrations and gravimetric analysis.
- Perform stoichiometric calculations using typical titration and gravimetric data.

In the 18th century, the strength (actually the concentration) of vinegar samples was determined by noting the amount of potassium carbonate, K_2CO_3, which had to be added, a little at a time, before bubbling ceased. The greater the weight of potassium carbonate added to reach the point where the bubbling ended, the more concentrated the vinegar.

We now know that the effervescence that occurred during this process was due to reaction with acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, the compound primarily responsible for the odor and taste of vinegar. Acetic acid reacts with potassium carbonate according to the following equation:

The bubbling was due to the production of CO_2.

The test of vinegar with potassium carbonate is one type of quantitative analysis—the determination of the amount or concentration of a substance in a sample. In the analysis of vinegar, the concentration of the solute (acetic acid) was determined from the amount of reactant that combined with the solute present in a known volume of the solution. In other types of chemical analyses, the amount of a substance present in a sample is determined by measuring the amount of product that results.

Titration

The described approach to measuring vinegar strength was an early version of the analytical technique known as titration analysis. A typical titration analysis involves the use of a buret (Figure 3.6.1) to make incremental additions of a solution containing a known concentration of some substance (the titrant) to a sample solution containing the substance whose concentration is to be measured (the analyte). The titrant and analyte undergo a chemical reaction of known stoichiometry, and so measuring the volume of titrant solution required for complete reaction with the analyte (the equivalence point of the titration) allows calculation of the analyte concentration. The equivalence point of a titration may be detected visually if a distinct change in the appearance of the sample solution accompanies the completion of the reaction. The halt of bubble formation in the classic vinegar analysis is one such example, though, more commonly, special dyes called indicators are added to the sample solutions to impart a change in color at or very near the equivalence point of the titration. Equivalence points may also be detected by measuring some solution property that changes in a predictable way during the course of the titration. Regardless of the approach taken to detect a titration's equivalence point, the volume of titrant actually measured is called the end point. Properly designed titration methods typically ensure that the difference between the equivalence and end points is negligible. Though any type of chemical reaction may serve as the basis for a titration analysis, the three described in this chapter (precipitation, acid-base, and redox) are most common. Additional details regarding titration analysis are provided in the chapter on acid-base equilibria.

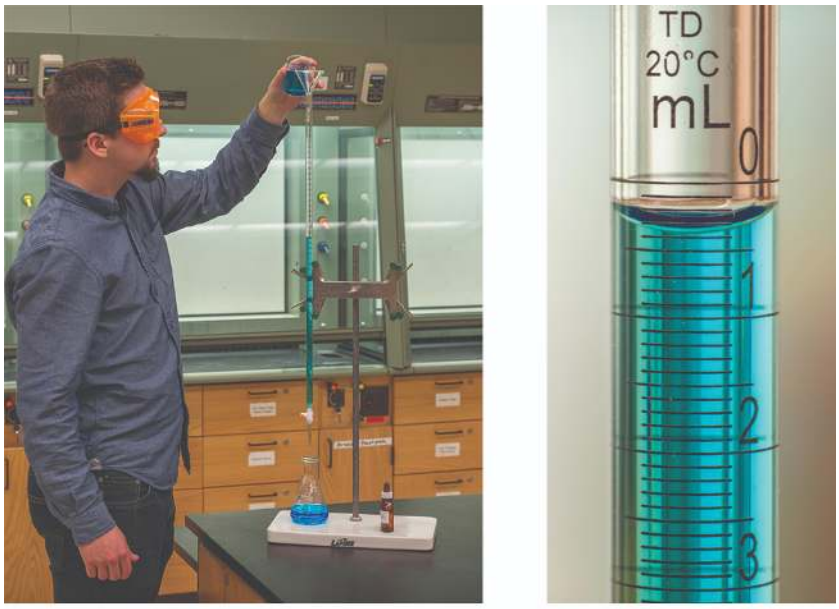


Figure 3.6.1: (a) A student fills a buret in preparation for a titration analysis. (b) A typical buret permits volume measurements to the nearest 0.01 mL. (credit a: modification of work by Mark Blaser and Matt Evans; credit b: modification of work by Mark Blaser and Matt Evans)

Example 4.14: Titration Analysis

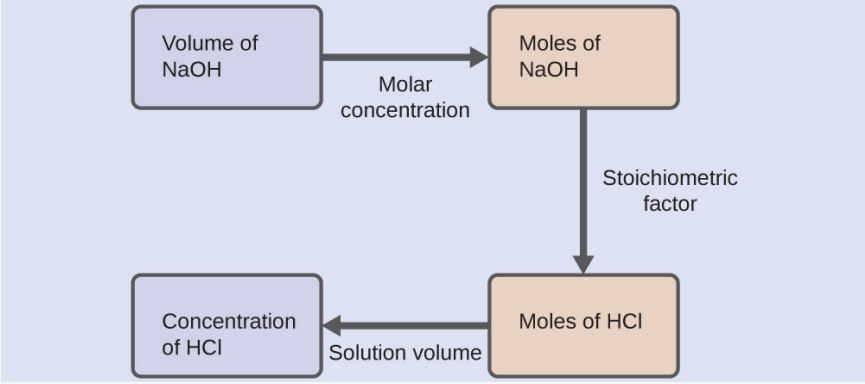
The end point in a titration of a 50.00-mL sample of aqueous HCl was reached by addition of 35.23 mL of 0.250 M NaOH titrant. The titration reaction is:

What is the molarity of the HCl?

Solution

As for all reaction stoichiometry calculations, the key issue is the relation between the molar amounts of the chemical species of interest as depicted in the balanced chemical equation. The approach outlined in previous modules of this chapter is followed, with additional considerations required, since the amounts of reactants provided and requested are expressed as solution concentrations.

For this exercise, the calculation will follow the following outlined steps:



The molar amount of HCl is calculated to be:

Using the provided volume of HCl solution and the definition of molarity, the HCl concentration is:

Note: For these types of titration calculations, it is convenient to recognize that solution molarity is also equal to the number of *milli*moles of solute per *milli*liter of solution:

Using this version of the molarity unit will shorten the calculation by eliminating two conversion factors:

? Exercise 3.6.1

A 20.00-mL sample of aqueous oxalic acid, $H_2C_2O_4$, was titrated with a 0.09113-*M* solution of potassium permanganate, $KMnO_4$ (see net ionic equation below).

A volume of 23.24 mL was required to reach the end point. What is the oxalic acid molarity?

Answer

0.2648 *M*

Gravimetric Analysis

A gravimetric analysis is one in which a sample is subjected to some treatment that causes a change in the physical state of the analyte that permits its separation from the other components of the sample. Mass measurements of the sample, the isolated analyte, or some other component of the analysis system, used along with the known stoichiometry of the compounds involved, permit calculation of the analyte concentration. Gravimetric methods were the first techniques used for quantitative chemical analysis, and they remain important tools in the modern chemistry laboratory.

The required change of state in a gravimetric analysis may be achieved by various physical and chemical processes. For example, the moisture (water) content of a sample is routinely determined by measuring the mass of a sample before and after it is subjected to a controlled heating process that evaporates the water. Also common are gravimetric techniques in which the analyte is subjected to a precipitation reaction of the sort described earlier in this chapter. The precipitate is typically isolated from the reaction mixture by filtration, carefully dried, and then weighed (Figure 3.6.2). The mass of the precipitate may then be used, along with relevant stoichiometric relationships, to calculate analyte concentration.



Figure 3.6.2: Precipitate may be removed from a reaction mixture by filtration.

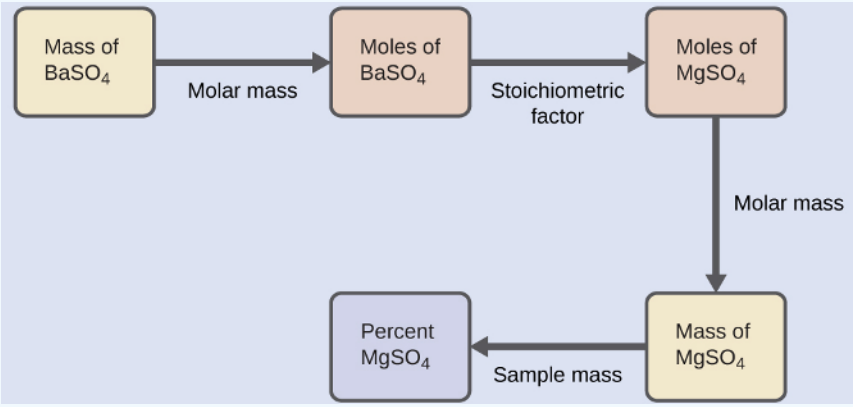
Example 4.15: Gravimetric Analysis

A 0.4550-g solid mixture containing $MgSO_4$ is dissolved in water and treated with an excess of $Ba(NO_3)_2$, resulting in the precipitation of 0.6168 g of $BaSO_4$.

What is the concentration (mass percent) of $MgSO_4$ in the mixture?

Solution

The plan for this calculation is similar to others used in stoichiometric calculations, the central step being the connection between the moles of $BaSO_4$ and $MgSO_4$ through their stoichiometric factor. Once the mass of $MgSO_4$ is computed, it may be used along with the mass of the sample mixture to calculate the requested percentage concentration.



The mass of $MgSO_4$ that would yield the provided precipitate mass is

The concentration of $MgSO_4$ in the sample mixture is then calculated to be

? Exercise 3.6.1

What is the percent of chloride ion in a sample if 1.1324 g of the sample produces 1.0881 g of AgCl when treated with excess Ag^+?

Answer

23.76%

The elemental composition of hydrocarbons and related compounds may be determined via a gravimetric method known as combustion analysis. In a combustion analysis, a weighed sample of the compound is heated to a high temperature under a stream of oxygen gas, resulting in its complete combustion to yield gaseous products of known identities. The complete combustion of hydrocarbons, for example, will yield carbon dioxide and water as the only products. The gaseous combustion products are swept through separate, preweighed collection devices containing compounds that selectively absorb each product (Figure 3.6.3). The mass increase of each device corresponds to the mass of the absorbed product and may be used in an appropriate stoichiometric calculation to derive the mass of the relevant element.

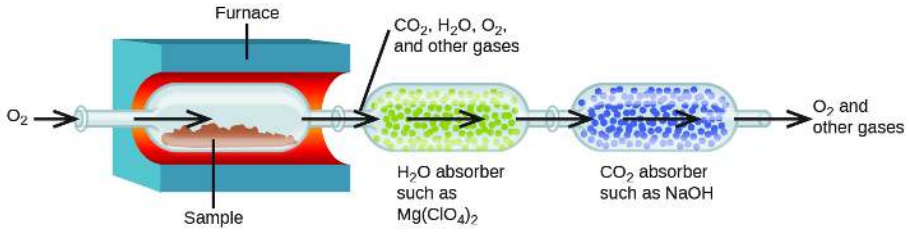


Figure 3.6.3: This schematic diagram illustrates the basic components of a combustion analysis device for determining the carbon and hydrogen content of a sample.

✓ Example 4.16: Combustion Analysis

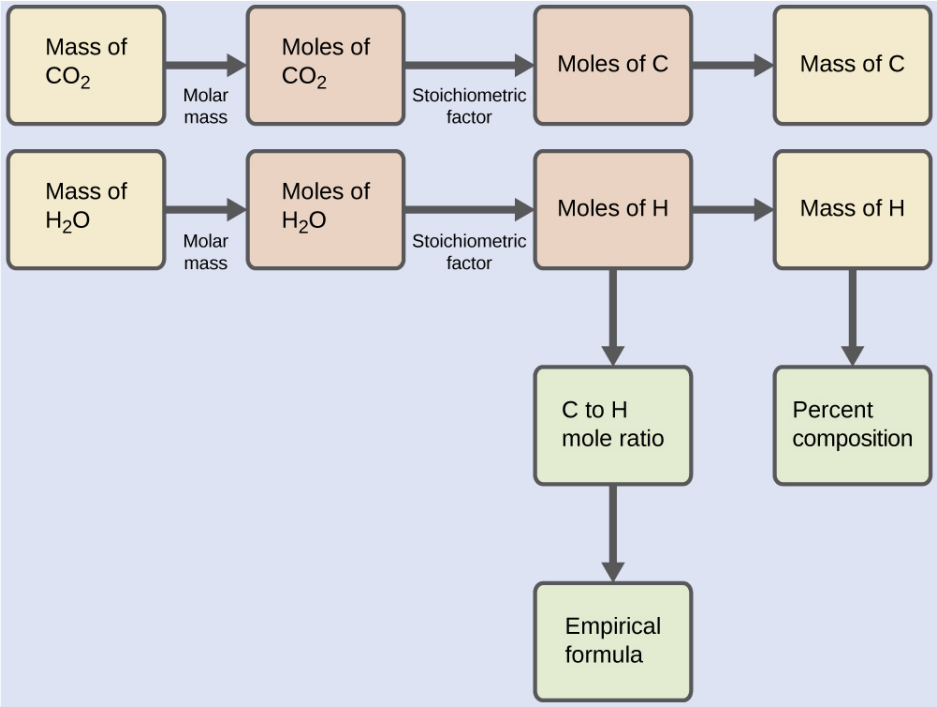
Polyethylene is a hydrocarbon polymer used to produce food-storage bags and many other flexible plastic items. A combustion analysis of a 0.00126-g sample of polyethylene yields 0.00394 g of CO_2 and 0.00161 g of H_2O. What is the empirical formula of polyethylene?

Solution

The primary assumption in this exercise is that all the carbon in the sample combusted is converted to carbon dioxide, and all the hydrogen in the sample is converted to water:

Note that a balanced equation is not necessary for the task at hand. To derive the empirical formula of the compound, only the subscripts *x* and *y* are needed.

First, calculate the molar amounts of carbon and hydrogen in the sample, using the provided masses of the carbon dioxide and water, respectively. With these molar amounts, the empirical formula for the compound may be written as described in the previous chapter of this text. An outline of this approach is given in the following flow chart:



The empirical formula for the compound is then derived by identifying the smallest whole-number multiples for these molar amounts. The H-to-C molar ratio is

and the empirical formula for polyethylene is CH_2.

Exercise 3.6.1

A 0.00215-g sample of polystyrene, a polymer composed of carbon and hydrogen, produced 0.00726 g of CO_2 and 0.00148 g of H_2O in a combustion analysis. What is the empirical formula for polystyrene?

Answer

CH

This page titled 3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.5: Quantitative Chemical Analysis** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

3.7: Key Terms

acid | substance that produces H_3O^+ when dissolved in water

acid-base reaction | reaction involving the transfer of a hydrogen ion between reactant species

actual yield | amount of product formed in a reaction

analyte | chemical species of interest

balanced equation | chemical equation with equal numbers of atoms for each element in the reactant and product

base | substance that produces OH^- when dissolved in water

buret | device used for the precise delivery of variable liquid volumes, such as in a titration analysis

chemical equation | symbolic representation of a chemical reaction

coefficient | number placed in front of symbols or formulas in a chemical equation to indicate their relative amount

combustion analysis | gravimetric technique used to determine the elemental composition of a compound via the collection and weighing of its gaseous combustion products

combustion reaction | vigorous redox reaction producing significant amounts of energy in the form of heat and, sometimes, light

complete ionic equation | chemical equation in which all dissolved ionic reactants and products, including spectator ions, are explicitly represented by formulas for their dissociated ions

end point | measured volume of titrant solution that yields the change in sample solution appearance or other property expected for stoichiometric equivalence (see *equivalence point*)

equivalence point | volume of titrant solution required to react completely with the analyte in a titration analysis; provides a stoichiometric amount of titrant for the sample's analyte according to the titration reaction

excess reactant | reactant present in an amount greater than required by the reaction stoichiometry

gravimetric analysis | quantitative chemical analysis method involving the separation of an analyte from a sample by a physical or chemical process and subsequent mass measurements of the analyte, reaction product, and/or sample

half-reaction | an equation that shows whether each reactant loses or gains electrons in a reaction.

indicator | substance added to the sample in a titration analysis to permit visual detection of the end point

insoluble | of relatively low solubility; dissolving only to a slight extent

limiting reactant | reactant present in an amount lower than required by the reaction stoichiometry, thus limiting the amount of product generated

molecular equation | chemical equation in which all reactants and products are represented as neutral substances

net ionic equation | chemical equation in which only those dissolved ionic reactants and products that undergo a chemical or physical change are represented (excludes spectator ions)

neutralization reaction | reaction between an acid and a base to produce salt and water

oxidation | process in which an element's oxidation number is increased by loss of electrons

oxidation number | (also, oxidation state) the charge each atom of an element would have in a compound if the compound were ionic

oxidation-reduction reaction | (also, redox reaction) reaction involving a change in oxidation number for one or more reactant elements

oxidizing agent | (also, oxidant) substance that brings about the oxidation of another substance, and in the process becomes reduced

percent yield | measure of the efficiency of a reaction, expressed as a percentage of the theoretical yield

precipitate | insoluble product that forms from reaction of soluble reactants

precipitation reaction | reaction that produces one or more insoluble products; when reactants are ionic compounds, sometimes called double-displacement or metathesis

product | substance formed by a chemical or physical change; shown on the right side of the arrow in a chemical equation

quantitative analysis | the determination of the amount or concentration of a substance in a sample

reactant | substance undergoing a chemical or physical change; shown on the left side of the arrow in a chemical equation

reducing agent | (also, reductant) substance that brings about the reduction of another substance, and in the process becomes oxidized

reduction | process in which an element's oxidation number is decreased by gain of electrons

salt | ionic compound that can be formed by the reaction of an acid with a base that contains a cation and an anion other than hydroxide or oxide

single-displacement reaction | (also, replacement) redox reaction involving the oxidation of an elemental substance by an ionic species

solubility | the extent to which a substance may be dissolved in water, or any solvent

soluble | of relatively high solubility; dissolving to a relatively large extent

spectator ion | ion that does not undergo a chemical or physical change during a reaction, but its presence is required to maintain charge neutrality

stoichiometric factor | ratio of coefficients in a balanced chemical equation, used in computations relating amounts of reactants and products

stoichiometry | relationships between the amounts of reactants and products of a chemical reaction

strong acid | acid that reacts completely when dissolved in water to yield hydronium ions

strong base | base that reacts completely when dissolved in water to yield hydroxide ions

theoretical yield | amount of product that may be produced from a given amount of reactant(s) according to the reaction stoichiometry

titrant | solution containing a known concentration of substance that will react with the analyte in a titration analysis

titration analysis | quantitative chemical analysis method that involves measuring the volume of a reactant solution required to completely react with the analyte in a sample

weak acid | acid that reacts only to a slight extent when dissolved in water to yield hydronium ions

weak base | base that reacts only to a slight extent when dissolved in water to yield hydroxide ions

---

3.7: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.6: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.8: Key Equations

3.8: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.7: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.9: Summary

Chemical equations are symbolic representations of chemical and physical changes. Formulas for the substances undergoing the change (reactants) and substances generated by the change (products) are separated by an arrow and preceded by integer coefficients indicating their relative numbers. Balanced equations are those whose coefficients result in equal numbers of atoms for each element in the reactants and products. Chemical reactions in aqueous solution that involve ionic reactants or products may be represented more realistically by complete ionic equations and, more succinctly, by net ionic equations.

Chemical reactions are classified according to similar patterns of behavior. A large number of important reactions are included in three categories: precipitation, acid-base, and oxidation-reduction (redox). Precipitation reactions involve the formation of one or more insoluble products. Acid-base reactions involve the transfer of hydrogen ions between reactants. Redox reactions involve a change in oxidation number for one or more reactant elements. Writing balanced equations for some redox reactions that occur in aqueous solutions is simplified by using a systematic approach called the half-reaction method.

A balanced chemical equation may be used to describe a reaction's stoichiometry (the relationships between amounts of reactants and products). Coefficients from the equation are used to derive stoichiometric factors that subsequently may be used for computations relating reactant and product masses, molar amounts, and other quantitative properties.

When reactions are carried out using less-than-stoichiometric quantities of reactants, the amount of product generated will be determined by the limiting reactant. The amount of product generated by a chemical reaction is its actual yield. This yield is often less than the amount of product predicted by the stoichiometry of the balanced chemical equation representing the reaction (its theoretical yield). The extent to which a reaction generates the theoretical amount of product is expressed as its percent yield.

The stoichiometry of chemical reactions may serve as the basis for quantitative chemical analysis methods. Titrations involve measuring the volume of a titrant solution required to completely react with a sample solution. This volume is then used to calculate the concentration of analyte in the sample using the stoichiometry of the titration reaction. Gravimetric analysis involves separating the analyte from the sample by a physical or chemical process, determining its mass, and then calculating its concentration in the sample based on the stoichiometry of the relevant process. Combustion analysis is a gravimetric method used to determine the elemental composition of a compound by collecting and weighing the gaseous products of its combustion.

3.9: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.8: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.10: Exercises

Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations

1. What does it mean to say an equation is balanced? Why is it important for an equation to be balanced?

2. Consider molecular, complete ionic, and net ionic equations.

   (a) What is the difference between these types of equations?
   (b) In what circumstance would the complete and net ionic equations for a reaction be identical?

3. Balance the following equations:

   (a) $\mathrm{PCl_5}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{POCl_3}(l) + \mathrm{HCl}(aq)$
   (b) $\mathrm{Cu}(s) + \mathrm{HNO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu(NO_3)_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{NO}(g)$
   (c) $\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{I_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{HI}(s)$
   (d) $\mathrm{Fe}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2O_3}(s)$
   (e) $\mathrm{Na}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{NaOH}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
   (f) $\mathrm{(NH_4)_2Cr_2O_7}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cr_2O_3}(s) + \mathrm{N_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
   (g) $\mathrm{P_4}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PCl_3}(l)$
   (h) $\mathrm{PtCl_4}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Pt}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g)$

4. Balance the following equations

   (a) $\mathrm{Ag}(s) + \mathrm{H_2\,S}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag_2\,S}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
   (b) $\mathrm{P_4}(s) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{P_4O_{10}}(s)$
   (c) $\mathrm{Pb}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Pb(OH)_2}(s)$
   (d) $\mathrm{Fe}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe_3O_4}(s) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
   (e) $\mathrm{Sc_2O_3}(s) + \mathrm{SO_3}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Sc_2(SO_4)_3}(s)$
   (f) $\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3PO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ca(H_2PO_4)_2}(aq)$
   (g) $\mathrm{Al}(s) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Al_2(SO_4)_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
   (h) $\mathrm{TiCl_4}(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{TiO_2}(s) + \mathrm{HCl}(g)$

5. Write a balanced molecular equation describing each of the following chemical reactions.

   (a) Solid calcium carbonate is heated and decomposes to solid calcium oxide and carbon dioxide gas.
   (b) Gaseous butane, $\mathrm{C_4H_{10}}$, reacts with diatomic oxygen gas to yield gaseous carbon dioxide and water vapor.
   (c) Aqueous solutions of magnesium chloride and sodium hydroxide react to produce solid magnesium hydroxide and aqueous sodium chloride.
   (d) Water vapor reacts with sodium metal to produce solid sodium hydroxide and hydrogen gas.

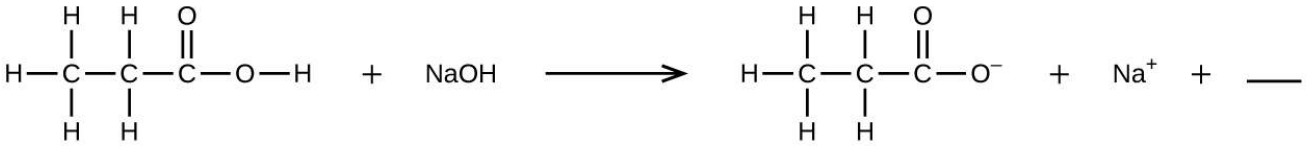
6. Write a balanced equation describing each of the following chemical reactions.

   (a) Solid potassium chlorate, $\mathrm{KClO_3}$, decomposes to form solid potassium chloride and diatomic oxygen gas.
   (b) Solid aluminum metal reacts with solid diatomic iodine to form solid $\mathrm{Al_2I_6}$.
   (c) When solid sodium chloride is added to aqueous sulfuric acid, hydrogen chloride gas and aqueous sodium sulfate are produced.
   (d) Aqueous solutions of phosphoric acid and potassium hydroxide react to produce aqueous potassium dihydrogen phosphate and liquid water.

7. Colorful fireworks often involve the decomposition of barium nitrate and potassium chlorate and the reaction of the metals magnesium, aluminum, and iron with oxygen.

   (a) Write the formulas of barium nitrate and potassium chlorate.
   (b) The decomposition of solid potassium chlorate leads to the formation of solid potassium chloride and diatomic oxygen gas. Write an equation for the reaction.
   (c) The decomposition of solid barium nitrate leads to the formation of solid barium oxide, diatomic nitrogen gas, and diatomic oxygen gas. Write an equation for the reaction.
   (d) Write separate equations for the reactions of the solid metals magnesium, aluminum, and iron with diatomic oxygen gas to yield the corresponding metal oxides. (Assume the iron oxide contains $\mathrm{Fe^{3+}}$ ions.)

8. Fill in the blank with a single chemical formula for a covalent compound that will balance the equation:



9. Aqueous hydrogen fluoride (hydrofluoric acid) is used to etch glass and to analyze minerals for their silicon content. Hydrogen fluoride will also react with sand (silicon dioxide).

a. Write an equation for the reaction of solid silicon dioxide with hydrofluoric acid to yield gaseous silicon tetrafluoride and liquid water.
b. The mineral fluorite (calcium fluoride) occurs extensively in Illinois. Solid calcium fluoride can also be prepared by the reaction of aqueous solutions of calcium chloride and sodium fluoride, yielding aqueous sodium chloride as the other product. Write complete and net ionic equations for this reaction.

10. A novel process for obtaining magnesium from sea water involves several reactions. Write a balanced chemical equation for each step of the process.

a. The first step is the decomposition of solid calcium carbonate from seashells to form solid calcium oxide and gaseous carbon dioxide.
b. The second step is the formation of solid calcium hydroxide as the only product from the reaction of the solid calcium oxide with liquid water.
c. Solid calcium hydroxide is then added to the seawater, reacting with dissolved magnesium chloride to yield solid magnesium hydroxide and aqueous calcium chloride.
d. The solid magnesium hydroxide is added to a hydrochloric acid solution, producing dissolved magnesium chloride and liquid water.
e. Finally, the magnesium chloride is melted and electrolyzed to yield liquid magnesium metal and diatomic chlorine gas.

11. From the balanced molecular equations, write the complete ionic and net ionic equations for the following:

(a) $\mathrm{K_2C_2O_4}(aq) + \mathrm{Ba(OH)_2}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\mathrm{KOH}(aq) + \mathrm{BaC_2O_4}(s)$
(b) $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbSO_4}(s) + 2\mathrm{HNO_3}(aq)$
(c) $\mathrm{CaCO_3}(s) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaSO_4}(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$

7.2 Classifying Chemical Reactions

12. Use the following equations to answer the next four questions:

i. $\mathrm{H_2O}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
ii. $\mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{Cl^-}(\mathrm{aq}) + \mathrm{Ag^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{AgCl}(s) + \mathrm{Na^+}(aq) + \mathrm{NO_3^-}(aq)$
iii. $\mathrm{CH_3OH}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
iv. $2\mathrm{H_2O}(l) \longrightarrow 2\mathrm{H_2}(g) + \mathrm{O_2}(g)$
v. $\mathrm{H^+}(aq) + \mathrm{OH^-}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$

(a) Which equation describes a physical change?
(b) Which equation identifies the reactants and products of a combustion reaction?
(c) Which equation is not balanced?
(d) Which is a net ionic equation?

13. Indicate what type, or types, of reaction each of the following represents:

(a) $\mathrm{Ca}(s) + \mathrm{Br_2}(l) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaBr_2}(s)$
(b) $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}(aq) + 2\mathrm{HBr}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CaBr_2}(aq) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
(c) $\mathrm{C_6H_{12}}(l) + 9\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 6\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 6\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$

14. Indicate what type, or types, of reaction each of the following represents:

(a) $\mathrm{H_2O}(g) + \mathrm{C}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO}(g) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
(b) $2\mathrm{KClO_3}(s) \longrightarrow 2\mathrm{KCl}(s) + 3\mathrm{O_2}(g)$

(c) $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}(aq) + 3\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{AlCl_3}(aq) + 3\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
(d) $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PbSO_4}(s) + 2\mathrm{HNO_3}(aq)$

15. Silver can be separated from gold because silver dissolves in nitric acid while gold does not. Is the dissolution of silver in nitric acid an acid-base reaction or an oxidation-reduction reaction? Explain your answer.

16. Determine the oxidation states of the elements in the following compounds:

(a) NaI
(b) $\mathrm{GdCl_3}$
(c) $\mathrm{LiNO_3}$
(d) $\mathrm{H_2Se}$
(e) $\mathrm{Mg_2Si}$
(f) $\mathrm{RbO_2}$, rubidium superoxide
(g) HF

17. Determine the oxidation states of the elements in the compounds listed. None of the oxygen-containing compounds are peroxides or superoxides.

(a) $\mathrm{H_3PO_4}$
(b) $\mathrm{Al(OH)_3}$
(c) $\mathrm{SeO_2}$
(d) $\mathrm{KNO_2}$
(e) $\mathrm{In_2\ S_3}$
(f) $\mathrm{P_4O_6}$

18. Determine the oxidation states of the elements in the compounds listed. None of the oxygen-containing compounds are peroxides or superoxides.

(a) $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$
(b) $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$
(c) BrOH
(d) $\mathrm{ClNO_2}$
(e) $\mathrm{TiCl_4}$
(f) NaH

19. Classify the following as acid-base reactions or oxidation-reduction reactions:

(a) $\mathrm{Na_2\ S}(aq) + 2\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2\ S}(g)$
(b) $2\mathrm{Na}(s) + 2\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
(c) $\mathrm{Mg}(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MgCl_2}(s)$
(d) $\mathrm{MgO}(s) + 2\mathrm{HCl}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MgCl_2}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}(l)$
(e) $\mathrm{K_3P}(s) + 2\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{K_3PO_4}(s)$
(f) $3\mathrm{KOH}(aq) + \mathrm{H_3PO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{K_3PO_4}(aq) + 3\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$

20. Identify the atoms that are oxidized and reduced, the change in oxidation state for each, and the oxidizing and reducing agents in each of the following equations:

(a) $\mathrm{Mg}(s) + \mathrm{NiCl_2}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{MgCl_2}(aq) + \mathrm{Ni}(s)$
(b) $\mathrm{PCl_3}(l) + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{PCl_5}(s)$
(c) $\mathrm{C_2H_4}(g) + 3\mathrm{O_2}(g) \longrightarrow 2\mathrm{CO_2}(g) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}(g)$
(d) $\mathrm{Zn}(s) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}(aq) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnSO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}(g)$
(e) $2\ \mathrm{K_2\ S_2O_3}(s) + \mathrm{I_2}(s) \longrightarrow \mathrm{K_2\ S_4O_6}(s) + 2\mathrm{KI}(s)$
(f) $3\mathrm{Cu}(s) + 8\mathrm{HNO_3}(aq) \longrightarrow 3\mathrm{Cu(NO_3)_2}(aq) + 2\mathrm{NO}(g) + 4\mathrm{H_2O}(l)$

21. Complete and balance the following acid-base equations:

a. HCl gas reacts with solid $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}(s)$.
b. A solution of $\mathrm{Sr(OH)_2}$ is added to a solution of $\mathrm{HNO_3}$.

22. Complete and balance the following acid-base equations:

a. A solution of $HClO_4$ is added to a solution of LiOH.
b. Aqueous H_2SO_4 reacts with NaOH.
c. $Ba(OH)_2$ reacts with HF gas.

23. Complete and balance the following oxidation-reduction reactions, which give the highest possible oxidation state for the oxidized atoms.

(a) $Al(s) + F_2(g)$
(b) $Al(s) + CuBr_2(aq)$
$\longrightarrow$ (single displacement)
(c) $P_4(s) + O_2(g)$
(d) $Ca(s) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow$ (products are a strong base and a diatomic gas)

24. Complete and balance the following oxidation-reduction reactions, which give the highest possible oxidation state for the oxidized atoms.

(a) $K(s) + H_2O(l) \quad \rightarrow$
(b) $Ba(s) + HBr(aq) \quad \rightarrow$
(c) $Sn(s) + I_2(s) \quad \rightarrow$

25. Complete and balance the equations for the following acid-base neutralization reactions. If water is used as a solvent, write the reactants and products as aqueous ions. In some cases, there may be more than one correct answer, depending on the amounts of reactants used.

(a) $Mg(OH)_2(s) + HClO_4(aq)$
(b) $SO_3(g) + H_2O(l)$ (assume an excess of water and that the product dissolves)
(c) $SrO(s) + H_2SO_4(l)$

26. When heated to $700 - 800^\circ C$, diamonds, which are pure carbon, are oxidized by atmospheric oxygen. (They burn!) Write the balanced equation for this reaction.

27. The military has experimented with lasers that produce very intense light when fluorine combines explosively with hydrogen. What is the balanced equation for this reaction?

28. Write the molecular, total ionic, and net ionic equations for the following reactions:

(a) $Ca(OH)_2(aq) + HC_2H_3O_2(aq)$
(b) $H_3PO_4(aq) + CaCl_2(aq)$

29. Great Lakes Chemical Company produces bromine, Br_2, from bromide salts such as NaBr , in Arkansas brine by treating the brine with chlorine gas. Write a balanced equation for the reaction of NaBr with Cl_2.23. Complete and balance the following oxidation-reduction reactions, which give the highest possible oxidation state for the oxidized atoms.

30. In a common experiment in the general chemistry laboratory, magnesium metal is heated in air to produce MgO. MgO is a white solid, but in these experiments it often looks gray, due to small amounts of Mg_3N_2, a compound formed as some of the magnesium reacts with nitrogen. Write a balanced equation for each reaction.

31.Lithium hydroxide may be used to absorb carbon dioxide in enclosed environments, such as manned spacecraft and submarines. Write an equation for the reaction that involves 2 mol of LiOH per 1 mol of CO_2. (Hint: Water is one of the products.)

32. Calcium propionate is sometimes added to bread to retard spoilage. This compound can be prepared by the reaction of calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$, with propionic acid, $C_2H_5CO_2H$, which has properties similar to those of acetic acid. Write the balanced equation for the formation of calcium propionate.

33. Complete and balance the equations of the following reactions, each of which could be used to remove hydrogen sulfide from natural gas:

(a) $Ca(OH)_2(s) + H_2\ S(g)$
(b) $Na_2CO_3(aq) + H_2\ S(g) \longrightarrow$

34. Copper(II) sulfide is oxidized by molecular oxygen to produce gaseous sulfur trioxide and solid copper(II) oxide. The gaseous product then reacts with liquid water to produce liquid dihydrogen sulfate as the only product. Write the two equations which represent these reactions.

35. Write balanced chemical equations for the reactions used to prepare each of the following compounds from the given starting material(s). In some cases, additional reactants may be required.

a. solid ammonium nitrate from gaseous molecular nitrogen via a two-step process (first reduce the nitrogen to ammonia, then neutralize the ammonia with an appropriate acid)
b. gaseous hydrogen bromide from liquid molecular bromine via a one-step redox reaction
c. gaseous H_2S from solid Zn and S via a two-step process (first a redox reaction between the starting materials, then reaction of the product with a strong acid)

36. Calcium cyclamate $Ca(C_6H_{11}NHSO_3)_2$ is an artificial sweetener used in many countries around the world but is banned in the United States. It can be purified industrially by converting it to the barium salt through reaction of the acid $C_6H_{11}NHSO_3H$ with barium carbonate, treatment with sulfuric acid (barium sulfate is very insoluble), and then neutralization with calcium hydroxide. Write the balanced equations for these reactions.

37. Complete and balance each of the following half-reactions (steps $2-5$ in half-reaction method):

(a) $Sn^{4+}(aq) \longrightarrow Sn^{2+}(aq)$
(b) $[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+(aq) \longrightarrow Ag(s) + NH_3(aq)$
(c) $Hg_2Cl_2(s) \longrightarrow Hg(l) + Cl^-(aq)$
(d) $H_2O(l) \longrightarrow O_2(g)$ (in acidic solution)
(e) $IO_3{}^-(aq) \longrightarrow I_2(s)$ (in basic solution)
(f) $SO_3{}^{2-}(aq) \longrightarrow SO_4{}^{2-}(aq)$ (in acidic solution)
(g) $MnO_4^-(aq) \longrightarrow Mn^{2+}(aq)$ (in acidic solution)
(h) $Cl^-(aq) \longrightarrow ClO_3{}^-(aq)$ (in basic solution)

38. Complete and balance each of the following half-reactions (steps $2-5$ in half-reaction method):

(a) $Cr^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow Cr^{3+}(aq)$
(b) $Hg(l) + Br^-(aq) \longrightarrow HgBr_4{}^{2-}(aq)$
(c) $ZnS(s) \longrightarrow Zn(s) + S^{2-}(aq)$
(d) $H_2(g) \longrightarrow H_2O(l)$ (in basic solution)
(e) $H_2(g) \longrightarrow H_3O^+(aq)$ (in acidic solution)
(f) $NO_3{}^-(aq) \longrightarrow HNO_2(aq)$ (in acidic solution)
(g) $MnO_2(s) \longrightarrow MnO_4{}^-(aq)$ (in basic solution)
(h) $Cl^-(aq) \longrightarrow ClO_3^-(aq)$ (in acidic solution)

39. Balance each of the following equations according to the half-reaction method:

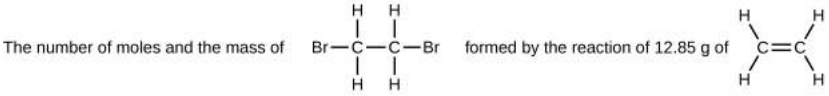
(a) $Sn^{2+}(aq) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow Sn^{4+}(aq) + Cu^+(aq)$
(b) $H_2\ S(g) + Hg_2{}^{2+}(aq) \longrightarrow Hg(l) + S(s)$ (in acid)
(c) $CN^-(aq) + ClO_2(aq) \longrightarrow CNO^-(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$ (in acid)
(d) $Fe^{2+}(aq) + Ce^{4+}(aq) \longrightarrow Fe^{3+}(aq) + Ce^{3+}(aq)$
(e) $HBrO(aq) \longrightarrow Br^-(aq) + O_2(g)$ (in acid)

Reaction Stoichiometry

42. Write the balanced equation, then outline the steps necessary to determine the information requested in each of the following:

(a) The number of moles and the mass of chlorine, Cl_2, required to react with 10.0 g of sodium metal, Na , to produce sodium chloride, NaCl .
(b) The number of moles and the mass of oxygen formed by the decomposition of 1.252 g of mercury(II) oxide.
(c) The number of moles and the mass of sodium nitrate, $NaNO_3$, required to produce 128 g of oxygen. ($NaNO_2$ is the other product.)
(d) The number of moles and the mass of carbon dioxide formed by the combustion of 20.0 kg of carbon in an excess of oxygen.
(e) The number of moles and the mass of copper(II) carbonate needed to produce 1.500 kg of copper(II) oxide. (CO_2 is the other product.)

The number of moles and the mass of



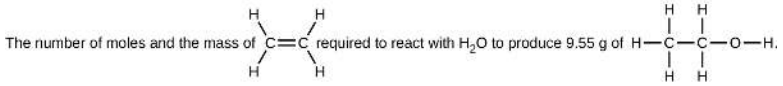
with an excess of Br_2.

43. Determine the number of moles and the mass requested for each reaction in Exercise 42.

44. Write the balanced equation, then outline the steps necessary to determine the information requested in each of the following:

(a) The number of moles and the mass of Mg required to react with 5.00 g of HCl and produce $MgCl_2$ and H_2.
(b) The number of moles and the mass of oxygen formed by the decomposition of 1.252 g of silver(l) oxide.
(c) The number of moles and the mass of magnesium carbonate, $MgCO_3$, required to produce 283 g of carbon dioxide. (MgO is the other product.)
(d) The number of moles and the mass of water formed by the combustion of 20.0 kg of acetylene, C_2H_2, in an excess of oxygen.
(e) The number of moles and the mass of barium peroxide, BaO_2, needed to produce 2.500 kg of barium oxide, BaO (O_2 is the other product.)

(f)



45. Determine the number of moles and the mass requested for each reaction in Exercise 4.44.

46. H_2 is produced by the reaction of 118.5 mL of a 0.8775-M solution of H_3PO_4 according to the following equation:

a. Outline the steps necessary to determine the number of moles and mass of H_2.
b. Perform the calculations outlined.

47. Gallium chloride is formed by the reaction of 2.6 L of a 1.44 M solution of HCl according to the following equation:

a. Outline the steps necessary to determine the number of moles and mass of gallium chloride.
b. Perform the calculations outlined.

48. I_2 is produced by the reaction of 0.4235 mol of $CuCl_2$ according to the following equation:

a. How many molecules of I_2 are produced?
b. What mass of I_2 is produced?

49. Silver is often extracted from ores such as $K[Ag(CN)_2]$ and then recovered by the reaction

a. How many molecules of $Zn(CN)_2$ are produced by the reaction of 35.27 g of $K[Ag(CN)_2]$?
b. What mass of $Zn(CN)_2$ is produced?

50. What mass of silver oxide, Ag_2O, is required to produce 25.0 g of silver sulfadiazine, $AgC_{10}H_9N_4SO_2$, from the reaction of silver oxide and sulfadiazine?

51. Carborundum is silicon carbide, SiC, a very hard material used as an abrasive on sandpaper and in other applications. It is prepared by the reaction of pure sand, SiO_2, with carbon at high temperature. Carbon monoxide, CO, is the other product of this reaction. Write the balanced equation for the reaction, and calculate how much SiO_2 is required to produce 3.00 kg of SiC.

52. Automotive air bags inflate when a sample of sodium azide, NaN_3, is very rapidly decomposed.

What mass of sodium azide is required to produce 2.6 ft^3 (73.6 L) of nitrogen gas with a density of 1.25 g/L?

53. Urea, $CO(NH_2)_2$, is manufactured on a large scale for use in producing urea-formaldehyde plastics and as a fertilizer. What is the maximum mass of urea that can be manufactured from the CO_2 produced by combustion of of carbon followed by the reaction?

54. In an accident, a solution containing 2.5 kg of nitric acid was spilled. Two kilograms of Na_2CO_3 was quickly spread on the area and CO_2 was released by the reaction. Was sufficient Na_2CO_3 used to neutralize all of the acid?

55. A compact car gets 37.5 miles per gallon on the highway. If gasoline contains 84.2% carbon by mass and has a density of 0.8205 g/mL, determine the mass of carbon dioxide produced during a 500-mile trip (3.785 liters per gallon).

56. What volume of 0.750 M hydrochloric acid solution can be prepared from the HCl produced by the reaction of 25.0 g of NaCl with excess sulfuric acid?

57. What volume of a 0.2089 *M* KI solution contains enough KI to react exactly with the $Cu(NO_3)_2$ in 43.88 mL of a 0.3842 *M* solution of $Cu(NO_3)_2$?

58. A mordant is a substance that combines with a dye to produce a stable fixed color in a dyed fabric. Calcium acetate is used as a mordant. It is prepared by the reaction of acetic acid with calcium hydroxide.

What mass of $Ca(OH)_2$ is required to react with the acetic acid in 25.0 mL of a solution having a density of 1.065 g/mL and containing 58.0% acetic acid by mass?

59. The toxic pigment called white lead, $Pb_3(OH)_2(CO_3)_2$, has been replaced in white paints by rutile, TiO_2. How much rutile (g) can be prepared from 379 g of an ore that contains 88.3% ilmenite ($FeTiO_3$) by mass?

Reaction Yields

60. The following quantities are placed in a container: 1.5 10^{24} atoms of hydrogen, 1.0 mol of sulfur, and 88.0 g of diatomic oxygen.

a. What is the total mass in grams for the collection of all three elements?
b. What is the total number of moles of atoms for the three elements?
c. If the mixture of the three elements formed a compound with molecules that contain two hydrogen atoms, one sulfur atom, and four oxygen atoms, which substance is consumed first?
d. How many atoms of each remaining element would remain unreacted in the change described in (c)?

61. What is the limiting reactant in a reaction that produces sodium chloride from 8 g of sodium and 8 g of diatomic chlorine?

62. Which of the postulates of Dalton's atomic theory explains why we can calculate a theoretical yield for a chemical reaction?

63. A student isolated 25 g of a compound following a procedure that would theoretically yield 81 g. What was his percent yield?

64. A sample of 0.53 g of carbon dioxide was obtained by heating 1.31 g of calcium carbonate. What is the percent yield for this reaction?

65. Freon-12, CCl_2F_2, is prepared from CCl_4 by reaction with HF. The other product of this reaction is HCl. Outline the steps needed to determine the percent yield of a reaction that produces 12.5 g of CCl_2F_2 from 32.9 g of CCl_4. Freon-12 has been banned and is no longer used as a refrigerant because it catalyzes the decomposition of ozone and has a very long lifetime in the atmosphere. Determine the percent yield.

66. Citric acid, $C_6H_8O_7$, a component of jams, jellies, and fruity soft drinks, is prepared industrially via fermentation of sucrose by the mold *Aspergillus niger*. The equation representing this reaction is

What mass of citric acid is produced from exactly 1 metric ton (1.000 10^3 kg) of sucrose if the yield is 92.30%?

67. Toluene, $C_6H_5CH_3$, is oxidized by air under carefully controlled conditions to benzoic acid, $C_6H_5CO_2H$, which is used to prepare the food preservative sodium benzoate, $C_6H_5CO_2Na$. What is the percent yield of a reaction that converts 1.000 kg of toluene to 1.21 kg of benzoic acid?

68. In a laboratory experiment, the reaction of 3.0 mol of H_2 with 2.0 mol of I_2 produced 1.0 mol of HI. Determine the theoretical yield in grams and the percent yield for this reaction.

69. Outline the steps needed to solve the following problem, then do the calculations. Ether, $(C_2H_5)_2O$, which was originally used as an anesthetic but has been replaced by safer and more effective medications, is prepared by the reaction of ethanol with sulfuric acid.

$$2C_2H_5OH + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2O + H_2SO_4{\cdot}H_2O$$

What is the percent yield of ether if 1.17 L (d = 0.7134 g/mL) is isolated from the reaction of 1.500 L of C_2H_5OH (d = 0.7894 g/mL)?

70. Outline the steps needed to determine the limiting reactant when 30.0 g of propane, C_3H_8, is burned with 75.0 g of oxygen. Determine the limiting reactant.

71. Outline the steps needed to determine the limiting reactant when 0.50 mol of Cr and 0.75 mol of H_3PO_4 react according to the following chemical equation.

Determine the limiting reactant.

72. What is the limiting reactant when 1.50 g of lithium and 1.50 g of nitrogen combine to form lithium nitride, a component of advanced batteries, according to the following unbalanced equation?

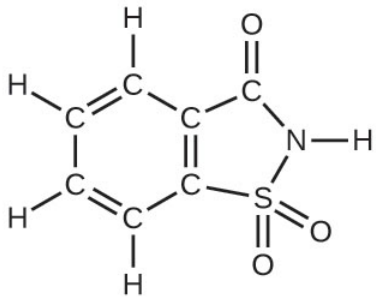
73. Uranium can be isolated from its ores by dissolving it as $UO_2(NO_3)_2$, then separating it as solid $UO_2(C_2O_4)\cdot 3H_2O$. Addition of 0.4031 g of sodium oxalate, $Na_2C_2O_4$, to a solution containing 1.481 g of uranyl nitrate, $UO_2(NO_3)_2$, yields 1.073 g of solid $UO_2(C_2O_4)\cdot 3H_2O$.

$$Na_2C_2O_4 + UO_2(NO_3)_2 + 3H_2O \longrightarrow UO_2(C_2O_4)\cdot 3H_2O + 2NaNO_3$$

Determine the limiting reactant and the percent yield of this reaction.

74. How many molecules of $C_2H_4Cl_2$ can be prepared from 15 C_2H_4 molecules and 8 Cl_2 molecules?

75. How many molecules of the sweetener saccharin can be prepared from 30 C atoms, 25 H atoms, 12 O atoms, 8 S atoms, and 14 N atoms?



76. The phosphorus pentoxide used to produce phosphoric acid for cola soft drinks is prepared by burning phosphorus in oxygen.

a. What is the limiting reactant when 0.200 mol of P_4 and 0.200 mol of O_2 react according to

b. Calculate the percent yield if 10.0 g of P_4O_{10} is isolated from the reaction.

77. Would you agree to buy 1 trillion (1,000,000,000,000) gold atoms for $5? Explain why or why not. Find the current price of gold at http://money.cnn.com/data/commodities/

Quantitative Chemical Analysis

78. What volume of 0.0105-M HBr solution is required to titrate 125 mL of a 0.0100-*M* $Ca(OH)_2$ solution?

79. Titration of a 20.0-mL sample of acid rain required 1.7 mL of 0.0811 *M* NaOH to reach the end point. If we assume that the acidity of the rain is due to the presence of sulfuric acid, what was the concentration of sulfuric acid in this sample of rain?

80. What is the concentration of NaCl in a solution if titration of 15.00 mL of the solution with 0.2503 *M* $AgNO_3$ requires 20.22 mL of the $AgNO_3$ solution to reach the end point?

81. In a common medical laboratory determination of the concentration of free chloride ion in blood serum, a serum sample is titrated with a $Hg(NO_3)_2$ solution.

What is the Cl^- concentration in a 0.25-mL sample of normal serum that requires 1.46 mL of 8.25 10^{-4} *M* $Hg(NO_3)_2(aq)$ to reach the end point?

82. Potatoes can be peeled commercially by soaking them in a 3-M to 6-M solution of sodium hydroxide, then removing the loosened skins by spraying them with water. Does a sodium hydroxide solution have a suitable concentration if titration of 12.00 mL of the solution requires 30.6 mL of 1.65 M HCI to reach the end point?

83. A sample of gallium bromide, $GaBr_3$, weighing 0.165 g was dissolved in water and treated with silver nitrate, $AgNO_3$, resulting in the precipitation of 0.299 g AgBr. Use these data to compute the %Ga (by mass) $GaBr_3$.

84. The principal component of mothballs is naphthalene, a compound with a molecular mass of about 130 amu, containing only carbon and hydrogen. A 3.000-mg sample of naphthalene burns to give 10.3 mg of CO_2. Determine its empirical and molecular formulas.

85. A 0.025-g sample of a compound composed of boron and hydrogen, with a molecular mass of ~28 amu, burns spontaneously when exposed to air, producing 0.063 g of B_2O_3. What are the empirical and molecular formulas of the compound?

86. Sodium bicarbonate (baking soda), $NaHCO_3$, can be purified by dissolving it in hot water (60 °C), filtering to remove insoluble impurities, cooling to 0 °C to precipitate solid $NaHCO_3$, and then filtering to remove the solid, leaving soluble impurities in solution. Any $NaHCO_3$ that remains in solution is not recovered. The solubility of $NaHCO_3$ in hot water of 60 °C is 164 g/L. Its solubility in cold water of 0 °C is 69 g/L. What is the percent yield of $NaHCO_3$ when it is purified by this method?

87. What volume of 0.600 *M* HCl is required to react completely with 2.50 g of sodium hydrogen carbonate?

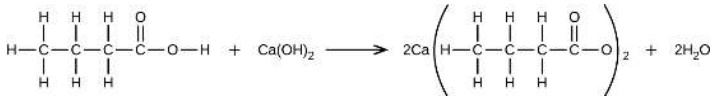
88. What volume of 0.08892 *M* HNO_3 is required to react completely with 0.2352 g of potassium hydrogen phosphate?

89. What volume of a 0.3300-*M* solution of sodium hydroxide would be required to titrate 15.00 mL of 0.1500 *M* oxalic acid?

90. What volume of a 0.00945-*M* solution of potassium hydroxide would be required to titrate 50.00 mL of a sample of acid rain with a H_2SO_4 concentration of $1.23\ 10^{-4}$ *M*.

91. A sample of solid calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$, is allowed to stand in water until a saturated solution is formed. A titration of 75.00 mL of this solution with $5.00\ 10^{-2}$ *M* HCl requires 36.6 mL of the acid to reach the end point. What is the molarity?

92. What mass of $Ca(OH)_2$ will react with 25.0 g of butanoic to form the preservative calcium butanoate according to the equation?



93. How many milliliters of a 0.1500-*M* solution of KOH will be required to titrate 40.00 mL of a 0.0656-*M* solution of H_3PO_4?

94. Potassium hydrogen phthalate, $KHC_8H_4O_4$, or KHP, is used in many laboratories, including general chemistry laboratories, to standardize solutions of base. KHP is one of only a few stable solid acids that can be dried by warming and weighed. A 0.3420-g sample of $KHC_8H_4O_4$ reacts with 35.73 mL of a NaOH solution in a titration. What is the molar concentration of the NaOH?

95. The reaction of WCl_6 with Al at ~400 °C gives black crystals of a compound containing only tungsten and chlorine. A sample of this compound, when reduced with hydrogen, gives 0.2232 g of tungsten metal and hydrogen chloride, which is absorbed in water. Titration of the hydrochloric acid thus produced requires 46.2 mL of 0.1051 *M* NaOH to reach the end point. What is the empirical formula of the black tungsten chloride?

This page titled 3.10: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.9: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Electronic Structure and Periodic Properties

The study of chemistry must at some point extend to the molecular level, for the physical and chemical properties of a substance are ultimately explained in terms of the structure and bonding of molecules. This module introduces some basic facts and principles that are needed for a discussion of organic molecules.

4.1: Introduction
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
4.3: The Bohr Model
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties
4.7: Key Terms
4.8: Key Equations
4.9: Summary
4.10: Exercises

This page titled 6: Electronic Structure and Periodic Properties is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.1: Introduction

In 1054, Chinese astronomers recorded the appearance of a “guest star” in the sky, visible even during the day, which then disappeared slowly over the next two years. The sudden appearance was due to a supernova explosion, which was much brighter than the original star. Even though this supernova was observed almost a millennium ago, the remaining Crab Nebula (Figure 4.1.1) continues to release energy today. It emits not only visible light but also infrared light, X-rays, and other forms of electromagnetic radiation. The nebula emits both continuous spectra (the blue-white glow) and atomic emission spectra (the colored filaments). In this chapter, we will discuss light and other forms of electromagnetic radiation and how they are related to the electronic structure of atoms. We will also see how this radiation can be used to identify elements, even from thousands of light years away.

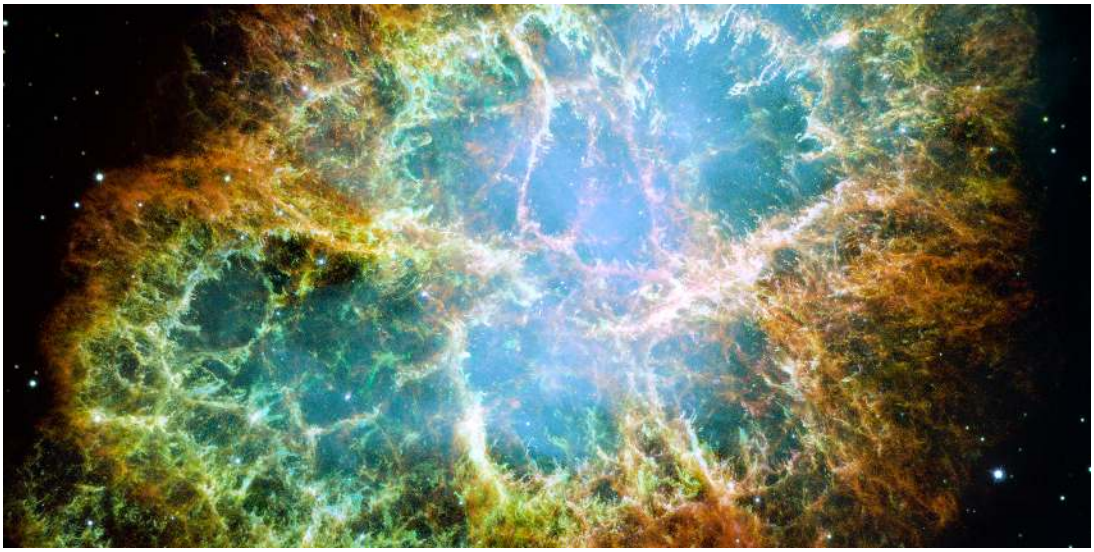


Figure 4.1.1: The Crab Nebula consists of remnants of a supernova (the explosion of a star). NASA’s Hubble Space Telescope produced this composite image. Measurements of the emitted light wavelengths enabled astronomers to identify the elements in the nebula, determining that it contains specific ions including S^{+} (green filaments) and O^{2+} (red filaments). (credit: modification of work by NASA and ESA)

4.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.0: Introduction** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.2: Electromagnetic Energy

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the basic behavior of waves, including travelling waves and standing waves
- Describe the wave nature of light
- Use appropriate equations to calculate related light-wave properties such as frequency, wavelength, and energy
- Distinguish between line and continuous emission spectra
- Describe the particle nature of light

The nature of light has been a subject of inquiry since antiquity. In the seventeenth century, Isaac Newton performed experiments with lenses and prisms and was able to demonstrate that white light consists of the individual colors of the rainbow combined together. Newton explained his optics findings in terms of a "corpuscular" view of light, in which light was composed of streams of extremely tiny particles travelling at high speeds according to Newton's laws of motion. Others in the seventeenth century, such as Christiaan Huygens, had shown that optical phenomena such as reflection and refraction could be equally well explained in terms of light as waves travelling at high speed through a medium called "luminiferous aether" that was thought to permeate all space. Early in the nineteenth century, Thomas Young demonstrated that light passing through narrow, closely spaced slits produced interference patterns that could not be explained in terms of Newtonian particles but could be easily explained in terms of waves. Later in the nineteenth century, after James Clerk Maxwell developed his theory of electromagnetic radiation and showed that light was the visible part of a vast spectrum of electromagnetic waves, the particle view of light became thoroughly discredited. By the end of the nineteenth century, scientists viewed the physical universe as roughly comprising two separate domains: matter composed of particles moving according to Newton's laws of motion, and electromagnetic radiation consisting of waves governed by Maxwell's equations. Today, these domains are referred to as classical mechanics and classical electrodynamics (or classical electromagnetism). Although there were a few physical phenomena that could not be explained within this framework, scientists at that time were so confident of the overall soundness of this framework that they viewed these aberrations as puzzling paradoxes that would ultimately be resolved somehow within this framework. As we shall see, these paradoxes led to a contemporary framework that intimately connects particles and waves at a fundamental level called wave-particle duality, which has superseded the classical view.

Visible light and other forms of electromagnetic radiation play important roles in chemistry, since they can be used to infer the energies of electrons within atoms and molecules. Much of modern technology is based on electromagnetic radiation. For example, radio waves from a mobile phone, X-rays used by dentists, the energy used to cook food in your microwave, the radiant heat from red-hot objects, and the light from your television screen are forms of electromagnetic radiation that all exhibit wavelike behavior.

Waves

A **wave** is an oscillation or periodic movement that can transport energy from one point in space to another. Common examples of waves are all around us. Shaking the end of a rope transfers energy from your hand to the other end of the rope, dropping a pebble into a pond causes waves to ripple outward along the water's surface, and the expansion of air that accompanies a lightning strike generates sound waves (thunder) that can travel outward for several miles. In each of these cases, kinetic energy is transferred through matter (the rope, water, or air) while the matter remains essentially in place. An insightful example of a wave occurs in sports stadiums when fans in a narrow region of seats rise simultaneously and stand with their arms raised up for a few seconds before sitting down again while the fans in neighboring sections likewise stand up and sit down in sequence. While this wave can quickly encircle a large stadium in a few seconds, none of the fans actually travel with the wave-they all stay in or above their seats.

Waves need not be restricted to travel through matter. As Maxwell showed, electromagnetic waves consist of an electric field oscillating in step with a perpendicular magnetic field, both of which are perpendicular to the direction of travel. These waves can travel through a vacuum at a constant speed of 2.998 108 m/s, the speed of light (denoted by c).

All waves, including forms of electromagnetic radiation, are characterized by, a **wavelength** (denoted by λ, the lowercase Greek letter lambda), a **frequency** (denoted by ν, the lowercase Greek letter nu), and an **amplitude**. As can be seen in Figure $4.2.1$, the wavelength is the distance between two consecutive peaks or troughs in a wave (measured in meters in the SI system).

Electromagnetic waves have wavelengths that fall within an enormous range-wavelengths of kilometers (10^3 m) to picometers (10^{-12} m) have been observed. The frequency is the number of wave cycles that pass a specified point in space in a specified amount of time (in the SI system, this is measured in seconds). A cycle corresponds to one complete wavelength. The unit for frequency, expressed as cycles per second [s^{-1}], is the **hertz** (Hz). Common multiples of this unit are megahertz, ($1\,\text{MHz} = 1 \times 10^6\,\text{Hz}$) and gigahertz ($1\,\text{GHz} = 1 \times 10^9\,\text{Hz}$). The amplitude corresponds to the magnitude of the wave's displacement and so, in Figure 4.2.1, this corresponds to one-half the height between the peaks and troughs. The amplitude is related to the intensity of the wave, which for light is the brightness, and for sound is the loudness.

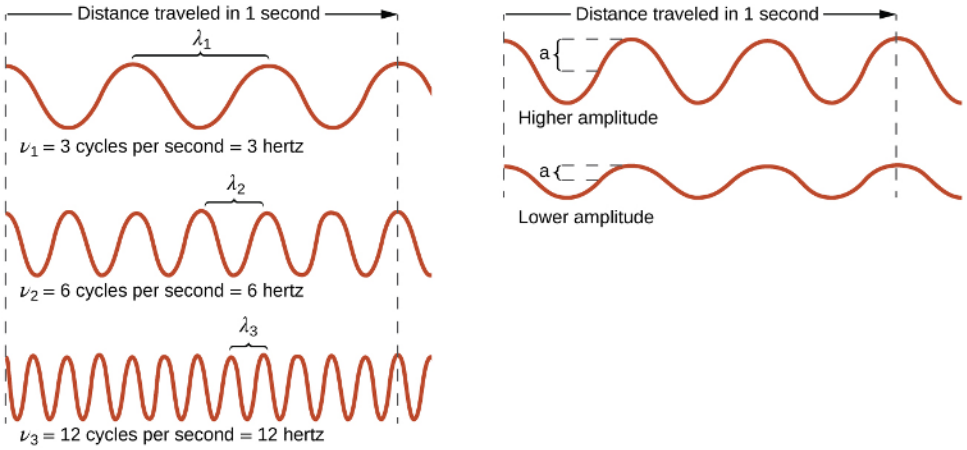


Figure 4.2.1: One-dimensional sinusoidal waves show the relationship among wavelength, frequency, and speed. The wave with the shortest wavelength has the highest frequency. Amplitude is one-half the height of the wave from peak to trough.

The product of a wave's wavelength (λ) and its frequency (ν), $\lambda\nu$, is the speed of the wave. Thus, for electromagnetic radiation in a vacuum, speed is equal to the fundamental constant, c:

$$c = 2.998 \times 10^8 ms^{-1} = \lambda\nu$$

Wavelength and frequency are inversely proportional: As the wavelength increases, the frequency decreases. The inverse proportionality is illustrated in Figure 4.2.2. This figure also shows the electromagnetic spectrum, the range of all types of electromagnetic radiation. Each of the various colors of visible light has specific frequencies and wavelengths associated with them, and you can see that visible light makes up only a small portion of the electromagnetic spectrum. Because the technologies developed to work in various parts of the electromagnetic spectrum are different, for reasons of convenience and historical legacies, different units are typically used for different parts of the spectrum. For example, radio waves are usually specified as frequencies (typically in units of MHz), while the visible region is usually specified in wavelengths (typically in units of nm or angstroms).

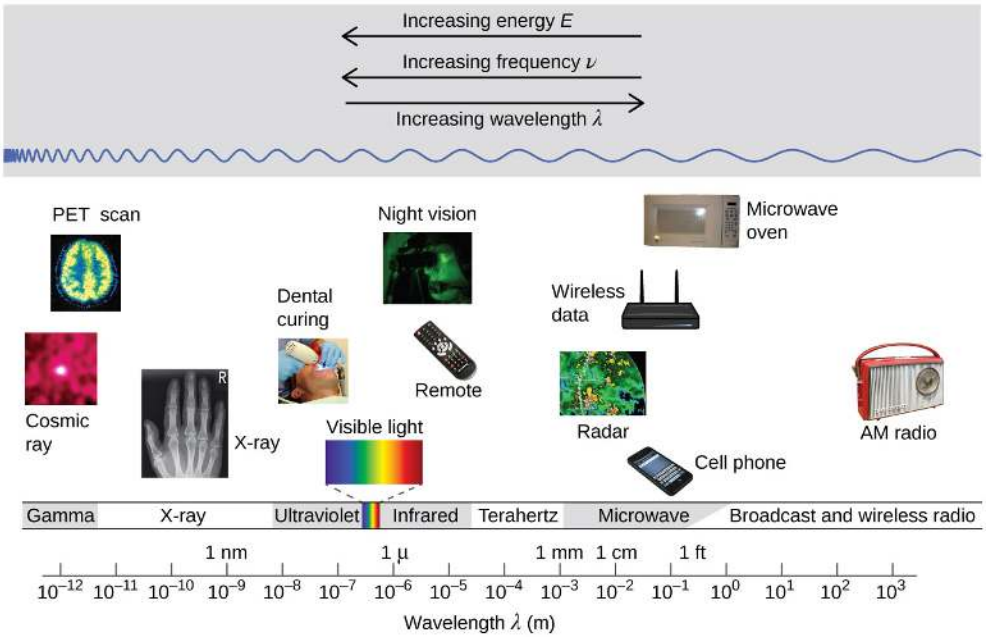


Figure 4.2.2: Portions of the electromagnetic spectrum are shown in order of decreasing frequency and increasing wavelength. (credit “Cosmic ray": modification of work by NASA; credit “PET scan": modification of work by the National Institute of Health; credit “X-ray": modification of work by Dr. Jochen Lengerke; credit “Dental curing": modification of work by the Department of the Navy; credit “Night vision": modification of work by the Department of the Army; credit “Remote": modification of work by Emilian Robert Vicol; credit “Cell phone": modification of work by Brett Jordan; credit “Microwave oven": modification of work by Billy Mabray; credit “Ultrasound": modification of work by Jane Whitney; credit “AM radio": modification of work by Dave Clausen)

Example 4.2.1: Determining the Frequency and Wavelength of Radiation

A sodium streetlight gives off yellow light that has a wavelength of 589 nm (1 nm = 1×10^{-9} m). What is the frequency of this light?

Solution

We can rearrange the Equation $c = \lambda\nu$ to solve for the frequency:

$$\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda}$$

Since c is expressed in meters per second, we must also convert 589 nm to meters.

$$\nu = \left(\frac{2.998 \times 10^{8} ms^{-1}}{589 nm}\right)\left(\frac{1 \times 10^{9} nm}{1 m}\right) = 5.09 \times 10^{14} s^{-1}$$

Exercise 4.2.1

One of the frequencies used to transmit and receive cellular telephone signals in the United States is 850 MHz. What is the wavelength in meters of these radio waves?

Answer

0.353 m = 35.3 cm

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Wireless Communication



Figure 4.2.3: Radio and cell towers are typically used to transmit long-wavelength electromagnetic radiation. Increasingly, cell towers are designed to blend in with the landscape, as with the Tucson, Arizona, cell tower (right) disguised as a palm tree. (credit left: modification of work by Sir Mildred Pierce; credit middle: modification of work by M.O. Stevens)

Many valuable technologies operate in the radio (3 kHz-300 GHz) frequency region of the electromagnetic spectrum. At the low frequency (low energy, long wavelength) end of this region are AM (amplitude modulation) radio signals (540-2830 kHz) that can travel long distances. FM (frequency modulation) radio signals are used at higher frequencies (87.5-108.0 MHz). In AM radio, the information is transmitted by varying the amplitude of the wave (Figure 4.2.4). In FM radio, by contrast, the amplitude is constant and the instantaneous frequency varies.

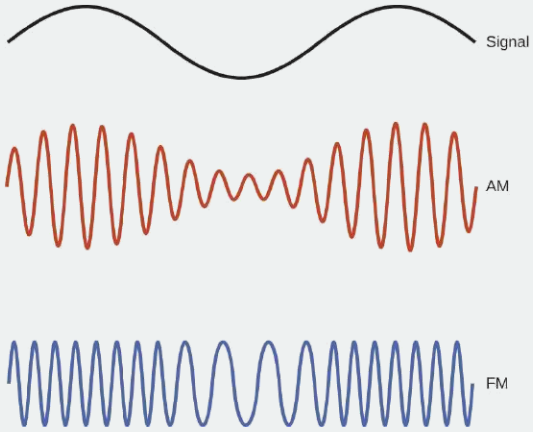


Figure 4.2.4: This schematic depicts how amplitude modulation (AM) and frequency modulation (FM) can be used to transmit a radio wave.

Other technologies also operate in the radio-wave portion of the electromagnetic spectrum. For example, 4G cellular telephone signals are approximately 880 MHz, while Global Positioning System (GPS) signals operate at 1.228 and 1.575 GHz, local area wireless technology (Wi-Fi) networks operate at 2.4 to 5 GHz, and highway toll sensors operate at 5.8 GHz. The frequencies associated with these applications are convenient because such waves tend not to be absorbed much by common building materials.

One particularly characteristic phenomenon of waves results when two or more waves come into contact: They interfere with each other. Figure 4.2.5 shows the interference patterns that arise when light passes through narrow slits closely spaced about a wavelength apart. The fringe patterns produced depend on the wavelength, with the fringes being more closely spaced for shorter wavelength light passing through a given set of slits. When the light passes through the two slits, each slit effectively acts as a new source, resulting in two closely spaced waves coming into contact at the detector (the camera in this case). The dark regions in Figure 4.2.5 correspond to regions where the peaks for the wave from one slit happen to coincide with the troughs for the wave from the other slit (destructive interference), while the brightest regions correspond to the regions where the peaks for the two waves (or their two troughs) happen to coincide (constructive interference). Likewise, when two stones are tossed close together into a pond, interference patterns are visible in the interactions between the waves produced by the stones. Such interference patterns cannot be explained by particles moving according to the laws of classical mechanics.

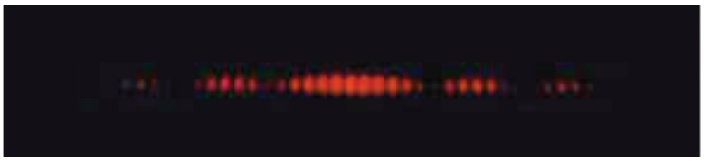


Figure 4.2.5: Interference fringe patterns are shown for light passing through two closely spaced, narrow slits. The spacing of the fringes depends on the wavelength, with the fringes being more closely spaced for the shorter-wavelength blue light. (credit: PASCO)

Portrait of a Chemist: Dorothy Crowfoot Hodgkin

X-rays exhibit wavelengths of approximately 0.01–10 nm. Since these wavelengths are comparable to the spaces between atoms in a crystalline solid, X-rays are scattered when they pass through crystals. The scattered rays undergo constructive and destructive interference that creates a specific diffraction pattern that may be measured and used to precisely determine the positions of atoms within the crystal. This phenomenon of X-ray diffraction is the basis for very powerful techniques enabling the determination of molecular structure. One of the pioneers who applied this powerful technology to important biochemical substances was Dorothy Crowfoot Hodgkin.

Born in Cairo, Egypt, in 1910 to British parents, Dorothy's fascination with chemistry was fostered early in her life. At age 11 she was enrolled in a prestigious English grammar school where she was one of just two girls allowed to study chemistry. On her 16th birthday, her mother, Molly, gifted her a book on X-ray crystallography, which had a profound impact on the trajectory of her career. She studied chemistry at Oxford University, graduating with first-class honors in 1932 and directly entering Cambridge University to pursue a doctoral degree. At Cambridge, Dorothy recognized the promise of X-ray crystallography for protein structure determinations, conducting research that earned her a PhD in 1937. Over the course of a very productive career, Dr. Hodgkin was credited with determining structures for several important biomolecules, including cholesterol iodide, penicillin, and vitamin B12. In recognition of her achievements in the use of X-ray techniques to elucidate the structures of biochemical substances, she was awarded the 1964 Nobel Prize in Chemistry. In 1969, she led a team of scientists who deduced the structure of insulin, facilitating the mass production of this hormone and greatly advancing the treatment of diabetic patients worldwide. Dr. Hodgkin continued working with the international scientific community, earning numerous distinctions and awards prior to her death in 1993.

Not all waves are travelling waves. Standing waves (also known as stationary waves) remain constrained within some region of space. As we shall see, standing waves play an important role in our understanding of the electronic structure of atoms and molecules. The simplest example of a standing wave is a one-dimensional wave associated with a vibrating string that is held fixed at its two end points. Figure 4.2.6 shows the four lowest-energy standing waves (the fundamental wave and the lowest three harmonics) for a vibrating string at a particular amplitude. Although the string's motion lies mostly within a plane, the wave itself is considered to be one dimensional, since it lies along the length of the string. The motion of string segments in a direction perpendicular to the string length generates the waves and so the amplitude of the waves is visible as the maximum displacement of the curves seen in Figure 4.2.6. The key observation from the figure is *that only those waves having an integer number, n, of half-wavelengths between the end points can form*. A system with fixed end points such as this restricts the number and type of the possible waveforms. This is an example of **quantization**, in which only discrete values from a more general set of continuous values of some property are observed. Another important observation is that the harmonic waves (those waves displaying more than one-half wavelength) all have one or more points between the two end points that are not in motion. These special points are **nodes**. The energies of the standing waves with a given amplitude in a vibrating string increase with the number of half-wavelengths n. Since the number of nodes is $n-1$, the energy can also be said to depend on the number of nodes, generally increasing as the number of nodes increases.

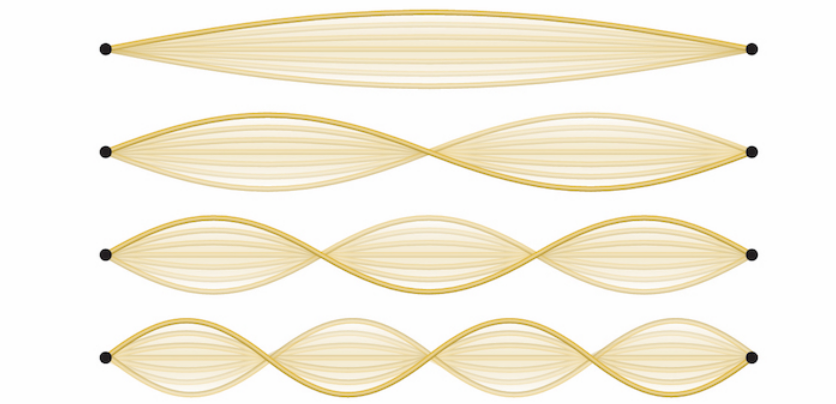


Figure 4.2.6: A vibrating string shows some one-dimensional standing waves. Since the two end points of the string are held fixed, only waves having an integer number of half-wavelengths can form. The points on the string between the end points that are not moving are called the nodes.

An example of two-dimensional standing waves is shown in Figure 4.2.7, which shows the vibrational patterns on a flat surface. Although the vibrational amplitudes cannot be seen like they could in the vibrating string, the nodes have been made visible by sprinkling the drum surface with a powder that collects on the areas of the surface that have minimal displacement. For one-dimensional standing waves, the nodes were points on the line, but for two-dimensional standing waves, the nodes are lines on the surface (for three-dimensional standing waves, the nodes are two-dimensional surfaces within the three-dimensional volume).

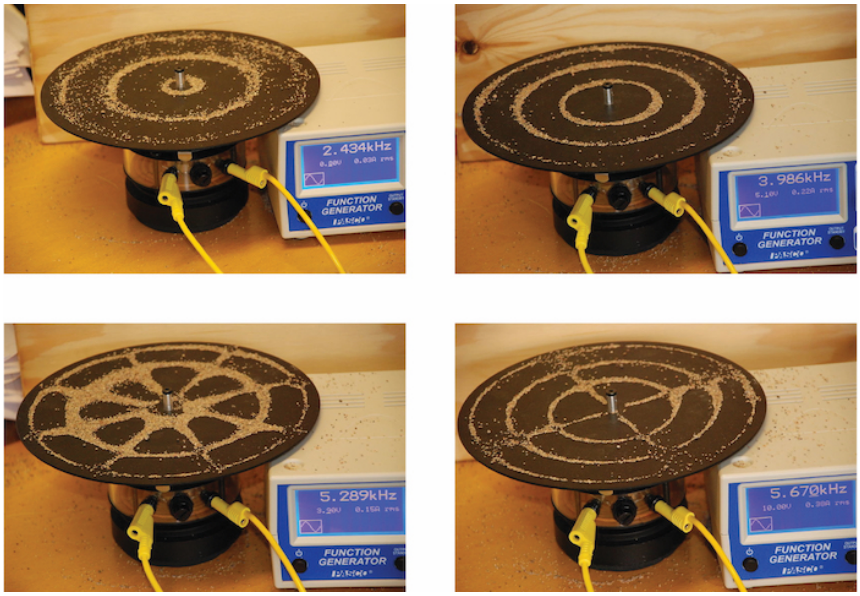


Figure 4.2.7: Two-dimensional standing waves can be visualized on a vibrating surface. The surface has been sprinkled with a powder that collects near the nodal lines. There are two types of nodes visible: radial nodes (circles) and angular nodes (radii).

Link to Learning

You can watch the formation of various radial nodes here as singer Imogen Heap projects her voice across a kettle drum.

Blackbody Radiation and the Ultraviolet Catastrophe

The last few decades of the nineteenth century witnessed intense research activity in commercializing newly discovered electric lighting. This required obtaining a better understanding of the distributions of light emitted from various sources being considered. Artificial lighting is usually designed to mimic natural sunlight within the limitations of the underlying technology. Such lighting consists of a range of broadly distributed frequencies that form a **continuous spectrum**. Figure 4.2.8 shows the wavelength distribution for sunlight. The most intense radiation is in the visible region, with the intensity dropping off rapidly for shorter wavelength ultraviolet (UV) light, and more slowly for longer wavelength infrared (IR) light.

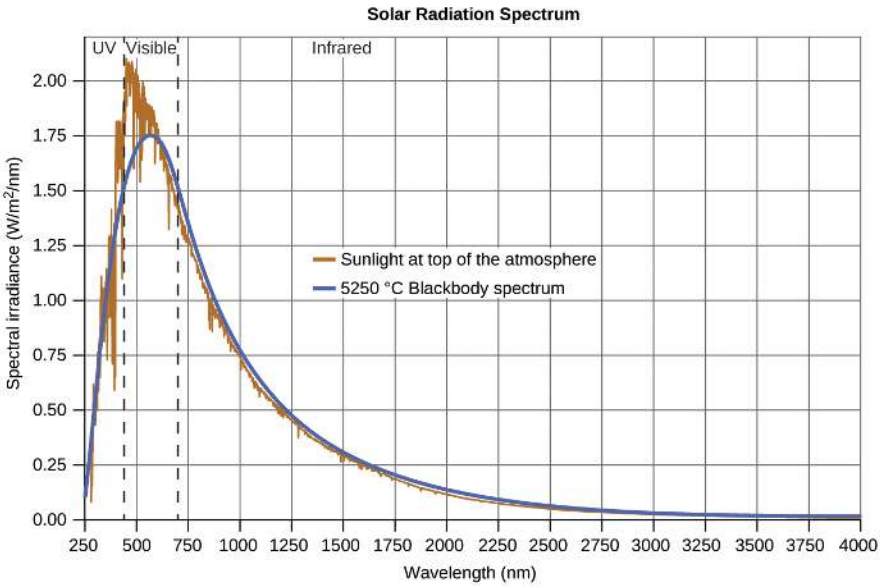


Figure 4.2.8: The spectral distribution (light intensity vs. wavelength) of sunlight reaches the Earth's atmosphere as UV light, visible light, and IR light. The unabsorbed sunlight at the top of the atmosphere has a distribution that approximately matches the theoretical distribution of a blackbody at 5250 °C, represented by the blue curve. (credit: modification of work by American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Terrestrial Reference Spectra for Photovoltaic Performance Evaluation)

In Figure 4.2.8, the solar distribution is compared to a representative distribution, called a **blackbody spectrum**, that corresponds to a temperature of 5250 °C. The blackbody spectrum matches the solar spectrum quite well. A blackbody is a convenient, ideal emitter that approximates the behavior of many materials when heated. It is “ideal” in the same sense that an ideal gas is a convenient, simple representation of real gases that works well, provided that the pressure is not too high nor the temperature too low. A good approximation of a blackbody that can be used to observe blackbody radiation is a metal oven that can be heated to very high temperatures. The oven has a small hole allowing for the light being emitted within the oven to be observed with a spectrometer so that the wavelengths and their intensities can be measured. Figure 4.2.9 shows the resulting curves for some representative temperatures. Each distribution depends only on a single parameter: the temperature. The maxima in the blackbody curves, λ_{max}, shift to shorter wavelengths as the temperature increases, reflecting the observation that metals being heated to high temperatures begin to glow a darker red that becomes brighter as the temperature increases, eventually becoming white hot at very high temperatures as the intensities of all of the visible wavelengths become appreciable. This common observation was at the heart of the first paradox that showed the fundamental limitations of classical physics that we will examine.Physicists derived mathematical expressions for the blackbody curves using well-accepted concepts from the theories of classical mechanics and classical electromagnetism. The theoretical expressions as functions of temperature fit the observed experimental blackbody curves well at longer wavelengths, but showed significant discrepancies at shorter wavelengths. Not only did the theoretical curves not show a peak, they absurdly showed the intensity becoming infinitely large as the wavelength became smaller, which would imply that everyday objects at room temperature should be emitting large amounts of UV light. This became known as the “ultraviolet catastrophe” because no one could find any problems with the theoretical treatment that could lead to such unrealistic short-wavelength behavior. Finally, around 1900, Max Planck derived a theoretical expression for blackbody radiation that fit the experimental observations exactly (within experimental error). Planck developed his theoretical treatment by extending the earlier work that had been based on the premise that the atoms composing the oven vibrated at increasing frequencies (or decreasing wavelengths) as the temperature increased, with these vibrations being the source of the emitted electromagnetic radiation. But where the earlier treatments had allowed the vibrating atoms to have any energy values obtained from a continuous set of energies (perfectly reasonable, according to classical physics), Planck found that by restricting the vibrational energies to discrete values for each frequency, he could derive an expression for blackbody radiation that correctly had the intensity dropping rapidly for the short wavelengths in the UV region.

$$E = nh\nu, n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{4.2.1}$$

The quantity h is a constant now known as **Planck's constant**, in his honor. Although Planck was pleased he had resolved the blackbody radiation paradox, he was disturbed that to do so, he needed to assume the vibrating atoms required quantized energies,

which he was unable to explain. The value of Planck's constant is very small, 6.626 10^{-34} joule seconds (J s), which helps explain why energy quantization had not been observed previously in macroscopic phenomena.

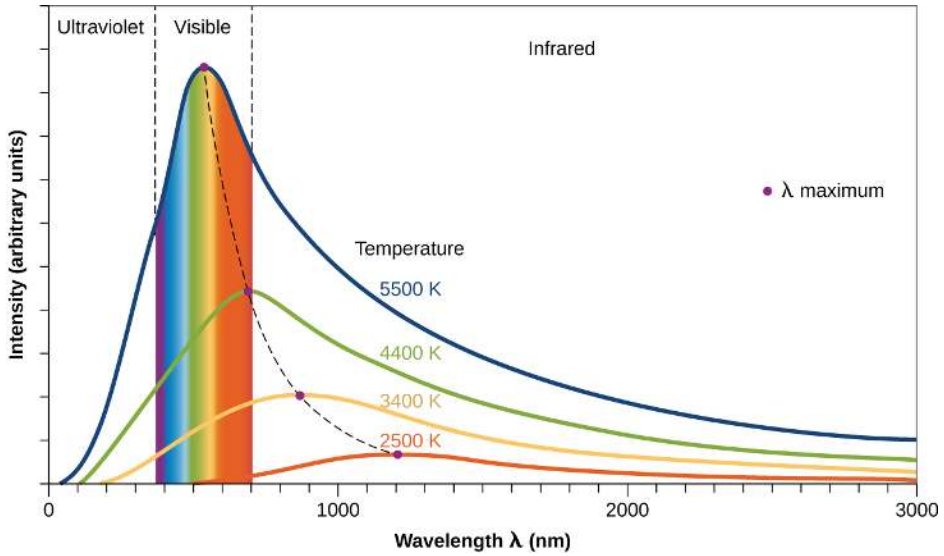


Figure 4.2.9: Blackbody spectral distribution curves are shown for some representative temperatures.

The Photoelectric Effect

The next paradox in the classical theory to be resolved concerned the photoelectric effect (Figure 4.2.10). It had been observed that electrons could be ejected from the clean surface of a metal when light having a frequency greater than some threshold frequency was shone on it. Surprisingly, the kinetic energy of the ejected electrons did not depend on the brightness of the light, but increased with increasing frequency of the light. Since the electrons in the metal had a certain amount of binding energy keeping them there, the incident light needed to have more energy to free the electrons. According to classical wave theory, a wave's energy depends on its intensity (which depends on its amplitude), not its frequency. One part of these observations was that the number of electrons ejected within in a given time period was seen to increase as the brightness increased. In 1905, Albert Einstein was able to resolve the paradox by incorporating Planck's quantization findings into the discredited particle view of light (Einstein actually won his Nobel prize for this work, and not for his theories of relativity for which he is most famous).

Einstein argued that the quantized energies that Planck had postulated in his treatment of blackbody radiation could be applied to the light in the photoelectric effect so that the light striking the metal surface should not be viewed as a wave, but instead as a stream of particles (later called **photons**) whose energy depended on their frequency, according to Planck's formula (Equation 4.2.1), $E = h\nu$ (or, in terms of wavelength using $c = \nu\lambda$, $E = \frac{hc}{\lambda}$). Electrons were ejected when hit by photons having sufficient energy (a frequency greater than the threshold). The greater the frequency, the greater the kinetic energy imparted to the escaping electrons by the collisions. Einstein also argued that the light intensity did not depend on the amplitude of the incoming wave, but instead corresponded to the number of photons striking the surface within a given time period. This explains why the number of ejected electrons increased with increasing brightness, since the greater the number of incoming photons, the greater the likelihood that they would collide with some of the electrons.

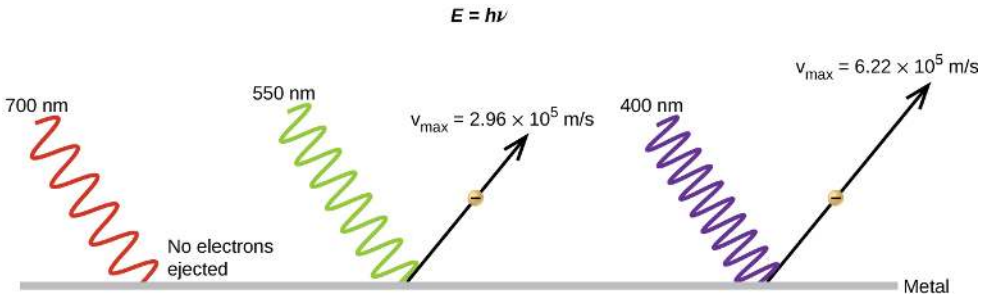


Figure 4.2.10: Photons with low frequencies do not have enough energy to cause electrons to be ejected via the photoelectric effect. For any frequency of light above the threshold frequency, the kinetic energy of an ejected electron will increase linearly with the energy of the incoming photon.

With Einstein's findings, the nature of light took on a new air of mystery. Although many light phenomena could be explained either in terms of waves or particles, certain phenomena, such as the interference patterns obtained when light passed through a double slit, were completely contrary to a particle view of light, while other phenomena, such as the photoelectric effect, were completely contrary to a wave view of light. Somehow, at a deep fundamental level still not fully understood, light is both wavelike and particle-like. This is known as **wave-particle duality**.

Example 4.2.2: Calculating the Energy of Radiation

When we see light from a neon sign, we are observing radiation from excited neon atoms. If this radiation has a wavelength of 640 nm, what is the energy of the photon being emitted?

Solution

We use the part of Planck's equation that includes the wavelength, λ, and convert units of nanometers to meters so that the units of λ and c are the same.

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \frac{hc}{\lambda} \\ &= \frac{\left(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\cancel{\text{s}}\right)\left(2.998 \times 10^{8}\ \cancel{\text{m}}\ \cancel{\text{s}}^{-1}\right)}{\left(640\ \cancel{\text{nm}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{10^{9}\ \cancel{\text{nm}}}\right)} \\ &= 3.10 \times 10^{-19} J \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 4.2.2

The microwaves in an oven are of a specific frequency that will heat the water molecules contained in food. (This is why most plastics and glass do not become hot in a microwave oven-they do not contain water molecules.) This frequency is about 3 10^9 Hz. What is the energy of one photon in these microwaves?

Answer

2 10^{-24} J

Link to Learning

Use this simulation program to experiment with the photoelectric effect to see how intensity, frequency, type of metal, and other factors influence the ejected photons.

Example 4.2.3: Photoelectric Effect

Identify which of the following statements are false and, where necessary, change the italicized word or phrase to make them true, consistent with Einstein's explanation of the photoelectric effect.

a. Increasing the brightness of incoming light *increases* the kinetic energy of the ejected electrons.
b. Increasing the *wavelength* of incoming light increases the kinetic energy of the ejected electrons.
c. Increasing the brightness of incoming light *increases* the number of ejected electrons.
d. Increasing the *frequency* of incoming light can increase the number of ejected electrons.

Solution

a. False. Increasing the brightness of incoming light *has no effect* on the kinetic energy of the ejected electrons. Only energy, not the number or amplitude, of the photons influences the kinetic energy of the electrons.
b. False. Increasing the *frequency* of incoming light increases the kinetic energy of the ejected electrons. Frequency is proportional to energy and inversely proportional to wavelength. Frequencies above the threshold value transfer the excess energy into the kinetic energy of the electrons.
c. True. Because the number of collisions with photons increases with brighter light, the number of ejected electrons increases.

d. True with regard to the threshold energy binding the electrons to the metal. Below this threshold, electrons are not emitted and above it they are. Once over the threshold value, further increasing the frequency does not increase the number of ejected electrons

? Exercise 4.2.3

Calculate the threshold energy in kJ/mol of electrons in aluminum, given that the lowest frequency photon for which the photoelectric effect is observed is 9.87 10^{14} Hz.

Answer

394 kJ/mol

Line Spectra

Another paradox within the classical electromagnetic theory that scientists in the late nineteenth century struggled with concerned the light emitted from atoms and molecules. When solids, liquids, or condensed gases are heated sufficiently, they radiate some of the excess energy as light. Photons produced in this manner have a range of energies, and thereby produce a continuous spectrum in which an unbroken series of wavelengths is present. Most of the light generated from stars (including our sun) is produced in this fashion. You can see all the visible wavelengths of light present in sunlight by using a prism to separate them. As can be seen in Figure 4.2.8: , sunlight also contains UV light (shorter wavelengths) and IR light (longer wavelengths) that can be detected using instruments but that are invisible to the human eye. Incandescent (glowing) solids such as tungsten filaments in incandescent lights also give off light that contains all wavelengths of visible light. These continuous spectra can often be approximated by blackbody radiation curves at some appropriate temperature, such as those shown in Figure 4.2.9.

In contrast to continuous spectra, light can also occur as discrete or **line spectra** having very narrow line widths interspersed throughout the spectral regions such as those shown in Figure 4.2.12 Exciting a gas at low partial pressure using an electrical current, or heating it, will produce line spectra. Fluorescent light bulbs and neon signs operate in this way (Figure 4.2.11). Each element displays its own characteristic set of lines, as do molecules, although their spectra are generally much more complicated.



Figure 4.2.11: Neon signs operate by exciting a gas at low partial pressure using an electrical current. This sign shows the elaborate artistic effects that can be achieved. (credit: Dave Shaver)

Each emission line consists of a single wavelength of light, which implies that the light emitted by a gas consists of a set of discrete energies. For example, when an electric discharge passes through a tube containing hydrogen gas at low pressure, the H_2 molecules are broken apart into separate H atoms and we see a blue-pink color. Passing the light through a prism produces a line spectrum, indicating that this light is composed of photons of four visible wavelengths, as shown in Figure 4.2.12

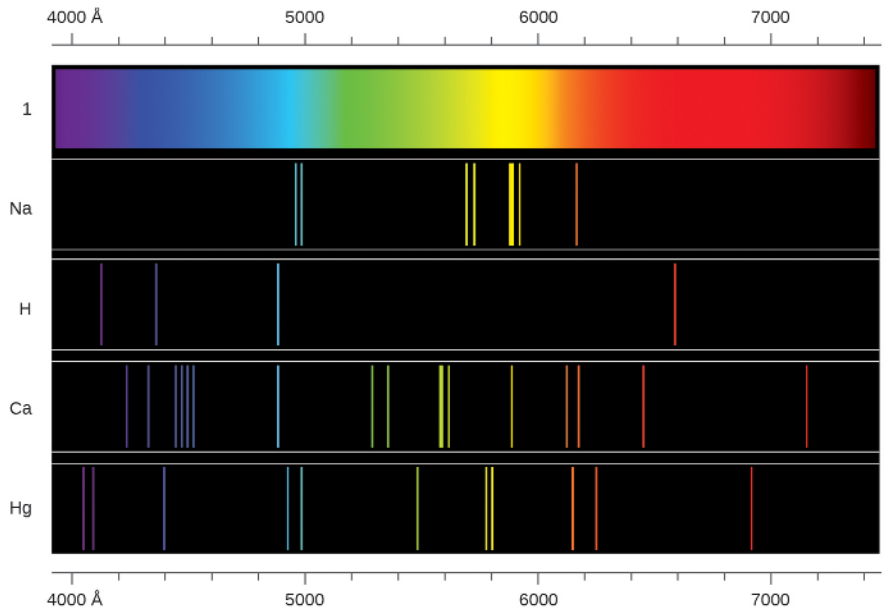


Figure 4.2.12: Compare the two types of emission spectra: continuous spectrum of white light (top) and the line spectra of the light from excited sodium, hydrogen, calcium, and mercury atoms.

The origin of discrete spectra in atoms and molecules was extremely puzzling to scientists in the late nineteenth century, since according to classical electromagnetic theory, only continuous spectra should be observed. Even more puzzling, in 1885, Johann Balmer was able to derive an empirical equation that related the four visible wavelengths of light emitted by hydrogen atoms to whole integers. That equation is the following one, in which *k* is a constant:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = k\left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right), \quad n = 3, 4, 5, 6$$

Other discrete lines for the hydrogen atom were found in the UV and IR regions. Johannes Rydberg generalized Balmer's work and developed an empirical formula that predicted all of hydrogen's emission lines, not just those restricted to the visible range, where n_1 and n_2 are integers, $n_1 < n_2$, and R_∞ is the **Rydberg constan**t (1.097 10^7 m^{-1}).

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_\infty\left(\frac{1}{n_1^2} - \frac{1}{n_2^2}\right)$$

Even in the late nineteenth century, spectroscopy was a very precise science, and so the wavelengths of hydrogen were measured to very high accuracy, which implied that the Rydberg constant could be determined very precisely as well. That such a simple formula as the Rydberg formula could account for such precise measurements seemed astounding at the time, but it was the eventual explanation for emission spectra by Neils Bohr in 1913 that ultimately convinced scientists to abandon classical physics and spurred the development of modern quantum mechanics.

This page titled 4.2: Electromagnetic Energy is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.1: Electromagnetic Energy** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.3: The Bohr Model

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom
- Use the Rydberg equation to calculate energies of light emitted or absorbed by hydrogen atoms

Following the work of Ernest Rutherford and his colleagues in the early twentieth century, the picture of atoms consisting of tiny dense nuclei surrounded by lighter and even tinier electrons continually moving about the nucleus was well established. This picture was called the planetary model, since it pictured the atom as a miniature "solar system" with the electrons orbiting the nucleus like planets orbiting the sun. The simplest atom is hydrogen, consisting of a single proton as the nucleus about which a single electron moves. The electrostatic force attracting the electron to the proton depends only on the distance between the two particles. This classical mechanics description of the atom is incomplete, however, since an electron moving in an elliptical orbit would be accelerating (by changing direction) and, according to classical electromagnetism, it should continuously emit electromagnetic radiation. This loss in orbital energy should result in the electron's orbit getting continually smaller until it spirals into the nucleus, implying that atoms are inherently unstable.

In 1913, Niels Bohr attempted to resolve the atomic paradox by ignoring classical electromagnetism's prediction that the orbiting electron in hydrogen would continuously emit light. Instead, he incorporated into the classical mechanics description of the atom Planck's ideas of quantization and Einstein's finding that light consists of photons whose energy is proportional to their frequency. Bohr assumed that the electron orbiting the nucleus would not normally emit any radiation (the stationary state hypothesis), but it would emit or absorb a photon if it moved to a different orbit. The energy absorbed or emitted would reflect differences in the orbital energies according to this equation:

$$|\Delta E| = |E_f - E_i| = h\nu = \frac{hc}{\lambda}$$

In this equation, h is Planck's constant and E_i and E_f are the initial and final orbital energies, respectively. The absolute value of the energy difference is used, since frequencies and wavelengths are always positive. Instead of allowing for continuous values of energy, Bohr assumed the energies of these electron orbitals were quantized:

$$E_n = -\frac{k}{n^2}, n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

In this expression, k is a constant comprising fundamental constants such as the electron mass and charge and Planck's constant. Inserting the expression for the orbit energies into the equation for ΔE gives

$$\Delta E = k\left(\frac{1}{n_1^2} - \frac{1}{n_2^2}\right) = \frac{hc}{\lambda}$$

or

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{k}{hc}\left(\frac{1}{n_1^2} - \frac{1}{n_2^2}\right)$$

which is identical to the Rydberg equation in which

$$R_\infty = \frac{k}{hc}$$

When Bohr calculated his theoretical value for the Rydberg constant, R_∞, and compared it with the experimentally accepted value, he got excellent agreement. Since the Rydberg constant was one of the most precisely measured constants at that time, this level of agreement was astonishing and meant that Bohr's model was taken seriously, despite the many assumptions that Bohr needed to derive it.

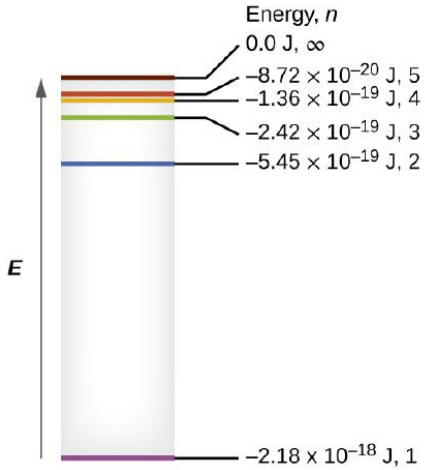


Figure 4.3.1: Quantum numbers and energy levels in a hydrogen atom. The more negative the calculated value, the lower the energy.

The lowest few energy levels are shown in Figure 4.3.1. One of the fundamental laws of physics is that matter is most stable with the lowest possible energy. Thus, the electron in a hydrogen atom usually moves in the $n = 1$ orbit, the orbit in which it has the lowest energy. When the electron is in this lowest energy orbit, the atom is said to be in its ground electronic state (or simply ground state). If the atom receives energy from an outside source, it is possible for the electron to move to an orbit with a higher n value and the atom is now in an excited electronic state (or simply an excited state) with a higher energy. When an electron transitions from an excited state (higher energy orbit) to a less excited state, or ground state, the difference in energy is emitted as a photon. Similarly, if a photon is absorbed by an atom, the energy of the photon moves an electron from a lower energy orbit up to a more excited one. We can relate the energy of electrons in atoms to what we learned previously about energy. The law of conservation of energy says that we can neither create nor destroy energy. Thus, if a certain amount of external energy is required to excite an electron from one energy level to another, that same amount of energy will be liberated when the electron returns to its initial state (Figure 4.3.2).

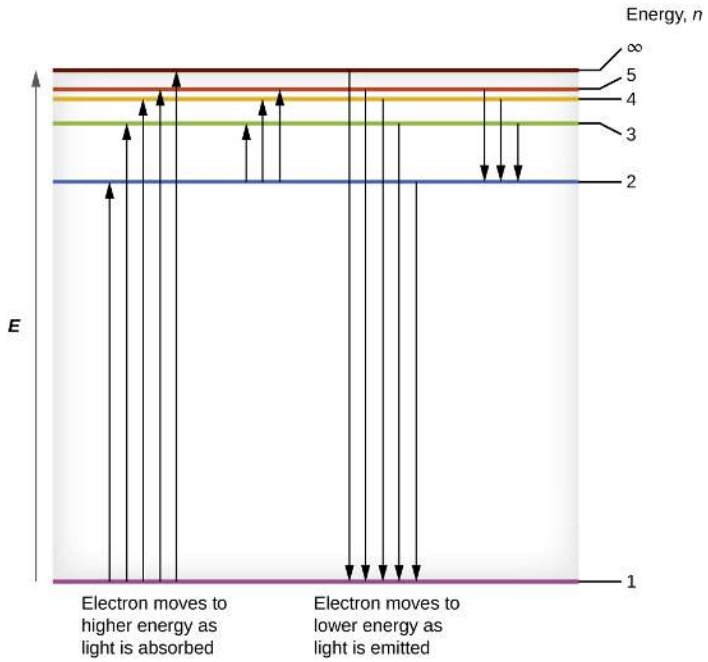


Figure 4.3.2: The horizontal lines show the relative energy of orbits in the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom, and the vertical arrows depict the energy of photons absorbed (left) or emitted (right) as electrons move between these orbits.

Since Bohr's model involved only a single electron, it could also be applied to the single electron ions He^+, Li^{2+}, Be^{3+}, and so forth, which differ from hydrogen only in their nuclear charges, and so one-electron atoms and ions are collectively referred to as

hydrogen-like atoms. The energy expression for hydrogen-like atoms is a generalization of the hydrogen atom energy, in which Z is the nuclear charge (+1 for hydrogen, +2 for He, +3 for Li, and so on) and k has a value of 2.179 10^{-18} J.

$$E_n = -\frac{kZ^2}{n^2} \tag{4.3.1}$$

The sizes of the circular orbits for hydrogen-like atoms are given in terms of their radii by the following expression, in which \ (a_0\) is a constant called the **Bohr radius**, with a value of 5.292 10^{-11} m:

$$r = \frac{n^2}{Z} a_0$$

The equation also shows us that as the electron's energy increases (as n increases), the electron is found at greater distances from the nucleus. This is implied by the inverse dependence of electrostatic attraction on distance, since, as the electron moves away from the nucleus, the electrostatic attraction between it and the nucleus decreases and it is held less tightly in the atom. Note that as n gets larger and the orbits get larger, their energies get closer to zero, and so the limits
$n \rightarrow \infty$ and $r \rightarrow \longrightarrow \infty$ imply that $E = 0$ corresponds to the ionization limit where the electron is completely removed from the nucleus. Thus, for hydrogen in the ground state n = 1, the ionization energy would be:

$$\Delta E = E_{n \longrightarrow \infty} - E_1 = 0 + k = k$$

With three extremely puzzling paradoxes now solved (blackbody radiation, the photoelectric effect, and the hydrogen atom), and all involving Planck's constant in a fundamental manner, it became clear to most physicists at that time that the classical theories that worked so well in the macroscopic world were fundamentally flawed and could not be extended down into the microscopic domain of atoms and molecules. Unfortunately, despite Bohr's remarkable achievement in deriving a theoretical expression for the Rydberg constant, he was unable to extend his theory to the next simplest atom, He, which only has two electrons. Bohr's model was severely flawed, since it was still based on the classical mechanics notion of precise orbits, a concept that was later found to be untenable in the microscopic domain, when a proper model of quantum mechanics was developed to supersede classical mechanics.

✔ Example 4.3.1: Calculating the Energy of an Electron in a Bohr Orbit

Early researchers were very excited when they were able to predict the energy of an electron at a particular distance from the nucleus in a hydrogen atom. If a spark promotes the electron in a hydrogen atom into an orbit with *n* = 3, what is the calculated energy, in joules, of the electron?

Solution

The energy of the electron is given by Equation 4.3.1:

$$E = \frac{-kZ^2}{n^2}$$

The atomic number, Z, of hydrogen is 1; *k* = 2.179 10^{-18} J; and the electron is characterized by an \(*n*\) value of 3. Thus,

$$E = \frac{-\left(2.179 \times 10^{-18} J\right) \times (1)^2}{(3)^2} = -2.421 \times 10^{-19} J$$

? Exercise 4.3.1

The electron in Figure 4.3.2 is promoted even further to an orbit with $n = 6$. What is its new energy?

Answer

−6.053 10^{-20} J

Example 4.3.2: Calculating the Energy and Wavelength of Electron Transitions in a One–electron (Bohr) System

What is the energy (in joules) and the wavelength (in meters) of the line in the spectrum of hydrogen that represents the movement of an electron from Bohr orbit with $n = 4$ to the orbit with $n = 6$? In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum do we find this radiation?

Solution

In this case, the electron starts out with $n = 4$, so $n_1 = 4$. It comes to rest in the $n = 6$ orbit, so $n_2 = 6$. The difference in energy between the two states is given by this expression:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E &= E_1 - E_2 \\ &= 2.179 \times 10^{-18}\left(\frac{1}{n_1^2} - \frac{1}{n_2^2}\right) \\ &= 2.179 \times 10^{-18}\left(\frac{1}{4^2} - \frac{1}{6^2}\right) J \\ &= 2.179 \times 10^{-18}\left(\frac{1}{16} - \frac{1}{36}\right) J \\ &= 7.566 \times 10^{-20} J\end{aligned}$$

This energy difference is positive, indicating a photon enters the system (is absorbed) to excite the electron from the *n* = 4 orbit up to the *n* = 6 orbit. The wavelength of a photon with this energy is found by the expression $E = \frac{hc}{\lambda}$. Rearrangement gives:

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda &= \frac{hc}{E} \\ &= \left(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\cancel{\text{s}}\right) \times \frac{2.998 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m}\ \cancel{\text{s}^{-1}}}{7.566 \times 10^{-20}\ \cancel{\text{J}}} \\ &= 2.626 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}\end{aligned}$$

From the illustration of the electromagnetic spectrum in Electromagnetic Energy, we can see that this wavelength is found in the infrared portion of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Exercise 4.3.2

What is the energy in joules and the wavelength in meters of the photon produced when an electron falls from the *n* = 5 to the *n* = 3 level in a He^+ ion (*Z* = 2 for He^+)?

Answer

6.198 10^{-19} J; 3.205 10^{-7} m

Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom provides insight into the behavior of matter at the microscopic level, but it does not account for electron–electron interactions in atoms with more than one electron. It does introduce several important features of all models used to describe the distribution of electrons in an atom. These features include the following:

- The energies of electrons (energy levels) in an atom are quantized, described by quantum numbers: integer numbers having only specific allowed value and used to characterize the arrangement of electrons in an atom.
- An electron's energy increases with increasing distance from the nucleus.
- The discrete energies (lines) in the spectra of the elements result from quantized electronic energies.

Of these features, the most important is the postulate of quantized energy levels for an electron in an atom. As a consequence, the model laid the foundation for the quantum mechanical model of the atom. Bohr won a Nobel Prize in Physics for his contributions to our understanding of the structure of atoms and how that is related to line spectra emissions.

This page titled 4.3: The Bohr Model is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.2: The Bohr Model** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.4: Development of Quantum Theory

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Extend the concept of wave–particle duality that was observed in electromagnetic radiation to matter as well
- Understand the general idea of the quantum mechanical description of electrons in an atom, and that it uses the notion of three-dimensional wave functions, or orbitals, that define the distribution of probability to find an electron in a particular part of space
- List and describe traits of the four quantum numbers that form the basis for completely specifying the state of an electron in an atom

Bohr's model explained the experimental data for the hydrogen atom and was widely accepted, but it also raised many questions. Why did electrons orbit at only fixed distances defined by a single quantum number n = 1, 2, 3, and so on, but never in between? Why did the model work so well describing hydrogen and one-electron ions, but could not correctly predict the emission spectrum for helium or any larger atoms? To answer these questions, scientists needed to completely revise the way they thought about matter.

Behavior in the Microscopic World

We know how matter behaves in the macroscopic world—objects that are large enough to be seen by the naked eye follow the rules of classical physics. A billiard ball moving on a table will behave like a particle: It will continue in a straight line unless it collides with another ball or the table cushion, or is acted on by some other force (such as friction). The ball has a well-defined position and velocity (or a well-defined momentum, $p = mv$, defined by mass m and velocity v) at any given moment. In other words, the ball is moving in a classical trajectory. This is the typical behavior of a classical object.

When waves interact with each other, they show interference patterns that are not displayed by macroscopic particles such as the billiard ball. For example, interacting waves on the surface of water can produce interference patterns similar to those shown on Figure 4.4.1. This is a case of wave behavior on the macroscopic scale, and it is clear that particles and waves are very different phenomena in the macroscopic realm.

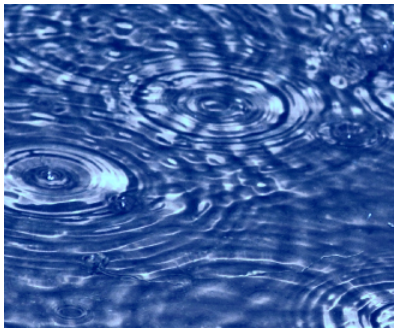


Figure 4.4.1: An interference pattern on the water surface is formed by interacting waves. The waves are caused by reflection of water from the rocks. (credit: modification of work by Sukanto Debnath)

As technological improvements allowed scientists to probe the microscopic world in greater detail, it became increasingly clear by the 1920s that very small pieces of matter follow a different set of rules from those we observe for large objects. The unquestionable separation of waves and particles was no longer the case for the microscopic world.

One of the first people to pay attention to the special behavior of the microscopic world was Louis de Broglie. He asked the question: If electromagnetic radiation can have particle-like character, can electrons and other submicroscopic particles exhibit wavelike character? In his 1925 doctoral dissertation, de Broglie extended the wave–particle duality of light that Einstein used to resolve the photoelectric-effect paradox to material particles. He predicted that a particle with mass m and velocity v (that is, with linear momentum p) should also exhibit the behavior of a wave with a wavelength value λ, given by this expression in which h is the familiar Planck's constant:

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv} = \frac{h}{p}$$

This is called the **de Broglie wavelength**. Unlike the other values of λ discussed in this chapter, the de Broglie wavelength is a characteristic of particles and other bodies, not electromagnetic radiation (note that this equation involves velocity [v, m/s], not frequency [ν, Hz]. Although these two symbols appear nearly identical, they mean very different things). Where Bohr had postulated the electron as being a particle orbiting the nucleus in quantized orbits, de Broglie argued that Bohr's assumption of quantization can be explained if the electron is considered not as a particle, but rather as a circular standing wave such that only an integer number of wavelengths could fit exactly within the orbit (Figure 4.4.2).

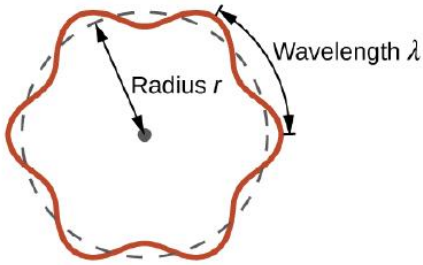


Figure 4.4.2: If an electron is viewed as a wave circling around the nucleus, an integer number of wavelengths must fit into the orbit for this standing wave behavior to be possible.

For a circular orbit of radius r, the circumference is $2\pi r$, and so de Broglie's condition is:

$$2\pi r = n\lambda, \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

Shortly after de Broglie proposed the wave nature of matter, two scientists at Bell Laboratories, C. J. Davisson and L. H. Germer, demonstrated experimentally that electrons can exhibit wavelike behavior by showing an interference pattern for electrons travelling through a regular atomic pattern in a crystal. The regularly spaced atomic layers served as slits, as used in other interference experiments. Since the spacing between the layers serving as slits needs to be similar in size to the wavelength of the tested wave for an interference pattern to form, Davisson and Germer used a crystalline nickel target for their "slits," since the spacing of the atoms within the lattice was approximately the same as the de Broglie wavelengths of the electrons that they used. Figure 4.4.3 shows an interference pattern. It is strikingly similar to the interference patterns for light shown in Electromagnetic Energy for light passing through two closely spaced, narrow slits. The wave–particle duality of matter can be seen in Figure 4.4.3 by observing what happens if electron collisions are recorded over a long period of time. Initially, when only a few electrons have been recorded, they show clear particle-like behavior, having arrived in small localized packets that appear to be random. As more and more electrons arrived and were recorded, a clear interference pattern that is the hallmark of wavelike behavior emerged. Thus, it appears that while electrons are small localized particles, their motion does not follow the equations of motion implied by classical mechanics, but instead it is governed by some type of a wave equation. Thus the wave–particle duality first observed with photons is actually a fundamental behavior intrinsic to all quantum particles.

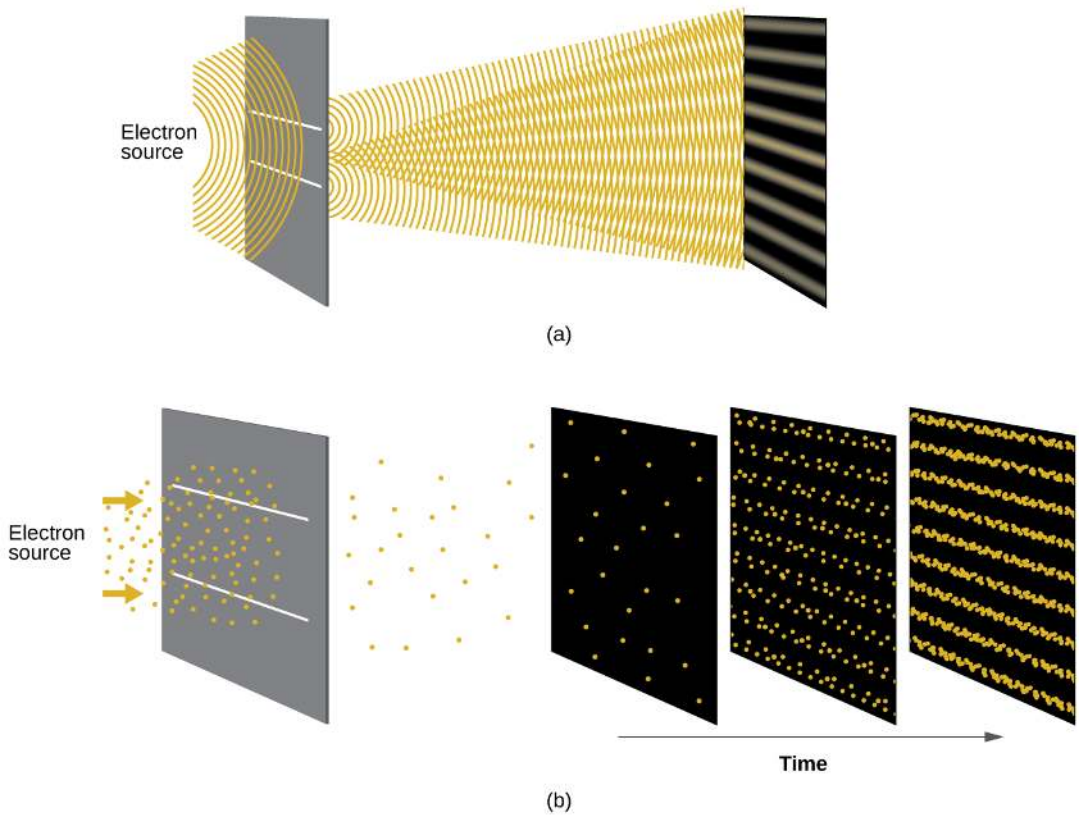


Figure 4.4.3: (a) The interference pattern for electrons passing through very closely spaced slits demonstrates that quantum particles such as electrons can exhibit wavelike behavior. (b) The experimental results illustrated here demonstrate the wave–particle duality in electrons.

Link to Learning

View the Dr. Quantum – Double Slit Experiment cartoon for an easy-to-understand description of wave–particle duality and the associated experiments.

Example 4.4.1: Calculating the Wavelength of a Particle

If an electron travels at a velocity of $1.000 \times 10^7\ \text{m s}^{-1}$ and has a mass of $9.109 \times 10^{-28}\ \text{g}$, what is its wavelength?

Solution

We can use de Broglie's equation to solve this problem, but we first must do a unit conversion of Planck's constant. You learned earlier that $1\ \text{J} = 1\text{kg m}^2/\text{s}^2$. Thus, we can write $h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}$ as $6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{kg m}^2/\text{s}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \frac{h}{mv} \\ &= \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{kg m}^2/\text{s}}{\left(9.109 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg}\right)\left(1.000 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s}\right)} \\ &= 7.274 \times 10^{-11} m \end{aligned}$$

This is a small value, but it is significantly larger than the size of an electron in the classical (particle) view. This size is the same order of magnitude as the size of an atom. This means that electron wavelike behavior is going to be noticeable in an atom.

Exercise 4.4.1

Calculate the wavelength of a softball with a mass of 100 g traveling at a velocity of 35 m s^{-1}, assuming that it can be modeled as a single particle.

Answer

1.9 10^{-34} m.

We never think of a thrown softball having a wavelength, since this wavelength is so small it is impossible for our senses or any known instrument to detect (strictly speaking, the wavelength of a real baseball would correspond to the wavelengths of its constituent atoms and molecules, which, while much larger than this value, would still be microscopically tiny). The de Broglie wavelength is only appreciable for matter that has a very small mass and/or a very high velocity.

Werner Heisenberg considered the limits of how accurately we can measure properties of an electron or other microscopic particles. He determined that there is a fundamental limit to how accurately one can measure both a particle's position and its momentum simultaneously. The more accurately we measure the momentum of a particle, the less accurately we can determine its position at that time, and vice versa. This is summed up in what we now call the Heisenberg uncertainty principle: *It is fundamentally impossible to determine simultaneously and exactly both the momentum and the position of a particle*. For a particle of mass \(*m*\) moving with velocity v_x in the x direction (or equivalently with momentum p_x), the product of the uncertainty in the position, Δx, and the uncertainty in the momentum, Δp_x, must be greater than or equal to $\hbar/2$ (where $\hbar = h/2$, the value of Planck's constant divided by 2π).

$$\Delta x \times \Delta p_x = (\Delta x)(m\Delta v) \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}$$

This equation allows us to calculate the limit to how precisely we can know both the simultaneous position of an object and its momentum. For example, if we improve our measurement of an electron's position so that the uncertainty in the position (Δx) has a value of, say, 1 pm (10^{-12} m, about 1% of the diameter of a hydrogen atom), then our determination of its momentum must have an uncertainty with a value of at least

$$\left[\Delta p = m\Delta v = \frac{\hbar}{(2\Delta x)}\right] = \frac{\left(1.055 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{kg\,m^2/s}\right)}{\left(2 \times 1 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{m}\right)} = 5 \times 10^{-23}\ \mathrm{kg\,m/s}$$

The value of $\hbar$ is not large, so the uncertainty in the position or momentum of a macroscopic object like a baseball is too insignificant to observe. However, the mass of a microscopic object such as an electron is small enough that the uncertainty can be large and significant.

It should be noted that Heisenberg's uncertainty principle is not just limited to uncertainties in position and momentum, but it also links other dynamical variables. For example, when an atom absorbs a photon and makes a transition from one energy state to another, the uncertainty in the energy and the uncertainty in the time required for the transition are similarly related, as:

$$\Delta E \Delta t \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}$$

Heisenberg's principle imposes ultimate limits on what is knowable in science. The uncertainty principle can be shown to be a consequence of wave–particle duality, which lies at the heart of what distinguishes modern quantum theory from classical mechanics.

Link to Learning

Read this article that describes a recent macroscopic demonstration of the uncertainty principle applied to microscopic objects.

The Quantum–Mechanical Model of an Atom

Shortly after de Broglie published his ideas that the electron in a hydrogen atom could be better thought of as being a circular standing wave instead of a particle moving in quantized circular orbits, Erwin Schrödinger extended de Broglie's work by deriving what is today known as the Schrödinger equation. When Schrödinger applied his equation to hydrogen-like atoms, he was able to

reproduce Bohr's expression for the energy and, thus, the Rydberg formula governing hydrogen spectra. Schrödinger described electrons as three-dimensional stationary waves, or **wavefunctions**, represented by the Greek letter psi, ψ. A few years later, Max Born proposed an interpretation of the wavefunction ψ that is still accepted today: Electrons are still particles, and so the waves represented by ψ are not physical waves but, instead, are complex probability amplitudes. The square of the magnitude of a wavefunction $|\psi|^2$ describes the probability of the quantum particle being present near a certain location in space. This means that wavefunctions can be used to determine the distribution of the electron's density with respect to the nucleus in an atom. In the most general form, the Schrödinger equation can be written as:

$$\hat{H}\psi = E\psi$$

$\hat{H}$ is the Hamiltonian operator, a set of mathematical operations representing the total energy of the quantum particle (such as an electron in an atom), ψ is the wavefunction of this particle that can be used to find the special distribution of the probability of finding the particle, and E is the actual value of the total energy of the particle.

Schrödinger's work, as well as that of Heisenberg and many other scientists following in their footsteps, is generally referred to as **quantum mechanics**.

Link to Learning

You may also have heard of Schrödinger because of his famous thought experiment. This story explains the concepts of superposition and entanglement as related to a cat in a box with poison.

Understanding Quantum Theory of Electrons in Atoms

The goal of this section is to understand the electron orbitals (location of electrons in atoms), their different energies, and other properties. The use of quantum theory provides the best understanding to these topics. This knowledge is a precursor to chemical bonding.

As was described previously, electrons in atoms can exist only on discrete energy levels but not between them. It is said that the energy of an electron in an atom is quantized, that is, it can be equal only to certain specific values and can jump from one energy level to another but not transition smoothly or stay between these levels.

The energy levels are labeled with an n value, where $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Generally speaking, the energy of an electron in an atom is greater for greater values of n. This number, n, is referred to as the principal quantum number. The principal quantum number defines the location of the energy level. It is essentially the same concept as the n in the Bohr atom description. Another name for the principal quantum number is the shell number. The shells of an atom can be thought of concentric circles radiating out from the nucleus. The electrons that belong to a specific shell are most likely to be found within the corresponding circular area. The further we proceed from the nucleus, the higher the shell number, and so the higher the energy level (Figure 4.4.4). The positively charged protons in the nucleus stabilize the electronic orbitals by electrostatic attraction between the positive charges of the protons and the negative charges of the electrons. So the further away the electron is from the nucleus, the greater the energy it has.

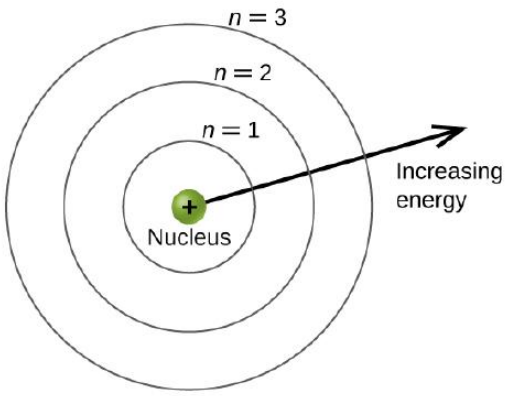


Figure 4.4.4: Different shells are numbered by principal quantum numbers.

This quantum mechanical model for where electrons reside in an atom can be used to look at electronic transitions, the events when an electron moves from one energy level to another. If the transition is to a higher energy level, energy is absorbed, and the energy

change has a positive value. To obtain the amount of energy necessary for the transition to a higher energy level, a photon is absorbed by the atom. A transition to a lower energy level involves a release of energy, and the energy change is negative. This process is accompanied by emission of a photon by the atom. The following equation summarizes these relationships and is based on the hydrogen atom:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E &= E_{\text{final}} - E_{\text{initial}} \\ &= -2.18 \times 10^{-18} \left(\frac{1}{n_f^2} - \frac{1}{n_i^2} \right) J\end{aligned}$$

The values n_f and n_i are the final and initial energy states of the electron.

The principal quantum number is one of three quantum numbers used to characterize an orbital. An **atomic orbital** is a general region in an atom within which an electron is most probable to reside. The quantum mechanical model specifies the probability of finding an electron in the three-dimensional space around the nucleus and is based on solutions of the Schrödinger equation. In addition, the principal quantum number defines the energy of an electron in a hydrogen or hydrogen-like atom or an ion (an atom or an ion with only one electron) and the general region in which discrete energy levels of electrons in a multi-electron atoms and ions are located.

Another quantum number is l, the **secondary (angular momentum) quantum number**. It is an integer that may take the values, $l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1$. This means that an orbital with $n = 1$ can have only one value of l, $l = 0$, whereas $n = 2$ permits $l = 0$ and $l = 1$, and so on. Whereas the principal quantum number, n, defines the general size and energy of the orbital, the secondary quantum number l specifies the shape of the orbital. Orbitals with the same value of l define a **subshell**.

Orbitals with $l = 0$ are called s orbitals and they make up the s subshells. The value $l = 1$ corresponds to the p orbitals. For a given n, p orbitals constitute a p subshell (e.g., 3p if n = 3). The orbitals with $l = 2$ are called the **d orbitals**, followed by the *f-*, *g-*, *and h*-orbitals for l = 3, 4, and 5.

There are certain distances from the nucleus at which the probability density of finding an electron located at a particular orbital is zero. In other words, the value of the wavefunction ψ is zero at this distance for this orbital. Such a value of radius r is called a **radial node**. The number of radial nodes in an orbital is $n-l-1$.

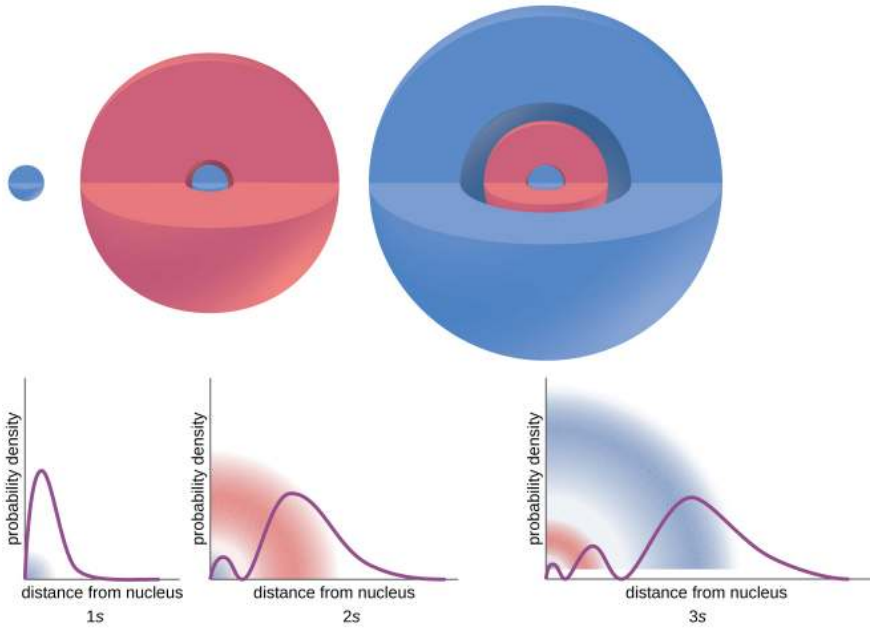


Figure 4.4.5: The graphs show the probability (*y* axis) of finding an electron for the 1*s*, 2*s*, 3*s* orbitals as a function of distance from the nucleus.

Consider the examples in Figure 4.4.5. The orbitals depicted are of the *s* type, thus $l = 0$ for all of them. It can be seen from the graphs of the probability densities that there are 1 – 0 – 1 = 0 places where the density is zero (nodes) for 1*s* (*n* = 1), 2 – 0 – 1 = 1 node for 2*s*, and 3 – 0 – 1 = 2 nodes for the 3*s* orbitals.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/471442

The *s* subshell electron density distribution is spherical and the *p* subshell has a dumbbell shape. The *d* and *f* orbitals are more complex. These shapes represent the three-dimensional regions within which the electron is likely to be found.

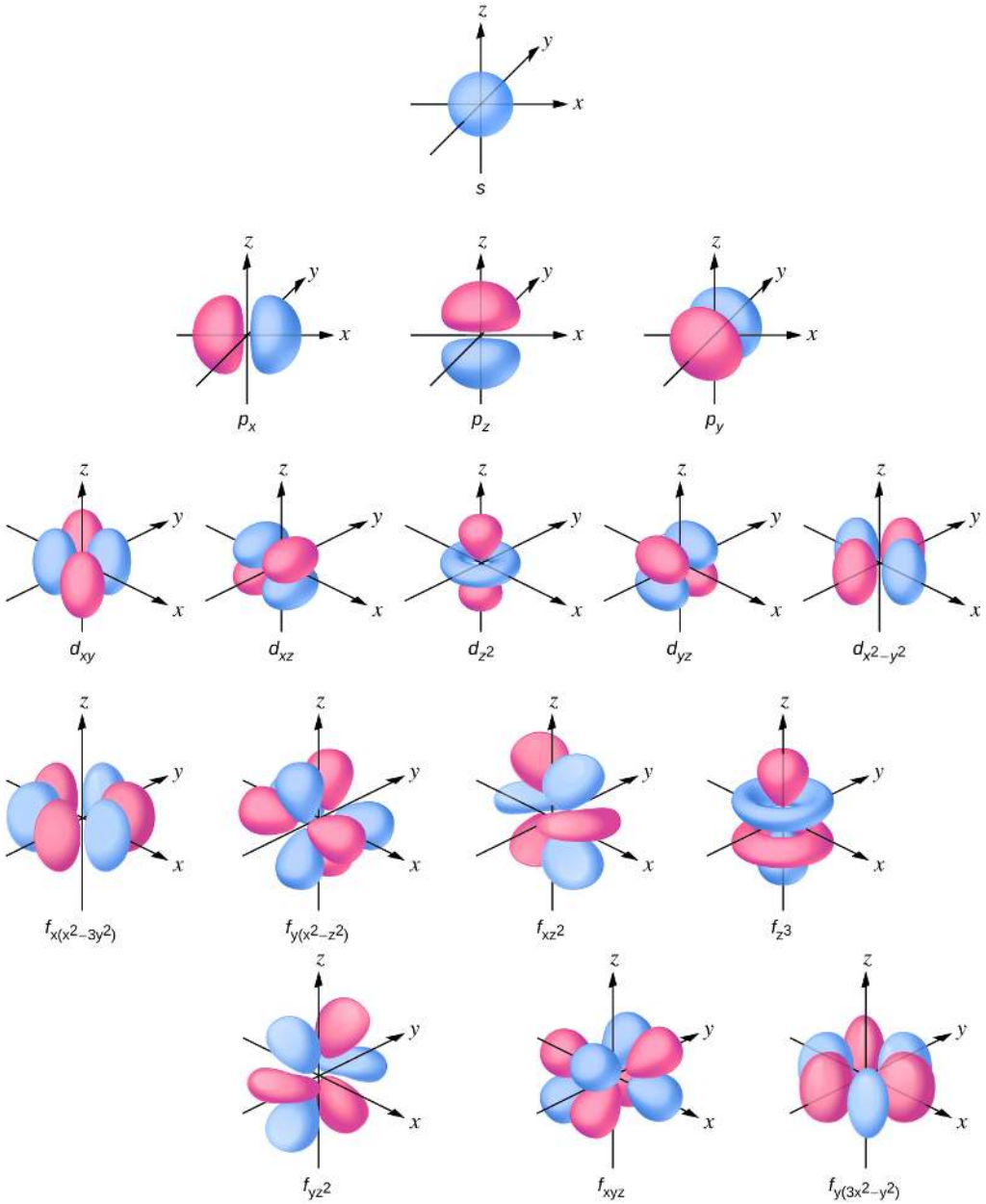


Figure 4.4.6: Shapes of *s*, *p*, *d*, and *f* orbitals.

The **magnetic quantum number**, m_l, specifies the relative spatial orientation of a particular orbital. Generally speaking, m_l are rangeed from $-l$ to $+l$, i.e.

$$-l, -(l-1), \ldots, 0, \ldots, (l-1), l\backslash).$$

The total number of possible orbitals with the same value of l (that is, in the same subshell) is $2l+1$. Thus, there is one s-orbital in an s subshell ($l=0$), there are three p-orbitals in a p subshell ($l=1$), five d-orbitals in a d subshell (l = 2), seven f-orbitals in an f subshell ($l=3$), and so forth. The principal quantum number defines the general value of the electronic energy. The angular momentum quantum number determines the shape of the orbital. And the magnetic quantum number specifies orientation of the orbital in space, as can be seen in Figure 4.4.6.

Figure 4.4.7 illustrates the energy levels for various orbitals. The number before the orbital name (such as 2*s*, 3*p*, and so forth) stands for the principal quantum number, n. The letter in the orbital name defines the subshell with a specific angular momentum

quantum number l = 0 for *s* orbitals, 1 for *p* orbitals, 2 for *d* orbitals. Finally, there are more than one possible orbitals for $l \geq 1$, each corresponding to a specific value of m_l. In the case of a hydrogen atom or a one-electron ion (such as He^+, Li^{2+}, and so on), energies of all the orbitals with the same n are the same. This is called a degeneracy, and the energy levels for the same principal quantum number, n, are called degenerate orbitals. However, in atoms with more than one electron, this degeneracy is eliminated by the electron–electron interactions, and orbitals that belong to different subshells have different energies, as shown on Figure 4.4.7. Orbitals within the same subshell are still degenerate and have the same energy.

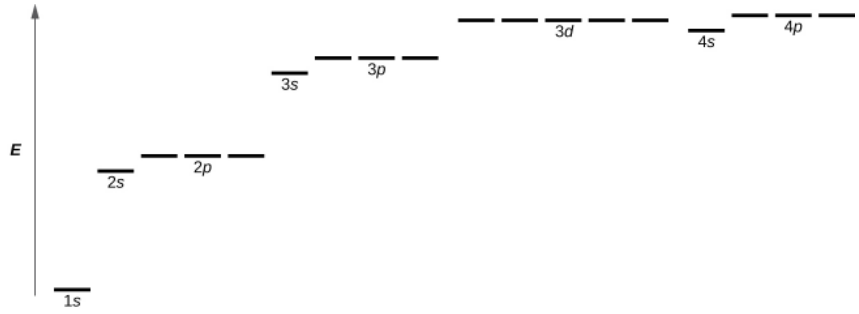


Figure 4.4.7: The chart shows the energies of electron orbitals in a multi-electron atom.

While the three quantum numbers discussed in the previous paragraphs work well for describing electron orbitals, some experiments showed that they were not sufficient to explain all observed results. It was demonstrated in the 1920s that when hydrogen-line spectra are examined at extremely high resolution, some lines are actually not single peaks but, rather, pairs of closely spaced lines. This is the so-called fine structure of the spectrum, and it implies that there are additional small differences in energies of electrons even when they are located in the same orbital. These observations led Samuel Goudsmit and George Uhlenbeck to propose that electrons have a fourth quantum number. They called this the **spin quantum number**, or m_s.

The other three quantum numbers, n, l, and m_l, are properties of specific atomic orbitals that also define in what part of the space an electron is most likely to be located. Orbitals are a result of solving the Schrödinger equation for electrons in atoms. The electron spin is a different kind of property. It is a completely quantum phenomenon with no analogues in the classical realm. In addition, it cannot be derived from solving the Schrödinger equation and is not related to the normal spatial coordinates (such as the Cartesian *x*, *y*, and *z*). Electron spin describes an intrinsic electron "rotation" or "spinning." Each electron acts as a tiny magnet or a tiny rotating object with an angular momentum, or as a loop with an electric current, even though this rotation or current cannot be observed in terms of spatial coordinates.

The magnitude of the overall electron spin can only have one value, and an electron can only “spin” in one of two quantized states. One is termed the α state, with the z component of the spin being in the positive direction of the z axis. This corresponds to the spin quantum number $m_s = +1/2$. The other is called the $\beta state$, with the z component of the spin being negative and $m_s = -1/2$. Any electron, regardless of the atomic orbital it is located in, can only have one of those two values of the spin quantum number. The energies of electrons having $m_s = +1/2$ and $m_s = -1/2$ are different if an external magnetic field is applied.

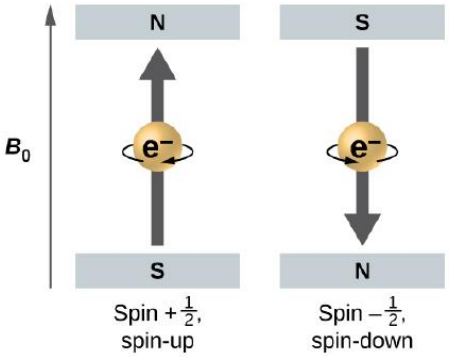


Figure 4.4.8: Electrons with spin values in an external magnetic field.

Figure 4.4.8 illustrates this phenomenon. An electron acts like a tiny magnet. Its moment is directed up (in the positive direction of the z axis) for the $m_s = +1/2$ spin quantum number and down (in the negative z direction) for the spin quantum number of $m_s = -1/2$. A magnet has a lower energy if its magnetic moment is aligned with the external magnetic field (the left electron on

Figure 4.4.8) and a higher energy for the magnetic moment being opposite to the applied field. This is why an electron with $m_s = +1/2$ has a slightly lower energy in an external field in the positive z direction, and an electron with $m_s = -1/2$ has a slightly higher energy in the same field. This is true even for an electron occupying the same orbital in an atom. A spectral line corresponding to a transition for electrons from the same orbital but with different spin quantum numbers has two possible values of energy; thus, the line in the spectrum will show a fine structure splitting.

The Pauli Exclusion Principle

An electron in an atom is completely described by four quantum numbers: n, l, m_l, and m_s. The first three quantum numbers define the orbital and the fourth quantum number describes the intrinsic electron property called spin. An Austrian physicist Wolfgang Pauli formulated a general principle that gives the last piece of information that we need to understand the general behavior of electrons in atoms. The **Pauli exclusion principle** can be formulated as follows: No two electrons in the same atom can have exactly the same set of all the four quantum numbers. What this means is that two electrons can share the same orbital (the same set of the quantum numbers n, l, and m_l) only if their spin quantum numbers m_s have different values. Since the spin quantum number can only have two values no more than two electrons can occupy the same orbital (and if two electrons are located in the same orbital, they must have opposite spins). Therefore, any atomic orbital can be populated by only zero, one, or two electrons. The properties and meaning of the quantum numbers of electrons in atoms are briefly summarized in Table 4.4.1.

Table 4.4.1: Quantum Numbers, Their Properties, and Significance

Name	Symbol	Allowed values	Physical meaning
principal quantum number	n	1, 2, 3, 4, ….	shell, the general region for the value of energy for an electron on the orbital
angular momentum or azimuthal quantum number	l	$0 \le l \le n-1$	subshell, the shape of the orbital
magnetic quantum number	m_l	$-l \le m_l \le l$	orientation of the orbital
spin quantum number	m_s	$+\frac{1}{2}$ and $-\frac{1}{2}$	direction of the intrinsic quantum “spinning” of the electron

Example 4.4.2: Working with Shells and Subshells

Indicate the number of subshells, the number of orbitals in each subshell, and the values of l and m_l for the orbitals in the $n = 4$ shell of an atom.

Solution

For $n = 4$, l can have values of 0, 1, 2, and 3. Thus, s, p, d, and f subshells are found in the n = 4 shell of an atom. For $l = 0$ (the s subshell), m_l can only be 0. Thus, there is only one 4s orbital. For $l = 1$ (p-type orbitals), m can have values of –1, 0, +1, so we find three 4p orbitals. For l = 2 (d-type orbitals), m_l can have values of –2, –1, 0, +1, +2, so we have five 4d orbitals. When $l = 3$ (f-type orbitals), m_l can have values of –3, –2, –1, 0, +1, +2, +3, and we can have seven 4f orbitals. Thus, we find a total of 16 orbitals in the $n = 4$ shell of an atom.

Exercise 4.4.2

Identify the subshell in which electrons with the following quantum numbers are found:

a. n = 3, l = 1
b. n = 5, l = 3
c. n = 2, l = 0

Answer

a. 3*p*
b. 5*f*

c. 2s

Example 4.4.3: Maximum Number of Electrons

Calculate the maximum number of electrons that can occupy a shell with (a) n = 2, (b) n = 5, and (c) n as a variable. Note you are only looking at the orbitals with the specified n value, not those at lower energies.

Solution

a. When $n = 2$, there are four orbitals (a single 2s orbital, and three orbitals labeled 2p). These four orbitals can contain eight electrons.

b. When $n = 2$, there are four orbitals (a single 2s orbital, and three orbitals labeled 2p). These four orbitals can contain eight electrons.
When $n = 5$, there are five subshells of orbitals that we need to sum:

$$\begin{aligned} &1 \text{ orbital labeled 5s} \\ &3 \text{ orbitals labeled 5p} \\ &5 \text{ orbitals labeled 5d} \\ &7 \text{ orbitals labeled 5f} \\ +\ &9 \text{ orbitals labeled 5g} \\ \hline &25 \text{ orbitals total} \end{aligned}$$

Again, each orbital holds two electrons, so 50 electrons can fit in this shell.

c. The number of orbitals in any shell n will equal n^2. There can be up to two electrons in each orbital, so the maximum number of electrons will be $2 \times n^2$.

Exercise 4.4.3

If a shell contains a maximum of 32 electrons, what is the principal quantum number, n?

Answer

$n = 4$

Example 4.4.4: Working with Quantum Numbers

Complete the following table for atomic orbitals:

Orbital	n	l	m_l degeneracy	Radial nodes (#)
4*f*				
	4	1		
	7		7	3
5*d*				

Solution

The table can be completed using the following rules:

- The orbital designation is nl, where $l = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \ldots$ is mapped to the letter sequence s, p, d, f, g, h, …,
- The m_l degeneracy is the number of orbitals within an l subshell, and so is $2l + 1$ (there is one s orbital, three p orbitals, five d orbitals, seven f orbitals, and so forth).
- The number of radial nodes is equal to $n - l - 1$.

Orbital	n	l	m_l degeneracy	Radial nodes (#)
4*f*	4	3	7	0
4*p*	4	1	3	2
7*f*	7	3	7	3
5*d*	5	2	5	2

Exercise 4.4.1

How many orbitals have $l = 2$ and $n = 3$?

Answer

The five degenerate 3*d* orbitals

This page titled 4.4: Development of Quantum Theory is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.3: Development of Quantum Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Derive the predicted ground-state electron configurations of atoms
- Identify and explain exceptions to predicted electron configurations for atoms and ions
- Relate electron configurations to element classifications in the periodic table

Having introduced the basics of atomic structure and quantum mechanics, we can use our understanding of quantum numbers to determine how atomic orbitals relate to one another. This allows us to determine which orbitals are occupied by electrons in each atom. The specific arrangement of electrons in orbitals of an atom determines many of the chemical properties of that atom.

Orbital Energies and Atomic Structure

The energy of atomic orbitals increases as the principal quantum number, n, increases. In any atom with two or more electrons, the repulsion between the electrons makes energies of subshells with different values of l differ so that the energy of the orbitals increases within a shell in the order $s < p < d < f$. Figure 4.5.1: depicts how these two trends in increasing energy relate. The 1s orbital at the bottom of the diagram is the orbital with electrons of lowest energy. The energy increases as we move up to the 2s and then 2p, 3s, and 3p orbitals, showing that the increasing n value has more influence on energy than the increasing l value for small atoms. However, this pattern does not hold for larger atoms. The 3d orbital is higher in energy than the 4s orbital. Such overlaps continue to occur frequently as we move up the chart.

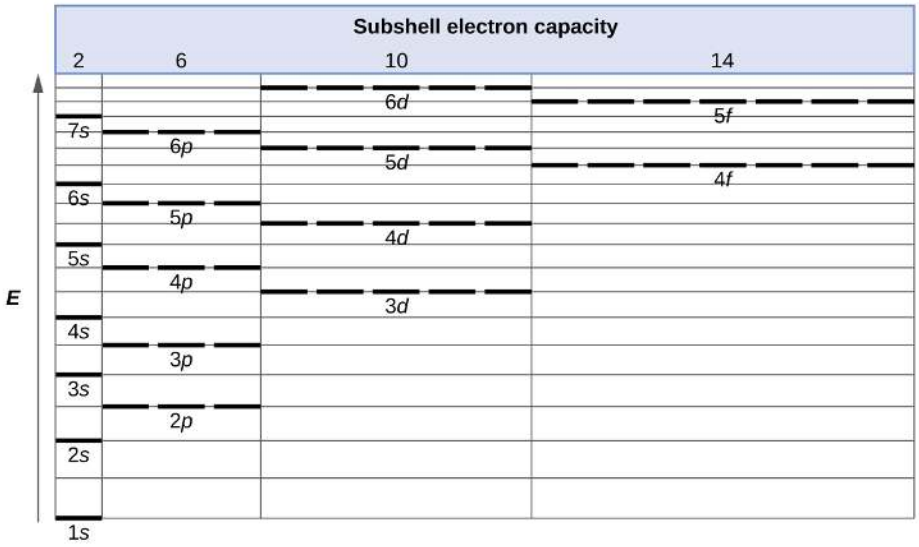


Figure 4.5.1: Generalized energy-level diagram for atomic orbitals in an atom with two or more electrons (not to scale).

Electrons in successive atoms on the periodic table tend to fill low-energy orbitals first. Thus, many students find it confusing that, for example, the 5p orbitals fill immediately after the 4d, and immediately before the 6s. The filling order is based on observed experimental results, and has been confirmed by theoretical calculations. As the principal quantum number, n, increases, the size of the orbital increases and the electrons spend more time farther from the nucleus. Thus, the attraction to the nucleus is weaker and the energy associated with the orbital is higher (less stabilized). But this is not the only effect we have to take into account. Within each shell, as the value of l increases, the electrons are less penetrating (meaning there is less electron density found close to the nucleus), in the order $s > p > d > f$. Electrons that are closer to the nucleus slightly repel electrons that are farther out, offsetting the more dominant electron–nucleus attractions slightly (recall that all electrons have −1 charges, but nuclei have +Z charges). This phenomenon is called shielding and will be discussed in more detail in the next section. Electrons in orbitals that experience more shielding are less stabilized and thus higher in energy. For small orbitals (1s through 3p), the increase in energy due to n is more significant than the increase due to l; however, for larger orbitals the two trends are comparable and cannot be simply predicted. We will discuss methods for remembering the observed order.

The arrangement of electrons in the orbitals of an atom is called the **electron configuration** of the atom. We describe an electron configuration with a symbol that contains three pieces of information (Figure 4.5.2):

1. The number of the principal quantum shell, n,
2. The letter that designates the orbital type (the subshell, l), and
3. A superscript number that designates the number of electrons in that particular subshell.

For example, the notation $2p^4$ (read "two–p–four") indicates four electrons in a *p* subshell ($l = 1$) with a principal quantum number (n) of 2. The notation $3d^8$ (read "three–d–eight") indicates eight electrons in the *d* subshell (i.e., $l = 2$) of the principal shell for which $n = 3$.

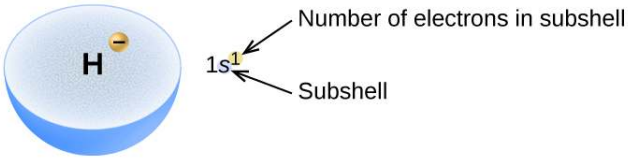


Figure 4.5.2: The diagram of an electron configuration specifies the subshell (*n* and *l* value, with letter symbol) and superscript number of electrons.

The Aufbau Principle

To determine the electron configuration for any particular atom, we can “build” the structures in the order of atomic numbers. Beginning with hydrogen, and continuing across the periods of the periodic table, we add one proton at a time to the nucleus and one electron to the proper subshell until we have described the electron configurations of all the elements. This procedure is called the **Aufbau principle**, from the German word *Aufbau* (“to build up”). Each added electron occupies the subshell of lowest energy available (in the order shown in Figure 4.5.1), subject to the limitations imposed by the allowed quantum numbers according to the Pauli exclusion principle. Electrons enter higher-energy subshells only after lower-energy subshells have been filled to capacity. Figure 4.5.3 illustrates the traditional way to remember the filling order for atomic orbitals.

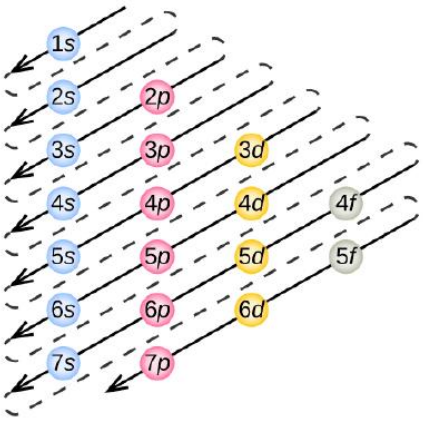


Figure 4.5.3: This diagram depicts the energy order for atomic orbitals and is useful for deriving ground-state electron configurations.

Since the arrangement of the periodic table is based on the electron configurations, Figure 4.5.4 provides an alternative method for determining the electron configuration. The filling order simply begins at hydrogen and includes each subshell as you proceed in increasing *Z* order. For example, after filling the 3*p* block up to Ar, we see the orbital will be 4s (K, Ca), followed by the 3*d* orbitals.

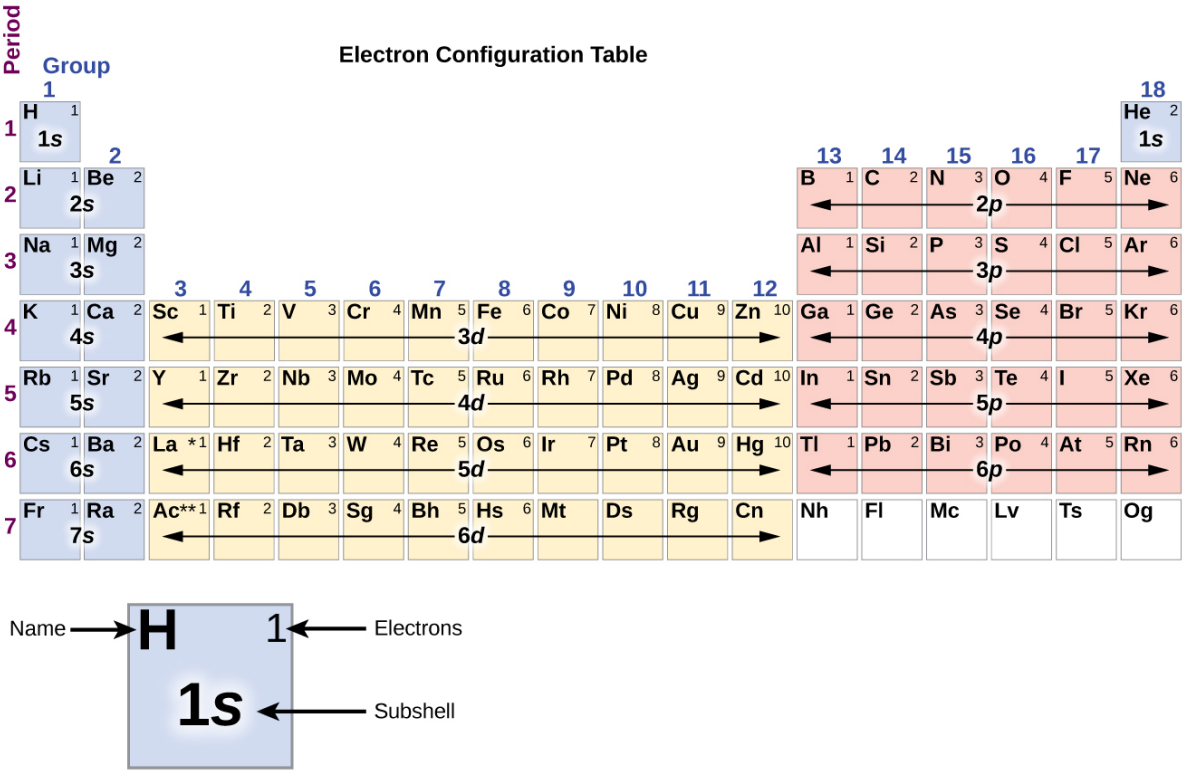
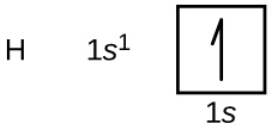
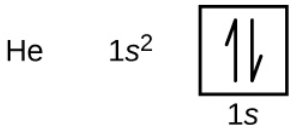


Figure 4.5.4: This partial periodic table shows electron configurations for the valence subshells of atoms. By "building up" from hydrogen, this table can be used to determine the electron configuration for atoms of most elements in the periodic table. (Electron configurations of the lanthanides and actinides are not accurately predicted by this simple approach. See Figure 4.5.6:

We will now construct the ground-state electron configuration and orbital diagram for a selection of atoms in the first and second periods of the periodic table. **Orbital diagrams** are pictorial representations of the electron configuration, showing the individual orbitals and the pairing arrangement of electrons. We start with a single hydrogen atom (atomic number 1), which consists of one proton and one electron. Referring to Figure 4.5.3 or Figure 4.5.4, we would expect to find the electron in the 1*s* orbital. By convention, the $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$ value is usually filled first. The electron configuration and the orbital diagram are:



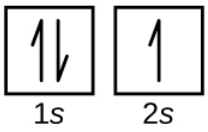
Following hydrogen is the noble gas helium, which has an atomic number of 2. The helium atom contains two protons and two electrons. The first electron has the same four quantum numbers as the hydrogen atom electron (\(n = 1\), \(l = 0\), \(m_l = 0\), $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$. The second electron also goes into the 1*s* orbital and fills that orbital. The second electron has the same n, l, and ml quantum numbers, but must have the opposite spin quantum number, $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$. This is in accord with the Pauli exclusion principle: No two electrons in the same atom can have the same set of four quantum numbers. For orbital diagrams, this means two arrows go in each box (representing two electrons in each orbital) and the arrows must point in opposite directions (representing paired spins). The electron configuration and orbital diagram of helium are:



The $n = 1$ shell is completely filled in a helium atom.

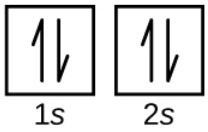
The next atom is the alkali metal lithium with an atomic number of 3. The first two electrons in lithium fill the 1*s* orbital and have the same sets of four quantum numbers as the two electrons in helium. The remaining electron must occupy the orbital of next lowest energy, the 2*s* orbital (Figure 4.5.3 or Figure 4.5.4). Thus, the electron configuration and orbital diagram of lithium are:

Li $1s^2 2s^1$



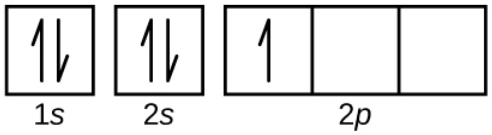
An atom of the alkaline earth metal beryllium, with an atomic number of 4, contains four protons in the nucleus and four electrons surrounding the nucleus. The fourth electron fills the remaining space in the 2*s* orbital.

Be $1s^2 2s^2$



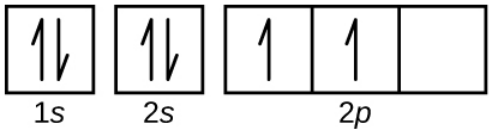
An atom of boron (atomic number 5) contains five electrons. The $n = 1$ shell is filled with two electrons and three electrons will occupy the $n = 2$ shell. Because any *s* subshell can contain only two electrons, the fifth electron must occupy the next energy level, which will be a 2*p* orbital. There are three degenerate 2*p* orbitals ($m_l = -1, 0, +1$) and the electron can occupy any one of these *p* orbitals. When drawing orbital diagrams, we include empty boxes to depict any empty orbitals in the same subshell that we are filling.

B $1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$

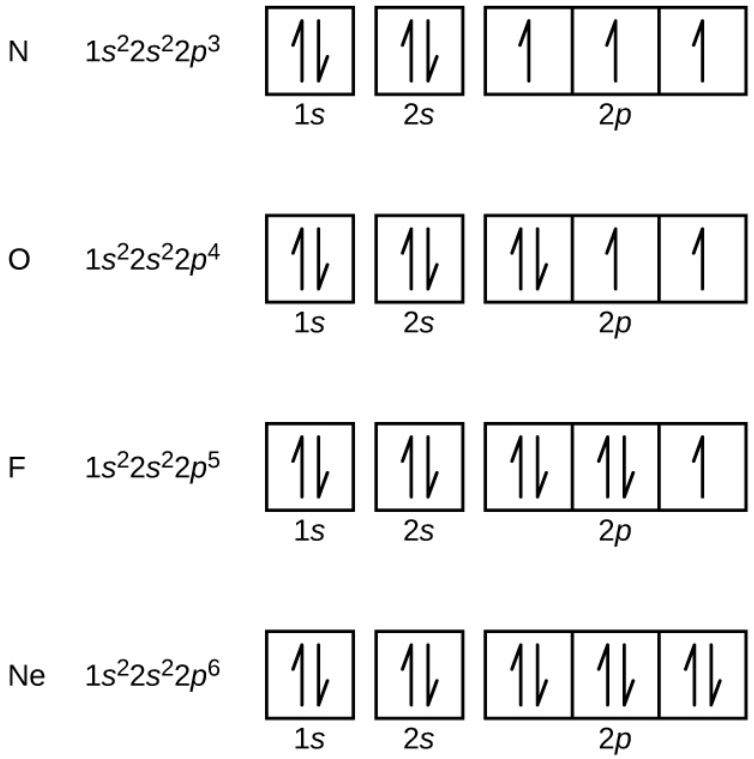


Carbon (atomic number 6) has six electrons. Four of them fill the 1*s* and 2*s* orbitals. The remaining two electrons occupy the 2*p* subshell. We now have a choice of filling one of the 2*p* orbitals and pairing the electrons or of leaving the electrons unpaired in two different, but degenerate, *p* orbitals. The orbitals are filled as described by **Hund's rule**: the lowest-energy configuration for an atom with electrons within a set of degenerate orbitals is that having the maximum number of unpaired electrons. Thus, the two electrons in the carbon 2*p* orbitals have identical n, l, and m_s quantum numbers and differ in their m_l quantum number (in accord with the Pauli exclusion principle). The electron configuration and orbital diagram for carbon are:

C $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$



Nitrogen (atomic number 7) fills the 1*s* and 2*s* subshells and has one electron in each of the three 2*p* orbitals, in accordance with Hund's rule. These three electrons have unpaired spins. Oxygen (atomic number 8) has a pair of electrons in any one of the 2*p* orbitals (the electrons have opposite spins) and a single electron in each of the other two. Fluorine (atomic number 9) has only one 2*p* orbital containing an unpaired electron. All of the electrons in the noble gas neon (atomic number 10) are paired, and all of the orbitals in the $n = 1$ and the $n = 2$ shells are filled. The electron configurations and orbital diagrams of these four elements are:



The alkali metal sodium (atomic number 11) has one more electron than the neon atom. This electron must go into the lowest-energy subshell available, the 3*s* orbital, giving a $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$ configuration. The electrons occupying the outermost shell orbital(s) (highest value of *n*) are called **valence electrons**, and those occupying the inner shell orbitals are called **core electrons** (Figure 4.5.5). Since the core electron shells correspond to noble gas electron configurations, we can abbreviate electron configurations by writing the noble gas that matches the core electron configuration, along with the valence electrons in a condensed format. For our sodium example, the symbol [Ne] represents core electrons, ($1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$) and our abbreviated or condensed configuration is $[Ne]3s^1$.

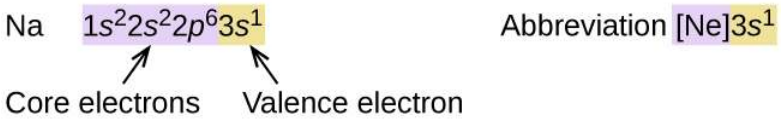


Figure 4.5.5: A core-abbreviated electron configuration (right) replaces the core electrons with the noble gas symbol whose configuration matches the core electron configuration of the other element.

Similarly, the abbreviated configuration of lithium can be represented as $[He]2s^1$, where [He] represents the configuration of the helium atom, which is identical to that of the filled inner shell of lithium. Writing the configurations in this way emphasizes the similarity of the configurations of lithium and sodium. Both atoms, which are in the alkali metal family, have only one electron in a valence *s* subshell outside a filled set of inner shells.

$$Li : [He]2s^1$$

$$Na : [Ne]3s^1$$

The alkaline earth metal magnesium (atomic number 12), with its 12 electrons in a $[Ne]3s^2$ configuration, is analogous to its family member beryllium, $[He]2s^2$. Both atoms have a filled *s* subshell outside their filled inner shells. Aluminum (atomic number 13), with 13 electrons and the electron configuration $[Ne]3s^2 3p^1$, is analogous to its family member boron, $[He]2s^2 2p^1$.

The electron configurations of silicon (14 electrons), phosphorus (15 electrons), sulfur (16 electrons), chlorine (17 electrons), and argon (18 electrons) are analogous in the electron configurations of their outer shells to their corresponding family members carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, fluorine, and neon, respectively, except that the principal quantum number of the outer shell of the heavier elements has increased by one to $n = 3$. Figure 4.5.6: shows the lowest energy, or ground-state, electron configuration for these elements as well as that for atoms of each of the known elements.

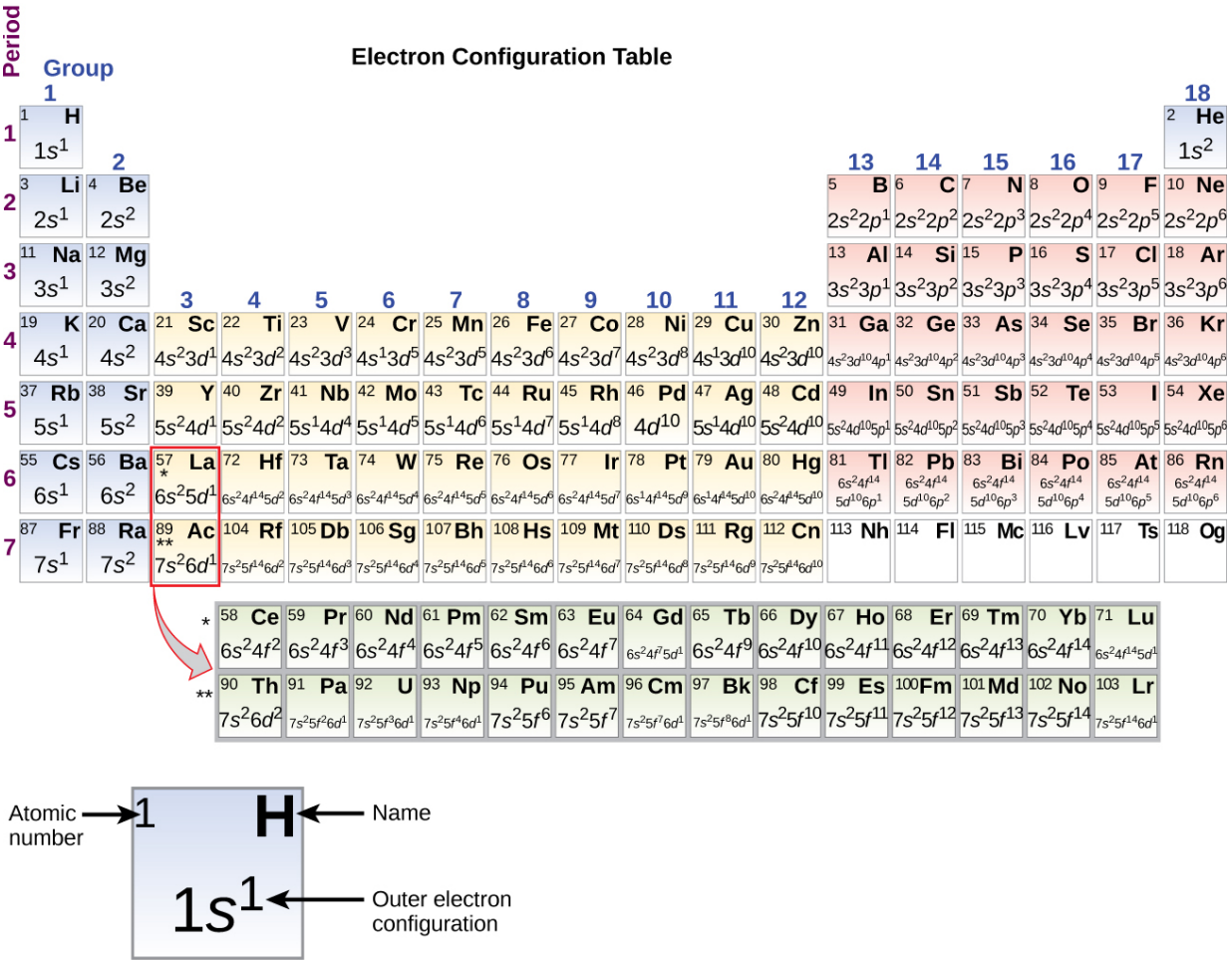


Figure 4.5.6: This version of the periodic table shows the outer-shell electron configuration of each element. Note that down each group, the configuration is often similar.

When we come to the next element in the periodic table, the alkali metal potassium (atomic number 19), we might expect that we would begin to add electrons to the 3*d* subshell. However, all available chemical and physical evidence indicates that potassium is like lithium and sodium, and that the next electron is not added to the 3*d* level but is, instead, added to the 4*s* level (Figure 4.5.6). As discussed previously, the 3*d* orbital with no radial nodes is higher in energy because it is less penetrating and more shielded from the nucleus than the 4*s*, which has three radial nodes. Thus, potassium has an electron configuration of $[Ar]4s^1$. Hence, potassium corresponds to Li and Na in its valence shell configuration. The next electron is added to complete the 4*s* subshell and calcium has an electron configuration of $[Ar]4s^2$. This gives calcium an outer-shell electron configuration corresponding to that of beryllium and magnesium.

Beginning with the transition metal scandium (atomic number 21), additional electrons are added successively to the 3*d* subshell. This subshell is filled to its capacity with 10 electrons (remember that for $l = 2$ [*d* orbitals], there are $2l + 1 = 5$ values of m_l, meaning that there are five *d* orbitals that have a combined capacity of 10 electrons). The 4*p* subshell fills next. Note that for three series of elements, scandium (Sc) through copper (Cu), yttrium (Y) through silver (Ag), and lutetium (Lu) through gold (Au), a total of 10 *d* electrons are successively added to the $(n - 1)$ shell next to the *n* shell to bring that $(n - 1)$ shell from 8 to 18 electrons. For two series, lanthanum (La) through lutetium (Lu) and actinium (Ac) through lawrencium (Lr), 14 *f* electrons ($l = 3$, $2l + 1 = 7$ m_l values; thus, seven orbitals with a combined capacity of 14 electrons) are successively added to the $(n - 2)$ shell to bring that shell from 18 electrons to a total of 32 electrons.

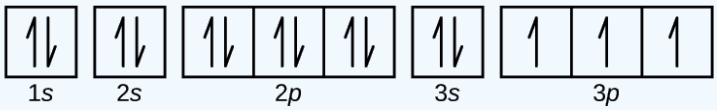
Example 4.5.1: Quantum Numbers and Electron Configurations

What is the electron configuration and orbital diagram for a phosphorus atom? What are the four quantum numbers for the last electron added?

Solution

The atomic number of phosphorus is 15. Thus, a phosphorus atom contains 15 electrons. The order of filling of the energy levels is 1*s*, 2*s*, 2*p*, 3*s*, 3*p*, 4*s*, . . . The 15 electrons of the phosphorus atom will fill up to the 3*p* orbital, which will contain three electrons:

P $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^3$



The last electron added is a 3*p* electron. Therefore, $n = 3$ and, for a *p*-type orbital, $l = 1$. The m_l value could be –1, 0, or +1. The three *p* orbitals are degenerate, so any of these m_l values is correct. For unpaired electrons, convention assigns the value of $+\frac{1}{2}$ for the spin quantum number; thus, $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$

? Exercise 4.5.1

Identify the atoms from the electron configurations given:

a. $[Ar]4s^2 3d^5$
b. $[Kr]5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6$

Answer

a. Mn
b. Xe

The periodic table can be a powerful tool in predicting the electron configuration of an element. However, we do find exceptions to the order of filling of orbitals that are shown in Figure 4.5.3: or Figure 4.5.4. For instance, the electron configurations (shown in Figure 4.5.6) of the transition metals chromium (Cr; atomic number 24) and copper (Cu; atomic number 29), among others, are not those we would expect. In general, such exceptions involve subshells with very similar energy, and small effects can lead to changes in the order of filling.

In the case of Cr and Cu, we find that half-filled and completely filled subshells apparently represent conditions of preferred stability. This stability is such that an electron shifts from the 4*s* into the 3*d* orbital to gain the extra stability of a half-filled 3*d* subshell (in Cr) or a filled 3*d* subshell (in Cu). Other exceptions also occur. For example, niobium (Nb, atomic number 41) is predicted to have the electron configuration $[Kr]5s^2 4d^3$. Experimentally, we observe that its ground-state electron configuration is actually $[Kr]5s^1 4d^4$. We can rationalize this observation by saying that the electron–electron repulsions experienced by pairing the electrons in the 5*s* orbital are larger than the gap in energy between the 5*s* and 4*d* orbitals. There is no simple method to predict the exceptions for atoms where the magnitude of the repulsions between electrons is greater than the small differences in energy between subshells.

Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

As described earlier, the periodic table arranges atoms based on increasing atomic number so that elements with the same chemical properties recur periodically. When their electron configurations are added to the table (Figure 4.5.6), we also see a periodic recurrence of similar electron configurations in the outer shells of these elements. Because they are in the outer shells of an atom, valence electrons play the most important role in chemical reactions. The outer electrons have the highest energy of the electrons in an atom and are more easily lost or shared than the core electrons. Valence electrons are also the determining factor in some physical properties of the elements.

Elements in any one group (or column) have the same number of valence electrons; the alkali metals lithium and sodium each have only one valence electron, the alkaline earth metals beryllium and magnesium each have two, and the halogens fluorine and chlorine each have seven valence electrons. The similarity in chemical properties among elements of the same group occurs because they have the same number of valence electrons. It is the loss, gain, or sharing of valence electrons that defines how elements react.

It is important to remember that the periodic table was developed on the basis of the chemical behavior of the elements, well before any idea of their atomic structure was available. Now we can understand why the periodic table has the arrangement it has—the

arrangement puts elements whose atoms have the same number of valence electrons in the same group. This arrangement is emphasized in Figure 4.5.6: , which shows in periodic-table form the electron configuration of the last subshell to be filled by the Aufbau principle. The colored sections of Figure 4.5.6: show the three categories of elements classified by the orbitals being filled: main group, transition, and inner transition elements. These classifications determine which orbitals are counted in the **valence shell**, or highest energy level orbitals of an atom.

1. **Main group elements** (sometimes called **representative elements**) are those in which the last electron added enters an *s* or a *p* orbital in the outermost shell, shown in blue and red in Figure 4.5.6. This category includes all the nonmetallic elements, as well as many metals and the metalloids. The valence electrons for main group elements are those with the highest *n* level. For example, gallium (Ga, atomic number 31) has the electron configuration [Ar]$\underline{4s}^2 3d^{10} \underline{4p}^1$, which contains three valence electrons (underlined). The completely filled *d* orbitals count as core, not valence, electrons.
2. **Transition elements or transition metals**. These are metallic elements in which the last electron added enters a *d* orbital. The valence electrons (those added after the last noble gas configuration) in these elements include the *ns* and $(n - 1)$ *d* electrons. The official IUPAC definition of transition elements specifies those with partially filled *d* orbitals. Thus, the elements with completely filled orbitals (Zn, Cd, Hg, as well as Cu, Ag, and Au in Figure 4.5.6) are not technically transition elements. However, the term is frequently used to refer to the entire *d* block (colored yellow in Figure 4.5.6), and we will adopt this usage in this textbook.
3. **Inner transition elements** are metallic elements in which the last electron added occupies an *f* orbital. They are shown in green in Figure 4.5.6. The valence shells of the inner transition elements consist of the $(n - 2)f$, the $(n - 1)d$, and the *ns* subshells. There are two inner transition series:
    a. The lanthanide series: lanthanum (La) through lutetium (Lu)
    b. The actinide series: actinium (Ac) through lawrencium (Lr)

Lanthanum and actinium, because of their similarities to the other members of the series, are included and used to name the series, even though they are transition metals with no *f* electrons.

Electron Configurations of Ions

Ions are formed when atoms gain or lose electrons. A cation (positively charged ion) forms when one or more electrons are removed from a parent atom. For main group elements, the electrons that were added last are the first electrons removed. For transition metals and inner transition metals, however, electrons in the *s* orbital are easier to remove than the *d* or *f* electrons, and so the highest *ns* electrons are lost, and then the $(n - 1)d$ or $(n - 2)f$ electrons are removed. An anion (negatively charged ion) forms when one or more electrons are added to a parent atom. The added electrons fill in the order predicted by the Aufbau principle.

✔ Example 4.5.2: Predicting Electron Configurations of Ions

What is the electron configuration of:

a. Na^+
b. P^{3-}
c. Al^{2+}
d. Fe^{2+}
e. Sm^{3+}

Solution

First, write out the electron configuration for each parent atom. We have chosen to show the full, unabbreviated configurations to provide more practice for students who want it, but listing the core-abbreviated electron configurations is also acceptable.

Next, determine whether an electron is gained or lost. Remember electrons are negatively charged, so ions with a positive charge have *lost* an electron. For main group elements, the last orbital gains or loses the electron. For transition metals, the last *s* orbital loses an electron before the *d* orbitals.

a. Na: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$. Sodium cation loses one electron, so Na^+: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1 = Na^+$: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$.
b. P: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^3$. Phosphorus trianion gains three electrons, so P^{3-}: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$.
c. Al: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^1$. Aluminum dication loses two electrons Al^{2+}: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^1 = Al^{2+}$: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$.
d. Fe: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^6$. Iron(II) loses two electrons and, since it is a transition metal, they are removed from the 4*s* orbital Fe^{2+}: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^6 = 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 3d^6$.

e. Sm: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 6s^2 4f^6$. Samarium trication loses three electrons. The first two will be lost from the 6*s* orbital, and the final one is removed from the 4*f* orbital. Sm^{3+}: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 6s^2 4f^6$ = $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^6 4f^5$.

? Exercise 4.5.21

Which ion with a +2 charge has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 4d^5$? Which ion with a +3 charge has this configuration?

Answer

Tc^{2+}, Ru^{3+}

This page titled 4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations) is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.4: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe and explain the observed trends in atomic size, ionization energy, and electron affinity of the elements

The elements in groups (vertical columns) of the periodic table exhibit similar chemical behavior. This similarity occurs because the members of a group have the same number and distribution of electrons in their valence shells. However, there are also other patterns in chemical properties on the periodic table. For example, as we move down a group, the metallic character of the atoms increases. Oxygen, at the top of group 16 (6A), is a colorless gas; in the middle of the group, selenium is a semiconducting solid; and, toward the bottom, polonium is a silver-grey solid that conducts electricity.

As we go across a period from left to right, we add a proton to the nucleus and an electron to the valence shell with each successive element. As we go down the elements in a group, the number of electrons in the valence shell remains constant, but the principal quantum number increases by one each time. An understanding of the electronic structure of the elements allows us to examine some of the properties that govern their chemical behavior. These properties vary periodically as the electronic structure of the elements changes. They are (1) size (radius) of atoms and ions, (2) ionization energies, and (3) electron affinities.

Link to Learning

Explore visualizations of the periodic trends discussed in this section (and many more trends). With just a few clicks, you can create three-dimensional versions of the periodic table showing atomic size or graphs of ionization energies from all measured elements.

Variation in Covalent Radius

The quantum mechanical picture makes it difficult to establish a definite size of an atom. However, there are several practical ways to define the radius of atoms and, thus, to determine their relative sizes that give roughly similar values. We will use the covalent radius (Figure 4.6.1), which is defined as one-half the distance between the nuclei of two identical atoms when they are joined by a covalent bond (this measurement is possible because atoms within molecules still retain much of their atomic identity). We know that as we scan down a group, the principal quantum number, *n*, increases by one for each element. Thus, the electrons are being added to a region of space that is increasingly distant from the nucleus. Consequently, the size of the atom (and its covalent radius) must increase as we increase the distance of the outermost electrons from the nucleus. This trend is illustrated for the covalent radii of the halogens in Table 4.6.1 and Figure 4.6.1. The trends for the entire periodic table can be seen in Figure 4.6.2.

Table 4.6.1: Covalent Radii of the Halogen Group Elements

Atom	Covalent radius (pm)	Nuclear charge
F	64	+9
Cl	99	+17
Br	114	+35
I	133	+53
At	148	+85

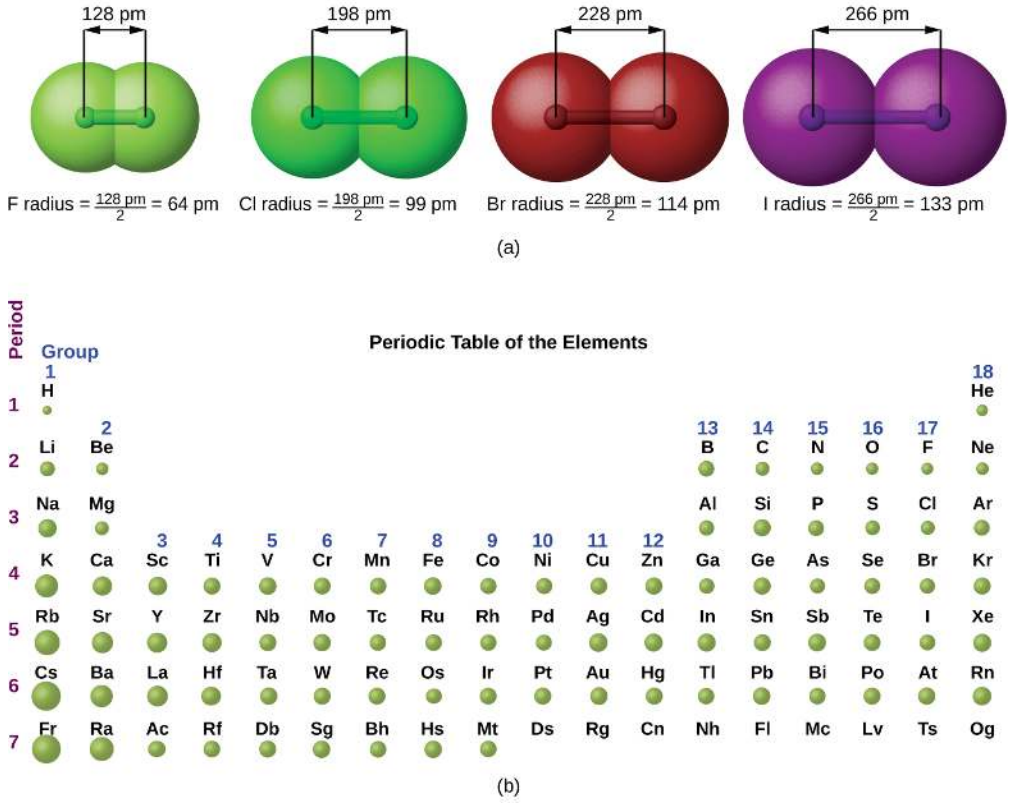


Figure 4.6.1: (a) The radius of an atom is defined as one-half the distance between the nuclei in a molecule consisting of two identical atoms joined by a covalent bond. The atomic radius for the halogens increases down the group as *n* increases. (b) Covalent radii of the elements are shown to scale. The general trend is that radii increase down a group and decrease across a period.

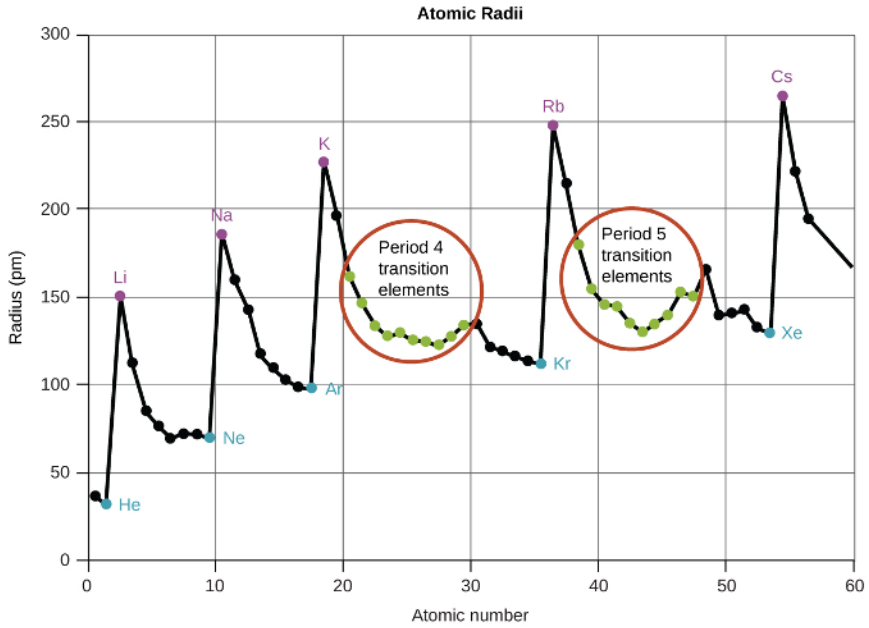


Figure 4.6.2: Within each period, the trend in atomic radius decreases as *Z* increases; for example, from K to Kr. Within each group (e.g., the alkali metals shown in purple), the trend is that atomic radius increases as *Z* increases.

As shown in Figure 4.6.2, as we move across a period from left to right, we generally find that each element has a smaller covalent radius than the element preceding it. This might seem counterintuitive because it implies that atoms with more electrons have a smaller atomic radius. This can be explained with the concept of **effective nuclear charge**, Z_{eff}. This is the pull exerted on a

specific electron by the nucleus, taking into account any electron–electron repulsions. For hydrogen, there is only one electron and so the nuclear charge (Z) and the effective nuclear charge (Z_{eff}) are equal. For all other atoms, the inner electrons partially *shield* the outer electrons from the pull of the nucleus, and thus:

$$Z_{\text{eff}} = Z - \text{ shielding}$$

Shielding is determined by the probability of another electron being between the electron of interest and the nucleus, as well as by the electron–electron repulsions the electron of interest encounters. Core electrons are adept at shielding, while electrons in the same valence shell do not block the nuclear attraction experienced by each other as efficiently. Thus, each time we move from one element to the next across a period, Z increases by one, but the shielding increases only slightly. Thus, Z_{eff} increases as we move from left to right across a period. The stronger pull (higher effective nuclear charge) experienced by electrons on the right side of the periodic table draws them closer to the nucleus, making the covalent radii smaller.

Thus, as we would expect, the outermost or valence electrons are easiest to remove because they have the highest energies, are shielded more, and are farthest from the nucleus. As a general rule, when the representative elements form cations, they do so by the loss of the *ns* or *np* electrons that were added last in the Aufbau process. The transition elements, on the other hand, lose the *ns* electrons before they begin to lose the $(n - 1)d$ electrons, even though the *ns* electrons are added first, according to the Aufbau principle.

Example 4.6.1: Sorting Atomic Radii

Predict the order of increasing covalent radius for Ge, Fl, Br, Kr.

Solution

Radius increases as we move down a group, so Ge < Fl (Note: Fl is the symbol for flerovium, element 114, NOT fluorine). Radius decreases as we move across a period, so Kr < Br < Ge. Putting the trends together, we obtain Kr < Br < Ge < Fl.

Exercise 4.6.1

Give an example of an atom whose size is smaller than fluorine.

Answer

Ne or He

Variation in Ionic Radii

Ionic radius is the measure used to describe the size of an ion. A cation always has fewer electrons and the same number of protons as the parent atom; it is smaller than the atom from which it is derived (Figure 4.6.3). For example, the covalent radius of an aluminum atom ($1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^1$) is 118 pm, whereas the ionic radius of an Al^{3+} ($1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$) is 68 pm. As electrons are removed from the outer valence shell, the remaining core electrons occupying smaller shells experience a greater effective nuclear charge Z_{eff} (as discussed) and are drawn even closer to the nucleus.



Figure 4.6.3: The radius for a cation is smaller than the parent atom (Al), due to the lost electrons; the radius for an anion is larger than the parent (S), due to the gained electrons.

Cations with larger charges are smaller than cations with smaller charges (e.g., V^{2+} has an ionic radius of 79 pm, while that of V^{3+} is 64 pm). Proceeding down the groups of the periodic table, we find that cations of successive elements with the same charge generally have larger radii, corresponding to an increase in the principal quantum number, n.

An anion (negative ion) is formed by the addition of one or more electrons to the valence shell of an atom. This results in a greater repulsion among the electrons and a decrease in Z_{eff} per electron. Both effects (the increased number of electrons and the decreased Z_{eff}) cause the radius of an anion to be larger than that of the parent atom (Figure 4.6.3). For example, a sulfur atom ($[Ne]3s^2 3p^4$) has a covalent radius of 104 pm, whereas the ionic radius of the sulfide anion ($[Ne]3s^2 3p^6$) is 170 pm. For consecutive elements proceeding down any group, anions have larger principal quantum numbers and, thus, larger radii.

Atoms and ions that have the same electron configuration are said to be **isoelectronic**. Examples of isoelectronic species are N^{3-}, O^{2-}, F^{-}, Ne, Na^{+}, Mg^{2+}, and Al^{3+} ($1s^22s^22p^6$). Another isoelectronic series is P^{3-}, S^{2-}, Cl^{-}, Ar, K^{+}, Ca^{2+}, and Sc^{3+} ([Ne]$3s^23p^6$). For atoms or ions that are isoelectronic, the number of protons determines the size. The greater the nuclear charge, the smaller the radius in a series of isoelectronic ions and atoms.

Variation in Ionization Energies

The amount of energy required to remove the most loosely bound electron from a gaseous atom in its ground state is called its first **ionization energy** (IE_1). The first ionization energy for an element, X, is the energy required to form a cation with +1 charge:

$$\mathrm{X(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{X^+(g) + e^-} \qquad IE_1$$

The energy required to remove the second most loosely bound electron is called the second ionization energy (IE_2).

$$\mathrm{X^+(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{X^{2+}(g) + e^-} \qquad IE_2$$

The energy required to remove the third electron is the third ionization energy, and so on. Energy is always required to remove electrons from atoms or ions, so ionization processes are endothermic and IE values are always positive. For larger atoms, the most loosely bound electron is located farther from the nucleus and so is easier to remove. Thus, as size (atomic radius) increases, the ionization energy should decrease. Relating this logic to what we have just learned about radii, we would expect first ionization energies to decrease down a group and to increase across a period.

Figure 4.6.4 graphs the relationship between the first ionization energy and the atomic number of several elements. The values of first ionization energy for the elements are given in Figure 4.6.5. Within a period, the IE_1 generally increases with increasing *Z*. Down a group, the IE_1 value generally decreases with increasing *Z*. There are some systematic deviations from this trend, however. Note that the ionization energy of boron (atomic number 5) is less than that of beryllium (atomic number 4) even though the nuclear charge of boron is greater by one proton. This can be explained because the energy of the subshells increases as *l* increases, due to penetration and shielding (as discussed previously in this chapter). Within any one shell, the *s* electrons are lower in energy than the *p* electrons. This means that an *s* electron is harder to remove from an atom than a *p* electron in the same shell. The electron removed during the ionization of beryllium ([He]$2s^2$) is an *s* electron, whereas the electron removed during the ionization of boron ([He]$2s^22p^1$) is a *p* electron; this results in a lower first ionization energy for boron, even though its nuclear charge is greater by one proton. Thus, we see a small deviation from the predicted trend occurring each time a new subshell begins.

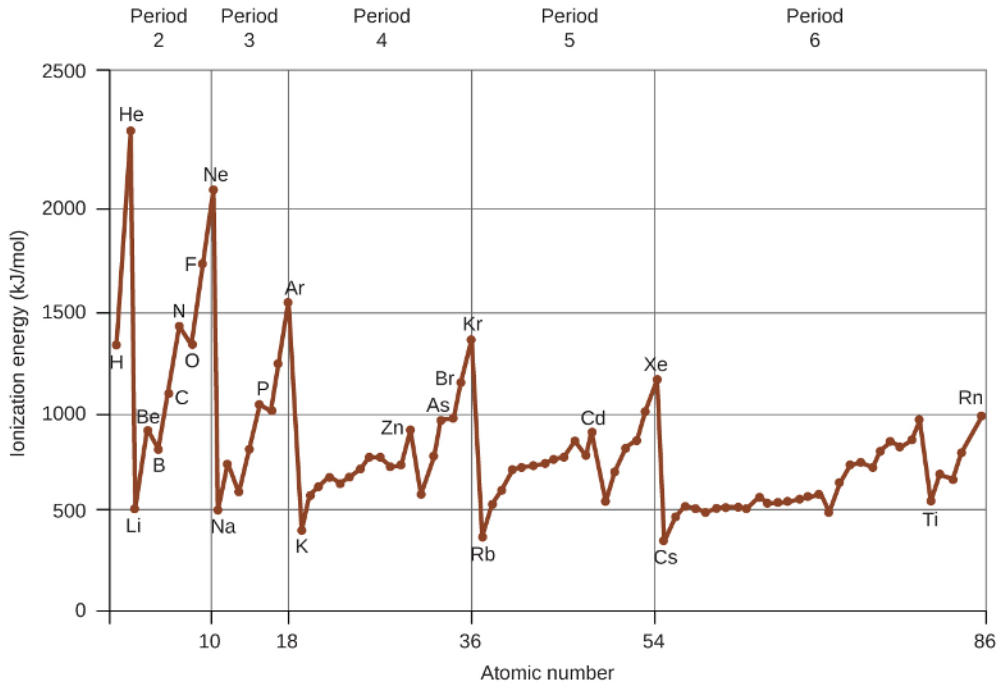


Figure 4.6.4: The first ionization energy of the elements in the first five periods are plotted against their atomic number.

https://chem.libretexts.org/@go/page/471444

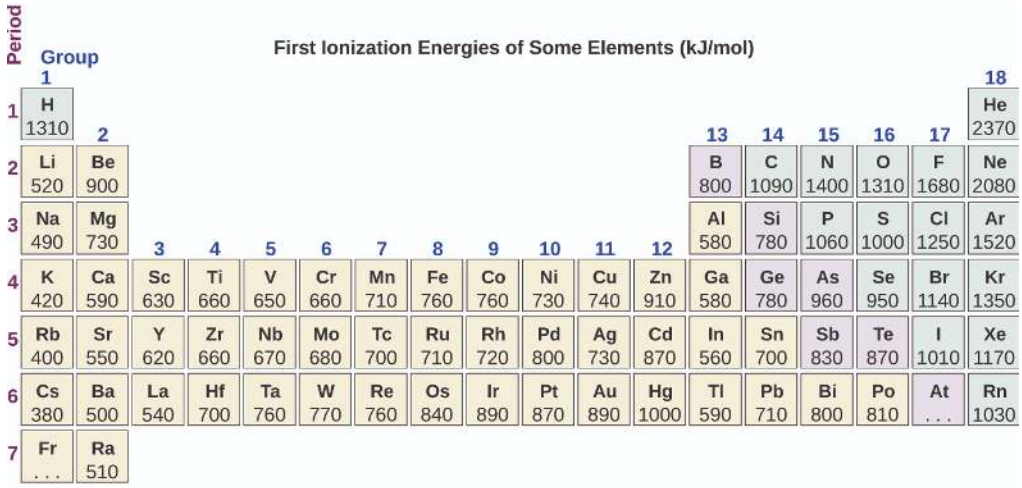
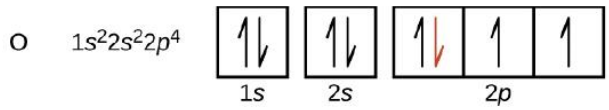


Figure 4.6.5: This version of the periodic table shows the first ionization energy (IE_1), in kJ/mol, of selected elements.

Another deviation occurs as orbitals become more than one-half filled. The first ionization energy for oxygen is slightly less than that for nitrogen, despite the trend in increasing IE_1 values across a period. Looking at the orbital diagram of oxygen, we can see that removing one electron will eliminate the electron–electron repulsion caused by pairing the electrons in the 2*p* orbital and will result in a half-filled orbital (which is energetically favorable). Analogous changes occur in succeeding periods (note the dip for sulfur after phosphorus in Figure 4.6.5).



Removing an electron from a cation is more difficult than removing an electron from a neutral atom because of the greater electrostatic attraction to the cation. Likewise, removing an electron from a cation with a higher positive charge is more difficult than removing an electron from an ion with a lower charge. Thus, successive ionization energies for one element always increase. As seen in Table 4.6.2, there is a large increase in the ionization energies for each element. This jump corresponds to removal of the core electrons, which are harder to remove than the valence electrons. For example, Sc and Ga both have three valence electrons, so the rapid increase in ionization energy occurs after the third ionization.

Table 4.6.2: Successive Ionization Energies for Selected Elements (kJ/mol)

Element	IE_1	IE_2	IE_3	IE_4	IE_5	IE_6	IE_7
K	418.8	3051.8	4419.6	5876.9	7975.5	9590.6	11343
Ca	589.8	1145.4	4912.4	6490.6	8153.0	10495.7	12272.9
Sc	633.1	1235.0	2388.7	7090.6	8842.9	10679.0	13315.0
Ga	578.8	1979.4	2964.6	6180	8298.7	10873.9	13594.8
Ge	762.2	1537.5	3302.1	4410.6	9021.4	Not available	Not available
As	944.5	1793.6	2735.5	4836.8	6042.9	12311.5	Not available

Example 4.6.2: Ranking Ionization Energies

Predict the order of increasing energy for the following processes: IE_1 for Al, IE_1 for Tl, IE_2 for Na, IE_3 for Al.

Solution

Removing the $6p^1$ electron from Tl is easier than removing the $3p^1$ electron from Al because the higher *n* orbital is farther from the nucleus, so $IE_1(Tl) < IE_1(Al)$. Ionizing the third electron from Al ($Al^{2+} \longrightarrow Al^{3+} + e^-$) requires more energy because the cation Al^{2+} exerts a stronger pull on the electron than the neutral Al atom, so $IE_1(Al) < IE_3(Al)$. The second ionization

energy for sodium removes a core electron, which is a much higher energy process than removing valence electrons. Putting this all together, we obtain: $IE_1(Tl) < IE_1(Al) < IE_3(Al) < IE_2(Na)$.

? Exercise 4.6.2

Which has the lowest value for IE_1: O, Po, Pb, or Ba?

Answer

Ba

Variation in Electron Affinities

The **electron affinity** (EA) is the energy change for the process of adding an electron to a gaseous atom to form an anion (negative ion).

$$X(g) + e^- \longrightarrow X^-(g) \quad EA_1$$

This process can be either endothermic or exothermic, depending on the element. The EA of some of the elements is given in Figure 4.6.6. You can see that many of these elements have negative values of EA, which means that energy is released when the gaseous atom accepts an electron. However, for some elements, energy is required for the atom to become negatively charged and the value of their EA is positive. Just as with ionization energy, subsequent EA values are associated with forming ions with more charge. The second EA is the energy associated with adding an electron to an anion to form a –2 ion, and so on.

As we might predict, it becomes easier to add an electron across a series of atoms as the effective nuclear charge of the atoms increases. We find, as we go from left to right across a period, EAs tend to become more negative. The exceptions found among the elements of group 2 (2A), group 15 (5A), and group 18 (8A) can be understood based on the electronic structure of these groups. The noble gases, group 18 (8A), have a completely filled shell and the incoming electron must be added to a higher *n* level, which is more difficult to do. Group 2 (2A) has a filled *ns* subshell, and so the next electron added goes into the higher energy *np*, so, again, the observed EA value is not as the trend would predict. Finally, group 15 (5A) has a half-filled *np* subshell and the next electron must be paired with an existing *np* electron. In all of these cases, the initial relative stability of the electron configuration disrupts the trend in EA.

We also might expect the atom at the top of each group to have the most negative EA; their first ionization potentials suggest that these atoms have the largest effective nuclear charges. However, as we move down a group, we see that the *second* element in the group most often has the most negative EA. This can be attributed to the small size of the $n = 2$ shell and the resulting large electron–electron repulsions. For example, chlorine, with an EA value of –348 kJ/mol, has the highest value of any element in the periodic table. The EA of fluorine is –322 kJ/mol. When we add an electron to a fluorine atom to form a fluoride anion (F^-), we add an electron to the $n = 2$ shell. The electron is attracted to the nucleus, but there is also significant repulsion from the other electrons already present in this small valence shell. The chlorine atom has the same electron configuration in the valence shell, but because the entering electron is going into the $n = 3$ shell, it occupies a considerably larger region of space and the electron–electron repulsions are reduced. The entering electron does not experience as much repulsion and the chlorine atom accepts an additional electron more readily, resulting in a more negative EA.

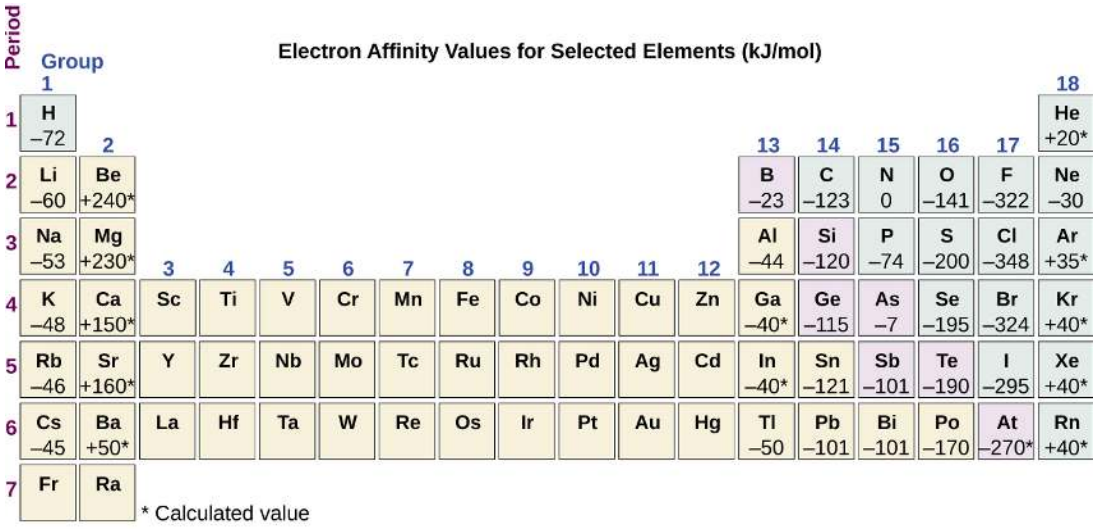


Figure 4.6.6: This version of the periodic table displays the electron affinity values (in kJ/mol) for selected elements.

The properties discussed in this section (size of atoms and ions, effective nuclear charge, ionization energies, and electron affinities) are central to understanding chemical reactivity. For example, because fluorine has an energetically favorable EA and a large energy barrier to ionization (IE), it is much easier to form fluorine anions than cations. Metallic properties including conductivity and malleability (the ability to be formed into sheets) depend on having electrons that can be removed easily. Thus, metallic character increases as we move down a group and decreases across a period in the same trend observed for atomic size because it is easier to remove an electron that is farther away from the nucleus.

This page titled 4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.5: Periodic Variations in Element Properties** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

4.7: Key Terms

amplitude | extent of the displacement caused by a wave

atomic orbital | mathematical function that describes the behavior of an electron in an atom (also called the wavefunction)

Aufbau principle | procedure in which the electron configuration of the elements is determined by "building" them in order of atomic numbers, adding one proton to the nucleus and one electron to the proper subshell at a time

blackbody | idealized perfect absorber of all incident electromagnetic radiation; such bodies emit electromagnetic radiation in characteristic continuous spectra called blackbody radiation

Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom | structural model in which an electron moves around the nucleus only in circular orbits, each with a specific allowed radius

continuous spectrum | electromagnetic radiation given off in an unbroken series of wavelengths (e.g., white light from the sun)

core electron | electron in an atom that occupies the orbitals of the inner shells

covalent radius | one-half the distance between the nuclei of two identical atoms when they are joined by a covalent bond

***d* orbital** | region of space with high electron density that is either four lobed or contains a dumbbell and torus shape; describes orbitals with $l = 2$.

degenerate orbitals | orbitals that have the same energy

effective nuclear charge | charge that leads to the Coulomb force exerted by the nucleus on an electron, calculated as the nuclear charge minus shielding

electromagnetic radiation | energy transmitted by waves that have an electric-field component and a magnetic-field component

electromagnetic spectrum | range of energies that electromagnetic radiation can comprise, including radio, microwaves, infrared, visible, ultraviolet, X-rays, and gamma rays

electron affinity | energy change associated with addition of an electron to a gaseous atom or ion

electron configuration | listing that identifies the electron occupancy of an atom's shells and subshells

electron density | a measure of the probability of locating an electron in a particular region of space, it is equal to the squared absolute value of the wave function ψ

excited state | state having an energy greater than the ground-state energy

***f* orbital** | multilobed region of space with high electron density, describes orbitals with $l = 3$

frequency (ν) | number of wave cycles (peaks or troughs) that pass a specified point in space per unit time

ground state | state in which the electrons in an atom, ion, or molecule have the lowest energy possible

Heisenberg uncertainty principle | rule stating that it is impossible to exactly determine both certain conjugate dynamical properties such as the momentum and the position of a particle at the same time. The uncertainty principle is a consequence of quantum particles exhibiting wave–particle duality

hertz (Hz) | the unit of frequency, which is the number of cycles per second, s^{-1}

Hund's rule | every orbital in a subshell is singly occupied with one electron before any one orbital is doubly occupied, and all electrons in singly occupied orbitals have the same spin

intensity | property of wave-propagated energy related to the amplitude of the wave, such as brightness of light or loudness of sound

interference pattern | pattern typically consisting of alternating bright and dark fringes; it results from constructive and destructive interference of waves

ionization energy | energy required to remove an electron from a gaseous atom or ion

isoelectronic | group of ions or atoms that have identical electron configurations

line spectrum | electromagnetic radiation emitted at discrete wavelengths by a specific atom (or atoms) in an excited state

magnetic quantum number (m_l) | quantum number signifying the orientation of an atomic orbital around the nucleus

node | any point of a standing wave with zero amplitude

orbital diagram | pictorial representation of the electron configuration showing each orbital as a box and each electron as an arrow

***p* orbital** | dumbbell-shaped region of space with high electron density, describes orbitals with $l = 1$

Pauli exclusion principle | specifies that no two electrons in an atom can have the same value for all four quantum numbers

photon | smallest possible packet of electromagnetic radiation, a particle of light

principal quantum number (n) | quantum number specifying the shell an electron occupies in an atom

quantization | limitation of some property to specific discrete values, not continuous

quantum mechanics | field of study that includes quantization of energy, wave-particle duality, and the Heisenberg uncertainty principle to describe matter

quantum number | number having only specific allowed values and used to characterize the arrangement of electrons in an atom

***s* orbital** | spherical region of space with high electron density, describes orbitals with $l = 0$

secondary (angular momentum) quantum number (l) | quantum number distinguishing the different shapes of orbitals; it is also a measure of the orbital angular momentum

shell | atomic orbitals with the same principal quantum number, n

spin quantum number (m_s) | number specifying the electron spin direction, either or

standing wave | (also, stationary wave) localized wave phenomenon characterized by discrete wavelengths determined by the boundary conditions used to generate the waves; standing waves are inherently quantized

subshell | atomic orbitals with the same values of n and l

valence electrons | electrons in the high energy outer shell(s) of an atom

valence shell | high energy outer shell(s) of an atom

wave | oscillation of a property over time or space; can transport energy from one point to another

wave-particle duality | observation that elementary particles can exhibit both wave-like and particle-like properties

wavefunction (ψ) | mathematical description of an atomic orbital that describes the shape of the orbital; it can be used to calculate the probability of finding the electron at any given location in the orbital, as well as dynamical variables such as the energy and the angular momentum

wavelength (λ) | distance between two consecutive peaks or troughs in a wave

---

4.7: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.6: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.8: Key Equations

$c = \lambda v$
where $h = 6.626\ 10^{-34}$ J s

4.8: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.7: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.9: Summary

Light and other forms of electromagnetic radiation move through a vacuum with a constant speed, c, of 2.998 10^8 m s^{-1}. This radiation shows wavelike behavior, which can be characterized by a frequency, ν, and a wavelength, λ, such that $c = \lambda\nu$. Light is an example of a travelling wave. Other important wave phenomena include standing waves, periodic oscillations, and vibrations. Standing waves exhibit quantization, since their wavelengths are limited to discrete integer multiples of some characteristic lengths. Electromagnetic radiation that passes through two closely spaced narrow slits having dimensions roughly similar to the wavelength will show an interference pattern that is a result of constructive and destructive interference of the waves. Electromagnetic radiation also demonstrates properties of particles called photons. The energy of a photon is related to the frequency (or alternatively, the wavelength) of the radiation as $E = h\nu$ (or), where h is Planck's constant. That light demonstrates both wavelike and particle-like behavior is known as wave-particle duality. All forms of electromagnetic radiation share these properties, although various forms including X-rays, visible light, microwaves, and radio waves interact differently with matter and have very different practical applications. Electromagnetic radiation can be generated by exciting matter to higher energies, such as by heating it. The emitted light can be either continuous (incandescent sources like the sun) or discrete (from specific types of excited atoms). Continuous spectra often have distributions that can be approximated as blackbody radiation at some appropriate temperature. The line spectrum of hydrogen can be obtained by passing the light from an electrified tube of hydrogen gas through a prism. This line spectrum was simple enough that an empirical formula called the Rydberg formula could be derived from the spectrum. Three historically important paradoxes from the late 19th and early 20th centuries that could not be explained within the existing framework of classical mechanics and classical electromagnetism were the blackbody problem, the photoelectric effect, and the discrete spectra of atoms. The resolution of these paradoxes ultimately led to quantum theories that superseded the classical theories.

Bohr incorporated Planck's and Einstein's quantization ideas into a model of the hydrogen atom that resolved the paradox of atom stability and discrete spectra. The Bohr model of the hydrogen atom explains the connection between the quantization of photons and the quantized emission from atoms. Bohr described the hydrogen atom in terms of an electron moving in a circular orbit about a nucleus. He postulated that the electron was restricted to certain orbits characterized by discrete energies. Transitions between these allowed orbits result in the absorption or emission of photons. When an electron moves from a higher-energy orbit to a more stable one, energy is emitted in the form of a photon. To move an electron from a stable orbit to a more excited one, a photon of energy must be absorbed. Using the Bohr model, we can calculate the energy of an electron and the radius of its orbit in any one-electron system.

Macroscopic objects act as particles. Microscopic objects (such as electrons) have properties of both a particle and a wave. Their exact trajectories cannot be determined. The quantum mechanical model of atoms describes the three-dimensional position of the electron in a *probabilistic* manner according to a mathematical function called a wavefunction, often denoted as ψ. Atomic wavefunctions are also called orbitals. The squared magnitude of the wavefunction describes the distribution of the probability of finding the electron in a particular region in space. Therefore, atomic orbitals describe the areas in an atom where electrons are most likely to be found.

An atomic orbital is characterized by three quantum numbers. The principal quantum number, n, can be any positive integer. The general region for value of energy of the orbital and the average distance of an electron from the nucleus are related to n. Orbitals having the same value of n are said to be in the same shell. The secondary (angular momentum) quantum number, l, can have any integer value from 0 to $n - 1$. This quantum number describes the shape or type of the orbital. Orbitals with the same principal quantum number and the same l value belong to the same subshell. The magnetic quantum number, m_l, with $2l + 1$ values ranging from $-l$ to $+l$, describes the orientation of the orbital in space. In addition, each electron has a spin quantum number, m_s, that can be equal to No two electrons in the same atom can have the same set of values for all the four quantum numbers.

The relative energy of the subshells determine the order in which atomic orbitals are filled (1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, and so on). Electron configurations and orbital diagrams can be determined by applying the Pauli exclusion principle (no two electrons can have the same set of four quantum numbers) and Hund's rule (whenever possible, electrons retain unpaired spins in degenerate orbitals).

Electrons in the outermost orbitals, called valence electrons, are responsible for most of the chemical behavior of elements. In the periodic table, elements with analogous valence electron configurations usually occur within the same group. There are some exceptions to the predicted filling order, particularly when half-filled or completely filled orbitals can be formed. The periodic table

can be divided into three categories based on the orbital in which the last electron to be added is placed: main group elements (*s* and *p* orbitals), transition elements (*d* orbitals), and inner transition elements (*f* orbitals).

Electron configurations allow us to understand many periodic trends. Covalent radius increases as we move down a group because the *n* level (orbital size) increases. Covalent radius mostly decreases as we move left to right across a period because the effective nuclear charge experienced by the electrons increases, and the electrons are pulled in tighter to the nucleus. Anionic radii are larger than the parent atom, while cationic radii are smaller, because the number of valence electrons has changed while the nuclear charge has remained constant. Ionization energy (the energy associated with forming a cation) decreases down a group and mostly increases across a period because it is easier to remove an electron from a larger, higher energy orbital. Electron affinity (the energy associated with forming an anion) is more favorable (exothermic) when electrons are placed into lower energy orbitals, closer to the nucleus. Therefore, electron affinity becomes increasingly negative as we move left to right across the periodic table and decreases as we move down a group. For both IE and electron affinity data, there are exceptions to the trends when dealing with completely filled or half-filled subshells.

4.9: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.8: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.10: Exercises

1.

The light produced by a red neon sign is due to the emission of light by excited neon atoms. Qualitatively describe the spectrum produced by passing light from a neon lamp through a prism.

2.

An FM radio station found at 103.1 on the FM dial broadcasts at a frequency of $1.031\ 10^{8}\ s^{-1}$ (103.1 MHz). What is the wavelength of these radio waves in meters?

3.

FM-95, an FM radio station, broadcasts at a frequency of $9.51\ 10^{7}\ s^{-1}$ (95.1 MHz). What is the wavelength of these radio waves in meters?

4.

A bright violet line occurs at 435.8 nm in the emission spectrum of mercury vapor. What amount of energy, in joules, must be released by an electron in a mercury atom to produce a photon of this light?

5.

Light with a wavelength of 614.5 nm looks orange. What is the energy, in joules, per photon of this orange light? What is the energy in eV (1 eV = $1.602\ 10^{-19}$ J)?

6.

Heated lithium atoms emit photons of light with an energy of $2.961\ 10^{-19}$ J. Calculate the frequency and wavelength of one of these photons. What is the total energy in 1 mole of these photons? What is the color of the emitted light?

7.

A photon of light produced by a surgical laser has an energy of $3.027\ 10^{-19}$ J. Calculate the frequency and wavelength of the photon. What is the total energy in 1 mole of photons? What is the color of the emitted light?

8.

When rubidium ions are heated to a high temperature, two lines are observed in its line spectrum at wavelengths (a) $7.9\ 10^{-7}$ m and (b) $4.2\ 10^{-7}$ m. What are the frequencies of the two lines? What color do we see when we heat a rubidium compound?

9.

The emission spectrum of cesium contains two lines whose frequencies are (a) $3.45\ 10^{14}$ Hz and (b) $6.53\ 10^{14}$ Hz. What are the wavelengths and energies per photon of the two lines? What color are the lines?

10.

Photons of infrared radiation are responsible for much of the warmth we feel when holding our hands before a fire. These photons will also warm other objects. How many infrared photons with a wavelength of $1.5\ 10^{-6}$ m must be absorbed by the water to warm a cup of water (175 g) from 25.0 °C to 40 °C?

11.

One of the radiographic devices used in a dentist's office emits an X-ray of wavelength $2.090\ 10^{-11}$ m. What is the energy, in joules, and frequency of this X-ray?

12.

The eyes of certain reptiles pass a single visual signal to the brain when the visual receptors are struck by photons of a wavelength of 850 nm. If a total energy of $3.15\ 10^{-14}$ J is required to trip the signal, what is the minimum number of photons that must strike the receptor?

13.

RGB color television and computer displays use cathode ray tubes that produce colors by mixing red, green, and blue light. If we look at the screen with a magnifying glass, we can see individual dots turn on and off as the colors change. Using a spectrum of visible light, determine the approximate wavelength of each of these colors. What is the frequency and energy of a photon of each of these colors?

14.

Answer the following questions about a Blu-ray laser:

a. The laser on a Blu-ray player has a wavelength of 405 nm. In what region of the electromagnetic spectrum is this radiation? What is its frequency?
b. A Blu-ray laser has a power of 5 milliwatts (1 watt = 1 J s^{-1}). How many photons of light are produced by the laser in 1 hour?
c. The ideal resolution of a player using a laser (such as a Blu-ray player), which determines how close together data can be stored on a compact disk, is determined using the following formula: Resolution = 0.60(λ/NA), where λ is the wavelength of the laser and NA is the numerical aperture. Numerical aperture is a measure of the size of the spot of light on the disk; the larger the NA, the smaller the spot. In a typical Blu-ray system, NA = 0.95. If the 405-nm laser is used in a Blu-ray player, what is the closest that information can be stored on a Blu-ray disk?
d. The data density of a Blu-ray disk using a 405-nm laser is 1.5 10^{7} bits mm^{-2}. Disks have an outside diameter of 120 mm and a hole of 15-mm diameter. How many data bits can be contained on the disk? If a Blu-ray disk can hold 9,400,000 pages of text, how many data bits are needed for a typed page? (Hint: Determine the area of the disk that is available to hold data. The area inside a circle is given by A = πr^2, where the radius r is one-half of the diameter.)

15.

What is the threshold frequency for sodium metal if a photon with frequency 6.66 10^{14} s^{-1} ejects an electron with 7.74 10^{-20} J kinetic energy? Will the photoelectric effect be observed if sodium is exposed to orange light?

16.

Why is the electron in a Bohr hydrogen atom bound less tightly when it has a quantum number of 3 than when it has a quantum number of 1?

17.

What does it mean to say that the energy of the electrons in an atom is quantized?

18.

Using the Bohr model, determine the energy, in joules, necessary to ionize a ground-state hydrogen atom. Show your calculations.

19.

The electron volt (eV) is a convenient unit of energy for expressing atomic-scale energies. It is the amount of energy that an electron gains when subjected to a potential of 1 volt; 1 eV = 1.602 10^{-19} J. Using the Bohr model, determine the energy, in electron volts, of the photon produced when an electron in a hydrogen atom moves from the orbit with n = 5 to the orbit with n = 2. Show your calculations.

20.

Using the Bohr model, determine the lowest possible energy, in joules, for the electron in the Li^{2+} ion.

21.

Using the Bohr model, determine the lowest possible energy for the electron in the He^{+} ion.

22.

Using the Bohr model, determine the energy of an electron with n = 6 in a hydrogen atom.

23.

Using the Bohr model, determine the energy of an electron with n = 8 in a hydrogen atom.

24.

How far from the nucleus in angstroms (1 angstrom = 1 10^{-10} m) is the electron in a hydrogen atom if it has an energy of –8.72 10^{-20} J?

25.

What is the radius, in angstroms, of the orbital of an electron with n = 8 in a hydrogen atom?

26.

Using the Bohr model, determine the energy in joules of the photon produced when an electron in a He^+ ion moves from the orbit with $n = 5$ to the orbit with $n = 2$.

27.

Using the Bohr model, determine the energy in joules of the photon produced when an electron in a Li^{2+} ion moves from the orbit with $n = 2$ to the orbit with $n = 1$.

28.

Consider a large number of hydrogen atoms with electrons randomly distributed in the $n = 1$, 2, 3, and 4 orbits.

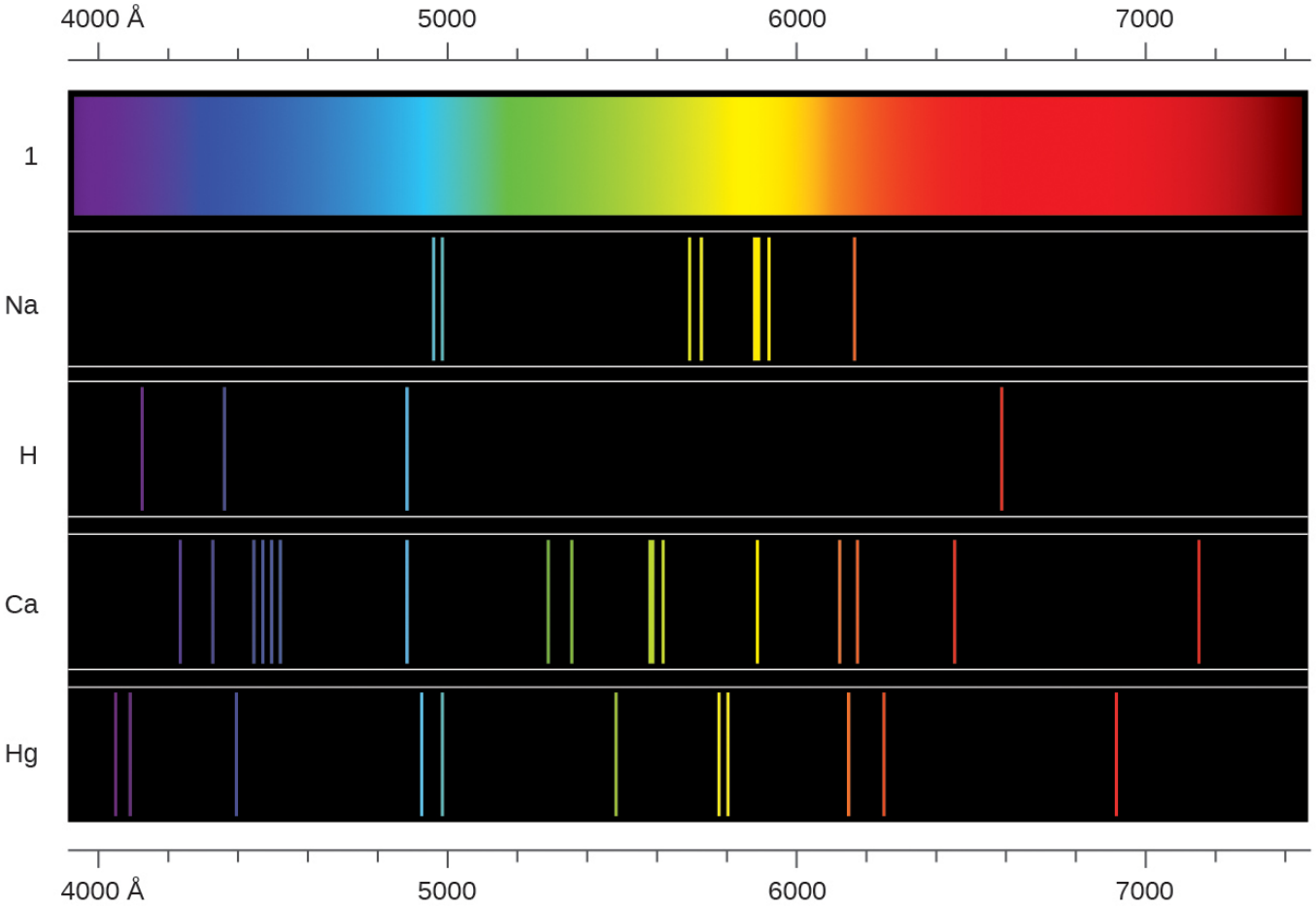
a. How many different wavelengths of light are emitted by these atoms as the electrons fall into lower-energy orbits?
b. Calculate the lowest and highest energies of light produced by the transitions described in part (a).
c. Calculate the frequencies and wavelengths of the light produced by the transitions described in part (b).

29.

How are the Bohr model and the Rutherford model of the atom similar? How are they different?

30.

The spectra of hydrogen and of calcium are shown here.



What causes the lines in these spectra? Why are the colors of the lines different? Suggest a reason for the observation that the spectrum of calcium is more complicated than the spectrum of hydrogen.

31.

How are the Bohr model and the quantum mechanical model of the hydrogen atom similar? How are they different?

32.

What are the allowed values for each of the four quantum numbers: n, l, m_l, and m_s?

33.

Describe the properties of an electron associated with each of the following four quantum numbers: n, l, m_l, and m_s.

34.

Answer the following questions:

a. Without using quantum numbers, describe the differences between the shells, subshells, and orbitals of an atom.
b. How do the quantum numbers of the shells, subshells, and orbitals of an atom differ?

35.

Identify the subshell in which electrons with the following quantum numbers are found:

a. $n = 2$, $l = 1$
b. $n = 4$, $l = 2$
c. $n = 6$, $l = 0$

36.

Which of the subshells described in the previous question contain degenerate orbitals? How many degenerate orbitals are in each?

37.

Identify the subshell in which electrons with the following quantum numbers are found:

a. $n = 3$, $l = 2$
b. $n = 1$, $l = 0$
c. $n = 4$, $l = 3$

38.

Which of the subshells described in the previous question contain degenerate orbitals? How many degenerate orbitals are in each?

39.

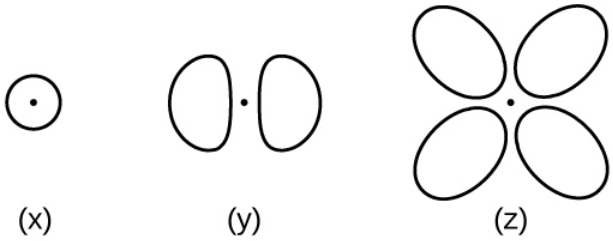
Sketch the boundary surface of a and a p_y orbital. Be sure to show and label the axes.

40.

Sketch the p_x and d_{xz} orbitals. Be sure to show and label the coordinates.

41.

Consider the orbitals shown here in outline.



a. What is the maximum number of electrons contained in an orbital of type (x)? Of type (y)? Of type (z)?
b. How many orbitals of type (x) are found in a shell with $n = 2$? How many of type (y)? How many of type (z)?
c. Write a set of quantum numbers for an electron in an orbital of type (x) in a shell with $n = 4$. Of an orbital of type (y) in a shell with $n = 2$. Of an orbital of type (z) in a shell with $n = 3$.
d. What is the smallest possible n value for an orbital of type (x)? Of type (y)? Of type (z)?
e. What are the possible l and m_l values for an orbital of type (x)? Of type (y)? Of type (z)?

42.

State the Heisenberg uncertainty principle. Describe briefly what the principle implies.

43.

How many electrons could be held in the second shell of an atom if the spin quantum number m_s could have three values instead of just two? (Hint: Consider the Pauli exclusion principle.)

44.

Which of the following equations describe particle-like behavior? Which describe wavelike behavior? Do any involve both types of behavior? Describe the reasons for your choices.

a. $c = \lambda\nu$
b.
c.
d. $E = h\nu$
e.

45.

Write a set of quantum numbers for each of the electrons with an n of 4 in a Se atom.

46.

Read the labels of several commercial products and identify monatomic ions of at least four transition elements contained in the products. Write the complete electron configurations of these cations.

47.

Read the labels of several commercial products and identify monatomic ions of at least six main group elements contained in the products. Write the complete electron configurations of these cations and anions.

48.

Using complete subshell notation (not abbreviations, $1s^22s^22p^6$, and so forth), predict the electron configuration of each of the following atoms:

a. C
b. P
c. V
d. Sb
e. Sm

49.

Using complete subshell notation ($1s^22s^22p^6$, and so forth), predict the electron configuration of each of the following atoms:

a. N
b. Si
c. Fe
d. Te
e. Tb

50.

Is $1s^22s^22p^6$ the symbol for a macroscopic property or a microscopic property of an element? Explain your answer.

51.

What additional information do we need to answer the question “Which ion has the electron configuration $1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^6$”?

52.

Draw the orbital diagram for the valence shell of each of the following atoms:

a. C
b. P
c. V
d. Sb
e. Ru

53.

Use an orbital diagram to describe the electron configuration of the valence shell of each of the following atoms:

a. N
b. Si
c. Fe
d. Te
e. Mo

54.

Using complete subshell notation ($1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$, and so forth), predict the electron configurations of the following ions.

a. (f) Gd^{3+}

55.

Which atom has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^6 5s^2 4d^2$?

56.

Which atom has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 3d^7 4s^2$?

57.

Which ion with a +1 charge has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 3d^{10} 4s^2 4p^6$? Which ion with a –2 charge has this configuration?

58.

Which of the following atoms contains only three valence electrons: Li, B, N, F, Ne?

59.

Which of the following has two unpaired electrons?

a. Mg
b. Si
c. S
d. Both Mg and S
e. Both Si and S.

60.

Which atom would be expected to have a half-filled 6*p* subshell?

61.

Which atom would be expected to have a half-filled 4*s* subshell?

62.

In one area of Australia, the cattle did not thrive despite the presence of suitable forage. An investigation showed the cause to be the absence of sufficient cobalt in the soil. Cobalt forms cations in two oxidation states, Co^{2+} and Co^{3+}. Write the electron structure of the two cations.

63.

Thallium was used as a poison in the Agatha Christie mystery story “The Pale Horse.” Thallium has two possible cationic forms, +1 and +3. The +1 compounds are the more stable. Write the electron structure of the +1 cation of thallium.

64.

Write the electron configurations for the following atoms or ions:

a. B^{3+}
b. O^{-}
c. Cl^{3+}
d. Ca^{2+}
e. Ti

65.

Cobalt–60 and iodine–131 are radioactive isotopes commonly used in nuclear medicine. How many protons, neutrons, and electrons are in atoms of these isotopes? Write the complete electron configuration for each isotope.

66.

Write a set of quantum numbers for each of the electrons with an *n* of 3 in a Sc atom.

67.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, predict which has the smallest atomic radius: Mg, Sr, Si, Cl, I.

68.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, predict which has the largest atomic radius: Li, Rb, N, F, I.

69.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, predict which has the largest first ionization energy: Mg, Ba, B, O, Te.

70.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, predict which has the smallest first ionization energy: Li, Cs, N, F, I.

71.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, rank the following atoms in order of increasing first ionization energy: F, Li, N, Rb

72.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, rank the following atoms in order of increasing first ionization energy: Mg, O, S, Si

73.

Atoms of which group in the periodic table have a valence shell electron configuration of ns^2np^3?

74.

Atoms of which group in the periodic table have a valence shell electron configuration of ns^2?

75.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, list the following atoms in order of increasing radius: Mg, Ca, Rb, Cs.

76.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, list the following atoms in order of increasing radius: Sr, Ca, Si, Cl.

77.

Based on their positions in the periodic table, list the following ions in order of increasing radius: K^+, Ca^{2+}, Al^{3+}, Si^{4+}.

78.

List the following ions in order of increasing radius: Li^+, Mg^{2+}, Br^-, Te^{2-}.

79.

Which atom and/or ion is (are) isoelectronic with Br^+: Se^{2+}, Se, As^-, Kr, Ga^{3+}, Cl^-?

80.

Which of the following atoms and ions is (are) isoelectronic with S^{2+}: Si^{4+}, Cl^{3+}, Ar, As^{3+}, Si, Al^{3+}?

81.

Compare both the numbers of protons and electrons present in each to rank the following ions in order of increasing radius: As^{3-}, Br^-, K^+, Mg^{2+}.

82.

Of the five elements Al, Cl, I, Na, Rb, which has the most exothermic reaction? (E represents an atom.) What name is given to the energy for the reaction? Hint: Note the process depicted does *not* correspond to electron affinity.)

83.

Of the five elements Sn, Si, Sb, O, Te, which has the most endothermic reaction? (E represents an atom.) What name is given to the energy for the reaction?

84.

The ionic radii of the ions S^{2-}, Cl^{-}, and K^{+} are 184, 181, 138 pm respectively. Explain why these ions have different sizes even though they contain the same number of electrons.

85.

Which main group atom would be expected to have the lowest second ionization energy?

86.

Explain why Al is a member of group 13 rather than group 3?

This page titled 4.10: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.9: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry

A chemical bond is an attraction between atoms that allows the formation of chemical substances that contain two or more atoms. The bond is caused by the electrostatic force of attraction between opposite charges, either between electrons and nuclei, or as the result of a dipole attraction. All bonds can be explained by quantum theory, but, in practice, simplification rules allow chemists to predict the strength, directionality, and polarity of bonds. The octet rule and VSEPR theory are two examples. More sophisticated theories are valence bond theory which includes orbital hybridization and resonance, and the linear combination of atomic orbitals molecular orbital method. Electrostatics are used to describe bond polarities and the effects they have on chemical substances.

5.1: Introduction
5.2: Ionic Bonding
5.3: Covalent Bonding
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance
5.6: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
5.8: Key Terms
5.9: Key Equations
5.10: Summary
5.11: Exercises

This page titled 7: Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.1: Introduction

It has long been known that pure carbon occurs in different forms (allotropes) including graphite and diamonds. But it was not until 1985 that a new form of carbon was recognized: buckminsterfullerene. This molecule was named after the architect and inventor R. Buckminster Fuller (1895–1983), whose signature architectural design was the geodesic dome, characterized by a lattice shell structure supporting a spherical surface. Experimental evidence revealed the formula, C_{60}, and then scientists determined how 60 carbon atoms could form one symmetric, stable molecule. They were guided by bonding theory—the topic of this chapter—which explains how individual atoms connect to form more complex structures.



Figure 5.1.1: Nicknamed “buckyballs,” buckminsterfullerene molecules (C_{60}) contain only carbon atoms (left) arranged to form a geometric framework of hexagons and pentagons, similar to the pattern on a soccer ball (center). This molecular structure is named after architect R. Buckminster Fuller, whose innovative designs combined simple geometric shapes to create large, strong structures such as this weather radar dome near Tucson, Arizona (right). (credit middle: modification of work by “Petey21”/Wikimedia Commons; credit right: modification of work by Bill Morrow)

This page titled 5.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.0: Introduction** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.2: Ionic Bonding

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the formation of cations, anions, and ionic compounds
- Predict the charge of common metallic and nonmetallic elements, and write their electron configurations

As you have learned, ions are atoms or molecules bearing an electrical charge. A cation (a positive ion) forms when a neutral atom loses one or more electrons from its valence shell, and an anion (a negative ion) forms when a neutral atom gains one or more electrons in its valence shell.

Compounds composed of ions are called ionic compounds (or salts), and their constituent ions are held together by ionic bonds: electrostatic forces of attraction between oppositely charged cations and anions. The properties of ionic compounds shed some light on the nature of ionic bonds. Ionic solids exhibit a crystalline structure and tend to be rigid and brittle; they also tend to have high melting and boiling points, which suggests that ionic bonds are very strong. Ionic solids are also poor conductors of electricity for the same reason—the strength of ionic bonds prevents ions from moving freely in the solid state. Most ionic solids, however, dissolve readily in water. Once dissolved or melted, ionic compounds are excellent conductors of electricity and heat because the ions can move about freely.

Neutral atoms and their associated ions have very different physical and chemical properties. Sodium *atoms* form sodium metal, a soft, silvery-white metal that burns vigorously in air and reacts explosively with water. Chlorine *atoms* form chlorine gas, Cl_2, a yellow-green gas that is extremely corrosive to most metals and very poisonous to animals and plants. The vigorous reaction between the elements sodium and chlorine forms the white, crystalline compound sodium chloride, common table salt, which contains sodium *cations* and chloride *anions* (Figure 5.2.1). The compound composed of these ions exhibits properties entirely different from the properties of the elements sodium and chlorine. Chlorine is poisonous, but sodium chloride is essential to life; sodium atoms react vigorously with water, but sodium chloride simply dissolves in water.



Figure 5.2.1: (a) Sodium is a soft metal that must be stored in mineral oil to prevent reaction with air or water. (b) Chlorine is a pale yellow-green gas. (c) When combined, they form white crystals of sodium chloride (table salt). (credit a: modification of work by “Jurii”/Wikimedia Commons)

The Formation of Ionic Compounds

Binary ionic compounds are composed of just two elements: a metal (which forms the cations) and a nonmetal (which forms the anions). For example, NaCl is a binary ionic compound. We can think about the formation of such compounds in terms of the periodic properties of the elements. Many metallic elements have relatively low ionization potentials and lose electrons easily. These elements lie to the left in a period or near the bottom of a group on the periodic table. Nonmetal atoms have relatively high electron affinities and thus readily gain electrons lost by metal atoms, thereby filling their valence shells. Nonmetallic elements are found in the upper-right corner of the periodic table.

As all substances must be electrically neutral, the total number of positive charges on the cations of an ionic compound must equal the total number of negative charges on its anions. The formula of an ionic compound represents the simplest ratio of the numbers of ions necessary to give identical numbers of positive and negative charges. For example, the formula for aluminum oxide, Al_2O_3,

indicates that this ionic compound contains two aluminum cations, Al^{3+}, for every three oxide anions, O^{2-} [thus, (2 +3) + (3 –2) = 0].

It is important to note, however, that the formula for an ionic compound does *not* represent the physical arrangement of its ions. It is incorrect to refer to a sodium chloride (NaCl) "molecule" because there is not a single ionic bond, per se, between any specific pair of sodium and chloride ions. The attractive forces between ions are isotropic—the same in all directions—meaning that any particular ion is equally attracted to all of the nearby ions of opposite charge. This results in the ions arranging themselves into a tightly bound, three-dimensional lattice structure. Sodium chloride, for example, consists of a regular arrangement of equal numbers of Na^+ cations and Cl^- anions (Figure 5.2.2).

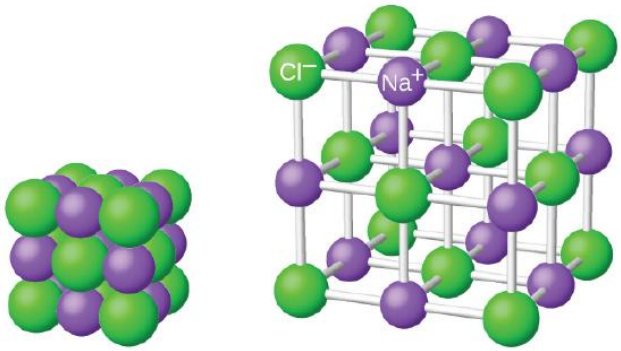


Figure 5.2.2: The atoms in sodium chloride (common table salt) are arranged to (a) maximize opposite charges interacting. The smaller spheres represent sodium ions, the larger ones represent chloride ions. In the expanded view (b), the geometry can be seen more clearly. Note that each ion is "bonded" to all of the surrounding ions—six in this case.

The strong electrostatic attraction between Na^+ and Cl^- ions holds them tightly together in solid NaCl. It requires 769 kJ of energy to dissociate one mole of solid NaCl into separate gaseous Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathrm{NaCl(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Na^+(g) + Cl^-(g)} \qquad \Delta H = 769\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Electronic Structures of Cations

When forming a cation, an atom of a main group element tends to lose all of its valence electrons, thus assuming the electronic structure of the noble gas that precedes it in the periodic table. For groups 1 (the alkali metals) and 2 (the alkaline earth metals), the group numbers are equal to the numbers of valence shell electrons and, consequently, to the charges of the cations formed from atoms of these elements when all valence shell electrons are removed. For example, calcium is a group 2 element whose neutral atoms have 20 electrons and a ground state electron configuration of $1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^64s^2$. When a Ca atom loses both of its valence electrons, the result is a cation with 18 electrons, a 2+ charge, and an electron configuration of $1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^6$. The Ca^{2+} ion is therefore isoelectronic with the noble gas Ar.

For groups 13–17, the group numbers exceed the number of valence electrons by 10 (accounting for the possibility of full *d* subshells in atoms of elements in the fourth and greater periods). Thus, the charge of a cation formed by the loss of all valence electrons is equal to the group number minus 10. For example, aluminum (in group 13) forms 3+ ions (Al^{3+}).

Exceptions to the expected behavior involve elements toward the bottom of the groups. In addition to the expected ions Tl^{3+}, Sn^{4+}, Pb^{4+}, and Bi^{5+}, a partial loss of these atoms' valence shell electrons can also lead to the formation of Tl^+, Sn^{2+}, Pb^{2+}, and Bi^{3+} ions. The formation of these 1+, 2+, and 3+ cations is ascribed to the inert pair effect, which reflects the relatively low energy of the valence *s*-electron pair for atoms of the heavy elements of groups 13, 14, and 15. Mercury (group 12) also exhibits an unexpected behavior: it forms a diatomic ion, (an ion formed from two mercury atoms, with an Hg-Hg bond), in addition to the expected monatomic ion Hg^{2+} (formed from only one mercury atom).

Transition and inner transition metal elements behave differently than main group elements. Most transition metal cations have 2+ or 3+ charges that result from the loss of their outermost *s* electron(s) first, sometimes followed by the loss of one or two *d* electrons from the next-to-outermost shell. For example, iron ($1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^63d^64s^2$) forms the ion Fe^{2+} ($1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^63d^6$) by the loss of the 4*s* electrons and the ion Fe^{3+} ($1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^63d^5$) by the loss of the 4*s* electrons and one of the 3*d* electrons. Although the *d* orbitals of the transition elements are—according to the Aufbau principle—the last to fill when building up electron

configurations, the outermost *s* electrons are the first to be lost when these atoms ionize. When the inner transition metals form ions, they usually have a 3+ charge, resulting from the loss of their outermost *s* electrons and a *d* or *f* electron.

Example 5.2.1: Determining the Electronic Structures of Cations

There are at least 14 elements categorized as "essential trace elements" for the human body. They are called "essential" because they are required for healthy bodily functions, "trace" because they are required only in small amounts, and "elements" in spite of the fact that they are really ions. Two of these essential trace elements, chromium and zinc, are required as Cr^{3+} and Zn^{2+}. Write the electron configurations of these cations.

Solution

First, write the electron configuration for the neutral atoms:

Zn: $[Ar]3d^{10}4s^2$

Cr: $[Ar]3d^5 4s^1$

Next, remove electrons from the highest energy orbital. For the transition metals, electrons are removed from the *s* orbital first and then from the *d* orbital. For the *p*-block elements, electrons are removed from the *p* orbitals and then from the *s* orbital. Zinc is a member of group 12, so it should have a charge of 2+, and thus loses only the two electrons in its *s* orbital. Chromium is a transition element and should lose its *s* electrons and then its *d* electrons when forming a cation. Thus, we find the following electron configurations of the ions:

Zn^{2+}: $[Ar]3d^{10}$

Cr^{3+}: $[Ar]3d^3$

Exercise 5.2.1

Potassium and magnesium are required in our diet. Write the electron configurations of the ions expected from these elements.

Answer

K^+: [Ar], Mg^{2+}: [Ne]

Electronic Structures of Anions

Most monatomic anions form when a neutral nonmetal atom gains enough electrons to completely fill its outer *s* and *p* orbitals, thereby reaching the electron configuration of the next noble gas. Thus, it is simple to determine the charge on such a negative ion: The charge is equal to the number of electrons that must be gained to fill the *s* and *p* orbitals of the parent atom. Oxygen, for example, has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$, whereas the oxygen anion has the electron configuration of the noble gas neon (Ne), $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$. The two additional electrons required to fill the valence orbitals give the oxide ion the charge of 2– (O^{2-}).

Example 5.2.1: Determining the Electronic Structure of Anions

Selenium and iodine are two essential trace elements that form anions. Write the electron configurations of the anions.

Solution

Se^{2-}: $[Ar]3d^{10}4s^2 4p^6$

I^-: $[Kr]4d^{10}5s^2 5p^6$

Exercise 5.2.2

Write the electron configurations of a phosphorus atom and its negative ion. Give the charge on the anion.

Answer

P: $[Ne]3s^2 3p^3$; P^{3-}: $[Ne]3s^2 3p^6$

This page titled 5.2: Ionic Bonding is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.1: Ionic Bonding** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.3: Covalent Bonding

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the formation of covalent bonds
- Define electronegativity and assess the polarity of covalent bonds

Ionic bonding results from the electrostatic attraction of oppositely charged ions that are typically produced by the transfer of electrons between metallic and nonmetallic atoms. A different type of bonding results from the mutual attraction of atoms for a "shared" pair of electrons. Such bonds are called covalent bonds. Covalent bonds are formed between two atoms when both have similar tendencies to attract electrons to themselves (i.e., when both atoms have identical or fairly similar ionization energies and electron affinities). For example, two hydrogen atoms bond covalently to form an H_2 molecule; each hydrogen atom in the H_2 molecule has two electrons stabilizing it, giving each atom the same number of valence electrons as the noble gas He.

Compounds that contain covalent bonds exhibit different physical properties than ionic compounds. Because the attraction between molecules, which are electrically neutral, is weaker than that between electrically charged ions, covalent compounds generally have much lower melting and boiling points than ionic compounds. In fact, many covalent compounds are liquids or gases at room temperature, and, in their solid states, they are typically much softer than ionic solids. Furthermore, whereas ionic compounds are good conductors of electricity when dissolved in water, most covalent compounds are insoluble in water; since they are electrically neutral, they are poor conductors of electricity in any state.

Formation of Covalent Bonds

Nonmetal atoms frequently form covalent bonds with other nonmetal atoms. For example, the hydrogen molecule, H_2, contains a covalent bond between its two hydrogen atoms. Figure $5.3.1$ illustrates why this bond is formed. Starting on the far right, we have two separate hydrogen atoms with a particular potential energy, indicated by the red line. Along the *x*-axis is the distance between the two atoms. As the two atoms approach each other (moving left along the *x*-axis), their valence orbitals (1*s*) begin to overlap. The single electrons on each hydrogen atom then interact with both atomic nuclei, occupying the space around both atoms. The strong attraction of each shared electron to both nuclei stabilizes the system, and the potential energy decreases as the bond distance decreases. If the atoms continue to approach each other, the positive charges in the two nuclei begin to repel each other, and the potential energy increases. The bond length is determined by the distance at which the lowest potential energy is achieved.

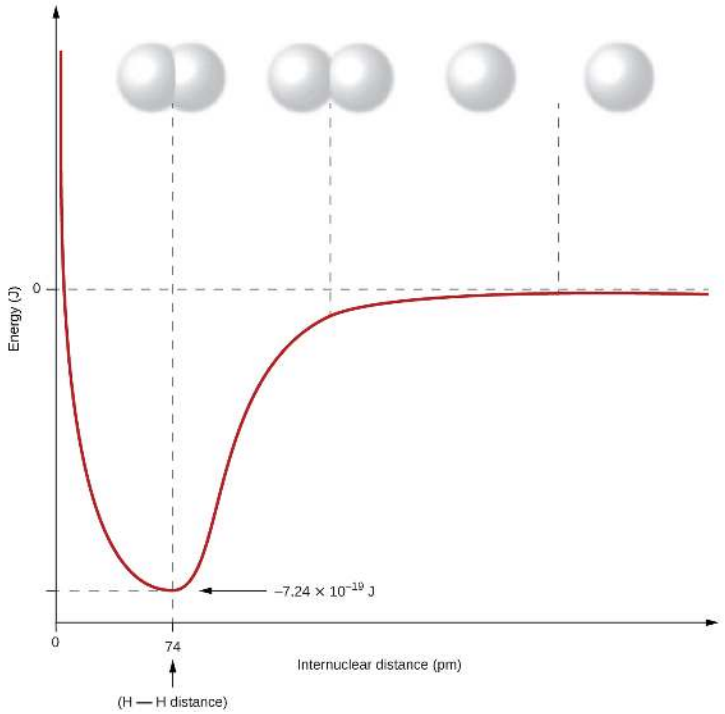


Figure 5.3.1: The potential energy of two separate hydrogen atoms (right) decreases as they approach each other, and the single electrons on each atom are shared to form a covalent bond. The bond length is the internuclear distance at which the lowest potential energy is achieved.

It is essential to remember that energy must be added to break chemical bonds (an endothermic process), whereas forming chemical bonds releases energy (an exothermic process). In the case of H_2, the covalent bond is very strong; a large amount of energy, 436 kJ, must be added to break the bonds in one mole of hydrogen molecules and cause the atoms to separate:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H(g)} \quad \Delta H = 436\,\mathrm{kJ}$$

Conversely, the same amount of energy is released when one mole of H_2 molecules forms from two moles of H atoms:

$$2\,\mathrm{H(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2(g)} \quad \Delta H = -436\,\mathrm{kJ}$$

Pure vs. Polar Covalent Bonds

If the atoms that form a covalent bond are identical, as in H_2, Cl_2, and other diatomic molecules, then the electrons in the bond must be shared equally. We refer to this as a pure covalent bond. Electrons shared in pure covalent bonds have an equal probability of being near each nucleus.

In the case of Cl_2, each atom starts off with seven valence electrons, and each Cl shares one electron with the other, forming one covalent bond:

$$\mathrm{Cl + Cl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl_2}$$

The total number of electrons around each individual atom consists of six nonbonding electrons and two shared (i.e., bonding) electrons for eight total electrons, matching the number of valence electrons in the noble gas argon. Since the bonding atoms are identical, Cl_2 also features a pure covalent bond.

When the atoms linked by a covalent bond are different, the bonding electrons are shared, but no longer equally. Instead, the bonding electrons are more attracted to one atom than the other, giving rise to a shift of electron density toward that atom. This unequal distribution of electrons is known as a polar covalent bond, characterized by a partial positive charge on one atom and a partial negative charge on the other. The atom that attracts the electrons more strongly acquires the partial negative charge and vice versa. For example, the electrons in the H–Cl bond of a hydrogen chloride molecule spend more time near the chlorine atom than near the hydrogen atom. Thus, in an HCl molecule, the chlorine atom carries a partial negative charge and the hydrogen atom has a partial positive charge. Figure 5.3.2 shows the distribution of electrons in the H–Cl bond. Note that the shaded area around Cl is

much larger than it is around H. Compare this to Figure 5.3.1, which shows the even distribution of electrons in the H_2 nonpolar bond.

We sometimes designate the positive and negative atoms in a polar covalent bond using a lowercase Greek letter "delta," δ, with a plus sign or minus sign to indicate whether the atom has a partial positive charge (δ+) or a partial negative charge (δ–). This symbolism is shown for the H–Cl molecule in Figure 5.3.2.

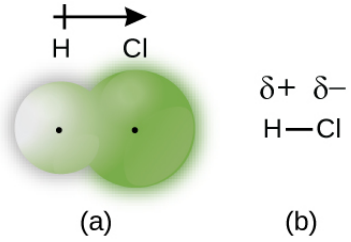


Figure 5.3.2: (a) The distribution of electron density in the HCl molecule is uneven. The electron density is greater around the chlorine nucleus. The small, black dots indicate the location of the hydrogen and chlorine nuclei in the molecule. (b) Symbols δ+ and δ– indicate the polarity of the H–Cl bond.

Electronegativity

Whether a bond is nonpolar or polar covalent is determined by a property of the bonding atoms called electronegativity. Electronegativity is a measure of the tendency of an atom to attract electrons (or electron density) towards itself. It determines how the shared electrons are distributed between the two atoms in a bond. The more strongly an atom attracts the electrons in its bonds, the larger its electronegativity. Electrons in a polar covalent bond are shifted toward the more electronegative atom; thus, the more electronegative atom is the one with the partial negative charge. The greater the difference in electronegativity, the more polarized the electron distribution and the larger the partial charges of the atoms.

Figure 5.3.3 shows the electronegativity values of the elements as proposed by one of the most famous chemists of the twentieth century: Linus Pauling (Figure 5.3.4). In general, electronegativity increases from left to right across a period in the periodic table and decreases down a group. Thus, the nonmetals, which lie in the upper right, tend to have the highest electronegativities, with fluorine the most electronegative element of all (EN = 4.0). Metals tend to be less electronegative elements, and the group 1 metals have the lowest electronegativities. Note that noble gases are excluded from this figure because these atoms usually do not share electrons with others atoms since they have a full valence shell. (While noble gas compounds such as XeO_2 do exist, they can only be formed under extreme conditions, and thus they do not fit neatly into the general model of electronegativity.)

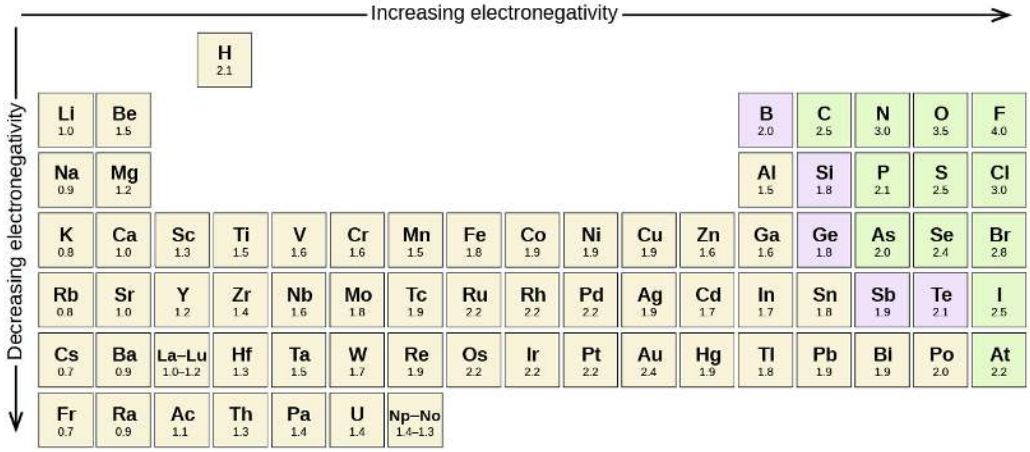


Figure 5.3.3: The electronegativity values derived by Pauling follow predictable periodic trends, with the higher electronegativities toward the upper right of the periodic table.

Electronegativity versus Electron Affinity

We must be careful not to confuse electronegativity and electron affinity. The electron affinity of an element is a measurable physical quantity, namely, the energy released or absorbed when an isolated gas-phase atom acquires an electron, measured in kJ/mol. Electronegativity, on the other hand, describes how tightly an atom attracts electrons in a bond. It is a dimensionless

quantity that is calculated, not measured. Pauling derived the first electronegativity values by comparing the amounts of energy required to break different types of bonds. He chose an arbitrary relative scale ranging from 0 to 4.

Portrait of a Chemist: Linus Pauling

Linus Pauling, shown in Figure 5.3.4, is the only person to have received two unshared (individual) Nobel Prizes: one for chemistry in 1954 for his work on the nature of chemical bonds and one for peace in 1962 for his opposition to weapons of mass destruction. He developed many of the theories and concepts that are foundational to our current understanding of chemistry, including electronegativity and resonance structures.

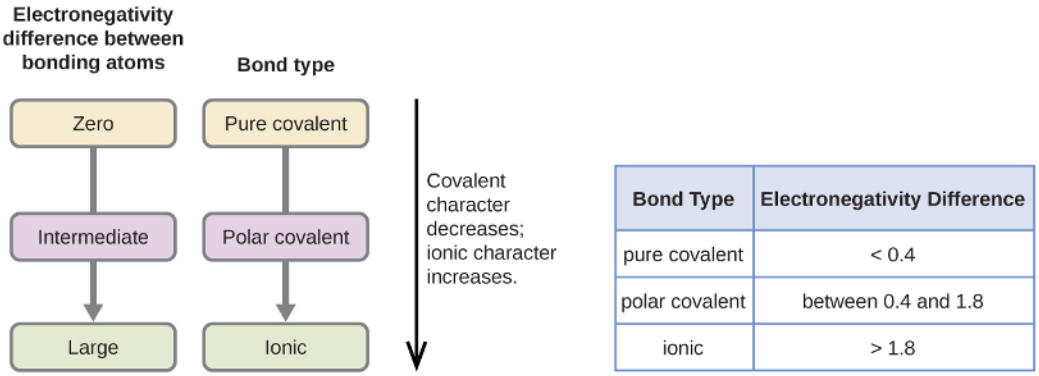


Figure 5.3.4: Linus Pauling (1901–1994) made many important contributions to the field of chemistry. He was also a prominent activist, publicizing issues related to health and nuclear weapons.

Pauling also contributed to many other fields besides chemistry. His research on sickle cell anemia revealed the cause of the disease—the presence of a genetically inherited abnormal protein in the blood—and paved the way for the field of molecular genetics. His work was also pivotal in curbing the testing of nuclear weapons; he proved that radioactive fallout from nuclear testing posed a public health risk.

Electronegativity and Bond Type

The absolute value of the difference in electronegativity (ΔEN) of two bonded atoms provides a rough measure of the polarity to be expected in the bond and, thus, the bond type. When the difference is very small or zero, the bond is covalent and nonpolar. When it is large, the bond is polar covalent or ionic. The absolute values of the electronegativity differences between the atoms in the bonds H–H, H–Cl, and Na–Cl are 0 (nonpolar), 0.9 (polar covalent), and 2.1 (ionic), respectively. The degree to which electrons are shared between atoms varies from completely equal (pure covalent bonding) to not at all (ionic bonding). Figure 5.3.5 shows the relationship between electronegativity difference and bond type.



Bond Type	Electronegativity Difference
pure covalent	< 0.4
polar covalent	between 0.4 and 1.8
ionic	> 1.8

Figure 5.3.5: As the electronegativity difference increases between two atoms, the bond becomes more ionic.

A rough approximation of the electronegativity differences associated with covalent, polar covalent, and ionic bonds is shown in Figure 5.3.5. This table is just a general guide, however, with many exceptions. For example, the H and F atoms in HF have an electronegativity difference of 1.9, and the N and H atoms in NH_3 a difference of 0.9, yet both of these compounds form bonds that are considered polar covalent. Likewise, the Na and Cl atoms in NaCl have an electronegativity difference of 2.1, and the Mn and I atoms in MnI_2 have a difference of 1.0, yet both of these substances form ionic compounds.

The best guide to the covalent or ionic character of a bond is to consider the types of atoms involved and their relative positions in the periodic table. Bonds between two nonmetals are generally covalent; bonding between a metal and a nonmetal is often ionic.

Some compounds contain both covalent and ionic bonds. The atoms in polyatomic ions, such as OH^-, and are held together by polar covalent bonds. However, these polyatomic ions form ionic compounds by combining with ions of opposite charge. For example, potassium nitrate, KNO_3, contains the K^+ cation and the polyatomic anion. Thus, bonding in potassium nitrate is ionic, resulting from the electrostatic attraction between the ions K^+ and as well as covalent between the nitrogen and oxygen atoms in

Example 5.3.1: Electronegativity and Bond Polarity

Bond polarities play an important role in determining the structure of proteins. Using the electronegativity values in Figure 5.3.3, arrange the following covalent bonds—all commonly found in amino acids—in order of increasing polarity. Then designate the positive and negative atoms using the symbols δ+ and δ–:

C–H, C–N, C–O, N–H, O–H, S–H

Solution

The polarity of these bonds increases as the absolute value of the electronegativity difference increases. The atom with the δ– designation is the more electronegative of the two. Table 5.3.1 shows these bonds in order of increasing polarity.

Table 5.3.1: Bond Polarity and Electronegativity Difference

Bond	ΔEN	Polarity
C–H	0.4	
S–H	0.4	
C–N	0.5	
N–H	0.9	
C–O	1.0	
O–H	1.4	

Exercise 5.3.1

Silicones are polymeric compounds containing, among others, the following types of covalent bonds: Si–O, Si–C, C–H, and C–C. Using the electronegativity values in Figure 5.3.3, arrange the bonds in order of increasing polarity and designate the positive and negative atoms using the symbols δ+ and δ–.

Answer

Bond	Electronegativity Difference	Polarity
C–C	0.0	nonpolar
C–H	0.4	
Si–C	0.7	
Si–O	1.7	

This page titled 5.3: Covalent Bonding is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.2: Covalent Bonding** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Write Lewis symbols for neutral atoms and ions
- Draw Lewis structures depicting the bonding in simple molecules

Thus far in this chapter, we have discussed the various types of bonds that form between atoms and/or ions. In all cases, these bonds involve the sharing or transfer of valence shell electrons between atoms. In this section, we will explore the typical method for depicting valence shell electrons and chemical bonds, namely Lewis symbols and Lewis structures.

Lewis Symbols

We use Lewis symbols to describe valence electron configurations of atoms and monatomic ions. A Lewis symbol consists of an elemental symbol surrounded by one dot for each of its valence electrons:



Figure 5.4.1: shows the Lewis symbols for the elements of the third period of the periodic table.

Atoms	Electronic Configuration	Lewis Symbol
sodium	$[Ne]3s^1$	Na·
magnesium	$[Ne]3s^2$	·Mg·
aluminum	$[Ne]3s^23p^1$	·Al·
silicon	$[Ne]3s^23p^2$	·Si·
phosphorus	$[Ne]3s^23p^3$	·P·
sulfur	$[Ne]3s^23p^4$	:S·
chlorine	$[Ne]3s^23p^5$	:Cl·
argon	$[Ne]3s^23p^6$	:Ar:

Figure 5.4.1: Lewis symbols illustrating the number of valence electrons for each element in the third period of the periodic table.

Lewis symbols can also be used to illustrate the formation of cations from atoms, as shown here for sodium and calcium:



Likewise, they can be used to show the formation of anions from atoms, as shown here for chlorine and sulfur:



Figure 5.4.2 demonstrates the use of Lewis symbols to show the transfer of electrons during the formation of ionic compounds.

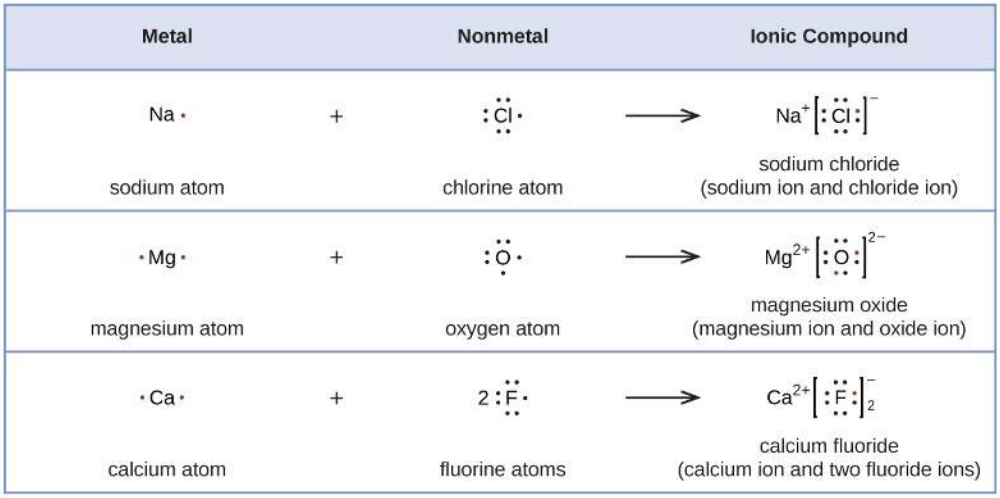
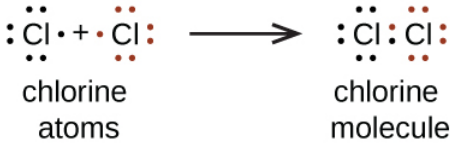


Figure 5.4.2: Cations are formed when atoms lose electrons, represented by fewer Lewis dots, whereas anions are formed by atoms gaining electrons. The total number of electrons does not change.

Lewis Structures

We also use Lewis symbols to indicate the formation of covalent bonds, which are shown in Lewis structures, drawings that describe the bonding in molecules and polyatomic ions. For example, when two chlorine atoms form a chlorine molecule, they share one pair of electrons:



The Lewis structure indicates that each Cl atom has three pairs of electrons that are not used in bonding (called lone pairs) and one shared pair of electrons (written between the atoms). A dash (or line) is sometimes used to indicate a shared pair of electrons:

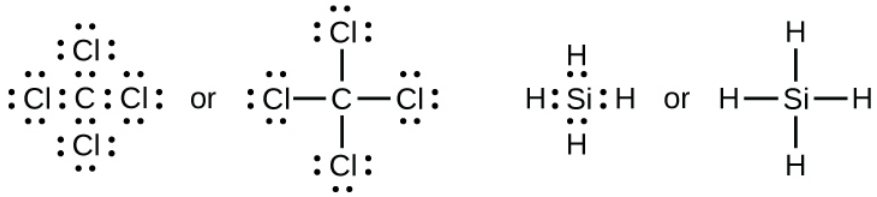


A single shared pair of electrons is called a single bond. Each Cl atom interacts with eight valence electrons: the six in the lone pairs and the two in the single bond.

The Octet Rule

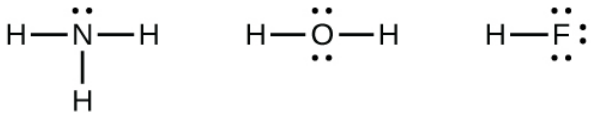
The other halogen molecules (F_2, Br_2, I_2, and At_2) form bonds like those in the chlorine molecule: one single bond between atoms and three lone pairs of electrons per atom. This allows each halogen atom to have a noble gas electron configuration. The tendency of main group atoms to form enough bonds to obtain eight valence electrons is known as the octet rule.

The number of bonds that an atom can form can often be predicted from the number of electrons needed to reach an octet (eight valence electrons); this is especially true of the nonmetals of the second period of the periodic table (C, N, O, and F). For example, each atom of a group 14 element has four electrons in its outermost shell and therefore requires four more electrons to reach an octet. These four electrons can be gained by forming four covalent bonds, as illustrated here for carbon in CCl_4 (carbon tetrachloride) and silicon in SiH_4 (silane). Because hydrogen only needs two electrons to fill its valence shell, it is an exception to the octet rule. The transition elements and inner transition elements also do not follow the octet rule:



carbon tetrachloride silane

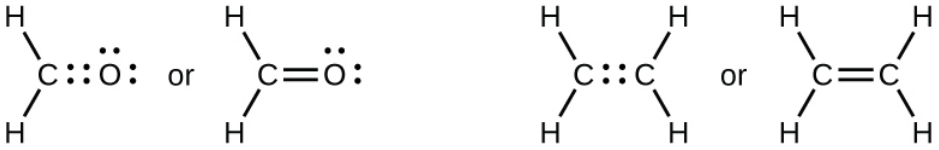
Group 15 elements such as nitrogen have five valence electrons in the atomic Lewis symbol: one lone pair and three unpaired electrons. To obtain an octet, these atoms form three covalent bonds, as in NH_3 (ammonia). Oxygen and other atoms in group 16 obtain an octet by forming two covalent bonds:



ammonia Water hydrogen fluoride

Double and Triple Bonds

As previously mentioned, when a pair of atoms shares one pair of electrons, we call this a single bond. However, a pair of atoms may need to share more than one pair of electrons in order to achieve the requisite octet. A double bond forms when two pairs of electrons are shared between a pair of atoms, as between the carbon and oxygen atoms in CH_2O (formaldehyde) and between the two carbon atoms in C_2H_4 (ethylene):



formaldehyde ethylene

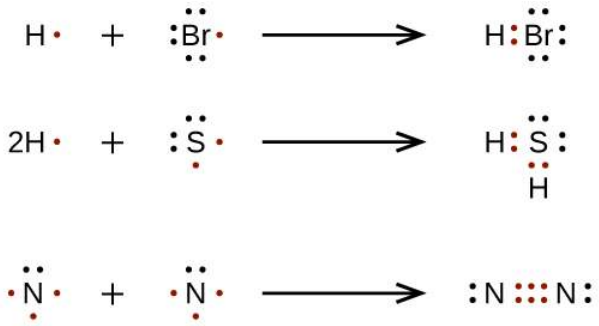
A triple bond forms when three electron pairs are shared by a pair of atoms, as in carbon monoxide (CO) and the cyanide ion (CN^-):



carbon monoxide cyanide ion

Writing Lewis Structures with the Octet Rule

For very simple molecules and molecular ions, we can write the Lewis structures by merely pairing up the unpaired electrons on the constituent atoms. See these examples:



For more complicated molecules and molecular ions, it is helpful to follow the step-by-step procedure outlined here.

Writing Lewis Structures

1. Determine the total number of valence (outer shell) electrons. For cations, subtract one electron for each positive charge. For anions, add one electron for each negative charge.
2. Draw a skeleton structure of the molecule or ion, arranging the atoms around a central atom. (Generally, the least electronegative element should be placed in the center.) Connect each atom to the central atom with a single bond (one electron pair).
3. Distribute the remaining electrons as lone pairs on the terminal atoms (except hydrogen), completing an octet around each atom.
4. Place all remaining electrons on the central atom.
5. Rearrange the electrons of the outer atoms to make multiple bonds with the central atom in order to obtain octets wherever possible.

Let us determine the Lewis structures of SiH_4, CHO_2^-, NO^+, and OF_2 as examples in following this procedure:

1. Determine the total number of valence (outer shell) electrons in the molecule or ion.
   - For a molecule, we add the number of valence electrons on each atom in the molecule:

$$\begin{array}{rr} & \mathrm{SiH_4} \\ \mathrm{Si:}\ 4\ \text{valence electrons/atom} \times\ 1\ \text{atom} & = 4 \\ +\quad \mathrm{H:}\ 1\ \text{valence electron/atom} \times\ 4\ \text{atoms} & = 4 \\ \hline \text{total valence electrons} & = 8 \end{array}$$

   - For a *negative ion*, such as CHO_2^-, we add the number of valence electrons on the atoms to the number of negative charges on the ion (one electron is gained for each single negative charge):

$$\begin{array}{rr} & \mathrm{CHO_2^-} \\ \mathrm{C:}\ 4\ \text{valence electrons/atom} \times\ 1\ \text{atom} & = 4 \\ \mathrm{H:}\ 1\ \text{valence electron/atom} \times\ 1\ \text{atoms} & = 1 \\ \mathrm{O:}\ 6\ \text{valence electron/atom} \times\ 2\ \text{atoms} & = 12 \\ +\quad 1\ \text{electron} & = 1 \\ \hline \text{total valence electrons} & = 18 \end{array}$$

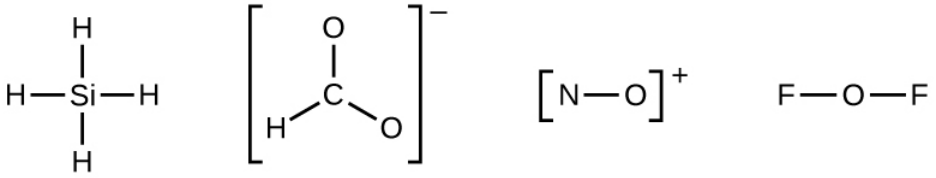
   - For a *positive ion*, such as NO^+, we add the number of valence electrons on the atoms in the ion and then subtract the number of positive charges on the ion (one electron is lost for each single positive charge) from the total number of valence electrons:

$$\begin{array}{rr} & \mathrm{NO^+} \\ \mathrm{N:}\ 5\ \text{valence electrons/atom} \times\ 1\ \text{atom} & = 5 \\ \mathrm{O:}\ 6\ \text{valence electron/atom} \times\ 1\ \text{atoms} & = 6 \\ +\quad \text{e: -1 electron (positive charge)} \times\ 1\ \text{electron} & = -1 \\ \hline \text{total valence electrons} & = 10 \end{array}$$

   - Since OF_2 is a neutral molecule, we simply add the number of valence electrons:

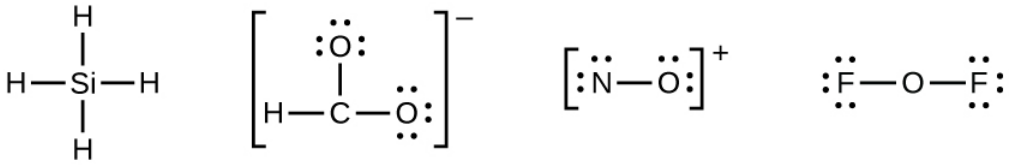
$$\begin{array}{rr} & \mathrm{OF_2} \\ \mathrm{O:\ 6\ valence\ electrons/atom} \times\ 1\ \mathrm{atom} & = 6 \\ +\quad \mathrm{F:\ 7\ valence\ electron/atom} \times\ 2\ \mathrm{atoms} & = 14 \\ \hline \mathrm{total\ valence\ electrons} & = 20 \end{array}$$

2. Draw a skeleton structure of the molecule or ion, arranging the atoms around a central atom and connecting each atom to the central atom with a single (one electron pair) bond. (Note that we denote ions with brackets around the structure, indicating the charge outside the brackets:)

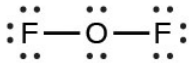


When several arrangements of atoms are possible, as for $\mathrm{CHO_2^-}$, we must use experimental evidence to choose the correct one. In general, the less electronegative elements are more likely to be central atoms. In $\mathrm{CHO_2^-}$, the less electronegative carbon atom occupies the central position with the oxygen and hydrogen atoms surrounding it. Other examples include P in $\mathrm{POCl_3}$, S in $\mathrm{SO_2}$, and Cl in $\mathrm{ClO_4^-}$. An exception is that hydrogen is almost never a central atom. As the most electronegative element, fluorine also cannot be a central atom.

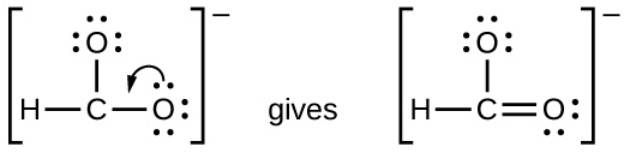
3. Distribute the remaining electrons as lone pairs on the terminal atoms (except hydrogen) to complete their valence shells with an octet of electrons.
   - There are no remaining electrons on $\mathrm{SiH_4}$, so it is unchanged:



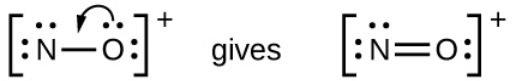
4. Place all remaining electrons on the central atom.
   - For $\mathrm{SiH_4}$, $\mathrm{CHO_2^-}$, and $\mathrm{NO^+}$, there are no remaining electrons; we already placed all of the electrons determined in Step 1.
   - For $\mathrm{OF_2}$, we had 16 electrons remaining in Step 3, and we placed 12, leaving 4 to be placed on the central atom:



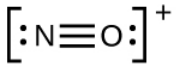
5. Rearrange the electrons of the outer atoms to make multiple bonds with the central atom in order to obtain octets wherever possible.
   - $\mathrm{SiH_4}$: Si already has an octet, so nothing needs to be done.
   - $\mathrm{CHO2^-}$: We have distributed the valence electrons as lone pairs on the oxygen atoms, but the carbon atom lacks an octet:



   - $\mathrm{NO^+}$: For this ion, we added eight valence electrons, but neither atom has an octet. We cannot add any more electrons since we have already used the total that we found in Step 1, so we must move electrons to form a multiple bond:



This still does not produce an octet, so we must move another pair, forming a triple bond:



- In OF_2, each atom has an octet as drawn, so nothing changes.

Example 5.4.1: Writing Lewis Structures

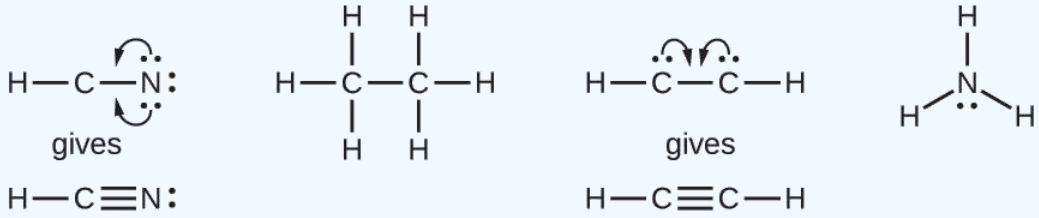
NASA's Cassini-Huygens mission detected a large cloud of toxic hydrogen cyanide (HCN) on Titan, one of Saturn's moons. Titan also contains ethane (H_3CCH_3), acetylene (HCCH), and ammonia (NH_3). What are the Lewis structures of these molecules?

Solution

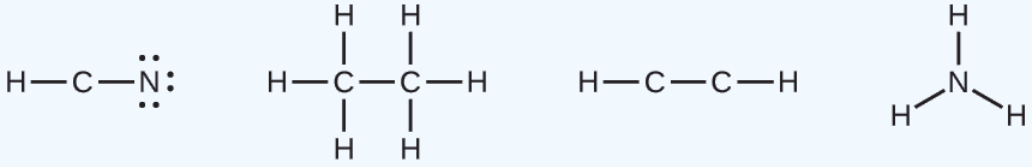
Step 1. *Calculate the number of valence electrons.*

HCN: (1 × 1) + (4 × 1) + (5 × 1) = 10
H_3CCH_3: (1 × 3) + (2 × 4) + (1 × 3) = 14
HCCH: (1 × 1) + (2 × 4) + (1 × 1) = 10
NH_3: (5 × 1) + (3 × 1) = 8

Step 2 *Draw a skeleton and connect the atoms with single bonds.* Remember that H is never a central atom:

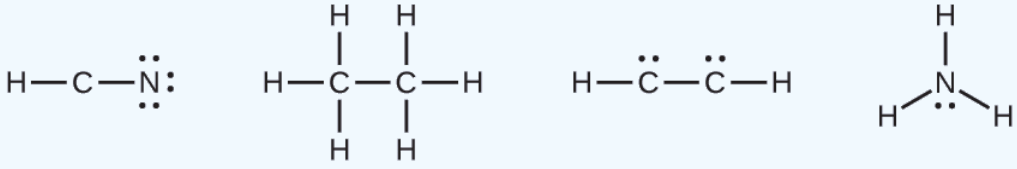


Step 3. *Where needed, distribute electrons to the terminal atoms:*



HCN: six electrons placed on N
H_3CCH_3: no electrons remain
HCCH: no terminal atoms capable of accepting electrons
NH_3: no terminal atoms capable of accepting electrons

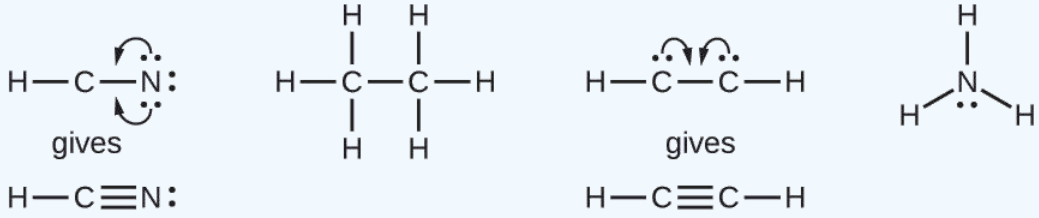
Step 4. *Where needed, place remaining electrons on the central atom:*



HCN: no electrons remain
H_3CCH_3: no electrons remain
HCCH: four electrons placed on carbon
NH_3: two electrons placed on nitrogen

Step 5. *Where needed, rearrange electrons to form multiple bonds in order to obtain an octet on each atom:*

HCN: form two more C–N bonds
H_3CCH_3: all atoms have the correct number of electrons
HCCH: form a triple bond between the two carbon atoms
NH_3: all atoms have the correct number of electrons



Exercise 5.4.1

Both carbon monoxide, CO, and carbon dioxide, CO_2, are products of the combustion of fossil fuels. Both of these gases also cause problems: CO is toxic and CO_2 has been implicated in global climate change. What are the Lewis structures of these two molecules?

Answer



How Sciences Interconnect: Fullerene Chemistry

Carbon, in various forms and compounds, has been known since prehistoric times, . Soot has been used as a pigment (often called carbon black) for thousands of years. Charcoal, high in carbon content, has likewise been critical to human development. Carbon is the key additive to iron in the steelmaking process, and diamonds have a unique place in both culture and industry. With all this usage came significant study, particularly with the emergence of organic chemistry. And even with all the known forms and functions of the element, scientists began to uncover the potential for even more varied and extensive carbon structures.

As early as the 1960s, chemists began to observe complex carbon structures, but they had little evidence to support their concepts, or their work did not make it into the mainstream. Eiji Osawa predicted a spherical form based on observations of a similar structure, but his work was not widely known outside Japan. In a similar manner, the most comprehensive advance was likely computational chemist Elena Galpern's, who in 1973 predicted a highly stable, 60-carbon molecule; her work was also isolated to her native Russia. Still later, Harold Kroto, working with Canadian radio astronomers, sought to uncover the nature of long carbon chains that had been discovered in interstellar space.

Kroto sought to use a machine developed by Richard Smalley's team at Rice University to learn more about these structures. Together with Robert Curl, who had introduced them, and three graduate students—James Heath, Sean O'Brien, and Yuan Liu —they performed an intensive series of experiments that led to a major discovery.

In 1996, the Nobel Prize in Chemistry was awarded to Richard Smalley (Figure 5.4.3), Robert Curl, and Harold Kroto for their work in discovering a new form of carbon, the C_{60} buckminsterfullerene molecule. An entire class of compounds, including spheres and tubes of various shapes, were discovered based on C_{60}. This type of molecule, called a fullerene, shows promise in a variety of applications. Because of their size and shape, fullerenes can encapsulate other molecules, so they have shown

potential in various applications from hydrogen storage to targeted drug delivery systems. They also possess unique electronic and optical properties that have been put to good use in solar powered devices and chemical sensors.

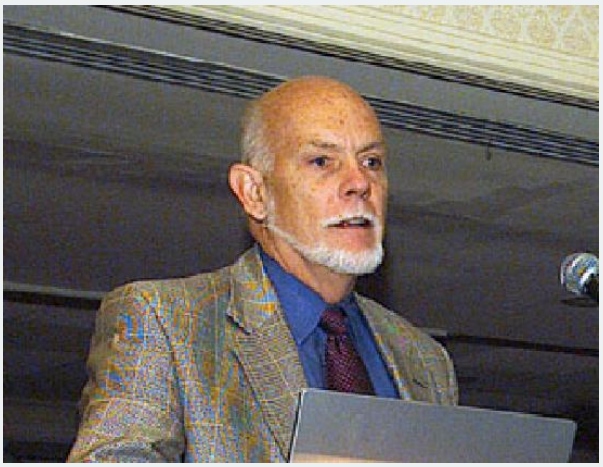


Figure 5.4.3: Richard Smalley (1943–2005), a professor of physics, chemistry, and astronomy at Rice University, was one of the leading advocates for fullerene chemistry. Upon his death in 2005, the US Senate honored him as the "Father of Nanotechnology." (credit: United States Department of Energy)

Exceptions to the Octet Rule

Many covalent molecules have central atoms that do not have eight electrons in their Lewis structures. These molecules fall into three categories:

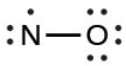
- Odd-electron molecules have an odd number of valence electrons, and therefore have an unpaired electron.
- Electron-deficient molecules have a central atom that has fewer electrons than needed for a noble gas configuration.
- Hypervalent molecules have a central atom that has more electrons than needed for a noble gas configuration.

Odd-electron Molecules

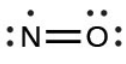
We call molecules that contain an odd number of electrons free radicals. Nitric oxide, NO, is an example of an odd-electron molecule; it is produced in internal combustion engines when oxygen and nitrogen react at high temperatures.

To draw the Lewis structure for an odd-electron molecule like NO, we follow the same five steps we would for other molecules, but with a few minor changes:

1. *Determine the total number of valence (outer shell) electrons*. The sum of the valence electrons is 5 (from N) + 6 (from O) = 11. The odd number immediately tells us that we have a free radical, so we know that not every atom can have eight electrons in its valence shell.
2. *Draw a skeleton structure of the molecule*. We can easily draw a skeleton with an N–O single bond:
   N–O
3. *Distribute the remaining electrons as lone pairs on the terminal atoms*. In this case, there is no central atom, so we distribute the electrons around both atoms. We give eight electrons to the more electronegative atom in these situations; thus oxygen has the filled valence shell:

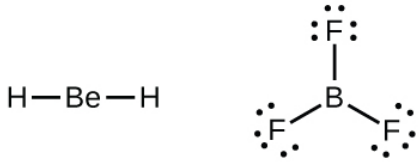


4. *Place all remaining electrons on the central atom.* Since there are no remaining electrons, this step does not apply.
5. *Rearrange the electrons to make multiple bonds with the central atom in order to obtain octets wherever possible.* We know that an odd-electron molecule cannot have an octet for every atom, but we want to get each atom as close to an octet as possible. In this case, nitrogen has only five electrons around it. To move closer to an octet for nitrogen, we take one of the lone pairs from oxygen and use it to form a NO double bond. (We cannot take another lone pair of electrons on oxygen and form a triple bond because nitrogen would then have nine electrons:)

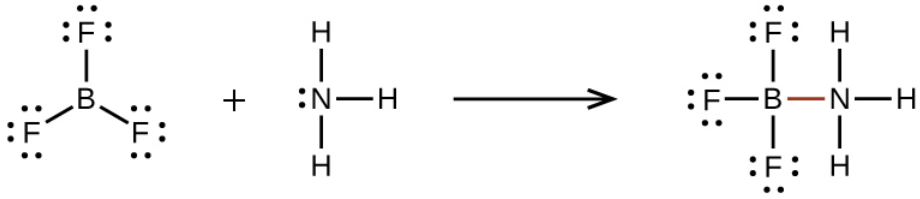


Electron-deficient Molecules

We will also encounter a few molecules that contain central atoms that do not have a filled valence shell. Generally, these are molecules with central atoms from groups 2 and 13, outer atoms that are hydrogen, or other atoms that do not form multiple bonds. For example, in the Lewis structures of beryllium dihydride, BeH_2, and boron trifluoride, BF_3, the beryllium and boron atoms each have only four and six electrons, respectively. It is possible to draw a structure with a double bond between a boron atom and a fluorine atom in BF_3, satisfying the octet rule, but experimental evidence indicates the bond lengths are closer to that expected for B–F single bonds. This suggests the best Lewis structure has three B–F single bonds and an electron deficient boron. The reactivity of the compound is also consistent with an electron deficient boron. However, the B–F bonds are slightly shorter than what is actually expected for B–F single bonds, indicating that some double bond character is found in the actual molecule.



An atom like the boron atom in BF_3, which does not have eight electrons, is very reactive. It readily combines with a molecule containing an atom with a lone pair of electrons. For example, NH_3 reacts with BF_3 because the lone pair on nitrogen can be shared with the boron atom:



Hypervalent Molecules

Elements in the second period of the periodic table ($n = 2$) can accommodate only eight electrons in their valence shell orbitals because they have only four valence orbitals (one 2*s* and three 2*p* orbitals). Elements in the third and higher periods ($n \geq 3$) have more than four valence orbitals and can share more than four pairs of electrons with other atoms because they have empty *d* orbitals in the same shell. Molecules formed from these elements are sometimes called hypervalent molecules. Figure 5.4.4: shows the Lewis structures for two hypervalent molecules, PCl_5 and SF_6.

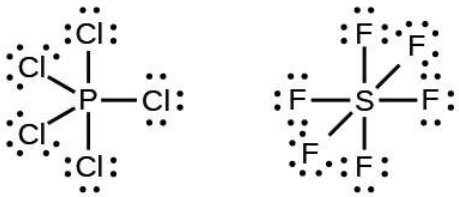
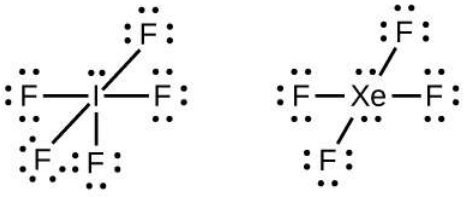


Figure 5.4.4: In PCl_5, the central atom phosphorus shares five pairs of electrons. In SF_6, sulfur shares six pairs of electrons.

In some hypervalent molecules, such as IF_5 and XeF_4, some of the electrons in the outer shell of the central atom are lone pairs:



When we write the Lewis structures for these molecules, we find that we have electrons left over after filling the valence shells of the outer atoms with eight electrons. These additional electrons must be assigned to the central atom.

Example 5.4.2: Writing Lewis Structures - Octet Rule Violations

Xenon is a noble gas, but it forms a number of stable compounds. We examined XeF_4 earlier. What are the Lewis structures of XeF_2 and XeF_6?

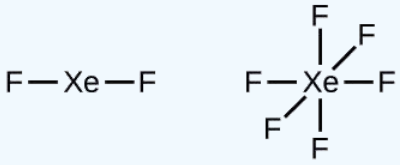
Solution

We can draw the Lewis structure of any covalent molecule by following the six steps discussed earlier. In this case, we can condense the last few steps, since not all of them apply.

Step 1. Calculate the number of valence electrons:

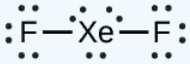
XeF_2: 8 + (2 × 7) = 22
XeF_6: 8 + (6 × 7) = 50

Step 2. Draw a skeleton joining the atoms by single bonds. Xenon will be the central atom because fluorine cannot be a central atom:

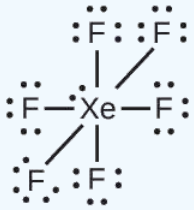


Step 3. Distribute the remaining electrons.

XeF_2: We place three lone pairs of electrons around each F atom, accounting for 12 electrons and giving each F atom 8 electrons. Thus, six electrons (three lone pairs) remain. These lone pairs must be placed on the Xe atom. This is acceptable because Xe atoms have empty valence shell *d* orbitals and can accommodate more than eight electrons. The Lewis structure of XeF_2 shows two bonding pairs and three lone pairs of electrons around the Xe atom:



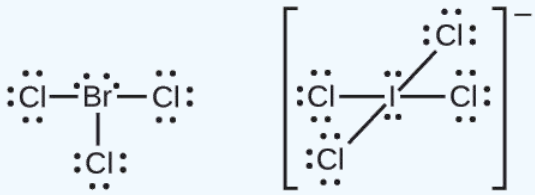
XeF_6: We place three lone pairs of electrons around each F atom, accounting for 36 electrons. Two electrons remain, and this lone pair is placed on the Xe atom:



Exercise 5.4.2: Interhalogens

The halogens form a class of compounds called the interhalogens, in which halogen atoms covalently bond to each other. Write the Lewis structures for the interhalogens $BrCl_3$ and ICl_4^-.

Answer



This page titled 5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.3: Lewis Symbols and Structures** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Compute formal charges for atoms in any Lewis structure
- Use formal charges to identify the most reasonable Lewis structure for a given molecule
- Explain the concept of resonance and draw Lewis structures representing resonance forms for a given molecule

In the previous section, we discussed how to write Lewis structures for molecules and polyatomic ions. As we have seen, however, in some cases, there is seemingly more than one valid structure for a molecule. We can use the concept of formal charges to help us predict the most appropriate Lewis structure when more than one is reasonable.

Calculating Formal Charge

The formal charge of an atom in a molecule is the *hypothetical* charge the atom would have if we could redistribute the electrons in the bonds evenly between the atoms. Another way of saying this is that formal charge results when we take the number of valence electrons of a neutral atom, subtract the nonbonding electrons, and then subtract the number of bonds connected to that atom in the Lewis structure.

Thus, we calculate formal charge as follows:

$$\text{formal charge } = \#\text{ valence shell electrons (free atom) } - \#\text{ lone pair electrons } - \frac{1}{2}\#\text{ bonding electrons}$$

We can double-check formal charge calculations by determining the sum of the formal charges for the whole structure. The sum of the formal charges of all atoms in a molecule must be zero; the sum of the formal charges in an ion should equal the charge of the ion.

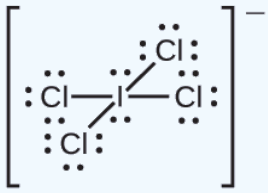
We must remember that the formal charge calculated for an atom is not the *actual* charge of the atom in the molecule. Formal charge is only a useful bookkeeping procedure; it does not indicate the presence of actual charges.

Example 5.5.1: Calculating Formal Charge from Lewis Structures

Assign formal charges to each atom in the interhalogen ion

Solution

Step 1. *We divide the bonding electron pairs equally for all I–Cl bonds:*



Step 2. *We assign lone pairs of electrons to their atoms*. Each Cl atom now has seven electrons assigned to it, and the I atom has eight.

Step 3. *Subtract this number from the number of valence electrons for the neutral atom:*

I: 7 – 8 = –1
Cl: 7 – 7 = 0

The sum of the formal charges of all the atoms equals –1, which is identical to the charge of the ion (–1).

? Exercise 5.5.1

Calculate the formal charge for each atom in the carbon monoxide molecule:



Answer

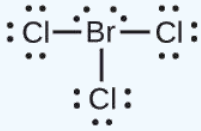
C −1, O +1

✓ Example 5.5.2: Calculating Formal Charge from Lewis Structures

Assign formal charges to each atom in the interhalogen molecule $BrCl_3$.

Solution

Step 1. *Assign one of the electrons in each Br–Cl bond to the Br atom and one to the Cl atom in that bond:*



Step 2. *Assign the lone pairs to their atom.* Now each Cl atom has seven electrons and the Br atom has seven electrons.

Step 3. *Subtract this number from the number of valence electrons for the neutral atom.* This gives the formal charge:

Br: 7 – 7 = 0
Cl: 7 – 7 = 0

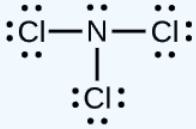
All atoms in $BrCl_3$ have a formal charge of zero, and the sum of the formal charges totals zero, as it must in a neutral molecule.

? Exercise 5.5.2

Determine the formal charge for each atom in NCl_3.

Answer

N: 0; all three Cl atoms: 0

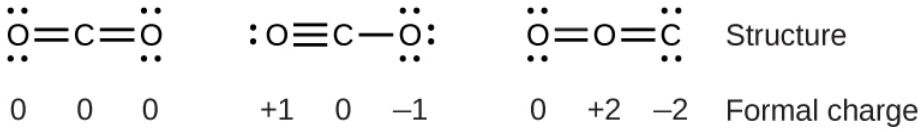


Using Formal Charge to Predict Molecular Structure

The arrangement of atoms in a molecule or ion is called its **molecular structure**. In many cases, following the steps for writing Lewis structures may lead to more than one possible molecular structure—different multiple bond and lone-pair electron placements or different arrangements of atoms, for instance. A few guidelines involving formal charge can be helpful in deciding which of the possible structures is most likely for a particular molecule or ion:

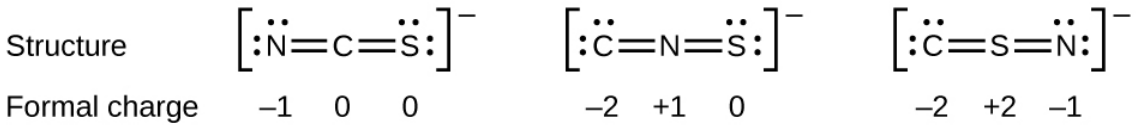
1. A molecular structure in which all formal charges are zero is preferable to one in which some formal charges are not zero.
2. If the Lewis structure must have nonzero formal charges, the arrangement with the smallest nonzero formal charges is preferable.
3. Lewis structures are preferable when adjacent formal charges are zero or of the opposite sign.
4. When we must choose among several Lewis structures with similar distributions of formal charges, the structure with the negative formal charges on the more electronegative atoms is preferable.

To see how these guidelines apply, let us consider some possible structures for carbon dioxide, CO_2. We know from our previous discussion that the less electronegative atom typically occupies the central position, but formal charges allow us to understand *why* this occurs. We can draw three possibilities for the structure: carbon in the center and double bonds, carbon in the center with a single and triple bond, and oxygen in the center with double bonds:



Comparing the three formal charges, we can definitively identify the structure on the left as preferable because it has only formal charges of zero (Guideline 1).

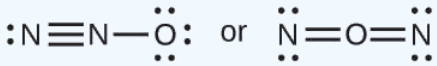
As another example, the thiocyanate ion, an ion formed from a carbon atom, a nitrogen atom, and a sulfur atom, could have three different molecular structures: NCS^-, CNS^-, or CSN^-. The formal charges present in each of these molecular structures can help us pick the most likely arrangement of atoms. Possible Lewis structures and the formal charges for each of the three possible structures for the thiocyanate ion are shown here:



Note that the sum of the formal charges in each case is equal to the charge of the ion (–1). However, the first arrangement of atoms is preferred because it has the lowest number of atoms with nonzero formal charges (Guideline 2). Also, it places the least electronegative atom in the center, and the negative charge on the more electronegative element (Guideline 4).

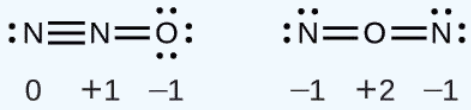
Example 5.5.3: Using Formal Charge to Determine Molecular Structure

Nitrous oxide, N_2O, commonly known as laughing gas, is used as an anesthetic in minor surgeries, such as the routine extraction of wisdom teeth. Which is the more likely structure for nitrous oxide?

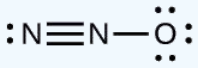


Solution

Determining formal charge yields the following:



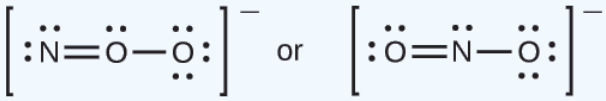
The structure with a terminal oxygen atom best satisfies the criteria for the most stable distribution of formal charge:



The number of atoms with formal charges are minimized (Guideline 2), there is no formal charge with a magnitude greater than one (Guideline 2), the negative formal charge is on the more electronegative element (Guideline 4), and the less electronegative atom is in the center position.

Exercise 5.5.3

Which is the most likely molecular structure for the nitrite ion?



Answer

ONO^-

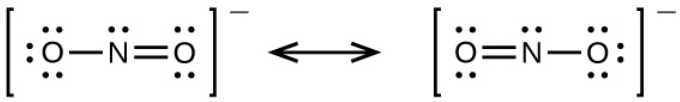
Resonance

Notice that the more likely structure for the nitrite anion in Example 5.5.3 may actually be drawn in two different ways, distinguished by the locations of the N-O and N=O bonds:



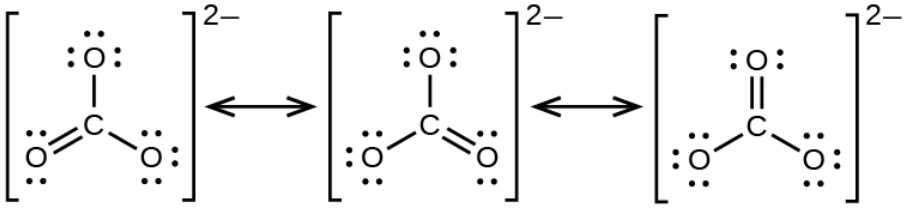
If nitrite ions do indeed contain a single and a double bond, we would expect for the two bond lengths to be different. A double bond between two atoms is shorter (and stronger) than a single bond between the same two atoms. Experiments show, however, that both N–O bonds in have the same strength and length, and are identical in all other properties.

It is not possible to write a single Lewis structure for in which nitrogen has an octet and both bonds are equivalent. Instead, we use the concept of **resonance**: if two or more Lewis structures with the same arrangement of atoms can be written for a molecule or ion, the actual distribution of electrons is an *average* of that shown by the various Lewis structures. The actual distribution of electrons in each of the nitrogen-oxygen bonds in is the average of a double bond and a single bond. We call the individual Lewis structures **resonance forms**. The actual electronic structure of the molecule (the average of the resonance forms) is called a **resonance hybrid** of the individual resonance forms. A double-headed arrow between Lewis structures indicates that they are resonance forms.



We should remember that a molecule described as a resonance hybrid *never* possesses an electronic structure described by either resonance form. It does not fluctuate between resonance forms; rather, the actual electronic structure is *always* the average of that shown by all resonance forms. George Wheland, one of the pioneers of resonance theory, used a historical analogy to describe the relationship between resonance forms and resonance hybrids. A medieval traveler, having never before seen a rhinoceros, described it as a hybrid of a dragon and a unicorn because it had many properties in common with both. Just as a rhinoceros is neither a dragon sometimes nor a unicorn at other times, a resonance hybrid is neither of its resonance forms at any given time. Like a rhinoceros, it is a real entity that experimental evidence has shown to exist. It has some characteristics in common with its resonance forms, but the resonance forms themselves are convenient, imaginary images (like the unicorn and the dragon).

The carbonate anion, provides a second example of resonance:



One oxygen atom must have a double bond to carbon to complete the octet on the central atom. All oxygen atoms, however, are equivalent, and the double bond could form from any one of the three atoms. This gives rise to three resonance forms of the carbonate ion. Because we can write three identical resonance structures, we know that the actual arrangement of electrons in the carbonate ion is the average of the three structures. Again, experiments show that all three C–O bonds are exactly the same.

Link to Learning

Use this online quiz to practice your skills in drawing resonance structures and estimating formal charges.

This page titled 5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.4: Formal Charges and Resonance** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.6: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the energetics of covalent and ionic bond formation and breakage
- Use the Born-Haber cycle to compute lattice energies for ionic compounds
- Use average covalent bond energies to estimate enthalpies of reaction

A bond's strength describes how strongly each atom is joined to another atom, and therefore how much energy is required to break the bond between the two atoms. In this section, you will learn about the bond strength of covalent bonds, and then compare that to the strength of ionic bonds, which is related to the lattice energy of a compound.

Bond Strength: Covalent Bonds

Stable molecules exist because covalent bonds hold the atoms together. We measure the strength of a covalent bond by the energy required to break it, that is, the energy necessary to separate the bonded atoms. Separating any pair of bonded atoms requires energy. The stronger a bond, the greater the energy required to break it.

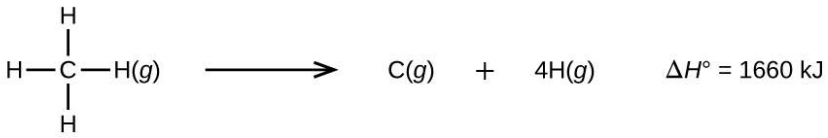
The energy required to break a specific covalent bond in one mole of gaseous molecules is called the **bond energy** or the **bond dissociation energy**. The bond energy for a diatomic molecule, $\mathrm{D_{X–Y}}$, is defined as the **standard enthalpy change** for the endothermic reaction:

$$\mathrm{XY(g) \longrightarrow X(g) + Y(g)} \qquad \mathrm{D_{\text{X}–\text{Y}}} = \Delta H^\circ$$

For example, the bond energy of the pure covalent $\mathrm{H–H}$ bond, $\mathrm{D_{H–H}}$, is 436 kJ per mole of $\mathrm{H–H}$ bonds broken:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,H(g)} \qquad D_{\mathrm{H–H}} = \Delta H^\circ = 436\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Molecules with three or more atoms have two or more bonds. The sum of all bond energies in such a molecule is equal to the standard enthalpy change for the endothermic reaction that breaks all the bonds in the molecule. For example, the sum of the four $\mathrm{C–H}$ bond energies in $\mathrm{CH_4}$, 1660 kJ, is equal to the standard enthalpy change of the reaction:



The average $\mathrm{C–H}$ bond energy, $\mathrm{D_{C–H}}$, is 1660/4 = 415 kJ/mol because there are four moles of $\mathrm{C–H}$ bonds broken per mole of the reaction. Although the four $\mathrm{C–H}$ bonds are equivalent in the original molecule, they do not each require the same energy to break; once the first bond is broken (which requires 439 kJ/mol), the remaining bonds are easier to break. The 415 kJ/mol value is the average, not the exact value required to break any one bond.

The strength of a bond between two atoms increases as the number of electron pairs in the bond increases. Generally, as the bond strength increases, the bond length decreases. Thus, we find that triple bonds are stronger and shorter than double bonds between the same two atoms; likewise, double bonds are stronger and shorter than single bonds between the same two atoms. Average bond energies for some common bonds appear in Table 5.6.1, and a comparison of bond lengths and bond strengths for some common bonds appears in Table 5.6.2. When one atom bonds to various atoms in a group, the bond strength typically decreases as we move down the group. For example, $\mathrm{C–F}$ is 439 kJ/mol, $\mathrm{C–Cl}$ is 330 kJ/mol, and $\mathrm{C–Br}$ is 275 kJ/mol.

Table 5.6.1: Bond Energies (kJ/mol)

Bond	Bond Energy	Bond	Bond Energy	Bond	Bond Energy
H–H	436	C–S	260	F–Cl	255
H–C	415	C–Cl	330	F–Br	235
H–N	390	C–Br	275	Si–Si	230

Bond	Bond Energy	Bond	Bond Energy	Bond	Bond Energy
H–O	464	C–I	240	Si–P	215
H–F	569	N–N	160	Si–S	225
H–Si	395	N=N	418	Si–Cl	359
H–P	320	N≡N	946	Si–Br	290
H–S	340	N–O	200	Si–I	215
H–Cl	432	N–F	270	P–P	215
H–Br	370	N–P	210	P–S	230
H–I	295	N–Cl	200	P–Cl	330
C–C	345	N–Br	245	P–Br	270
C=C	611	O–O	140	P–I	215
C≡C	837	O=O	498	S–S	215
C–N	290	O–F	160	S–Cl	250
C=N	615	O–Si	370	S–Br	215
C≡N	891	O–P	350	Cl–Cl	243
C–O	350	O–Cl	205	Cl–Br	220
C=O	741	O–I	200	Cl–I	210
C≡O	1080	F–F	160	Br–Br	190
C–F	439	F–Si	540	Br–I	180
C–Si	360	F–P	489	I–I	150
C–P	265	F–S	285		

Table 5.6.2: Average Bond Lengths and Bond Energies for Some Common Bonds

Bond	Bond Length (Å)	Bond Energy (kJ/mol)
C–C	1.54	345
C=C	1.34	611
C≡C	1.20	837
C–N	1.43	290
C=N	1.38	615
C≡N	1.16	891
C–O	1.43	350
C=O	1.23	741
C≡O	1.13	1080

We can use bond energies to calculate approximate enthalpy changes for reactions where enthalpies of formation are not available. Calculations of this type will also tell us whether a reaction is exothermic or endothermic. An exothermic reaction (ΔH negative, heat produced) results when the bonds in the products are stronger than the bonds in the reactants. An endothermic reaction (ΔH positive, heat absorbed) results when the bonds in the products are weaker than those in the reactants.

The enthalpy change, ΔH, for a chemical reaction is approximately equal to the sum of the energy required to break all bonds in the reactants (energy "in", positive sign) plus the energy released when all bonds are formed in the products (energy "out," negative sign). This can be expressed mathematically in the following way:

$$\Delta H = \sum D_{\text{bonds broken}} - \sum D_{\text{bonds formed}}$$

In this expression, the symbol $\sum$ means "the sum of" and D represents the bond energy in kilojoules per mole, which is always a positive number. The bond energy is obtained from a table (like Table 5.6.2) and will depend on whether the particular bond is a single, double, or triple bond. Thus, in calculating enthalpies in this manner, it is important that we consider the bonding in all reactants and products. Because D values are typically averages for one type of bond in many different molecules, this calculation provides a rough estimate, not an exact value, for the enthalpy of reaction.

Consider the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{H_2(g) + Cl_2(g) \longrightarrow 2\,HCl(g)}$$

or

$$\mathrm{H{-}H(g) + Cl{-}Cl(g) \longrightarrow 2\,H{-}Cl(g)}$$

To form two moles of HCl, one mole of H– H bonds and one mole of Cl– Cl bonds must be broken. The energy required to break these bonds is the sum of the bond energy of the H– H bond (436 kJ/mol) and the Cl– Cl bond (243 kJ/mol). During the reaction, two moles of H– Cl bonds are formed (bond energy = $432\ \text{kJ/mol}$), releasing $2 \times 432\ \text{kJ}$; or 864 kJ. Because the bonds in the products are stronger than those in the reactants, the reaction releases more energy than it consumes:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H &= \sum D_{\text{bonds broken}} - \sum D_{\text{bonds formed}} \\ &= [D_{\mathrm{H{-}H}} + D_{\mathrm{Cl{-}Cl}}] - 2D_{\mathrm{H{-}Cl}} \\ &= [436 + 243] - 2(432) \\ &= -185\ \text{kJ}\end{aligned}$$

This excess energy is released as heat, so the reaction is exothermic. Appendix G gives a value for the standard molar enthalpy of formation of HCl(g), ΔH_f^o of –92.307 kJ/mol. Twice that value is –184.6 kJ, which agrees well with the answer obtained earlier for the formation of two moles of HCl.

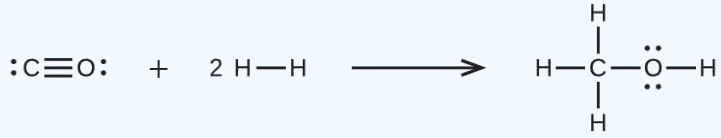
Example 5.6.1: Using Bond Energies to Calculate Approximate Enthalpy Changes

Methanol, CH_3OH, may be an excellent alternative fuel. The high-temperature reaction of steam and carbon produces a mixture of the gases carbon monoxide, CO, and hydrogen, H_2, from which methanol can be produced. Using the bond energies in Table 5.6.2, calculate the approximate enthalpy change, ΔH, for the reaction here:

$$\mathrm{CO(g) + 2\,H_2(g) \longrightarrow CH_3OH(g)}$$

Solution

First, we need to write the Lewis structures of the reactants and the products:



From this, we see that ΔH for this reaction involves the energy required to break a C–O triple bond and two H–H single bonds, as well as the energy produced by the formation of three C–H single bonds, a C–O single bond, and an O–H single bond. We can express this as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H &= \Sigma D_{\text{bonds broken}} - \Sigma D_{\text{bonds formed}} \\ &= [D_{C\equiv O} + 2\,(D_{H-H})] - [3\,(D_{C-H}) + D_{C-O} + D_{O-H}]\end{aligned}$$

Using the bond energy values in Table 5.6.2, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H &= [1080 + 2(436)] - [3(415) + 350 + 464] \\ &= -107 kJ\end{aligned}$$

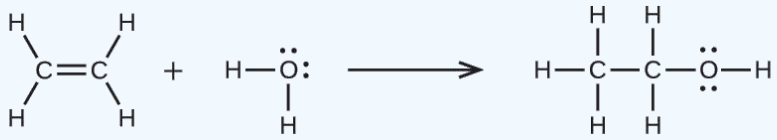
We can compare this value to the value calculated based on data from Appendix G:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta H &= \left[\Delta H_f^\circ CH_3OH(g)\right] - \left[\Delta H_f^\circ CO(g) + 2 \times \Delta H_f^\circ H_2\right] \\ &= [-201.0] - [-110.52 + 2 \times 0] \\ &= -90.5 kJ\end{aligned}$$

Note that there is a fairly significant gap between the values calculated using the two different methods. This occurs because D values are the *average* of different bond strengths; therefore, they often give only rough agreement with other data.

? Exercise 5.6.1

Ethyl alcohol, CH_3CH_2OH, was one of the first organic chemicals deliberately synthesized by humans. It has many uses in industry, and it is the alcohol contained in alcoholic beverages. It can be obtained by the fermentation of sugar or synthesized by the hydration of ethylene in the following reaction:



Using the bond energies in Table 5.6.2, calculate an approximate enthalpy change, ΔH, for this reaction.

Answer

–35 kJ

Ionic Bond Strength and Lattice Energy

An ionic compound is stable because of the electrostatic attraction between its positive and negative ions. The lattice energy of a compound is a measure of the strength of this attraction. The **lattice energy** ($\Delta H_{lattice}$) of an ionic compound is defined as the energy required to separate one mole of the solid into its component gaseous ions. For the ionic solid MX, the lattice energy is the enthalpy change of the process:

$$MX(s) \longrightarrow M^{n+}(g) + X^{n-}(g) \quad \Delta H_{\text{lattice}}$$

Note that we are using the convention where the ionic solid is separated into ions, so our lattice energies will be *endothermic* (positive values). Some texts use the equivalent but opposite convention, defining lattice energy as the energy released when separate ions combine to form a lattice and giving negative (exothermic) values. Thus, if you are looking up lattice energies in another reference, be certain to check which definition is being used. In both cases, a larger magnitude for lattice energy indicates a more stable ionic compound. For sodium chloride, $\Delta H_{\text{lattice}}$ = 769 kJ. Thus, it requires 769 kJ to separate one mole of solid NaCl into gaseous Na^+ and Cl^- ions. When one mole each of gaseous Na^+ and Cl^- ions form solid NaCl, 769 kJ of heat is released.

The lattice energy $\Delta H_{\text{lattice}}$ of an ionic crystal can be expressed by the following equation (derived from Coulomb's law, governing the forces between electric charges):

$$\Delta H_{\text{lattice}} = \frac{C\,(Z^+)\,(Z^-)}{R_0}$$

in which C is a constant that depends on the type of crystal structure; Z^+ and Z^- are the charges on the ions; and R_o is the interionic distance (the sum of the radii of the positive and negative ions). Thus, the lattice energy of an ionic crystal increases rapidly as the charges of the ions increase and the sizes of the ions decrease. When all other parameters are kept constant, doubling the charge of both the cation and anion quadruples the lattice energy. For example, the lattice energy of LiF (Z^+ and Z^- = 1) is 1023 kJ/mol, whereas that of MgO (Z^+ and Z^- = 2) is 3900 kJ/mol (R_o is nearly the same—about 200 pm for both compounds).

Different interatomic distances produce different lattice energies. For example, we can compare the lattice energy of MgF_2 (2957 kJ/mol) to that of MgI_2 (2327 kJ/mol) to observe the effect on lattice energy of the smaller ionic size of F^- as compared to I^-.

Example 5.6.2: Lattice Energy Comparisons

The precious gem ruby is aluminum oxide, Al_2O_3, containing traces of Cr^{3+}. The compound Al_2Se_3 is used in the fabrication of some semiconductor devices. Which has the larger lattice energy, Al_2O_3 or Al_2Se_3?

Solution

In these two ionic compounds, the charges Z^+ and Z^- are the same, so the difference in lattice energy will depend upon R_o. The O^{2-} ion is smaller than the Se^{2-} ion. Thus, Al_2O_3 would have a shorter interionic distance than Al_2Se_3, and Al_2O_3 would have the larger lattice energy.

Exercise 5.6.1

Zinc oxide, ZnO, is a very effective sunscreen. How would the lattice energy of ZnO compare to that of NaCl?

Answer

ZnO would have the larger lattice energy because the Z values of both the cation and the anion in ZnO are greater, and the interionic distance of ZnO is smaller than that of NaCl.

The Born-Haber Cycle

It is not possible to measure lattice energies directly. However, the lattice energy can be calculated using the equation given in the previous section or by using a thermochemical cycle. The **Born-Haber cycle** is an application of Hess's law that breaks down the formation of an ionic solid into a series of individual steps:

- ΔH_f° the standard enthalpy of formation of the compound
- IE, the ionization energy of the metal
- EA, the electron affinity of the nonmetal
- ΔH_s° the enthalpy of sublimation of the metal
- D, the bond dissociation energy of the nonmetal
- $\Delta H_{lattice}$, the lattice energy of the compound

Figure 5.6.1: diagrams the Born-Haber cycle for the formation of solid cesium fluoride.

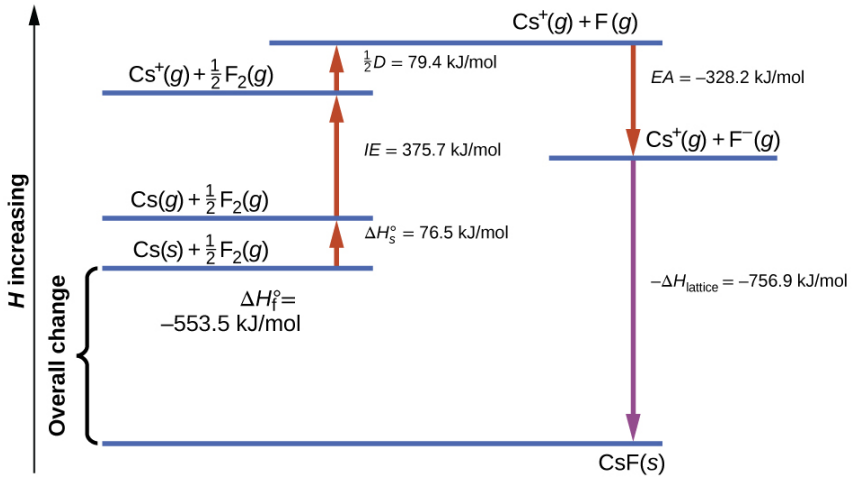


Figure 5.6.1: The Born-Haber cycle shows the relative energies of each step involved in the formation of an ionic solid from the necessary elements in their reference states.

We begin with the elements in their most common states, $Cs(s)$ and $F_2(g)$. The represents the conversion of solid cesium into a gas, and then the ionization energy converts the gaseous cesium atoms into cations. In the next step, we account for the energy required to break the F–F bond to produce fluorine atoms. Converting one mole of fluorine atoms into fluoride ions is an

exothermic process, so this step gives off energy (the electron affinity) and is shown as decreasing along the *y*-axis. We now have one mole of Cs cations and one mole of F anions. These ions combine to produce solid cesium fluoride. The enthalpy change in this step is the negative of the lattice energy, so it is also an exothermic quantity. The total energy involved in this conversion is equal to the experimentally determined enthalpy of formation, ΔH_f° of the compound from its elements. In this case, the overall change is exothermic.

Hess's law can also be used to show the relationship between the enthalpies of the individual steps and the enthalpy of formation. Table $5.6.3$ shows this for fluoride, CsF.

Table 5.6.3

Enthalpy of sublimation of $\mathrm{Cs(s)}$	$\mathrm{Cs(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cs(g)}$	$\Delta H = \Delta H_s^\circ = 76.5\,\mathrm{kJ/mol}$
One-half of the bond energy of $\mathrm{F_2}$	$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{F_2(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{F(g)}$	$\Delta H = \frac{1}{2}D = 79.4\,\mathrm{kJ/mol}$
Ionization energy of $\mathrm{Cs(g)}$	$\mathrm{Cs(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cs^+(g) + e^-}$	$\Delta H = IE = 375.7\,\mathrm{kJ/mol}$
Electron affinity of F	$\mathrm{F(g) + e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{F^-(g)}$	$\Delta H = EA = -328.2\,\mathrm{kJ/mol}$
Negative of the lattice energy of $\mathrm{CsF(s)}$	$\mathrm{Cs^+(g) + F^-(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CsF(s)}$	$\Delta H = -\Delta H_{\text{lattice}} = ?$
Enthalpy of formation of $\mathrm{CsF(s)}$, add steps 1–5	$\Delta H = \Delta H_f^\circ = \Delta H_s^\circ + \frac{1}{2}D + IE + (EA) + (-\Delta H_{\text{lattice}})$ $\mathrm{Cs(s)} + \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{F_2(g)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CsF(s)}$	$\Delta H = -553.5\,\mathrm{kJ/mol}$

Thus, the lattice energy can be calculated from other values. For cesium fluoride, using this data, the lattice energy is:

$$\Delta H_{\text{lattice}} = 76.5 + 79.4 + 375.7 + (-328.2) - (-553.5) = 756.9\,\mathrm{kJ/mol}$$

The Born-Haber cycle may also be used to calculate any one of the other quantities in the equation for lattice energy, provided that the remainder is known. For example, if the relevant enthalpy of sublimation ΔH_s°, ionization energy (IE), bond dissociation enthalpy (D), lattice energy $\Delta H_{\text{lattice}}$, and standard enthalpy of formation are known, the Born-Haber cycle can be used to determine the electron affinity of an atom.

Lattice energies calculated for ionic compounds are typically much higher than bond dissociation energies measured for covalent bonds. Whereas lattice energies typically fall in the range of 600–4000 kJ/mol (some even higher), covalent bond dissociation energies are typically between 150–400 kJ/mol for single bonds. Keep in mind, however, that these are not directly comparable values. For ionic compounds, lattice energies are associated with many interactions, as cations and anions pack together in an extended lattice. For covalent bonds, the bond dissociation energy is associated with the interaction of just two atoms.

This page titled 5.6: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.5: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Predict the structures of small molecules using valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory
- Explain the concepts of polar covalent bonds and molecular polarity
- Assess the polarity of a molecule based on its bonding and structure

Thus far, we have used two-dimensional Lewis structures to represent molecules. However, molecular structure is actually three-dimensional, and it is important to be able to describe molecular bonds in terms of their distances, angles, and relative arrangements in space (Figure 5.7.1). A bond angle is the angle between any two bonds that include a common atom, usually measured in degrees. A bond distance (or bond length) is the distance between the nuclei of two bonded atoms along the straight line joining the nuclei. Bond distances are measured in Ångstroms (1 Å = 10^{-10} m) or picometers (1 pm = 10^{-12} m, 100 pm = 1 Å).

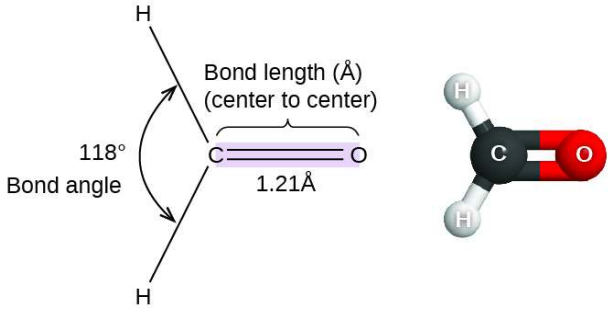


Figure 5.7.1: Bond distances (lengths) and angles are shown for the formaldehyde molecule, H_2CO.

VSEPR Theory

Valence shell electron-pair repulsion theory (VSEPR theory) enables us to predict the molecular structure, including approximate bond angles around a central atom, of a molecule from an examination of the number of bonds and lone electron pairs in its Lewis structure. The VSEPR model assumes that electron pairs in the valence shell of a central atom will adopt an arrangement that minimizes repulsions between these electron pairs by maximizing the distance between them. The electrons in the valence shell of a central atom form either bonding pairs of electrons, located primarily between bonded atoms, or lone pairs. The electrostatic repulsion of these electrons is reduced when the various regions of high electron density assume positions as far from each other as possible.

VSEPR theory predicts the arrangement of electron pairs around each central atom and, usually, the correct arrangement of atoms in a molecule. We should understand, however, that the theory only considers electron-pair repulsions. Other interactions, such as nuclear-nuclear repulsions and nuclear-electron attractions, are also involved in the final arrangement that atoms adopt in a particular molecular structure.

As a simple example of VSEPR theory, let us predict the structure of a gaseous BeF_2 molecule. The Lewis structure of BeF_2 (Figure 5.7.2) shows only two electron pairs around the central beryllium atom. With two bonds and no lone pairs of electrons on the central atom, the bonds are as far apart as possible, and the electrostatic repulsion between these regions of high electron density is reduced to a minimum when they are on opposite sides of the central atom. The bond angle is 180° (Figure 5.7.2).

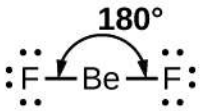


Figure 5.7.2: The BeF_2 molecule adopts a linear structure in which the two bonds are as far apart as possible, on opposite sides of the Be atom.

Figure 5.7.3 illustrates this and other electron-pair geometries that minimize the repulsions among regions of high electron density (bonds and/or lone pairs). Two regions of electron density around a central atom in a molecule form a linear geometry; three regions form a trigonal planar geometry; four regions form a tetrahedral geometry; five regions form a trigonal bipyramidal geometry; and six regions form an octahedral geometry.

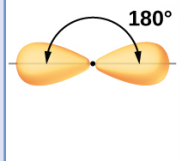
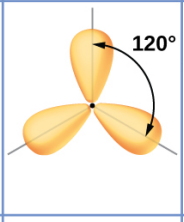
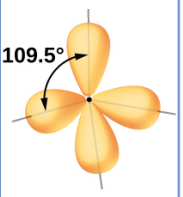
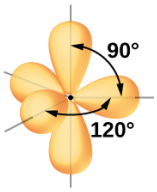
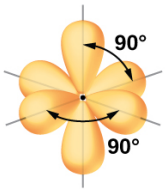
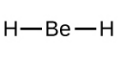
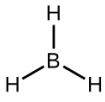
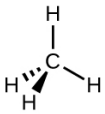
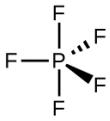
Number of regions	Two regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Three regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Four regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Five regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)	Six regions of high electron density (bonds and/or unshared pairs)
Spatial arrangement					
Line-dash-wedge notation					
Electron region geometry	Linear; 180° angle	Trigonal planar; all angles 120°	Tetrahedral; all angles 109.5°	Trigonal bipyramidal; angles of 90° or 120° An attached atom may be equatorial (in the plane of the triangle) or axial (above or below the plane of the triangle).	Octahedral; all angles 90° or 180°

Figure 5.7.3: The basic electron-pair geometries predicted by VSEPR theory maximize the space around any region of electron density (bonds or lone pairs).

Electron-pair Geometry versus Molecular Structure

It is important to note that electron-pair geometry around a central atom is *not* the same thing as its molecular structure. The electron-pair geometries shown in Figure 5.7.3 describe all regions where electrons are located, bonds as well as lone pairs. Molecular structure describes the location of the *atoms*, not the electrons.

We differentiate between these two situations by naming the geometry that includes *all* electron pairs the electron-pair geometry. The structure that includes only the placement of the atoms in the molecule is called the molecular structure. The electron-pair geometries will be the same as the molecular structures when there are no lone electron pairs around the central atom, but they will be different when there are lone pairs present on the central atom.

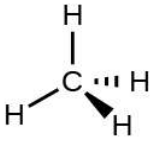


Figure 5.7.4: The molecular structure of the methane molecule, CH_4, is shown with a tetrahedral arrangement of the hydrogen atoms. VSEPR structures like this one are often drawn using the wedge and dash notation, in which solid lines represent bonds in the plane of the page, solid wedges represent bonds coming up out of the plane, and dashed lines represent bonds going down into the plane.

For example, the methane molecule, CH_4, which is the major component of natural gas, has four bonding pairs of electrons around the central carbon atom; the electron-pair geometry is tetrahedral, as is the molecular structure (Figure 5.7.4). On the other hand,

the ammonia molecule, NH_3, also has four electron pairs associated with the nitrogen atom, and thus has a tetrahedral electron-pair geometry. One of these regions, however, is a lone pair, which is not included in the molecular structure, and this lone pair influences the shape of the molecule (Figure 5.7.5).

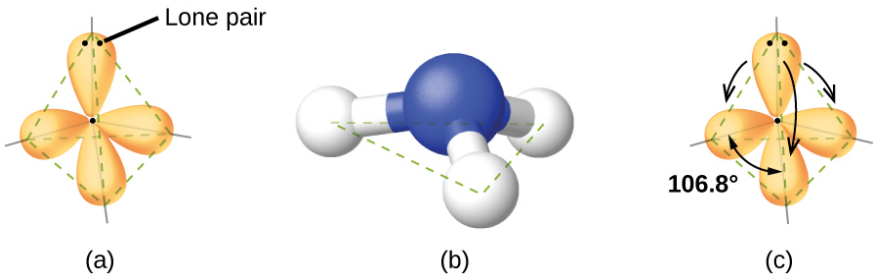


Figure 5.7.5: (a) The electron-pair geometry for the ammonia molecule is tetrahedral with one lone pair and three single bonds. (b) The trigonal pyramidal molecular structure is determined from the electron-pair geometry. (c) The actual bond angles deviate slightly from the idealized angles because the lone pair takes up a larger region of space than do the single bonds, causing the HNH angle to be slightly smaller than 109.5°.

As seen in Figure 5.7.5, small distortions from the ideal angles in Figure 5.7.3 can result from differences in repulsion between various regions of electron density. VSEPR theory predicts these distortions by establishing an order of repulsions and an order of the amount of space occupied by different kinds of electron pairs. The order of electron-pair repulsions from greatest to least repulsion is:

$$\text{lone pair-lone pair} > \text{lone pair-bonding pair} > \text{bonding pair-bonding pair}$$

This order of repulsions determines the amount of space occupied by different regions of electrons. A lone pair of electrons occupies a larger region of space than the electrons in a triple bond; in turn, electrons in a triple bond occupy more space than those in a double bond, and so on. The order of sizes from largest to smallest is:

$$\text{lone pair} > \text{triple bond} > \text{double bond} > \text{single bond}$$

Consider formaldehyde, H_2CO, which is used as a preservative for biological and anatomical specimens (Figure 5.7.1). This molecule has regions of high electron density that consist of two single bonds and one double bond. The basic geometry is trigonal planar with 120° bond angles, but we see that the double bond causes slightly larger angles (121°), and the angle between the single bonds is slightly smaller (118°).

In the ammonia molecule, the three hydrogen atoms attached to the central nitrogen are not arranged in a flat, trigonal planar molecular structure, but rather in a three-dimensional trigonal pyramid (Figure 5.7.5) with the nitrogen atom at the apex and the three hydrogen atoms forming the base. The ideal bond angles in a trigonal pyramid are based on the tetrahedral electron pair geometry. Again, there are slight deviations from the ideal because lone pairs occupy larger regions of space than do bonding electrons. The H–N–H bond angles in NH_3 are slightly smaller than the 109.5° angle in a regular tetrahedron (Figure 5.7.3) because the lone pair-bonding pair repulsion is greater than the bonding pair-bonding pair repulsion (Figure 5.7.5). Figure 5.7.6 illustrates the ideal molecular structures, which are predicted based on the electron-pair geometries for various combinations of lone pairs and bonding pairs.

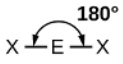
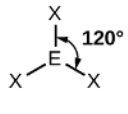
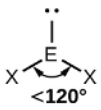
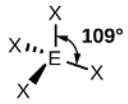
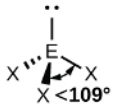
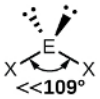
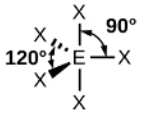
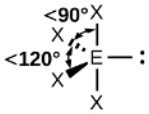
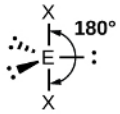
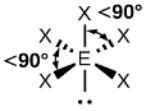
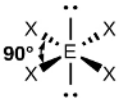
Number of electron regions	Electron region geometries: 0 lone pair	1 lone pair	2 lone pairs	3 lone pairs	4 lone pairs
2	 Linear				
3	 Trigonal planar	 Bent or angular			
4	 Tetrahedral	 Trigonal pyramid	 Bent or angular		
5	 Trigonal bipyramid	 Sawhorse or seesaw	 T-shape	 Linear	
6	 Octahedral	 Square pyramid	 Square planar	 T-shape	 Linear

Figure 5.7.6: The molecular structures are identical to the electron-pair geometries when there are no lone pairs present (first column). For a particular number of electron pairs (row), the molecular structures for one or more lone pairs are determined based on modifications of the corresponding electron-pair geometry.

According to VSEPR theory, the terminal atom locations (Xs in Figure 5.7.6) are equivalent within the linear, trigonal planar, and tetrahedral electron-pair geometries (the first three rows of the table). It does not matter which X is replaced with a lone pair because the molecules can be rotated to convert positions. For trigonal bipyramidal electron-pair geometries, however, there are two distinct X positions, as shown in Figure 5.7.7 an axial position (if we hold a model of a trigonal bipyramid by the two axial positions, we have an axis around which we can rotate the model) and an equatorial position (three positions form an equator around the middle of the molecule). As shown in Figure 5.7.6, the axial position is surrounded by bond angles of 90°, whereas the equatorial position has more space available because of the 120° bond angles. In a trigonal bipyramidal electron-pair geometry, lone pairs always occupy equatorial positions because these more spacious positions can more easily accommodate the larger lone pairs.

Theoretically, we can come up with three possible arrangements for the three bonds and two lone pairs for the ClF_3 molecule (Figure 5.7.7). The stable structure is the one that puts the lone pairs in equatorial locations, giving a T-shaped molecular structure.

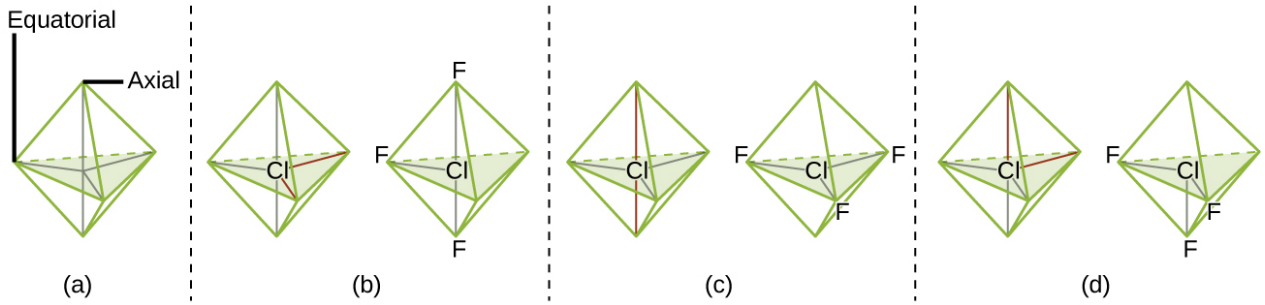


Figure 5.7.7: (a) In a trigonal bipyramid, the two axial positions are located directly across from one another, whereas the three equatorial positions are located in a triangular arrangement. (b–d) The two lone pairs (red lines) in ClF_3 have several possible arrangements, but the T-shaped molecular structure (b) is the one actually observed, consistent with the larger lone pairs both occupying equatorial positions.

When a central atom has two lone electron pairs and four bonding regions, we have an octahedral electron-pair geometry. The two lone pairs are on opposite sides of the octahedron (180° apart), giving a square planar molecular structure that minimizes lone pair-lone pair repulsions (Figure 5.7.6).

Predicting Electron Pair Geometry and Molecular Structure

The following procedure uses VSEPR theory to determine the electron pair geometries and the molecular structures:

1. Write the Lewis structure of the molecule or polyatomic ion.
2. Count the number of regions of electron density (lone pairs and bonds) around the central atom. A single, double, or triple bond counts as one region of electron density.
3. Identify the electron-pair geometry based on the number of regions of electron density: linear, trigonal planar, tetrahedral, trigonal bipyramidal, or octahedral (Figure 5.7.6, first column).
4. Use the number of lone pairs to determine the molecular structure (Figure 5.7.6). If more than one arrangement of lone pairs and chemical bonds is possible, choose the one that will minimize repulsions, remembering that lone pairs occupy more space than multiple bonds, which occupy more space than single bonds. In trigonal bipyramidal arrangements, repulsion is minimized when every lone pair is in an equatorial position. In an octahedral arrangement with two lone pairs, repulsion is minimized when the lone pairs are on opposite sides of the central atom.

The following examples illustrate the use of VSEPR theory to predict the molecular structure of molecules or ions that have no lone pairs of electrons. In this case, the molecular structure is identical to the electron pair geometry.

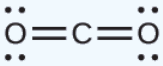
Example 5.7.1: Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure: CO_2 and BCl_3

Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure for each of the following:

a. carbon dioxide, CO_2, a molecule produced by the combustion of fossil fuels
b. boron trichloride, BCl_3, an important industrial chemical

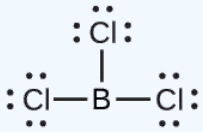
Solution

(a) We write the Lewis structure of CO_2 as:



This shows us two regions of high electron density around the carbon atom—each double bond counts as one region, and there are no lone pairs on the carbon atom. Using VSEPR theory, we predict that the two regions of electron density arrange themselves on opposite sides of the central atom with a bond angle of 180°. The electron-pair geometry and molecular structure are identical, and CO_2 molecules are linear.

(b) We write the Lewis structure of BCl_3 as:



Thus we see that BCl_3 contains three bonds, and there are no lone pairs of electrons on boron. The arrangement of three regions of high electron density gives a trigonal planar electron-pair geometry. The B–Cl bonds lie in a plane with 120° angles between them. BCl_3 also has a trigonal planar molecular structure (Figure 5.7.8).

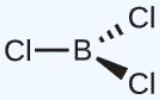


Figure 5.7.8:

The electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of BCl_3 are both trigonal planar. Note that the VSEPR geometry indicates the correct bond angles (120°), unlike the Lewis structure shown above.

? Exercise 5.7.1

Carbonate, is a common polyatomic ion found in various materials from eggshells to antacids. What are the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of this polyatomic ion?

Answer

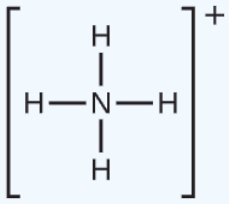
The electron-pair geometry is trigonal planar and the molecular structure is trigonal planar. Due to resonance, all three C–O bonds are identical. Whether they are single, double, or an average of the two, each bond counts as one region of electron density.

✓ Example 5.7.2: Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure: Ammonium

Two of the top 50 chemicals produced in the United States, ammonium nitrate and ammonium sulfate, both used as fertilizers, contain the ammonium ion. Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of the cation.

Solution

We write the Lewis structure of as:



We can see that NH_4^+ contains four bonds from the nitrogen atom to hydrogen atoms and no lone pairs. We expect the four regions of high electron density to arrange themselves so that they point to the corners of a tetrahedron with the central nitrogen atom in the middle (Figure 5.7.6). Therefore, the electron pair geometry of Figure 5.7.9.

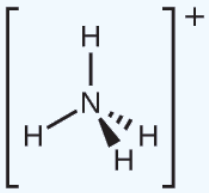


Figure 5.7.9: The ammonium ion displays a tetrahedral electron-pair geometry as well as a tetrahedral molecular structure.

Exercise 5.7.2

Identify a molecule with trigonal bipyramidal molecular structure.

Answer

Any molecule with five electron pairs around the central atoms including no lone pairs will be trigonal bipyramidal. PF_5 is a common example.

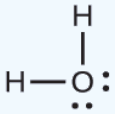
The next several examples illustrate the effect of lone pairs of electrons on molecular structure.

Example 5.7.3: Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure: Lone Pairs on the Central Atom

Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of a water molecule.

Solution

The Lewis structure of H_2O indicates that there are four regions of high electron density around the oxygen atom: two lone pairs and two chemical bonds:



We predict that these four regions are arranged in a tetrahedral fashion (Figure 5.7.10), as indicated in Figure 5.7.6. Thus, the electron-pair geometry is tetrahedral and the molecular structure is bent with an angle slightly less than 109.5°. In fact, the bond angle is 104.5°.

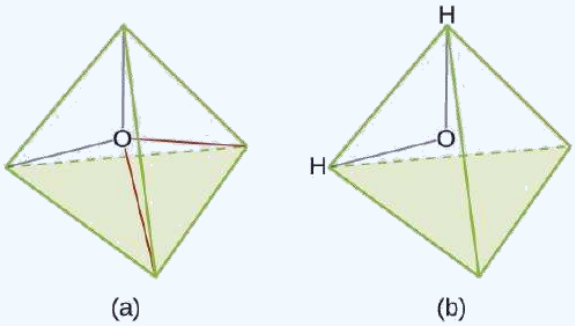


Figure 5.7.10: (a) H_2O has four regions of electron density around the central atom, so it has a tetrahedral electron-pair geometry. (b) Two of the electron regions are lone pairs, so the molecular structure is bent.

Exercise 5.7.3

The hydronium ion, H_3O^+, forms when acids are dissolved in water. Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of this cation.

Answer

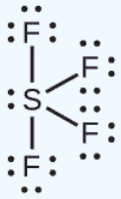
electron pair geometry: tetrahedral; molecular structure: trigonal pyramidal

Example 5.7.4: Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure: SF_4

Sulfur tetrafluoride, SF_4, is extremely valuable for the preparation of fluorine-containing compounds used as herbicides (i.e., SF_4 is used as a fluorinating agent). Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of a SF_4 molecule.

Solution

The Lewis structure of SF_4 indicates five regions of electron density around the sulfur atom: one lone pair and four bonding pairs:



We expect these five regions to adopt a trigonal bipyramidal electron-pair geometry. To minimize lone pair repulsions, the lone pair occupies one of the equatorial positions. The molecular structure (Figure 5.7.11) is that of a seesaw (Figure 5.7.6).

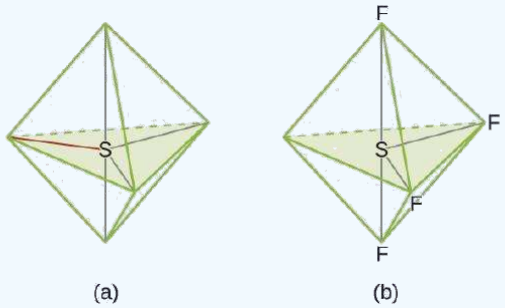


Figure 5.7.11: (a) SF4 has a trigonal bipyramidal arrangement of the five regions of electron density. (b) One of the regions is a lone pair, which results in a seesaw-shaped molecular structure.

Exercise 5.7.4

Predict the electron pair geometry and molecular structure for molecules of XeF_2.

Answer

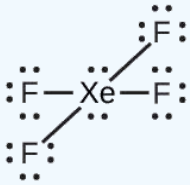
The electron-pair geometry is trigonal bipyramidal. The molecular structure is linear.

Example 5.7.5: Predicting Electron-pair Geometry and Molecular Structure: XeF_4

Of all the noble gases, xenon is the most reactive, frequently reacting with elements such as oxygen and fluorine. Predict the electron-pair geometry and molecular structure of the XeF_4 molecule.

Solution

The Lewis structure of XeF_4 indicates six regions of high electron density around the xenon atom: two lone pairs and four bonds:



These six regions adopt an octahedral arrangement (Figure 5.7.6), which is the electron-pair geometry. To minimize repulsions, the lone pairs should be on opposite sides of the central atom (Figure 5.7.12). The five atoms are all in the same plane and have a square planar molecular structure.

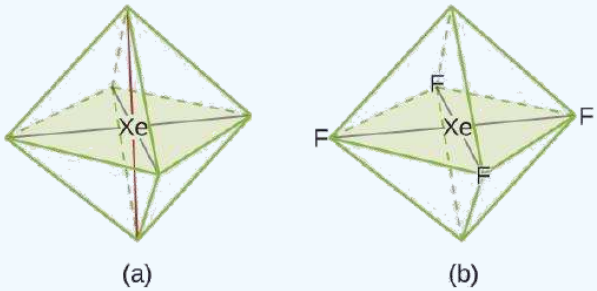


Figure 5.7.12: (a) XeF_4 adopts an octahedral arrangement with two lone pairs (red lines) and four bonds in the electron-pair geometry. (b) The molecular structure is square planar with the lone pairs directly across from one another.

Exercise 5.7.5

In a certain molecule, the central atom has three lone pairs and two bonds. What will the electron pair geometry and molecular structure be?

Answer

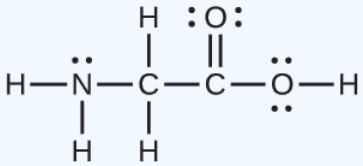
electron pair geometry: trigonal bipyramidal; molecular structure: linear

Molecular Structure for Multicenter Molecules

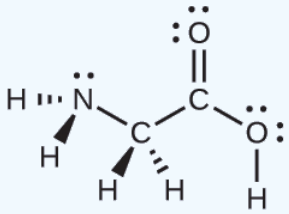
When a molecule or polyatomic ion has only one central atom, the molecular structure completely describes the shape of the molecule. Larger molecules do not have a single central atom, but are connected by a chain of interior atoms that each possess a "local" geometry. The way these local structures are oriented with respect to each other also influences the molecular shape, but such considerations are largely beyond the scope of this introductory discussion. For our purposes, we will only focus on determining the local structures.

Example 5.7.6: Predicting Structure in Multicenter Molecules

The Lewis structure for the simplest amino acid, glycine, $H_2NCH_2CO_2H$, is shown here. Predict the local geometry for the nitrogen atom, the two carbon atoms, and the oxygen atom with a hydrogen atom attached:



Solution



Consider each central atom independently. The electron-pair geometries:

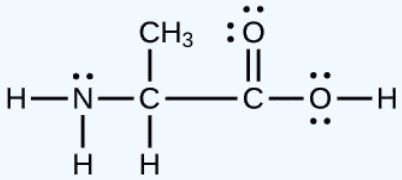
- nitrogen—four regions of electron density; tetrahedral
- carbon ($\underline{C}H_2$)—four regions of electron density; tetrahedral
- carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—three regions of electron density; trigonal planar
- oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—four regions of electron density; tetrahedral

The local structures:

- nitrogen—three bonds, one lone pair; trigonal pyramidal
- carbon ($\underline{C}H_2$)—four bonds, no lone pairs; tetrahedral
- carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—three bonds (double bond counts as one bond), no lone pairs; trigonal planar
- oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—two bonds, two lone pairs; bent (109°)

Exercise 5.7.6

Another amino acid is alanine, which has the Lewis structure shown here. Predict the electron-pair geometry and local structure of the nitrogen atom, the three carbon atoms, and the oxygen atom with hydrogen attached:



Answer

electron-pair geometries: nitrogen—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}H$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}H_3$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—trigonal planar; oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—tetrahedral; local structures: nitrogen—trigonal pyramidal; carbon ($\underline{C}H$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}H_3$)—tetrahedral; carbon ($\underline{C}O_2$)—trigonal planar; oxygen ($\underline{O}H$)—bent (109°)

Link to Learning

The molecular shape simulator lets you build various molecules and practice naming their electron-pair geometries and molecular structures.

Example 5.7.7: Molecular Simulation

Using molecular shape simulator allows us to control whether bond angles and/or lone pairs are displayed by checking or unchecking the boxes under “Options” on the right. We can also use the “Name” checkboxes at bottom-left to display or hide the electron pair geometry (called “electron geometry” in the simulator) and/or molecular structure (called “molecular shape” in the simulator).

Build the molecule HCN in the simulator based on the following Lewis structure:

$$H-C\equiv N$$

Click on each bond type or lone pair at right to add that group to the central atom. Once you have the complete molecule, rotate it to examine the predicted molecular structure. What molecular structure is this?

Solution

The molecular structure is linear.

Exercise 5.7.7

Build a more complex molecule in the simulator. Identify the electron-group geometry, molecular structure, and bond angles. Then try to find a chemical formula that would match the structure you have drawn.

Answer

Answers will vary. For example, an atom with four single bonds, a double bond, and a lone pair has an octahedral electron-group geometry and a square pyramidal molecular structure. $XeOF_4$ is a molecule that adopts this structure.

Molecular Polarity and Dipole Moment

As discussed previously, polar covalent bonds connect two atoms with differing electronegativities, leaving one atom with a partial positive charge (δ+) and the other atom with a partial negative charge (δ–), as the electrons are pulled toward the more electronegative atom. This separation of charge gives rise to a bond dipole moment. The magnitude of a bond dipole moment is represented by the Greek letter mu (μ) and is given by the formula shown here, where Q is the magnitude of the partial charges (determined by the electronegativity difference) and r is the distance between the charges:

$$\mu = Qr$$

This bond moment can be represented as a vector, a quantity having both direction and magnitude (Figure 5.7.13). Dipole vectors are shown as arrows pointing along the bond from the less electronegative atom toward the more electronegative atom. A small plus sign is drawn on the less electronegative end to indicate the partially positive end of the bond. The length of the arrow is proportional to the magnitude of the electronegativity difference between the two atoms.

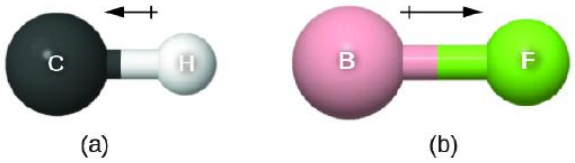


Figure 5.7.13: (a) There is a small difference in electronegativity between C and H, represented as a short vector. (b) The electronegativity difference between B and F is much larger, so the vector representing the bond moment is much longer.

A whole molecule may also have a separation of charge, depending on its molecular structure and the polarity of each of its bonds. If such a charge separation exists, the molecule is said to be a polar molecule (or dipole); otherwise the molecule is said to be nonpolar. The dipole moment measures the extent of net charge separation in the molecule as a whole. We determine the dipole moment by adding the bond moments in three-dimensional space, taking into account the molecular structure.

For diatomic molecules, there is only one bond, so its bond dipole moment determines the molecular polarity. Homonuclear diatomic molecules such as Br_2 and N_2 have no difference in electronegativity, so their dipole moment is zero. For heteronuclear molecules such as CO, there is a small dipole moment. For HF, there is a larger dipole moment because there is a larger difference in electronegativity.

When a molecule contains more than one bond, the geometry must be taken into account. If the bonds in a molecule are arranged such that their bond moments cancel (vector sum equals zero), then the molecule is nonpolar. This is the situation in CO_2 (Figure 5.7.14). Each of the bonds is polar, but the molecule as a whole is nonpolar. From the Lewis structure, and using VSEPR theory, we determine that the CO_2 molecule is linear with polar C=O bonds on opposite sides of the carbon atom. The bond moments cancel because they are pointed in opposite directions. In the case of the water molecule (Figure 5.7.14), the Lewis structure again shows that there are two bonds to a central atom, and the electronegativity difference again shows that each of these bonds has a nonzero bond moment. In this case, however, the molecular structure is bent because of the lone pairs on O, and the two bond moments do not cancel. Therefore, water does have a net dipole moment and is a polar molecule (dipole).

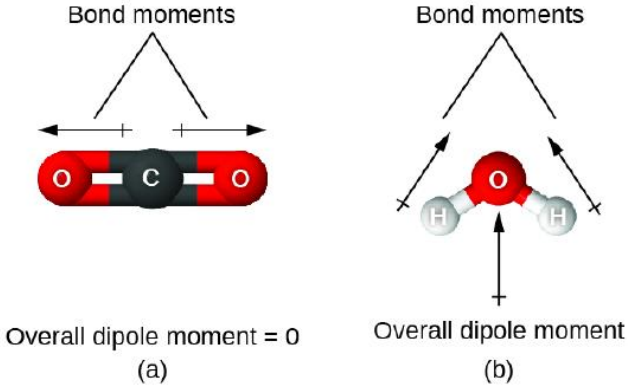
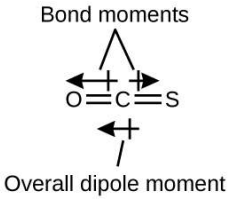


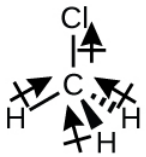
Figure 5.7.14: The overall dipole moment of a molecule depends on the individual bond dipole moments and how they are arranged. (a) Each CO bond has a bond dipole moment, but they point in opposite directions so that the net CO_2 molecule is nonpolar. (b) In contrast, water is polar because the OH bond moments do not cancel out.

The OCS molecule has a structure similar to CO_2, but a sulfur atom has replaced one of the oxygen atoms. To determine if this molecule is polar, we draw the molecular structure. VSEPR theory predicts a linear molecule:

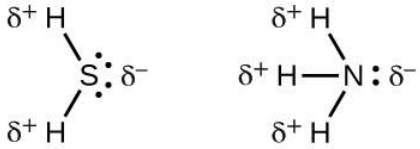


The C-O bond is considerably polar. Although C and S have very similar electronegativity values, S is slightly more electronegative than C, and so the C-S bond is just slightly polar. Because oxygen is more electronegative than sulfur, the oxygen end of the molecule is the negative end.

Chloromethane, CH_3Cl, is a tetrahedral molecule with three slightly polar C-H bonds and a more polar C-Cl bond. The relative electronegativities of the bonded atoms is H < C < Cl, and so the bond moments all point toward the Cl end of the molecule and sum to yield a considerable dipole moment (the molecules are relatively polar).



For molecules of high symmetry such as BF_3 (trigonal planar), CH_4 (tetrahedral), PF_5 (trigonal bipyramidal), and SF_6 (octahedral), all the bonds are of identical polarity (same bond moment) and they are oriented in geometries that yield nonpolar molecules (dipole moment is zero). Molecules of less geometric symmetry, however, may be polar even when all bond moments are identical. For these molecules, the directions of the equal bond moments are such that they sum to give a nonzero dipole moment and a polar molecule. Examples of such molecules include hydrogen sulfide, H_2S (nonlinear), and ammonia, NH_3 (trigonal pyramidal).



To summarize, to be polar, a molecule must:

1. Contain at least one polar covalent bond.
2. Have a molecular structure such that the sum of the vectors of each bond dipole moment does not cancel.

Properties of Polar Molecules

Polar molecules tend to align when placed in an electric field with the positive end of the molecule oriented toward the negative plate and the negative end toward the positive plate (Figure 5.7.15). We can use an electrically charged object to attract polar molecules, but nonpolar molecules are not attracted. Also, polar solvents are better at dissolving polar substances, and nonpolar solvents are better at dissolving nonpolar substances.

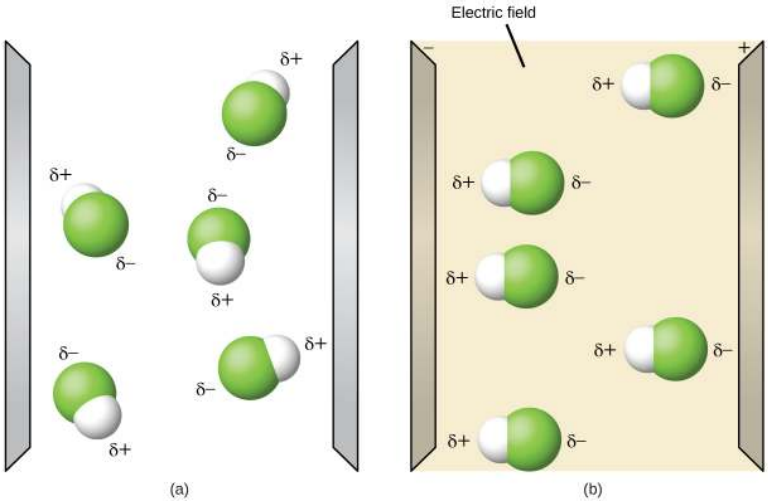


Figure 5.7.15: (a) Molecules are always randomly distributed in the liquid state in the absence of an electric field. (b) When an electric field is applied, polar molecules like HF will align to the dipoles with the field direction.

Link to Learning

The molecule polarity simulation provides many ways to explore dipole moments of bonds and molecules.

Example 5.7.8: Polarity Simulations

Open the molecule polarity simulation and select the "Three Atoms" tab at the top. This should display a molecule ABC with three electronegativity adjustors. You can display or hide the bond moments, molecular dipoles, and partial charges at the right. Turning on the Electric Field will show whether the molecule moves when exposed to a field, similar to Figure 5.7.15

Use the electronegativity controls to determine how the molecular dipole will look for the starting bent molecule if:

a. A and C are very electronegative and B is in the middle of the range.
b. A is very electronegative, and B and C are not.

Solution

a. Molecular dipole moment points immediately between A and C.
b. Molecular dipole moment points along the A–B bond, toward A.

Exercise 5.7.8

Determine the partial charges that will give the largest possible bond dipoles.

Answer

The largest bond moments will occur with the largest partial charges. The two solutions above represent how unevenly the electrons are shared in the bond. The bond moments will be maximized when the electronegativity difference is greatest. The controls for A and C should be set to one extreme, and B should be set to the opposite extreme. Although the magnitude of the bond moment will not change based on whether B is the most electronegative or the least, the direction of the bond moment will.

This page titled 5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.6: Molecular Structure and Polarity** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

5.8: Key Terms

axial position | location in a trigonal bipyramidal geometry in which there is another atom at a 180° angle and the equatorial positions are at a 90° angle

bond angle | angle between any two covalent bonds that share a common atom

bond dipole moment | separation of charge in a bond that depends on the difference in electronegativity and the bond distance represented by partial charges or a vector

bond distance | (also, bond length) distance between the nuclei of two bonded atoms

bond energy | (also, bond dissociation energy) energy required to break a covalent bond in a gaseous substance

bond length | distance between the nuclei of two bonded atoms at which the lowest potential energy is achieved

Born-Haber cycle | thermochemical cycle relating the various energetic steps involved in the formation of an ionic solid from the relevant elements

covalent bond | bond formed when electrons are shared between atoms

dipole moment | property of a molecule that describes the separation of charge determined by the sum of the individual bond moments based on the molecular structure

double bond | covalent bond in which two pairs of electrons are shared between two atoms

electron-pair geometry | arrangement around a central atom of all regions of electron density (bonds, lone pairs, or unpaired electrons)

electronegativity | tendency of an atom to attract electrons in a bond to itself

equatorial position | one of the three positions in a trigonal bipyramidal geometry with 120° angles between them; the axial positions are located at a 90° angle

formal charge | charge that would result on an atom by taking the number of valence electrons on the neutral atom and subtracting the nonbonding electrons and the number of bonds (one-half of the bonding electrons)

free radical | molecule that contains an odd number of electrons

hypervalent molecule | molecule containing at least one main group element that has more than eight electrons in its valence shell

inert pair effect | tendency of heavy atoms to form ions in which their valence *s* electrons are not lost

ionic bond | strong electrostatic force of attraction between cations and anions in an ionic compound

lattice energy ($\Delta H_{\text{lattice}}$) | energy required to separate one mole of an ionic solid into its component gaseous ions

Lewis structure | diagram showing lone pairs and bonding pairs of electrons in a molecule or an ion

Lewis symbol | symbol for an element or monatomic ion that uses a dot to represent each valence electron in the element or ion

linear | shape in which two outside groups are placed on opposite sides of a central atom

lone pair | two (a pair of) valence electrons that are not used to form a covalent bond

molecular structure | arrangement of atoms in a molecule or ion

molecular structure | structure that includes only the placement of the atoms in the molecule

octahedral | shape in which six outside groups are placed around a central atom such that a three-dimensional shape is generated with four groups forming a square and the other two forming the apex of two pyramids, one above and one below the square plane

octet rule | guideline that states main group atoms will form structures in which eight valence electrons interact with each nucleus, counting bonding electrons as interacting with both atoms connected by the bond

polar covalent bond | covalent bond between atoms of different electronegativities; a covalent bond with a positive end and a negative end

polar molecule | (also, dipole) molecule with an overall dipole moment

pure covalent bond | (also, nonpolar covalent bond) covalent bond between atoms of identical electronegativities

resonance | situation in which one Lewis structure is insufficient to describe the bonding in a molecule and the average of multiple structures is observed

resonance forms | two or more Lewis structures that have the same arrangement of atoms but different arrangements of electrons

resonance hybrid | average of the resonance forms shown by the individual Lewis structures

single bond | bond in which a single pair of electrons is shared between two atoms

tetrahedral | shape in which four outside groups are placed around a central atom such that a three-dimensional shape is generated with four corners and 109.5° angles between each pair and the central atom

trigonal bipyramidal | shape in which five outside groups are placed around a central atom such that three form a flat triangle with 120° angles between each pair and the central atom, and the other two form the apex of two pyramids, one above and one below the triangular plane

trigonal planar | shape in which three outside groups are placed in a flat triangle around a central atom with 120° angles between each pair and the central atom

triple bond | bond in which three pairs of electrons are shared between two atoms

valence shell electron-pair repulsion theory (VSEPR) | theory used to predict the bond angles in a molecule based on positioning regions of high electron density as far apart as possible to minimize electrostatic repulsion

vector | quantity having magnitude and direction

5.8: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.7: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.9: Key Equations

Bond energy for a diatomic molecule:
Enthalpy change: $\Delta H = \Sigma D_{\text{bonds broken}} - \Sigma D_{\text{bonds formed}}$
Lattice energy for a solid MX:
Lattice energy for an ionic crystal:

5.9: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.8: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.10: Summary

Atoms gain or lose electrons to form ions with particularly stable electron configurations. The charges of cations formed by the representative metals may be determined readily because, with few exceptions, the electronic structures of these ions have either a noble gas configuration or a completely filled electron shell. The charges of anions formed by the nonmetals may also be readily determined because these ions form when nonmetal atoms gain enough electrons to fill their valence shells.

Covalent bonds form when electrons are shared between atoms and are attracted by the nuclei of both atoms. In pure covalent bonds, the electrons are shared equally. In polar covalent bonds, the electrons are shared unequally, as one atom exerts a stronger force of attraction on the electrons than the other. The ability of an atom to attract a pair of electrons in a chemical bond is called its electronegativity. The difference in electronegativity between two atoms determines how polar a bond will be. In a diatomic molecule with two identical atoms, there is no difference in electronegativity, so the bond is nonpolar or pure covalent. When the electronegativity difference is very large, as is the case between metals and nonmetals, the bonding is characterized as ionic.

Valence electronic structures can be visualized by drawing Lewis symbols (for atoms and monatomic ions) and Lewis structures (for molecules and polyatomic ions). Lone pairs, unpaired electrons, and single, double, or triple bonds are used to indicate where the valence electrons are located around each atom in a Lewis structure. Most structures—especially those containing second row elements—obey the octet rule, in which every atom (except H) is surrounded by eight electrons. Exceptions to the octet rule occur for odd-electron molecules (free radicals), electron-deficient molecules, and hypervalent molecules.

In a Lewis structure, formal charges can be assigned to each atom by treating each bond as if one-half of the electrons are assigned to each atom. These hypothetical formal charges are a guide to determining the most appropriate Lewis structure. A structure in which the formal charges are as close to zero as possible is preferred. Resonance occurs in cases where two or more Lewis structures with identical arrangements of atoms but different distributions of electrons can be written. The actual distribution of electrons (the resonance hybrid) is an average of the distribution indicated by the individual Lewis structures (the resonance forms).

The strength of a covalent bond is measured by its bond dissociation energy, that is, the amount of energy required to break that particular bond in a mole of molecules. Multiple bonds are stronger than single bonds between the same atoms. The enthalpy of a reaction can be estimated based on the energy input required to break bonds and the energy released when new bonds are formed. For ionic bonds, the lattice energy is the energy required to separate one mole of a compound into its gas phase ions. Lattice energy increases for ions with higher charges and shorter distances between ions. Lattice energies are often calculated using the Born-Haber cycle, a thermochemical cycle including all of the energetic steps involved in converting elements into an ionic compound.

VSEPR theory predicts the three-dimensional arrangement of atoms in a molecule. It states that valence electrons will assume an electron-pair geometry that minimizes repulsions between areas of high electron density (bonds and/or lone pairs). Molecular structure, which refers only to the placement of atoms in a molecule and not the electrons, is equivalent to electron-pair geometry only when there are no lone electron pairs around the central atom. A dipole moment measures a separation of charge. For one bond, the bond dipole moment is determined by the difference in electronegativity between the two atoms. For a molecule, the overall dipole moment is determined by both the individual bond moments and how these dipoles are arranged in the molecular structure. Polar molecules (those with an appreciable dipole moment) interact with electric fields, whereas nonpolar molecules do not.

5.10: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.9: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.11: Exercises

1.

Does a cation gain protons to form a positive charge or does it lose electrons?

2.

Iron(III) sulfate [$Fe_2(SO_4)_3$] is composed of Fe^{3+} and ions. Explain why a sample of iron(III) sulfate is uncharged.

3.

Which of the following atoms would be expected to form negative ions in binary ionic compounds and which would be expected to form positive ions: P, I, Mg, Cl, In, Cs, O, Pb, Co?

4.

Which of the following atoms would be expected to form negative ions in binary ionic compounds and which would be expected to form positive ions: Br, Ca, Na, N, F, Al, Sn, S, Cd?

5.

Predict the charge on the monatomic ions formed from the following atoms in binary ionic compounds:

a. (f) Cs

6.

Predict the charge on the monatomic ions formed from the following atoms in binary ionic compounds:

a. (f) In

7.

Write the electron configuration for each of the following ions:

a. (k) Fe^{2+}

8.

Write the electron configuration for the monatomic ions formed from the following elements (which form the greatest concentration of monatomic ions in seawater):

a. Cl
b. Na
c. Mg
d. Ca
e. K
f. Br
g. Sr
h. F

9.

Write out the full electron configuration for each of the following atoms and for the monatomic ion found in binary ionic compounds containing the element:

a. (f) S

10.

From the labels of several commercial products, prepare a list of six ionic compounds in the products. For each compound, write the formula. (You may need to look up some formulas in a suitable reference.)

11.

Why is it incorrect to speak of a molecule of solid NaCl?

12.

What information can you use to predict whether a bond between two atoms is covalent or ionic?

13.

Predict which of the following compounds are ionic and which are covalent, based on the location of their constituent atoms in the periodic table:

a. (i) CaO

   (j) IBr

   (k) CO_2

14.

Explain the difference between a nonpolar covalent bond, a polar covalent bond, and an ionic bond.

15.

From its position in the periodic table, determine which atom in each pair is more electronegative:

a. (f) Ba or P

   (g) N or K

16.

From its position in the periodic table, determine which atom in each pair is more electronegative:

a. (f) Se or P

   (g) C or Si

17.

From their positions in the periodic table, arrange the atoms in each of the following series in order of increasing electronegativity:

a. C, F, H, N, O
b. Br, Cl, F, H, I
c. F, H, O, P, S
d. Al, H, Na, O, P
e. Ba, H, N, O, As

18.

From their positions in the periodic table, arrange the atoms in each of the following series in order of increasing electronegativity:

a. As, H, N, P, Sb
b. Cl, H, P, S, Si
c. Br, Cl, Ge, H, Sr
d. Ca, H, K, N, Si
e. Cl, Cs, Ge, H, Sr

19.

Which atoms can bond to sulfur so as to produce a positive partial charge on the sulfur atom?

20.

Which is the most polar bond?

a. C–C
b. C–H
c. N–H
d. O–H
e. Se–H

21.

Identify the more polar bond in each of the following pairs of bonds:

a. (f) SO or PO

(g) CN or NN

22.

Which of the following molecules or ions contain polar bonds?

a. (f) H_2S

(g)

23.

Write the Lewis symbols for each of the following ions:

a. (f) Li^+

24.

Many monatomic ions are found in seawater, including the ions formed from the following list of elements. Write the Lewis symbols for the monatomic ions formed from the following elements:

a. Cl
b. Na
c. Mg
d. Ca
e. K
f. Br
g. Sr
h. F

25.

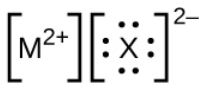
Write the Lewis symbols of the ions in each of the following ionic compounds and the Lewis symbols of the atom from which they are formed:

a. (f) KF

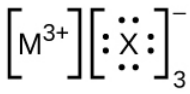
26.

In the Lewis structures listed here, M and X represent various elements in the third period of the periodic table. Write the formula of each compound using the chemical symbols of each element:

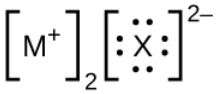
(a)



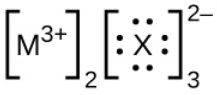
(b)



(c)



(d)



27.

Write the Lewis structure for the diatomic molecule P_2, an unstable form of phosphorus found in high-temperature phosphorus vapor.

28.

Write Lewis structures for the following:

a. (k) CN^-

29.

Write Lewis structures for the following:

a. (i) HCCH

(j) ClCN

(k)

30.

Write Lewis structures for the following:

a. ClF_3
b. PCl_5
c. BF_3
d.

31.

Write Lewis structures for the following:

a. SeF_6
b. XeF_4
c.
d. Cl_2BBCl_2 (contains a B–B bond)

32.

Write Lewis structures for:

a.
b.
c.
d. HONO

33.

Correct the following statement: “The bonds in solid $PbCl_2$ are ionic; the bond in a HCl molecule is covalent. Thus, all of the valence electrons in $PbCl_2$ are located on the Cl^- ions, and all of the valence electrons in a HCl molecule are shared between the H and Cl atoms.”

34.

Write Lewis structures for the following molecules or ions:

a. SbH_3
b. XeF_2
c. Se_8 (a cyclic molecule with a ring of eight Se atoms)

35.

Methanol, H_3COH, is used as the fuel in some race cars. Ethanol, C_2H_5OH, is used extensively as motor fuel in Brazil. Both methanol and ethanol produce CO_2 and H_2O when they burn. Write the chemical equations for these combustion reactions using Lewis structures instead of chemical formulas.

36.

Many planets in our solar system contain organic chemicals including methane (CH_4) and traces of ethylene (C_2H_4), ethane (C_2H_6), propyne (H_3CCCH), and diacetylene (HCCCCH). Write the Lewis structures for each of these molecules.

37.

Carbon tetrachloride was formerly used in fire extinguishers for electrical fires. It is no longer used for this purpose because of the formation of the toxic gas phosgene, Cl_2CO. Write the Lewis structures for carbon tetrachloride and phosgene.

38.

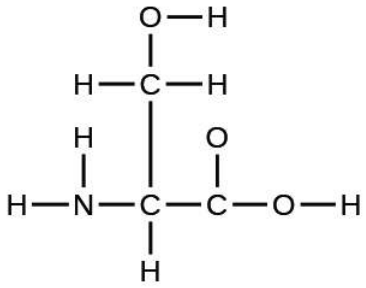
Identify the atoms that correspond to each of the following electron configurations. Then, write the Lewis symbol for the common ion formed from each atom:

a. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$
b. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2$
c. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10}$
d. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^4$
e. $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^1$

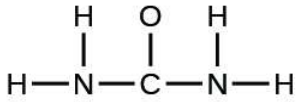
39.

The arrangement of atoms in several biologically important molecules is given here. Complete the Lewis structures of these molecules by adding multiple bonds and lone pairs. Do not add any more atoms.

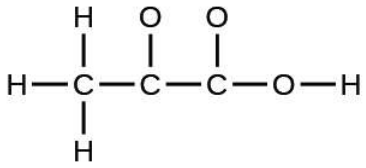
(a) the amino acid serine:



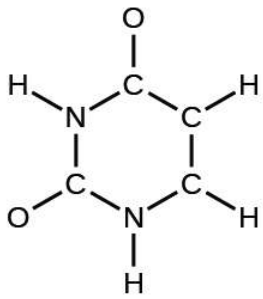
(b) urea:



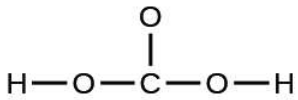
(c) pyruvic acid:



(d) uracil:



(e) carbonic acid:



40.

A compound with a molar mass of about 28 g/mol contains 85.7% carbon and 14.3% hydrogen by mass. Write the Lewis structure for a molecule of the compound.

41.

A compound with a molar mass of about 42 g/mol contains 85.7% carbon and 14.3% hydrogen by mass. Write the Lewis structure for a molecule of the compound.

42.

Two arrangements of atoms are possible for a compound with a molar mass of about 45 g/mol that contains 52.2% C, 13.1% H, and 34.7% O by mass. Write the Lewis structures for the two molecules.

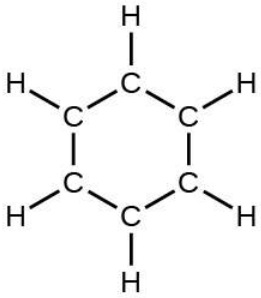
43.

How are single, double, and triple bonds similar? How do they differ?

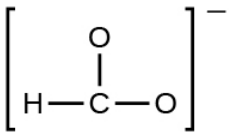
44.

Write resonance forms that describe the distribution of electrons in each of these molecules or ions.

a. selenium dioxide, OSeO
b. nitrate ion,
c. nitric acid, HNO_3 (N is bonded to an OH group and two O atoms)
d. benzene, C_6H_6:



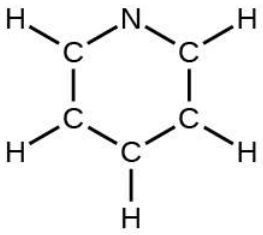
(e) the formate ion:



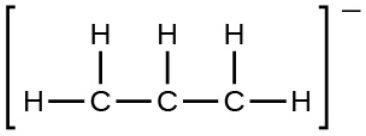
45.

Write resonance forms that describe the distribution of electrons in each of these molecules or ions.

a. sulfur dioxide, SO_2
b. carbonate ion,
c. hydrogen carbonate ion, (C is bonded to an OH group and two O atoms)
d. pyridine:



(e) the allyl ion:



46.

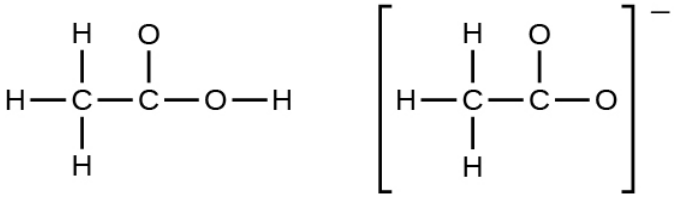
Write the resonance forms of ozone, O_3, the component of the upper atmosphere that protects the Earth from ultraviolet radiation.

47.

Sodium nitrite, which has been used to preserve bacon and other meats, is an ionic compound. Write the resonance forms of the nitrite ion,

48.

In terms of the bonds present, explain why acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, contains two distinct types of carbon-oxygen bonds, whereas the acetate ion, formed by loss of a hydrogen ion from acetic acid, only contains one type of carbon-oxygen bond. The skeleton structures of these species are shown:



49.

Write the Lewis structures for the following, and include resonance structures where appropriate. Indicate which has the strongest carbon-oxygen bond.

a. CO_2
b. CO

50.

Toothpastes containing sodium hydrogen carbonate (sodium bicarbonate) and hydrogen peroxide are widely used. Write Lewis structures for the hydrogen carbonate ion and hydrogen peroxide molecule, with resonance forms where appropriate.

51.

Determine the formal charge of each element in the following:

a. HCl
b. CF_4
c. PCl_3
d. PF_5

52.

Determine the formal charge of each element in the following:

a. H_3O^+

b.
c. NH_3
d.
e. H_2O_2

53.

Calculate the formal charge of chlorine in the molecules Cl_2, $BeCl_2$, and ClF_5.

54.

Calculate the formal charge of each element in the following compounds and ions:

a. F_2CO
b. NO^-
c.
d.
e. H_2CCH_2
f. ClF_3
g. SeF_6
h.

55.

Draw all possible resonance structures for each of these compounds. Determine the formal charge on each atom in each of the resonance structures:

a. O_3
b. SO_2
c.
d.

56.

Based on formal charge considerations, which of the following would likely be the correct arrangement of atoms in nitrosyl chloride: ClNO or ClON?

57.

Based on formal charge considerations, which of the following would likely be the correct arrangement of atoms in hypochlorous acid: HOCl or OClH?

58.

Based on formal charge considerations, which of the following would likely be the correct arrangement of atoms in sulfur dioxide: OSO or SOO?

59.

Draw the structure of hydroxylamine, H_3NO, and assign formal charges; look up the structure. Is the actual structure consistent with the formal charges?

60.

Iodine forms a series of fluorides (listed here). Write Lewis structures for each of the four compounds and determine the formal charge of the iodine atom in each molecule:

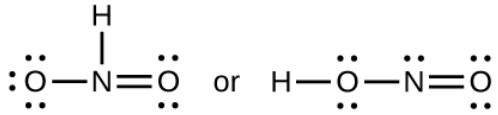
a. IF
b. IF_3
c. IF_5
d. IF_7

61.

Write the Lewis structure and chemical formula of the compound with a molar mass of about 70 g/mol that contains 19.7% nitrogen and 80.3% fluorine by mass, and determine the formal charge of the atoms in this compound.

62.

Which of the following structures would we expect for nitrous acid? Determine the formal charges:



63.

Sulfuric acid is the industrial chemical produced in greatest quantity worldwide. About 90 billion pounds are produced each year in the United States alone. Write the Lewis structure for sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4, which has two oxygen atoms and two OH groups bonded to the sulfur.

64.

Which bond in each of the following pairs of bonds is the strongest?

a. (e) C–H or O–H

(f) C–N or C–O

65.

Using the bond energies in Table 7.2, determine the approximate enthalpy change for each of the following reactions:

a.
b.
c.

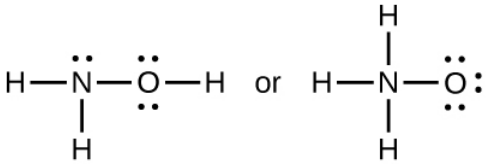
66.

Using the bond energies in Table 7.2, determine the approximate enthalpy change for each of the following reactions:

a.
b.
c.

67.

When a molecule can form two different structures, the structure with the stronger bonds is usually the more stable form. Use bond energies to predict the correct structure of the hydroxylamine molecule:



68.

How does the bond energy of HCl(g) differ from the standard enthalpy of formation of HCl(g)?

69.

Using the standard enthalpy of formation data in Appendix G, show how the standard enthalpy of formation of HCl(g) can be used to determine the bond energy.

70.

Using the standard enthalpy of formation data in Appendix G, calculate the bond energy of the carbon-sulfur double bond in CS_2.

71.

Using the standard enthalpy of formation data in Appendix G, determine which bond is stronger: the S–F bond in $SF_4(g)$ or in $SF_6(g)$?

72.

Using the standard enthalpy of formation data in Appendix G, determine which bond is stronger: the P–Cl bond in $PCl_3(g)$ or in $PCl_5(g)$?

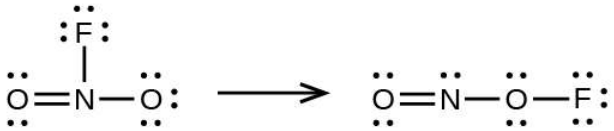
73.

Complete the following Lewis structure by adding bonds (not atoms), and then indicate the longest bond:



74.

Use the bond energy to calculate an approximate value of ΔH for the following reaction. Which is the more stable form of FNO_2?



75.

Use principles of atomic structure to answer each of the following:[1]

a. The radius of the Ca atom is 197 pm; the radius of the Ca^{2+} ion is 99 pm. Account for the difference.
b. The lattice energy of CaO(*s*) is –3460 kJ/mol; the lattice energy of K_2O is –2240 kJ/mol. Account for the difference.
c. Given these ionization values, explain the difference between Ca and K with regard to their first and second ionization energies.

Element	First Ionization Energy (kJ/mol)	Second Ionization Energy (kJ/mol)
K	419	3050
Ca	590	1140

(d) The first ionization energy of Mg is 738 kJ/mol and that of Al is 578 kJ/mol. Account for this difference.

76.

The lattice energy of LiF is 1023 kJ/mol, and the Li–F distance is 200.8 pm. NaF crystallizes in the same structure as LiF but with a Na–F distance of 231 pm. Which of the following values most closely approximates the lattice energy of NaF: 510, 890, 1023, 1175, or 4090 kJ/mol? Explain your choice.

77.

For which of the following substances is the least energy required to convert one mole of the solid into separate ions?

a. MgO
b. SrO
c. KF
d. CsF
e. MgF_2

78.

The reaction of a metal, M, with a halogen, X_2, proceeds by an exothermic reaction as indicated by this equation: For each of the following, indicate which option will make the reaction more exothermic. Explain your answers.

a. a large radius vs. a small radius for M^{+2}
b. a high ionization energy vs. a low ionization energy for M
c. an increasing bond energy for the halogen
d. a decreasing electron affinity for the halogen
e. an increasing size of the anion formed by the halogen

79.

The lattice energy of LiF is 1023 kJ/mol, and the Li–F distance is 201 pm. MgO crystallizes in the same structure as LiF but with a Mg–O distance of 205 pm. Which of the following values most closely approximates the lattice energy of MgO: 256 kJ/mol, 512 kJ/mol, 1023 kJ/mol, 2046 kJ/mol, or 4008 kJ/mol? Explain your choice.

80.

Which compound in each of the following pairs has the larger lattice energy? Note: Mg^{2+} and Li^{+} have similar radii; O^{2-} and F^{-} have similar radii. Explain your choices.

a. MgO or MgSe
b. LiF or MgO
c. Li_2O or LiCl
d. Li_2Se or MgO

81.

Which compound in each of the following pairs has the larger lattice energy? Note: Ba^{2+} and

K^{+} have similar radii; S^{2-} and Cl^{-} have similar radii. Explain your choices.

a. K_2O or Na_2O
b. K_2S or BaS
c. KCl or BaS
d. BaS or $BaCl_2$

82.

Which of the following compounds requires the most energy to convert one mole of the solid into separate ions?

a. MgO
b. SrO
c. KF
d. CsF
e. MgF_2

83.

Which of the following compounds requires the most energy to convert one mole of the solid into separate ions?

a. K_2S
b. K_2O
c. CaS
d. Cs_2S
e. CaO

84.

The lattice energy of KF is 794 kJ/mol, and the interionic distance is 269 pm. The Na–F

distance in NaF, which has the same structure as KF, is 231 pm. Which of the following values is the closest approximation of the lattice energy of NaF: 682 kJ/mol, 794 kJ/mol, 924 kJ/mol, 1588 kJ/mol, or 3175 kJ/mol? Explain your answer.

85.

Explain why the HOH molecule is bent, whereas the HBeH molecule is linear.

86.

What feature of a Lewis structure can be used to tell if a molecule's (or ion's) electron-pair geometry and molecular structure will be identical?

87.

Explain the difference between electron-pair geometry and molecular structure.

88.

Why is the H–N–H angle in NH_3 smaller than the H–C–H bond angle in CH_4? Why is the H–N–H angle in identical to the H–C–H bond angle in CH_4?

89.

Explain how a molecule that contains polar bonds can be nonpolar.

90.

As a general rule, MX_n molecules (where M represents a central atom and X represents terminal atoms; n = 2 – 5) are polar if there is one or more lone pairs of electrons on M. NH_3 (M = N, X = H, n = 3) is an example. There are two molecular structures with lone pairs that are exceptions to this rule. What are they?

91.

Predict the electron pair geometry and the molecular structure of each of the following molecules or ions:

a. SF_6
b. PCl_5
c. BeH_2
d.

92.

Identify the electron pair geometry and the molecular structure of each of the following molecules or ions:

a.
b. CF_4
c. BF_3
d.
e. $BeCl_2$

93.

What are the electron-pair geometry and the molecular structure of each of the following molecules or ions?

a. (f)

94.

Predict the electron pair geometry and the molecular structure of each of the following ions:

a. (f) XeF_4

95.

Identify the electron pair geometry and the molecular structure of each of the following molecules:

a. (f) XeO_2F_2 (Xe is the central atom)

(g) (Cl is the central atom)

96.

Predict the electron pair geometry and the molecular structure of each of the following:

a. (f)

97.

Which of the following molecules and ions contain polar bonds? Which of these molecules and ions have dipole moments?

a. (f)

98.

Which of these molecules and ions contain polar bonds? Which of these molecules and ions have dipole moments?

a. (f) XeF_4

99.

Which of the following molecules have dipole moments?

a. CS_2
b. SeS_2
c. CCl_2F_2
d. PCl_3 (P is the central atom)
e. ClNO (N is the central atom)

100.

Identify the molecules with a dipole moment:

a. SF_4
b. CF_4
c. Cl_2CCBr_2
d. CH_3Cl
e. H_2CO

101.

The molecule XF_3 has a dipole moment. Is X boron or phosphorus?

102.

The molecule XCl_2 has a dipole moment. Is X beryllium or sulfur?

103.

Is the Cl_2BBCl_2 molecule polar or nonpolar?

104.

There are three possible structures for PCl_2F_3 with phosphorus as the central atom. Draw them and discuss how measurements of dipole moments could help distinguish among them.

105.

Describe the molecular structure around the indicated atom or atoms:

a. (i) each of the carbon atoms in allene, H_2CCCH_2

106.

Draw the Lewis structures and predict the shape of each compound or ion:

a. CO_2
b.
c. SO_3
d.

107.

A molecule with the formula AB_2, in which A and B represent different atoms, could have one of three different shapes. Sketch and name the three different shapes that this molecule might have. Give an example of a molecule or ion for each shape.

108.

A molecule with the formula AB_3, in which A and B represent different atoms, could have one of three different shapes. Sketch and name the three different shapes that this molecule might have. Give an example of a molecule or ion that has each shape.

109.

Draw the Lewis electron dot structures for these molecules, including resonance structures where appropriate:

a.
b. CS_2
c. CS
d. predict the molecular shapes for and CS_2 and explain how you arrived at your predictions

110.

What is the molecular structure of the stable form of FNO_2? (N is the central atom.)

111.

A compound with a molar mass of about 42 g/mol contains 85.7% carbon and 14.3% hydrogen. What is its molecular structure?

112.

Use the simulation to perform the following exercises for a two-atom molecule:

a. Adjust the electronegativity value so the bond dipole is pointing toward B. Then determine what the electronegativity values must be to switch the dipole so that it points toward A.
b. With a partial positive charge on A, turn on the electric field and describe what happens.
c. With a small partial negative charge on A, turn on the electric field and describe what happens.
d. Reset all, and then with a large partial negative charge on A, turn on the electric field and describe what happens.

113.

Use the simulation to perform the following exercises for a real molecule. You may need to rotate the molecules in three dimensions to see certain dipoles.

a. Sketch the bond dipoles and molecular dipole (if any) for O_3. Explain your observations.
b. Look at the bond dipoles for NH_3. Use these dipoles to predict whether N or H is more electronegative.
c. Predict whether there should be a molecular dipole for NH_3 and, if so, in which direction it will point. Check the molecular dipole box to test your hypothesis.

114.

Use the Molecule Shape simulator to build a molecule. Starting with the central atom, click on the double bond to add one double bond. Then add one single bond and one lone pair. Rotate the molecule to observe the complete geometry. Name the electron group geometry and molecular structure and predict the bond angle. Then click the check boxes at the bottom and right of the simulator to check your answers.

115.

Use the Molecule Shape simulator to explore real molecules. On the Real Molecules tab, select H_2O. Switch between the “real” and “model” modes. Explain the difference observed.

116.

Use the Molecule Shape simulator to explore real molecules. On the Real Molecules tab, select “model” mode and S_2O. What is the model bond angle? Explain whether the “real” bond angle should be larger or smaller than the ideal model angle.

Footnotes

- 1This question is taken from the Chemistry Advanced Placement Examination and is used with the permission of the Educational Testing Service.

This page titled 5.11: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.10: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding

We have examined the basic ideas of bonding, showing that atoms share electrons to form molecules with stable Lewis structures and that we can predict the shapes of those molecules by valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory. These ideas provide an important starting point for understanding chemical bonding. But these models sometimes fall short in their abilities to predict the behavior of real substances. How can we reconcile the geometries of *s*, *p*, and *d* atomic orbitals with molecular shapes that show angles like 120° and 109.5°? Furthermore, we know that electrons and magnetic behavior are related through electromagnetic fields.

6.1: Introduction
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
6.4: Multiple Bonds
6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory
6.6: Key Terms
6.7: Key Equations
6.8: Summary
6.9: Exercises

This page titled 8: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.1: Introduction

We have examined the basic ideas of bonding, showing that atoms share electrons to form molecules with stable Lewis structures and that we can predict the shapes of those molecules by valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR) theory. These ideas provide an important starting point for understanding chemical bonding. But these models sometimes fall short in their abilities to predict the behavior of real substances. How can we reconcile the geometries of *s*, *p*, and *d* atomic orbitals with molecular shapes that show angles like 120° and 109.5°? Furthermore, we know that electrons and magnetic behavior are related through electromagnetic fields. Both N_2 and O_2 have fairly similar Lewis structures that contain lone pairs of electrons.

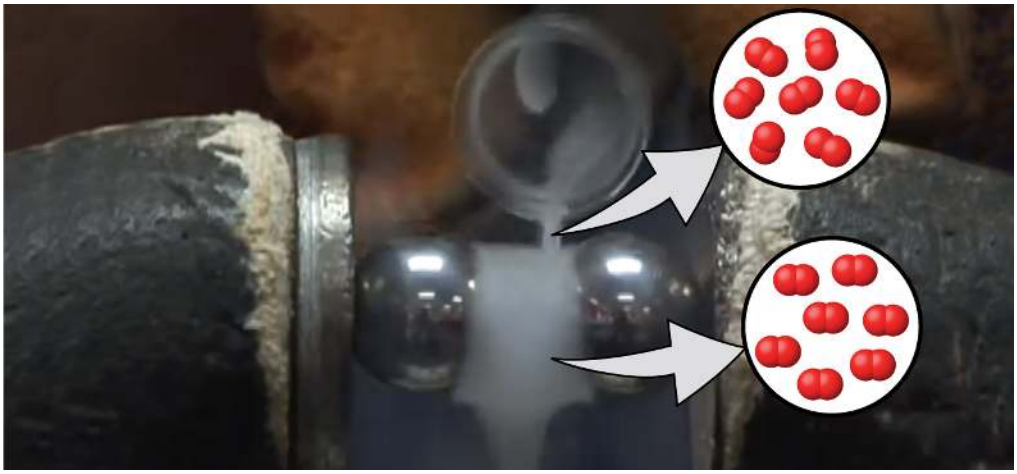


Figure 6.1.1: Oxygen molecules orient randomly most of the time, as shown in the top magnified view. However, when we pour liquid oxygen through a magnet, the molecules line up with the magnetic field, and the attraction allows them to stay suspended between the poles of the magnet where the magnetic field is strongest. Other diatomic molecules (like N_2) flow past the magnet. The detailed explanation of bonding described in this chapter allows us to understand this phenomenon. (credit: modification of work by Jefferson Lab)

Yet oxygen demonstrates very different magnetic behavior than nitrogen. We can pour liquid nitrogen through a magnetic field with no visible interactions, while liquid oxygen (shown in Figure 6.1.1) is attracted to the magnet and floats in the magnetic field. We need to understand the additional concepts of valence bond theory, orbital hybridization, and molecular orbital theory to understand these observations.



This page titled 6.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.0: Introduction** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.2: Valence Bond Theory

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the formation of covalent bonds in terms of atomic orbital overlap
- Define and give examples of σ and π bonds

As we know, a scientific theory is a strongly supported explanation for observed natural laws or large bodies of experimental data. For a theory to be accepted, it must explain experimental data and be able to predict behavior. For example, VSEPR theory has gained widespread acceptance because it predicts three-dimensional molecular shapes that are consistent with experimental data collected for thousands of different molecules. However, VSEPR theory does not provide an explanation of chemical bonding.

There are successful theories that describe the electronic structure of atoms. We can use quantum mechanics to predict the specific regions around an atom where electrons are likely to be located: A spherical shape for an *s* orbital, a dumbbell shape for a *p* orbital, and so forth. However, these predictions only describe the orbitals around free atoms. When atoms bond to form molecules, atomic orbitals are not sufficient to describe the regions where electrons will be located in the molecule. A more complete understanding of electron distributions requires a model that can account for the electronic structure of molecules. One popular theory holds that a covalent bond forms when a pair of electrons is shared by two atoms and is simultaneously attracted by the nuclei of both atoms. In the following sections, we will discuss how such bonds are described by valence bond theory and hybridization.

Valence bond theory describes a covalent bond as the overlap of half-filled atomic orbitals (each containing a single electron) that yield a pair of electrons shared between the two bonded atoms. We say that orbitals on two different atoms overlap when a portion of one orbital and a portion of a second orbital occupy the same region of space. According to valence bond theory, a covalent bond results when two conditions are met: (1) an orbital on one atom overlaps an orbital on a second atom and (2) the single electrons in each orbital combine to form an electron pair. The mutual attraction between this negatively charged electron pair and the two atoms' positively charged nuclei serves to physically link the two atoms through a force we define as a covalent bond. The strength of a covalent bond depends on the extent of overlap of the orbitals involved. Orbitals that overlap extensively form bonds that are stronger than those that have less overlap.

The energy of the system depends on how much the orbitals overlap. Figure 6.2.1 illustrates how the sum of the energies of two hydrogen atoms (the colored curve) changes as they approach each other. When the atoms are far apart there is no overlap, and by convention we set the sum of the energies at zero. As the atoms move together, their orbitals begin to overlap. Each electron begins to feel the attraction of the nucleus in the other atom. In addition, the electrons begin to repel each other, as do the nuclei. While the atoms are still widely separated, the attractions are slightly stronger than the repulsions, and the energy of the system decreases. (A bond begins to form.) As the atoms move closer together, the overlap increases, so the attraction of the nuclei for the electrons continues to increase (as do the repulsions among electrons and between the nuclei). At some specific distance between the atoms, which varies depending on the atoms involved, the energy reaches its lowest (most stable) value. This optimum distance between the two bonded nuclei is the bond distance between the two atoms. The bond is stable because at this point, the attractive and repulsive forces combine to create the lowest possible energy configuration. If the distance between the nuclei were to decrease further, the repulsions between nuclei and the repulsions as electrons are confined in closer proximity to each other would become stronger than the attractive forces. The energy of the system would then rise (making the system destabilized), as shown at the far left of Figure 6.2.1.

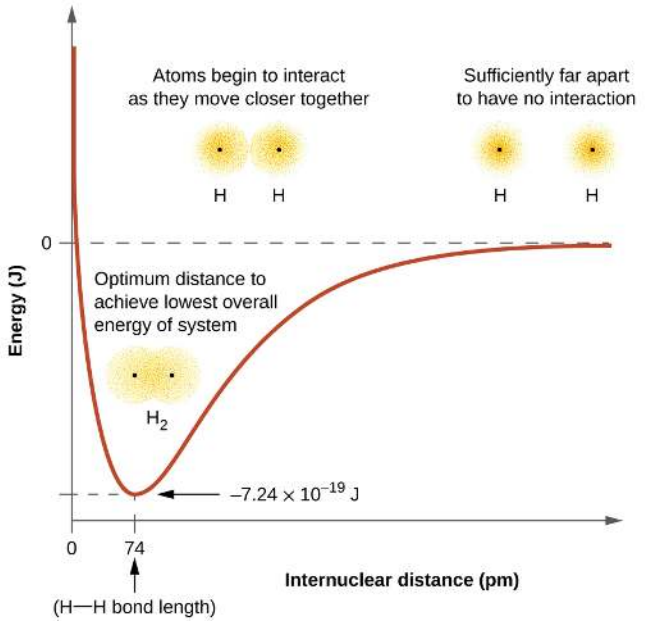


Figure 6.2.1: (a) The interaction of two hydrogen atoms changes as a function of distance. (b) The energy of the system changes as the atoms interact. The lowest (most stable) energy occurs at a distance of 74 pm, which is the bond length observed for the H_2 molecule.

The bond energy is the difference between the energy minimum (which occurs at the bond distance) and the energy of the two separated atoms. This is the quantity of energy released when the bond is formed. Conversely, the same amount of energy is required to break the bond. For the H_2 molecule shown in Figure 6.2.1, at the bond distance of 74 pm the system is 7.24×10^{-19} J lower in energy than the two separated hydrogen atoms. This may seem like a small number. However, we know from our earlier description of thermochemistry that bond energies are often discussed on a per-mole basis. For example, it requires 7.24×10^{-19} J to break one H–H bond, but it takes 4.36×10^{5} J to break 1 mole of H–H bonds. A comparison of some bond lengths and energies is shown in Table 6.2.1. We can find many of these bonds in a variety of molecules, and this table provides average values. For example, breaking the first C–H bond in CH_4 requires 439.3 kJ/mol, while breaking the first C–H bond in $H–CH_2C_6H_5$ (a common paint thinner) requires 375.5 kJ/mol.

Table 6.2.1: Representative Bond Energies and Lengths

Bond	Length (pm)	Energy (kJ/mol)	Bond	Length (pm)	Energy (kJ/mol)
H–H	74	436	C–O	140.1	358
H–C	106.8	413		119.7	745
H–N	101.5	391		113.7	1072
H–O	97.5	467	H–Cl	127.5	431
C–C	150.6	347	H–Br	141.4	366
	133.5	614	H–I	160.9	298
	120.8	839	O–O	148	146
C–N	142.1	305		120.8	498
	130.0	615	F–F	141.2	159
	116.1	891	Cl–Cl	198.8	243

In addition to the distance between two orbitals, the orientation of orbitals also affects their overlap (other than for two *s* orbitals, which are spherically symmetric). Greater overlap is possible when orbitals are oriented such that they overlap on a direct line between the two nuclei. Figure 6.2.2 illustrates this for two *p* orbitals from different atoms; the overlap is greater when the orbitals overlap end to end rather than at an angle.

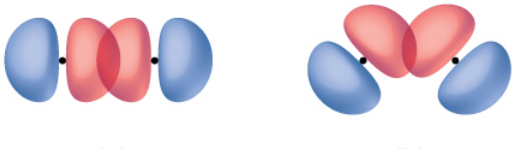


Figure 6.2.2: (a) The overlap of two *p* orbitals is greatest when the orbitals are directed end to end. (b) Any other arrangement results in less overlap. The dots indicate the locations of the nuclei.

The overlap of two *s* orbitals (as in H_2), the overlap of an *s* orbital and a *p* orbital (as in HCl), and the end-to-end overlap of two *p* orbitals (as in Cl_2) all produce sigma bonds (σ bonds), as illustrated in Figure 6.2.3. A σ bond is a covalent bond in which the electron density is concentrated in the region along the internuclear axis; that is, a line between the nuclei would pass through the center of the overlap region. Single bonds in Lewis structures are described as σ bonds in valence bond theory.

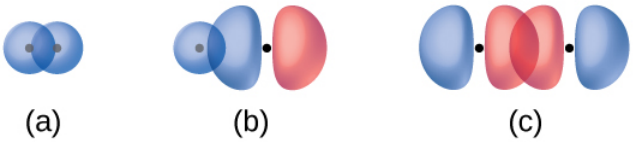


Figure 6.2.3: Sigma (σ) bonds form from the overlap of the following: (a) two *s* orbitals, (b) an *s* orbital and a *p* orbital, and (c) two *p* orbitals. The dots indicate the locations of the nuclei.

A pi bond (π bond) is a type of covalent bond that results from the side-by-side overlap of two *p* orbitals, as illustrated in Figure 6.2.4. In a π bond, the regions of orbital overlap lie on opposite sides of the internuclear axis. Along the axis itself, there is a node, that is, a plane with no probability of finding an electron.

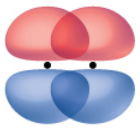
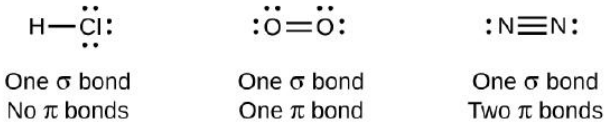


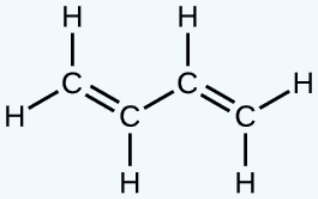
Figure 6.2.4: Pi (π) bonds form from the side-by-side overlap of two *p* orbitals. The dots indicate the location of the nuclei.

While all single bonds are σ bonds, multiple bonds consist of both σ and π bonds. As the Lewis structures below suggest, O_2 contains a double bond, and N_2 contains a triple bond. The double bond consists of one σ bond and one π bond, and the triple bond consists of one σ bond and two π bonds. Between any two atoms, the first bond formed will always be a σ bond, but there can only be one σ bond in any one location. In any multiple bond, there will be one σ bond, and the remaining one or two bonds will be π bonds. These bonds are described in more detail later in this chapter.



As seen in Figure 6.2.1, an average carbon-carbon single bond is 347 kJ/mol, while in a carbon-carbon double bond, the π bond increases the bond strength by 267 kJ/mol. Adding an additional π bond causes a further increase of 225 kJ/mol. We can see a similar pattern when we compare other σ and π bonds. Thus, each individual π bond is generally weaker than a corresponding σ bond between the same two atoms. In a σ bond, there is a greater degree of orbital overlap than in a π bond.

Example 6.2.1: Counting σ and π Bonds



Butadiene, C_4H_6, is used to make synthetic rubber. Identify the number of σ and π bonds contained in this molecule.

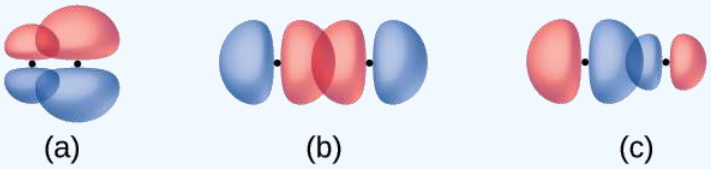
Solution

There are six σ C–H bonds and one σ C–C bond, for a total of seven from the single bonds. There are two double bonds that each have a π bond in addition to the σ bond. This gives a total nine σ and two π bonds overall.

? Exercise 6.2.1

Identify each illustration as depicting a σ or π bond:

a. side-by-side overlap of a 4*p* and a 2*p* orbital
b. end-to-end overlap of a 4*p* and 4*p* orbital
c. end-to-end overlap of a 4*p* and a 2*p* orbital



Answer

(a) is a π bond with a node along the axis connecting the nuclei while (b) and (c) are σ bonds that overlap along the axis.

This page titled 6.2: Valence Bond Theory is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.1: Valence Bond Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the concept of atomic orbital hybridization
- Determine the hybrid orbitals associated with various molecular geometries

Thinking in terms of overlapping atomic orbitals is one way for us to explain how chemical bonds form in diatomic molecules. However, to understand how molecules with more than two atoms form stable bonds, we require a more detailed model. As an example, let us consider the water molecule, in which we have one oxygen atom bonding to two hydrogen atoms. Oxygen has the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$, with two unpaired electrons (one in each of the two 2*p* orbitals). Valence bond theory would predict that the two O–H bonds form from the overlap of these two 2*p* orbitals with the 1*s* orbitals of the hydrogen atoms. If this were the case, the bond angle would be 90°, as shown in Figure 6.3.1, because *p* orbitals are perpendicular to each other. Experimental evidence shows that the bond angle is 104.5°, not 90°. The prediction of the valence bond theory model does not match the real-world observations of a water molecule; a different model is needed.

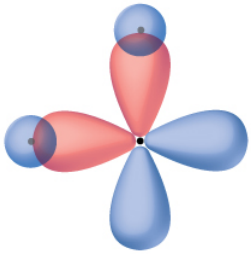


Figure 6.3.1: The hypothetical overlap of two of the 2*p* orbitals on an oxygen atom (red) with the 1*s* orbitals of two hydrogen atoms (blue) would produce a bond angle of 90°. This is not consistent with experimental evidence.[1]

Quantum-mechanical calculations suggest why the observed bond angles in H_2O differ from those predicted by the overlap of the 1*s* orbital of the hydrogen atoms with the 2*p* orbitals of the oxygen atom. The mathematical expression known as the wave function, ψ, contains information about each orbital and the wavelike properties of electrons in an isolated atom. When atoms are bound together in a molecule, the wave functions combine to produce new mathematical descriptions that have different shapes. This process of combining the wave functions for atomic orbitals is called **hybridization** and is mathematically accomplished by the *linear combination of atomic orbitals*, LCAO, (a technique that we will encounter again later). The new orbitals that result are called **hybrid orbitals**. The valence orbitals in an *isolated* oxygen atom are a 2*s* orbital and three 2*p* orbitals. The valence orbitals in an oxygen atom in a water molecule differ; they consist of four equivalent hybrid orbitals that point approximately toward the corners of a tetrahedron (Figure 6.3.2). Consequently, the overlap of the O and H orbitals should result in a tetrahedral bond angle (109.5°). The observed angle of 104.5° is experimental evidence for which quantum-mechanical calculations give a useful explanation: Valence bond theory must include a hybridization component to give accurate predictions.

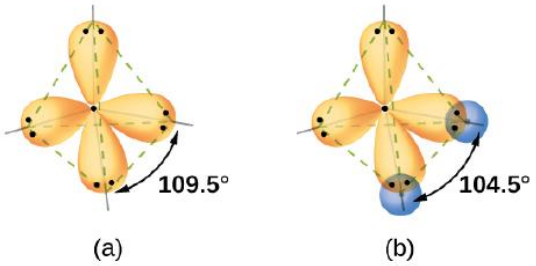


Figure 6.3.2: (a) A water molecule has four regions of electron density, so VSEPR theory predicts a tetrahedral arrangement of hybrid orbitals. (b) Two of the hybrid orbitals on oxygen contain lone pairs, and the other two overlap with the 1*s* orbitals of hydrogen atoms to form the O–H bonds in H_2O. This description is more consistent with the experimental structure.

The following ideas are important in understanding hybridization:

1. Hybrid orbitals do not exist in isolated atoms. They are formed only in covalently bonded atoms.
2. Hybrid orbitals have shapes and orientations that are very different from those of the atomic orbitals in isolated atoms.

3. A set of hybrid orbitals is generated by combining atomic orbitals. The number of hybrid orbitals in a set is equal to the number of atomic orbitals that were combined to produce the set.
4. All orbitals in a set of hybrid orbitals are equivalent in shape and energy.
5. The type of hybrid orbitals formed in a bonded atom depends on its electron-pair geometry as predicted by the VSEPR theory.
6. Hybrid orbitals overlap to form σ bonds. Unhybridized orbitals overlap to form π bonds.

In the following sections, we shall discuss the common types of hybrid orbitals.

sp Hybridization

The beryllium atom in a gaseous $BeCl_2$ molecule is an example of a central atom with no lone pairs of electrons in a linear arrangement of three atoms. There are two regions of valence electron density in the $BeCl_2$ molecule that correspond to the two covalent Be–Cl bonds. To accommodate these two electron domains, two of the Be atom's four valence orbitals will mix to yield two hybrid orbitals. This hybridization process involves mixing of the valence *s* orbital with one of the valence *p* orbitals to yield two equivalent ***sp* hybrid orbitals** that are oriented in a linear geometry (Figure 6.3.3). In this figure, the set of *sp* orbitals appears similar in shape to the original *p* orbital, but there is an important difference. The number of atomic orbitals combined always equals the number of hybrid orbitals formed. The *p* orbital is one orbital that can hold up to two electrons. The *sp* set is two equivalent orbitals that point 180° from each other. The two electrons that were originally in the *s* orbital are now distributed to the two *sp* orbitals, which are half filled. In gaseous $BeCl_2$, these half-filled hybrid orbitals will overlap with orbitals from the chlorine atoms to form two identical σ bonds.

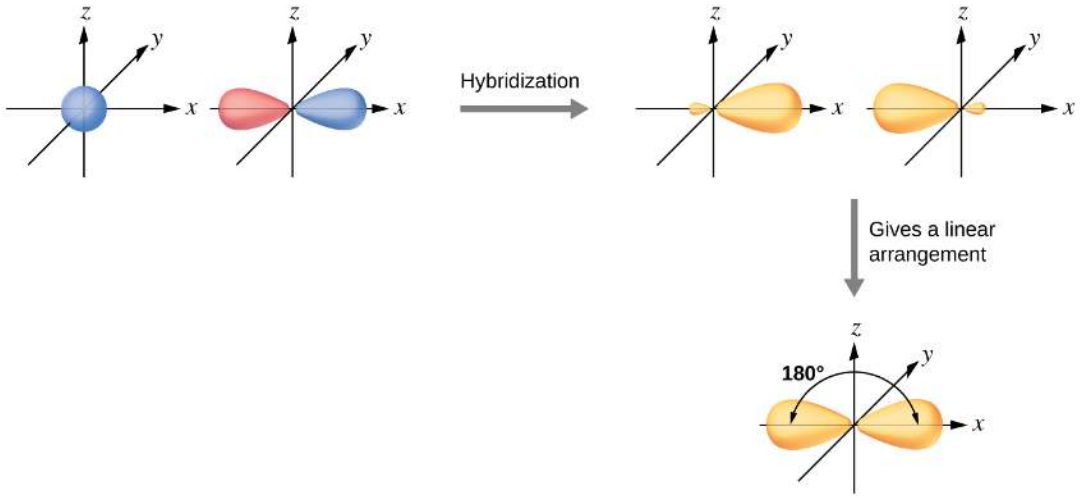


Figure 6.3.3: Hybridization of an *s* orbital (blue) and a *p* orbital (red) of the same atom produces two *sp* hybrid orbitals (yellow). Each hybrid orbital is oriented primarily in just one direction. Note that each *sp* orbital contains one lobe that is significantly larger than the other. The set of two *sp* orbitals are oriented at 180°, which is consistent with the geometry for two domains.

We illustrate the electronic differences in an isolated Be atom and in the bonded Be atom in the orbital energy-level diagram in Figure 6.3.4. These diagrams represent each orbital by a horizontal line (indicating its energy) and each electron by an arrow. Energy increases toward the top of the diagram. We use one upward arrow to indicate one electron in an orbital and two arrows (up and down) to indicate two electrons of opposite spin.

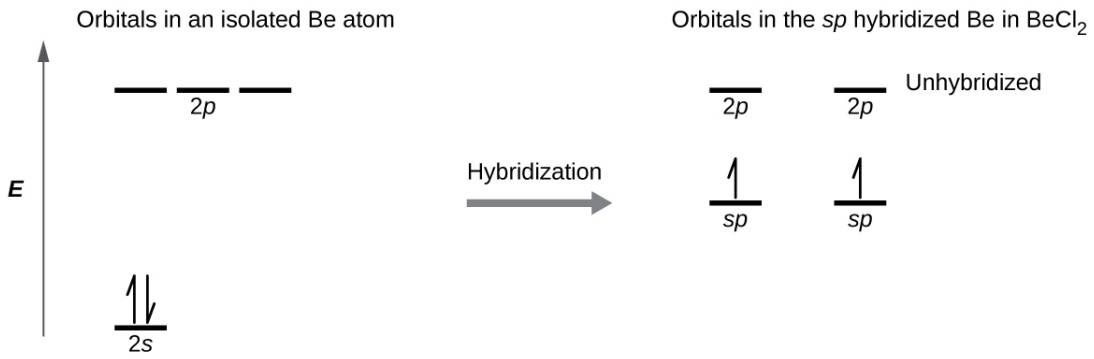


Figure 6.3.4: This orbital energy-level diagram shows the *sp* hybridized orbitals on Be in the linear $BeCl_2$ molecule. Each of the two *sp* hybrid orbitals holds one electron and is thus half filled and available for bonding via overlap with a Cl 3*p* orbital.

When atomic orbitals hybridize, the valence electrons occupy the newly created orbitals. The Be atom had two valence electrons, so each of the *sp* orbitals gets one of these electrons. Each of these electrons pairs up with the unpaired electron on a chlorine atom when a hybrid orbital and a chlorine orbital overlap during the formation of the Be–Cl bonds.

Any central atom surrounded by just two regions of valence electron density in a molecule will exhibit *sp* hybridization. Other examples include the mercury atom in the linear $HgCl_2$ molecule, the zinc atom in $Zn(CH_3)_2$, which contains a linear C–Zn–C arrangement, and the carbon atoms in HCCH and CO_2.

Link to Learning

Check out the University of Wisconsin-Oshkosh website to learn about visualizing hybrid orbitals in three dimensions.

sp^2 Hybridization

The valence orbitals of a central atom surrounded by three regions of electron density consist of a set of three ***sp*^{2} hybrid orbitals** and one unhybridized *p* orbital. This arrangement results from sp^2 hybridization, the mixing of one *s* orbital and two *p* orbitals to produce three identical hybrid orbitals oriented in a trigonal planar geometry (Figure 6.3.5).

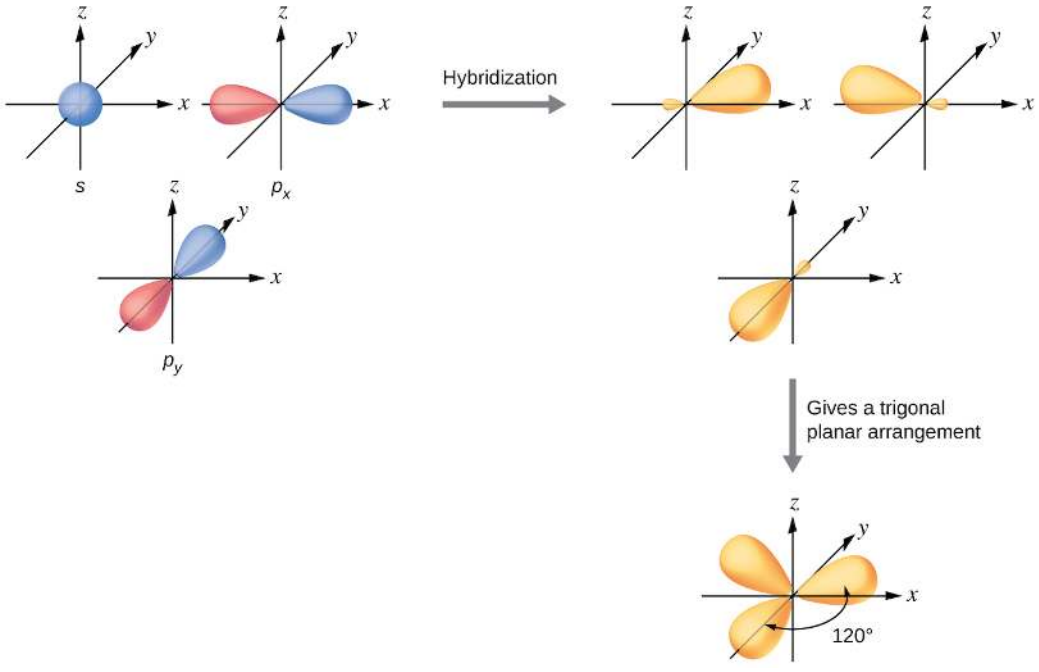


Figure 6.3.5: The hybridization of an *s* orbital (blue) and two *p* orbitals (red) produces three equivalent sp^2 hybridized orbitals (yellow) oriented at 120° with respect to each other. The remaining unhybridized *p* orbital is not shown here, but is located along the z axis.

Although quantum mechanics yields the "plump" orbital lobes as depicted in Figure 6.3.5, sometimes for clarity these orbitals are drawn thinner and without the minor lobes, as in Figure 6.3.6, to avoid obscuring other features of a given illustration. We will use these "thinner" representations whenever the true view is too crowded to easily visualize.

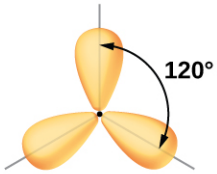


Figure 6.3.6: This alternate way of drawing the trigonal planar sp^2 hybrid orbitals is sometimes used in more crowded figures.

The observed structure of the borane molecule, BH_3, suggests sp^2 hybridization for boron in this compound. The molecule is trigonal planar, and the boron atom is involved in three bonds to hydrogen atoms (Figure 6.3.7). We can illustrate the comparison of orbitals and electron distribution in an isolated boron atom and in the bonded atom in BH_3 as shown in the orbital energy level diagram in Figure 6.3.8. We redistribute the three valence electrons of the boron atom in the three sp^2 hybrid orbitals, and each boron electron pairs with a hydrogen electron when B–H bonds form.

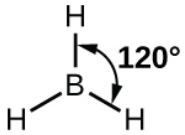


Figure 6.3.7: BH_3 is an electron-deficient molecule with a trigonal planar structure.

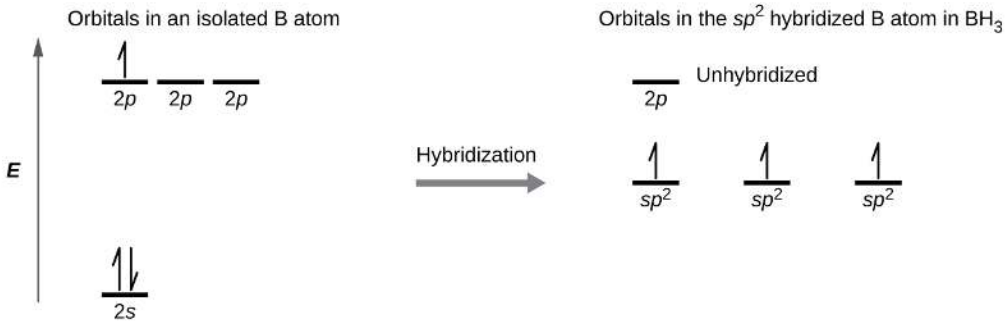


Figure 6.3.8: In an isolated B atom, there are one 2*s* and three 2*p* valence orbitals. When boron is in a molecule with three regions of electron density, three of the orbitals hybridize and create a set of three sp^2 orbitals and one unhybridized 2*p* orbital. The three half-filled hybrid orbitals each overlap with an orbital from a hydrogen atom to form three σ bonds in BH_3.

Any central atom surrounded by three regions of electron density will exhibit sp^2 hybridization. This includes molecules with a lone pair on the central atom, such as ClNO (Figure 6.3.9), or molecules with two single bonds and a double bond connected to the central atom, as in formaldehyde, CH_2O, and ethene, H_2CCH_2.

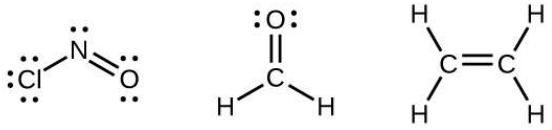


Figure 6.3.9: The central atom(s) in each of the structures shown contain three regions of electron density and are sp^2 hybridized. As we know from the discussion of VSEPR theory, a region of electron density contains all of the electrons that point in one direction. A lone pair, an unpaired electron, a single bond, or a multiple bond would each count as one region of electron density.

sp^3 Hybridization

The valence orbitals of an atom surrounded by a tetrahedral arrangement of bonding pairs and lone pairs consist of a set of four ***sp*^{3} hybrid orbitals**. The hybrids result from the mixing of one *s* orbital and all three *p* orbitals that produces four identical sp^3 hybrid orbitals (Figure 6.3.10). Each of these hybrid orbitals points toward a different corner of a tetrahedron.

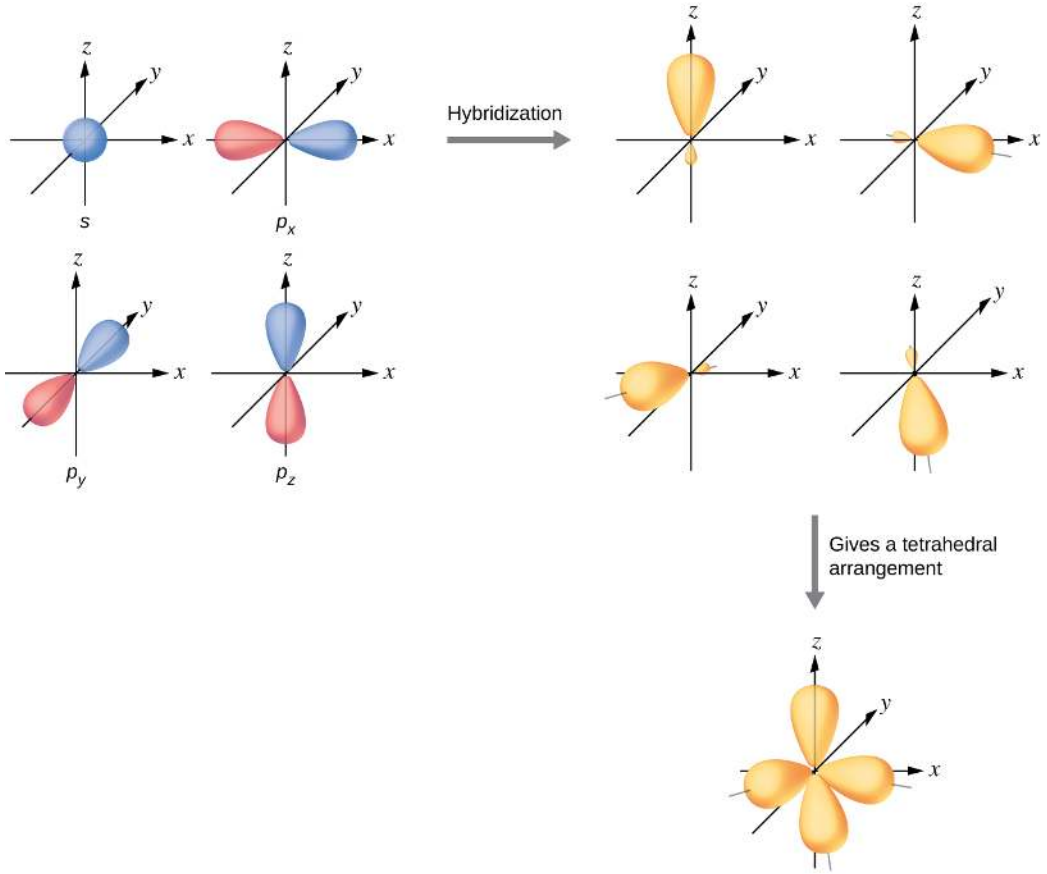


Figure 6.3.10: The hybridization of an *s* orbital (blue) and three *p* orbitals (red) produces four equivalent sp^3 hybridized orbitals (yellow) oriented at 109.5° with respect to each other.

A molecule of methane, CH_4, consists of a carbon atom surrounded by four hydrogen atoms at the corners of a tetrahedron. The carbon atom in methane exhibits sp^3 hybridization. We illustrate the orbitals and electron distribution in an isolated carbon atom and in the bonded atom in CH_4 in Figure 6.3.11. The four valence electrons of the carbon atom are distributed equally in the hybrid orbitals, and each carbon electron pairs with a hydrogen electron when the C–H bonds form.

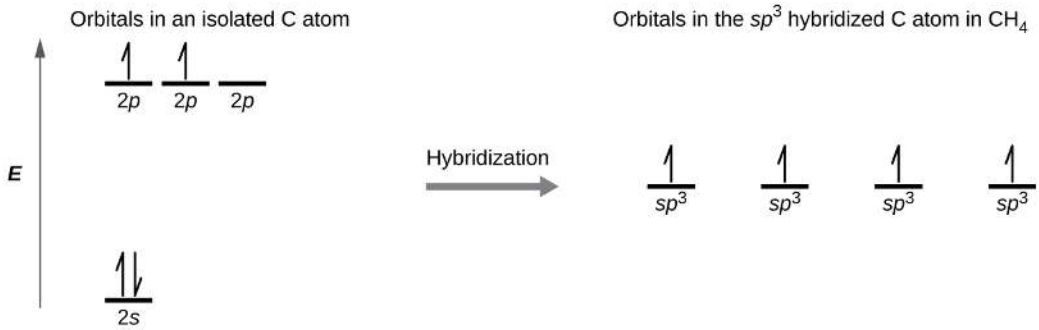


Figure 6.3.11: The four valence atomic orbitals from an isolated carbon atom all hybridize when the carbon bonds in a molecule like CH_4 with four regions of electron density. This creates four equivalent sp^3 hybridized orbitals. Overlap of each of the hybrid orbitals with a hydrogen orbital creates a C–H σ bond.

In a methane molecule, the 1*s* orbital of each of the four hydrogen atoms overlaps with one of the four sp^3 orbitals of the carbon atom to form a sigma (σ) bond. This results in the formation of four strong, equivalent covalent bonds between the carbon atom and each of the hydrogen atoms to produce the methane molecule, CH_4.

The structure of ethane, C_2H_6, is similar to that of methane in that each carbon in ethane has four neighboring atoms arranged at the corners of a tetrahedron—three hydrogen atoms and one carbon atom (Figure 6.3.12). However, in ethane an sp^3 orbital of one carbon atom overlaps end to end with an sp^3 orbital of a second carbon atom to form a σ bond between the two carbon atoms. Each

of the remaining sp^3 hybrid orbitals overlaps with an *s* orbital of a hydrogen atom to form carbon–hydrogen σ bonds. The structure and overall outline of the bonding orbitals of ethane are shown in Figure 6.3.12. The orientation of the two CH_3 groups is not fixed relative to each other. Experimental evidence shows that rotation around σ bonds occurs easily.

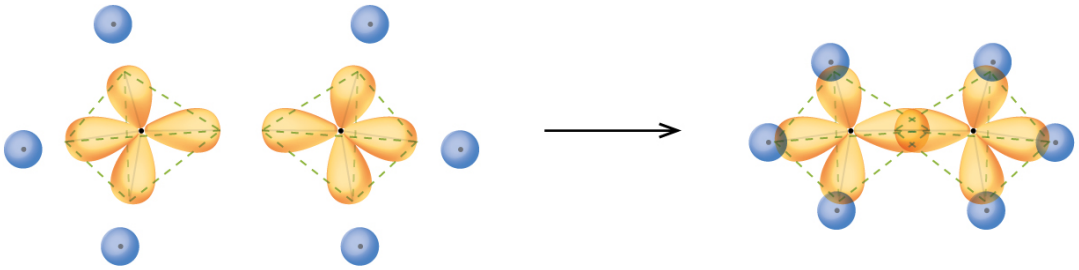


Figure 6.3.12: (a) In the ethane molecule, C_2H_6, each carbon has four sp^3 orbitals. (b) These four orbitals overlap to form seven σ bonds.

An sp^3 hybrid orbital can also hold a lone pair of electrons. For example, the nitrogen atom in ammonia is surrounded by three bonding pairs and a lone pair of electrons directed to the four corners of a tetrahedron. The nitrogen atom is sp^3 hybridized with one hybrid orbital occupied by the lone pair.

The molecular structure of water is consistent with a tetrahedral arrangement of two lone pairs and two bonding pairs of electrons. Thus we say that the oxygen atom is sp^3 hybridized, with two of the hybrid orbitals occupied by lone pairs and two by bonding pairs. Since lone pairs occupy more space than bonding pairs, structures that contain lone pairs have bond angles slightly distorted from the ideal. Perfect tetrahedra have angles of 109.5°, but the observed angles in ammonia (107.3°) and water (104.5°) are slightly smaller. Other examples of sp^3 hybridization include CCl_4, PCl_3, and NCl_3.

sp^3d and sp^3d^2 Hybridization

To describe the five bonding orbitals in a trigonal bipyramidal arrangement, we must use five of the valence shell atomic orbitals (the *s* orbital, the three *p* orbitals, and one of the *d* orbitals), which gives five ***sp*^{3}*d* hybrid orbitals**. With an octahedral arrangement of six hybrid orbitals, we must use six valence shell atomic orbitals (the *s* orbital, the three *p* orbitals, and two of the *d* orbitals in its valence shell), which gives six ***sp*^{3}*d*^{2} hybrid orbitals**. These hybridizations are only possible for atoms that have *d* orbitals in their valence subshells (that is, not those in the first or second period).

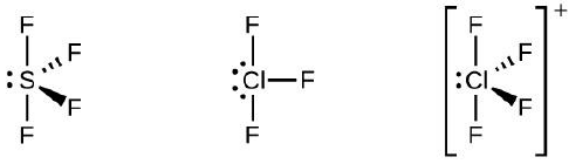


Figure 6.3.13: The three compounds pictured exhibit sp^3d hybridization in the central atom and a trigonal bipyramid form. SF_4 and have one lone pair of electrons on the central atom, and ClF_3 has two lone pairs giving it the T-shape shown.

In a molecule of phosphorus pentachloride, PCl_5, there are five P–Cl bonds (thus five pairs of valence electrons around the phosphorus atom) directed toward the corners of a trigonal bipyramid. We use the 3*s* orbital, the three 3*p* orbitals, and one of the 3*d* orbitals to form the set of five sp^3d hybrid orbitals (Figure 6.3.14) that are involved in the P–Cl bonds. Other atoms that exhibit sp^3d hybridization include the sulfur atom in SF_4 and the chlorine atoms in ClF_3 and in (The electrons on fluorine atoms are omitted for clarity.)

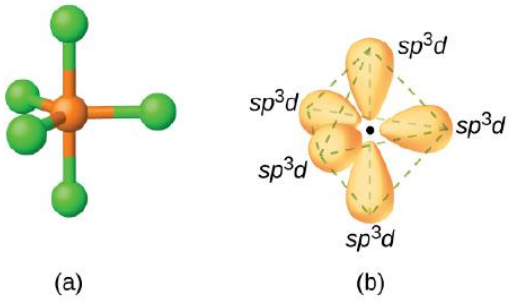


Figure 6.3.14: (a) The five regions of electron density around phosphorus in PCl_5 require five hybrid sp^3d orbitals. (b) These orbitals combine to form a trigonal bipyramidal structure with each large lobe of the hybrid orbital pointing at a vertex. As before, there are also small lobes pointing in the opposite direction for each orbital (not shown for clarity).

The sulfur atom in sulfur hexafluoride, SF_6, exhibits sp^3d^2 hybridization. A molecule of sulfur hexafluoride has six bonding pairs of electrons connecting six fluorine atoms to a single sulfur atom. There are no lone pairs of electrons on the central atom. To bond six fluorine atoms, the 3*s* orbital, the three 3*p* orbitals, and two of the 3*d* orbitals form six equivalent sp^3d^2 hybrid orbitals, each directed toward a different corner of an octahedron. Other atoms that exhibit sp^3d^2 hybridization include the phosphorus atom in the iodine atom in the interhalogens IF_5, and the xenon atom in XeF_4.

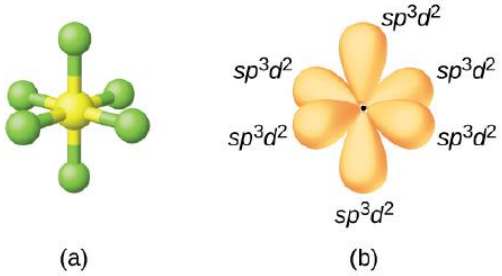


Figure 6.3.15: (a) Sulfur hexafluoride, SF_6, has an octahedral structure that requires sp^3d^2 hybridization. (b) The six sp^3d^2 orbitals form an octahedral structure around sulfur. Again, the minor lobe of each orbital is not shown for clarity.

Assignment of Hybrid Orbitals to Central Atoms

The hybridization of an atom is determined based on the number of regions of electron density that surround it. The geometrical arrangements characteristic of the various sets of hybrid orbitals are shown in Figure 6.3.16. These arrangements are identical to those of the electron-pair geometries predicted by VSEPR theory. VSEPR theory predicts the shapes of molecules, and hybrid orbital theory provides an explanation for how those shapes are formed. To find the hybridization of a central atom, we can use the following guidelines:

1. Determine the Lewis structure of the molecule.
2. Determine the number of regions of electron density around an atom using VSEPR theory, in which single bonds, multiple bonds, radicals, and lone pairs each count as one region.
3. Assign the set of hybridized orbitals from Figure 6.3.16 that corresponds to this geometry.

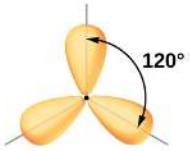
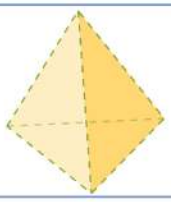
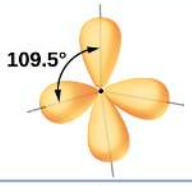
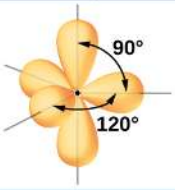
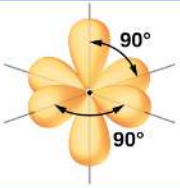
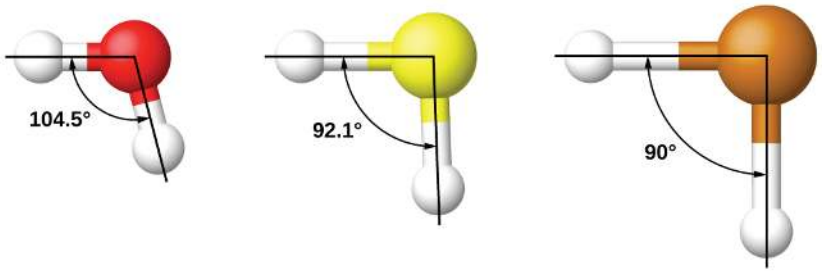
Regions of Electron Density	Arrangement		Hybridization	
2		linear	*sp*	
3		trigonal planar	sp^2	
4		tetrahedral	sp^3	
5		trigonal bipyramidal	sp^3d	
6		octahedral	sp^3d^2	

Figure 6.3.16: The shapes of hybridized orbital sets are consistent with the electron-pair geometries. For example, an atom surrounded by three regions of electron density is sp^2 hybridized, and the three sp^2 orbitals are arranged in a trigonal planar fashion.

It is important to remember that hybridization was devised to rationalize experimentally observed molecular geometries. The model works well for molecules containing small central atoms, in which the valence electron pairs are close together in space. However, for larger central atoms, the valence-shell electron pairs are farther from the nucleus, and there are fewer repulsions. Their compounds exhibit structures that are often not consistent with VSEPR theory, and hybridized orbitals are not necessary to explain the observed data. For example, we have discussed the H–O–H bond angle in H_2O, 104.5°, which is more consistent with sp^3 hybrid orbitals (109.5°) on the central atom than with 2*p* orbitals (90°). Sulfur is in the same group as oxygen, and H_2S has a similar Lewis structure. However, it has a much smaller bond angle (92.1°), which indicates much less hybridization on sulfur than oxygen. Continuing down the group, tellurium is even larger than sulfur, and for H_2Te, the observed bond angle (90°) is consistent with overlap of the 5*p* orbitals, without invoking hybridization. We invoke hybridization where it is necessary to explain the observed structures.

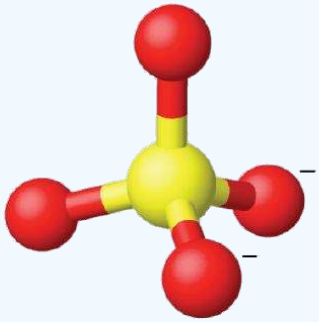


Example 6.3.1: Assigning Hybridization

Ammonium sulfate is important as a fertilizer. What is the hybridization of the sulfur atom in the sulfate ion,

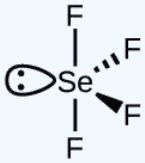
Solution

The Lewis structure of sulfate shows there are four regions of electron density. The hybridization is sp^3.



Exercise 6.3.1

What is the hybridization of the selenium atom in SeF_4?



Answer

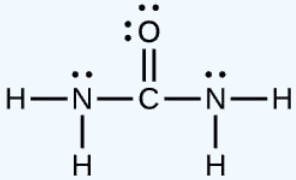
The selenium atom is sp^3d hybridized.

Example 6.3.2: Assigning Hybridization

Urea, $NH_2C(O)NH_2$, is sometimes used as a source of nitrogen in fertilizers. What is the hybridization of the carbon atom in urea?

Solution

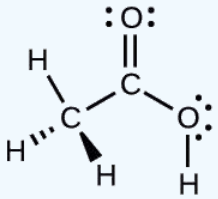
The Lewis structure of urea is



The carbon atom is surrounded by three regions of electron density, positioned in a trigonal planar arrangement. The hybridization in a trigonal planar electron pair geometry is sp^2 (Figure 6.3.16), which is the hybridization of the carbon atom in urea.

Exercise 6.3.1

Acetic acid, $H_3CC(O)OH$, is the molecule that gives vinegar its odor and sour taste. What is the hybridization of the two carbon atoms in acetic acid?



Answer

$H_3\underline{C}$, sp^3; $\underline{C}(O)OH$, sp^2

Footnotes

- 1Note that orbitals may sometimes be drawn in an elongated “balloon” shape rather than in a more realistic “plump” shape in order to make the geometry easier to visualize.

This page titled 6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.2: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

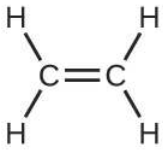
6.4: Multiple Bonds

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe multiple covalent bonding in terms of atomic orbital overlap
- Relate the concept of resonance to π-bonding and electron delocalization

The hybrid orbital model appears to account well for the geometry of molecules involving single covalent bonds. Is it also capable of describing molecules containing double and triple bonds? We have already discussed that multiple bonds consist of σ and π bonds. Next we can consider how we visualize these components and how they relate to hybrid orbitals. The Lewis structure of ethene, C_2H_4, shows us that each carbon atom is surrounded by one other carbon atom and two hydrogen atoms.



The three bonding regions form a trigonal planar electron-pair geometry. Thus we expect the σ bonds from each carbon atom are formed using a set of sp^2 hybrid orbitals that result from hybridization of two of the 2*p* orbitals and the 2*s* orbital (Figure 6.4.1).

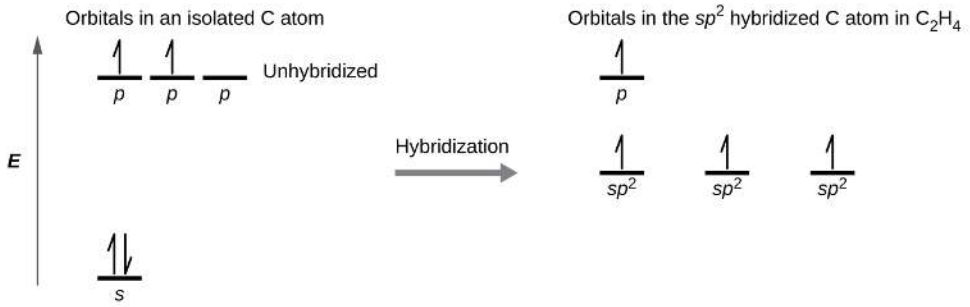


Figure 6.4.1: In ethene, each carbon atom is sp^2 hybridized, and the sp^2 orbitals and the *p* orbital are singly occupied. The hybrid orbitals overlap to form σ bonds, while the *p* orbitals on each carbon atom overlap to form a π bond.

These orbitals form the C–H single bonds and the σ bond in the Figure 6.4.2. The π bond in the C=C double bond results from the overlap of the third (remaining) 2p orbital on each carbon atom that is not involved in hybridization. This unhybridized p orbital (lobes shown in red and blue in Figure 6.4.2) is perpendicular to the plane of the sp2 hybrid orbitals. Thus the unhybridized 2p orbitals overlap in a side-by-side fashion, above and below the internuclear axis (Figure 6.4.2) and form a π bond.

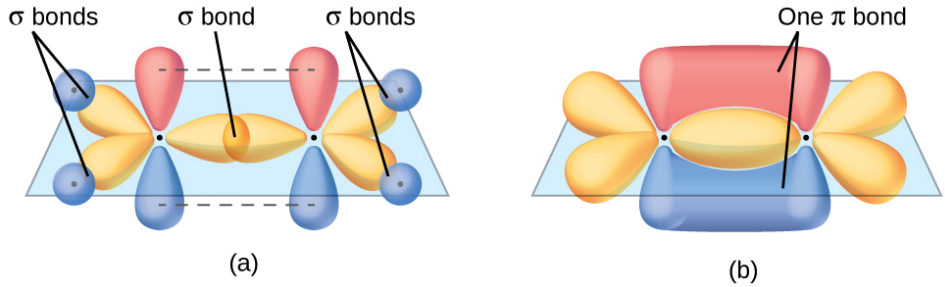


Figure 6.4.2: In the ethene molecule, C_2H_4, there are (a) five σ bonds. One C–C σ bond results from overlap of sp^2 hybrid orbitals on the carbon atom with one sp^2 hybrid orbital on the other carbon atom. Four C–H bonds result from the overlap between the C atoms' sp^2 orbitals with *s* orbitals on the hydrogen atoms. (b) The π bond is formed by the side-by-side overlap of the two unhybridized *p* orbitals in the two carbon atoms. The two lobes of the π bond are above and below the plane of the σ system.

In an ethene molecule, the four hydrogen atoms and the two carbon atoms are all in the same plane. If the two planes of sp^2 hybrid orbitals tilted relative to each other, the *p* orbitals would not be oriented to overlap efficiently to create the π bond. The planar configuration for the ethene molecule occurs because it is the most stable bonding arrangement. This is a significant difference

between σ and π bonds; rotation around single (σ) bonds occurs easily because the end-to-end orbital overlap does not depend on the relative orientation of the orbitals on each atom in the bond. In other words, rotation around the internuclear axis does not change the extent to which the σ bonding orbitals overlap because the bonding electron density is symmetric about the axis. Rotation about the internuclear axis is much more difficult for multiple bonds; however, this would drastically alter the off-axis overlap of the π bonding orbitals, essentially breaking the π bond.

In molecules with *sp* hybrid orbitals, two unhybridized *p* orbitals remain on the atom (Figure 6.4.3). We find this situation in acetylene, $\mathrm{H-C\equiv C-H}$ (Figure 6.4.4), The remaining sp orbitals form σ bonds with hydrogen atoms. The two unhybridized *p* orbitals per carbon are positioned such that they overlap side by side and, hence, form two π bonds. The two carbon atoms of acetylene are thus bound together by one σ bond and two π bonds, giving a triple bond.

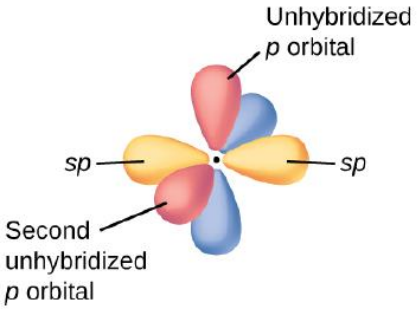


Figure 6.4.3: Diagram of the two linear *sp* hybrid orbitals of a carbon atom, which lie in a straight line, and the two unhybridized *p* orbitals at perpendicular angles.

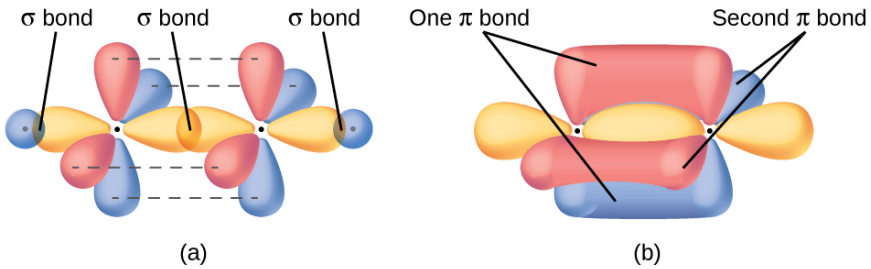


Figure 6.4.4: (a) In the acetylene molecule, C_2H_2, there are two C–H σ bonds and a triple bond involving one C–C σ bond and two C–C π bonds. The dashed lines, each connecting two lobes, indicate the side-by-side overlap of the four unhybridized *p* orbitals. (b) This shows the overall outline of the bonds in C_2H_2. The two lobes of each of the π bonds are positioned across from each other around the line of the C–C σ bond.

Hybridization involves only σ bonds, lone pairs of electrons, and single unpaired electrons (radicals). Structures that account for these features describe the correct hybridization of the atoms. However, many structures also include resonance forms. Remember that resonance forms occur when various arrangements of π bonds are possible. Since the arrangement of π bonds involves only the unhybridized orbitals, resonance does not influence the assignment of hybridization.

For example, molecule benzene has two resonance forms (Figure 6.4.5). We can use either of these forms to determine that each of the carbon atoms is bonded to three other atoms with no lone pairs, so the correct hybridization is sp^2. The electrons in the unhybridized *p* orbitals form π bonds. Neither resonance structure completely describes the electrons in the π bonds. They are not located in one position or the other, but in reality are delocalized throughout the ring. Valence bond theory does not easily address delocalization. Bonding in molecules with resonance forms is better described by molecular orbital theory. (See the next module.)

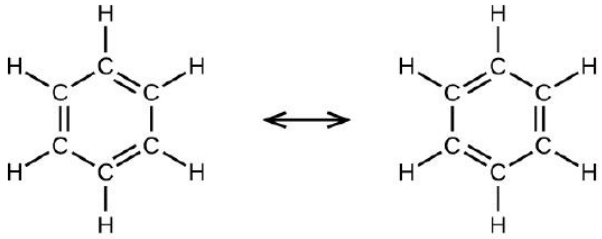


Figure 6.4.5: Each carbon atom in benzene, C_6H_6, is sp^2 hybridized, independently of which resonance form is considered. The electrons in the π bonds are not located in one set of *p* orbitals or the other, but rather delocalized throughout the molecule.

Example 6.4.1: Assignment of Hybridization Involving Resonance

Some acid rain results from the reaction of sulfur dioxide with atmospheric water vapor, followed by the formation of sulfuric acid. Sulfur dioxide, SO_2, is a major component of volcanic gases as well as a product of the combustion of sulfur-containing coal. What is the hybridization of the S atom in SO_2?

Solution

The resonance structures of SO_2 are



The sulfur atom is surrounded by two bonds and one lone pair of electrons in either resonance structure. Therefore, the electron-pair geometry is trigonal planar, and the hybridization of the sulfur atom is sp^2.

Exercise 6.4.1

Another acid in acid rain is nitric acid, HNO_3, which is produced by the reaction of nitrogen dioxide, NO_2, with atmospheric water vapor. What is the hybridization of the nitrogen atom in NO_2? (Note: the lone electron on nitrogen occupies a hybridized orbital just as a lone pair would.)

Answer

sp^2

This page titled 6.4: Multiple Bonds is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.3: Multiple Bonds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

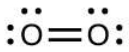
6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Outline the basic quantum-mechanical approach to deriving molecular orbitals from atomic orbitals
- Describe traits of bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals
- Calculate bond orders based on molecular electron configurations
- Write molecular electron configurations for first- and second-row diatomic molecules
- Relate these electron configurations to the molecules' stabilities and magnetic properties

For almost every covalent molecule that exists, we can now draw the Lewis structure, predict the electron-pair geometry, predict the molecular geometry, and come close to predicting bond angles. However, one of the most important molecules we know, the oxygen molecule O_2, presents a problem with respect to its Lewis structure. We would write the following Lewis structure for O_2:



This electronic structure adheres to all the rules governing Lewis theory. There is an O=O double bond, and each oxygen atom has eight electrons around it. However, this picture is at odds with the magnetic behavior of oxygen. By itself, O_2 is not magnetic, but it is attracted to magnetic fields. Thus, when we pour liquid oxygen past a strong magnet, it collects between the poles of the magnet and defies gravity. Such attraction to a magnetic field is called **paramagnetism**, and it arises in molecules that have unpaired electrons. And yet, the Lewis structure of O_2 indicates that all electrons are paired. How do we account for this discrepancy?

Magnetic susceptibility measures the force experienced by a substance in a magnetic field. When we compare the weight of a sample to the weight measured in a magnetic field (Figure 6.5.1), paramagnetic samples that are attracted to the magnet will appear heavier because of the force exerted by the magnetic field. We can calculate the number of unpaired electrons based on the increase in weight.

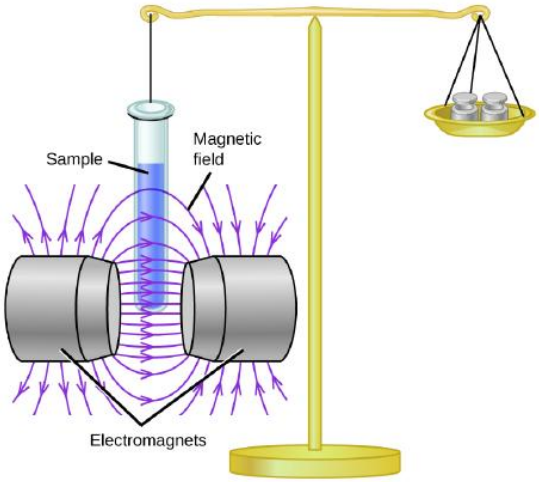


Figure 6.5.1: A Gouy balance compares the mass of a sample in the presence of a magnetic field with the mass with the electromagnet turned off to determine the number of unpaired electrons in a sample.

Experiments show that each O_2 molecule has two unpaired electrons. The Lewis-structure model does not predict the presence of these two unpaired electrons. Unlike oxygen, the apparent weight of most molecules decreases slightly in the presence of an inhomogeneous magnetic field. Materials in which all of the electrons are paired are diamagnetic and weakly repel a magnetic field. Paramagnetic and diamagnetic materials do not act as permanent magnets. Only in the presence of an applied magnetic field do they demonstrate attraction or repulsion.

Link to Learning

Water, like most molecules, contains all paired electrons. Living things contain a large percentage of water, so they demonstrate diamagnetic behavior. If you place a frog near a sufficiently large magnet, it will levitate. You can see videos of diamagnetic floating frogs, strawberries, and more.

Molecular orbital theory (MO theory) provides an explanation of chemical bonding that accounts for the paramagnetism of the oxygen molecule. It also explains the bonding in a number of other molecules, such as violations of the octet rule and more molecules with more complicated bonding (beyond the scope of this text) that are difficult to describe with Lewis structures. Additionally, it provides a model for describing the energies of electrons in a molecule and the probable location of these electrons. Unlike valence bond theory, which uses hybrid orbitals that are assigned to one specific atom, MO theory uses the combination of atomic orbitals to yield molecular orbitals that are *delocalized* over the entire molecule rather than being localized on its constituent atoms. MO theory also helps us understand why some substances are electrical conductors, others are semiconductors, and still others are insulators. Table 6.5.1 summarizes the main points of the two complementary bonding theories. Both theories provide different, useful ways of describing molecular structure.

Table 6.5.1: Comparison of Bonding Theories

Valence Bond Theory	Molecular Orbital Theory
considers bonds as localized between one pair of atoms	considers electrons delocalized throughout the entire molecule
creates bonds from overlap of atomic orbitals (*s*, *p*, *d*…) and hybrid orbitals (*sp*, sp^2, sp^3…)	combines atomic orbitals to form molecular orbitals (σ, σ*, π, π*)
forms σ or π bonds	creates bonding and antibonding interactions based on which orbitals are filled
predicts molecular shape based on the number of regions of electron density	predicts the arrangement of electrons in molecules
needs multiple structures to describe resonance	

Molecular orbital theory describes the distribution of electrons in molecules in much the same way that the distribution of electrons in atoms is described using atomic orbitals. Using quantum mechanics, the behavior of an electron in a molecule is still described by a wave function, Ψ, analogous to the behavior in an atom. Just like electrons around isolated atoms, electrons around atoms in molecules are limited to discrete (quantized) energies. The region of space in which a valence electron in a molecule is likely to be found is called a molecular orbital (Ψ^2). Like an atomic orbital, a molecular orbital is full when it contains two electrons with opposite spin.

We will consider the molecular orbitals in molecules composed of two identical atoms (H_2 or Cl_2, for example). Such molecules are called homonuclear diatomic molecules. In these diatomic molecules, several types of molecular orbitals occur.

The mathematical process of combining atomic orbitals to generate molecular orbitals is called the **linear combination of atomic orbitals** (LCAO). The wave function describes the wavelike properties of an electron. Molecular orbitals are combinations of atomic orbital wave functions. Combining waves can lead to constructive interference, in which peaks line up with peaks, or destructive interference, in which peaks line up with troughs (Figure 6.5.2). In orbitals, the waves are three dimensional, and they combine with in-phase waves producing regions with a higher probability of electron density and out-of-phase waves producing nodes, or regions of no electron density.

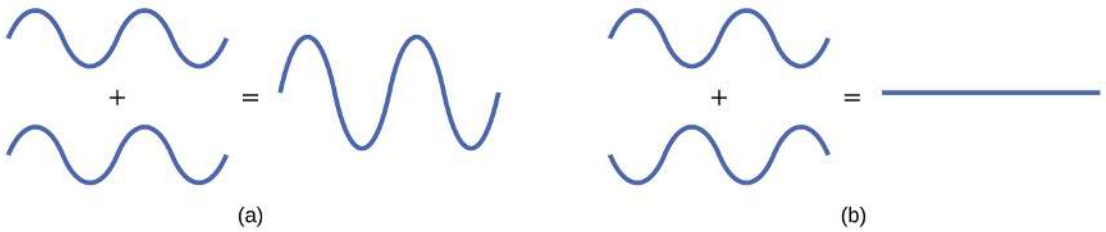


Figure 6.5.2: (a) When in-phase waves combine, constructive interference produces a wave with greater amplitude. (b) When out-of-phase waves combine, destructive interference produces a wave with less (or no) amplitude.

There are two types of molecular orbitals that can form from the overlap of two atomic *s* orbitals on adjacent atoms. The two types are illustrated in Figure 6.5.3. The in-phase combination produces a lower energy σ_s molecular orbital (read as "sigma-s") in which most of the electron density is directly between the nuclei. The out-of-phase addition (which can also be thought of as subtracting the wave functions) produces a higher energy molecular orbital (read as "sigma-s-star") molecular orbital in which there is a node between the nuclei. The asterisk signifies that the orbital is an antibonding orbital. Electrons in a σ_s orbital are attracted by both nuclei at the same time and are more stable (of lower energy) than they would be in the isolated atoms. Adding electrons to these orbitals creates a force that holds the two nuclei together, so we call these orbitals bonding orbitals. Electrons in the orbitals are located well away from the region between the two nuclei. The attractive force between the nuclei and these electrons pulls the two nuclei apart. Hence, these orbitals are called antibonding orbitals. Electrons fill the lower-energy bonding orbital before the higher-energy antibonding orbital, just as they fill lower-energy atomic orbitals before they fill higher-energy atomic orbitals.

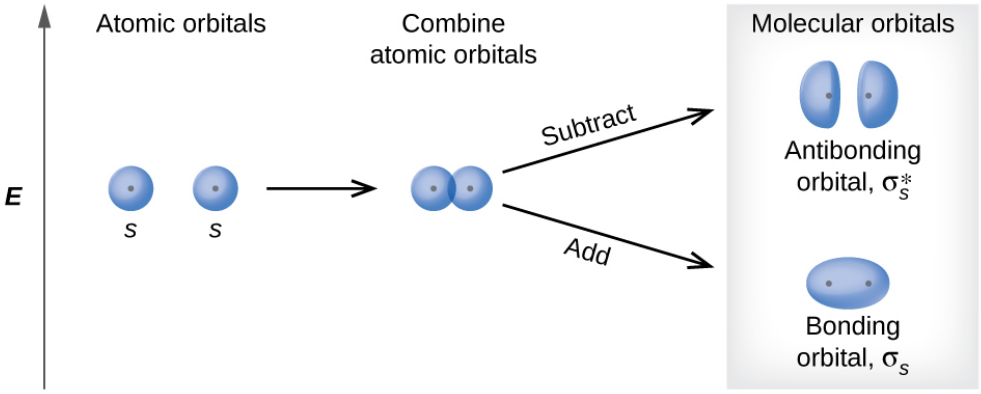


Figure 6.5.3: Sigma (σ) and sigma-star (σ*) molecular orbitals are formed by the combination of two *s* atomic orbitals. The dots (·) indicate the locations of nuclei.

Link to Learning

You can watch animations visualizing the calculated atomic orbitals combining to form various molecular orbitals at the Orbitron website.

In *p* orbitals, the wave function gives rise to two lobes with opposite phases, analogous to how a two-dimensional wave has both parts above and below the average. We indicate the phases by shading the orbital lobes different colors. When orbital lobes of the same phase overlap, constructive wave interference increases the electron density. When regions of opposite phase overlap, the destructive wave interference decreases electron density and creates nodes. When *p* orbitals overlap end to end, they create σ and σ* orbitals (Figure 6.5.4). If two atoms are located along the *x*-axis in a Cartesian coordinate system, the two p_x orbitals overlap end to end and form σ_{px} (bonding) and (antibonding) (read as "sigma-p-x" and "sigma-p-x star," respectively). Just as with *s*-orbital overlap, the asterisk indicates the orbital with a node between the nuclei, which is a higher-energy, antibonding orbital.

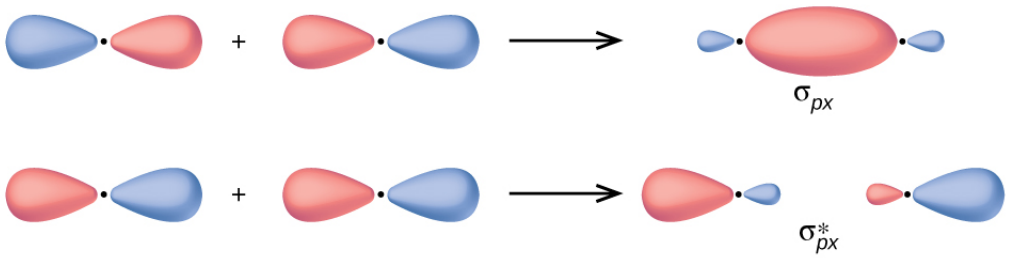


Figure 6.5.4: Combining wave functions of two *p* atomic orbitals along the internuclear axis creates two molecular orbitals, σ_p and σ_p^*.

The side-by-side overlap of two *p* orbitals gives rise to a **pi (π) bonding molecular orbital** and a **π* antibonding molecular orbital**, as shown in Figure 6.5.5. In valence bond theory, we describe π bonds as containing a nodal plane containing the internuclear axis and perpendicular to the lobes of the *p* orbitals, with electron density on either side of the node. In molecular orbital theory, we describe the π orbital by this same shape, and a π bond exists when this orbital contains electrons. Electrons in

this orbital interact with both nuclei and help hold the two atoms together, making it a bonding orbital. For the out-of-phase combination, there are two nodal planes created, one along the internuclear axis and a perpendicular one between the nuclei.

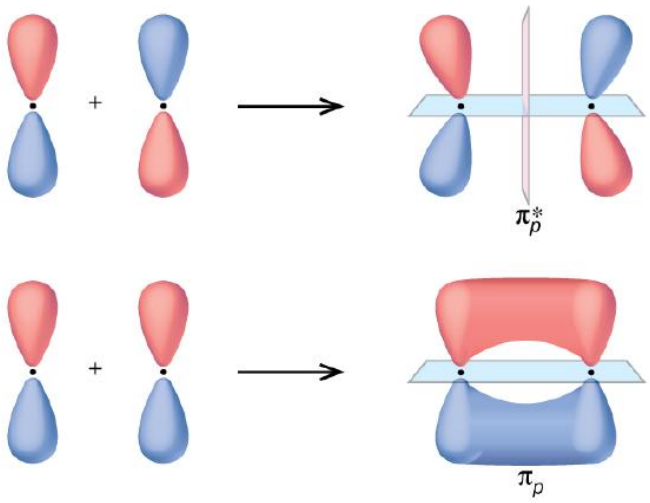
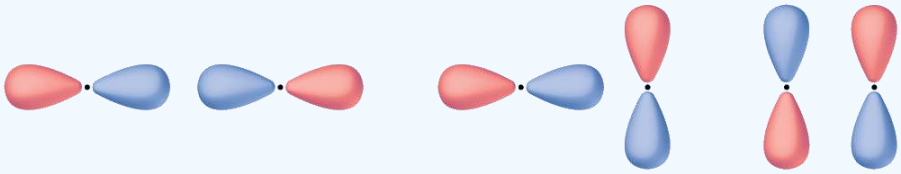


Figure 6.5.5: Side-by-side overlap of each two *p* orbitals results in the formation of two π molecular orbitals. Combining the out-of-phase orbitals results in an antibonding molecular orbital with two nodes. One contains the internuclear axis, and one is perpendicular to the axis. Combining the in-phase orbitals results in a bonding orbital. There is a node (blue) containing the internuclear axis with the two lobes of the orbital located above and below this node.

In the molecular orbitals of diatomic molecules, each atom also has two sets of *p* orbitals oriented side by side (p_y and p_z), so these four atomic orbitals combine pairwise to create two π orbitals and two π* orbitals. The π_{py} and orbitals are oriented at right angles to the π_{pz} and π^*_{pz} orbitals. Except for their orientation, the \(π_{py}\) and \(π_{pz}\) orbitals are identical and have the same energy; they are **degenerate orbitals**. The π^*_{py} and π^*_{pz} antibonding orbitals are also degenerate and identical except for their orientation. A total of six molecular orbitals results from the combination of the six atomic p orbitals in two atoms: σ_{px} and σ^*_{px}, π_{py} and π^*_{py}, π_{pz} and π^*_{pz}.

Example 6.5.1: Molecular Orbitals

Predict what type (if any) of molecular orbital would result from adding the wave functions so each pair of orbitals shown overlap. The orbitals are all similar in energy.



$3p_x$ and $3p_x$ (a)

$3p_x$ and $3p_y$ (b)

$3p_y$ and $3p_y$ (c)

Solution

a. is an in-phase combination, resulting in a π_{3p} orbital

b. will not result in a new orbital because the in-phase component (bottom) and out-of-phase component (top) cancel out. Only orbitals with the correct alignment can combine.

c. is an out-of-phase combination, resulting in a π^*_{3p} orbital.

Exercise 6.5.1

Label the molecular orbital shown as σ or π, bonding or antibonding and indicate where the node occurs.



Answer

The orbital is located along the internuclear axis, so it is a σ orbital. There is a node bisecting the internuclear axis, so it is an antibonding orbital.



Portrait of a Chemist: Walter Kohn: Nobel Laureate

Walter Kohn (Figure 6.5.6) is a theoretical physicist who studies the electronic structure of solids. His work combines the principles of quantum mechanics with advanced mathematical techniques. This technique, called density functional theory, makes it possible to compute properties of molecular orbitals, including their shape and energies. Kohn and mathematician John Pople were awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1998 for their contributions to our understanding of electronic structure. Kohn also made significant contributions to the physics of semiconductors.

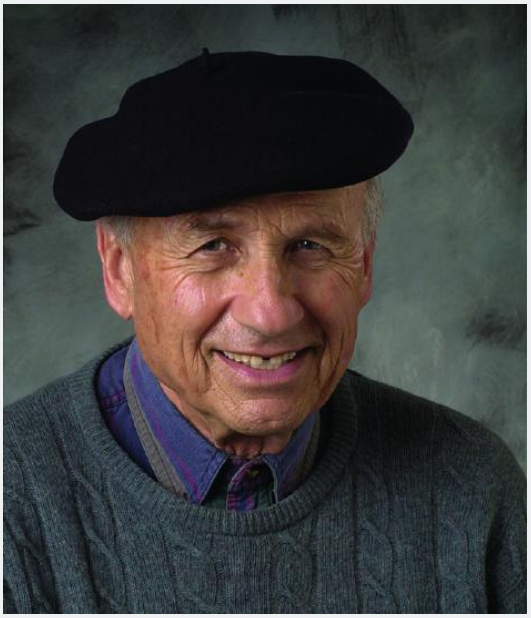


Figure 6.5.6: Walter Kohn developed methods to describe molecular orbitals. (credit: image courtesy of Walter Kohn)

Kohn's biography has been remarkable outside the realm of physical chemistry as well. He was born in Austria, and during World War II he was part of the Kindertransport program that rescued 10,000 children from the Nazi regime. His summer jobs included discovering gold deposits in Canada and helping Polaroid explain how its instant film worked. Dr. Kohn passed away in 2016 at the age of 93.

How Sciences Interconnect: Computational Chemistry in Drug Design

While the descriptions of bonding described in this chapter involve many theoretical concepts, they also have many practical, real-world applications. For example, drug design is an important field that uses our understanding of chemical bonding to develop pharmaceuticals. This interdisciplinary area of study uses biology (understanding diseases and how they operate) to identify specific targets, such as a binding site that is involved in a disease pathway. By modeling the structures of the binding site and potential drugs, computational chemists can predict which structures can fit together and how effectively they will bind (see Figure 6.5.7). Thousands of potential candidates can be narrowed down to a few of the most promising candidates. These candidate molecules are then carefully tested to determine side effects, how effectively they can be transported through

the body, and other factors. Dozens of important new pharmaceuticals have been discovered with the aid of computational chemistry, and new research projects are underway.

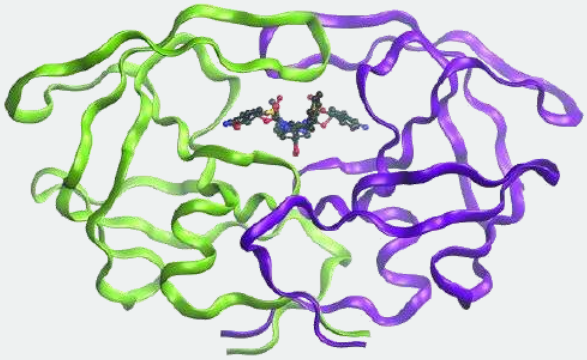


Figure 6.5.7: The molecule shown, HIV-1 protease, is an important target for pharmaceutical research. By designing molecules that bind to this protein, scientists are able to drastically inhibit the progress of the disease.

Molecular Orbital Energy Diagrams

The relative energy levels of atomic and molecular orbitals are typically shown in a molecular orbital diagram (Figure 6.5.8). For a diatomic molecule, the atomic orbitals of one atom are shown on the left, and those of the other atom are shown on the right. Each horizontal line represents one orbital that can hold two electrons. The molecular orbitals formed by the combination of the atomic orbitals are shown in the center. Dashed lines show which of the atomic orbitals combine to form the molecular orbitals. For each pair of atomic orbitals that combine, one lower-energy (bonding) molecular orbital and one higher-energy (antibonding) orbital result. Thus we can see that combining the six 2*p* atomic orbitals results in three bonding orbitals (one σ and two π) and three antibonding orbitals (one σ* and two π*).

We predict the distribution of electrons in these molecular orbitals by filling the orbitals in the same way that we fill atomic orbitals, by the Aufbau principle. Lower-energy orbitals fill first, electrons spread out among degenerate orbitals before pairing, and each orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons with opposite spins (Figure 6.5.8). Just as we write electron configurations for atoms, we can write the molecular electronic configuration by listing the orbitals with superscripts indicating the number of electrons present. For clarity, we place parentheses around molecular orbitals with the same energy. In this case, each orbital is at a different energy, so parentheses separate each orbital. Thus we would expect a diatomic molecule or ion containing seven electrons (such as Be_2^+) would have the molecular electron configuration $(\sigma_{1s})^2(\sigma_{1s}^*)^2(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^1$. It is common to omit the core electrons from molecular orbital diagrams and configurations and include only the valence electrons.

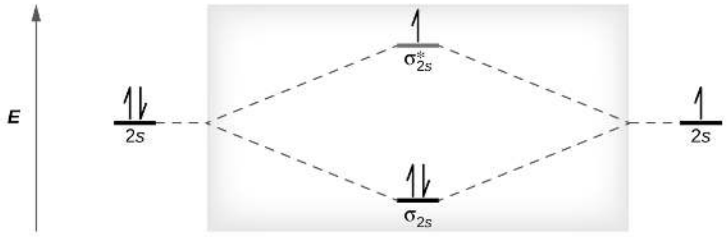


Figure 6.5.8: This is the molecular orbital diagram for the homonuclear diatomic showing the molecular orbitals of the valence shell only. The molecular orbitals are filled in the same manner as atomic orbitals, using the Aufbau principle and Hund's rule.

Bond Order

The filled molecular orbital diagram shows the number of electrons in both bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals. The net contribution of the electrons to the bond strength of a molecule is identified by determining the **bond order** that results from the filling of the molecular orbitals by electrons.

When using Lewis structures to describe the distribution of electrons in molecules, we define bond order as the number of bonding pairs of electrons between two atoms. Thus a single bond has a bond order of 1, a double bond has a bond order of 2, and a triple bond has a bond order of 3. We define bond order differently when we use the molecular orbital description of the distribution of electrons, but the resulting bond order is usually the same. The MO technique is more accurate and can handle cases when the Lewis structure method fails, but both methods describe the same phenomenon.

In the molecular orbital model, an electron contributes to a bonding interaction if it occupies a bonding orbital and it contributes to an antibonding interaction if it occupies an antibonding orbital. The bond order is calculated by subtracting the destabilizing (antibonding) electrons from the stabilizing (bonding) electrons. Since a bond consists of two electrons, we divide by two to get the bond order. We can determine bond order with the following equation:

$$\text{bond order } = \frac{(\text{number of bonding electrons }) - (\text{ number of antibonding electrons })}{2}$$

The order of a covalent bond is a guide to its strength; a bond between two given atoms becomes stronger as the bond order increases (Table 8.1). If the distribution of electrons in the molecular orbitals between two atoms is such that the resulting bond would have a bond order of zero, a stable bond does not form. We next look at some specific examples of MO diagrams and bond orders.

Bonding in Diatomic Molecules

A dihydrogen molecule (H_2) forms from two hydrogen atoms. When the atomic orbitals of the two atoms combine, the electrons occupy the molecular orbital of lowest energy, the σ_{1s} bonding orbital. A dihydrogen molecule, H_2, readily forms because the energy of a H_2 molecule is lower than that of two H atoms. The σ_{1s} orbital that contains both electrons is lower in energy than either of the two 1*s* atomic orbitals.

A molecular orbital can hold two electrons, so both electrons in the H_2 molecule are in the σ1s bonding orbital; the electron configuration is $(\sigma_{1s})^2$. We represent this configuration by a molecular orbital energy diagram (Figure 6.5.9) in which a single upward arrow indicates one electron in an orbital, and two (upward and downward) arrows indicate two electrons of opposite spin.

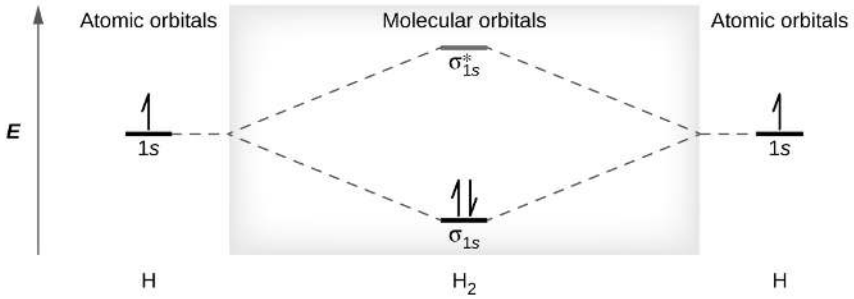


Figure 6.5.9: The molecular orbital energy diagram predicts that H_2 will be a stable molecule with lower energy than the separated atoms.

A dihydrogen molecule contains two bonding electrons and no antibonding electrons so we have

$$\text{bond order in } H_2 = \frac{(2-0)}{2} = 1$$

Because the bond order for the H–H bond is equal to 1, the bond is a single bond.

A helium atom has two electrons, both of which are in its 1*s* orbital. Two helium atoms do not combine to form a dihelium molecule, He_2, with four electrons, because the stabilizing effect of the two electrons in the lower-energy bonding orbital would be offset by the destabilizing effect of the two electrons in the higher-energy antibonding molecular orbital. We would write the hypothetical electron configuration of He_2 as

$$\text{bond order in } He_2 = \frac{(2-2)}{2} = 0$$

A bond order of zero indicates that no bond is formed between two atoms.

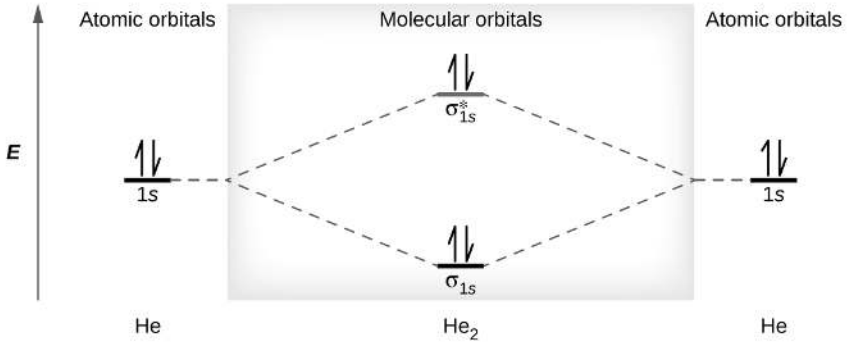


Figure 6.5.10: The molecular orbital energy diagram predicts that He_2 will not be a stable molecule, since it has equal numbers of bonding and antibonding electrons.

The Diatomic Molecules of the Second Period

Eight possible homonuclear diatomic molecules might be formed by the atoms of the second period of the periodic table: Li_2, Be_2, B_2, C_2, N_2, O_2, F_2, and Ne_2. However, we can predict that the Be_2 molecule and the Ne_2 molecule would not be stable. We can see this by a consideration of the molecular electron configurations (Table 6.5.2).

We predict valence molecular orbital electron configurations just as we predict electron configurations of atoms. Valence electrons are assigned to valence molecular orbitals with the lowest possible energies. Consistent with Hund's rule, whenever there are two or more degenerate molecular orbitals, electrons fill each orbital of that type singly before any pairing of electrons takes place.

As we saw in valence bond theory, σ bonds are generally more stable than π bonds formed from degenerate atomic orbitals. Similarly, in molecular orbital theory, σ orbitals are usually more stable than π orbitals. However, this is not always the case. The MOs for the valence orbitals of the second period are shown in Figure 6.5.11. Looking at Ne_2 molecular orbitals, we see that the order is consistent with the generic diagram shown in the previous section. However, for atoms with three or fewer electrons in the *p* orbitals (Li through N) we observe a different pattern, in which the σ_p orbital is higher in energy than the π_p set. Obtain the molecular orbital diagram for a homonuclear diatomic ion by adding or subtracting electrons from the diagram for the neutral molecule.

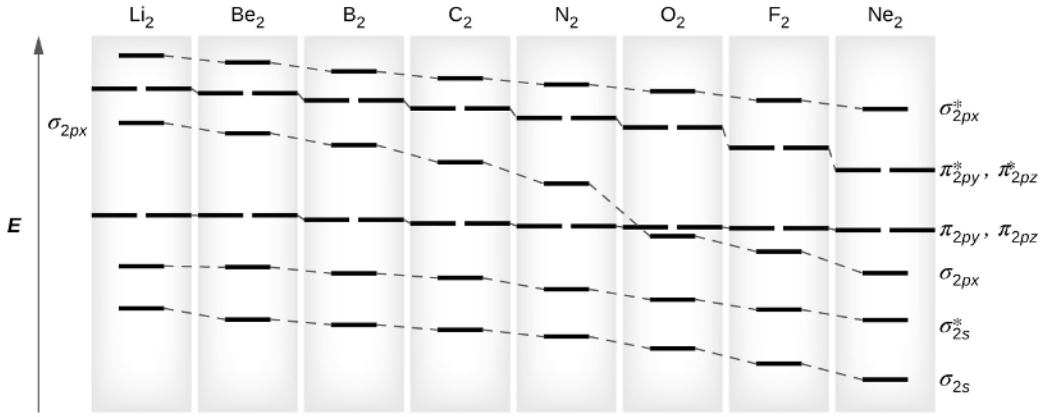


Figure 6.5.11: This shows the MO diagrams for each homonuclear diatomic molecule in the second period. The orbital energies decrease across the period as the effective nuclear charge increases and atomic radius decreases. Between N_2 and O_2, the order of the orbitals changes.

This switch in orbital ordering occurs because of a phenomenon called s-p mixing. s-p mixing does not create new orbitals; it merely influences the energies of the existing molecular orbitals. The σ_s wavefunction mathematically combines with the σ_p wavefunction, with the result that the σ_s orbital becomes more stable, and the σ_p orbital becomes less stable (Figure 6.5.12). Similarly, the antibonding orbitals also undergo s-p mixing, with the σ_{s*} becoming more stable and the σ_{p*} becoming less stable.

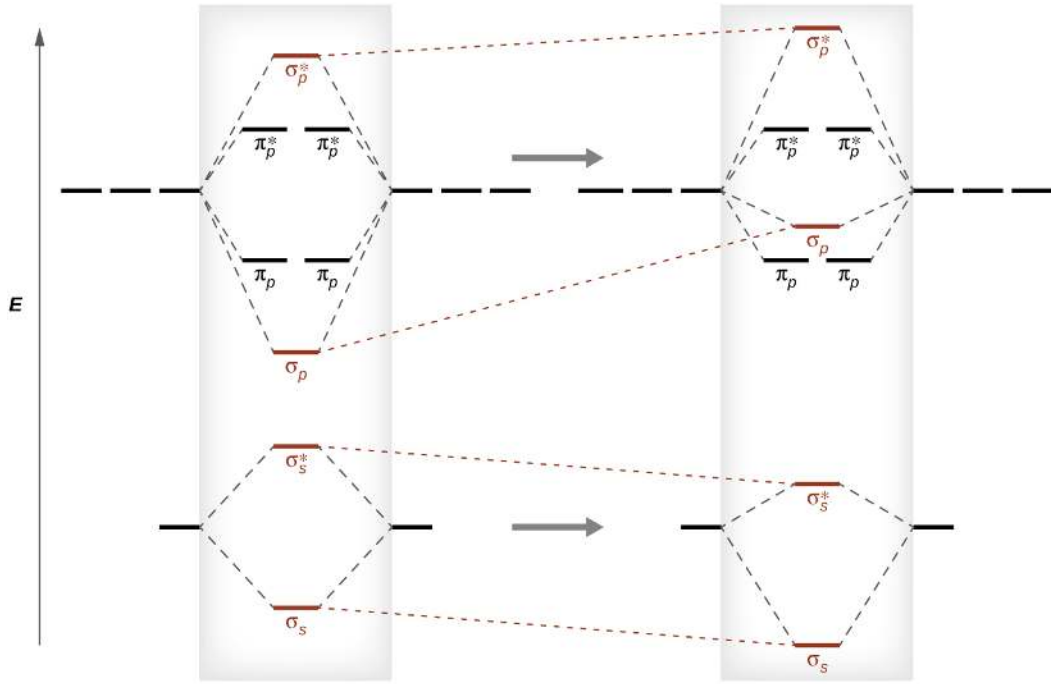


Figure 6.5.12: Without mixing, the MO pattern occurs as expected, with the σ_p orbital lower in energy than the π_p orbitals. When s-p mixing occurs, the orbitals shift as shown, with the σ_p orbital higher in energy than the π_p orbitals.

s-p mixing occurs when the *s* and *p* orbitals have similar energies. The energy difference between 2*s* and 2*p* orbitals in O, F, and Ne is greater than that in Li, Be, B, C, and N. Because of this, O_2, F_2, and Ne_2 exhibit negligible s-p mixing (not sufficient to change the energy ordering), and their MO diagrams follow the normal pattern, as shown in Figure 6.5.11. All of the other period 2 diatomic molecules do have s-p mixing, which leads to the pattern where the σ_p orbital is raised above the π_p set.

Using the MO diagrams shown in Figure 6.5.11: , we can add in the electrons and determine the molecular electron configuration and bond order for each of the diatomic molecules. As shown in Table 6.5.2, Be_2 and Ne_2 molecules would have a bond order of 0, and these molecules do not exist.

Table 6.5.2: Electron Configuration and Bond Order for Molecular Orbitals in Homonuclear Diatomic Molecules of Period Two Elements

Molecule	Electron Configuration	Bond Order
Li_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2$	1
Be_2 (unstable)	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^2$	0
B_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^2(\pi_{2py},\pi_{2pz})^2$	1
C_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^2(\pi_{2py},\pi_{2pz})^4$	2
N_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^2(\pi_{2py},\pi_{2pz})^4(\sigma_{2px})^2$	3
O_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^2(\sigma_{2px})^2(\pi_{2py},\pi_{2pz})^4\left(\pi_{2py}^*,\pi_{2pz}^*\right)^2$	2
F_2	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^2(\sigma_{2px})^2(\pi_{2py},\pi_{2pz})^4\left(\pi_{2py}^*,\pi_{2pz}^*\right)^4$	1
Ne_2 (unstable)	$(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma_{2s}^*)^2(\sigma_{2px})^2(\pi_{2py},\pi_{2pz})^4\left(\pi_{2py}^*,\pi_{2pz}^*\right)^4\left(\sigma_{2px}^*\right)^2$	0

The combination of two lithium atoms to form a lithium molecule, Li_2, is analogous to the formation of H_2, but the atomic orbitals involved are the valence 2*s* orbitals. Each of the two lithium atoms has one valence electron. Hence, we have two valence electrons available for the σ_{2s} bonding molecular orbital. Because both valence electrons would be in a bonding orbital, we would predict the

Li_2 molecule to be stable. The molecule is, in fact, present in appreciable concentration in lithium vapor at temperatures near the boiling point of the element. All of the other molecules in Table 6.5.2 with a bond order greater than zero are also known.

The O2 molecule has enough electrons to half fill the $\left(\pi^*_{2py}, \pi^*_{2pz}\right)$ level. We expect the two electrons that occupy these two degenerate orbitals to be unpaired, and this molecular electronic configuration for O2 is in accord with the fact that the oxygen molecule has two unpaired electrons (Figure 8.40). The presence of two unpaired electrons has proved to be difficult to explain using Lewis structures, but the molecular orbital theory explains it quite well. In fact, the unpaired electrons of the oxygen molecule provide a strong piece of support for the molecular orbital theory.

How Sciences Interconnect: Band Theory

When two identical atomic orbitals on different atoms combine, two molecular orbitals result (see Figure 6.5.3). The bonding orbital is lower in energy than the original atomic orbitals because the atomic orbitals are in-phase in the molecular orbital. The antibonding orbital is higher in energy than the original atomic orbitals because the atomic orbitals are out-of-phase.

In a solid, similar things happen, but on a much larger scale. Remember that even in a small sample there are a huge number of atoms (typically > 10^{23} atoms), and therefore a huge number of atomic orbitals that may be combined into molecular orbitals. When *N* valence atomic orbitals, all of the same energy and each containing one (1) electron, are combined, *N*/2 (filled) bonding orbitals and *N*/2 (empty) antibonding orbitals will result. Each bonding orbital will show an energy lowering as the atomic orbitals are *mostly* in-phase, but each of the bonding orbitals will be a little different and have slightly different energies. The antibonding orbitals will show an increase in energy as the atomic orbitals are *mostly* out-of-phase, but each of the antibonding orbitals will also be a little different and have slightly different energies. The allowed energy levels for all the bonding orbitals are so close together that they form a band, called the valence band. Likewise, all the antibonding orbitals are very close together and form a band, called the conduction band. Figure 6.5.13 shows the bands for three important classes of materials: insulators, semiconductors, and conductors.

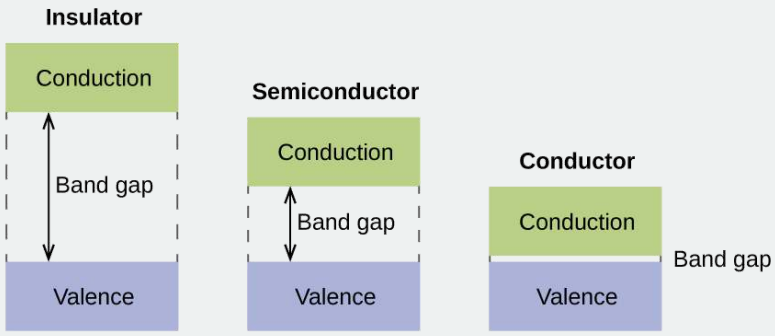


Figure 6.5.13: Molecular orbitals in solids are so closely spaced that they are described as bands. The valence band is lower in energy and the conduction band is higher in energy. The type of solid is determined by the size of the "band gap" between the valence and conduction bands. Only a very small amount of energy is required to move electrons from the valence band to the conduction band in a conductor, and so they conduct electricity well. In an insulator, the band gap is large, so that very few electrons move, and they are poor conductors of electricity. Semiconductors are in between: they conduct electricity better than insulators, but not as well as conductors.

In order to conduct electricity, electrons must move from the filled valence band to the empty conduction band where they can move throughout the solid. The size of the band gap, or the energy difference between the top of the valence band and the bottom of the conduction band, determines how easy it is to move electrons between the bands. Only a small amount of energy is required in a conductor because the band gap is very small. This small energy difference is "easy" to overcome, so they are good conductors of electricity. In an insulator, the band gap is so "large" that very few electrons move into the conduction band; as a result, insulators are poor conductors of electricity. Semiconductors conduct electricity when "moderate" amounts of energy are provided to move electrons out of the valence band and into the conduction band. Semiconductors, such as silicon, are found in many electronics.

Semiconductors are used in devices such as computers, smartphones, and solar cells. Solar cells produce electricity when light provides the energy to move electrons out of the valence band. The electricity that is generated may then be used to power a light or tool, or it can be stored for later use by charging a battery. As of December 2014, up to 46% of the energy in sunlight could be converted into electricity using solar cells.

Example 6.5.2: Molecular Orbital Diagrams, Bond Order, and Number of Unpaired Electrons

Draw the molecular orbital diagram for the oxygen molecule, O_2. From this diagram, calculate the bond order for O_2. How does this diagram account for the paramagnetism of O_2?

Solution

We draw a molecular orbital energy diagram similar to that shown in Figure 6.5.11. Each oxygen atom contributes six electrons, so the diagram appears as shown in Figure 6.5.14

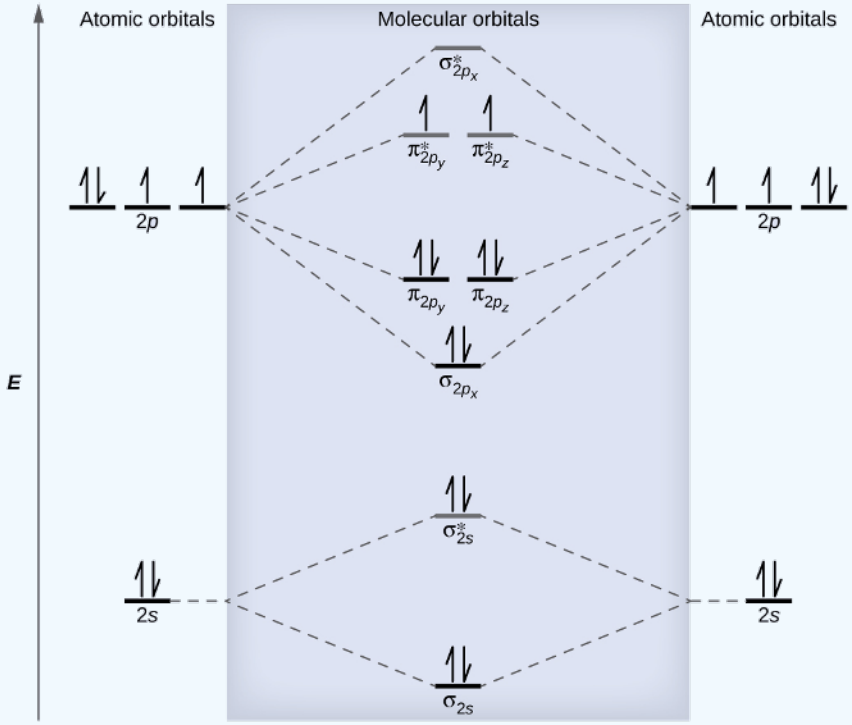


Figure 6.5.14: The molecular orbital energy diagram for O_2 predicts two unpaired electrons.

We calculate the bond order as

$$O_2 = \frac{(8-4)}{2} = 2$$

Oxygen's paramagnetism is explained by the presence of two unpaired electrons in the (π_{2py}, π_{2pz})* molecular orbitals.

Exercise 6.5.2

The main component of air is N_2. From the molecular orbital diagram of N_2, predict its bond order and whether it is diamagnetic or paramagnetic.

Answer

N_2 has a bond order of 3 and is diamagnetic.

Example 6.5.3: Ion Predictions with MO Diagrams

Give the molecular orbital configuration for the valence electrons in C_2^{2-}. Will this ion be stable?

Solution

Looking at the appropriate MO diagram, we see that the π orbitals are lower in energy than the σ_p orbital. The valence electron configuration for C_2 is $(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\pi_{2py}, \pi_{2pz})^4$. Adding two more electrons to generate the C_2^{2-} anion will give a valence

electron configuration of $(\sigma_{2s})^2(\sigma^*_{2s})^2(\pi_{2py},\pi_{2pz})^4(\sigma_{2px})^2$. Since this has six more bonding electrons than antibonding, the bond order will be 3, and the ion should be stable.

Exercise 6.5.3

How many unpaired electrons would be present on a Be_2^{2-} ion? Would it be paramagnetic or diamagnetic?

Answer

two, paramagnetic

Link to Learning

Creating molecular orbital diagrams for molecules with more than two atoms relies on the same basic ideas as the diatomic examples presented here. However, with more atoms, computers are required to calculate how the atomic orbitals combine. See three-dimensional drawings of the molecular orbitals for C_6H_6.

This page titled 6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.4: Molecular Orbital Theory** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

6.6: Key Terms

antibonding orbital | molecular orbital located outside of the region between two nuclei; electrons in an antibonding orbital destabilize the molecule

bond order | number of pairs of electrons between two atoms; it can be found by the number of bonds in a Lewis structure or by the difference between the number of bonding and antibonding electrons divided by two

bonding orbital | molecular orbital located between two nuclei; electrons in a bonding orbital stabilize a molecule

degenerate orbitals | orbitals that have the same energy

diamagnetism | phenomenon in which a material is not magnetic itself but is repelled by a magnetic field; it occurs when there are only paired electrons present

homonuclear diatomic molecule | molecule consisting of two identical atoms

hybrid orbital | orbital created by combining atomic orbitals on a central atom

hybridization | model that describes the changes in the atomic orbitals of an atom when it forms a covalent compound

linear combination of atomic orbitals | technique for combining atomic orbitals to create molecular orbitals

molecular orbital | region of space in which an electron has a high probability of being found in a molecule

molecular orbital diagram | visual representation of the relative energy levels of molecular orbitals

molecular orbital theory | model that describes the behavior of electrons delocalized throughout a molecule in terms of the combination of atomic wave functions

node | plane separating different lobes of orbitals, where the probability of finding an electron is zero

overlap | coexistence of orbitals from two different atoms sharing the same region of space, leading to the formation of a covalent bond

paramagnetism | phenomenon in which a material is not magnetic itself but is attracted to a magnetic field; it occurs when there are unpaired electrons present

pi bond (π bond) | covalent bond formed by side-by-side overlap of atomic orbitals; the electron density is found on opposite sides of the internuclear axis

s-p mixing | change that causes σ_p orbitals to be less stable than π_p orbitals due to the mixing of *s* and *p*-based molecular orbitals of similar energies.

sigma bond (σ bond) | covalent bond formed by overlap of atomic orbitals along the internuclear axis

***sp* hybrid orbital** | one of a set of two orbitals with a linear arrangement that results from combining one *s* and one *p* orbital

***sp*^{2} hybrid orbital** | one of a set of three orbitals with a trigonal planar arrangement that results from combining one *s* and two *p* orbitals

***sp*^{3} hybrid orbital** | one of a set of four orbitals with a tetrahedral arrangement that results from combining one *s* and three *p* orbitals

***sp*^{3}*d* hybrid orbital** | one of a set of five orbitals with a trigonal bipyramidal arrangement that results from combining one *s*, three *p*, and one *d* orbital

***sp*^{3}*d*^{2} hybrid orbital** | one of a set of six orbitals with an octahedral arrangement that results from combining one *s*, three *p*, and two *d* orbitals

valence bond theory | description of bonding that involves atomic orbitals overlapping to form σ or π bonds, within which pairs of electrons are shared

π bonding orbital | molecular orbital formed by side-by-side overlap of atomic orbitals, in which the electron density is found on opposite sides of the internuclear axis

π* bonding orbital | antibonding molecular orbital formed by out of phase side-by-side overlap of atomic orbitals, in which the electron density is found on both sides of the internuclear axis, and there is a node between the nuclei

σ bonding orbital | molecular orbital in which the electron density is found along the axis of the bond

σ* bonding orbital | antibonding molecular orbital formed by out-of-phase overlap of atomic orbital along the axis of the bond, generating a node between the nuclei

6.6: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.5: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.7: Key Equations

6.7: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.6: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.8: Summary

Valence bond theory describes bonding as a consequence of the overlap of two separate atomic orbitals on different atoms that creates a region with one pair of electrons shared between the two atoms. When the orbitals overlap along an axis containing the nuclei, they form a σ bond. When they overlap in a fashion that creates a node along this axis, they form a π bond.

We can use hybrid orbitals, which are mathematical combinations of some or all of the valence atomic orbitals, to describe the electron density around covalently bonded atoms. These hybrid orbitals either form sigma (σ) bonds directed toward other atoms of the molecule or contain lone pairs of electrons. We can determine the type of hybridization around a central atom from the geometry of the regions of electron density about it. Two such regions imply *sp* hybridization; three, sp^2 hybridization; four, sp^3 hybridization; five, sp^3d hybridization; and six, sp^3d^2 hybridization. Pi (π) bonds are formed from unhybridized atomic orbitals (*p* or *d* orbitals).

Multiple bonds consist of a σ bond located along the axis between two atoms and one or two π bonds. The σ bonds are usually formed by the overlap of hybridized atomic orbitals, while the π bonds are formed by the side-by-side overlap of unhybridized orbitals. Resonance occurs when there are multiple unhybridized orbitals with the appropriate alignment to overlap, so the placement of π bonds can vary.

Molecular orbital (MO) theory describes the behavior of electrons in a molecule in terms of combinations of the atomic wave functions. The resulting molecular orbitals may extend over all the atoms in the molecule. Bonding molecular orbitals are formed by in-phase combinations of atomic wave functions, and electrons in these orbitals stabilize a molecule. Antibonding molecular orbitals result from out-of-phase combinations of atomic wave functions and electrons in these orbitals make a molecule less stable. Molecular orbitals located along an internuclear axis are called σ MOs. They can be formed from *s* orbitals or from *p* orbitals oriented in an end-to-end fashion. Molecular orbitals formed from *p* orbitals oriented in a side-by-side fashion have electron density on opposite sides of the internuclear axis and are called π orbitals.

We can describe the electronic structure of diatomic molecules by applying molecular orbital theory to the valence electrons of the atoms. Electrons fill molecular orbitals following the same rules that apply to filling atomic orbitals; Hund's rule and the Aufbau principle tell us that lower-energy orbitals will fill first, electrons will spread out before they pair up, and each orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons with opposite spins. Materials with unpaired electrons are paramagnetic and attracted to a magnetic field, while those with all-paired electrons are diamagnetic and repelled by a magnetic field. Correctly predicting the magnetic properties of molecules is in advantage of molecular orbital theory over Lewis structures and valence bond theory.

6.8: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.7: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.9: Exercises

1.

Explain how σ and π bonds are similar and how they are different.

2.

Draw a curve that describes the energy of a system with H and Cl atoms at varying distances. Then, find the minimum energy of this curve two ways.

a. Use the bond energy found in Table 8.1 to calculate the energy for one single HCl bond (Hint: How many bonds are in a mole?)
b. Use the enthalpy of reaction and the bond energies for H_2 and Cl_2 to solve for the energy of one mole of HCl bonds.

3.

Explain why bonds occur at specific average bond distances instead of the atoms approaching each other infinitely close.

4.

Use valence bond theory to explain the bonding in F_2, HF, and ClBr. Sketch the overlap of the atomic orbitals involved in the bonds.

5.

Use valence bond theory to explain the bonding in O_2. Sketch the overlap of the atomic orbitals involved in the bonds in O_2.

6.

How many σ and π bonds are present in the molecule HCN?

7.

A friend tells you N_2 has three π bonds due to overlap of the three *p*-orbitals on each N atom. Do you agree?

8.

Draw the Lewis structures for CO_2 and CO, and predict the number of σ and π bonds for each molecule.

a. CO_2
b. CO

9.

Why is the concept of hybridization required in valence bond theory?

10.

Give the shape that describes each hybrid orbital set:

a. sp^2
b. sp^3d
c. sp
d. sp^3d^2

11.

Explain why a carbon atom cannot form five bonds using sp^3d hybrid orbitals.

12.

What is the hybridization of the central atom in each of the following?

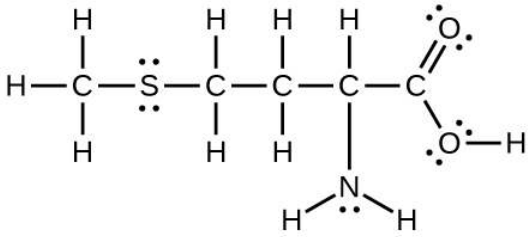
a. BeH_2
b. SF_6
c.
d. PCl_5

13.

A molecule with the formula AB_3 could have one of four different shapes. Give the shape and the hybridization of the central A atom for each.

14.

Methionine, $CH_3SCH_2CH_2CH(NH_2)CO_2H$, is an amino acid found in proteins. The Lewis structure of this compound is shown below. What is the hybridization type of each carbon, oxygen, the nitrogen, and the sulfur?



15.

Sulfuric acid is manufactured by a series of reactions represented by the following equations:

Draw a Lewis structure, predict the molecular geometry by VSEPR, and determine the hybridization of sulfur for the following:

a. circular S_8 molecule
b. SO_2 molecule
c. SO_3 molecule
d. H_2SO_4 molecule (the hydrogen atoms are bonded to oxygen atoms)

16.

Two important industrial chemicals, ethene, C_2H_4, and propene, C_3H_6, are produced by the steam (or thermal) cracking process:

For each of the four carbon compounds, do the following:

a. Draw a Lewis structure.
b. Predict the geometry about the carbon atom.
c. Determine the hybridization of each type of carbon atom.

17.

Analysis of a compound indicates that it contains 77.55% Xe and 22.45% F by mass.

a. What is the empirical formula for this compound? *(Assume this is also the molecular formula in responding to the remaining parts of this exercise)*.
b. Write a Lewis structure for the compound.
c. Predict the shape of the molecules of the compound.
d. What hybridization is consistent with the shape you predicted?

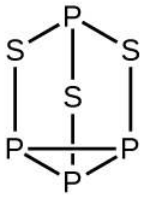
18.

Consider nitrous acid, HNO_2 (HONO).

a. Write a Lewis structure.
b. What are the electron pair and molecular geometries of the internal oxygen and nitrogen atoms in the HNO_2 molecule?
c. What is the hybridization on the internal oxygen and nitrogen atoms in HNO_2?

19.

Strike-anywhere matches contain a layer of $KClO_3$ and a layer of P_4S_3. The heat produced by the friction of striking the match causes these two compounds to react vigorously, which sets fire to the wooden stem of the match. $KClO_3$ contains the ion. P_4S_3 is an unusual molecule with the skeletal structure.



a. Write Lewis structures for P_4S_3 and the ion.
b. Describe the geometry about the P atoms, the S atom, and the Cl atom in these species.
c. Assign a hybridization to the P atoms, the S atom, and the Cl atom in these species.
d. Determine the oxidation states and formal charge of the atoms in P_4S_3 and the ion.

20.

Identify the hybridization of each carbon atom in the following molecule. (The arrangement of atoms is given; you need to determine how many bonds connect each pair of atoms.)



21.

Write Lewis structures for NF_3 and PF_5. On the basis of hybrid orbitals, explain the fact that NF_3, PF_3, and PF_5 are stable molecules, but NF_5 does not exist.

22.

In addition to NF_3, two other fluoro derivatives of nitrogen are known: N_2F_4 and N_2F_2. What shapes do you predict for these two molecules? What is the hybridization for the nitrogen in each molecule?

23.

The bond energy of a C–C single bond averages 347 kJ mol^{-1}; that of a triple bond averages 839 kJ mol^{-1}. Explain why the triple bond is not three times as strong as a single bond.

24.

For the carbonate ion, draw all of the resonance structures. Identify which orbitals overlap to create each bond.

25.

A useful solvent that will dissolve salts as well as organic compounds is the compound acetonitrile, H_3CCN. It is present in paint strippers.

a. Write the Lewis structure for acetonitrile, and indicate the direction of the dipole moment in the molecule.
b. Identify the hybrid orbitals used by the carbon atoms in the molecule to form σ bonds.
c. Describe the atomic orbitals that form the π bonds in the molecule. Note that it is not necessary to hybridize the nitrogen atom.

26.

For the molecule allene, give the hybridization of each carbon atom. Will the hydrogen atoms be in the same plane or perpendicular planes?

27.

Identify the hybridization of the central atom in each of the following molecules and ions that contain multiple bonds:

a. (f) XeO_2F_2 (Xe is the central atom)

(g) (Cl is the central atom)

28.

Describe the molecular geometry and hybridization of the N, P, or S atoms in each of the following compounds.

a. H_3PO_4, phosphoric acid, used in cola soft drinks
b. NH_4NO_3, ammonium nitrate, a fertilizer and explosive
c. S_2Cl_2, disulfur dichloride, used in vulcanizing rubber
d. $K_4[O_3POPO_3]$, potassium pyrophosphate, an ingredient in some toothpastes

29.

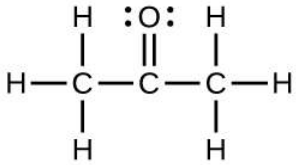
For each of the following molecules, indicate the hybridization requested and whether or not the electrons will be delocalized:

a. ozone (O_3) central O hybridization
b. carbon dioxide (CO_2) central C hybridization
c. nitrogen dioxide (NO_2) central N hybridization
d. phosphate ion central P hybridization

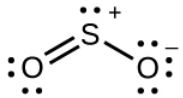
30.

For each of the following structures, determine the hybridization requested and whether the electrons will be delocalized:

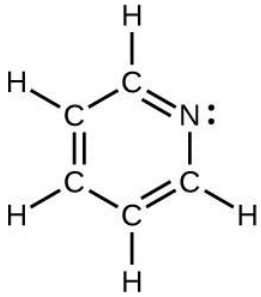
(a) Hybridization of each carbon



(b) Hybridization of sulfur



(c) All atoms



31.

Draw the orbital diagram for carbon in CO_2 showing how many carbon atom electrons are in each orbital.

32.

Sketch the distribution of electron density in the bonding and antibonding molecular orbitals formed from two *s* orbitals and from two *p* orbitals.

33.

How are the following similar, and how do they differ?

a. σ molecular orbitals and π molecular orbitals
b. ψ for an atomic orbital and ψ for a molecular orbital
c. bonding orbitals and antibonding orbitals

34.

If molecular orbitals are created by combining five atomic orbitals from atom A and five atomic orbitals from atom B combine, how many molecular orbitals will result?

35.

Can a molecule with an odd number of electrons ever be diamagnetic? Explain why or why not.

36.

Can a molecule with an even number of electrons ever be paramagnetic? Explain why or why not.

37.

Why are bonding molecular orbitals lower in energy than the parent atomic orbitals?

38.

Calculate the bond order for an ion with this configuration:

39.

Explain why an electron in the bonding molecular orbital in the H_2 molecule has a lower energy than an electron in the 1*s* atomic orbital of either of the separated hydrogen atoms.

40.

Predict the valence electron molecular orbital configurations for the following, and state whether they will be stable or unstable ions.

a.
b.
c.
d.
e.
f.
g.
h.

41.

Determine the bond order of each member of the following groups, and determine which member of each group is predicted by the molecular orbital model to have the strongest bond.

a. H_2,
b. O_2,
c. Li_2, Be_2
d. F_2,
e. N_2,

42.

For the first ionization energy for an N_2 molecule, what molecular orbital is the electron removed from?

43.

Compare the atomic and molecular orbital diagrams to identify the member of each of the following pairs that has the highest first ionization energy (the most tightly bound electron) in the gas phase:

a. H and H_2
b. N and N_2
c. O and O_2
d. C and C_2
e. B and B_2

44.

Which of the period 2 homonuclear diatomic molecules are predicted to be paramagnetic?

45.

A friend tells you that the 2*s* orbital for fluorine starts off at a much lower energy than the 2*s* orbital for lithium, so the resulting σ_{2s} molecular orbital in F_2 is more stable than in Li_2. Do you agree?

46.

True or false: Boron contains $2s^2 2p^1$ valence electrons, so only one *p* orbital is needed to form molecular orbitals.

47.

What charge would be needed on F_2 to generate an ion with a bond order of 2?

48.

Predict whether the MO diagram for S_2 would show s-p mixing or not.

49.

Explain why is diamagnetic, while which has the same number of valence electrons, is paramagnetic.

50.

Using the MO diagrams, predict the bond order for the stronger bond in each pair:

a. B_2 or
b. F_2 or
c. O_2 or
d. or

This page titled 6.9: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.8: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

19: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry

Transition metals are defined as those elements that have (or readily form) partially filled *d* orbitals. These include the *d*-block (groups 3–11) and f-block element elements. The variety of properties exhibited by transition metals is due to their complex valence shells. Unlike most main group metals where one oxidation state is normally observed, the valence shell structure of transition metals means that they usually occur in several different stable oxidation states. In addition, electron transitions in these elements can correspond with absorption of photons in the visible electromagnetic spectrum, leading to colored compounds. Because of these behaviors, transition metals exhibit a rich and fascinating chemistry.

7.1: Introduction
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
7.5: Key Terms
7.6: Summary
7.7: Exercises

This page titled 19: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.1: Introduction

We have daily contact with many transition metals. Iron occurs everywhere—from the rings in your spiral notebook and the cutlery in your kitchen to automobiles, ships, buildings, and in the hemoglobin in your blood. Titanium is useful in the manufacture of lightweight, durable products such as bicycle frames, artificial hips, and jewelry. Chromium is useful as a protective plating on plumbing fixtures and automotive detailing.

In addition to being used in their pure elemental forms, many compounds containing transition metals have numerous other applications. Silver nitrate is used to create mirrors, zirconium silicate provides friction in automotive brakes, and many important cancer-fighting agents, like the drug cisplatin and related species, are platinum compounds.

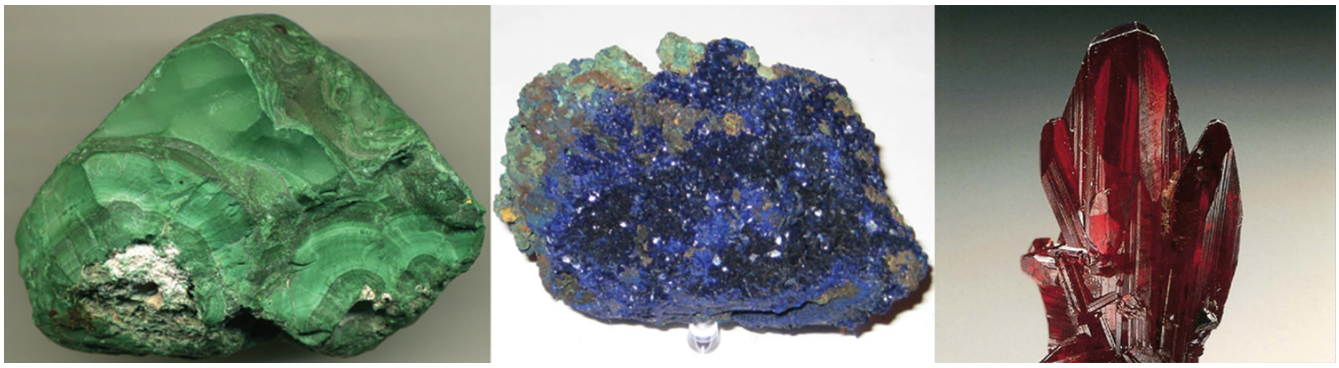


Figure 7.1.1: Transition metals often form vibrantly colored complexes. The minerals malachite (green), azurite (blue), and proustite (red) are some examples. (credit left: modification of work by James St. John; credit middle: modification of work by Stephanie Clifford; credit right: modification of work by Terry Wallace)

The variety of properties exhibited by transition metals is due to their complex valence shells. Unlike most main group metals where one oxidation state is normally observed, the valence shell structure of transition metals means that they usually occur in several different stable oxidation states. In addition, electron transitions in these elements can correspond with absorption of photons in the visible electromagnetic spectrum, leading to colored compounds. Because of these behaviors, transition metals exhibit a rich and fascinating chemistry.

7.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **19.0: Introduction** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds

Transition metals are defined as those elements that have (or readily form) partially filled *d* orbitals. As shown in Figure 7.2.1, the *d*-block elements in groups 3–11 are transition elements. The *f*-block elements, also called *inner transition metals* (the lanthanides and actinides), also meet this criterion because the *d* orbital is partially occupied before the *f* orbitals. The *d* orbitals fill with the copper family (group 11); for this reason, the next family (group 12) are technically not transition elements. However, the group 12 elements do display some of the same chemical properties and are commonly included in discussions of transition metals. Some chemists do treat the group 12 elements as transition metals.

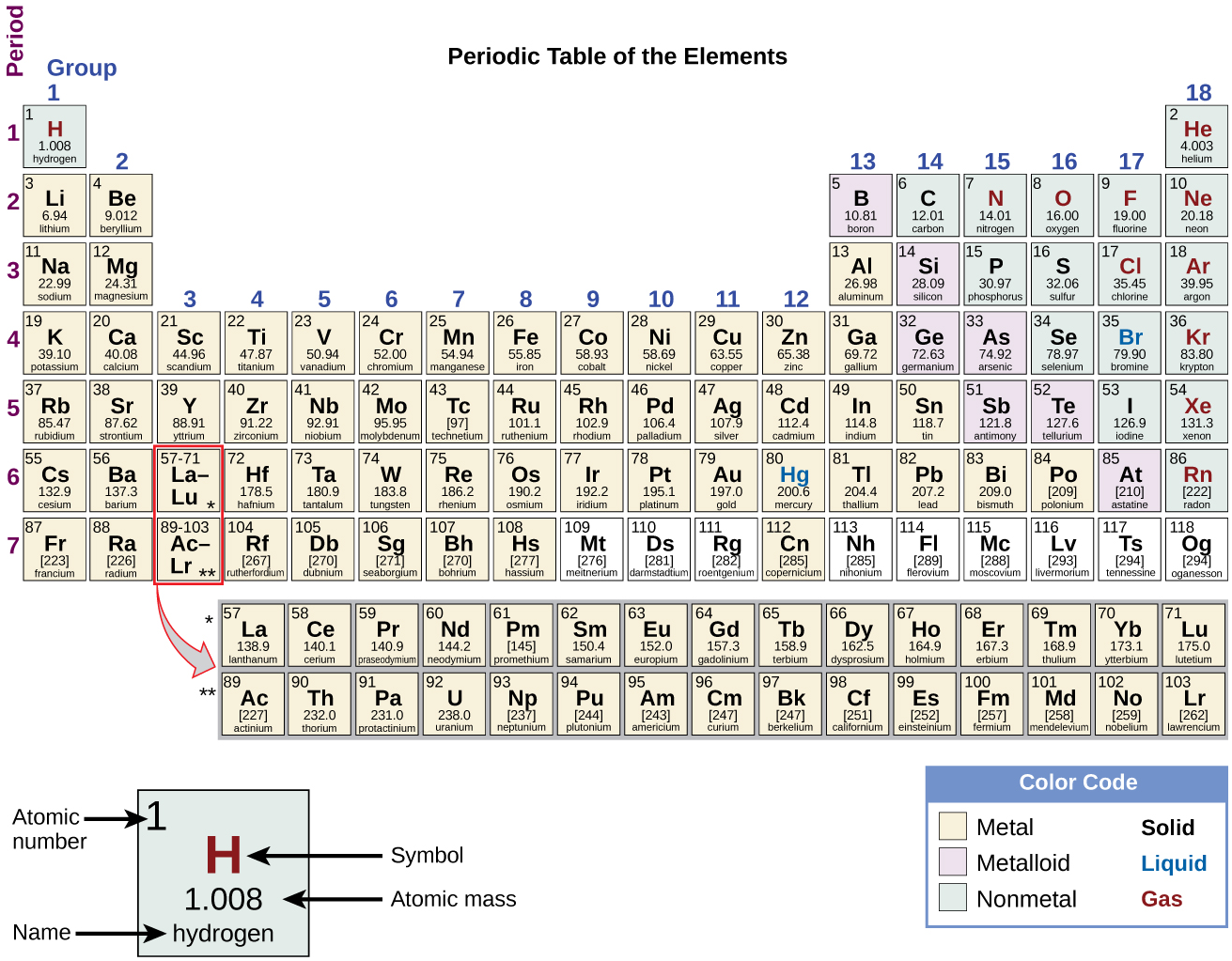


Figure 7.2.1: The transition metals are located in groups 3–11 of the periodic table. The inner transition metals are in the two rows below the body of the table.

The *d*-block elements are divided into the first transition series (the elements Sc through Cu), the second transition series (the elements Y through Ag), and the third transition series (the element La and the elements Hf through Au). Actinium, Ac, is the first member of the fourth transition series, which also includes Rf through Rg.

The *f*-block elements are the elements Ce through Lu, which constitute the lanthanide series (or lanthanoid series), and the elements Th through Lr, which constitute the actinide series (or actinoid series). Because lanthanum behaves very much like the lanthanide elements, it is considered a lanthanide element, even though its electron configuration makes it the first member of the third transition series. Similarly, the behavior of actinium means it is part of the actinide series, although its electron configuration makes it the first member of the fourth transition series.

Example 7.2.1: Valence Electrons in Transition Metals

Review how to write electron configurations, covered in the chapter on electronic structure and periodic properties of elements. Recall that for the transition and inner transition metals, it is necessary to remove the *s* electrons before the *d* or *f* electrons. Then, for each ion, give the electron configuration:

a. cerium(III)
b. lead(II)
c. Ti^{2+}
d. Am^{3+}
e. Pd^{2+}

For the examples that are transition metals, determine to which series they belong.

Solution

For ions, the *s*-valence electrons are lost prior to the *d* or *f* electrons.

a. $Ce^{3+}[Xe]4f^1$; Ce^{3+} is an inner transition element in the lanthanide series.
b. $Pb^{2+}[Xe]6s^25d^{10}4f^{14}$; the electrons are lost from the *p* orbital. This is a main group element.
c. titanium(II) $[Ar]3d^2$; first transition series
d. americium(III) $[Rn]5f^6$; actinide
e. palladium(II) $[Kr]4d^8$; second transition series

Exercise 7.2.1

Give an example of an ion from the first transition series with no *d* electrons.

Answer

V^{5+} is one possibility. Other examples include Sc^{3+}, Ti^{4+}, Cr^{6+}, and Mn^{7+}.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Uses of Lanthanides in Devices

Lanthanides (elements 57–71) are fairly abundant in the earth's crust, despite their historic characterization as rare earth elements. Thulium, the rarest naturally occurring lanthanoid, is more common in the earth's crust than silver (4.5×10^{-5} % versus 0.79×10^{-5} % by mass). There are 17 rare earth elements, consisting of the 15 lanthanoids plus scandium and yttrium. They are called rare because they were once difficult to extract economically, so it was rare to have a pure sample; due to similar chemical properties, it is difficult to separate any one lanthanide from the others. However, newer separation methods, such as ion exchange resins similar to those found in home water softeners, make the separation of these elements easier and more economical. Most ores that contain these elements have low concentrations of all the rare earth elements mixed together.

The commercial applications of lanthanides are growing rapidly. For example, europium is important in flat screen displays found in computer monitors, cell phones, and televisions. Neodymium is useful in laptop hard drives and in the processes that convert crude oil into gasoline (Figure 7.2.2). Holmium is found in dental and medical equipment. In addition, many alternative energy technologies rely heavily on lanthanoids. Neodymium and dysprosium are key components of hybrid vehicle engines and the magnets used in wind turbines.

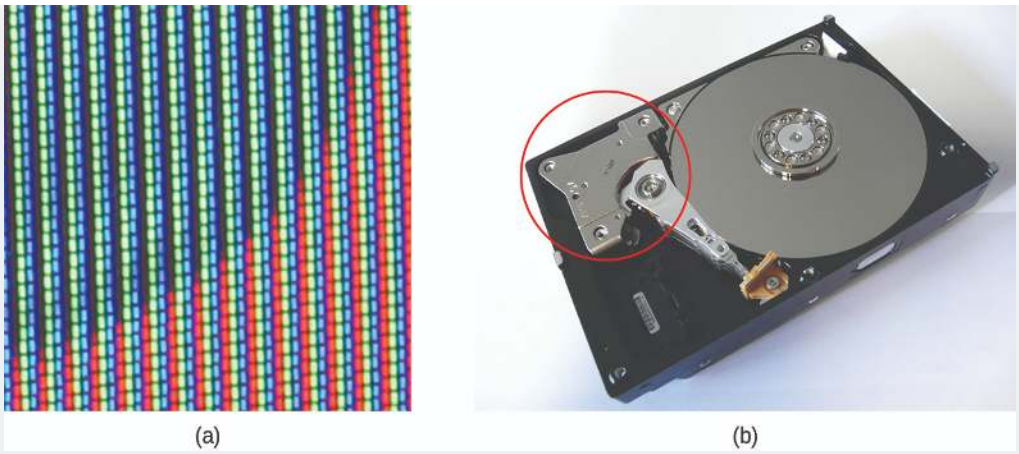


Figure 7.2.2: (a) Europium is used in display screens for televisions, computer monitors, and cell phones. (b) Neodymium magnets are commonly found in computer hard drives. (credit b: modification of work by "KUERT Datenrettung"/Flickr)

As the demand for lanthanide materials has increased faster than supply, prices have also increased. In 2008, dysprosium cost $110/kg; by 2014, the price had increased to $470/kg. Increasing the supply of lanthanoid elements is one of the most significant challenges facing the industries that rely on the optical and magnetic properties of these materials.

The transition elements have many properties in common with other metals. They are almost all hard, high-melting solids that conduct heat and electricity well. They readily form alloys and lose electrons to form stable cations. In addition, transition metals form a wide variety of stable **coordination compounds**, in which the central metal atom or ion acts as a Lewis acid and accepts one or more pairs of electrons. Many different molecules and ions can donate lone pairs to the metal center, serving as Lewis bases. In this chapter, we shall focus primarily on the chemical behavior of the elements of the first transition series.

Properties of the Transition Elements

Transition metals demonstrate a wide range of chemical behaviors. As can be seen from their reduction potentials (see Appendix H), some transition metals are strong reducing agents, whereas others have very low reactivity. For example, the lanthanides all form stable 3+ aqueous cations. The driving force for such oxidations is similar to that of alkaline earth metals such as Be or Mg, forming Be^{2+} and Mg^{2+}. On the other hand, materials like platinum and gold have much higher reduction potentials. Their ability to resist oxidation makes them useful materials for constructing circuits and jewelry.

Ions of the lighter *d*-block elements, such as Cr^{3+}, Fe^{3+}, and Co^{2+}, form colorful hydrated ions that are stable in water. However, ions in the period just below these (Mo^{3+}, Ru^{3+}, and Ir^{2+}) are unstable and react readily with oxygen from the air. The majority of simple, water-stable ions formed by the heavier *d*-block elements are oxyanions such as and

Ruthenium, osmium, rhodium, iridium, palladium, and platinum are the **platinum metals**. With difficulty, they form simple cations that are stable in water, and, unlike the earlier elements in the second and third transition series, they do not form stable oxyanions.

Both the *d*- and *f*-block elements react with nonmetals to form binary compounds; heating is often required. These elements react with halogens to form a variety of halides ranging in oxidation state from 1+ to 6+. On heating, oxygen reacts with all of the transition elements except palladium, platinum, silver, and gold. The oxides of these latter metals can be formed using other reactants, but they decompose upon heating. The *f*-block elements, the elements of group 3, and the elements of the first transition series except copper react with aqueous solutions of acids, forming hydrogen gas and solutions of the corresponding salts.

Transition metals can form compounds with a wide range of oxidation states. Some of the observed oxidation states of the elements of the first transition series are shown in Figure 7.2.3. As we move from left to right across the first transition series, we see that the number of common oxidation states increases at first to a maximum towards the middle of the table, then decreases. The values in the table are typical values; there are other known values, and it is possible to synthesize new additions. For example, in 2014, researchers were successful in synthesizing a new oxidation state of iridium (9+).

21 Sc	22 Ti	23 V	24 Cr	25 Mn	26 Fe	27 Co	28 Ni	29 Cu	30 Zn
								1+	
		2+	2+	2+	2+	2+	2+	2+	2+
3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+	
	4+	4+	4+	4+					
		5+							
			6+	6+	6+				
				7+					

Figure 7.2.3: Transition metals of the first transition series can form compounds with varying oxidation states.

For the elements scandium through manganese (the first half of the first transition series), the highest oxidation state corresponds to the loss of all of the electrons in both the *s* and *d* orbitals of their valence shells. The titanium(IV) ion, for example, is formed when the titanium atom loses its two 3*d* and two 4*s* electrons. These highest oxidation states are the most stable forms of scandium, titanium, and vanadium. However, it is not possible to continue to remove all of the valence electrons from metals as we continue through the series. Iron is known to form oxidation states from 2+ to 6+, with iron(II) and iron(III) being the most common. Most of the elements of the first transition series form ions with a charge of 2+ or 3+ that are stable in water, although those of the early members of the series can be readily oxidized by air.

The elements of the second and third transition series generally are more stable in higher oxidation states than are the elements of the first series. In general, the atomic radius increases down a group, which leads to the ions of the second and third series being larger than are those in the first series. Removing electrons from orbitals that are located farther from the nucleus is easier than removing electrons close to the nucleus. For example, molybdenum and tungsten, members of group 6, are limited mostly to an oxidation state of 6+ in aqueous solution. Chromium, the lightest member of the group, forms stable Cr^{3+} ions in water and, in the absence of air, less stable Cr^{2+} ions. The sulfide with the highest oxidation state for chromium is Cr_2S_3, which contains the Cr^{3+} ion. Molybdenum and tungsten form sulfides in which the metals exhibit oxidation states of 4+ and 6+.

✔ Example 7.2.2: Activity of the Transition Metals

Which is the strongest oxidizing agent in acidic solution: dichromate ion, which contains chromium(VI), permanganate ion, which contains manganese(VII), or titanium dioxide, which contains titanium(IV)?

Solution

First, we need to look up the reduction half reactions (in Appendix L) for each oxide in the specified oxidation state:

$$Cr_2O_7^{2-} + 14H^+ + 6e^- \longrightarrow 2Cr^{3+} + 7H_2O \quad +1.33V$$
$$MnO_4^- + 8H^+ + 5e^- \longrightarrow Mn^{2+} + H_2O \quad +1.51V$$
$$TiO_2 + 4H^+ + 2e^- \longrightarrow Ti^{2+} + 2H_2O \quad -0.50V$$

A larger reduction potential means that it is easier to reduce the reactant. Permanganate, with the largest reduction potential, is the strongest oxidizer under these conditions. Dichromate is next, followed by titanium dioxide as the weakest oxidizing agent (the hardest to reduce) of this set.

? Exercise 7.2.2

Predict what reaction (if any) will occur between HCl and Co(*s*), and between HBr and Pt(*s*). You will need to use the standard reduction potentials from Appendix L.

Answer

$$\mathrm{Co(s) + 2\,HCl \longrightarrow H_2 + CoCl_2(aq)}$$

no reaction because Pt(*s*) will not be oxidized by H^+

Preparation of the Transition Elements

Ancient civilizations knew about iron, copper, silver, and gold. The time periods in human history known as the Bronze Age and Iron Age mark the advancements in which societies learned to isolate certain metals and use them to make tools and goods.

Naturally occurring ores of copper, silver, and gold can contain high concentrations of these metals in elemental form (Figure 7.2.4). Iron, on the other hand, occurs on earth almost exclusively in oxidized forms, such as rust (Fe_2O_3). The earliest known iron implements were made from iron meteorites. Surviving iron artifacts dating from approximately 4000 to 2500 BC are rare, but all known examples contain specific alloys of iron and nickel that occur only in extraterrestrial objects, not on earth. It took thousands of years of technological advances before civilizations developed iron **smelting**, the ability to extract a pure element from its naturally occurring ores and for iron tools to become common.



Figure 7.2.4: Transition metals occur in nature in various forms. Examples include (a) a nugget of copper, (b) a deposit of gold, and (c) an ore containing oxidized iron. (credit a: modification of work by http://images-of-elements.com/copper-2.jpg; credit c: modification of work by http://images-of-elements.com/iron-ore.jpg)

Generally, the transition elements are extracted from minerals found in a variety of ores. However, the ease of their recovery varies widely, depending on the concentration of the element in the ore, the identity of the other elements present, and the difficulty of reducing the element to the free metal.

In general, it is not difficult to reduce ions of the *d*-block elements to the free element. Carbon is a sufficiently strong reducing agent in most cases. However, like the ions of the more active main group metals, ions of the *f*-block elements must be isolated by electrolysis or by reduction with an active metal such as calcium.

We shall discuss the processes used for the isolation of iron, copper, and silver because these three processes illustrate the principal means of isolating most of the *d*-block metals. In general, each of these processes involves three principal steps: preliminary treatment, smelting, and refining.

1. Preliminary treatment. In general, there is an initial treatment of the ores to make them suitable for the extraction of the metals. This usually involves crushing or grinding the ore, concentrating the metal-bearing components, and sometimes treating these substances chemically to convert them into compounds that are easier to reduce to the metal.
2. Smelting. The next step is the extraction of the metal in the molten state, a process called smelting, which includes reduction of the metallic compound to the metal. Impurities may be removed by the addition of a compound that forms a slag—a substance with a low melting point that can be readily separated from the molten metal.
3. Refining. The final step in the recovery of a metal is refining the metal. Low boiling metals such as zinc and mercury can be refined by distillation. When fused on an inclined table, low melting metals like tin flow away from higher-melting impurities. Electrolysis is another common method for refining metals.

Isolation of Iron

The early application of iron to the manufacture of tools and weapons was possible because of the wide distribution of iron ores and the ease with which iron compounds in the ores could be reduced by carbon. For a long time, charcoal was the form of carbon used in the reduction process. The production and use of iron became much more widespread about 1620, when coke was introduced as the reducing agent. Coke is a form of carbon formed by heating coal in the absence of air to remove impurities.

The first step in the metallurgy of iron is usually roasting the ore (heating the ore in air) to remove water, decomposing carbonates into oxides, and converting sulfides into oxides. The oxides are then reduced in a blast furnace that is 80–100 feet high and about 25 feet in diameter (Figure 7.2.5) in which the roasted ore, coke, and limestone (impure $CaCO_3$) are introduced continuously into the top. Molten iron and slag are withdrawn at the bottom. The entire stock in a furnace may weigh several hundred tons.

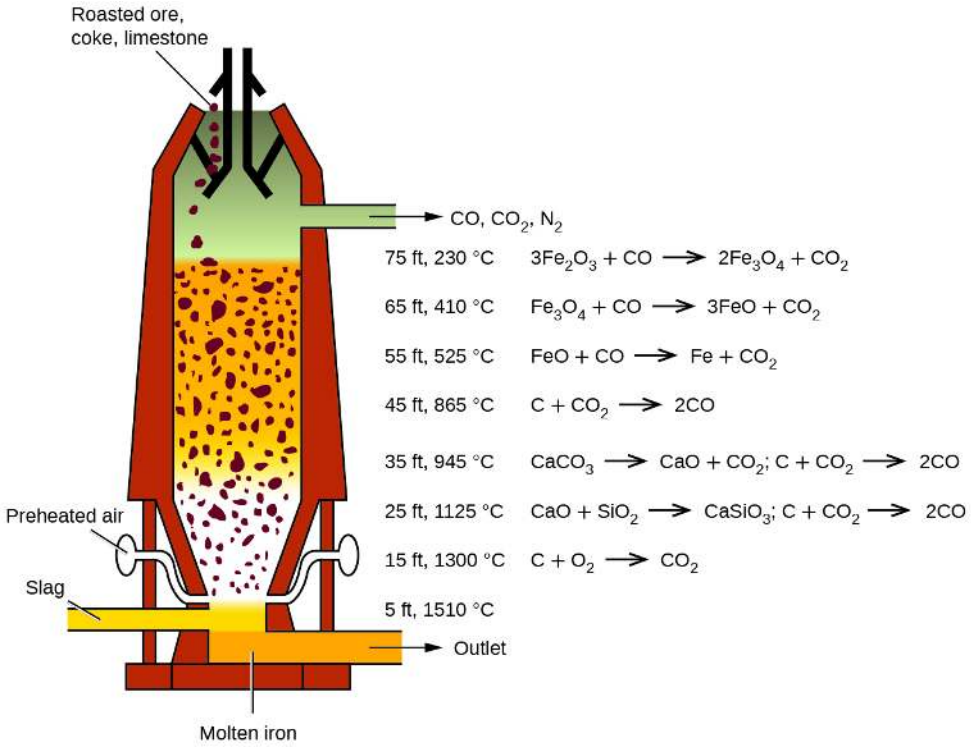


Figure 7.2.5: Within a blast furnace, different reactions occur in different temperature zones. Carbon monoxide is generated in the hotter bottom regions and rises upward to reduce the iron oxides to pure iron through a series of reactions that take place in the upper regions.

Near the bottom of a furnace are nozzles through which preheated air is blown into the furnace. As soon as the air enters, the coke in the region of the nozzles is oxidized to carbon dioxide with the liberation of a great deal of heat. The hot carbon dioxide passes upward through the overlying layer of white-hot coke, where it is reduced to carbon monoxide:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(g) + C(s) \longrightarrow 2\,CO(g)}$$

The carbon monoxide serves as the reducing agent in the upper regions of the furnace. The individual reactions are indicated in Figure 7.2.5.

The iron oxides are reduced in the upper region of the furnace. In the middle region, limestone (calcium carbonate) decomposes, and the resulting calcium oxide combines with silica and silicates in the ore to form slag. The slag is mostly calcium silicate and contains most of the commercially unimportant components of the ore:

$$\mathrm{CaO(s) + SiO_2(s) \longrightarrow CaSiO_3(l)}$$

Just below the middle of the furnace, the temperature is high enough to melt both the iron and the slag. They collect in layers at the bottom of the furnace; the less dense slag floats on the iron and protects it from oxidation. Several times a day, the slag and molten iron are withdrawn from the furnace. The iron is transferred to casting machines or to a steelmaking plant (Figure 7.2.6).



Figure 7.2.6: Molten iron is shown being cast as steel. (credit: Clint Budd)

Much of the iron produced is refined and converted into steel. **Steel** is made from iron by removing impurities and adding substances such as manganese, chromium, nickel, tungsten, molybdenum, and vanadium to produce alloys with properties that make the material suitable for specific uses. Most steels also contain small but definite percentages of carbon (0.04%–2.5%). However, a large part of the carbon contained in iron must be removed in the manufacture of steel; otherwise, the excess carbon would make the iron brittle.

Link to Learning

You can watch an animation of steelmaking that walks you through the process.

Isolation of Copper

The most important ores of copper contain copper sulfides (such as covellite, CuS), although copper oxides (such as tenorite, CuO) and copper hydroxycarbonates [such as malachite, $Cu_2(OH)_2CO_3$] are sometimes found. In the production of copper metal, the concentrated sulfide ore is roasted to remove part of the sulfur as sulfur dioxide. The remaining mixture, which consists of Cu_2S, FeS, FeO, and SiO_2, is mixed with limestone, which serves as a flux (a material that aids in the removal of impurities), and heated. Molten slag forms as the iron and silica are removed by Lewis acid-base reactions:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{CaCO_3(s) + SiO_2(s)} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{CaSiO_3(l) + CO_2(g)} \\ \mathrm{FeO(s) + SiO_2(s)} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{FeSiO_3(l)} \end{aligned}$$

In these reactions, the silicon dioxide behaves as a Lewis acid, which accepts a pair of electrons from the Lewis base (the oxide ion).

Reduction of the Cu_2S that remains after smelting is accomplished by blowing air through the molten material. The air converts part of the Cu_2S into Cu_2O. As soon as copper(I) oxide is formed, it is reduced by the remaining copper(I) sulfide to metallic copper:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{2\,Cu_2S(l) + 3\,O_2(g)} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{2\,Cu_2O(l) + 2\,SO_2(g)} \\ \mathrm{2\,Cu_2O(l) + Cu_2S(l)} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{6\,Cu(l) + SO_2(g)} \end{aligned}$$

The copper obtained in this way is called blister copper because of its characteristic appearance, which is due to the air blisters it contains (Figure 7.2.7). This impure copper is cast into large plates, which are used as anodes in the electrolytic refining of the metal (which is described in the chapter on electrochemistry).



Figure 7.2.7: Blister copper is obtained during the conversion of copper-containing ore into pure copper. (credit: “Tortie tude”/Wikimedia Commons)

Isolation of Silver

Silver sometimes occurs in large nuggets (Figure 7.2.8) but more frequently in veins and related deposits. At one time, panning was an effective method of isolating both silver and gold nuggets. Due to their low reactivity, these metals, and a few others, occur in deposits as nuggets. The discovery of platinum was due to Spanish explorers in Central America mistaking platinum nuggets for silver. When the metal is not in the form of nuggets, it often useful to employ a process called **hydrometallurgy** to separate silver from its ores. Hydrology involves the separation of a metal from a mixture by first converting it into soluble ions and then extracting and reducing them to precipitate the pure metal. In the presence of air, alkali metal cyanides readily form the soluble dicyanoargentate(I) ion, from silver metal or silver-containing compounds such as Ag_2S and AgCl. Representative equations are:

```
\begin{align*}
\ce{4 Ag(s) + 8 CN^{-}(aq) + O2(g) + 2 H2O (l) \longrightarrow 4\left[ Ag(CN)2 \right]^{-}(aq) + 4 OH^{-}(aq)} \\
\ce{2 Ag2S(s) + 8 CN^{-}(aq) + O2(g) + 2 H2O(l) \longrightarrow 4\left[ Ag(CN)2 \right]^{-}(aq) + 2 S(s) + 4 OH^{-}(aq)} \\
\ce{AgCl(s) + 2 CN^{-}(aq) \longrightarrow \left[ Ag(CN)2 \right]^{-}(aq) + Cl^{-}(aq)}
\end{align*}
```

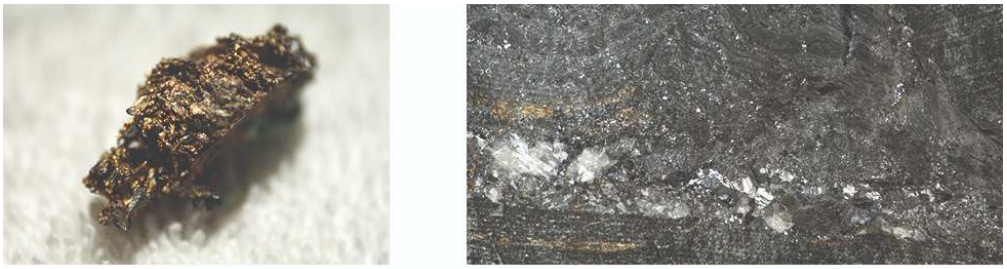


Figure 7.2.8: Naturally occurring free silver may be found as nuggets (a) or in veins (b). (credit a: modification of work by “Teravolt”/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by James St. John)

The silver is precipitated from the cyanide solution by the addition of either zinc or iron(II) ions, which serves as the reducing agent:

```
\ce{ 2\left[ Ag(CN)2\right]^{-}(aq) + Zn(s) \longrightarrow 2 Ag(s) + \left[ Zn(CN)4\right]^{2-}(aq)}  \nonumber
```

Example 7.2.3: Refining Redox

One of the steps for refining silver involves converting silver into dicyanoargenate(I) ions:

$$\ce{4 Ag(s) + 8 CN^{-}(aq) + O_2(g) + 2 H_2O(l) \longrightarrow 4 \left[Ag(CN)2 \right]^{-}(aq) + 4 OH^{-}(aq)} \nonumber$$

Explain why oxygen must be present to carry out the reaction. Why does the reaction not occur as:

$$\ce{4 Ag(s) + 8 CN^{-}(aq) \longrightarrow 4\left[Ag(CN)2\right]^{-}(aq)} \; ? \nonumber$$

Solution

The charges, as well as the atoms, must balance in reactions. The silver atom is being oxidized from the 0 oxidation state to the 1+ state. Whenever something loses electrons, something must also gain electrons (be reduced) to balance the equation. Oxygen is a good oxidizing agent for these reactions because it can gain electrons to go from the 0 oxidation state to the 2− state.

Exercise 7.2.3

During the refining of iron, carbon must be present in the blast furnace. Why is carbon necessary to convert iron oxide into iron?

Answer

The carbon is converted into CO, which is the reducing agent that accepts electrons so that iron(III) can be reduced to iron(0).

Transition Metal Compounds

The bonding in the simple compounds of the transition elements ranges from ionic to covalent. In their lower oxidation states, the transition elements form ionic compounds; in their higher oxidation states, they form covalent compounds or polyatomic ions. The variation in oxidation states exhibited by the transition elements gives these compounds a metal-based, oxidation-reduction chemistry. The chemistry of several classes of compounds containing elements of the transition series follows.

Halides

Anhydrous halides of each of the transition elements can be prepared by the direct reaction of the metal with halogens. For example:

$$2\,\mathrm{Fe(s)} + 3\,\mathrm{Cl_2(g)} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{FeCl_3(s)}$$

Heating a metal halide with additional metal can be used to form a halide of the metal with a lower oxidation state:

$$\mathrm{Fe(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{FeCl_3(s)} \longrightarrow 3\,\mathrm{FeCl_2(s)}$$

The stoichiometry of the metal halide that results from the reaction of the metal with a halogen is determined by the relative amounts of metal and halogen and by the strength of the halogen as an oxidizing agent. Generally, fluorine forms fluoride-containing metals in their highest oxidation states. The other halogens may not form analogous compounds.

In general, the preparation of stable water solutions of the halides of the metals of the first transition series is by the addition of a hydrohalic acid to carbonates, hydroxides, oxides, or other compounds that contain basic anions. Sample reactions are:

$$\mathrm{NiCO_3(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{HF(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NiF_2(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2O(l)} + \mathrm{CO_2(g)}$$
$$\mathrm{Co(OH)_2(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{HBr(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CoBr_2(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{H_2O(l)}$$

Most of the first transition series metals also dissolve in acids, forming a solution of the salt and hydrogen gas. For example:

$$\mathrm{Cr(s)} + 2\,\mathrm{HCl(aq)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CrCl_2(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2(g)}$$

The polarity of bonds with transition metals varies based not only upon the electronegativities of the atoms involved but also upon the oxidation state of the transition metal. Remember that bond polarity is a continuous spectrum with electrons being shared evenly (covalent bonds) at one extreme and electrons being transferred completely (ionic bonds) at the other. No bond is ever 100%

ionic, and the degree to which the electrons are evenly distributed determines many properties of the compound. Transition metal halides with low oxidation numbers form more ionic bonds. For example, titanium(II) chloride and titanium(III) chloride ($TiCl_2$ and $TiCl_3$) have high melting points that are characteristic of ionic compounds, but titanium(IV) chloride ($TiCl_4$) is a volatile liquid, consistent with having covalent titanium-chlorine bonds. All halides of the heavier *d*-block elements have significant covalent characteristics.

The covalent behavior of the transition metals with higher oxidation states is exemplified by the reaction of the metal tetrahalides with water. Like covalent silicon tetrachloride, both the titanium and vanadium tetrahalides react with water to give solutions containing the corresponding hydrohalic acids and the metal oxides:

$$\mathrm{SiCl_4(l) + 2\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow SiO_2(s) + 4\,HCl(aq)}$$
$$\mathrm{TiCl_4(l) + 2\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow TiO_2(s) + 4\,HCl(aq)}$$

Oxides

As with the halides, the nature of bonding in oxides of the transition elements is determined by the oxidation state of the metal. Oxides with low oxidation states tend to be more ionic, whereas those with higher oxidation states are more covalent. These variations in bonding are because the electronegativities of the elements are not fixed values. The electronegativity of an element increases with increasing oxidation state. Transition metals in low oxidation states have lower electronegativity values than oxygen; therefore, these metal oxides are ionic. Transition metals in very high oxidation states have electronegativity values close to that of oxygen, which leads to these oxides being covalent.

The oxides of the first transition series can be prepared by heating the metals in air. These oxides are Sc_2O_3, TiO_2, V_2O_5, Cr_2O_3, Mn_3O_4, Fe_3O_4, Co_3O_4, NiO, and CuO.

Alternatively, these oxides and other oxides (with the metals in different oxidation states) can be produced by heating the corresponding hydroxides, carbonates, or oxalates in an inert atmosphere. Iron(II) oxide can be prepared by heating iron(II) oxalate, and cobalt(II) oxide is produced by heating cobalt(II) hydroxide:

$$\mathrm{FeC_2O_4(s) \longrightarrow FeO(s) + CO(g) + CO_2(g)}$$
$$\mathrm{Co(OH)_2(s) \longrightarrow CoO(s) + H_2O(g)}$$

With the exception of CrO_3 and Mn_2O_7, transition metal oxides are not soluble in water. They can react with acids and, in a few cases, with bases. Overall, oxides of transition metals with the lowest oxidation states are basic (and react with acids), the intermediate ones are amphoteric, and the highest oxidation states are primarily acidic. Basic metal oxides at a low oxidation state react with aqueous acids to form solutions of salts and water. Examples include the reaction of cobalt(II) oxide accepting protons from nitric acid, and scandium(III) oxide accepting protons from hydrochloric acid:

\[\begin{align*}
\ce{CoO(s) + 2 HNO3(aq) &\longrightarrow Co(NO3)2(aq) + H2O(l)} \\
\ce{Sc2O3(s) + 6 HCl(aq) &\longrightarrow 2 ScCl3(aq) + 3 H2O(l)}
\end{align*}]

The oxides of metals with oxidation states of 4+ are amphoteric, and most are not soluble in either acids or bases. Vanadium(V) oxide, chromium(VI) oxide, and manganese(VII) oxide are acidic. They react with solutions of hydroxides to form salts of the oxyanions and \ce{VO4^{3-}}, \ce{CrO4^{2-}}, and $\mathrm{MnO_4-}$. For example, the complete ionic equation for the reaction of chromium(VI) oxide with a strong base is given by:

$$\mathrm{CrO_3(s) + 2\,Na^+(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,Na^+(aq) + CrO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l)}$$

Chromium(VI) oxide and manganese(VII) oxide react with water to form the acids H_2CrO_4 and $HMnO_4$, respectively.

Hydroxides

When a soluble hydroxide is added to an aqueous solution of a salt of a transition metal of the first transition series, a gelatinous precipitate forms. For example, adding a solution of sodium hydroxide to a solution of cobalt sulfate produces a gelatinous pink or blue precipitate of cobalt(II) hydroxide. The net ionic equation is:

$$Co^{2+}(aq) + 2OH^-(aq) \longrightarrow Co(OH)_2(s)$$

In this and many other cases, these precipitates are hydroxides containing the transition metal ion, hydroxide ions, and water coordinated to the transition metal. In other cases, the precipitates are hydrated oxides composed of the metal ion, oxide ions, and water of hydration:

$$4Fe^{3+}(aq) + 6OH^{-}(aq) + nH_2O(l) \longrightarrow 2Fe_2O_3 \cdot (n+3)H_2O(s)$$

These substances do not contain hydroxide ions. However, both the hydroxides and the hydrated oxides react with acids to form salts and water. When precipitating a metal from solution, it is necessary to avoid an excess of hydroxide ion, as this may lead to complex ion formation as discussed later in this chapter. The precipitated metal hydroxides can be separated for further processing or for waste disposal.

Carbonates

Many of the elements of the first transition series form insoluble carbonates. It is possible to prepare these carbonates by the addition of a soluble carbonate salt to a solution of a transition metal salt. For example, nickel carbonate can be prepared from solutions of nickel nitrate and sodium carbonate according to the following net ionic equation:

$$Ni^{2+}(aq) + {CO_3}^{2-} \longrightarrow NiCO_3(s)$$

The reactions of the transition metal carbonates are similar to those of the active metal carbonates. They react with acids to form metals salts, carbon dioxide, and water. Upon heating, they decompose, forming the transition metal oxides.

Other Salts

In many respects, the chemical behavior of the elements of the first transition series is very similar to that of the main group metals. In particular, the same types of reactions that are used to prepare salts of the main group metals can be used to prepare simple ionic salts of these elements.

A variety of salts can be prepared from metals that are more active than hydrogen by reaction with the corresponding acids: Scandium metal reacts with hydrobromic acid to form a solution of scandium bromide:

$$2Sc(s) + 6HBr(aq) \longrightarrow 2ScBr_3(aq) + 3H_2(g)$$

The common compounds that we have just discussed can also be used to prepare salts. The reactions involved include the reactions of oxides, hydroxides, or carbonates with acids. For example:

$$Ni(OH)_2(s) + 2H_3O^{+}(aq) + 2ClO_4^{-}(aq) \longrightarrow Ni^{2+}(aq) + 2ClO_4^{-}(aq) + 4H_2O(l)$$

Substitution reactions involving soluble salts may be used to prepare insoluble salts. For example:

$$Ba^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^{-}(aq) + 2K^{+}(aq) + CrO_4^{2-}(aq) \longrightarrow BaCrO_4(s) + 2K^{+}(aq) + 2Cl^{-}(aq)$$

In our discussion of oxides in this section, we have seen that reactions of the covalent oxides of the transition elements with hydroxides form salts that contain oxyanions of the transition elements.

How Sciences Interconnect: High Temperature Superconductors

A **superconductor** is a substance that conducts electricity with no resistance. This lack of resistance means that there is no energy loss during the transmission of electricity. This would lead to a significant reduction in the cost of electricity.

Most currently used, commercial superconducting materials, such as NbTi and Nb_3Sn, do not become superconducting until they are cooled below 23 K (−250 °C). This requires the use of liquid helium, which has a boiling temperature of 4 K and is expensive and difficult to handle. The cost of liquid helium has deterred the widespread application of superconductors.

One of the most exciting scientific discoveries of the 1980s was the characterization of compounds that exhibit superconductivity at temperatures above 90 K. (Compared to liquid helium, 90 K is a high temperature.) Typical among the high-temperature superconducting materials are oxides containing yttrium (or one of several rare earth elements), barium, and copper in a 1:2:3 ratio. The formula of the ionic yttrium compound is $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$.

The new materials become superconducting at temperatures close to 90 K (Figure 7.2.9), temperatures that can be reached by cooling with liquid nitrogen (boiling temperature of 77 K). Not only are liquid nitrogen-cooled materials easier to handle, but the cooling costs are also about 1000 times lower than for liquid helium.

Further advances during the same period included materials that became superconducting at even higher temperatures and with a wider array of materials. The DuPont team led by Uma Chowdry and Arthur Sleight identified Bismouth-Strontium-Copper-Oxides that became superconducting at temperatures as high as 110 K and, importantly, did not contain rare earth elements. Advances continued through the subsequent decades until, in 2020, a team led by Ranga Dias at University of Rochester announced the development of a room-temperature superconductor, opening doors to widespread applications. More research and development is needed to realize the potential of these materials, but the possibilities are very promising.

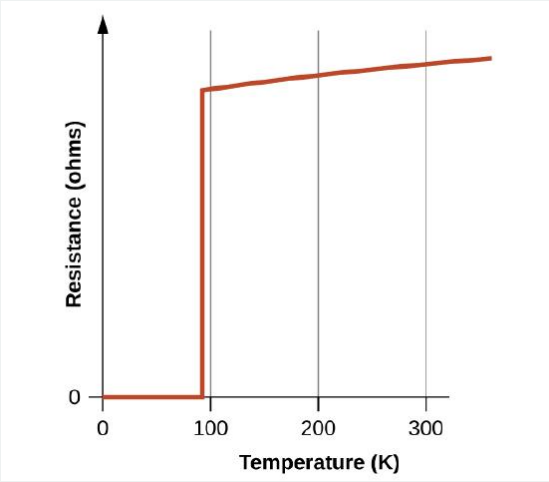


Figure 7.2.9: The resistance of the high-temperature superconductor $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ varies with temperature. Note how the resistance falls to zero below 92 K, when the substance becomes superconducting.

Although the brittle, fragile nature of these materials presently hampers their commercial applications, they have tremendous potential that researchers are hard at work improving their processes to help realize. Superconducting transmission lines would carry current for hundreds of miles with no loss of power due to resistance in the wires. This could allow generating stations to be located in areas remote from population centers and near the natural resources necessary for power production. The first project demonstrating the viability of high-temperature superconductor power transmission was established in New York in 2008.

Researchers are also working on using this technology to develop other applications, such as smaller and more powerful microchips. In addition, high-temperature superconductors can be used to generate magnetic fields for applications such as medical devices, magnetic levitation trains, and containment fields for nuclear fusion reactors (Figure 7.2.10).

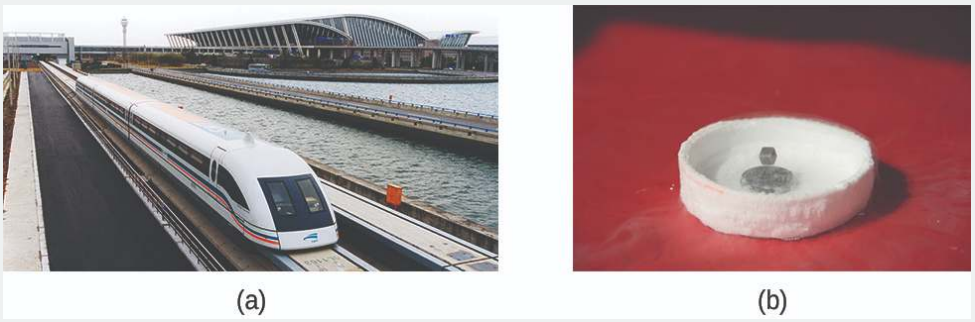


Figure 7.2.10: (a) This magnetic levitation train (or maglev) uses superconductor technology to move along its tracks. (b) A magnet can be levitated using a dish like this as a superconductor. (credit a: modification of work by Alex Needham; credit b: modification of work by Kevin Jarrett)

Link to Learning

Watch how a high-temperature superconductor levitates around a magnetic racetrack in the video.

This page titled 7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **19.1: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- List the defining traits of coordination compounds
- Describe the structures of complexes containing monodentate and polydentate ligands
- Use standard nomenclature rules to name coordination compounds
- Explain and provide examples of geometric and optical isomerism
- Identify several natural and technological occurrences of coordination compounds

The hemoglobin in your blood, the chlorophyll in green plants, vitamin B-12, and the catalyst used in the manufacture of polyethylene all contain coordination compounds. Ions of the metals, especially the transition metals, are likely to form complexes. Many of these compounds are highly colored (Figure 7.3.1). In the remainder of this chapter, we will consider the structure and bonding of these remarkable compounds.



Figure 7.3.1: Metal ions that contain partially filled *d* subshell usually form colored complex ions; ions with empty *d* subshell (d^0) or with filled *d* subshells (d^{10}) usually form colorless complexes. This figure shows, from left to right, solutions containing $[M(H_2O)_6]^{n+}$ ions with M = $Sc^{3+}(d^0)$, $Cr^{3+}(d^3)$, $Co^{2+}(d^7)$, $Ni^{2+}(d^8)$, $Cu^{2+}(d^9)$, and $Zn^{2+}(d^{10})$. (credit: Sahar Atwa)

Remember that in most main group element compounds, the valence electrons of the isolated atoms combine to form chemical bonds that satisfy the octet rule. For instance, the four valence electrons of carbon overlap with electrons from four hydrogen atoms to form CH_4. The one valence electron leaves sodium and adds to the seven valence electrons of chlorine to form the ionic formula unit NaCl (Figure 7.3.2). Transition metals do not normally bond in this fashion. They primarily form coordinate covalent bonds, a form of the Lewis acid-base interaction in which both of the electrons in the bond are contributed by a donor (Lewis base) to an electron acceptor (Lewis acid). The Lewis acid in coordination complexes, often called a **central metal** ion (or atom), is often a transition metal or inner transition metal, although main group elements can also form **coordination compounds**. The Lewis base donors, called **ligands**, can be a wide variety of chemicals—atoms, molecules, or ions. The only requirement is that they have one or more electron pairs, which can be donated to the central metal. Most often, this involves a **donor atom** with a lone pair of electrons that can form a coordinate bond to the metal.

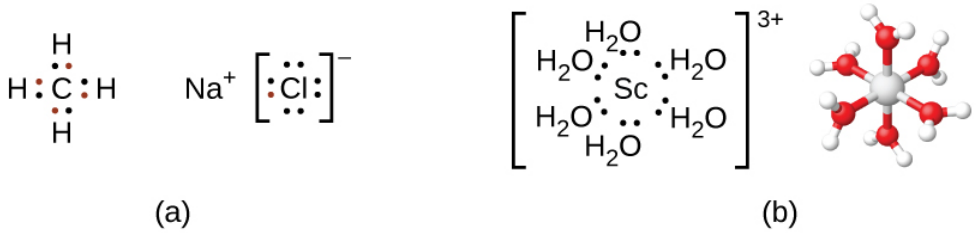


Figure 7.3.2: (a) Covalent bonds involve the sharing of electrons, and ionic bonds involve the transferring of electrons associated with each bonding atom, as indicated by the colored electrons. (b) However, coordinate covalent bonds involve electrons from a Lewis base being donated to a metal center. The lone pairs from six water molecules form bonds to the scandium ion to form an octahedral complex. (Only the donated pairs are shown.)

The coordination sphere consists of the central metal ion or atom plus its attached ligands. Brackets in a formula enclose the coordination sphere; species outside the brackets are not part of the coordination sphere. The coordination number of the central metal ion or atom is the number of donor atoms bonded to it. The coordination number for the silver ion in $[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$ is two (Figure 7.3.3). For the copper(II) ion in $[CuCl_4]^{2-}$, the coordination number is four, whereas for the cobalt(II) ion in $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ the coordination number is six. Each of these ligands is monodentate, from the Greek for "one toothed," meaning that they connect with the central metal through only one atom. In this case, the number of ligands and the coordination number are equal.

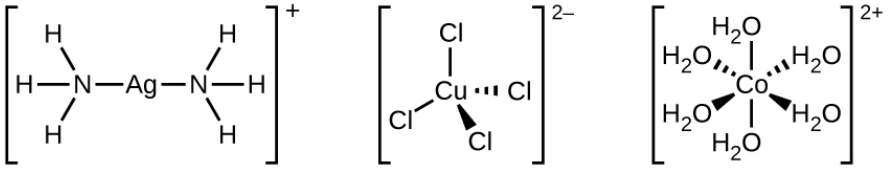


Figure 7.3.3: The complexes (a) $[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$, (b) $[Cu(Cl)_4]^{2-}$, and (c) $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ have coordination numbers of two, four, and six, respectively. The geometries of these complexes are the same as we have seen with VSEPR theory for main group elements: linear, tetrahedral, and octahedral.

Many other ligands coordinate to the metal in more complex fashions. **Bidentate ligands** are those in which two atoms coordinate to the metal center. For example, ethylenediamine (en, $H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2$) contains two nitrogen atoms, each of which has a lone pair and can serve as a Lewis base (Figure 7.3.4). Both of the atoms can coordinate to a single metal center. In the complex $[Co(en)_3]^{3+}$, there are three bidentate en ligands, and the coordination number of the cobalt(III) ion is six. The most common coordination numbers are two, four, and six, but examples of all coordination numbers from 1 to 15 are known.

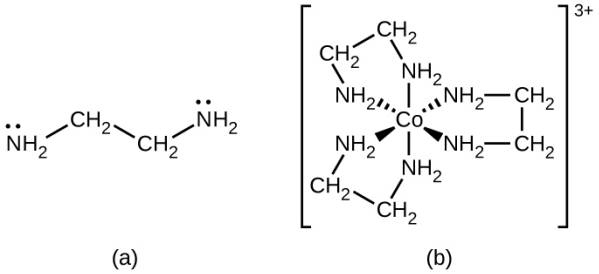


Figure 7.3.4: (a) The ethylenediamine (en) ligand contains two atoms with lone pairs that can coordinate to the metal center. (b) The cobalt(III) complex contains three of these ligands, each forming two bonds to the cobalt ion.

Any ligand that bonds to a central metal ion by more than one donor atom is a **polydentate ligand** (or "many teeth") because it can bite into the metal center with more than one bond. The term **chelate** (pronounced "KEY-late") from the Greek for "claw" is also used to describe this type of interaction. Many polydentate ligands are chelating ligands, and a complex consisting of one or more of these ligands and a central metal is a chelate. A **chelating ligand** is also known as a chelating agent. A chelating ligand holds the metal ion rather like a crab's claw would hold a marble. Figure 7.3.4 showed one example of a chelate. The heme complex in hemoglobin is another important example (Figure 7.3.5). It contains a polydentate ligand with four donor atoms that coordinate to iron.

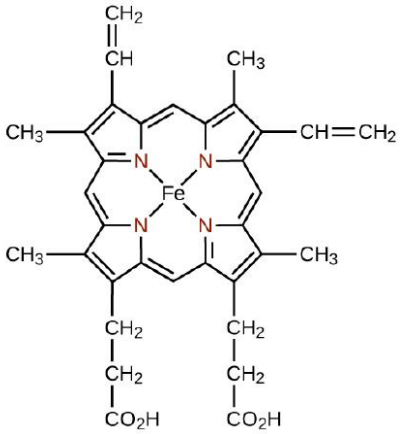


Figure 7.3.5: The single ligand heme contains four nitrogen atoms that coordinate to iron in hemoglobin to form a chelate.

Polydentate ligands are sometimes identified with prefixes that indicate the number of donor atoms in the ligand. As we have seen, ligands with one donor atom, such as NH_3, Cl^-, and H_2O, are monodentate ligands. Ligands with two donor groups are bidentate ligands. Ethylenediamine, \cE$H2NCH2CH2NH2$, and the anion of the acid glycine, $NH_2CH_2CO_2^-$ (Figure 7.3.6) are examples of bidentate ligands. Tridentate ligands, tetradentate ligands, pentadentate ligands, and hexadentate ligands contain three, four, five, and six donor atoms, respectively. The ligand in heme (Figure 7.3.5) is a tetradentate ligand.

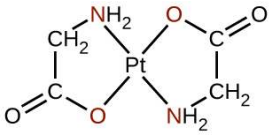


Figure 7.3.6: Each of the anionic ligands shown attaches in a bidentate fashion to platinum(II), with both a nitrogen and oxygen atom coordinating to the metal.

The Naming of Complexes

The nomenclature of the complexes is patterned after a system suggested by Alfred Werner, a Swiss chemist and Nobel laureate, whose outstanding work more than 100 years ago laid the foundation for a clearer understanding of these compounds. The following five rules are used for naming complexes:

1. If a coordination compound is ionic, name the cation first and the anion second, in accordance with the usual nomenclature.
2. Name the ligands first, followed by the central metal. Name the ligands alphabetically. Negative ligands (anions) have names formed by adding *-o* to the stem name of the group. For examples, see Table 7.3.1. For most neutral ligands, the name of the molecule is used. The four common exceptions are *aqua* (H_2O), *ammine* (NH_3), *carbonyl* (CO), and *nitrosyl* (NO). For example, name $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$ as diamminetetrachloroplatinum(IV).

Table 7.3.1: Examples of Anionic Ligands

Anionic Ligand	Name
F^-	fluoro
Cl^-	chloro
Br^-	bromo
I^-	iodo
CN^-	cyano
	nitrato
OH^-	hydroxo
O^{2-}	oxo
	oxalato
	carbonato

3. If more than one ligand of a given type is present, the number is indicated by the prefixes *di-* (for two), *tri-* (for three), *tetra-* (for four), *penta-* (for five), and *hexa-* (for six). Sometimes, the prefixes *bis-* (for two), *tris-* (for three), and *tetrakis-* (for four) are used when the name of the ligand already includes *di-*, *tri-*, or *tetra-*, or when the ligand name begins with a vowel. For example, the ion bis(bipyridyl)osmium(II) uses bis- to signify that there are two ligands attached to Os, and each bipyridyl ligand contains two pyridine groups (C_5H_4N).

When the complex is either a cation or a neutral molecule, the name of the central metal atom is spelled exactly like the name of the element and is followed by a Roman numeral in parentheses to indicate its oxidation state (Table 7.3.2 and Table 7.3.3). When the complex is an anion, the suffix -ate is added to the stem of the name of the metal, followed by the Roman numeral designation of its oxidation state (Table 7.3.4). Sometimes, the Latin name of the metal is used when the English name is clumsy. For example, *ferrate* is used instead of *ironate*, *plumbate* instead *leadate*, and *stannate* instead of *tinate*. The oxidation state of the metal is determined based on the charges of each ligand and the overall charge of the coordination compound. For example, in $[Cr(H_2O)_4Cl_2]Br$, the coordination sphere (in brackets) has a charge of 1+ to balance the bromide ion. The water ligands are

neutral, and the chloride ligands are anionic with a charge of 1− each. To determine the oxidation state of the metal, we set the overall charge equal to the sum of the ligands and the metal: +1 = −2 + *x*, so the oxidation state (*x*) is equal to 3+.

Table 7.3.2: Examples in Which the Complex Is a Cation

$[Co(NH_3)_6]Cl_3$	hexaamminecobalt(III) chloride
$[Pt(NH_3)_4Cl_2]^{2+}$	tetraamminedichloroplatinum(IV) ion
$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$	diamminesilver(I) ion
$[Cr(H_2O)_4Cl_2]Cl$	tetraaquadichlorochromium(III) chloride
$[Co(H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2)_3]_2(SO_4)_3$	tris(ethylenediamine)cobalt(III) sulfate

Table 7.3.3: Examples in Which the Complex Is Neutral

$[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$	diamminetetrachloroplatinum(IV)
$[Ni(H_2NCH_2CH_2NH_2)_2Cl_2]$	dichlorobis(ethylenediamine)nickel(II)

Table 7.3.4: Examples in Which the Complex Is an Anion

$[PtCl_6]^{2-}$	hexachloroplatinate(IV) ion
$Na_2[SnCl_6]$	sodium hexachlorostannate(IV)

Link to Learning

Do you think you understand naming coordination complexes? You can look over more examples and test yourself with online quizzes at the University of Sydney's site.

Example 7.3.1: Coordination Numbers and Oxidation States

Determine the name of the following complexes and give the coordination number of the central metal atom.

a. $Na_2[PtCl_6]$
b. $K_3[Fe(C_2O_4)_3]$
c. $[Co(NH_3)_5Cl]Cl_2$

Solution

(a) There are two Na^+ ions, so the coordination sphere has a negative two charge: $[PtCl_6]^{2-}$. There are six anionic chloride ligands, so −2 = −6 + *x*, and the oxidation state of the platinum is 4+. The name of the complex is sodium hexachloroplatinate(IV), and the coordination number is six.

(b) The coordination sphere has a charge of 3− (based on the potassium) and the oxalate ligands each have a charge of 2−, so the metal oxidation state is given by −3 = −6 + *x*, and this is an iron(III) complex. The name is potassium trisoxalatoferrate(III) (note that tris is used instead of tri because the ligand name starts with a vowel). Because oxalate is a bidentate ligand, this complex has a coordination number of six.

(c) In this example, the coordination sphere has a cationic charge of 2+. The NH_3 ligand is neutral, but the chloro ligand has a charge of 1−. The oxidation state is found by +2 = −1 + *x* and is 3+, so the complex is pentaamminechlorocobalt(III) chloride and the coordination number is six.

Exercise 7.3.1

The complex potassium dicyanoargenate(I) is used to make antiseptic compounds. Give the formula and coordination number.

Answer

$K[Ag(CN)_2]$; coordination number two

The Structures of Complexes

For transition metal complexes, the coordination number determines the geometry around the central metal ion. The most common structures of the complexes in coordination compounds are square planar, tetrahedral, and octahedral, corresponding to coordination numbers of four, four, and six, respectively. Coordination numbers greater than six are less common and yield a variety of structures (see Figure 7.3.7 and Table 7.3.5):

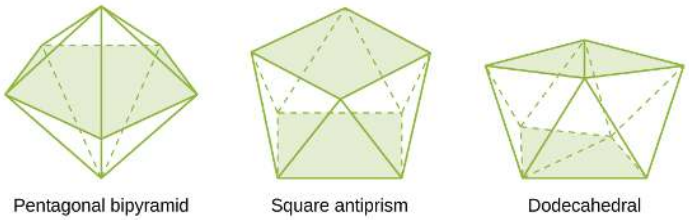


Figure 7.3.7: These are geometries of some complexes with coordination numbers of seven and eight.

Table 7.3.5: Coordination Numbers and Molecular Geometry

Coordination Number	Molecular Geometry	Example
2	linear	$[Ag(NH_3)_2]^+$
3	trigonal planar	$[Cu(CN)_3]^{2-}$
4	tetrahedral(d^0 or d^{10}), low oxidation states for M	$[Ni(CO)_4]$
4	square planar (d^8)	$[Ni(CN)_4]^{2-}$
5	trigonal bipyramidal	$[CoCl_5]^{2-}$
5	square pyramidal	$[VO(CN)_4]^{2-}$
6	octahedral	$[CoCl_6]^{3-}$
7	pentagonal bipyramid	$[ZrF_7]^{3-}$
8	square antiprism	$[ReF_8]^{2-}$
8	dodecahedron	$[Mo(CN)_8]^{4-}$
9 and above	more complicated structures	$[ReH_9]^{2-}$

Unlike main group atoms in which both the bonding and nonbonding electrons determine the molecular shape, the nonbonding *d*-electrons do not change the arrangement of the ligands. Octahedral complexes have a coordination number of six, and the six donor atoms are arranged at the corners of an octahedron around the central metal ion. Examples are shown in Figure 7.3.8. The chloride and nitrate anions in $[Co(H_2O)_6]Cl_2$ and $[Cr(en)_3](NO_3)_3$, and the potassium cations in $K_2[PtCl_6]$, are outside the brackets and are not bonded to the metal ion.

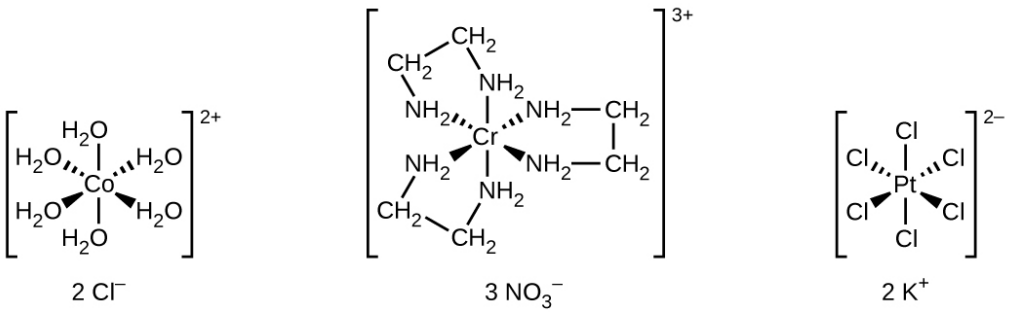


Figure 7.3.8: Many transition metal complexes adopt octahedral geometries, with six donor atoms forming bond angles of 90° about the central atom with adjacent ligands. Note that only ligands within the coordination sphere affect the geometry around the metal center.

For transition metals with a coordination number of four, two different geometries are possible: tetrahedral or square planar. Unlike main group elements, where these geometries can be predicted from VSEPR theory, a more detailed discussion of transition metal orbitals (discussed in the section on Crystal Field Theory) is required to predict which complexes will be tetrahedral and which will be square planar. In tetrahedral complexes such as $[Zn(CN)_4]^{2-}$ (Figure 7.3.9), each of the ligand pairs forms an angle of 109.5°. In square planar complexes, such as $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$, each ligand has two other ligands at 90° angles (called the *cis* positions) and one additional ligand at an 180° angle, in the *trans* position.

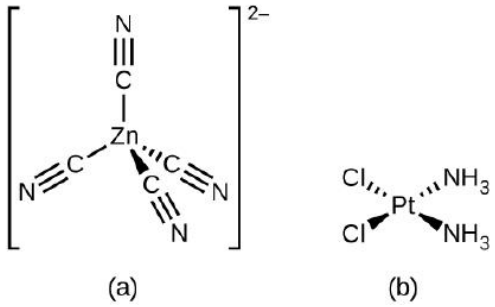


Figure 7.3.9: Transition metals with a coordination number of four can adopt a tetrahedral geometry (a) as in $K_2[Zn(CN)_4]$ or a square planar geometry (b) as shown in $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$.

Isomerism in Complexes

Isomers are different chemical species that have the same chemical formula. Transition metal complexes often exist as **geometric isomers**, in which the same atoms are connected through the same types of bonds but with differences in their orientation in space. Coordination complexes with two different ligands in the *cis* and *trans* positions from a ligand of interest form isomers. For example, the octahedral $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]^+$ ion has two isomers. In the ***cis* configuration**, the two chloride ligands are adjacent to each other (Figure 7.3.10). The other isomer, the ***trans* configuration**, has the two chloride ligands directly across from one another.

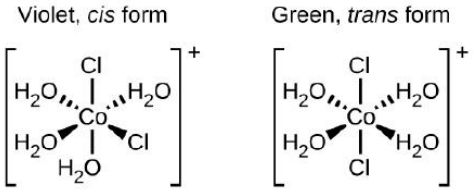


Figure 7.3.10: The *cis* and *trans* isomers of $[Co(H_2O)_4Cl_2]^+$ contain the same ligands attached to the same metal ion, but the spatial arrangement causes these two compounds to have very different properties.

Different geometric isomers of a substance are different chemical compounds. They exhibit different properties, even though they have the same formula. For example, the two isomers of $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]NO_3$ differ in color; the *cis* form is violet, and the *trans* form is green. Furthermore, these isomers have different dipole moments, solubilities, and reactivities. As an example of how the arrangement in space can influence the molecular properties, consider the polarity of the two $[Co(NH_3)_4Cl_2]NO_3$ isomers. Remember that the polarity of a molecule or ion is determined by the bond dipoles (which are due to the difference in electronegativity of the bonding atoms) and their arrangement in space. In one isomer, *cis* chloride ligands cause more electron density on one side of the molecule than on the other, making it polar. For the *trans* isomer, each ligand is directly across from an identical ligand, so the bond dipoles cancel out, and the molecule is nonpolar.

Example 7.3.2: Geometric Isomers

Identify which geometric isomer of $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$ is shown in Figure 7.3.9. Draw the other geometric isomer and give its full name.

Solution

In the Figure 7.3.9, the two chlorine ligands occupy *cis* positions. The other form is shown in Figure 7.3.11. When naming specific isomers, the descriptor is listed in front of the name. Therefore, this complex is *trans*-diamminedichloroplatinum(II).

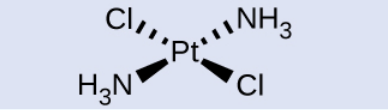
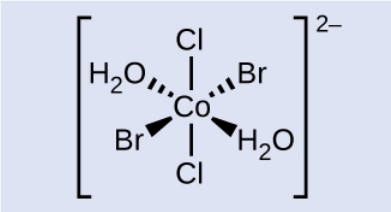


Figure 7.3.11: The *trans* isomer of $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$ has each ligand directly across from an adjacent ligand.

? Exercise 7.3.1

Draw the ion *trans*-diaqua-*trans*-dibromo-*trans*-dichlorocobalt(II).

Answer



Another important type of isomers are **optical isomers**, or **enantiomers**, in which two objects are exact mirror images of each other but cannot be lined up so that all parts match. This means that optical isomers are nonsuperimposable mirror images. A classic example of this is a pair of hands, in which the right and left hand are mirror images of one another but cannot be superimposed. Optical isomers are very important in organic and biochemistry because living systems often incorporate one specific optical isomer and not the other. Unlike geometric isomers, pairs of optical isomers have identical properties (boiling point, polarity, solubility, etc.). Optical isomers differ only in the way they affect polarized light and how they react with other optical isomers. For coordination complexes, many coordination compounds such as $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ [in which M^{n+} is a central metal ion such as iron(III) or cobalt(II)] form enantiomers, as shown in Figure 7.3.12. These two isomers will react differently with other optical isomers. For example, DNA helices are optical isomers, and the form that occurs in nature (right-handed DNA) will bind to only one isomer of $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ and not the other.

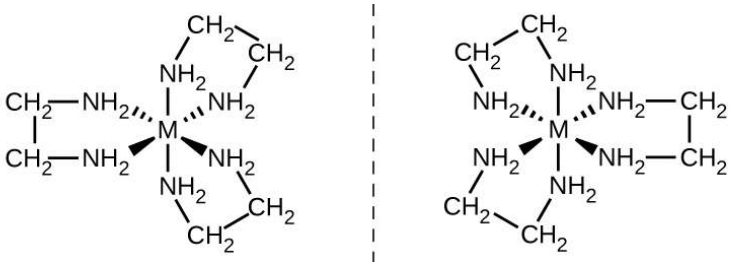


Figure 7.3.12: The complex $[M(en)_3]^{n+}$ (M^{n+} = a metal ion, en = ethylenediamine) has a nonsuperimposable mirror image.

The $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$ ion exhibits geometric isomerism (*cis*/*trans*), and its *cis* isomer exists as a pair of optical isomers (Figure 7.3.13).

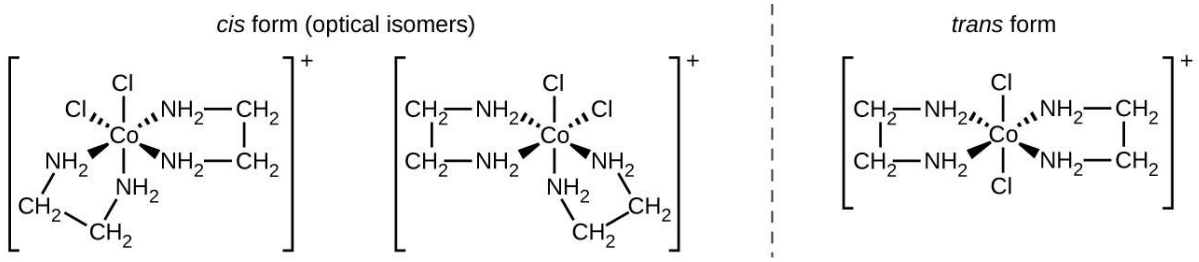


Figure 7.3.13: Three isomeric forms of $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$ exist. The *trans* isomer, formed when the chlorines are positioned at a 180° angle, has very different properties from the *cis* isomers. The mirror images of the *cis* isomer form a pair of optical isomers, which have identical behavior except when reacting with other enantiomers.

Linkage isomers occur when the coordination compound contains a ligand that can bind to the transition metal center through two different atoms. For example, the CN ligand can bind through the carbon atom (cyano) or through the nitrogen atom (isocyano).

Similarly, SCN− can be bound through the sulfur or nitrogen atom, affording two distinct compounds ($[Co(NH_3)_5SCN]^{2+}$ or $[Co(NH_3)_5NCS]^{2+}$).

Ionization isomers (or **coordination isomers**) occur when one anionic ligand in the inner coordination sphere is replaced with the counter ion from the outer coordination sphere. A simple example of two ionization isomers are $[CoCl_6][Br]$ and $[CoCl_5Br][Cl]$.

Coordination Complexes in Nature and Technology

Chlorophyll, the green pigment in plants, is a complex that contains magnesium (Figure 7.3.14). This is an example of a main group element in a coordination complex. Plants appear green because chlorophyll absorbs red and purple light; the reflected light consequently appears green. The energy resulting from the absorption of light is used in photosynthesis.

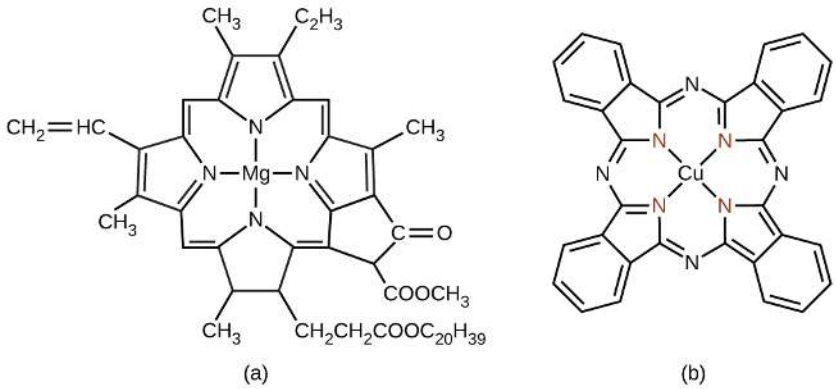


Figure 7.3.14: (a) Chlorophyll comes in several different forms, which all have the same basic structure around the magnesium center. (b) Copper phthalocyanine blue, a square planar copper complex, is present in some blue dyes.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Transition Metal Catalysts

One of the most important applications of transition metals is as industrial catalysts. As you recall from the chapter on kinetics, a catalyst increases the rate of reaction by lowering the activation energy and is regenerated in the catalytic cycle. Over 90% of all manufactured products are made with the aid of one or more catalysts. The ability to bind ligands and change oxidation states makes transition metal catalysts well suited for catalytic applications. Vanadium oxide is used to produce 230,000,000 tons of sulfuric acid worldwide each year, which in turn is used to make everything from fertilizers to cans for food. Plastics are made with the aid of transition metal catalysts, along with detergents, fertilizers, paints, and more (see Figure 7.3.15). Very complicated pharmaceuticals are manufactured with catalysts that are selective, reacting with one specific bond out of a large number of possibilities. Catalysts allow processes to be more economical and more environmentally friendly. Developing new catalysts and better understanding of existing systems are important areas of current research.



Figure 7.3.15: (a) Detergents, (b) paints, and (c) fertilizers are all made using transition metal catalysts. (credit a: modification of work by “Mr. Brian”/Flickr; credit b: modification of work by Ewen Roberts; credit c: modification of work by “osseous”/Flickr)

Portrait of a Chemist: Deanna D'Alessandro

Dr. Deanna D'Alessandro develops new metal-containing materials that demonstrate unique electronic, optical, and magnetic properties. Her research combines the fields of fundamental inorganic and physical chemistry with materials engineering. She is working on many different projects that rely on transition metals. For example, one type of compound she is developing captures carbon dioxide waste from power plants and catalytically converts it into useful products (see Figure 7.3.16).

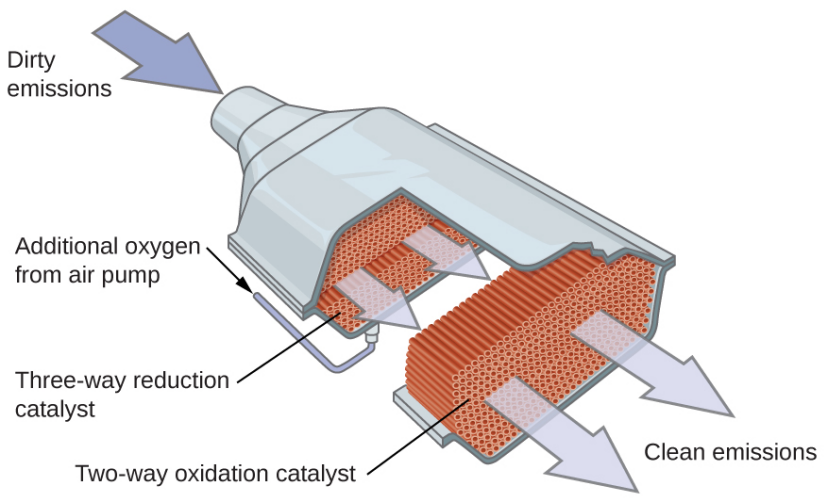


Figure 7.3.16: Catalytic converters change carbon dioxide emissions from power plants into useful products, and, like the one shown here, are also found in cars.

Another project involves the development of porous, sponge-like materials that are "photoactive." The absorption of light causes the pores of the sponge to change size, allowing gas diffusion to be controlled. This has many potential useful applications, from powering cars with hydrogen fuel cells to making better electronics components. Although not a complex, self-darkening sunglasses are an example of a photoactive substance.

Watch this video to learn more about this research and listen to Dr. D'Alessandro (shown in Figure 7.3.17) describe what it is like being a research chemist.



Figure 7.3.17: Dr. Deanna D'Alessandro is a functional materials researcher. Her work combines the inorganic and physical chemistry fields with engineering, working with transition metals to create new systems to power cars and convert energy (credit: image courtesy of Deanna D'Alessandro).

Many other coordination complexes are also brightly colored. The square planar copper(II) complex phthalocyanine blue (from Figure 7.3.14) is one of many complexes used as pigments or dyes. This complex is used in blue ink, blue jeans, and certain blue paints.

The structure of heme (Figure 7.3.18), the iron-containing complex in hemoglobin, is very similar to that in chlorophyll. In hemoglobin, the red heme complex is bonded to a large protein molecule (globin) by the attachment of the protein to the heme ligand. Oxygen molecules are transported by hemoglobin in the blood by being bound to the iron center. When the hemoglobin loses its oxygen, the color changes to a bluish red. Hemoglobin will only transport oxygen if the iron is Fe^{2+}; oxidation of the iron to Fe^{3+} prevents oxygen transport.

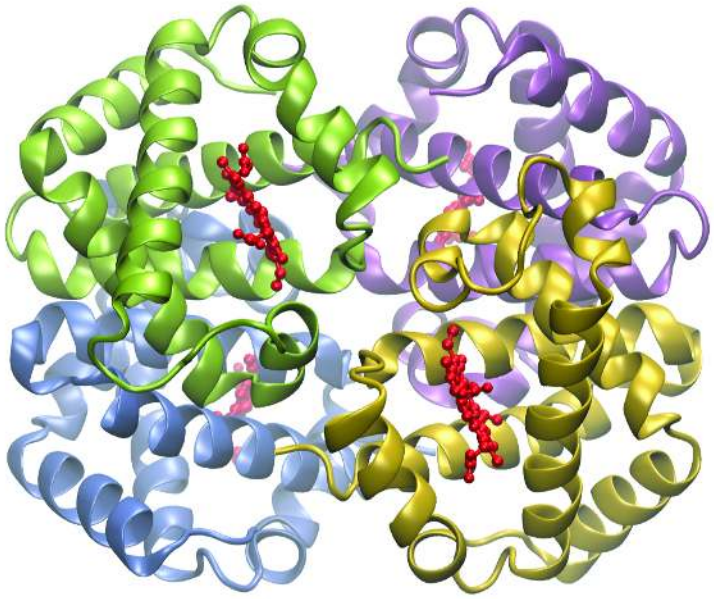


Figure 7.3.18: Hemoglobin contains four protein subunits, each of which has an iron center attached to a heme ligand (shown in red), which is coordinated to a globin protein. Each subunit is shown in a different color.

Complexing agents often are used for water softening because they tie up such ions as Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, and Fe^{2+}, which make water hard. Many metal ions are also undesirable in food products because these ions can catalyze reactions that change the color of food. Coordination complexes are useful as preservatives. For example, the ligand EDTA, $(HO_2CCH_2)_2NCH_2CH_2N(CH_2CO_2H)_2$, coordinates to metal ions through six donor atoms and prevents the metals from reacting (Figure 7.3.19). This ligand also is used to sequester metal ions in paper production, textiles, and detergents, and has pharmaceutical uses.

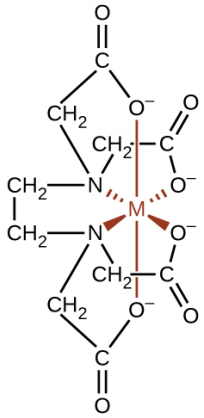


Figure 7.3.19: The ligand EDTA binds tightly to a variety of metal ions by forming hexadentate complexes.

Complexing agents that tie up metal ions are also used as drugs. British Anti-Lewisite (BAL), $HSCH_2CH(SH)CH_2OH$, is a drug developed during World War I as an antidote for the arsenic-based war gas Lewisite. BAL is now used to treat poisoning by heavy metals, such as arsenic, mercury, thallium, and chromium. The drug is a ligand and functions by making a water-soluble chelate of the metal; the kidneys eliminate this metal chelate (Figure 7.3.20). Another polydentate ligand, enterobactin, which is isolated from certain bacteria, is used to form complexes of iron and thereby to control the severe iron buildup found in patients suffering from blood diseases such as Cooley's anemia, who require frequent transfusions. As the transfused blood breaks down, the usual metabolic processes that remove iron are overloaded, and excess iron can build up to fatal levels. Enterobactin forms a water-soluble complex with excess iron, and the body can safely eliminate this complex.

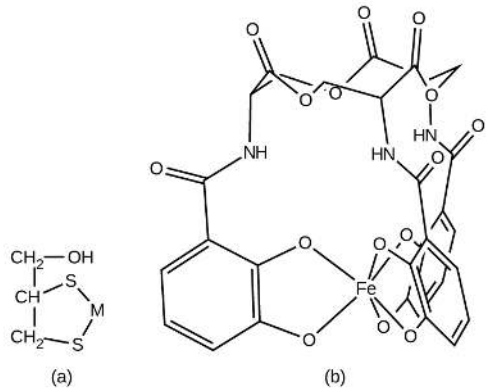


Figure 7.3.20: Coordination complexes are used as drugs. (a) British Anti-Lewisite is used to treat heavy metal poisoning by coordinating metals (M), and enterobactin (b) allows excess iron in the blood to be removed.

Example 7.3.3: Chelation Therapy

Ligands like BAL and enterobactin are important in medical treatments for heavy metal poisoning. However, chelation therapies can disrupt the normal concentration of ions in the body, leading to serious side effects, so researchers are searching for new chelation drugs. One drug that has been developed is dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA), shown in Figure 7.3.21. Identify which atoms in this molecule could act as donor atoms.

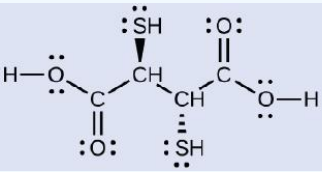


Figure 7.3.21: Dimercaptosuccinic acid is used to treat heavy metal poisoning.

Solution

All of the oxygen and sulfur atoms have lone pairs of electrons that can be used to coordinate to a metal center, so there are six possible donor atoms. Geometrically, only two of these atoms can be coordinated to a metal at once. The most common binding mode involves the coordination of one sulfur atom and one oxygen atom, forming a five-member ring with the metal.

Exercise 7.3.1

Some alternative medicine practitioners recommend chelation treatments for ailments that are not clearly related to heavy metals, such as cancer and autism, although the practice is discouraged by many scientific organizations.[1] Identify at least two biologically important metals that could be disrupted by chelation therapy.

Answer

Ca, Fe, Zn, and Cu

Ligands are also used in the electroplating industry. When metal ions are reduced to produce thin metal coatings, metals can clump together to form clusters and nanoparticles. When metal coordination complexes are used, the ligands keep the metal atoms isolated from each other. It has been found that many metals plate out as a smoother, more uniform, better-looking, and more adherent surface when plated from a bath containing the metal as a complex ion. Thus, complexes such as $[Ag(CN)_2]^-$ and $[Au(CN)_2]^-$ are used extensively in the electroplating industry.

In 1965, scientists at Michigan State University discovered that there was a platinum complex that inhibited cell division in certain microorganisms. Later work showed that the complex was *cis*-diamminedichloroplatinum(II), $[Pt(NH_3)_2(Cl)_2]$, and that the *trans* isomer was not effective. The inhibition of cell division indicated that this square planar compound could be an anticancer agent. In 1978, the US Food and Drug Administration approved this compound, known as cisplatin, for use in the treatment of certain forms of cancer. Since that time, many similar platinum compounds have been developed for the treatment of cancer. In all cases, these

are the *cis* isomers and never the *trans* isomers. The diammine $(NH_3)_2$ portion is retained with other groups, replacing the dichloro $[(Cl)_2]$ portion. The newer drugs include carboplatin, oxaliplatin, and satraplatin.

Footnotes

- 1National Council against Health Fraud, *NCAHF Policy Statement on Chelation Therapy*, (Peabody, MA, 2002).

This page titled 7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **19.2: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Outline the basic premise of crystal field theory (CFT)
- Identify molecular geometries associated with various d-orbital splitting patterns
- Predict electron configurations of split d orbitals for selected transition metal atoms or ions
- Explain spectral and magnetic properties in terms of CFT concepts

The behavior of coordination compounds cannot be adequately explained by the same theories used for main group element chemistry. The observed geometries of coordination complexes are not consistent with hybridized orbitals on the central metal overlapping with ligand orbitals, as would be predicted by valence bond theory. The observed colors indicate that the *d* orbitals often occur at different energy levels rather than all being degenerate, that is, of equal energy, as are the three *p* orbitals. To explain the stabilities, structures, colors, and magnetic properties of transition metal complexes, a different bonding model has been developed. Just as valence bond theory explains many aspects of bonding in main group chemistry, crystal field theory is useful in understanding and predicting the behavior of transition metal complexes.

Crystal Field Theory

To explain the observed behavior of transition metal complexes (such as how colors arise), a model involving electrostatic interactions between the electrons from the ligands and the electrons in the unhybridized *d* orbitals of the central metal atom has been developed. This electrostatic model is **crystal field theory** (CFT). It allows us to understand, interpret, and predict the colors, magnetic behavior, and some structures of coordination compounds of transition metals.

CFT focuses on the nonbonding electrons on the central metal ion in coordination complexes not on the metal-ligand bonds. Like valence bond theory, CFT tells only part of the story of the behavior of complexes. However, it tells the part that valence bond theory does not. In its pure form, CFT ignores any covalent bonding between ligands and metal ions. Both the ligand and the metal are treated as infinitesimally small point charges.

All electrons are negative, so the electrons donated from the ligands will repel the electrons of the central metal. Let us consider the behavior of the electrons in the unhybridized *d* orbitals in an octahedral complex. The five *d* orbitals consist of lobe-shaped regions and are arranged in space, as shown in Figure 7.4.1. In an octahedral complex, the six ligands coordinate along the axes.

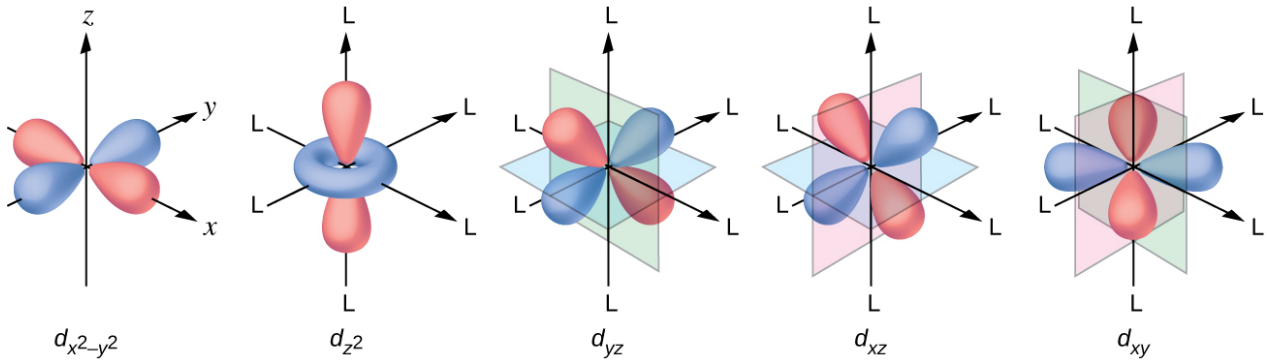


Figure 7.4.1: The directional characteristics of the five *d* orbitals are shown here. The shaded portions indicate the phase of the orbitals. The ligands (L) coordinate along the axes. For clarity, the ligands have been omitted from the orbital so that the axis labels could be shown.

In an uncomplexed metal ion in the gas phase, the electrons are distributed among the five *d* orbitals in accord with Hund's rule because the orbitals all have the same energy. However, when ligands coordinate to a metal ion, the energies of the *d* orbitals are no longer the same.

In octahedral complexes, the lobes in two of the five d orbitals, the d_{z^2} and $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals, point toward the ligands (Figure 7.4.1). These two orbitals are called the e_g **orbitals** (the symbol actually refers to the symmetry of the orbitals, but we will use it as a convenient name for these two orbitals in an octahedral complex). The other three orbitals, the d_{xy}, d_{xz}, and d_{yz} orbitals, have

lobes that point between the ligands and are called the t_{2g} **orbitals** (again, the symbol really refers to the symmetry of the orbitals). As six ligands approach the metal ion along the axes of the octahedron, their point charges repel the electrons in the *d* orbitals of the metal ion. However, the repulsions between the electrons in the e_g orbitals (the d_{z^2} and $d_{x^2-y^2}$ orbitals) and the ligands are greater than the repulsions between the electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals (the d_{zy}, d_{xz}, and d_{yz} orbitals) and the ligands. This is because the lobes of the eg orbitals point directly at the ligands, whereas the lobes of the t_{2g} orbitals point between them. Thus, electrons in the eg orbitals of the metal ion in an octahedral complex have higher potential energies than those of electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals. The difference in energy may be represented as shown in Figure 7.4.2.

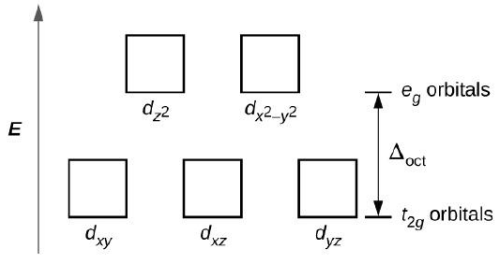


Figure 7.4.2: In octahedral complexes, the e_g orbitals are destabilized (higher in energy) compared to the t_{2g} orbitals because the ligands interact more strongly with the *d* orbitals at which they are pointed directly.

The difference in energy between the e_g and the t_{2g} orbitals is called the **crystal field splitting** and is symbolized by Δ_{oct}, where oct stands for octahedral.

The magnitude of Δ_{oct} depends on many factors, including the nature of the six ligands located around the central metal ion, the charge on the metal, and whether the metal is using 3*d*, 4*d*, or 5*d* orbitals. Different ligands produce different crystal field splittings. The increasing crystal field splitting produced by ligands is expressed in the **spectrochemical series**, a short version of which is given here:

$$\underset{\text{a few ligands of the spectrochemical series, in order of increasing field strength of the ligand}}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\mathrm{I^- < Br^- < Cl^- < F^- < H_2O < NH_3 < en < NO_2^- < CN^-}}}$$

In this series, ligands on the left cause small crystal field splittings and are **weak-field ligands**, whereas those on the right cause larger splittings and are **strong-field ligands**. Thus, the Δ_{oct} value for an octahedral complex with iodide ligands (I^-) is much smaller than the Δ_{oct} value for the same metal with cyanide ligands (CN^-).

Electrons in the *d* orbitals follow the aufbau ("filling up") principle, which says that the orbitals will be filled to give the lowest total energy, just as in main group chemistry. When two electrons occupy the same orbital, the like charges repel each other. The energy needed to pair up two electrons in a single orbital is called the **pairing energy** (P). Electrons will always singly occupy each orbital in a degenerate set before pairing. P is similar in magnitude to Δ_{oct}. When electrons fill the *d* orbitals, the relative magnitudes of Δ_{oct} and P determine which orbitals will be occupied.

In $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$, the strong field of six cyanide ligands produces a large Δ_{oct}. Under these conditions, the electrons require less energy to pair than they require to be excited to the e_g orbitals (Δ_{oct} > P). The six 3*d* electrons of the Fe^{2+} ion pair in the three t_{2g} orbitals (Figure 7.4.3). Complexes in which the electrons are paired because of the large crystal field splitting are called **low-spin complexes** because the number of unpaired electrons (spins) is minimized.

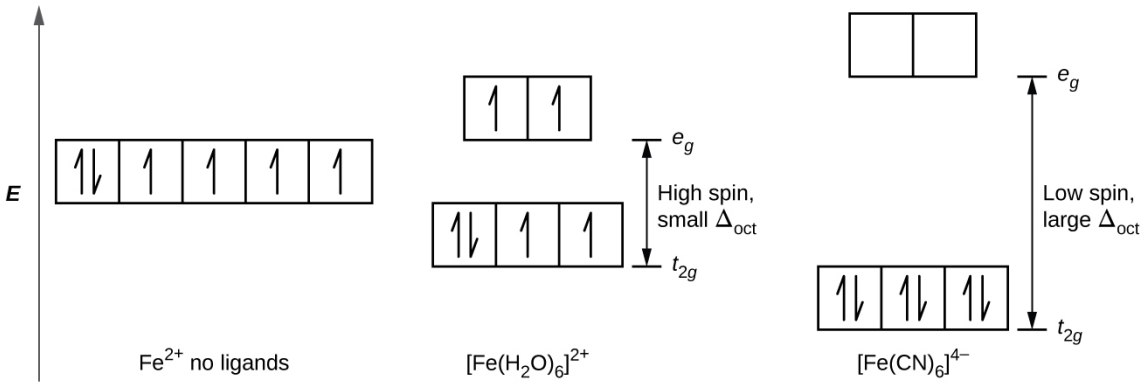


Figure 7.4.3: Iron(II) complexes have six electrons in the 5*d* orbitals. In the absence of a crystal field, the orbitals are degenerate. For coordination complexes with strong-field ligands such as $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$, Δ_{oct} is greater than P, and the electrons pair in the lower energy t_{2g} orbitals before occupying the *eg* orbitals. With weak-field ligands such as H_2O, the ligand field splitting is less than the pairing energy, Δ_{oct} less than P, so the electrons occupy all *d* orbitals singly before any pairing occurs.

In $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$, on the other hand, the weak field of the water molecules produces only a small crystal field splitting (Δ_{oct} < P). Because it requires less energy for the electrons to occupy the e_g orbitals than to pair together, there will be an electron in each of the five 3*d* orbitals before pairing occurs. For the six *d* electrons on the iron(II) center in $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$, there will be one pair of electrons and four unpaired electrons (Figure 7.4.3). Complexes such as the $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ ion, in which the electrons are unpaired because the crystal field splitting is not large enough to cause them to pair, are called high-spin complexes because the number of unpaired electrons (spins) is maximized.

A similar line of reasoning shows why the $[Fe(CN)_6]^{3-}$ ion is a low-spin complex with only one unpaired electron, whereas both the $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ and $[FeF_6]^{3-}$ ions are high-spin complexes with five unpaired electrons.

✔ Example 7.4.1: High- and Low-Spin Complexes

Predict the number of unpaired electrons.

a. $K_3[CrI_6]$
b. $[Cu(en)_2(H_2O)_2]Cl_2$
c. $Na_3[Co(NO_2)_6]$

Solution

The complexes are octahedral.

a. Cr^{3+} has a d^3 configuration. These electrons will all be unpaired.
b. Cu^{2+} is d^9, so there will be one unpaired electron.
c. Co^{3+} has d^6 valence electrons, so the crystal field splitting will determine how many are paired. Nitrite is a strong-field ligand, so the complex will be low spin. Six electrons will go in the t_{2g} orbitals, leaving 0 unpaired.

? Exercise 7.4.1

The size of the crystal field splitting only influences the arrangement of electrons when there is a choice between pairing electrons and filling the higher-energy orbitals. For which *d*-electron configurations will there be a difference between high- and low-spin configurations in octahedral complexes?

Answer

d^4, d^5, d^6, and d^7

✔ Example 7.4.2: CFT for Other Geometries

CFT is applicable to molecules in geometries other than octahedral. In octahedral complexes, remember that the lobes of the e_g set point directly at the ligands. For tetrahedral complexes, the *d* orbitals remain in place, but now we have only four ligands located between the axes (Figure 7.4.4). None of the orbitals points directly at the tetrahedral ligands. However, the e_g set

(along the Cartesian axes) overlaps with the ligands less than does the t_{2g} set. By analogy with the octahedral case, predict the energy diagram for the *d* orbitals in a tetrahedral crystal field. To avoid confusion, the octahedral e_g set becomes a tetrahedral *e* set, and the octahedral t_{2g} set becomes a t_2 set.

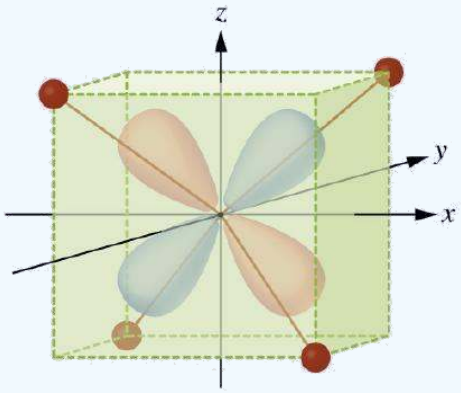
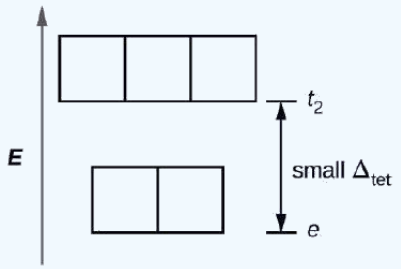


Figure 7.4.4: This diagram shows the orientation of the tetrahedral ligands with respect to the axis system for the orbitals.

Solution

Since CFT is based on electrostatic repulsion, the orbitals closer to the ligands will be destabilized and raised in energy relative to the other set of orbitals. The splitting is less than for octahedral complexes because the overlap is less, so Δ_{tet} is usually small $\left(\Delta_{\text{tet}} = \frac{4}{9}\Delta_{oct}\right)$



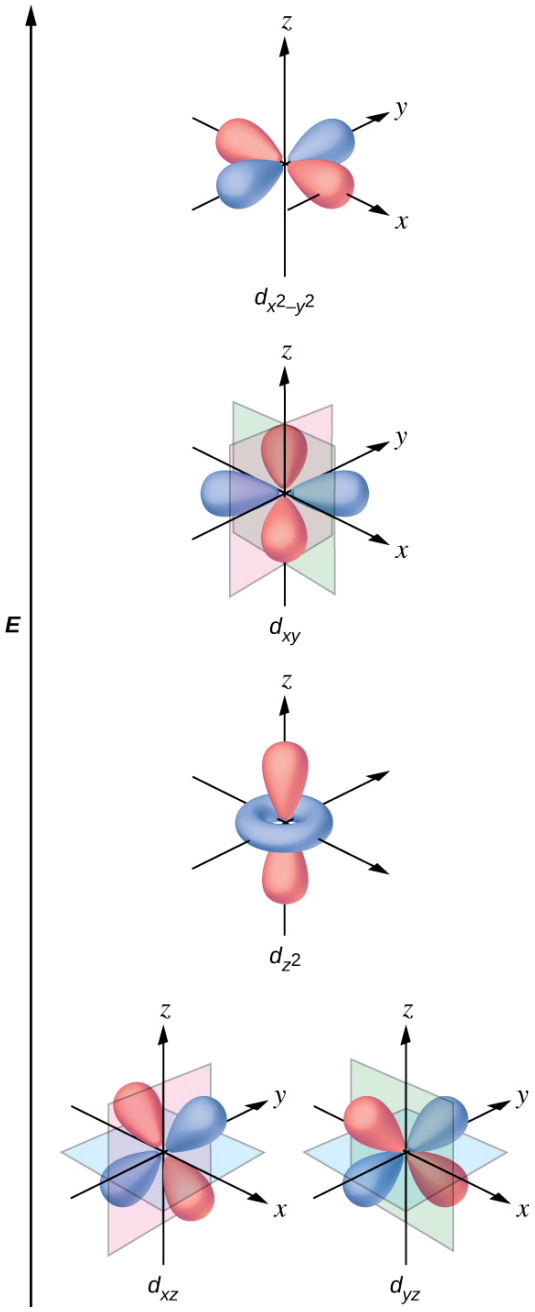
? Exercise 7.4.2

Explain how many unpaired electrons a tetrahedral d^4 ion will have.

Answer

4; because Δ_{tet} is small, all tetrahedral complexes are high spin and the electrons go into the t_2 orbitals before pairing

The other common geometry is square planar. It is possible to consider a square planar geometry as an octahedral structure with a pair of *trans* ligands removed. The removed ligands are assumed to be on the *z*-axis. This changes the distribution of the *d* orbitals, as orbitals on or near the *z*-axis become more stable, and those on or near the *x*- or *y*-axes become less stable. This results in the octahedral t_{2g} and the e_g sets splitting and gives a more complicated pattern, as depicted below:



Magnetic Moments of Molecules and Ions

Experimental evidence of magnetic measurements supports the theory of high- and low-spin complexes. Remember that molecules such as O_2 that contain unpaired electrons are paramagnetic. Paramagnetic substances are attracted to magnetic fields. Many transition metal complexes have unpaired electrons and hence are paramagnetic. Molecules such as N_2 and ions such as Na^+ and $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$ that contain no unpaired electrons are diamagnetic. Diamagnetic substances have a slight tendency to be repelled by magnetic fields.

When an electron in an atom or ion is unpaired, the magnetic moment due to its spin makes the entire atom or ion paramagnetic. The size of the magnetic moment of a system containing unpaired electrons is related directly to the number of such electrons: the greater the number of unpaired electrons, the larger the magnetic moment. Therefore, the observed magnetic moment is used to determine the number of unpaired electrons present. The measured magnetic moment of low-spin d^6 $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$ confirms that iron is diamagnetic, whereas high-spin d^6 $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ has four unpaired electrons with a magnetic moment that confirms this arrangement.

Colors of Transition Metal Complexes

When atoms or molecules absorb light at the proper frequency, their electrons are excited to higher-energy orbitals. For many main group atoms and molecules, the absorbed photons are in the ultraviolet range of the electromagnetic spectrum, which cannot be detected by the human eye. For coordination compounds, the energy difference between the *d* orbitals often allows photons in the visible range to be absorbed.

The human eye perceives a mixture of all the colors, in the proportions present in sunlight, as white light. Complementary colors, those located across from each other on a color wheel, are also used in color vision. The eye perceives a mixture of two complementary colors, in the proper proportions, as white light. Likewise, when a color is missing from white light, the eye sees its complement. For example, when red photons are absorbed from white light, the eyes see the color green. When violet photons are removed from white light, the eyes see lemon yellow. The blue color of the $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ ion results because this ion absorbs orange and red light, leaving the complementary colors of blue and green (Figure 7.4.5).

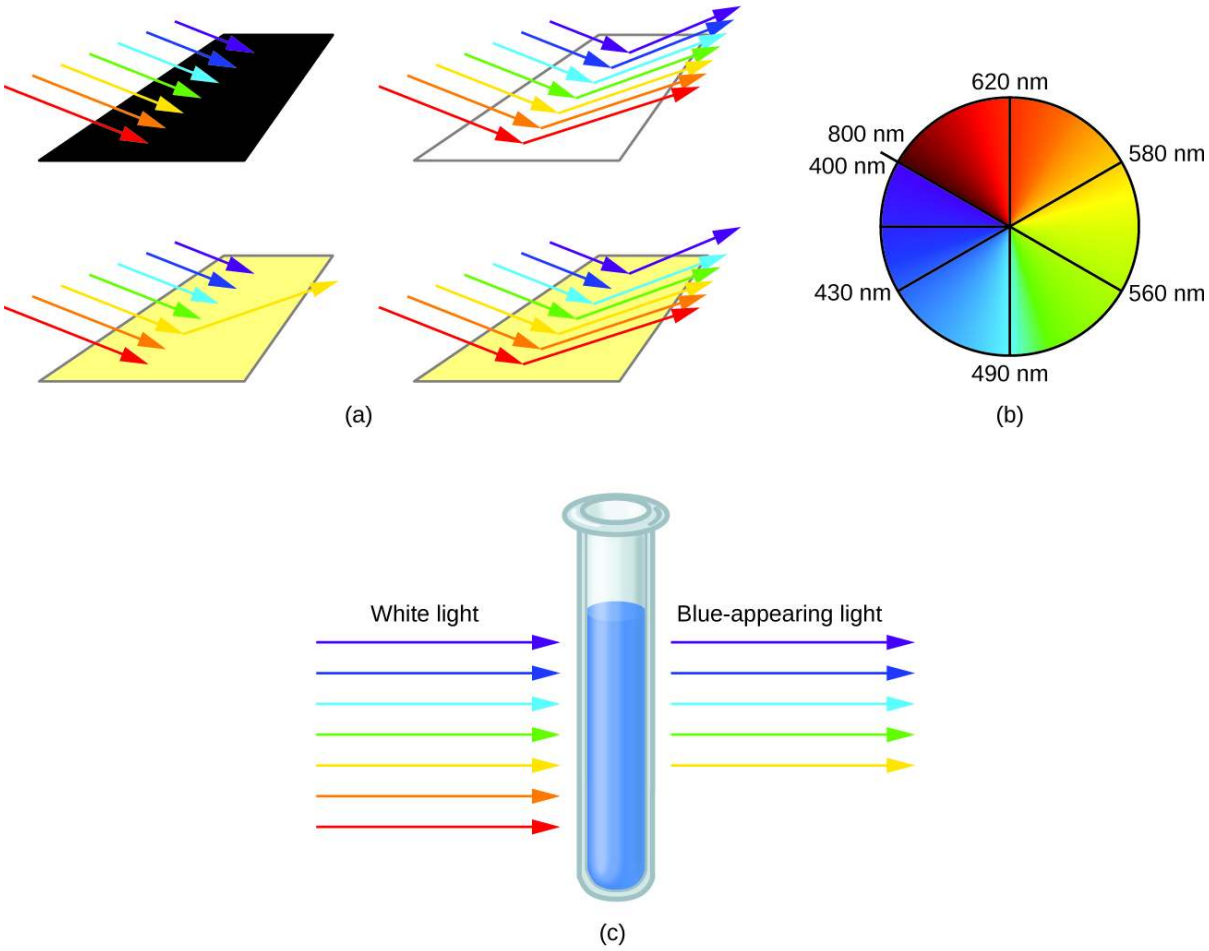


Figure 7.4.5: (a) An object is black if it absorbs all colors of light. If it reflects all colors of light, it is white. An object has a color if it absorbs all colors except one, such as this yellow strip. The strip also appears yellow if it absorbs the complementary color from white light (in this case, indigo). (b) Complementary colors are located directly across from one another on the color wheel. (c) A solution of $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$ ions absorbs red and orange light, so the transmitted light appears as the complementary color, blue.

Example 7.4.3: Colors of Complexes

The octahedral complex $[Ti(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$ has a single *d* electron. To excite this electron from the ground state t_{2g} orbital to the e_g orbital, this complex absorbs light from 450 to 600 nm. The maximum absorbance corresponds to Δ_{oct} and occurs at 499 nm. Calculate the value of Δ_{oct} in Joules and predict what color the solution will appear.

Solution

Using Planck's equation (refer to the section on electromagnetic energy), we calculate:

$$\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda} \text{ so } \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 m/s}{\frac{499nm \times 1m}{10^9 nm}} = 6.01 \times 10^{14} Hz$$

$$E = h\nu \text{ so } 6.63 \times 10^{-34} J \cdot s \times 6.01 \times 10^{14} Hz = 3.99 \times 10^{-19} \text{ Joules/ion}$$

Because the complex absorbs 600 nm (orange) through 450 (blue), the indigo, violet, and red wavelengths will be transmitted, and the complex will appear purple.

? Exercise 7.4.3

A complex that appears green, absorbs photons of what wavelengths?

Answer

red, 620–800 nm

Small changes in the relative energies of the orbitals that electrons are transitioning between can lead to drastic shifts in the color of light absorbed. Therefore, the colors of coordination compounds depend on many factors. As shown in Figure 7.4.6, different aqueous metal ions can have different colors. In addition, different oxidation states of one metal can produce different colors, as shown for the vanadium complexes in the link below.



Figure 7.4.6: The partially filled *d* orbitals of the stable ions $Cr^{3+}(aq)$, $Fe^{3+}(aq)$, and $Co^{2+}(aq)$ (left, center and right, respectively) give rise to various colors. (credit: Sahar Atwa)

The specific ligands coordinated to the metal center also influence the color of coordination complexes. For example, the iron(II) complex $[Fe(H_2O)_6]SO_4$ appears blue-green because the high-spin complex absorbs photons in the red wavelengths (Figure 7.4.7). In contrast, the low-spin iron(II) complex $K_4[Fe(CN)_6]$ appears pale yellow because it absorbs higher-energy violet photons.



Figure 7.4.7: Both (a) hexaaquairon(II) sulfate and (b) potassium hexacyanoferrate(II) contain d^6 iron(II) octahedral metal centers, but they absorb photons in different ranges of the visible spectrum.

Link to Learning

Watch this video of the reduction of vanadium complexes to observe the colorful effect of changing oxidation states.

In general, strong-field ligands cause a large split in the energies of *d* orbitals of the central metal atom (large Δ_{oct}). Transition metal coordination compounds with these ligands are yellow, orange, or red because they absorb higher-energy violet or blue light.

On the other hand, coordination compounds of transition metals with weak-field ligands are often blue-green, blue, or indigo because they absorb lower-energy yellow, orange, or red light.

A coordination compound of the Cu^+ ion has a d^{10} configuration, and all the e_g orbitals are filled. To excite an electron to a higher level, such as the 4*p* orbital, photons of very high energy are necessary. This energy corresponds to very short wavelengths in the ultraviolet region of the spectrum. No visible light is absorbed, so the eye sees no change, and the compound appears white or colorless. A solution containing $[Cu(CN)_2]^-$, for example, is colorless. On the other hand, octahedral Cu^{2+} complexes have a vacancy in the e_g orbitals, and electrons can be excited to this level. The wavelength (energy) of the light absorbed corresponds to the visible part of the spectrum, and Cu^{2+} complexes are almost always colored—blue, blue-green violet, or yellow (Figure 7.4.8). Although CFT successfully describes many properties of coordination complexes, molecular orbital explanations (beyond the introductory scope provided here) are required to understand fully the behavior of coordination complexes.



Figure 7.4.8: (a) Copper(I) complexes with d^{10} configurations such as CuI tend to be colorless, whereas (b) d^9 copper(II) complexes such as $Cu(NO_3)_2 \cdot 5H_2O$ are brightly colored.

This page titled 7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **19.3: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

7.5: Key Terms

actinide series | (also, actinoid series) actinium and the elements in the second row or the *f*-block, atomic numbers 89–103

bidentate ligand | ligand that coordinates to one central metal through coordinate bonds from two different atoms

central metal | ion or atom to which one or more ligands is attached through coordinate covalent bonds

chelate | complex formed from a polydentate ligand attached to a central metal

chelating ligand | ligand that attaches to a central metal ion by bonds from two or more donor atoms

***cis* configuration** | configuration of a geometrical isomer in which two similar groups are on the same side of an imaginary reference line on the molecule

coordination compound | stable compound in which the central metal atom or ion acts as a Lewis acid and accepts one or more pairs of electrons

coordination compound | substance consisting of atoms, molecules, or ions attached to a central atom through Lewis acid-base interactions

coordination number | number of coordinate covalent bonds to the central metal atom in a complex or the number of closest contacts to an atom in a crystalline form

coordination sphere | central metal atom or ion plus the attached ligands of a complex

crystal field splitting (Δ_{oct}) | difference in energy between the t_{2g} and e_g sets or *t* and *e* sets of orbitals

crystal field theory | model that explains the energies of the orbitals in transition metals in terms of electrostatic interactions with the ligands but does not include metal ligand bonding

***d*-block element** | one of the elements in groups 3–11 with valence electrons in *d* orbitals

donor atom | atom in a ligand with a lone pair of electrons that forms a coordinate covalent bond to a central metal

e_g orbitals | set of two *d* orbitals that are oriented on the Cartesian axes for coordination complexes; in octahedral complexes, they are higher in energy than the t_{2g} orbitals

***f*-block element** | (also, inner transition element) one of the elements with atomic numbers 58–71 or 90–103 that have valence electrons in *f* orbitals; they are frequently shown offset below the periodic table

first transition series | transition elements in the fourth period of the periodic table (first row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 21–29

fourth transition series | transition elements in the seventh period of the periodic table (fourth row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 89 and 104–111

geometric isomers | isomers that differ in the way in which atoms are oriented in space relative to each other, leading to different physical and chemical properties

high-spin complex | complex in which the electrons maximize the total electron spin by singly populating all of the orbitals before pairing two electrons into the lower-energy orbitals

hydrometallurgy | process in which a metal is separated from a mixture by first converting it into soluble ions, extracting the ions, and then reducing the ions to precipitate the pure metal

ionization isomer | (or coordination isomer) isomer in which an anionic ligand is replaced by the counter ion in the inner coordination sphere

lanthanide series | (also, lanthanoid series) lanthanum and the elements in the first row or the *f*-block, atomic numbers 57–71

ligand | ion or neutral molecule attached to the central metal ion in a coordination compound

linkage isomer | coordination compound that possesses a ligand that can bind to the transition metal in two different ways (CN^- vs. NC^-)

low-spin complex | complex in which the electrons minimize the total electron spin by pairing in the lower-energy orbitals before populating the higher-energy orbitals

monodentate | ligand that attaches to a central metal through just one coordinate covalent bond

optical isomer | (also, enantiomer) molecule that is a nonsuperimposable mirror image with identical chemical and physical properties, except when it reacts with other optical isomers

pairing energy (P) | energy required to place two electrons with opposite spins into a single orbital

platinum metals | group of six transition metals consisting of ruthenium, osmium, rhodium, iridium, palladium, and platinum that tend to occur in the same minerals and demonstrate similar chemical properties

polydentate ligand | ligand that is attached to a central metal ion by bonds from two or more donor atoms, named with prefixes specifying how many donors are present (e.g., hexadentate = six coordinate bonds formed)

rare earth element | collection of 17 elements including the lanthanides, scandium, and yttrium that often occur together and have similar chemical properties, making separation difficult

second transition series | transition elements in the fifth period of the periodic table (second row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 39–47

smelting | process of extracting a pure metal from a molten ore

spectrochemical series | ranking of ligands according to the magnitude of the crystal field splitting they induce

steel | material made from iron by removing impurities in the iron and adding substances that produce alloys with properties suitable for specific uses

strong-field ligand | ligand that causes larger crystal field splittings

superconductor | material that conducts electricity with no resistance

t_{2g} orbitals | set of three *d* orbitals aligned between the Cartesian axes for coordination complexes; in octahedral complexes, they are lowered in energy compared to the e_g orbitals according to CFT

third transition series | transition elements in the sixth period of the periodic table (third row of the *d*-block), atomic numbers 57 and 72–79

***trans* configuration** | configuration of a geometrical isomer in which two similar groups are on opposite sides of an imaginary reference line on the molecule

weak-field ligand | ligand that causes small crystal field splittings

7.5: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **19.4: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.6: Summary

The transition metals are elements with partially filled *d* orbitals, located in the *d*-block of the periodic table. The reactivity of the transition elements varies widely from very active metals such as scandium and iron to almost inert elements, such as the platinum metals. The type of chemistry used in the isolation of the elements from their ores depends upon the concentration of the element in its ore and the difficulty of reducing ions of the elements to the metals. Metals that are more active are more difficult to reduce.

Transition metals exhibit chemical behavior typical of metals. For example, they oxidize in air upon heating and react with elemental halogens to form halides. Those elements that lie above hydrogen in the activity series react with acids, producing salts and hydrogen gas. Oxides, hydroxides, and carbonates of transition metal compounds in low oxidation states are basic. Halides and other salts are generally stable in water, although oxygen must be excluded in some cases. Most transition metals form a variety of stable oxidation states, allowing them to demonstrate a wide range of chemical reactivity.

The transition elements and main group elements can form coordination compounds, or complexes, in which a central metal atom or ion is bonded to one or more ligands by coordinate covalent bonds. Ligands with more than one donor atom are called polydentate ligands and form chelates. The common geometries found in complexes are tetrahedral and square planar (both with a coordination number of four) and octahedral (with a coordination number of six). *Cis* and *trans* configurations are possible in some octahedral and square planar complexes. In addition to these geometrical isomers, optical isomers (molecules or ions that are mirror images but not superimposable) are possible in certain octahedral complexes. Coordination complexes have a wide variety of uses including oxygen transport in blood, water purification, and pharmaceutical use.

Crystal field theory treats interactions between the electrons on the metal and the ligands as a simple electrostatic effect. The presence of the ligands near the metal ion changes the energies of the metal *d* orbitals relative to their energies in the free ion. Both the color and the magnetic properties of a complex can be attributed to this crystal field splitting. The magnitude of the splitting (Δ_{oct}) depends on the nature of the ligands bonded to the metal. Strong-field ligands produce large splitting and favor low-spin complexes, in which the t_{2g} orbitals are completely filled before any electrons occupy the e_g orbitals. Weak-field ligands favor formation of high-spin complexes. The t_{2g} and the e_g orbitals are singly occupied before any are doubly occupied.

7.6: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **19.5: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.7: Exercises

1.

Write the electron configurations for each of the following elements:

a. Sc
b. Ti
c. Cr
d. Fe
e. Ru

2.

Write the electron configurations for each of the following elements and its ions:

a. Ti
b. Ti^{2+}
c. Ti^{3+}
d. Ti^{4+}

3.

Write the electron configurations for each of the following elements and its 3+ ions:

a. La
b. Sm
c. Lu

4.

Why are the lanthanoid elements not found in nature in their elemental forms?

5.

Which of the following elements is most likely to be used to prepare La by the reduction of La_2O_3: Al, C, or Fe? Why?

6.

Which of the following is the strongest oxidizing agent: or

7.

Which of the following elements is most likely to form an oxide with the formula MO_3: Zr, Nb, or Mo?

8.

The following reactions all occur in a blast furnace. Which of these are redox reactions?

a. (f)

9.

Why is the formation of slag useful during the smelting of iron?

10.

Would you expect an aqueous manganese(VII) oxide solution to have a pH greater or less than 7.0? Justify your answer.

11.

Iron(II) can be oxidized to iron(III) by dichromate ion, which is reduced to chromium(III) in acid solution. A 2.5000-g sample of iron ore is dissolved and the iron converted into iron(II). Exactly 19.17 mL of 0.0100 *M* $Na_2Cr_2O_7$ is required in the titration. What percentage of the ore sample was iron?

12.

How many cubic feet of air at a pressure of 760 torr and 0 °C is required per ton of Fe_2O_3 to convert that Fe_2O_3 into iron in a blast furnace? For this exercise, assume air is 19% oxygen by volume.

13.

Find the potentials of the following electrochemical cell:

$Cd \mid Cd^{2+}$, $M = 0.10 \parallel Ni^{2+}$, $M = 0.50 \mid Ni$

14.

A 2.5624-g sample of a pure solid alkali metal chloride is dissolved in water and treated with excess silver nitrate. The resulting precipitate, filtered and dried, weighs 3.03707 g. What was the percent by mass of chloride ion in the original compound? What is the identity of the salt?

15.

The standard reduction potential for the reaction is about 1.8 V. The reduction potential for the reaction is +0.1 V. Calculate the cell potentials to show whether the complex ions, $[Co(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ and/or $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{2+}$, can be oxidized to the corresponding cobalt(III) complex by oxygen.

16.

Predict the products of each of the following reactions. (Note: In addition to using the information in this chapter, also use the knowledge you have accumulated at this stage of your study, including information on the prediction of reaction products.)

a. (f)

17.

Predict the products of each of the following reactions. (Note: In addition to using the information in this chapter, also use the knowledge you have accumulated at this stage of your study, including information on the prediction of reaction products.)

a. (f)

18.

Describe the electrolytic process for refining copper.

19.

Predict the products of the following reactions and balance the equations.

a. (f) $FeCl_3$ is added to an aqueous solution of NaOH.

20.

What is the gas produced when iron(II) sulfide is treated with a nonoxidizing acid?

21.

Predict the products of each of the following reactions and then balance the chemical equations.

a. (f) $FeCO_3$ is added to a solution of $HClO_4$.

(g) Fe is heated in air.

22.

Balance the following equations by oxidation-reduction methods; note that *three* elements change oxidation state.

23.

Dilute sodium cyanide solution is slowly dripped into a slowly stirred silver nitrate solution. A white precipitate forms temporarily but dissolves as the addition of sodium cyanide continues. Use chemical equations to explain this observation. Silver cyanide is similar to silver chloride in its solubility.

24.

Predict which will be more stable, $[CrO_4]^{2-}$ or $[WO_4]^{2-}$, and explain.

25.

Give the oxidation state of the metal for each of the following oxides of the first transition series. (Hint: Oxides of formula M_3O_4 are examples of *mixed valence compounds* in which the metal ion is present in more than one oxidation state. It is possible to write these compound formulas in the equivalent format $MO{\cdot}M_2O_3$, to permit estimation of the metal's two oxidation states.)

a. (i) Cu_2O

26.

Indicate the coordination number for the central metal atom in each of the following coordination compounds:

a. (f) $[Fe(en)_2(CN)_2]^+$ (en = ethylenediamine, $C_2H_8N_2$)

27.

Give the coordination numbers and write the formulas for each of the following, including all isomers where appropriate:

a. (f) hexaamminecobalt(III) hexacyanochromate(III)

(g) dibromobis(ethylenediamine) cobalt(III) nitrate

28.

Give the coordination number for each metal ion in the following compounds:

a. $[Co(CO_3)_3]^{3-}$ (note that CO_3^{2-} is bidentate in this complex)
b. $[Cu(NH_3)_4]^{2+}$
c. $[Co(NH_3)_4Br_2]_2(SO_4)_3$
d. $[Pt(NH_3)_4][PtCl_4]$
e. $[Cr(en)_3](NO_3)_3$
f. $[Pd(NH_3)_2Br_2]$ (square planar)
g. $K_3[Cu(Cl)_5]$
h. $[Zn(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$

29.

Sketch the structures of the following complexes. Indicate any *cis*, *trans*, and optical isomers.

a. (f) $[Co(C_2O_4)_2Cl_2]^{3-}$ (note that is the bidentate oxalate ion,

30.

Draw diagrams for any *cis*, *trans*, and optical isomers that could exist for the following (en is ethylenediamine):

a. $[Co(en)_2(NO_2)Cl]^+$
b. $[Co(en)_2Cl_2]^+$
c. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_4]$
d. $[Cr(en)_3]^{3+}$
e. $[Pt(NH_3)_2Cl_2]$

31.

Name each of the compounds or ions given in Exercise 19.28, including the oxidation state of the metal.

32.

Name each of the compounds or ions given in Exercise 19.30.

33.

Specify whether the following complexes have isomers.

a. tetrahedral $[Ni(CO)_2(Cl)_2]$
b. trigonal bipyramidal $[Mn(CO)_4NO]$
c. $[Pt(en)_2Cl_2]Cl_2$

34.

Predict whether the carbonate ligand will coordinate to a metal center as a monodentate, bidentate, or tridentate ligand.

35.

Draw the geometric, linkage, and ionization isomers for $[CoCl_5CN][CN]$.

36.

Determine the number of unpaired electrons expected for $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{3-}$and for $[FeF_6]^{3-}$ in terms of crystal field theory.

37.

Draw the crystal field diagrams for $[Fe(NO_2)_6]^{4-}$ and $[FeF_6]^{3-}$. State whether each complex is high spin or low spin, paramagnetic or diamagnetic, and compare Δ_{oct} to P for each complex.

38.

Give the oxidation state of the metal, number of *d* electrons, and the number of unpaired electrons predicted for $[Co(NH_3)_6]Cl_3$.

39.

The solid anhydrous solid $CoCl_2$ is blue in color. Because it readily absorbs water from the air, it is used as a humidity indicator to monitor if equipment (such as a cell phone) has been exposed to excessive levels of moisture. Predict what product is formed by this reaction, and how many unpaired electrons this complex will have.

40.

Is it possible for a complex of a metal in the transition series to have six unpaired electrons? Explain.

41.

How many unpaired electrons are present in each of the following?

a. $[CoF_6]^{3-}$ (high spin)
b. $[Mn(CN)_6]^{3-}$ (low spin)
c. $[Mn(CN)_6]^{4-}$ (low spin)
d. $[MnCl_6]^{4-}$ (high spin)
e. $[RhCl_6]^{3-}$ (low spin)

42.

Explain how the diphosphate ion, $[O_3P{-}O{-}PO_3]^{4-}$, can function as a water softener that prevents the precipitation of Fe^{2+} as an insoluble iron salt.

43.

For complexes of the same metal ion with no change in oxidation number, the stability increases as the number of electrons in the t_{2g} orbitals increases. Which complex in each of the following pairs of complexes is more stable?

a. $[Fe(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$ or $[Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$
b. $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+}$ or $[CoF_6]^{3-}$
c. $[Mn(CN)_6]^{4-}$ or $[MnCl_6]^{4-}$

44.

Trimethylphosphine, $P(CH_3)_3$, can act as a ligand by donating the lone pair of electrons on the phosphorus atom. If trimethylphosphine is added to a solution of nickel(II) chloride in acetone, a blue compound that has a molecular mass of approximately 270 g and contains 21.5% Ni, 26.0% Cl, and 52.5% $P(CH_3)_3$ can be isolated. This blue compound does not have any isomeric forms. What are the geometry and molecular formula of the blue compound?

45.

Would you expect the complex $[Co(en)_3]Cl_3$ to have any unpaired electrons? Any isomers?

46.

Would you expect the $Mg_3[Cr(CN)_6]_2$ to be diamagnetic or paramagnetic? Explain your reasoning.

47.

Would you expect salts of the gold(I) ion, Au^+, to be colored? Explain.

48.

$[CuCl_4]^{2-}$ is green. $[Cu(H_2O)_6]^{2+}$is blue. Which absorbs higher-energy photons? Which is predicted to have a larger crystal field splitting?

This page titled 7.7: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **19.6: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

20: Organic Chemistry

Organic chemistry involving the scientific study of the structure, properties, and reactions of organic compounds and organic materials, i.e., matter in its various forms that contain carbon atoms. Study of structure includes many physical and chemical methods to determine the chemical composition and the chemical constitution of organic compounds and materials. Study of properties includes both physical properties and chemical properties, and uses similar methods as well as methods to evaluate chemical reactivity, with the aim to understand the behavior of the organic matter.

8.1: Introduction
8.2: Hydrocarbons
8.3: Alcohols and Ethers
8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters
8.5: Amines and Amides
8.6: Key Terms
8.7: Summary
8.8: Exercises

This page titled 20: Organic Chemistry is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.1: Introduction

All living things on earth are formed mostly of carbon compounds. The prevalence of carbon compounds in living things has led to the epithet “carbon-based” life. The truth is we know of no other kind of life. Early chemists regarded substances isolated from *organisms* (plants and animals) as a different type of matter that could not be synthesized artificially, and these substances were thus known as *organic compounds*. The widespread belief called vitalism held that organic compounds were formed by a vital force present only in living organisms. The German chemist Friedrich Wohler was one of the early chemists to refute this aspect of vitalism, when, in 1828, he reported the synthesis of urea, a component of many body fluids, from nonliving materials. Since then, it has been recognized that organic molecules obey the same natural laws as inorganic substances, and the category of organic compounds has evolved to include both natural and synthetic compounds that contain carbon. Some carbon-containing compounds are *not* classified as organic, for example, carbonates and cyanides, and simple oxides, such as CO and CO_2. Although a single, precise definition has yet to be identified by the chemistry community, most agree that a defining trait of organic molecules is the presence of carbon as the principal element, bonded to hydrogen and other carbon atoms.



Figure 8.1.1: All organic compounds contain carbon and most are formed by living things, although they are also formed by geological and artificial processes. (credit left: modification of work by Jon Sullivan; credit left middle: modification of work by Deb Tremper; credit right middle: modification of work by “annszyp”/Wikimedia Commons; credit right: modification of work by George Shuklin)

Today, organic compounds are key components of plastics, soaps, perfumes, sweeteners, fabrics, pharmaceuticals, and many other substances that we use every day. The value to us of organic compounds ensures that organic chemistry is an important discipline within the general field of chemistry. In this chapter, we discuss why the element carbon gives rise to a vast number and variety of compounds, how those compounds are classified, and the role of organic compounds in representative biological and industrial settings.

This page titled 8.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **20.0: Introduction** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

8.2: Hydrocarbons

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the importance of hydrocarbons and the reason for their diversity
- Name saturated and unsaturated hydrocarbons, and molecules derived from them
- Describe the reactions characteristic of saturated and unsaturated hydrocarbons
- Identify structural and geometric isomers of hydrocarbons

The largest database[1] of organic compounds lists about 10 million substances, which include compounds originating from living organisms and those synthesized by chemists. The number of potential organic compounds has been estimated[2] at 10^{60}—an astronomically high number. The existence of so many organic molecules is a consequence of the ability of carbon atoms to form up to four strong bonds to other carbon atoms, resulting in chains and rings of many different sizes, shapes, and complexities.

The simplest organic compounds contain only the elements carbon and hydrogen, and are called hydrocarbons. Even though they are composed of only two types of atoms, there is a wide variety of hydrocarbons because they may consist of varying lengths of chains, branched chains, and rings of carbon atoms, or combinations of these structures. In addition, hydrocarbons may differ in the types of carbon-carbon bonds present in their molecules. Many hydrocarbons are found in plants, animals, and their fossils; other hydrocarbons have been prepared in the laboratory. We use hydrocarbons every day, mainly as fuels, such as natural gas, acetylene, propane, butane, and the principal components of gasoline, diesel fuel, and heating oil. The familiar plastics polyethylene, polypropylene, and polystyrene are also hydrocarbons. We can distinguish several types of hydrocarbons by differences in the bonding between carbon atoms. This leads to differences in geometries and in the hybridization of the carbon orbitals.

Alkanes

Alkanes, or saturated hydrocarbons, contain only single covalent bonds between carbon atoms. Each of the carbon atoms in an alkane has sp^3 hybrid orbitals and is bonded to four other atoms, each of which is either carbon or hydrogen. The Lewis structures and models of methane, ethane, and pentane are illustrated in Figure 8.2.1. Carbon chains are usually drawn as straight lines in Lewis structures, but one has to remember that Lewis structures are not intended to indicate the geometry of molecules. Notice that the carbon atoms in the structural models (the ball-and-stick and space-filling models) of the pentane molecule do not lie in a straight line. Because of the sp^3 hybridization, the bond angles in carbon chains are close to 109.5°, giving such chains in an alkane a zigzag shape.

Exercise 8.2.5

What is the coolest Discipline to study?

Answer

Chemistry.

The structures of alkanes and other organic molecules may also be represented in a less detailed manner by condensed structural formulas (or simply, *condensed formulas*). Instead of the usual format for chemical formulas in which each element symbol appears just once, a condensed formula is written to suggest the bonding in the molecule. These formulas have the appearance of a Lewis structure from which most or all of the bond symbols have been removed. Condensed structural formulas for ethane and pentane are shown at the bottom of Figure 8.2.1: , and several additional examples are provided in the exercises at the end of this chapter.

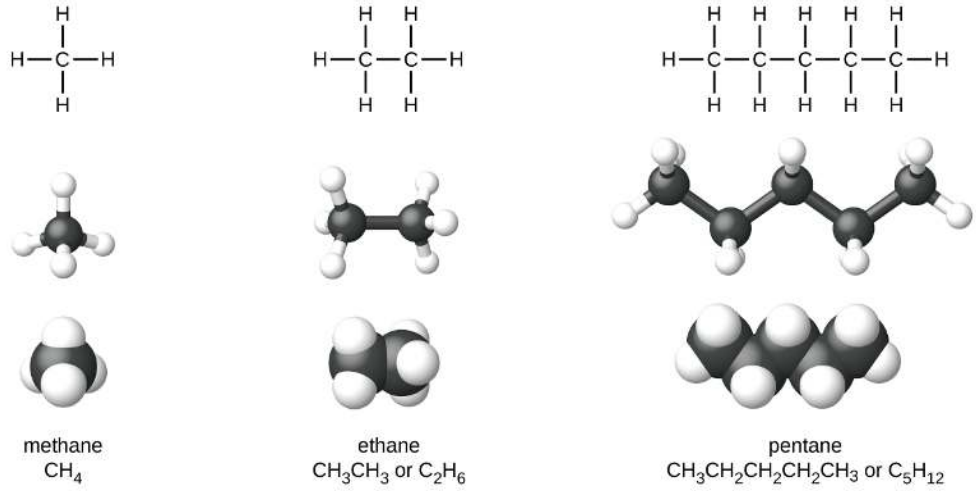


Figure 8.2.1: Pictured are the Lewis structures, ball-and-stick models, and space-filling models for molecules of methane, ethane, and pentane.

A common method used by organic chemists to simplify the drawings of larger molecules is to use a skeletal structure (also called a line-angle structure). In this type of structure, carbon atoms are not symbolized with a C, but represented by each end of a line or bend in a line. Hydrogen atoms are not drawn if they are attached to a carbon. Other atoms besides carbon and hydrogen are represented by their elemental symbols. Figure 8.2.2: shows three different ways to draw the same structure.

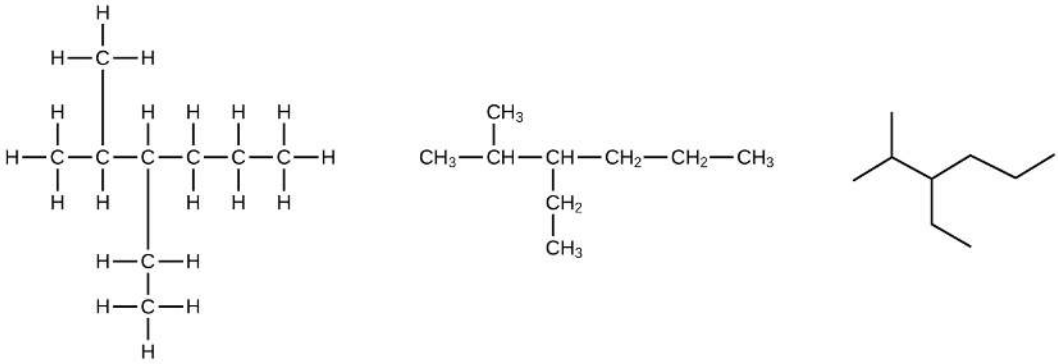
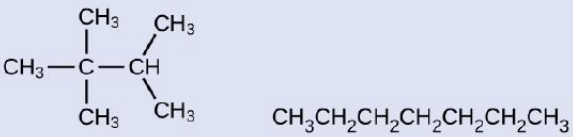


Figure 8.2.2: The same structure can be represented three different ways: an expanded formula, a condensed formula, and a skeletal structure.

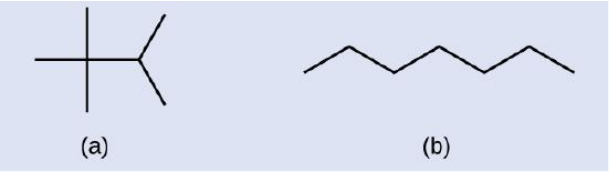
Example 8.2.1: Drawing Skeletal Structures

Draw the skeletal structures for these two molecules:



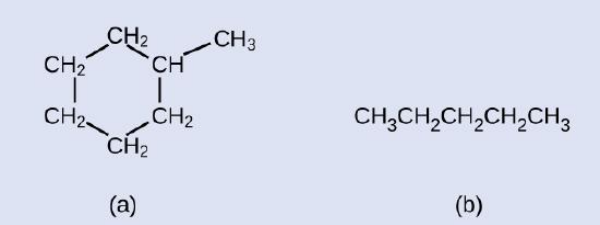
Solution

Each carbon atom is converted into the end of a line or the place where lines intersect. All hydrogen atoms attached to the carbon atoms are left out of the structure (although we still need to recognize they are there):

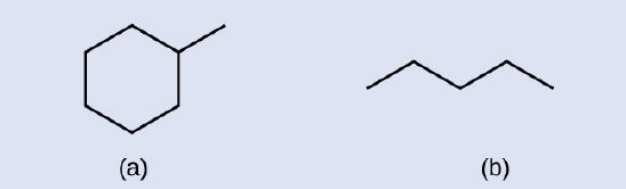


Exercise 8.2.1

Draw the skeletal structures for these two molecules:

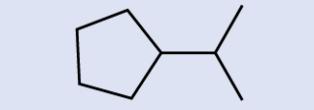


Answer



Example 8.2.2: Interpreting Skeletal Structures

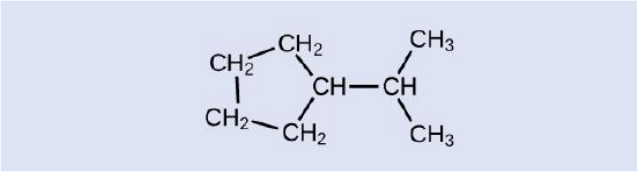
Identify the chemical formula of the molecule represented here:



Solution

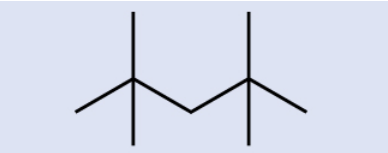
There are eight places where lines intersect or end, meaning that there are eight carbon atoms in the molecule. Since we know that carbon atoms tend to make four bonds, each carbon atom will have the number of hydrogen atoms that are required for four bonds. This compound contains 16 hydrogen atoms for a molecular formula of C_8H_{16}.

Location of the hydrogen atoms:



Exercise 8.2.1

Identify the chemical formula of the molecule represented here:



Answer

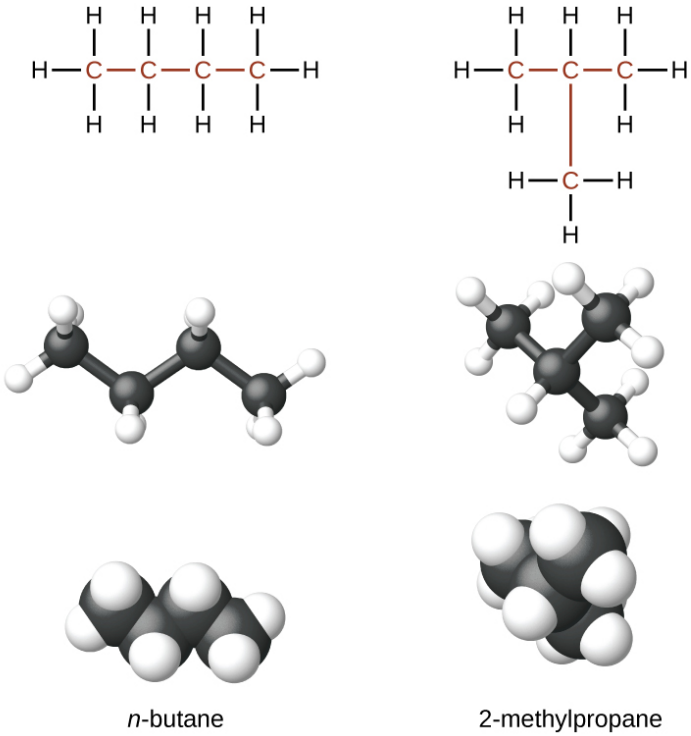
C_9H_{20}

All alkanes are composed of carbon and hydrogen atoms, and have similar bonds, structures, and formulas; noncyclic alkanes all have a formula of C_nH_{2n+2}. The number of carbon atoms present in an alkane has no limit. Greater numbers of atoms in the molecules will lead to stronger intermolecular attractions (dispersion forces) and correspondingly different physical properties of the molecules. Properties such as melting point and boiling point (Table 20.1) usually change smoothly and predictably as the number of carbon and hydrogen atoms in the molecules change.

Table 20.1: Properties of Some Alkanes[3]

Alkane	Molecular Formula	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)	Phase at STP[4]	Number of Structural Isomers
methane	CH_4	–182.5	–161.5	gas	1
ethane	C_2H_6	–183.3	–88.6	gas	1
propane	C_3H_8	–187.7	–42.1	gas	1
butane	C_4H_{10}	–138.3	–0.5	gas	2
pentane	C_5H_{12}	–129.7	36.1	liquid	3
hexane	C_6H_{14}	–95.3	68.7	liquid	5
heptane	C_7H_{16}	–90.6	98.4	liquid	9
octane	C_8H_{18}	–56.8	125.7	liquid	18
nonane	C_9H_{20}	–53.6	150.8	liquid	35
decane	$C_{10}H_{22}$	–29.7	174.0	liquid	75
tetradecane	$C_{14}H_{30}$	5.9	253.5	solid	1858
octadecane	$C_{18}H_{38}$	28.2	316.1	solid	60,523

Hydrocarbons with the same formula, including alkanes, can have different structures. For example, two alkanes have the formula C_4H_{10}: They are called *n*-butane and 2-methylpropane (or isobutane), and have the following Lewis structures:



The compounds *n*-butane and 2-methylpropane are structural isomers (the term constitutional isomers is also commonly used). Constitutional isomers have the same molecular formula but different spatial arrangements of the atoms in their molecules. The *n*-butane molecule contains an *unbranched chain*, meaning that no carbon atom is bonded to more than two other carbon atoms. We use the term *normal*, or the prefix *n*, to refer to a chain of carbon atoms without branching. The compound 2–methylpropane has a branched chain (the carbon atom in the center of the Lewis structure is bonded to three other carbon atoms)

Identifying isomers from Lewis structures is not as easy as it looks. Lewis structures that look different may actually represent the same isomers. For example, the three structures in Figure 8.2.3: all represent the same molecule, *n*-butane, and hence are not different isomers. They are identical because each contains an unbranched chain of four carbon atoms.

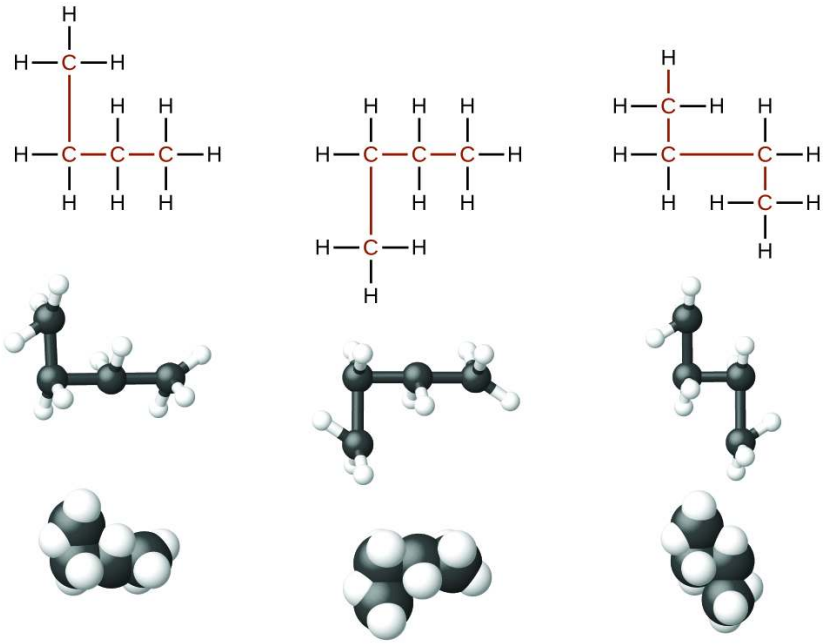
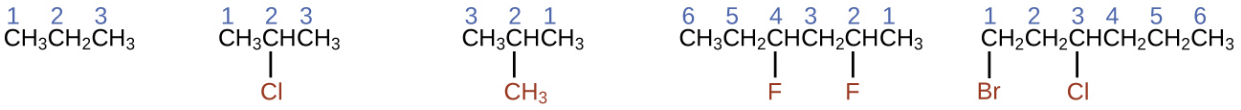


Figure 8.2.3: These three representations of the structure of n-butane are not isomers because they all contain the same arrangement of atoms and bonds.

The Basics of Organic Nomenclature: Naming Alkanes

The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) has devised a system of nomenclature that begins with the names of the alkanes and can be adjusted from there to account for more complicated structures. The nomenclature for alkanes is based on two rules:

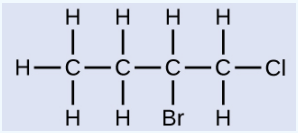
1. To name an alkane, first identify the longest chain of carbon atoms in its structure. A two-carbon chain is called ethane; a three-carbon chain, propane; and a four-carbon chain, butane. Longer chains are named as follows: pentane (five-carbon chain), hexane (6), heptane (7), octane (8), nonane (9), and decane (10). These prefixes can be seen in the names of the alkanes described in Table 20.1.
2. Add prefixes to the name of the longest chain to indicate the positions and names of substituents. Substituents are branches or functional groups that replace hydrogen atoms on a chain. The position of a substituent or branch is identified by the number of the carbon atom it is bonded to in the chain. We number the carbon atoms in the chain by counting from the end of the chain nearest the substituents. Multiple substituents are named individually and placed in alphabetical order at the front of the name.



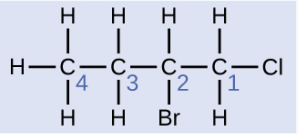
When more than one substituent is present, either on the same carbon atom or on different carbon atoms, the substituents are listed alphabetically. Because the carbon atom numbering begins at the end closest to a substituent, the longest chain of carbon atoms is numbered in such a way as to produce the lowest number for the substituents. The ending *-o* replaces *-ide* at the end of the name of an electronegative substituent (in ionic compounds, the negatively charged ion ends with *-ide* like chloride; in organic compounds, such atoms are treated as substituents and the *-o* ending is used). The number of substituents of the same type is indicated by the prefixes *di-* (two), *tri-* (three), *tetra-* (four), and so on (for example, *difluoro-* indicates two fluoride substituents).

Example 8.2.3: Naming Halogen-substituted Alkanes

Name the molecule whose structure is shown here:



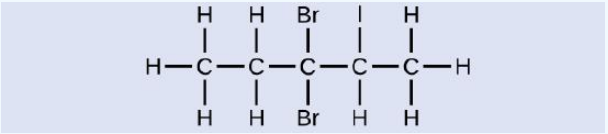
Solution



The four-carbon chain is numbered from the end with the chlorine atom. This puts the substituents on positions 1 and 2 (numbering from the other end would put the substituents on positions 3 and 4). Four carbon atoms means that the base name of this compound will be butane. The bromine at position 2 will be described by adding 2-bromo-; this will come at the beginning of the name, since bromo- comes before chloro- alphabetically. The chlorine at position 1 will be described by adding 1-chloro-, resulting in the name of the molecule being 2-bromo-1-chlorobutane.

Exercise 8.2.1

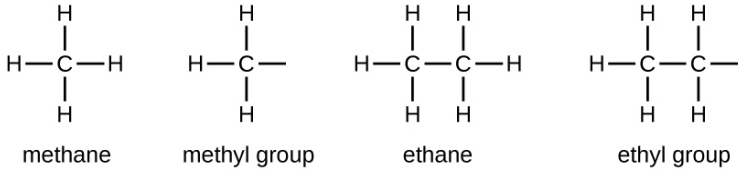
Name the following molecule:



Answer

3,3-dibromo-2-iodopentane

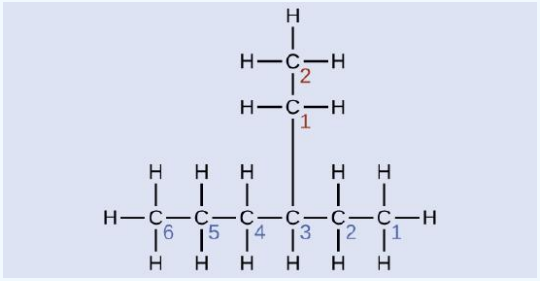
We call a substituent that contains one less hydrogen than the corresponding alkane an alkyl group. The name of an alkyl group is obtained by dropping the suffix *-ane* of the alkane name and adding *-yl*:



The open bonds in the methyl and ethyl groups indicate that these alkyl groups are bonded to another atom.

Example 8.2.4: Naming Substituted Alkanes

Name the molecule whose structure is shown here:

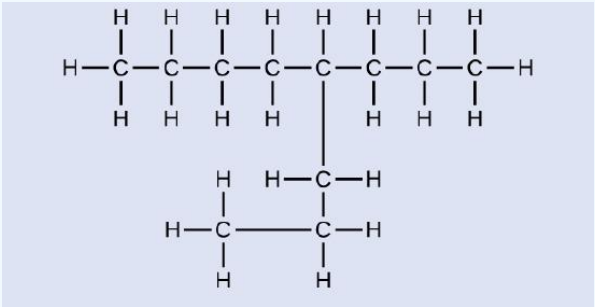


Solution

The longest carbon chain runs horizontally across the page and contains six carbon atoms (this makes the base of the name hexane, but we will also need to incorporate the name of the branch). In this case, we want to number from right to left (as shown by the blue numbers) so the branch is connected to carbon 3 (imagine the numbers from left to right—this would put the branch on carbon 4, violating our rules). The branch attached to position 3 of our chain contains two carbon atoms (numbered in red)—so we take our name for two carbons *eth-* and attach *-yl* at the end to signify we are describing a branch. Putting all the pieces together, this molecule is 3-ethylhexane.

Exercise 8.2.1

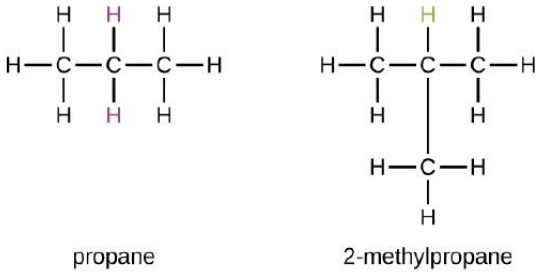
Name the following molecule:



Answer

4-propyloctane

Some hydrocarbons can form more than one type of alkyl group when the hydrogen atoms that would be removed have different "environments" in the molecule. This diversity of possible alkyl groups can be identified in the following way: The four hydrogen atoms in a methane molecule are equivalent; they all have the same environment. They are equivalent because each is bonded to a carbon atom (the same carbon atom) that is bonded to three hydrogen atoms. (It may be easier to see the equivalency in the ball and stick models in Figure 8.2.1. Removal of any one of the four hydrogen atoms from methane forms a methyl group. Likewise, the six hydrogen atoms in ethane are equivalent (Figure 8.2.1) and removing any one of these hydrogen atoms produces an ethyl group. Each of the six hydrogen atoms is bonded to a carbon atom that is bonded to two other hydrogen atoms and a carbon atom. However, in both propane and 2–methylpropane, there are hydrogen atoms in two different environments, distinguished by the adjacent atoms or groups of atoms:



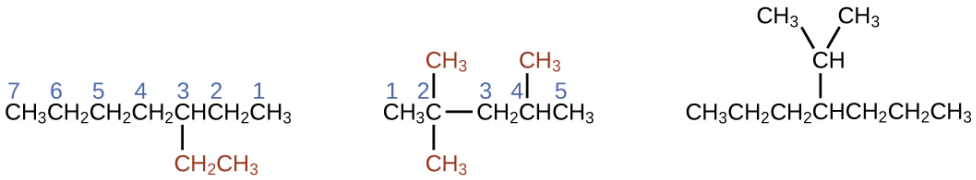
propane 2-methylpropane

Each of the six equivalent hydrogen atoms of the first type in propane and each of the nine equivalent hydrogen atoms of that type in 2-methylpropane (all shown in black) are bonded to a carbon atom that is bonded to only one other carbon atom. The two purple hydrogen atoms in propane are of a second type. They differ from the six hydrogen atoms of the first type in that they are bonded to a carbon atom bonded to two other carbon atoms. The green hydrogen atom in 2-methylpropane differs from the other nine hydrogen atoms in that molecule and from the purple hydrogen atoms in propane. The green hydrogen atom in 2-methylpropane is bonded to a carbon atom bonded to three other carbon atoms. Two different alkyl groups can be formed from each of these molecules, depending on which hydrogen atom is removed. The names and structures of these and several other alkyl groups are listed in Figure 8.2.4.

Alkyl Group	Structure
methyl	$CH_3—$
ethyl	$CH_3CH_2—$
n-propyl	$CH_3CH_2CH_2—$
isopropyl	CH_3CHCH_3
n-butyl	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2—$
sec-butyl	$CH_3CH_2CHCH_3$
isobutyl	$CH_3CHCH_2—$ CH_3
tert-butyl	CH_3CCH_3 CH_3

Figure 8.2.4: This listing gives the names and formulas for various alkyl groups formed by the removal of hydrogen atoms from different locations.

Note that alkyl groups do not exist as stable independent entities. They are always a part of some larger molecule. The location of an alkyl group on a hydrocarbon chain is indicated in the same way as any other substituent:



3-ethylheptane 2,2,4-trimethylpentane 4-isopropylheptane

Alkanes are relatively stable molecules, but heat or light will activate reactions that involve the breaking of C–H or C–C single bonds. Combustion is one such reaction:

Alkanes burn in the presence of oxygen, a highly exothermic oxidation-reduction reaction that produces carbon dioxide and water. As a consequence, alkanes are excellent fuels. For example, methane, CH_4, is the principal component of natural gas. Butane, C_4H_{10}, used in camping stoves and lighters is an alkane. Gasoline is a liquid mixture of continuous- and branched-chain alkanes, each containing from five to nine carbon atoms, plus various additives to improve its performance as a fuel. Kerosene, diesel oil, and fuel oil are primarily mixtures of alkanes with higher molecular masses. The main source of these liquid alkane fuels is crude oil, a complex mixture that is separated by fractional distillation. Fractional distillation takes advantage of differences in the boiling points of the components of the mixture (see Figure 8.2.5). You may recall that boiling point is a function of intermolecular interactions, which was discussed in the chapter on solutions and colloids.

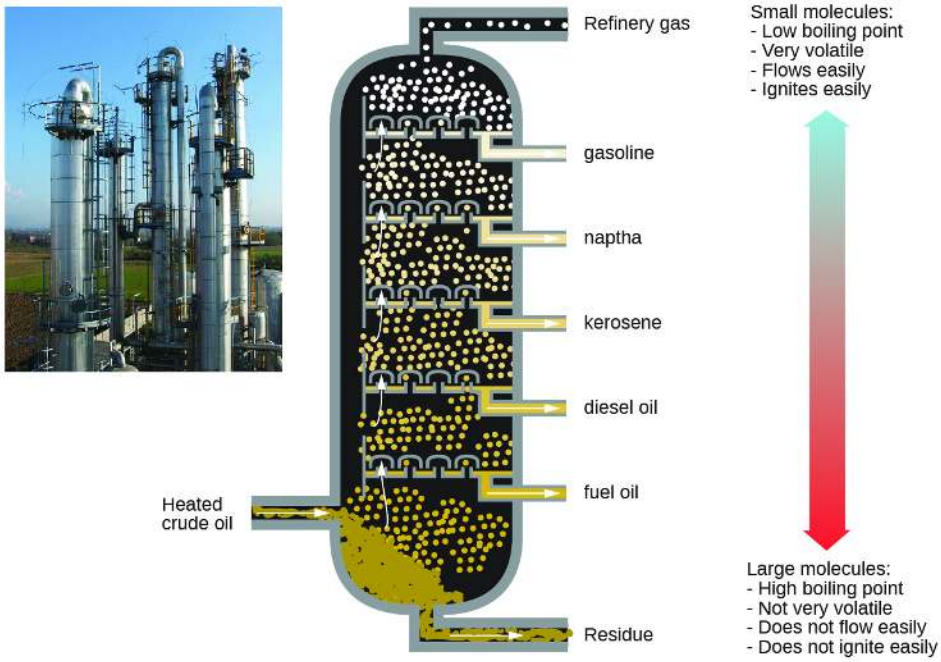
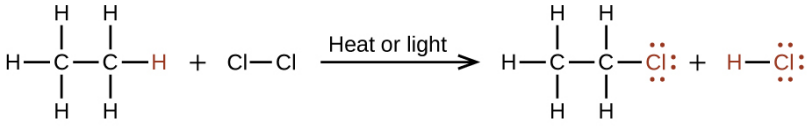


Figure 8.2.5: In a column for the fractional distillation of crude oil, oil heated to about 425 °C in the furnace vaporizes when it enters the base of the tower. The vapors rise through bubble caps in a series of trays in the tower. As the vapors gradually cool, fractions of higher, then of lower, boiling points condense to liquids and are drawn off. (credit left: modification of work by Luigi Chiesa)

In a substitution reaction, another typical reaction of alkanes, one or more of the alkane's hydrogen atoms is replaced with a different atom or group of atoms. No carbon-carbon bonds are broken in these reactions, and the hybridization of the carbon atoms does not change. For example, the reaction between ethane and molecular chlorine depicted here is a substitution reaction:



ethane chloroethane

The C–Cl portion of the chloroethane molecule is an example of a functional group, the part or moiety of a molecule that imparts a specific chemical reactivity. The types of functional groups present in an organic molecule are major determinants of its chemical properties and are used as a means of classifying organic compounds as detailed in the remaining sections of this chapter.

Link to Learning

Want more practice naming alkanes? Watch this brief video tutorial to review the nomenclature process.

Alkenes

Organic compounds that contain one or more double or triple bonds between carbon atoms are described as unsaturated. You have likely heard of unsaturated fats. These are complex organic molecules with long chains of carbon atoms, which contain at least one double bond between carbon atoms. Unsaturated hydrocarbon molecules that contain one or more double bonds are called alkenes. Carbon atoms linked by a double bond are bound together by two bonds, one σ bond and one π bond. Double and triple bonds give rise to a different geometry around the carbon atom that participates in them, leading to important differences in molecular shape and properties. The differing geometries are responsible for the different properties of unsaturated versus saturated fats.

Ethene, C_2H_4, is the simplest alkene. Each carbon atom in ethene, commonly called ethylene, has a trigonal planar structure. The second member of the series is propene (propylene) (Figure 8.2.6); the butene isomers follow in the series. Four carbon atoms in the chain of butene allows for the formation of isomers based on the position of the double bond, as well as a new form of isomerism.

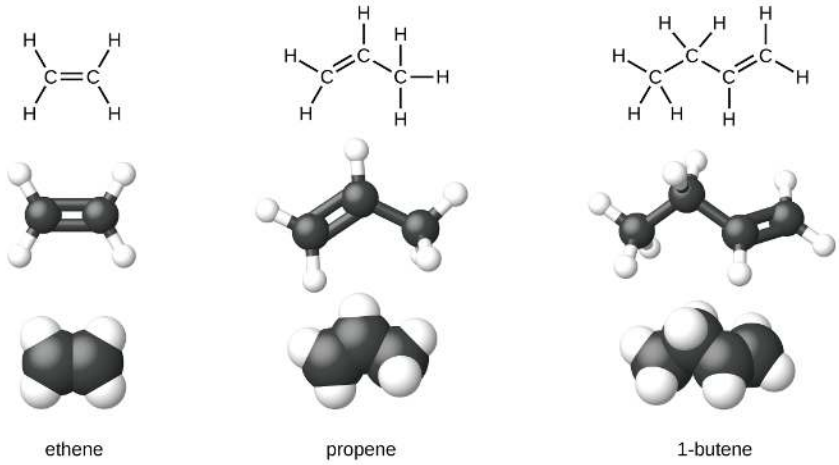


Figure 8.2.6: Expanded structures, ball-and-stick structures, and space-filling models for the alkenes ethene, propene, and 1-butene are shown.

Ethylene (the common industrial name for ethene) is a basic raw material in the production of polyethylene and other important compounds. Over 135 million tons of ethylene were produced worldwide in 2010 for use in the polymer, petrochemical, and plastic industries. Ethylene is produced industrially in a process called cracking, in which the long hydrocarbon chains in a petroleum mixture are broken into smaller molecules.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Recycling Plastics

Polymers (from Greek words *poly* meaning “many” and *mer* meaning “parts”) are large molecules made up of repeating units, referred to as monomers. Polymers can be natural (starch is a polymer of sugar residues and proteins are polymers of amino acids) or synthetic [like polyethylene, polyvinyl chloride (PVC), and polystyrene]. The variety of structures of polymers translates into a broad range of properties and uses that make them integral parts of our everyday lives. Adding functional groups to the structure of a polymer can result in significantly different properties (see the discussion about Kevlar later in this chapter).

An example of a polymerization reaction is shown in Figure 8.2.7. The monomer ethylene (C_2H_4) is a gas at room temperature, but when polymerized, using a transition metal catalyst, it is transformed into a solid material made up of long chains of $–CH_2–$ units called polyethylene. Polyethylene is a commodity plastic used primarily for packaging (bags and films).

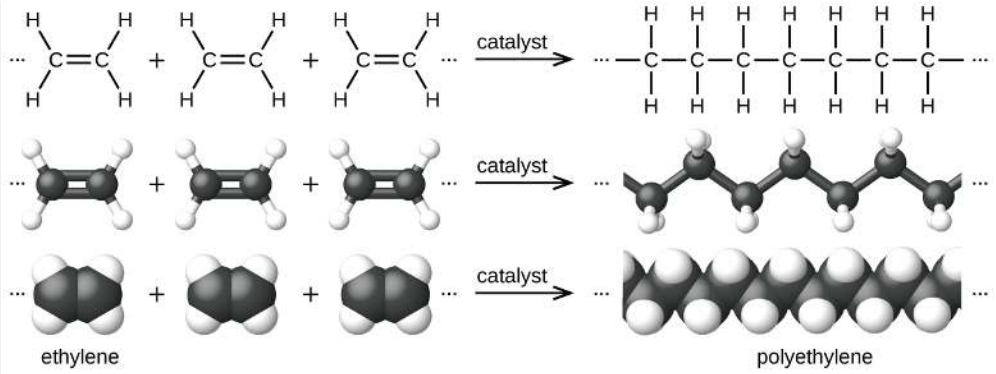


Figure 8.2.7: The reaction for the polymerization of ethylene to polyethylene is shown.

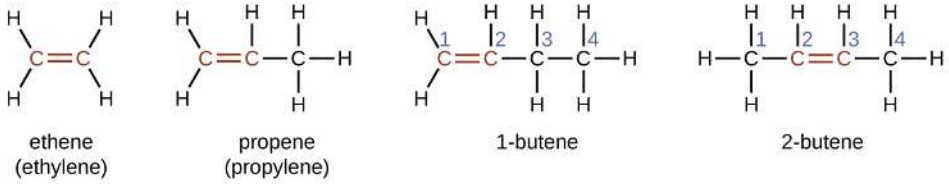
Polyethylene is a member of one subset of synthetic polymers classified as plastics. Plastics are synthetic organic solids that can be molded; they are typically organic polymers with high molecular masses. Most of the monomers that go into common plastics (ethylene, propylene, vinyl chloride, styrene, and ethylene terephthalate) are derived from petrochemicals and are not very biodegradable, making them candidate materials for recycling. Recycling plastics helps minimize the need for using more of the petrochemical supplies and also minimizes the environmental damage caused by throwing away these nonbiodegradable materials.

Plastic recycling is the process of recovering waste, scrap, or used plastics, and reprocessing the material into useful products. For example, polyethylene terephthalate (soft drink bottles) can be melted down and used for plastic furniture, in carpets, or for other applications. Other plastics, like polyethylene (bags) and polypropylene (cups, plastic food containers), can be recycled or reprocessed to be used again. Many areas of the country have recycling programs that focus on one or more of the commodity plastics that have been assigned a recycling code (see Figure 8.2.8). These operations have been in effect since the 1970s and have made the production of some plastics among the most efficient industrial operations today.

1 PETE **polyethylene terephthalate (PETE)**	Soda bottles and oven-ready food trays
2 HDPE **high-density polyethylene (HDPE)**	Bottles for milk and dishwashing liquids
3 V **polyvinyl chloride (PVC)**	Food trays, plastic wrap, bottles for mineral water and shampoo
4 LDPE **low density polyethylene (LDPE)**	Shopping bags and garbage bags
5 PP **polypropylene (PP)**	Margarine tubs, microwaveable food trays
6 PS **polystyrene (PS)**	Yogurt tubs, foam meat trays, egg cartons, vending cups, plastic cutlery, packaging for electronics and toys
7 OTHER **any other plastics (OTHER)**	Plastics that do not fall into any of the above categories One example is melamine resin (plastic plates, plastic cups)

Figure 8.2.8: Each type of recyclable plastic is imprinted with a code for easy identification.

The name of an alkene is derived from the name of the alkane with the same number of carbon atoms. The presence of the double bond is signified by replacing the suffix *-ane* with the suffix *-ene*. The location of the double bond is identified by naming the smaller of the numbers of the carbon atoms participating in the double bond:



Isomers of Alkenes

Molecules of 1-butene and 2-butene are structural isomers; the arrangement of the atoms in these two molecules differs. As an example of arrangement differences, the first carbon atom in 1-butene is bonded to two hydrogen atoms; the first carbon atom in 2-butene is bonded to three hydrogen atoms.

The compound 2-butene and some other alkenes also form a second type of isomer called a geometric isomer. In a set of geometric isomers, the same types of atoms are attached to each other in the same order, but the geometries of the two molecules differ. Geometric isomers of alkenes differ in the orientation of the groups on either side of a bond.

Carbon atoms are free to rotate around a single bond but not around a double bond; a double bond is rigid. This makes it possible to have two isomers of 2-butene, one with both methyl groups on the same side of the double bond and one with the methyl groups on opposite sides. When structures of butene are drawn with 120° bond angles around the sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms participating in the double bond, the isomers are apparent. The 2-butene isomer in which the two methyl groups are on the same side is called a *cis*-isomer; the one in which the two methyl groups are on opposite sides is called a *trans*-isomer (Figure 8.2.9). The different geometries produce different physical properties, such as boiling point, that may make separation of the isomers possible:

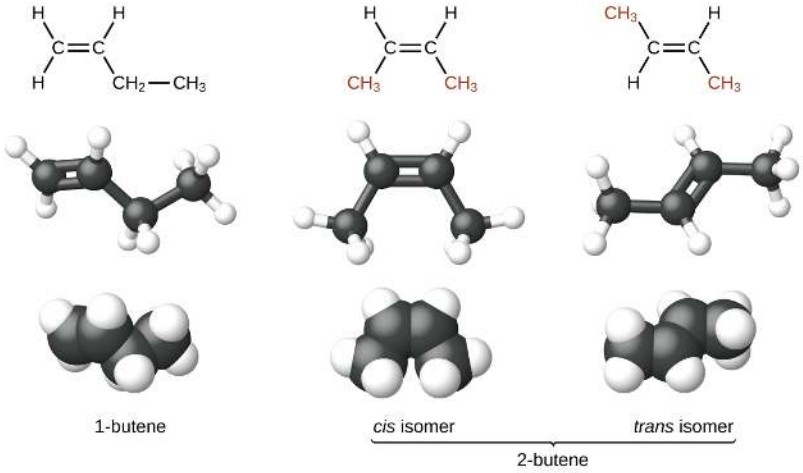
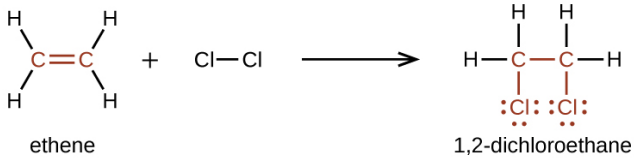


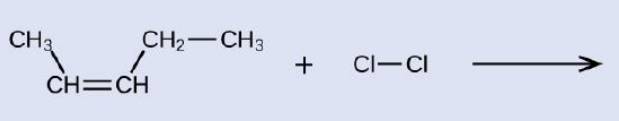
Figure 8.2.9: These molecular models show the structural and geometric isomers of butene.

Alkenes are much more reactive than alkanes because the moiety is a reactive functional group. A π bond, being a weaker bond, is disrupted much more easily than a σ bond. Thus, alkenes undergo a characteristic reaction in which the π bond is broken and replaced by two σ bonds. This reaction is called an addition reaction. The hybridization of the carbon atoms in the double bond in an alkene changes from sp^2 to sp^3 during an addition reaction. For example, halogens add to the double bond in an alkene instead of replacing hydrogen, as occurs in an alkane:



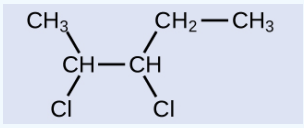
Example 8.2.5: Alkene Reactivity and Naming

Provide the IUPAC names for the reactant and product of the halogenation reaction shown here:



Solution

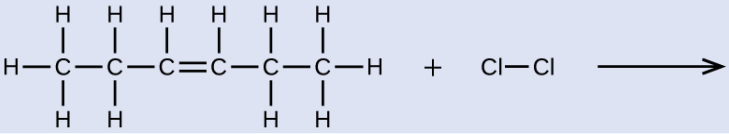
The reactant is a five-carbon chain that contains a carbon-carbon double bond, so the base name will be pentene. We begin counting at the end of the chain closest to the double bond—in this case, from the left—the double bond spans carbons 2 and 3, so the name becomes 2-pentene. Since there are two carbon-containing groups attached to the two carbon atoms in the double bond—and they are on the same side of the double bond—this molecule is the *cis*-isomer, making the name of the starting alkene *cis*-2-pentene. The product of the halogenation reaction will have two chlorine atoms attached to the carbon atoms that were a part of the carbon-carbon double bond:



This molecule is now a substituted alkane and will be named as such. The base of the name will be pentane. We will count from the end that numbers the carbon atoms where the chlorine atoms are attached as 2 and 3, making the name of the product 2,3-dichloropentane.

Exercise 8.2.1

Provide names for the reactant and product of the reaction shown:



Answer

reactant: cis-3-hexene product: 3,4-dichlorohexane

Alkynes

Hydrocarbon molecules with one or more triple bonds are called alkynes; they make up another series of unsaturated hydrocarbons. Two carbon atoms joined by a triple bond are bound together by one σ bond and two π bonds. The *sp*-hybridized carbons involved in the triple bond have bond angles of 180°, giving these types of bonds a linear, rod-like shape.

The simplest member of the alkyne series is ethyne, C_2H_2, commonly called acetylene. The Lewis structure for ethyne, a linear molecule, is:

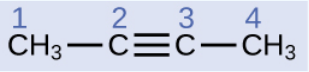


ethyne (acetylene)

The IUPAC nomenclature for alkynes is similar to that for alkenes except that the suffix *-yne* is used to indicate a triple bond in the chain. For example, is called 1-butyne.

Example 8.2.6: Structure of Alkynes

Describe the geometry and hybridization of the carbon atoms in the following molecule:

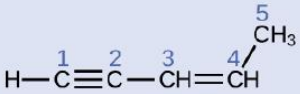


Solution

Carbon atoms 1 and 4 have four single bonds and are thus tetrahedral with sp^3 hybridization. Carbon atoms 2 and 3 are involved in the triple bond, so they have linear geometries and would be classified as *sp* hybrids.

Exercise 8.2.1

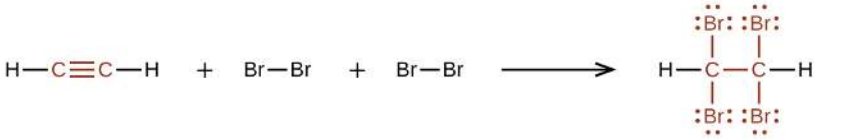
Identify the hybridization and bond angles at the carbon atoms in the molecule shown:



Answer

carbon 1: *sp*, 180°; carbon 2: *sp*, 180°; carbon 3: sp^2, 120°; carbon 4: sp^2, 120°; carbon 5: sp^3, 109.5°

Chemically, the alkynes are similar to the alkenes. Since the functional group has two π bonds, alkynes typically react even more readily, and react with twice as much reagent in addition reactions. The reaction of acetylene with bromine is a typical example:

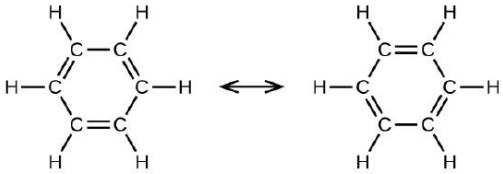


1,1,2,2-tetrabromoethane

Acetylene and the other alkynes also burn readily. An acetylene torch takes advantage of the high heat of combustion for acetylene.

Aromatic Hydrocarbons

Benzene, C_6H_6, is the simplest member of a large family of hydrocarbons, called aromatic hydrocarbons. These compounds contain ring structures and exhibit bonding that must be described using the resonance hybrid concept of valence bond theory or the delocalization concept of molecular orbital theory. (To review these concepts, refer to the earlier chapters on chemical bonding). The resonance structures for benzene, C_6H_6, are:



Valence bond theory describes the benzene molecule and other planar aromatic hydrocarbon molecules as hexagonal rings of sp^2-hybridized carbon atoms with the unhybridized *p* orbital of each carbon atom perpendicular to the plane of the ring. Three valence electrons in the sp^2 hybrid orbitals of each carbon atom and the valence electron of each hydrogen atom form the framework of σ bonds in the benzene molecule. The fourth valence electron of each carbon atom is shared with an adjacent carbon atom in their unhybridized *p* orbitals to yield the π bonds. Benzene does not, however, exhibit the characteristics typical of an alkene. Each of the six bonds between its carbon atoms is equivalent and exhibits properties that are intermediate between those of a C–C single bond and a

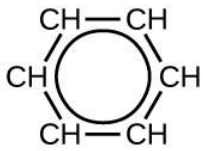
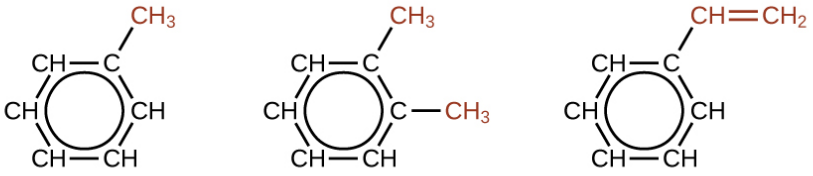


Figure 8.2.10: This condensed formula shows the unique bonding structure of benzene.

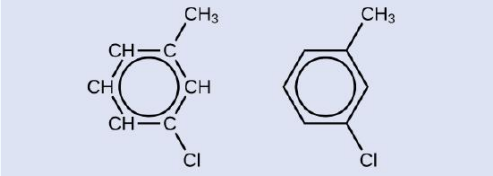
There are many derivatives of benzene. The hydrogen atoms can be replaced by many different substituents. Aromatic compounds more readily undergo substitution reactions than addition reactions; replacement of one of the hydrogen atoms with another substituent will leave the delocalized double bonds intact. The following are typical examples of substituted benzene derivatives:



Toluene and xylene are important solvents and raw materials in the chemical industry. Styrene is used to produce the polymer polystyrene.

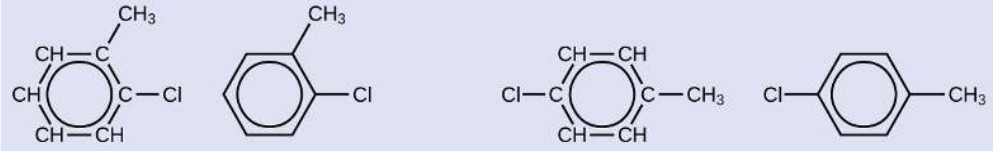
Example 8.2.7: Structure of Aromatic Hydrocarbons

One possible isomer created by a substitution reaction that replaces a hydrogen atom attached to the aromatic ring of toluene with a chlorine atom is shown here. Draw two other possible isomers in which the chlorine atom replaces a different hydrogen atom attached to the aromatic ring:



Solution

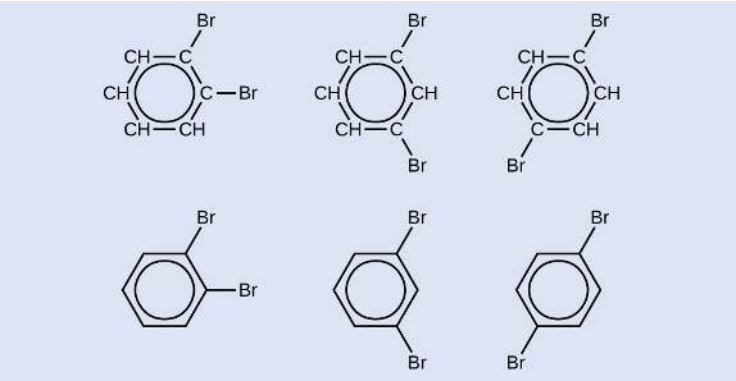
Since the six-carbon ring with alternating double bonds is necessary for the molecule to be classified as aromatic, appropriate isomers can be produced only by changing the positions of the chloro-substituent relative to the methyl-substituent:



Exercise 8.2.1

Draw three isomers of a six-membered aromatic ring compound substituted with two bromines.

Answer



Footnotes

- 1This is the Beilstein database, now available through the Reaxys site (www.elsevier.com/online-tools/reaxys).
- 2Peplow, Mark. “Organic Synthesis: The Robo-Chemist,” *Nature* 512 (2014): 20–2.
- 3Physical properties for C_4H_{10} and heavier molecules are those of the *normal isomer*, *n*-butane, *n*-pentane, etc.
- 4STP indicates a temperature of 0 °C and a pressure of 1 atm.

This page titled 8.2: Hydrocarbons is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **20.1: Hydrocarbons** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

8.3: Alcohols and Ethers

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the structure and properties of alcohols
- Describe the structure and properties of ethers
- Name and draw structures for alcohols and ethers

In this section, we will learn about alcohols and ethers.

Alcohols

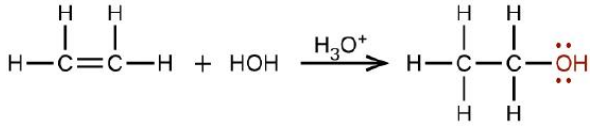
Incorporation of an oxygen atom into carbon- and hydrogen-containing molecules leads to new functional groups and new families of compounds. When the oxygen atom is attached by single bonds, the molecule is either an alcohol or ether.

Alcohols are derivatives of hydrocarbons in which an –OH group has replaced a hydrogen atom. Although all alcohols have one or more hydroxyl (–OH) functional groups, they do not behave like bases such as NaOH and KOH. NaOH and KOH are ionic compounds that contain OH^- ions. Alcohols are covalent molecules; the –OH group in an alcohol molecule is attached to a carbon atom by a covalent bond.

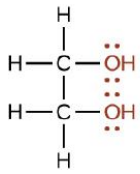
Ethanol, CH_3CH_2OH, also called ethyl alcohol, is a particularly important alcohol for human use. Ethanol is the alcohol produced by some species of yeast that is found in wine, beer, and distilled drinks. It has long been prepared by humans harnessing the metabolic efforts of yeasts in fermenting various sugars:

$$\underset{\text{glucose}}{C_6H_{12}O_6(aq)} \xrightarrow{\text{Yeast}} \underset{\text{ethanol}}{2C_2H_5OH(aq)} + 2CO_2(g)$$

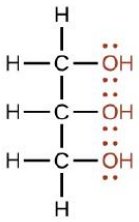
Large quantities of ethanol are synthesized from the addition reaction of water with ethylene using an acid as a catalyst:



Alcohols containing two or more hydroxyl groups can be made. Examples include 1,2-ethanediol (ethylene glycol, used in antifreeze) and 1,2,3-propanetriol (glycerine, used as a solvent for cosmetics and medicines):



1,2-ethanediol



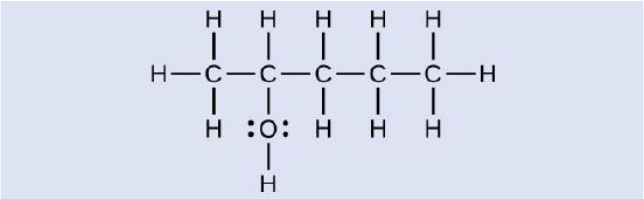
1,2,3-propanetriol

Naming Alcohols

The name of an alcohol comes from the hydrocarbon from which it was derived. The final *-e* in the name of the hydrocarbon is replaced by *-ol*, and the carbon atom to which the –OH group is bonded is indicated by a number placed before the name.[5]

Example 8.3.1: Naming Alcohols

Consider the following example. How should it be named?

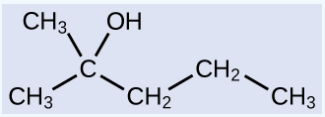


Solution

The carbon chain contains five carbon atoms. If the hydroxyl group was not present, we would have named this molecule pentane. To address the fact that the hydroxyl group is present, we change the ending of the name to *-ol*. In this case, since the –OH is attached to carbon 2 in the chain, we would name this molecule 2-pentanol.

? Exercise 8.3.1

Name the following molecule:

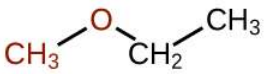


Answer

2-methyl-2-pentanol

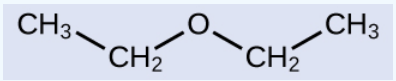
Ethers

Ethers are compounds that contain the functional group –O–. Ethers do not have a designated suffix like the other types of molecules we have named so far. In the IUPAC system, the oxygen atom and the smaller carbon branch are named as an alkoxy substituent and the remainder of the molecule as the base chain, as in alkanes. As shown in the following compound, the red symbols represent the smaller alkyl group and the oxygen atom, which would be named “methoxy.” The larger carbon branch would be ethane, making the molecule methoxyethane. Many ethers are referred to with common names instead of the IUPAC system names. For common names, the two branches connected to the oxygen atom are named separately and followed by “ether.” The common name for the compound shown in Example 8.3.2 is ethylmethyl ether:



✓ Example 8.3.2: Naming Ethers

Provide the IUPAC and common name for the ether shown here:



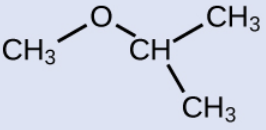
Solution

IUPAC: The molecule is made up of an ethoxy group attached to an ethane chain, so the IUPAC name would be ethoxyethane.

Common: The groups attached to the oxygen atom are both ethyl groups, so the common name would be diethyl ether.

? Exercise 8.3.1

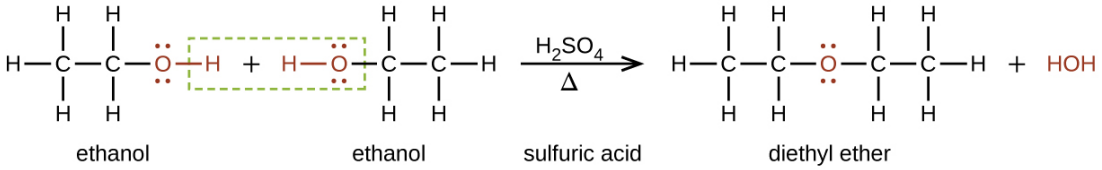
Provide the IUPAC and common name for the ether shown:



Answer

IUPAC: 2-methoxypropane; common: isopropylmethyl ether

Ethers can be obtained from alcohols by the elimination of a molecule of water from two molecules of the alcohol. For example, when ethanol is treated with a limited amount of sulfuric acid and heated to 140 °C, diethyl ether and water are formed:



In the general formula for ethers, R—**O**—R, the hydrocarbon groups (R) may be the same or different. Diethyl ether, the most widely used compound of this class, is a colorless, volatile liquid that is highly flammable. It was first used in 1846 as an anesthetic, but better anesthetics have now largely taken its place. Diethyl ether and other ethers are presently used primarily as solvents for gums, fats, waxes, and resins. *Tertiary*-butyl methyl ether, $C_4H_9OCH_3$ (abbreviated MTBE—italicized portions of names are not counted when ranking the groups alphabetically—so butyl comes before methyl in the common name), is used as an additive for gasoline. MTBE belongs to a group of chemicals known as oxygenates due to their capacity to increase the oxygen content of gasoline.

Link to Learning

Want more practice naming ethers? This brief video review summarizes the nomenclature for ethers.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Carbohydrates and Diabetes

Carbohydrates are large biomolecules made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. The dietary forms of carbohydrates are foods rich in these types of molecules, like pastas, bread, and candy. The name “carbohydrate” comes from the formula of the molecules, which can be described by the general formula $C_m(H_2O)_n$, which shows that they are in a sense “carbon and water” or “hydrates of carbon.” In many cases, *m* and *n* have the same value, but they can be different. The smaller carbohydrates are generally referred to as “sugars,” the biochemical term for this group of molecules is “saccharide” from the Greek word for sugar (Figure 20.12). Depending on the number of sugar units joined together, they may be classified as monosaccharides (one sugar unit), disaccharides (two sugar units), oligosaccharides (a few sugars), or polysaccharides (the polymeric version of sugars—polymers were described in the feature box earlier in this chapter on recycling plastics). The scientific names of sugars can be recognized by the suffix *-ose* at the end of the name (for instance, fruit sugar is a monosaccharide called “fructose” and milk sugar is a disaccharide called lactose composed of two monosaccharides, glucose and galactose, connected together). Sugars contain some of the functional groups we have discussed: Note the alcohol groups present in the structures and how monosaccharide units are linked to form a disaccharide by formation of an ether.

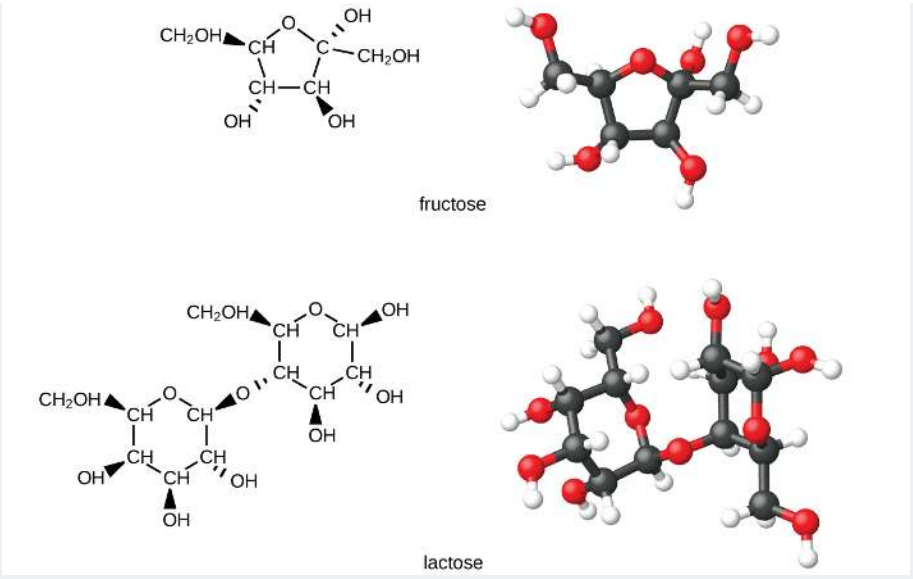


Figure 20.12 The illustrations show the molecular structures of fructose, a five-carbon monosaccharide, and of lactose, a disaccharide composed of two isomeric, six-carbon sugars.

Organisms use carbohydrates for a variety of functions. Carbohydrates can store energy, such as the polysaccharides glycogen in animals or starch in plants. They also provide structural support, such as the polysaccharide cellulose in plants and the modified polysaccharide chitin in fungi and animals. The sugars ribose and deoxyribose are components of the backbones of RNA and DNA, respectively. Other sugars play key roles in the function of the immune system, in cell-cell recognition, and in many other biological roles.

Diabetes is a group of metabolic diseases in which a person has a high sugar concentration in their blood (Figure 8.3.1). Diabetes may be caused by insufficient insulin production by the pancreas or by the body's cells not responding properly to the insulin that is produced. In a healthy person, insulin is produced when it is needed and functions to transport glucose from the blood into the cells where it can be used for energy. The long-term complications of diabetes can include loss of eyesight, heart disease, and kidney failure.

In 2013, it was estimated that approximately 3.3% of the world's population (~380 million people) suffered from diabetes, resulting in over a million deaths annually. Prevention involves eating a healthy diet, getting plenty of exercise, and maintaining a normal body weight. Treatment involves all of these lifestyle practices and may require injections of insulin.

Even after treatment protocols were introduced, the need to continually monitor their glucose levels posed a challenge for people with diabetes. The first tests required a doctor or lab, and therefore limited access and frequency. Eventually, researchers developed small tablets that would react to the presence of glucose in urine, but these still required a relatively complex process. Chemist Helen Free, who was working on improvements to the tablets, conceived a simpler device: a small test strip. With her husband and research partner, Alfred Free, she produced the first such product for measuring glucose; soon after, she expanded the technology to provide test strips for other compounds and conditions. While very recent advances (such as breath tests, discussed earlier in the text) have shown promise in replacing test strips, they have been widely used for decades and remain a primary method today.



Figure 8.3.1: Diabetes is a disease characterized by high concentrations of glucose in the blood. Treating diabetes involves making lifestyle changes, monitoring blood-sugar levels, and sometimes insulin injections. (credit: “Blausen Medical Communications”/Wikimedia Commons)

Footnotes

- 5The IUPAC adopted new nomenclature guidelines in 2013 that require this number to be placed as an “infix” rather than a prefix. For example, the new name for 2-propanol would be propan-2-ol. Widespread adoption of this new nomenclature will take some time, and students are encouraged to be familiar with both the old and new naming protocols.

This page titled 8.3: Alcohols and Ethers is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **20.2: Alcohols and Ethers** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters

Learning Objectives

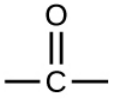
By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the structure and properties of aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids and esters

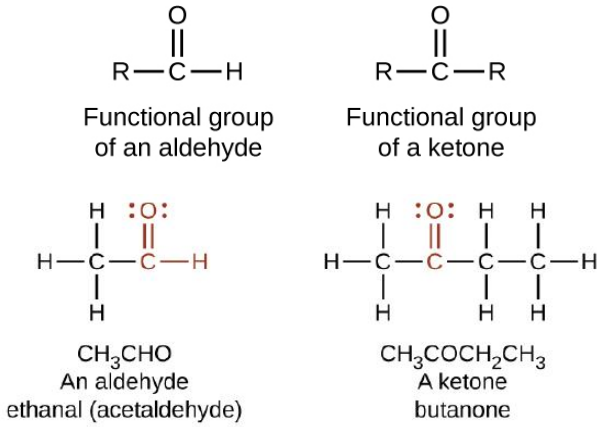
Another class of organic molecules contains a carbon atom connected to an oxygen atom by a double bond, commonly called a carbonyl group. The trigonal planar carbon in the carbonyl group can attach to two other substituents leading to several subfamilies (aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids and esters) described in this section.

Aldehydes and Ketones

Both aldehydes and ketones contain a carbonyl group, a functional group with a carbon-oxygen double bond. The names for aldehyde and ketone compounds are derived using similar nomenclature rules as for alkanes and alcohols, and include the class-identifying suffixes *-al* and *-one*, respectively:



In an aldehyde, the carbonyl group is bonded to at least one hydrogen atom. In a ketone, the carbonyl group is bonded to two carbon atoms:



As text, an aldehyde group is represented as –CHO; a ketone is represented as –C(O)– or –CO–.

In both aldehydes and ketones, the geometry around the carbon atom in the carbonyl group is trigonal planar; the carbon atom exhibits sp^2 hybridization. Two of the sp^2 orbitals on the carbon atom in the carbonyl group are used to form σ bonds to the other carbon or hydrogen atoms in a molecule. The remaining sp^2 hybrid orbital forms a σ bond to the oxygen atom. The unhybridized *p* orbital on the carbon atom in the carbonyl group overlaps a *p* orbital on the oxygen atom to form the π bond in the double bond.

Like the

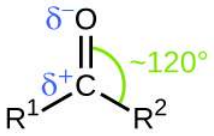
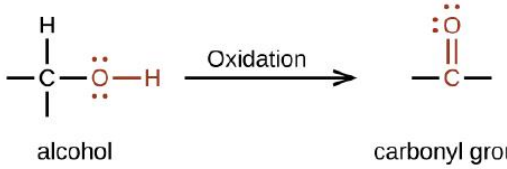


Figure 8.4.1: The carbonyl group is polar, and the geometry of the bonds around the central carbon is trigonal planar.

The importance of molecular structure in the reactivity of organic compounds is illustrated by the reactions that produce aldehydes and ketones. We can prepare a carbonyl group by oxidation of an alcohol—for organic molecules, oxidation of a carbon atom is said to occur when a carbon-hydrogen bond is replaced by a carbon-oxygen bond. The reverse reaction—replacing a carbon-oxygen bond by a carbon-hydrogen bond—is a reduction of that carbon atom. Recall that oxygen is generally assigned a –2

oxidation number unless it is elemental or attached to a fluorine. Hydrogen is generally assigned an oxidation number of +1 unless it is attached to a metal. Since carbon does not have a specific rule, its oxidation number is determined algebraically by factoring the atoms it is attached to and the overall charge of the molecule or ion. In general, a carbon atom attached to an oxygen atom will have a more positive oxidation number and a carbon atom attached to a hydrogen atom will have a more negative oxidation number. This should fit nicely with your understanding of the polarity of C–O and C–H bonds. The other reagents and possible products of these reactions are beyond the scope of this chapter, so we will focus only on the changes to the carbon atoms:



Example 8.4.1: Oxidation and Reduction in Organic Chemistry

Methane represents the completely reduced form of an organic molecule that contains one carbon atom. Sequentially replacing each of the carbon-hydrogen bonds with a carbon-oxygen bond would lead to an alcohol, then an aldehyde, then a carboxylic acid (discussed later), and, finally, carbon dioxide:

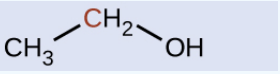
What are the oxidation numbers for the carbon atoms in the molecules shown here?

Solution

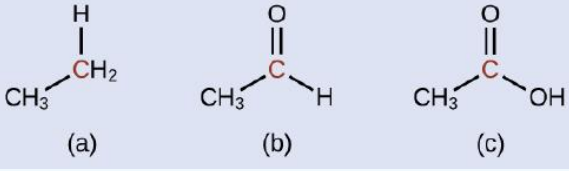
In this example, we can calculate the oxidation number (review the chapter on oxidation-reduction reactions if necessary) for the carbon atom in each case (note how this would become difficult for larger molecules with additional carbon atoms and hydrogen atoms, which is why organic chemists use the definition dealing with replacing C–H bonds with C–O bonds described). For CH_4, the carbon atom carries a –4 oxidation number (the hydrogen atoms are assigned oxidation numbers of +1 and the carbon atom balances that by having an oxidation number of –4). For the alcohol (in this case, methanol), the carbon atom has an oxidation number of –2 (the oxygen atom is assigned –2, the four hydrogen atoms each are assigned +1, and the carbon atom balances the sum by having an oxidation number of –2; note that compared to the carbon atom in CH_4, this carbon atom has lost two electrons so it was oxidized); for the aldehyde, the carbon atom's oxidation number is 0 (–2 for the oxygen atom and +1 for each hydrogen atom already balances to 0, so the oxidation number for the carbon atom is 0); for the carboxylic acid, the carbon atom's oxidation number is +2 (two oxygen atoms each at –2 and two hydrogen atoms at +1); and for carbon dioxide, the carbon atom's oxidation number is +4 (here, the carbon atom needs to balance the –4 sum from the two oxygen atoms).

Exercise 8.4.1

Indicate whether the marked carbon atoms in the three molecules here are oxidized or reduced relative to the marked carbon atom in ethanol:



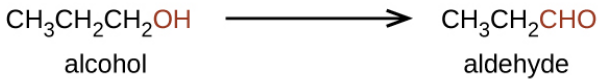
There is no need to calculate oxidation states in this case; instead, just compare the types of atoms bonded to the marked carbon atoms:



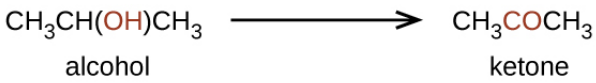
Answer

(a) reduced (bond to oxygen atom replaced by bond to hydrogen atom); (b) oxidized (one bond to hydrogen atom replaced by one bond to oxygen atom); (c) oxidized (2 bonds to hydrogen atoms have been replaced by bonds to an oxygen atom)

Aldehydes are commonly prepared by the oxidation of alcohols whose –OH functional group is located on the carbon atom at the end of the chain of carbon atoms in the alcohol:



Alcohols that have their –OH groups in the middle of the chain are necessary to synthesize a ketone, which requires the carbonyl group to be bonded to two other carbon atoms:



An alcohol with its –OH group bonded to a carbon atom that is bonded to no or one other carbon atom will form an aldehyde. An alcohol with its –OH group attached to two other carbon atoms will form a ketone. If three carbons are attached to the carbon bonded to the –OH, the molecule will not have a C–H bond to be replaced, so it will not be susceptible to oxidation.

Formaldehyde, an aldehyde with the formula HCHO, is a colorless gas with a pungent and irritating odor. It is sold in an aqueous solution called formalin, which contains about 37% formaldehyde by weight. Formaldehyde causes coagulation of proteins, so it kills bacteria (and any other living organism) and stops many of the biological processes that cause tissue to decay. Thus, formaldehyde is used for preserving tissue specimens and embalming bodies. It is also used to sterilize soil or other materials. Formaldehyde is used in the manufacture of Bakelite, a hard plastic having high chemical and electrical resistance.

Dimethyl ketone, CH_3COCH_3, commonly called acetone, is the simplest ketone. It is made commercially by fermenting corn or molasses, or by oxidation of 2-propanol. Acetone is a colorless liquid. Among its many uses are as a solvent for lacquer (including fingernail polish), cellulose acetate, cellulose nitrate, acetylene, plastics, and varnishes; as a paint and varnish remover; and as a solvent in the manufacture of pharmaceuticals and chemicals.

Carboxylic Acids and Esters

The odor of vinegar is caused by the presence of acetic acid, a carboxylic acid, in the vinegar. The odor of ripe bananas and many other fruits is due to the presence of esters, compounds that can be prepared by the reaction of a carboxylic acid with an alcohol. Because esters do not have hydrogen bonds between molecules, they have lower vapor pressures than the alcohols and carboxylic acids from which they are derived (see Figure 8.4.2).

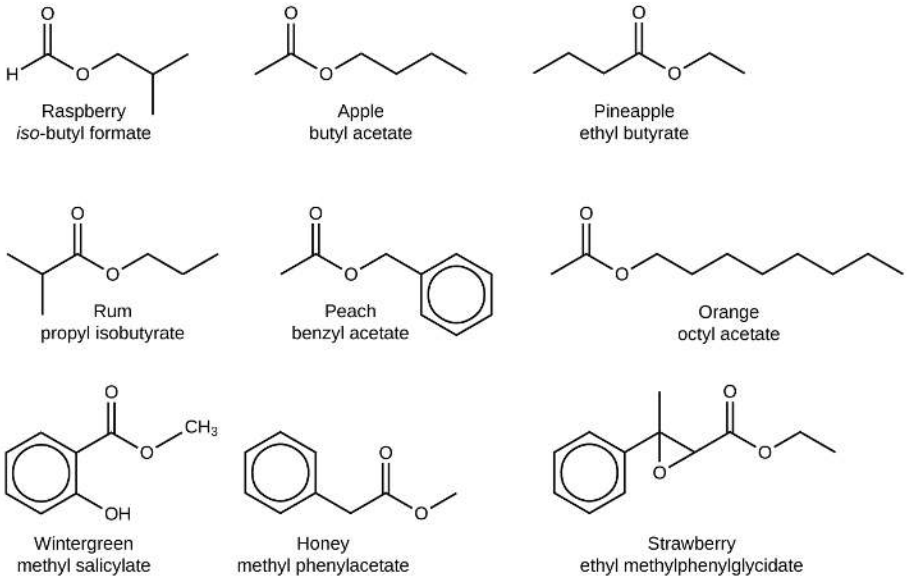
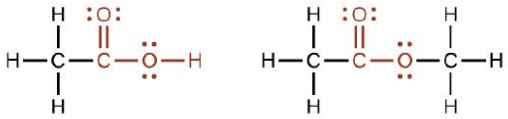


Figure 8.4.2: Esters are responsible for the odors associated with various plants and their fruits.

Both carboxylic acids and esters contain a carbonyl group with a second oxygen atom bonded to the carbon atom in the carbonyl group by a single bond. In a carboxylic acid, the second oxygen atom also bonds to a hydrogen atom. In an ester, the second

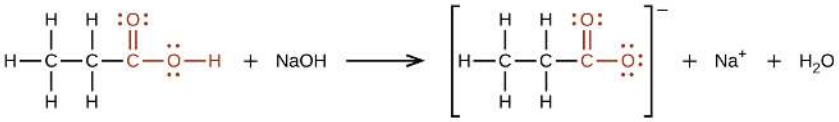
oxygen atom bonds to another carbon atom. The names for carboxylic acids and esters include prefixes that denote the lengths of the carbon chains in the molecules and are derived following nomenclature rules similar to those for inorganic acids and salts (see these examples):



ethanoic acid (acetic acid) methyl ethanoate (methyl acetate)

The functional groups for an acid and for an ester are shown in red in these formulas.

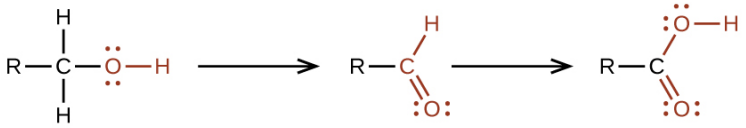
The hydrogen atom in the functional group of a carboxylic acid will react with a base to form an ionic salt:



propionic acid propionate ion

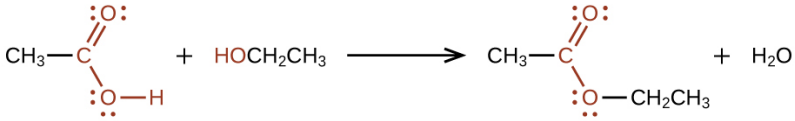
Carboxylic acids are weak acids (see the chapter on acids and bases), meaning they are not 100% ionized in water. Generally only about 1% of the molecules of a carboxylic acid dissolved in water are ionized at any given time. The remaining molecules are undissociated in solution.

We prepare carboxylic acids by the oxidation of aldehydes or alcohols whose –OH functional group is located on the carbon atom at the end of the chain of carbon atoms in the alcohol:



alcohol aldehyde carboxylic acid

Esters are produced by the reaction of acids with alcohols. For example, the ester ethyl acetate, $CH_3CO_2CH_2CH_3$, is formed when acetic acid reacts with ethanol:



acetic acid ethanol ethyl acetate

The simplest carboxylic acid is formic acid, HCO_2H, known since 1670. Its name comes from the Latin word *formicus*, which means “ant”; it was first isolated by the distillation of red ants. It is partially responsible for the pain and irritation of ant and wasp stings, and is responsible for a characteristic odor of ants that can be sometimes detected in their nests.

Acetic acid, CH_3CO_2H, constitutes 3–6% vinegar. Cider vinegar is produced by allowing apple juice to ferment without oxygen present. Yeast cells present in the juice carry out the fermentation reactions. The fermentation reactions change the sugar present in the juice to ethanol, then to acetic acid. Pure acetic acid has a penetrating odor and produces painful burns. It is an excellent solvent for many organic and some inorganic compounds, and it is essential in the production of cellulose acetate, a component of many synthetic fibers such as rayon.

The distinctive and attractive odors and flavors of many flowers, perfumes, and ripe fruits are due to the presence of one or more esters (Figure 8.4.3). Among the most important of the natural esters are fats (such as lard, tallow, and butter) and oils (such as linseed, cottonseed, and olive oils), which are esters of the trihydroxyl alcohol glycerine, $C_3H_5(OH)_3$, with large carboxylic acids, such as palmitic acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CO_2H$, stearic acid, $CH_3(CH_2)_{16}CO_2H$, and oleic acid, Oleic acid is an unsaturated acid; it contains a double bond. Palmitic and stearic acids are saturated acids that contain no double or triple bonds.



Figure 8.4.3: Over 350 different volatile molecules (many members of the ester family) have been identified in strawberries. (credit: Rebecca Siegel)

This page titled 8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **20.3: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

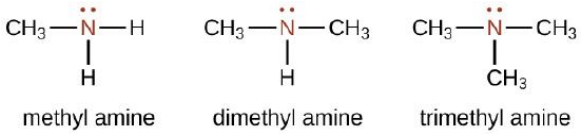
8.5: Amines and Amides

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the structure and properties of an amine
- Describe the structure and properties of an amide

Amines are molecules that contain carbon-nitrogen bonds. The nitrogen atom in an amine has a lone pair of electrons and three bonds to other atoms, either carbon or hydrogen. Various nomenclatures are used to derive names for amines, but all involve the class-identifying suffix *–ine* as illustrated here for a few simple examples:



methyl amine dimethyl amine trimethyl amine

In some amines, the nitrogen atom replaces a carbon atom in an aromatic hydrocarbon. Pyridine (Figure 8.5.1) is one such heterocyclic amine. A heterocyclic compound contains atoms of two or more different elements in its ring structure.

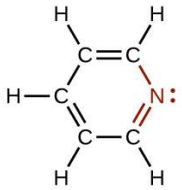


Figure 8.5.1: The illustration shows one of the resonance structures of pyridine.

How Sciences Interconnect: DNA in Forensics and Paternity

The genetic material for all living things is a polymer of four different molecules, which are themselves a combination of three subunits. The genetic information, the code for developing an organism, is contained in the specific sequence of the four molecules, similar to the way the letters of the alphabet can be sequenced to form words that convey information. The information in a DNA sequence is used to form two other types of polymers, one of which are proteins. The proteins interact to form a specific type of organism with individual characteristics.

A genetic molecule is called DNA, which stands for deoxyribonucleic acid. The four molecules that make up DNA are called nucleotides. Each nucleotide consists of a single- or double-ringed molecule containing nitrogen, carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen called a nitrogenous base. Each base is bonded to a five-carbon sugar called deoxyribose. The sugar is in turn bonded to a phosphate group PO_4^{3-})Figure 8.5.2).

It probably makes sense that the sequence of nucleotides in the DNA of a cat differs from those of a dog. But it is also true that the sequences of the DNA in the cells of two individual pugs differ. Likewise, the sequences of DNA in you and a sibling differ (unless your sibling is an identical twin), as do those between you and an unrelated individual. However, the DNA sequences of two related individuals are more similar than the sequences of two unrelated individuals, and these similarities in sequence can be observed in various ways. This is the principle behind DNA fingerprinting, which is a method used to determine whether two DNA samples came from related (or the same) individuals or unrelated individuals.

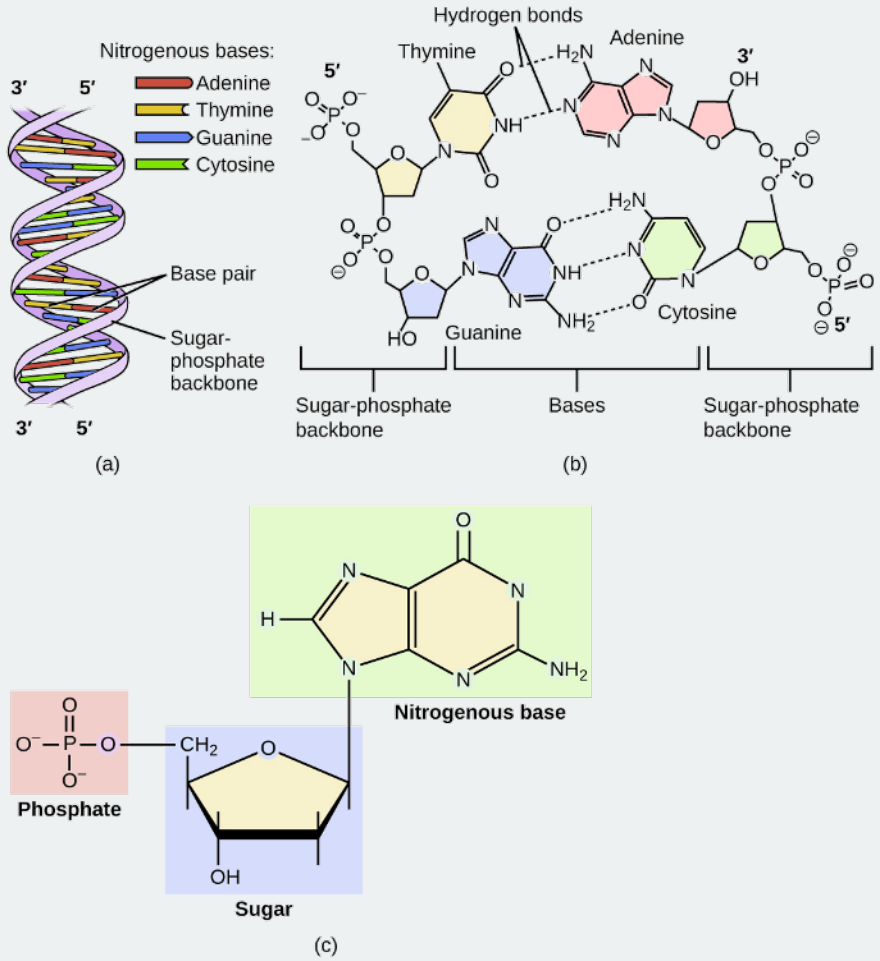


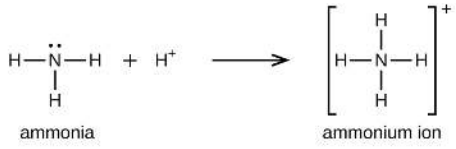
Figure 8.5.2: DNA is an organic molecule and the genetic material for all living organisms. (a) DNA is a double helix consisting of two single DNA strands hydrogen bonded together at each nitrogenous base. (b) This detail shows the hydrogen bonding (dotted lines) between nitrogenous bases on each DNA strand and the way in which each nucleotide is joined to the next, forming a backbone of sugars and phosphate groups along each strand. (c) This detail shows the structure of one of the four nucleotides that makes up the DNA polymer. Each nucleotide consists of a nitrogenous base (a double-ring molecule, in this case), a five-carbon sugar (deoxyribose), and a phosphate group.

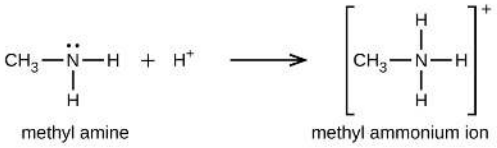
Using similarities in sequences, technicians can determine whether a man is the father of a child (the identity of the mother is rarely in doubt, except in the case of an adopted child and a potential birth mother). Likewise, forensic geneticists can determine whether a crime scene sample of human tissue, such as blood or skin cells, contains DNA that matches exactly the DNA of a suspect.

Link to Learning

Watch this video animation of how DNA is packaged for a visual lesson in its structure.

Like ammonia, amines are weak bases due to the lone pair of electrons on their nitrogen atoms:





The basicity of an amine's nitrogen atom plays an important role in much of the compound's chemistry. Amine functional groups are found in a wide variety of compounds, including natural and synthetic dyes, polymers, vitamins, and medications such as penicillin and codeine. They are also found in many molecules essential to life, such as amino acids, hormones, neurotransmitters, and DNA.

How Sciences Interconnect: Addictive Alkaloids

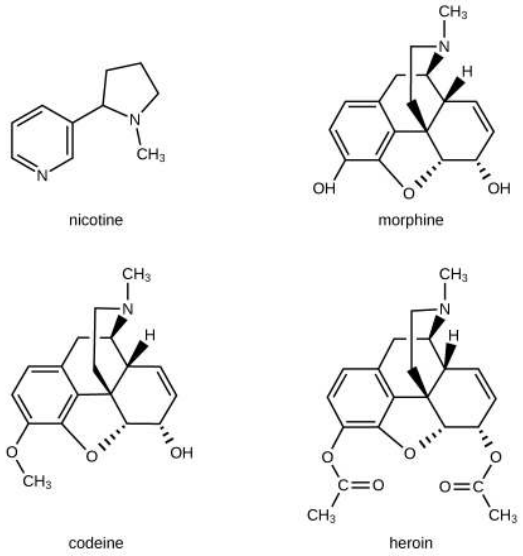
Since ancient times, plants have been used for medicinal purposes. One class of substances, called *alkaloids*, found in many of these plants has been isolated and found to contain cyclic molecules with an amine functional group. These amines are bases. They can react with H_3O^+ in a dilute acid to form an ammonium salt, and this property is used to extract them from the plant:

R3N+H3O++Cl−⟶[R3NH+]Cl−+H2OR3N+H3O++Cl−⟶[R3NH+]Cl−+H2O

The name alkaloid means "like an alkali." Thus, an alkaloid reacts with acid. The free compound can be recovered after extraction by reaction with a base:

R3NH+]Cl−+OH−⟶R3N+H2O+Cl−[R3NH+]Cl−+OH−⟶R3N+H2O+Cl−

The structures of many naturally occurring alkaloids have profound physiological and psychotropic effects in humans. Examples of these drugs include nicotine, morphine, codeine, and heroin. The plant produces these substances, collectively called secondary plant compounds, as chemical defenses against the numerous pests that attempt to feed on the plant:



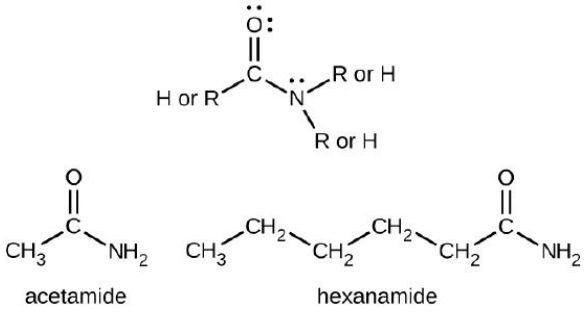
In these diagrams, as is common in representing structures of large organic compounds, carbon atoms in the rings and the hydrogen atoms bonded to them have been omitted for clarity. The solid wedges indicate bonds that extend out of the page. The dashed wedges indicate bonds that extend into the page. Notice that small changes to a part of the molecule change the properties of morphine, codeine, and heroin. Morphine, a strong narcotic used to relieve pain, contains two hydroxyl functional groups, located at the bottom of the molecule in this structural formula. Changing one of these hydroxyl groups to a methyl ether group forms

codeine, a less potent drug used as a local anesthetic. If both hydroxyl groups are converted to esters of acetic acid, the powerfully addictive drug heroin results (Figure 8.5.3).

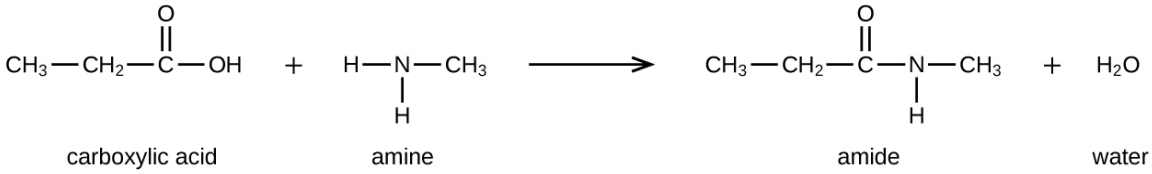


Figure 8.5.3: Poppies can be used in the production of opium, a plant latex that contains morphine from which other opiates, such as heroin, can be synthesized. (credit: Karen Roe)

Amides are molecules that contain nitrogen atoms connected to the carbon atom of a carbonyl group. Like amines, various nomenclature rules may be used to name amides, but all include use of the class-specific suffix *-amide*:



Amides can be produced when carboxylic acids react with amines or ammonia in a process called amidation. A water molecule is eliminated from the reaction, and the amide is formed from the remaining pieces of the carboxylic acid and the amine (note the similarity to formation of an ester from a carboxylic acid and an alcohol discussed in the previous section):



The reaction between amines and carboxylic acids to form amides is biologically important. It is through this reaction that amino acids (molecules containing both amine and carboxylic acid substituents) link together in a polymer to form proteins.

How Sciences Interconnect: Proteins and Enzymes

Proteins are large biological molecules made up of long chains of smaller molecules called amino acids. Organisms rely on proteins for a variety of functions—proteins transport molecules across cell membranes, replicate DNA, and catalyze metabolic reactions, to name only a few of their functions. The properties of proteins are functions of the combination of amino acids that compose them and can vary greatly. Interactions between amino acid sequences in the chains of proteins result in the folding of the chain into specific, three-dimensional structures that determine the protein's activity.

Amino acids are organic molecules that contain an amine functional group ($–NH_2$), a carboxylic acid functional group (–COOH), and a side chain (that is specific to each individual amino acid). Most living things build proteins from the same 20 different amino acids. Amino acids connect by the formation of a peptide bond, which is a covalent bond formed between two amino acids when the carboxylic acid group of one amino acid reacts with the amine group of the other amino acid. The formation of the bond results in the production of a molecule of water (in general, reactions that result in the production of

water when two other molecules combine are referred to as condensation reactions). The resulting bond—between the carbonyl group carbon atom and the amine nitrogen atom is called a peptide link or peptide bond. Since each of the original amino acids has an unreacted group (one has an unreacted amine and the other an unreacted carboxylic acid), more peptide bonds can form to other amino acids, extending the structure. (Figure 8.5.4) A chain of connected amino acids is called a polypeptide. Proteins contain at least one long polypeptide chain.

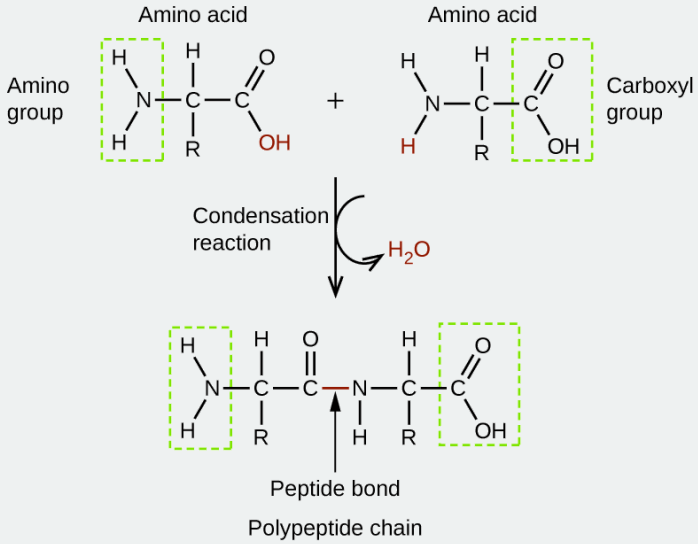


Figure 8.5.4: This condensation reaction forms a dipeptide from two amino acids and leads to the formation of water.

Enzymes are large biological molecules, mostly composed of proteins, which are responsible for the thousands of metabolic processes that occur in living organisms. Enzymes are highly specific catalysts; they speed up the rates of certain reactions. Enzymes function by lowering the activation energy of the reaction they are catalyzing, which can dramatically increase the rate of the reaction. Most reactions catalyzed by enzymes have rates that are millions of times faster than the noncatalyzed version. Like all catalysts, enzymes are not consumed during the reactions that they catalyze. Enzymes do differ from other catalysts in how specific they are for their substrates (the molecules that an enzyme will convert into a different product). Each enzyme is only capable of speeding up one or a few very specific reactions or types of reactions. Since the function of enzymes is so specific, the lack or malfunctioning of an enzyme can lead to serious health consequences. One disease that is the result of an enzyme malfunction is phenylketonuria. In this disease, the enzyme that catalyzes the first step in the degradation of the amino acid phenylalanine is not functional (Figure 8.5.5). Untreated, this can lead to an accumulation of phenylalanine, which can lead to intellectual disabilities.

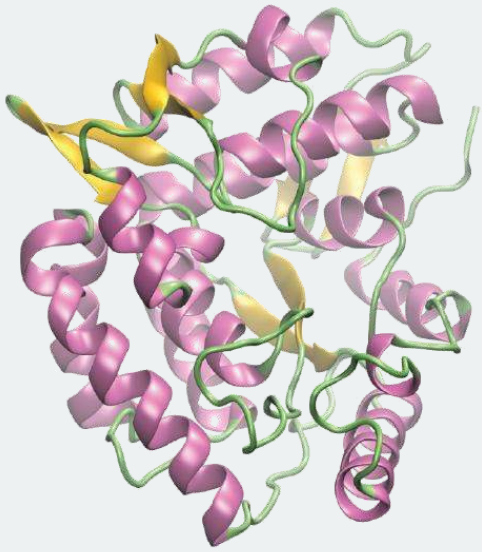


Figure 8.5.5: A computer rendering shows the three-dimensional structure of the enzyme phenylalanine hydroxylase. In the disease phenylketonuria, a defect in the shape of phenylalanine hydroxylase causes it to lose its function in breaking down phenylalanine.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Kevlar

Kevlar (Figure 8.5.6) is a synthetic polymer made from two monomers 1,4-phenylene-diamine and terephthaloyl chloride (Kevlar is a registered trademark of DuPont). The material was developed by Susan Kwolek while she worked to find a replacement for steel in tires. Kwolek's work involved synthesizing polyamides and dissolving them in solvents, then spinning the resulting solution into fibers. One of her solutions proved to be quite different in initial appearance and structure. And once spun, the resulting fibers were particularly strong. From this initial discovery, Kevlar was created. The material has a high tensile strength-to-weight ratio (it is about 5 times stronger than an equal weight of steel), making it useful for many applications from bicycle tires to sails to body armor.

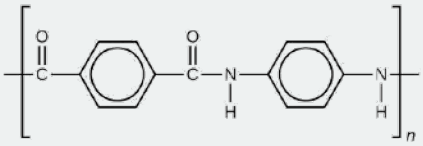


Figure 8.5.6: This illustration shows the formula for polymeric Kevlar.

The material owes much of its strength to hydrogen bonds between polymer chains (refer back to the chapter on intermolecular interactions). These bonds form between the carbonyl group oxygen atom (which has a partial negative charge due to oxygen's electronegativity) on one monomer and the partially positively charged hydrogen atom in the N–H bond of an adjacent monomer in the polymer structure (see dashed lines in Figure 8.5.7). There is additional strength derived from the interaction between the unhybridized *p* orbitals in the six-membered rings, called aromatic stacking.

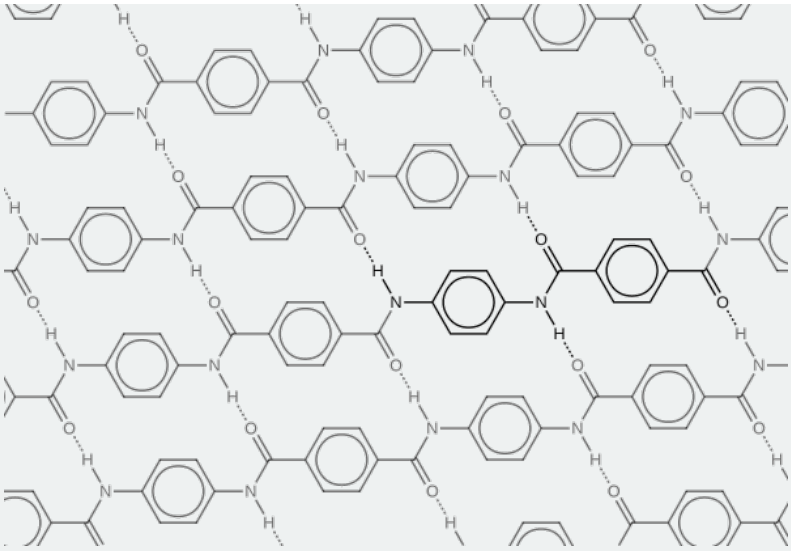


Figure 8.5.7: The diagram shows the polymer structure of Kevlar, with hydrogen bonds between polymer chains represented by dotted lines.

Kevlar may be best known as a component of body armor, combat helmets, and face masks. Since the 1980s, the US military has used Kevlar as a component of the PASGT (personal armor system for ground troops) helmet and vest. Kevlar is also used to protect armored fighting vehicles and aircraft carriers. Civilian applications include protective gear for emergency service personnel such as body armor for police officers and heat-resistant clothing for fire fighters. Kevlar based clothing is considerably lighter and thinner than equivalent gear made from other materials (Figure 8.5.8). Beyond Kevlar, Susan Kwolek was instrumental in the development of Nomex, a fireproof material, and was also involved in the creation of Lycra. She became just the fourth woman inducted into the National Inventors Hall of Fame, and received a number of other awards for her significant contributions to science and society.

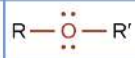
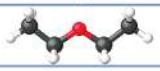
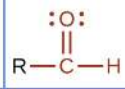
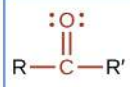
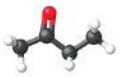
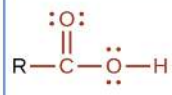
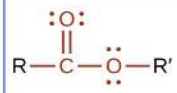
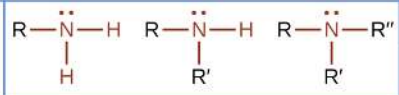
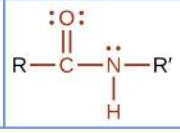


(a) (b) (c)

Figure 8.5.8: (a) These soldiers are sorting through pieces of a Kevlar helmet that helped absorb a grenade blast. Kevlar is also used to make (b) canoes and (c) marine mooring lines. (credit a: modification of work by “Cla68”/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by “OakleyOriginals”/Flickr; credit c: modification of work by Casey H. Kyhl)

In addition to its better-known uses, Kevlar is also often used in cryogenics for its very low thermal conductivity (along with its high strength). Kevlar maintains its high strength when cooled to the temperature of liquid nitrogen (–196 °C).

The table here summarizes the structures discussed in this chapter:

Compound Name	Structure of Compound and Functional Group (red)	Example	
		Formula	Name
alkene		C_2H_4 	ethene
alkyne		C_2H_2 	ethyne
alcohol		CH_3CH_2OH 	ethanol
ether		$(C_2H_5)_2O$ 	diethyl ether
aldehyde		CH_3CHO 	ethanal
ketone		$CH_3COCH_2CH_3$ 	methyl ethyl ketone
carboxylic acid		CH_3COOH 	acetic acid
ester		$CH_3CO_2CH_2CH_3$ 	ethyl acetate
amine		$C_2H_5NH_2$ 	ethylamine
amine			
amide		CH_3CONH_2 	acetamide

This page titled 8.5: Amines and Amides is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **20.4: Amines and Amides** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

8.6: Key Terms

addition reaction | reaction in which a double carbon-carbon bond forms a single carbon-carbon bond by the addition of a reactant. Typical reaction for an alkene.

alcohol | organic compound with a hydroxyl group (–OH) bonded to a carbon atom

aldehyde | organic compound containing a carbonyl group bonded to two hydrogen atoms or a hydrogen atom and a carbon substituent

alkane | molecule consisting of only carbon and hydrogen atoms connected by single (σ) bonds

alkene | molecule consisting of carbon and hydrogen containing at least one carbon-carbon double bond

alkyl group | substituent, consisting of an alkane missing one hydrogen atom, attached to a larger structure

alkyne | molecule consisting of carbon and hydrogen containing at least one carbon-carbon triple bond

amide | organic molecule that features a nitrogen atom connected to the carbon atom in a carbonyl group

amine | organic molecule in which a nitrogen atom is bonded to one or more alkyl group

aromatic hydrocarbon | cyclic molecule consisting of carbon and hydrogen with delocalized alternating carbon-carbon single and double bonds, resulting in enhanced stability

carbonyl group | carbon atom double bonded to an oxygen atom

carboxylic acid | organic compound containing a carbonyl group with an attached hydroxyl group

ester | organic compound containing a carbonyl group with an attached oxygen atom that is bonded to a carbon substituent

ether | organic compound with an oxygen atom that is bonded to two carbon atoms

functional group | part of an organic molecule that imparts a specific chemical reactivity to the molecule

ketone | organic compound containing a carbonyl group with two carbon substituents attached to it

organic compound | natural or synthetic compound that contains carbon

saturated hydrocarbon | molecule containing carbon and hydrogen that has only single bonds between carbon atoms

skeletal structure | shorthand method of drawing organic molecules in which carbon atoms are represented by the ends of lines and bends in between lines, and hydrogen atoms attached to the carbon atoms are not shown (but are understood to be present by the context of the structure)

substituent | branch or functional group that replaces hydrogen atoms in a larger hydrocarbon chain

substitution reaction | reaction in which one atom replaces another in a molecule

8.6: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.5: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.7: Summary

Strong, stable bonds between carbon atoms produce complex molecules containing chains, branches, and rings. The chemistry of these compounds is called organic chemistry. Hydrocarbons are organic compounds composed of only carbon and hydrogen. The alkanes are saturated hydrocarbons—that is, hydrocarbons that contain only single bonds. Alkenes contain one or more carbon-carbon double bonds. Alkynes contain one or more carbon-carbon triple bonds. Aromatic hydrocarbons contain ring structures with delocalized π electron systems.

Many organic compounds that are not hydrocarbons can be thought of as derivatives of hydrocarbons. A hydrocarbon derivative can be formed by replacing one or more hydrogen atoms of a hydrocarbon by a functional group, which contains at least one atom of an element other than carbon or hydrogen. The properties of hydrocarbon derivatives are determined largely by the functional group. The –OH group is the functional group of an alcohol. The –R–O–R– group is the functional group of an ether.

Functional groups related to the carbonyl group include the –CHO group of an aldehyde, the –CO– group of a ketone, the $–CO_2H$ group of a carboxylic acid, and the $–CO_2R$ group of an ester. The carbonyl group, a carbon-oxygen double bond, is the key structure in these classes of organic molecules: Aldehydes contain at least one hydrogen atom attached to the carbonyl carbon atom, ketones contain two carbon groups attached to the carbonyl carbon atom, carboxylic acids contain a hydroxyl group attached to the carbonyl carbon atom, and esters contain an oxygen atom attached to another carbon group connected to the carbonyl carbon atom. All of these compounds contain oxidized carbon atoms relative to the carbon atom of an alcohol group.

The addition of nitrogen into an organic framework leads to two families of molecules. Compounds containing a nitrogen atom bonded in a hydrocarbon framework are classified as amines. Compounds that have a nitrogen atom bonded to one side of a carbonyl group are classified as amides. Amines are a basic functional group. Amines and carboxylic acids can combine in a condensation reaction to form amides.

8.7: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **20.6: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.8: Exercises

1.

Write the chemical formula and Lewis structure of the following, each of which contains five carbon atoms:

a. an alkane
b. an alkene
c. an alkyne

2.

What is the difference between the hybridization of carbon atoms' valence orbitals in saturated and unsaturated hydrocarbons?

3.

On a microscopic level, how does the reaction of bromine with a saturated hydrocarbon differ from its reaction with an unsaturated hydrocarbon? How are they similar?

4.

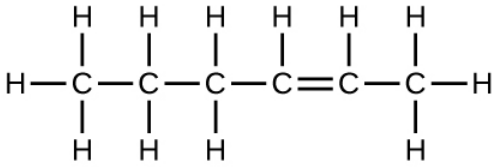
On a microscopic level, how does the reaction of bromine with an alkene differ from its reaction with an alkyne? How are they similar?

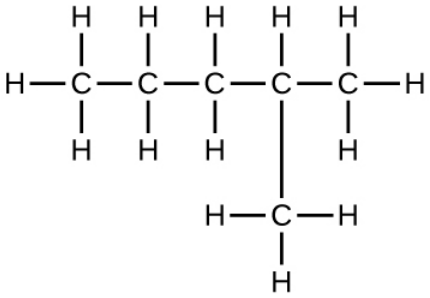
5.

Explain why unbranched alkenes can form geometric isomers while unbranched alkanes cannot. Does this explanation involve the macroscopic domain or the microscopic domain?

6.

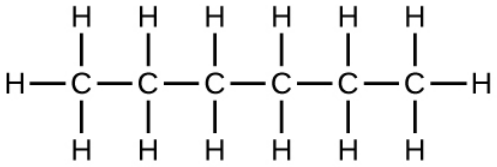
Explain why these two molecules are not isomers:

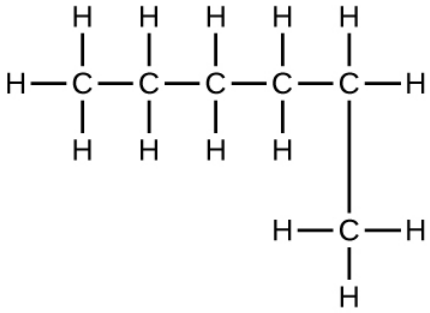




7.

Explain why these two molecules are not isomers:





8.

How does the carbon-atom hybridization change when polyethylene is prepared from ethylene?

9.

Write the Lewis structure and molecular formula for each of the following hydrocarbons:

a. (f) 4-methyl-2-pentyne

10.

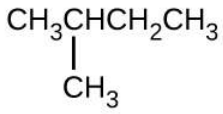
Write the chemical formula, condensed formula, and Lewis structure for each of the following hydrocarbons:

a. (f) 3,4-dimethyl-1-pentyne

11.

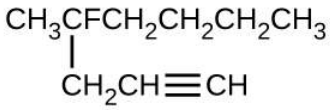
Give the complete IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

a. (c)

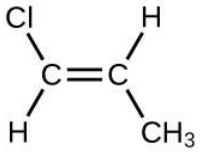


(d)

(e)



(f)

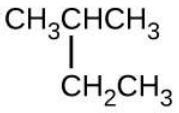


(g)

12.

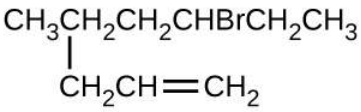
Give the complete IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

a. (c)



(d)

(e)



(f)

13.

Butane is used as a fuel in disposable lighters. Write the Lewis structure for each isomer of butane.

14.

Write Lewis structures and name the five structural isomers of hexane.

15.

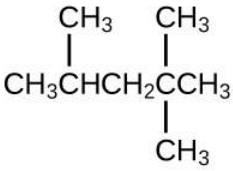
Write Lewis structures for the *cis–trans* isomers of

16.

Write structures for the three isomers of the aromatic hydrocarbon xylene, $C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$.

17.

Isooctane is the common name of the isomer of C_8H_{18} used as the standard of 100 for the gasoline octane rating:



a. What is the IUPAC name for the compound?
b. Name the other isomers that contain a five-carbon chain with three methyl substituents.

18.

Write Lewis structures and IUPAC names for the alkyne isomers of C_4H_6.

19.

Write Lewis structures and IUPAC names for all isomers of C_4H_9Cl.

20.

Name and write the structures of all isomers of the propyl and butyl alkyl groups.

21.

Write the structures for all the isomers of the $–C_5H_{11}$ alkyl group.

22.

Write Lewis structures and describe the molecular geometry at each carbon atom in the following compounds:

a. *cis*-3-hexene
b. *cis*-1-chloro-2-bromoethene
c. 2-pentyne
d. *trans*-6-ethyl-7-methyl-2-octene

23.

Benzene is one of the compounds used as an octane enhancer in unleaded gasoline. It is manufactured by the catalytic conversion of acetylene to benzene:

Draw Lewis structures for these compounds, with resonance structures as appropriate, and determine the hybridization of the carbon atoms in each.

24.

Teflon is prepared by the polymerization of tetrafluoroethylene. Write the equation that describes the polymerization using Lewis symbols.

25.

Write two complete, balanced equations for each of the following reactions, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures.

a. 1 mol of 1-butyne reacts with 2 mol of iodine.
b. Pentane is burned in air.

26.

Write two complete, balanced equations for each of the following reactions, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures.

a. 2-butene reacts with chlorine.
b. benzene burns in air.

27.

What mass of 2-bromopropane could be prepared from 25.5 g of propene? Assume a 100% yield of product.

28.

Acetylene is a very weak acid; however, it will react with moist silver(I) oxide and form water and a compound composed of silver and carbon. Addition of a solution of HCl to a 0.2352-g sample of the compound of silver and carbon produced acetylene and 0.2822 g of AgCl.

a. What is the empirical formula of the compound of silver and carbon?
b. The production of acetylene on addition of HCl to the compound of silver and carbon suggests that the carbon is present as the acetylide ion, . Write the formula of the compound showing the acetylide ion.

29.

Ethylene can be produced by the pyrolysis of ethane:

How many kilograms of ethylene is produced by the pyrolysis of 1.000 10^3 kg of ethane, assuming a 100.0% yield?

30.

Why do the compounds hexane, hexanol, and hexene have such similar names?

31.

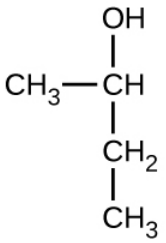
Write condensed formulas and provide IUPAC names for the following compounds:

a. ethyl alcohol (in beverages)
b. methyl alcohol (used as a solvent, for example, in shellac)
c. ethylene glycol (antifreeze)
d. isopropyl alcohol (used in rubbing alcohol)
e. glycerine

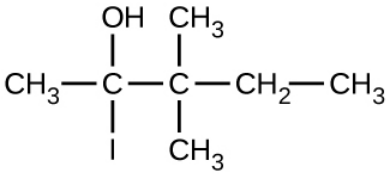
32.

Give the complete IUPAC name for each of the following compounds:

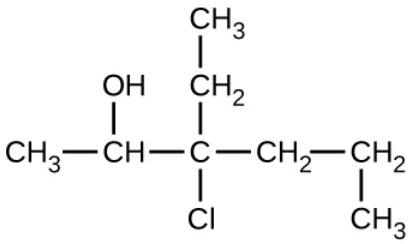
(a)



(b)



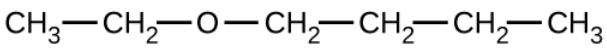
(c)



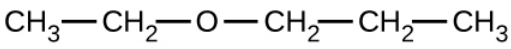
33.

Give the complete IUPAC name and the common name for each of the following compounds:

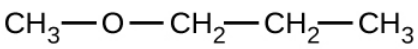
(a)



(b)



(c)



34.

Write the condensed structures of both isomers with the formula C_2H_6O. Label the functional group of each isomer.

35.

Write the condensed structures of all isomers with the formula $C_2H_6O_2$. Label the functional group (or groups) of each isomer.

36.

Draw the condensed formulas for each of the following compounds:

a. dipropyl ether
b. 2,2-dimethyl-3-hexanol
c. 2-ethoxybutane

37.

MTBE, Methyl *tert*-butyl ether, $CH_3OC(CH_3)_3$, is used as an oxygen source in oxygenated gasolines. MTBE is manufactured by reacting 2-methylpropene with methanol.

a. Using Lewis structures, write the chemical equation representing the reaction.
b. What volume of methanol, density 0.7915 g/mL, is required to produce exactly 1000 kg of MTBE, assuming a 100% yield?

38.

Write two complete balanced equations for each of the following reactions, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures.

a. propanol is converted to dipropyl ether
b. propene is treated with water in dilute acid.

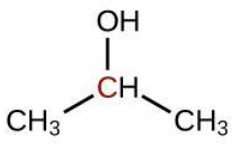
39.

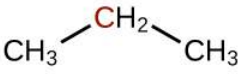
Write two complete balanced equations for each of the following reactions, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures.

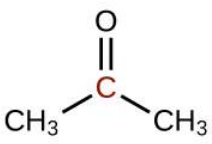
a. 2-butene is treated with water in dilute acid
b. ethanol is dehydrated to yield ethene

40.

Order the following molecules from least to most oxidized, based on the marked carbon atom:


(a)

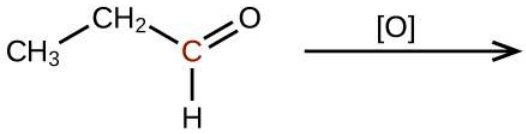

(b)


(c)

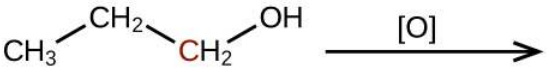
41.

Predict the products of oxidizing the molecules shown in this problem. In each case, identify the product that will result from the minimal increase in oxidation state for the highlighted carbon atom:

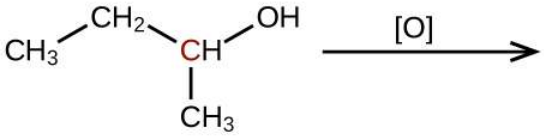
(a)



(b)



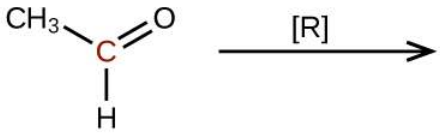
(c)



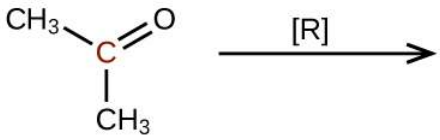
42.

Predict the products of reducing the following molecules. In each case, identify the product that will result from the minimal decrease in oxidation state for the highlighted carbon atom:

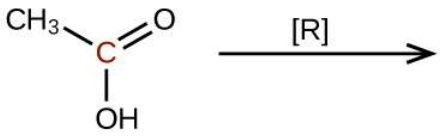
(a)



(b)



(c)



43.

Explain why it is not possible to prepare a ketone that contains only two carbon atoms.

44.

How does hybridization of the substituted carbon atom change when an alcohol is converted into an aldehyde? An aldehyde to a carboxylic acid?

45.

Fatty acids are carboxylic acids that have long hydrocarbon chains attached to a carboxylate group. How does a saturated fatty acid differ from an unsaturated fatty acid? How are they similar?

46.

Write a condensed structural formula, such as CH_3CH_3, and describe the molecular geometry at each carbon atom.

a. (f) formaldehyde

47.

Write a condensed structural formula, such as CH_3CH_3, and describe the molecular geometry at each carbon atom.

a. 2-propanol
b. acetone
c. dimethyl ether
d. acetic acid
e. 3-methyl-1-hexene

48.

The foul odor of rancid butter is caused by butyric acid, $CH_3CH_2CH_2CO_2H$.

a. Draw the Lewis structure and determine the oxidation number and hybridization for each carbon atom in the molecule.
b. The esters formed from butyric acid are pleasant-smelling compounds found in fruits and used in perfumes. Draw the Lewis structure for the ester formed from the reaction of butyric acid with 2-propanol.

49.

Write the two-resonance structures for the acetate ion.

50.

Write two complete, balanced equations for each of the following reactions, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures:

a. ethanol reacts with propionic acid
b. benzoic acid, $C_6H_5CO_2H$, is added to a solution of sodium hydroxide

51.

Write two complete balanced equations for each of the following reactions, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures.

a. 1-butanol reacts with acetic acid
b. propionic acid is poured onto solid calcium carbonate

52.

Yields in organic reactions are sometimes low. What is the percent yield of a process that produces 13.0 g of ethyl acetate from 10.0 g of CH_3CO_2H?

53.

Alcohols A, B, and C all have the composition $C_4H_{10}O$. Molecules of alcohol A contain a branched carbon chain and can be oxidized to an aldehyde; molecules of alcohol B contain a linear carbon chain and can be oxidized to a ketone; and molecules of alcohol C can be oxidized to neither an aldehyde nor a ketone. Write the Lewis structures of these molecules.

54.

Write the Lewis structures of both isomers with the formula C_2H_7N.

55.

What is the molecular structure about the nitrogen atom in trimethyl amine and in the trimethyl ammonium ion, $(CH_3)_3NH^+$? What is the hybridization of the nitrogen atom in trimethyl amine and in the trimethyl ammonium ion?

56.

Write the two resonance structures for the pyridinium ion, $C_5H_5NH^+$.

57.

Draw Lewis structures for pyridine and its conjugate acid, the pyridinium ion, $C_5H_5NH^+$. What are the hybridizations, electron domain geometries, and molecular geometries about the nitrogen atoms in pyridine and in the pyridinium ion?

58.

Write the Lewis structures of all isomers with the formula C_3H_7ON that contain an amide linkage.

59.

Write two complete balanced equations for the following reaction, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures.

Methyl amine is added to a solution of HCl.

60.

Write two complete, balanced equations for each of the following reactions, one using condensed formulas and one using Lewis structures.

Ethylammonium chloride is added to a solution of sodium hydroxide.

61.

Identify any carbon atoms that change hybridization and the change in hybridization during the reactions in Exercise 20.26.

62.

Identify any carbon atoms that change hybridization and the change in hybridization during the reactions in Exercise 20.39.

63.

Identify any carbon atoms that change hybridization and the change in hybridization during the reactions in Exercise 20.51.

This page titled 8.8: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **20.7: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Liquids and Solids

The great distances between atoms and molecules in a gaseous phase, and the corresponding absence of any significant interactions between them, allows for simple descriptions of many physical properties that are the same for all gases, regardless of their chemical identities. As described in the final module of the chapter on gases, this situation changes at high pressures and low temperatures—conditions that permit the atoms and molecules to interact to a much greater extent. In the liquid and solid states, these interactions are of considerable strength and play an important role in determining a number of physical properties that *do* depend on the chemical identity of the substance. In this chapter, the nature of these interactions and their effects on various physical properties of liquid and solid phases will be examined.

9.1: Introduction
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
9.3: Properties of Liquids
9.4: Phase Transitions
9.5: Phase Diagrams
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
9.8: Key Terms
9.9: Key Equations
9.10: Summary
9.11: Exercises

This page titled 10: Liquids and Solids is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.1: Introduction

Leprosy has been a devastating disease throughout much of human history. Aside from the symptoms and complications of the illness, its social stigma led sufferers to be cast out of communities and isolated in colonies; in some regions this practice lasted well into the twentieth century. At that time, the best potential treatment for leprosy was oil from the chaulmoogra tree, but the oil was extremely thick, causing blisters and making usage painful and ineffective. Healthcare professionals seeking a better application contacted Alice Ball, a young chemist at the University of Hawaii, who had focused her masters thesis on a similar plant. Ball initiated a sequence of procedures (repeated acidification and purification to change the characteristics of the oil and isolate the active substances (esters, discussed later in this text). The "Ball Method" as it later came to be called, became the standard treatment for leprosy for decades.



Figure 9.1.1: Solid carbon dioxide (“dry ice”, left) sublimes vigorously when placed in a liquid (right), cooling the liquid and generating a dense mist of water above the cylinder. (credit: modification of work by Paul Flowers)

In the liquid and solid states, atomic and molecular interactions are of considerable strength and play an important role in determining a number of physical properties of the substance. For example, the thickness, or viscosity, of the chaulmoogra oil was due to its intermolecular forces. In this chapter, the nature of these interactions and their effects on various physical properties of liquid and solid phases will be examined.

This page titled 9.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.0: Introduction** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.2: Intermolecular Forces

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the types of intermolecular forces possible between atoms or molecules in condensed phases (dispersion forces, dipole-dipole attractions, and hydrogen bonding)
- Identify the types of intermolecular forces experienced by specific molecules based on their structures
- Explain the relation between the intermolecular forces present within a substance and the temperatures associated with changes in its physical state

As was the case for gaseous substances, the kinetic molecular theory may be used to explain the behavior of solids and liquids. In the following description, the term *particle* will be used to refer to an atom, molecule, or ion. Note that we will use the popular phrase "intermolecular attraction" to refer to attractive forces between the particles of a substance, regardless of whether these particles are molecules, atoms, or ions.

Consider these two aspects of the molecular-level environments in solid, liquid, and gaseous matter:

- Particles in a solid are tightly packed together and often arranged in a regular pattern; in a liquid, they are close together with no regular arrangement; in a gas, they are far apart with no regular arrangement.
- Particles in a solid vibrate about fixed positions and do not generally move in relation to one another; in a liquid, they move past each other but remain in essentially constant contact; in a gas, they move independently of one another except when they collide.

The differences in the properties of a solid, liquid, or gas reflect the strengths of the attractive forces between the atoms, molecules, or ions that make up each phase. The phase in which a substance exists depends on the relative extents of its **intermolecular forces** (IMFs) and the kinetic energies (KE) of its molecules. IMFs are the various forces of attraction that may exist between the atoms and molecules of a substance due to electrostatic phenomena, as will be detailed in this module. These forces serve to hold particles close together, whereas the particles' KE provides the energy required to overcome the attractive forces and thus increase the distance between particles. Figure 9.2.1 illustrates how changes in physical state may be induced by changing the temperature, hence, the average KE, of a given substance.

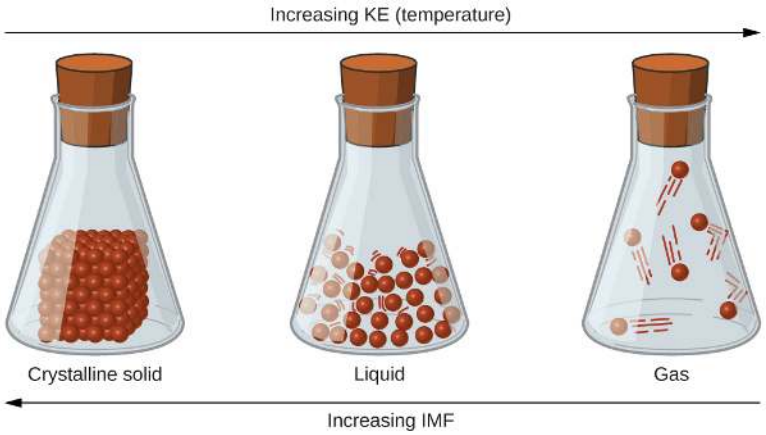


Figure 9.2.1: Transitions between solid, liquid, and gaseous states of a substance occur when conditions of temperature or pressure favor the associated changes in intermolecular forces. (Note: The space between particles in the gas phase is much greater than shown.)

As an example of the processes depicted in this figure, consider a sample of water. When gaseous water is cooled sufficiently, the attractions between H_2O molecules will be capable of holding them together when they come into contact with each other; the gas condenses, forming liquid H_2O. For example, liquid water forms on the outside of a cold glass as the water vapor in the air is cooled by the cold glass, as seen in Figure 9.2.2.



Figure 9.2.2: Condensation forms when water vapor in the air is cooled enough to form liquid water, such as (a) on the outside of a cold beverage glass or (b) in the form of fog. (credit a: modification of work by Jenny Downing; credit b: modification of work by Cory Zanker)

We can also liquefy many gases by compressing them, if the temperature is not too high. The increased pressure brings the molecules of a gas closer together, such that the attractions between the molecules become strong relative to their KE. Consequently, they form liquids. Butane, C_4H_{10}, is the fuel used in disposable lighters and is a gas at standard temperature and pressure. Inside the lighter's fuel compartment, the butane is compressed to a pressure that results in its condensation to the liquid state, as shown in Figure 9.2.3.



Figure 9.2.3: Gaseous butane is compressed within the storage compartment of a disposable lighter, resulting in its condensation to the liquid state. (credit: modification of work by "Sam-Cat"/Flickr)

Finally, if the temperature of a liquid becomes sufficiently low, or the pressure on the liquid becomes sufficiently high, the molecules of the liquid no longer have enough KE to overcome the IMF between them, and a solid forms. A more thorough discussion of these and other changes of state, or phase transitions, is provided in a later module of this chapter.

Link to Learning

Access this interactive simulation on states of matter, phase transitions, and intermolecular forces. This simulation is useful for visualizing concepts introduced throughout this chapter.

Forces between Molecules

Under appropriate conditions, the attractions between all gas molecules will cause them to form liquids or solids. This is due to intermolecular forces, not *intra*molecular forces. *Intra*molecular forces are those *within* the molecule that keep the molecule together, for example, the bonds between the atoms. *Inter*molecular forces are the attractions *between* molecules, which determine many of the physical properties of a substance. Figure 9.2.4: illustrates these different molecular forces. The strengths of these attractive forces vary widely, though usually the IMFs between small molecules are weak compared to the intramolecular forces that bond atoms together within a molecule. For example, to overcome the IMFs in one mole of liquid HCl and convert it into gaseous HCl requires only about 17 kilojoules. However, to break the covalent bonds between the hydrogen and chlorine atoms in one mole of HCl requires about 25 times more energy—430 kilojoules.

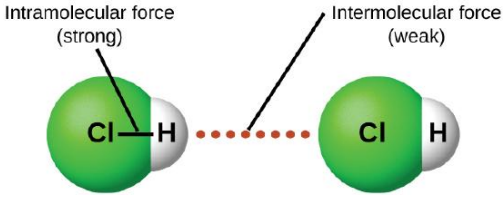


Figure 9.2.4: *Intra*molecular forces keep a molecule intact. *Inter*molecular forces hold multiple molecules together and determine many of a substance's properties.

All of the attractive forces between neutral atoms and molecules are known as van der Waals forces, although they are usually referred to more informally as intermolecular attraction. We will consider the various types of IMFs in the next three sections of this module.

Dispersion Forces

One of the three van der Waals forces is present in all condensed phases, regardless of the nature of the atoms or molecules composing the substance. This attractive force is called the London dispersion force in honor of German-born American physicist Fritz London who, in 1928, first explained it. This force is often referred to as simply the **dispersion force**. Because the electrons of an atom or molecule are in constant motion (or, alternatively, the electron's location is subject to quantum-mechanical variability), at any moment in time, an atom or molecule can develop a temporary, **instantaneous dipole** if its electrons are distributed asymmetrically. The presence of this dipole can, in turn, distort the electrons of a neighboring atom or molecule, producing an **induced dipole**. These two rapidly fluctuating, temporary dipoles thus result in a relatively weak electrostatic attraction between the species—a so-called dispersion force like that illustrated in Figure 9.2.5.

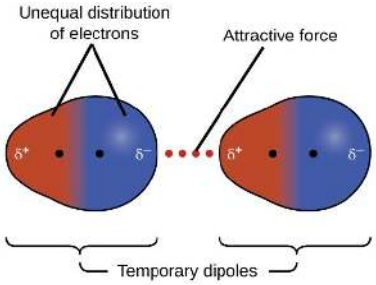


Figure 9.2.5: Dispersion forces result from the formation of temporary dipoles, as illustrated here for two nonpolar diatomic molecules.

Dispersion forces that develop between atoms in different molecules can attract the two molecules to each other. The forces are relatively weak, however, and become significant only when the molecules are very close. Larger and heavier atoms and molecules exhibit stronger dispersion forces than do smaller and lighter atoms and molecules. F_2 and Cl_2 are gases at room temperature (reflecting weaker attractive forces); Br_2 is a liquid, and I_2 is a solid (reflecting stronger attractive forces). Trends in observed melting and boiling points for the halogens clearly demonstrate this effect, as seen in Table 9.2.1.

Table 9.2.1: Melting and Boiling Points of the Halogens

Halogen	Molar Mass	Atomic Radius	Melting Point	Boiling Point
fluorine, F_2	38 g/mol	72 pm	53 K	85 K
chlorine, Cl_2	71 g/mol	99 pm	172 K	238 K
bromine, Br_2	160 g/mol	114 pm	266 K	332 K
iodine, I_2	254 g/mol	133 pm	387 K	457 K
astatine, At_2	420 g/mol	150 pm	575 K	610 K

The increase in melting and boiling points with increasing atomic/molecular size may be rationalized by considering how the strength of dispersion forces is affected by the electronic structure of the atoms or molecules in the substance. In a larger atom, the valence electrons are, on average, farther from the nuclei than in a smaller atom. Thus, they are less tightly held and can more easily form the temporary dipoles that produce the attraction. The measure of how easy or difficult it is for another electrostatic

charge (for example, a nearby ion or polar molecule) to distort a molecule's charge distribution (its electron cloud) is known as polarizability. A molecule that has a charge cloud that is easily distorted is said to be very polarizable and will have large dispersion forces; one with a charge cloud that is difficult to distort is not very polarizable and will have small dispersion forces.

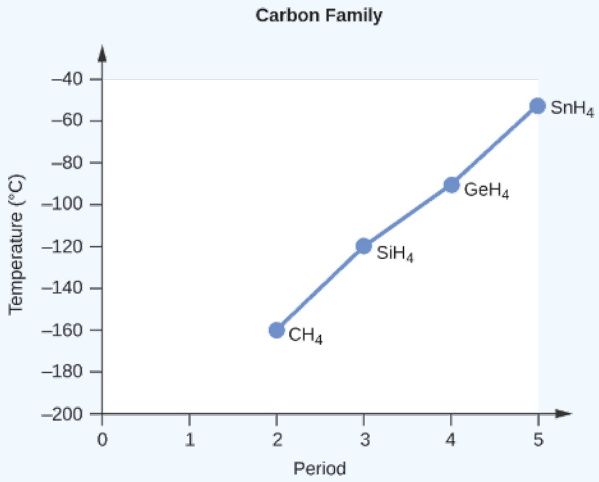
Example 9.2.1: London Forces and Their Effects

Order the following compounds of a group 14 element and hydrogen from lowest to highest boiling point: CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

Applying the skills acquired in the chapter on chemical bonding and molecular geometry, all of these compounds are predicted to be nonpolar, so they may experience only dispersion forces: the smaller the molecule, the less polarizable and the weaker the dispersion forces; the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces. The molar masses of CH_4, SiH_4, GeH_4, and SnH_4 are approximately 16 g/mol, 32 g/mol, 77 g/mol, and 123 g/mol, respectively. Therefore, CH_4 is expected to have the lowest boiling point and SnH_4 the highest boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is expected to be $CH_4 < SiH_4 < GeH_4 < SnH_4$.

A graph of the actual boiling points of these compounds versus the period of the group 14 element shows this prediction to be correct:



Exercise 9.2.1

Order the following hydrocarbons from lowest to highest boiling point: C_2H_6, C_3H_8, and C_4H_{10}.

Answer

$C_2H_6 < C_3H_8 < C_4H_{10}$. All of these compounds are nonpolar and only have London dispersion forces: the larger the molecule, the larger the dispersion forces and the higher the boiling point. The ordering from lowest to highest boiling point is therefore $C_2H_6 < C_3H_8 < C_4H_{10}$.

The shapes of molecules also affect the magnitudes of the dispersion forces between them. For example, boiling points for the isomers *n*-pentane, isopentane, and neopentane (shown in Figure 9.2.6) are 36 °C, 27 °C, and 9.5 °C, respectively. Even though these compounds are composed of molecules with the same chemical formula, C_5H_{12}, the difference in boiling points suggests that dispersion forces in the liquid phase are different, being greatest for *n*-pentane and least for neopentane. The elongated shape of *n*-pentane provides a greater surface area available for contact between molecules, resulting in correspondingly stronger dispersion forces. The more compact shape of isopentane offers a smaller surface area available for intermolecular contact and, therefore, weaker dispersion forces. Neopentane molecules are the most compact of the three, offering the least available surface area for intermolecular contact and, hence, the weakest dispersion forces. This behavior is analogous to the connections that may be formed between strips of VELCRO brand fasteners: the greater the area of the strip's contact, the stronger the connection.

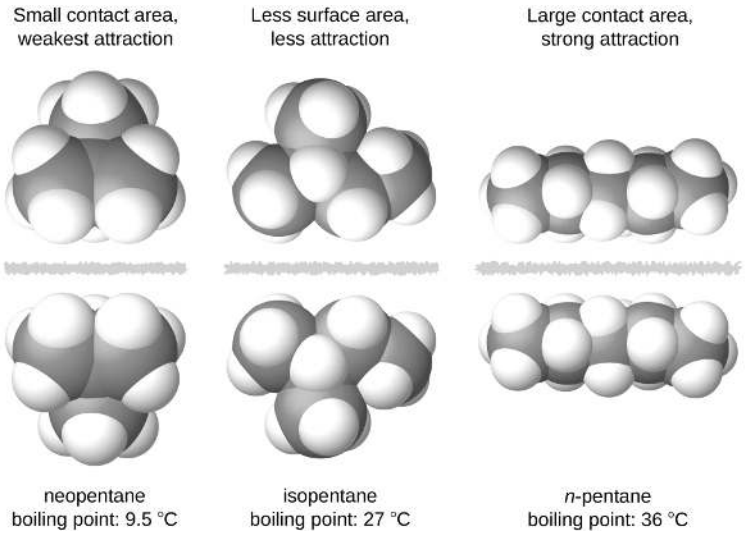


Figure 9.2.6: The strength of the dispersion forces increases with the contact area between molecules, as demonstrated by the boiling points of these pentane isomers.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Geckos and Intermolecular Forces

Geckos have an amazing ability to adhere to most surfaces. They can quickly run up smooth walls and across ceilings that have no toe-holds, and they do this without having suction cups or a sticky substance on their toes. And while a gecko can lift its feet easily as it walks along a surface, if you attempt to pick it up, it sticks to the surface. How are geckos (as well as spiders and some other insects) able to do this? Although this phenomenon has been investigated for hundreds of years, scientists only recently uncovered the details of the process that allows geckos' feet to behave this way.

Geckos' toes are covered with hundreds of thousands of tiny hairs known as *setae*, with each seta, in turn, branching into hundreds of tiny, flat, triangular tips called *spatulae*. The huge numbers of spatulae on its setae provide a gecko, shown in Figure 9.2.7, with a large total surface area for sticking to a surface. In 2000, Kellar Autumn, who leads a multi-institutional gecko research team, found that geckos adhered equally well to both polar silicon dioxide and nonpolar gallium arsenide. This proved that geckos stick to surfaces because of dispersion forces—weak intermolecular attractions arising from temporary, synchronized charge distributions between adjacent molecules. Although dispersion forces are very weak, the total attraction over millions of spatulae is large enough to support many times the gecko's weight.

In 2014, two scientists developed a model to explain how geckos can rapidly transition from "sticky" to "non-sticky." Alex Greaney and Congcong Hu at Oregon State University described how geckos can achieve this by changing the angle between their spatulae and the surface. Geckos' feet, which are normally nonsticky, become sticky when a small shear force is applied. By curling and uncurling their toes, geckos can alternate between sticking and unsticking from a surface, and thus easily move across it. Later research led by Alyssa Stark at University of Akron showed that geckos can maintain their hold on hydrophobic surfaces (similar to the leaves in their habitats) equally well whether the surfaces were wet or dry. Stark's experiment used a ribbon to gently pull the geckos until they slipped, so that the researchers could determine the geckos' ability to hold various surfaces under wet and dry conditions. Further investigations may eventually lead to the development of better adhesives and other applications.

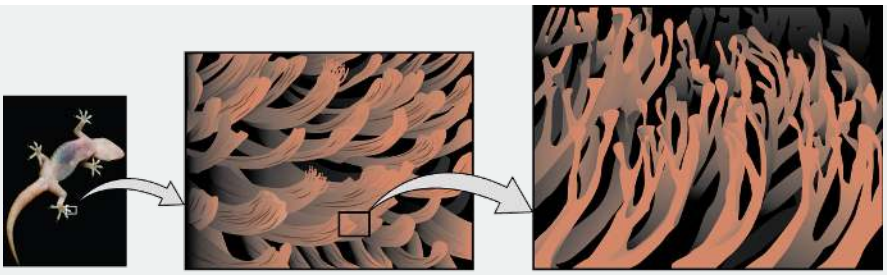


Figure 9.2.7: Geckos' toes contain large numbers of tiny hairs (setae), which branch into many triangular tips (spatulae). Geckos adhere to surfaces because of van der Waals attractions between the surface and a gecko's millions of spatulae. By changing how the spatulae contact the surface, geckos can turn their stickiness "on" and "off." (credit photo: modification of work by "JC*+A!"/Flickr)

Link to Learning

Watch this video to learn more about Kellar Autumn's research that determined that van der Waals forces are responsible for a gecko's ability to cling and climb.

Dipole-Dipole Attractions

Recall from the chapter on chemical bonding and molecular geometry that *polar* molecules have a partial positive charge on one side and a partial negative charge on the other side of the molecule—a separation of charge called a *dipole*. Consider a polar molecule such as hydrogen chloride, HCl. In the HCl molecule, the more electronegative Cl atom bears the partial negative charge, whereas the less electronegative H atom bears the partial positive charge. An attractive force between HCl molecules results from the attraction between the positive end of one HCl molecule and the negative end of another. This attractive force is called a dipole-dipole attraction—the electrostatic force between the partially positive end of one polar molecule and the partially negative end of another, as illustrated in Figure 9.2.8.

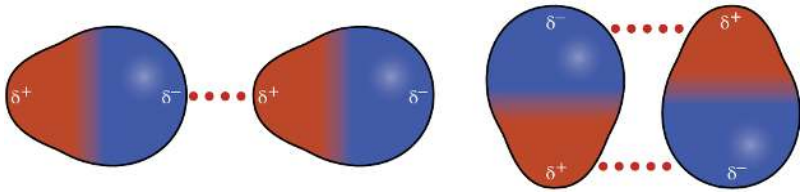


Figure 9.2.8: This image shows two arrangements of polar molecules, such as HCl, that allow an attraction between the partial negative end of one molecule and the partial positive end of another.

The effect of a dipole-dipole attraction is apparent when we compare the properties of HCl molecules to nonpolar F_2 molecules. Both HCl and F_2 consist of the same number of atoms and have approximately the same molecular mass. At a temperature of 150 K, molecules of both substances would have the same average KE. However, the dipole-dipole attractions between HCl molecules are sufficient to cause them to "stick together" to form a liquid, whereas the relatively weaker dispersion forces between nonpolar F_2 molecules are not, and so this substance is gaseous at this temperature. The higher normal boiling point of HCl (188 K) compared to F_2 (85 K) is a reflection of the greater strength of dipole-dipole attractions between HCl molecules, compared to the attractions between nonpolar F_2 molecules. We will often use values such as boiling or freezing points, or enthalpies of vaporization or fusion, as indicators of the relative strengths of IMFs of attraction present within different substances.

Example 9.2.2: Dipole-Dipole Forces and Their Effects

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: N_2 or CO. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

CO and N_2 are both diatomic molecules with masses of about 28 amu, so they experience similar London dispersion forces. Because CO is a polar molecule, it experiences dipole-dipole attractions. Because N_2 is nonpolar, its molecules cannot exhibit dipole-dipole attractions. The dipole-dipole attractions between CO molecules are comparably stronger than the dispersion forces between nonpolar N_2 molecules, so CO is expected to have the higher boiling point.

Exercise 9.2.2

Predict which will have the higher boiling point: ICl or Br_2. Explain your reasoning.

Answer

ICl. ICl and Br_2 have similar masses (~160 amu) and therefore experience similar London dispersion forces. ICl is polar and thus also exhibits dipole-dipole attractions; Br_2 is nonpolar and does not. The relatively stronger dipole-dipole attractions require more energy to overcome, so ICl will have the higher boiling point.

Hydrogen Bonding

Nitrosyl fluoride (ONF, molecular mass 49 amu) is a gas at room temperature. Water (H_2O, molecular mass 18 amu) is a liquid, even though it has a lower molecular mass. We clearly cannot attribute this difference between the two compounds to dispersion forces. Both molecules have about the same shape and ONF is the heavier and larger molecule. It is, therefore, expected to experience more significant dispersion forces. Additionally, we cannot attribute this difference in boiling points to differences in the dipole moments of the molecules. Both molecules are polar and exhibit comparable dipole moments. The large difference between the boiling points is due to a particularly strong dipole-dipole attraction that may occur when a molecule contains a hydrogen atom bonded to a fluorine, oxygen, or nitrogen atom (the three most electronegative elements). The very large difference in electronegativity between the H atom (2.1) and the atom to which it is bonded (4.0 for an F atom, 3.5 for an O atom, or 3.0 for a N atom), combined with the very small size of a H atom and the relatively small sizes of F, O, or N atoms, leads to *highly concentrated partial charges* with these atoms. Molecules with F-H, O-H, or N-H moieties are very strongly attracted to similar moieties in nearby molecules, a particularly strong type of dipole-dipole attraction called hydrogen bonding. Examples of hydrogen bonds include HF···HF, H_2O···HOH, and H_3N···HNH_2, in which the hydrogen bonds are denoted by dots. Figure 9.2.9 illustrates hydrogen bonding between water molecules.

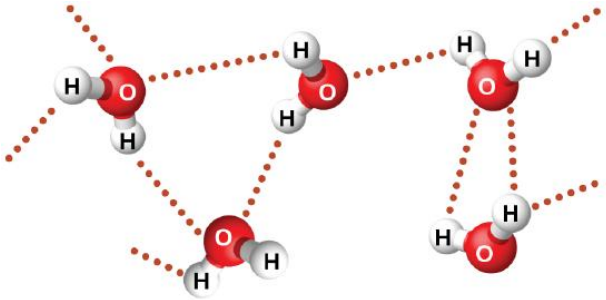


Figure 9.2.9: Water molecules participate in multiple hydrogen-bonding interactions with nearby water molecules.

Despite use of the word “bond,” keep in mind that hydrogen bonds are *intermolecular* attractive forces, not *intramolecular* attractive forces (covalent bonds). Hydrogen bonds are much weaker than covalent bonds, only about 5 to 10% as strong, but are generally much stronger than other dipole-dipole attractions and dispersion forces.

Hydrogen bonds have a pronounced effect on the properties of condensed phases (liquids and solids). For example, consider the trends in boiling points for the binary hydrides of group 15 (NH_3, PH_3, AsH_3, and SbH_3), group 16 hydrides (H_2O, H_2S, H_2Se, and H_2Te), and group 17 hydrides (HF, HCl, HBr, and HI). The boiling points of the heaviest three hydrides for each group are plotted in Figure 9.2.10. As we progress down any of these groups, the polarities of the molecules decrease slightly, whereas the sizes of the molecules increase substantially. The effect of increasingly stronger dispersion forces dominates that of increasingly weaker dipole-dipole attractions, and the boiling points are observed to increase steadily.

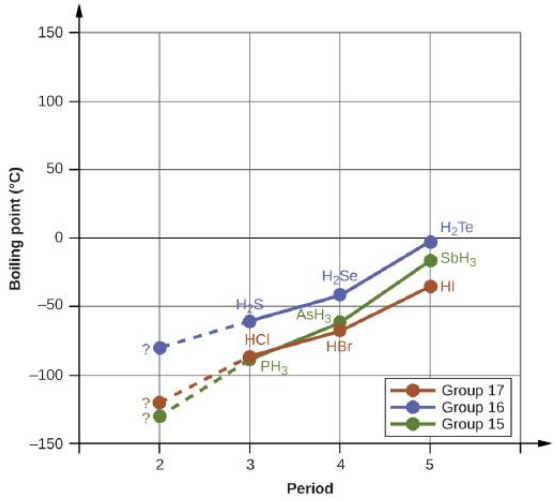


Figure 9.2.10: For the group 15, 16, and 17 hydrides, the boiling points for each class of compounds increase with increasing molecular mass for elements in periods 3, 4, and 5.

If we use this trend to predict the boiling points for the lightest hydride for each group, we would expect NH_3 to boil at about −120 °C, H_2O to boil at about −80 °C, and HF to boil at about −110 °C. However, when we measure the boiling points for these compounds, we find that they are dramatically higher than the trends would predict, as shown in Figure 9.2.11. The stark contrast between our naïve predictions and reality provides compelling evidence for the strength of hydrogen bonding.

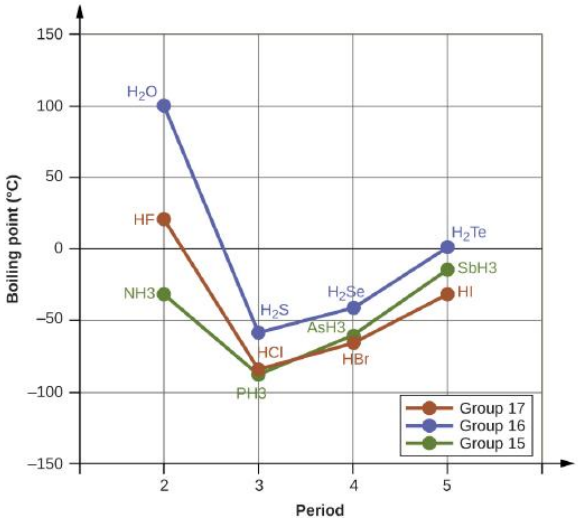


Figure 9.2.11: In comparison to periods 3−5, the binary hydrides of period 2 elements in groups 17, 16 and 15 (F, O and N, respectively) exhibit anomalously high boiling points due to hydrogen bonding.

Example 9.2.3: Effect of Hydrogen Bonding on Boiling Points

Consider the compounds dimethylether (CH_3OCH_3), ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH), and propane ($CH_3CH_2CH_3$). Their boiling points, not necessarily in order, are −42.1 °C, −24.8 °C, and 78.4 °C. Match each compound with its boiling point. Explain your reasoning.

Solution

The VSEPR-predicted shapes of CH_3OCH_3, CH_3CH_2OH, and $CH_3CH_2CH_3$ are similar, as are their molar masses (46 g/mol, 46 g/mol, and 44 g/mol, respectively), so they will exhibit similar dispersion forces. Since $CH_3CH_2CH_3$ is nonpolar, it may exhibit *only* dispersion forces. Because CH_3OCH_3 is polar, it will also experience dipole-dipole attractions. Finally, CH_3CH_2OH has an −OH group, and so it will experience the uniquely strong dipole-dipole attraction known as hydrogen bonding. So the ordering in terms of strength of IMFs, and thus boiling points, is $CH_3CH_2CH_3 < CH_3OCH_3 < CH_3CH_2OH$. The boiling point of propane is −42.1 °C, the boiling point of dimethylether is −24.8 °C, and the boiling point of ethanol is 78.5 °C.

Exercise 9.2.3

Ethane (CH_3CH_3) has a melting point of −183 °C and a boiling point of −89 °C. Predict the melting and boiling points for methylamine (CH_3NH_2). Explain your reasoning.

Answer

The melting point and boiling point for methylamine are predicted to be significantly greater than those of ethane. CH_3CH_3 and CH_3NH_2 are similar in size and mass, but methylamine possesses an −NH group and therefore may exhibit hydrogen bonding. This greatly increases its IMFs, and therefore its melting and boiling points. It is difficult to predict values, but the known values are a melting point of −93 °C and a boiling point of −6 °C.

How Sciences Interconnect: Hydrogen Bonding and DNA

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is found in every living organism and contains the genetic information that determines the organism's characteristics, provides the blueprint for making the proteins necessary for life, and serves as a template to pass this information on to the organism's offspring. A DNA molecule consists of two (anti-)parallel chains of repeating nucleotides, which form its well-known double helical structure, as shown in Figure 9.2.12

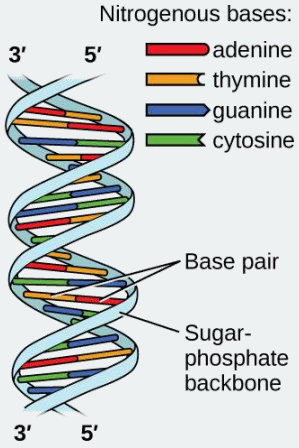


Figure 9.2.12: Two separate DNA molecules form a double-stranded helix in which the molecules are held together via hydrogen bonding. (credit: modification of work by Jerome Walker, Dennis Myts)

Each nucleotide contains a (deoxyribose) sugar bound to a phosphate group on one side, and one of four nitrogenous bases on the other. Two of the bases, cytosine (C) and thymine (T), are single-ringed structures known as pyrimidines. The other two, adenine (A) and guanine (G), are double-ringed structures called purines. These bases form complementary base pairs consisting of one purine and one pyrimidine, with adenine pairing with thymine, and cytosine with guanine. Each base pair is held together by hydrogen bonding. A and T share two hydrogen bonds, C and G share three, and both pairings have a similar shape and structure Figure 9.2.13

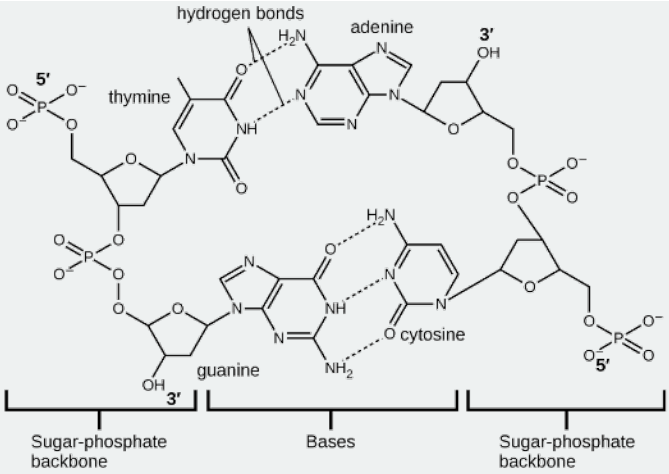


Figure 9.2.13: The geometries of the base molecules result in maximum hydrogen bonding between adenine and thymine (AT) and between guanine and cytosine (GC), so-called “complementary base pairs.”

The cumulative effect of millions of hydrogen bonds effectively holds the two strands of DNA together. Importantly, the two strands of DNA can relatively easily “unzip” down the middle since hydrogen bonds are relatively weak compared to the covalent bonds that hold the atoms of the individual DNA molecules together. This allows both strands to function as a template for replication.

This page titled 9.2: Intermolecular Forces is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.1: Intermolecular Forces** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.3: Properties of Liquids

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Distinguish between adhesive and cohesive forces
- Define viscosity, surface tension, and capillary rise
- Describe the roles of intermolecular attractive forces in each of these properties/phenomena

When you pour a glass of water, or fill a car with gasoline, you observe that water and gasoline flow freely. But when you pour syrup on pancakes or add oil to a car engine, you note that syrup and motor oil do not flow as readily. The **viscosity** of a liquid is a measure of its resistance to flow. Water, gasoline, and other liquids that flow freely have a low viscosity. Honey, syrup, motor oil, and other liquids that do not flow freely, like those shown in Figure 9.3.1, have higher viscosities. We can measure viscosity by measuring the rate at which a metal ball falls through a liquid (the ball falls more slowly through a more viscous liquid) or by measuring the rate at which a liquid flows through a narrow tube (more viscous liquids flow more slowly).



Figure 9.3.1: (a) Honey and (b) motor oil are examples of liquids with high viscosities; they flow slowly. (credit a: modification of work by Scott Bauer; credit b: modification of work by David Nagy)

The IMFs between the molecules of a liquid, the size and shape of the molecules, and the temperature determine how easily a liquid flows. As Table 9.3.1 shows, the more structurally complex are the molecules in a liquid and the stronger the IMFs between them, the more difficult it is for them to move past each other and the greater is the viscosity of the liquid. As the temperature increases, the molecules move more rapidly and their kinetic energies are better able to overcome the forces that hold them together; thus, the viscosity of the liquid decreases.

Table 9.3.1: Viscosities of Common Substances at 25 °C

Substance	Formula	Viscosity (mPa·s)
water	H_2O	0.890
mercury	Hg	1.526
ethanol	C_2H_5OH	1.074
octane	C_8H_{18}	0.508
ethylene glycol	$CH_2(OH)CH_2(OH)$	16.1
honey	variable	~2,000–10,000
motor oil	variable	~50–500

The various IMFs between identical molecules of a substance are examples of cohesive forces. The molecules within a liquid are surrounded by other molecules and are attracted equally in all directions by the cohesive forces within the liquid. However, the molecules on the surface of a liquid are attracted only by about one-half as many molecules. Because of the unbalanced molecular attractions on the surface molecules, liquids contract to form a shape that minimizes the number of molecules on the surface—that

is, the shape with the minimum surface area. A small drop of liquid tends to assume a spherical shape, as shown in Figure 9.3.2, because in a sphere, the ratio of surface area to volume is at a minimum. Larger drops are more greatly affected by gravity, air resistance, surface interactions, and so on, and as a result, are less spherical.

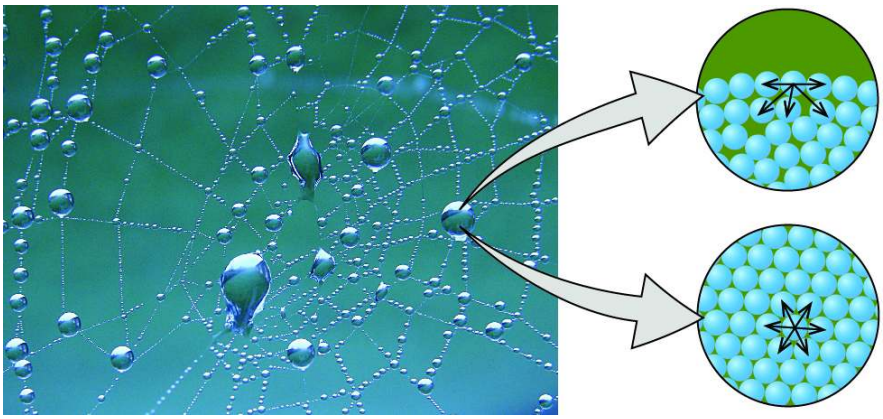


Figure 9.3.2: Attractive forces result in a spherical water drop that minimizes surface area; cohesive forces hold the sphere together; adhesive forces keep the drop attached to the web. (credit photo: modification of work by “OliBac”/Flickr)

Surface tension is defined as the energy required to increase the surface area of a liquid, or the force required to increase the length of a liquid surface by a given amount. This property results from the cohesive forces between molecules at the surface of a liquid, and it causes the surface of a liquid to behave like a stretched rubber membrane. Surface tensions of several liquids are presented in Table 9.3.2. Among common liquids, water exhibits a distinctly high surface tension due to strong hydrogen bonding between its molecules. As a result of this high surface tension, the surface of water represents a relatively “tough skin” that can withstand considerable force without breaking. A steel needle carefully placed on water will float. Some insects, like the one shown in Figure 9.3.3, even though they are denser than water, move on its surface because they are supported by the surface tension.

Table 9.3.2: Surface Tensions of Common Substances at 25 °C

Substance	Formula	Surface Tension (mN/m)
water	H_2O	71.99
mercury	Hg	458.48
ethanol	C_2H_5OH	21.97
octane	C_8H_{18}	21.14
ethylene glycol	$CH_2(OH)CH_2(OH)$	47.99

Surface tension is affected by a variety of variables, including the introduction of additional substances on the surface. In the late 1800s, Agnes Pockels, who was initially blocked from pursuing a scientific career but studied on her own, began investigating the impact and characteristics of soapy and greasy films in water. Using homemade materials, she developed an instrument known as a trough for measuring surface contaminants and their effects. With the support of renowned scientist Lord Rayleigh, her 1891 paper showed that surface contamination significantly reduces surface tension, and also that changing the characteristics of the surface (compressing or expanding it) also affects surface tension. Decades later, Irving Langmuir and Katharine Blodgett built on Pockels' work in their own trough and important advances in surface chemistry. Langmuir pioneered methods for producing single-molecule layers of film; Blodgett applied these to the development of non-reflective glass (critical for film-making and other applications), and also studied methods related to cleaning surfaces, which are important in semiconductor fabrication.

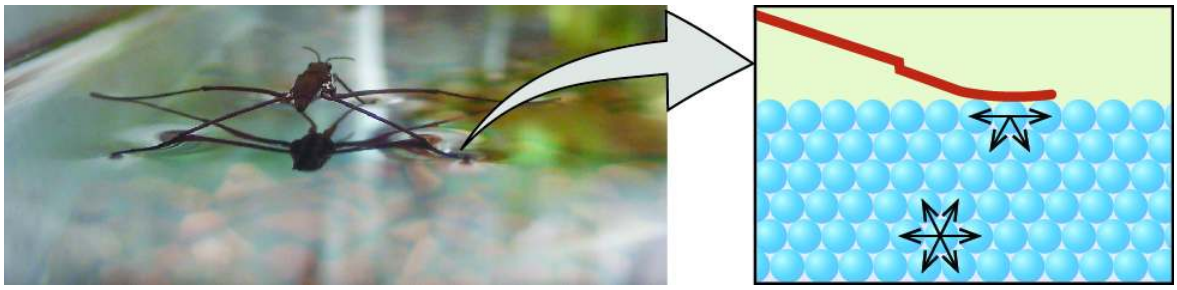


Figure 9.3.3: Surface tension (right) prevents this insect, a “water strider,” from sinking into the water.

The IMFs of attraction between two *different* molecules are called **adhesive forces**. Consider what happens when water comes into contact with some surface. If the adhesive forces between water molecules and the molecules of the surface are weak compared to the cohesive forces between the water molecules, the water does not “wet” the surface. For example, water does not wet waxed surfaces or many plastics such as polyethylene. Water forms drops on these surfaces because the cohesive forces within the drops are greater than the adhesive forces between the water and the plastic. Water spreads out on glass because the adhesive force between water and glass is greater than the cohesive forces within the water. When water is confined in a glass tube, its meniscus (surface) has a concave shape because the water wets the glass and creeps up the side of the tube. On the other hand, the cohesive forces between mercury atoms are much greater than the adhesive forces between mercury and glass. Mercury therefore does not wet glass, and it forms a convex meniscus when confined in a tube because the cohesive forces within the mercury tend to draw it into a drop (Figure 9.3.4).

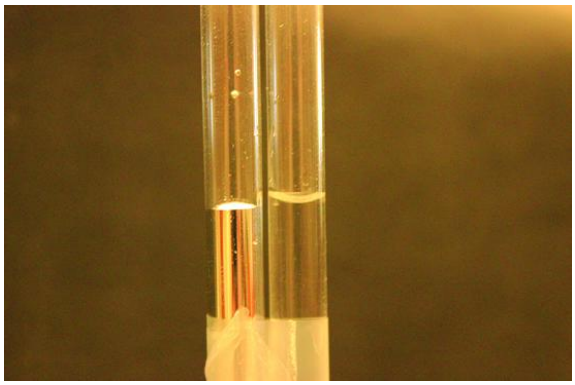


Figure 9.3.4: Differences in the relative strengths of cohesive and adhesive forces result in different meniscus shapes for mercury (left) and water (right) in glass tubes. (credit: Mark Ott)

If you place one end of a paper towel in spilled wine, as shown in Figure 9.3.5, the liquid wicks up the paper towel. A similar process occurs in a cloth towel when you use it to dry off after a shower. These are examples of **capillary action**—when a liquid flows within a porous material due to the attraction of the liquid molecules to the surface of the material and to other liquid molecules. The adhesive forces between the liquid and the porous material, combined with the cohesive forces within the liquid, may be strong enough to move the liquid upward against gravity.

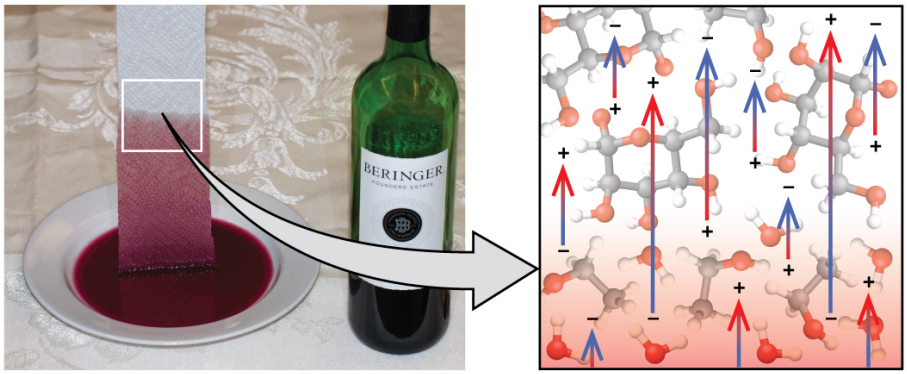


Figure 9.3.5: Wine wicks up a paper towel (left) because of the strong attractions of water (and ethanol) molecules to the −OH groups on the towel's cellulose fibers and the strong attractions of water molecules to other water (and ethanol) molecules (right). (credit photo: modification of work by Mark Blaser)

Towels soak up liquids like water because the fibers of a towel are made of molecules that are attracted to water molecules. Most cloth towels are made of cotton, and paper towels are generally made from paper pulp. Both consist of long molecules of cellulose that contain many −OH groups. Water molecules are attracted to these −OH groups and form hydrogen bonds with them, which draws the H_2O molecules up the cellulose molecules. The water molecules are also attracted to each other, so large amounts of water are drawn up the cellulose fibers.

Capillary action can also occur when one end of a small diameter tube is immersed in a liquid, as illustrated in Figure 9.3.6. If the liquid molecules are strongly attracted to the tube molecules, the liquid creeps up the inside of the tube until the weight of the liquid and the adhesive forces are in balance. The smaller the diameter of the tube is, the higher the liquid climbs. It is partly by capillary action occurring in plant cells called xylem that water and dissolved nutrients are brought from the soil up through the roots and into a plant. Capillary action is the basis for thin layer chromatography, a laboratory technique commonly used to separate small quantities of mixtures. You depend on a constant supply of tears to keep your eyes lubricated and on capillary action to pump tear fluid away.

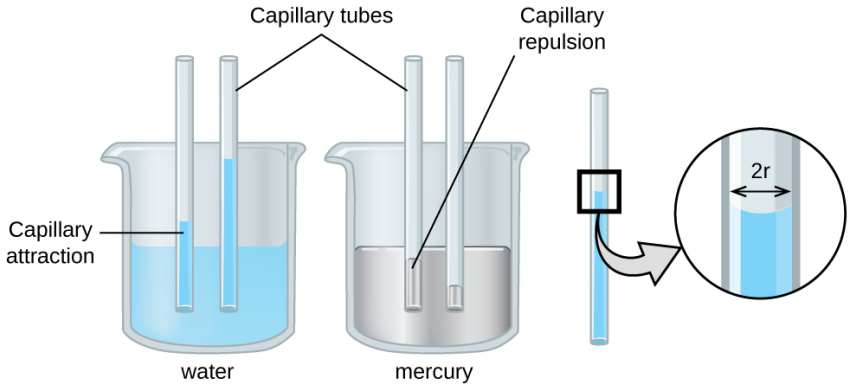


Figure 9.3.6: Depending upon the relative strengths of adhesive and cohesive forces, a liquid may rise (such as water) or fall (such as mercury) in a glass capillary tube. The extent of the rise (or fall) is directly proportional to the surface tension of the liquid and inversely proportional to the density of the liquid and the radius of the tube.

The height to which a liquid will rise in a capillary tube is determined by several factors as shown in the following equation:

$$h = \frac{2T\cos\theta}{r\rho g} \tag{9.3.1}$$

In this equation, h is the height of the liquid inside the capillary tube relative to the surface of the liquid outside the tube, T is the surface tension of the liquid, θ is the contact angle between the liquid and the tube, r is the radius of the tube, ρ is the density of the liquid, and g is the acceleration due to gravity, 9.8 m/s^2. When the tube is made of a material to which the liquid molecules are

strongly attracted, they will spread out completely on the surface, which corresponds to a contact angle of 0°. This is the situation for water rising in a glass tube.

Example 9.3.1: Capillary Rise

At 25 °C, how high will water rise in a glass capillary tube with an inner diameter of 0.25 mm?

For water, T = 71.99 mN/m and ρ = 1.0 g/cm^3.

Solution

The liquid will rise to a height h given by Equation 9.3.1:

$$h = \frac{2T\cos\theta}{r\rho g}$$

The Newton is defined as a kg m/s^2, and so the provided surface tension is equivalent to 0.07199 kg/s^2. The provided density must be converted into units that will cancel appropriately: ρ = 1000 kg/m^3. The diameter of the tube in meters is 0.00025 m, so the radius is 0.000125 m. For a glass tube immersed in water, the contact angle is θ = 0°, so cos θ = 1. Finally, acceleration due to gravity on the earth is g = 9.8 m/s^2. Substituting these values into the equation, and cancelling units, we have:

$$h = \frac{2\left(0.07199 kg/s^2\right)}{\left(0.000125 m\right)\left(1000 kg/m^3\right)\left(9.8 m/s^2\right)} = 0.12 m = 12 cm$$

Exercise 9.3.1

Water rises in a glass capillary tube to a height of 8.4 cm. What is the diameter of the capillary tube?

Answer

diameter = 0.36 mm

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Biomedical Applications of Capillary Action

Many medical tests require drawing a small amount of blood, for example to determine the amount of glucose in someone with diabetes or the hematocrit level in an athlete. This procedure can be easily done because of capillary action, the ability of a liquid to flow up a small tube against gravity, as shown in Figure 9.3.7. When your finger is pricked, a drop of blood forms and holds together due to surface tension—the unbalanced intermolecular attractions at the surface of the drop. Then, when the open end of a narrow-diameter glass tube touches the drop of blood, the adhesive forces between the molecules in the blood and those at the glass surface draw the blood up the tube. How far the blood goes up the tube depends on the diameter of the tube (and the type of fluid). A small tube has a relatively large surface area for a given volume of blood, which results in larger (relative) attractive forces, allowing the blood to be drawn farther up the tube. The liquid itself is held together by its own cohesive forces. When the weight of the liquid in the tube generates a downward force equal to the upward force associated with capillary action, the liquid stops rising.



Figure 9.3.7: Blood is collected for medical analysis by capillary action, which draws blood into a small diameter glass tube. (credit: modification of work by Centers for Disease Control and Prevention)

This page titled 9.3: Properties of Liquids is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.2: Properties of Liquids** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.4: Phase Transitions

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define phase transitions and phase transition temperatures
- Explain the relation between phase transition temperatures and intermolecular attractive forces
- Describe the processes represented by typical heating and cooling curves, and compute heat flows and enthalpy changes accompanying these processes

We witness and utilize changes of physical state, or phase transitions, in a great number of ways. As one example of global significance, consider the evaporation, condensation, freezing, and melting of water. These changes of state are essential aspects of our earth's water cycle as well as many other natural phenomena and technological processes of central importance to our lives. In this module, the essential aspects of phase transitions are explored.

Vaporization and Condensation

When a liquid vaporizes in a closed container, gas molecules cannot escape. As these gas phase molecules move randomly about, they will occasionally collide with the surface of the condensed phase, and in some cases, these collisions will result in the molecules re-entering the condensed phase. The change from the gas phase to the liquid is called **condensation**. When the rate of condensation becomes equal to the rate of **vaporization**, neither the amount of the liquid nor the amount of the vapor in the container changes. The vapor in the container is then said to be *in equilibrium* with the liquid. Keep in mind that this is not a static situation, as molecules are continually exchanged between the condensed and gaseous phases. Such is an example of a **dynamic equilibrium**, the status of a system in which reciprocal processes (for example, vaporization and condensation) occur at equal rates. The pressure exerted by the vapor in equilibrium with a liquid in a closed container at a given temperature is called the liquid's **vapor pressure** (or equilibrium vapor pressure). The area of the surface of the liquid in contact with a vapor and the size of the vessel have no effect on the vapor pressure, although they do affect the time required for the equilibrium to be reached. We can measure the vapor pressure of a liquid by placing a sample in a closed container, like that illustrated in Figure 9.4.1, and using a manometer to measure the increase in pressure that is due to the vapor in equilibrium with the condensed phase.

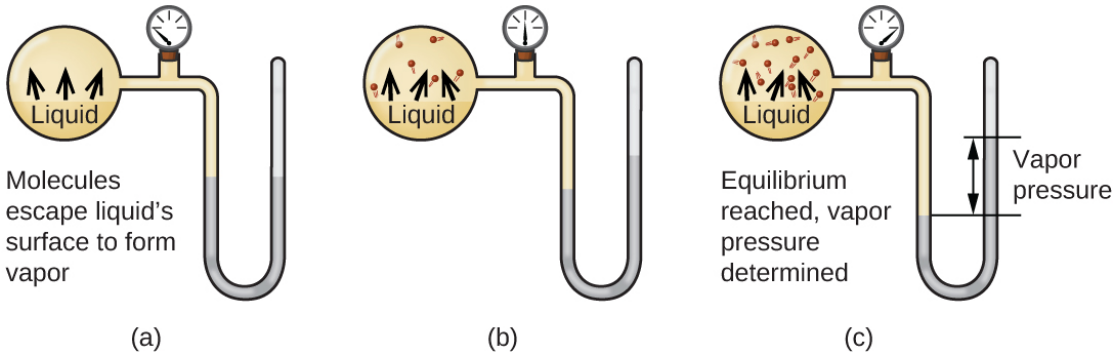
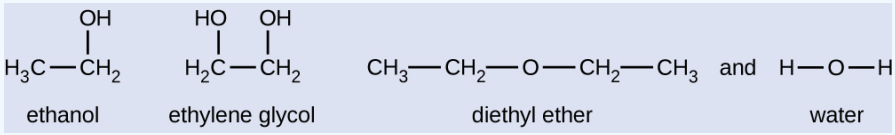


Figure 9.4.1: In a closed container, dynamic equilibrium is reached when (a) the rate of molecules escaping from the liquid to become the gas (b) increases and eventually (c) equals the rate of gas molecules entering the liquid. When this equilibrium is reached, the vapor pressure of the gas is constant, although the vaporization and condensation processes continue.

The chemical identities of the molecules in a liquid determine the types (and strengths) of intermolecular attractions possible; consequently, different substances will exhibit different equilibrium vapor pressures. Relatively strong intermolecular attractive forces will serve to impede vaporization as well as favoring "recapture" of gas-phase molecules when they collide with the liquid surface, resulting in a relatively low vapor pressure. Weak intermolecular attractions present less of a barrier to vaporization, and a reduced likelihood of gas recapture, yielding relatively high vapor pressures. The following example illustrates this dependence of vapor pressure on intermolecular attractive forces.

Example 9.4.1: Explaining Vapor Pressure in Terms of IMFs

Given the shown structural formulas for these four compounds, explain their relative vapor pressures in terms of types and extents of IMFs:



Solution

Diethyl ether has a very small dipole and most of its intermolecular attractions are London forces. Although this molecule is the largest of the four under consideration, its IMFs are the weakest and, as a result, its molecules most readily escape from the liquid. It also has the highest vapor pressure. Due to its smaller size, ethanol exhibits weaker dispersion forces than diethyl ether. However, ethanol is capable of hydrogen bonding and, therefore, exhibits stronger overall IMFs, which means that fewer molecules escape from the liquid at any given temperature, and so ethanol has a lower vapor pressure than diethyl ether. Water is much smaller than either of the previous substances and exhibits weaker dispersion forces, but its extensive hydrogen bonding provides stronger intermolecular attractions, fewer molecules escaping the liquid, and a lower vapor pressure than for either diethyl ether or ethanol. Ethylene glycol has two −OH groups, so, like water, it exhibits extensive hydrogen bonding. It is much larger than water and thus experiences larger London forces. Its overall IMFs are the largest of these four substances, which means its vaporization rate will be the slowest and, consequently, its vapor pressure the lowest.

Exercise 9.4.1

At 20 °C, the vapor pressures of several alcohols are given in this table. Explain these vapor pressures in terms of types and extents of IMFs for these alcohols:

Compound	methanol CH_3OH	ethanol C_2H_5OH	propanol C_3H_7OH	butanol C_4H_9OH
Vapor Pressure at 20 °C	11.9 kPa	5.95 kPa	2.67 kPa	0.56 kPa

Answer

All these compounds exhibit hydrogen bonding; these strong IMFs are difficult for the molecules to overcome, so the vapor pressures are relatively low. As the size of molecule increases from methanol to butanol, dispersion forces increase, which means that the vapor pressures decrease as observed:

$$P_{methanol} > P_{ethanol} > P_{propanol} > P_{butanol}.$$

As temperature increases, the vapor pressure of a liquid also increases due to the increased average KE of its molecules. Recall that at any given temperature, the molecules of a substance experience a range of kinetic energies, with a certain fraction of molecules having a sufficient energy to overcome IMF and escape the liquid (vaporize). At a higher temperature, a greater fraction of molecules have enough energy to escape from the liquid, as shown in Figure 9.4.2. The escape of more molecules per unit of time and the greater average speed of the molecules that escape both contribute to the higher vapor pressure.

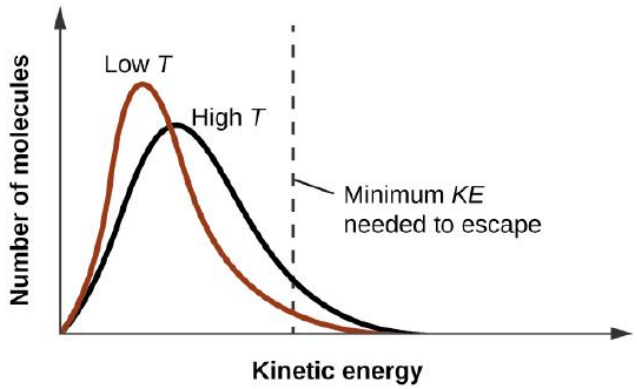


Figure 9.4.2: Temperature affects the distribution of kinetic energies for the molecules in a liquid. At the higher temperature, more molecules have the necessary kinetic energy, KE, to escape from the liquid into the gas phase.

Boiling Points

When the vapor pressure increases enough to equal the external atmospheric pressure, the liquid reaches its **boiling point**. The boiling point of a liquid is the temperature at which its equilibrium vapor pressure is equal to the pressure exerted on the liquid by its gaseous surroundings. For liquids in open containers, this pressure is that due to the earth's atmosphere. The **normal boiling point** of a liquid is defined as its boiling point when surrounding pressure is equal to 1 atm (101.3 kPa). Figure 9.4.3 shows the variation in vapor pressure with temperature for several different substances. Considering the definition of boiling point, these curves may be seen as depicting the dependence of a liquid's boiling point on surrounding pressure.

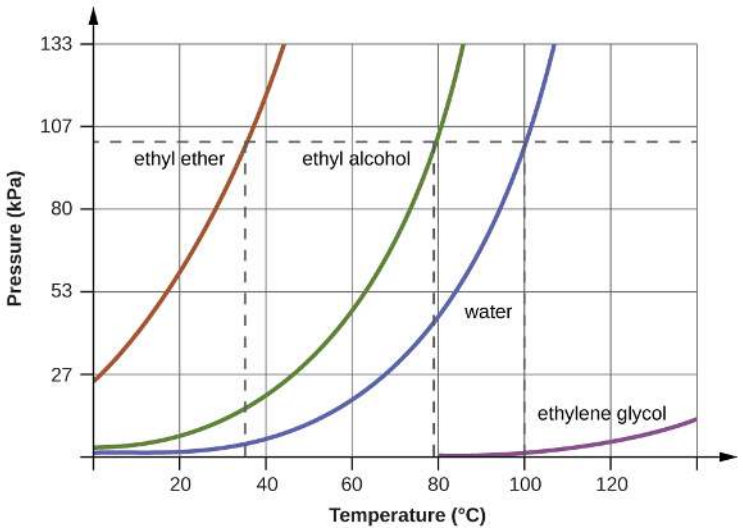


Figure 9.4.3: The boiling points of liquids are the temperatures at which their equilibrium vapor pressures equal the pressure of the surrounding atmosphere. Normal boiling points are those corresponding to a pressure of 1 atm (101.3 kPa.)

Example 9.4.2: A Boiling Point at Reduced Pressure

A typical atmospheric pressure in Leadville, Colorado (elevation 10,200 feet) is 68 kPa. Use the graph in Figure 9.4.3 to determine the boiling point of water at this elevation.

Solution

The graph of the vapor pressure of water versus temperature in Figure 9.4.3 indicates that the vapor pressure of water is 68 kPa at about 90 °C. Thus, at about 90 °C, the vapor pressure of water will equal the atmospheric pressure in Leadville, and water will boil.

Exercise 9.4.2

The boiling point of ethyl ether was measured to be 10 °C at a base camp on the slopes of Mount Everest. Use Figure 9.4.3 to determine the approximate atmospheric pressure at the camp.

Answer

Approximately 40 kPa (0.4 atm)

The quantitative relation between a substance's vapor pressure and its temperature is described by the Clausius-Clapeyron equation:

$$P = Ae^{-\Delta H_{vap}/RT}$$

where ΔH_{vap} is the enthalpy of vaporization for the liquid, R is the gas constant, and A is a constant whose value depends on the chemical identity of the substance. Temperature T must be in Kelvin in this equation. This equation is often rearranged into logarithmic form to yield the linear equation:

$$\ln P = -\frac{\Delta H_{vap}}{RT} + \ln A$$

This linear equation may be expressed in a two-point format that is convenient for use in various computations, as demonstrated in the example exercises that follow. If at temperature T_1, the vapor pressure is P_1, and at temperature T_2, the vapor pressure is P_2, the corresponding linear equations are:

$$\ln P_1 = -\frac{\Delta H_{vap}}{RT_1} + \ln A$$

and

$$\ln P_2 = -\frac{\Delta H_{vap}}{RT_2} + \ln A$$

Since the constant, A, is the same, these two equations may be rearranged to isolate $\ln A$ and then set them equal to one another:

$$\ln P_1 + \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{RT_1} = \ln P_2 + \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{RT_2}$$

which can be combined into:

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right) = \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)$$

Example 9.4.3: Estimating Enthalpy of Vaporization

Isooctane (2,2,4-trimethylpentane) has an octane rating of 100. It is used as one of the standards for the octane-rating system for gasoline. At 34.0 °C, the vapor pressure of isooctane is 10.0 kPa, and at 98.8 °C, its vapor pressure is 100.0 kPa. Use this information to estimate the enthalpy of vaporization for isooctane.

Solution

The enthalpy of vaporization, ΔH_{vap}, can be determined by using the Clausius-Clapeyron equation:

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right) = \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)$$

Since we have two vapor pressure-temperature values (T_1 = 34.0 °C = 307.2 K, P_1 = 10.0 kPa and T_2 = 98.8 °C = 372.0 K, P_2 = 100 kPa), we can substitute them into this equation and solve for ΔH_{vap}. Rearranging the Clausius-Clapeyron equation and solving for ΔH_{vap} yields:

$$\Delta H_{\text{vap}} = \frac{R \cdot \ln\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)}{\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)} = \frac{(8.3145 J/mol \cdot K) \cdot \ln\left(\frac{100 kPa}{10.0 kPa}\right)}{\left(\frac{1}{307.2 K} - \frac{1}{372.0 K}\right)} = 33,800 J/mol = 33.8 kJ/mol$$

Note that the pressure can be in any units, so long as they agree for both *P* values, but the temperature must be in kelvin for the Clausius-Clapeyron equation to be valid.

Exercise 9.4.3

At 20.0 °C, the vapor pressure of ethanol is 5.95 kPa, and at 63.5 °C, its vapor pressure is 53.3 kPa. Use this information to estimate the enthalpy of vaporization for ethanol.

Answer

41,360 J/mol or 41.4 kJ/mol

Example 9.4.4: Estimating Temperature (or Vapor Pressure)

For benzene (C_6H_6), the normal boiling point is 80.1 °C and the enthalpy of vaporization is 30.8 kJ/mol. What is the boiling point of benzene in Denver, where atmospheric pressure = 83.4 kPa?

Solution

If the temperature and vapor pressure are known at one point, along with the enthalpy of vaporization, ΔH_{vap}, then the temperature that corresponds to a different vapor pressure (or the vapor pressure that corresponds to a different temperature) can be determined by using the Clausius-Clapeyron equation:

$$\ln\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right) = \frac{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}}{R}\left(\frac{1}{T_1} - \frac{1}{T_2}\right)$$

Since the normal boiling point is the temperature at which the vapor pressure equals atmospheric pressure at sea level, we know one vapor pressure-temperature value (T_1 = 80.1 °C = 353.3 K, P_1 = 101.3 kPa, ΔH_{vap} = 30.8 kJ/mol) and want to find the temperature (T_2) that corresponds to vapor pressure P_2 = 83.4 kPa. We can substitute these values into the Clausius-Clapeyron equation and then solve for T_2. Rearranging the Clausius-Clapeyron equation and solving for T_2 yields:

$$T_2 = \left(\frac{-R \cdot \ln\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)}{\Delta H_{\text{vap}}} + \frac{1}{T_1}\right)^{-1} = \left(\frac{-(8.3145 J/mol \cdot K) \cdot \ln\left(\frac{83.4 kPa}{101.3 kPa}\right)}{30,800 J/mol} + \frac{1}{353.3 K}\right)^{-1} = 346.9$$

Exercise 9.4.4

For acetone $(CH_3)_2CO$, the normal boiling point is 56.5 °C and the enthalpy of vaporization is 31.3 kJ/mol. What is the vapor pressure of acetone at 25.0 °C?

Answer

30.1 kPa

Enthalpy of Vaporization

Vaporization is an endothermic process. The cooling effect can be evident when you leave a swimming pool or a shower. When the water on your skin evaporates, it removes heat from your skin and causes you to feel cold. The energy change associated with the vaporization process is the enthalpy of vaporization, ΔH_{vap}. For example, the vaporization of water at standard temperature is represented by:

$$H_2O(l) \longrightarrow H_2O(g) \qquad \Delta H_{vap} = 44.01 kJ/mol$$

As described in the chapter on thermochemistry, the reverse of an endothermic process is exothermic. And so, the condensation of a gas releases heat:

$$\mathrm{H_2O(g) \longrightarrow H_2O(l)} \qquad \Delta H_{\mathrm{con}} = -\Delta H_{\mathrm{vap}} = -44.01 kJ/mol$$

Example 9.4.5: Using Enthalpy of Vaporization

One way our body is cooled is by evaporation of the water in sweat (Figure 9.4.4). In very hot climates, we can lose as much as 1.5 L of sweat per day. Although sweat is not pure water, we can get an approximate value of the amount of heat removed by evaporation by assuming that it is. How much heat is required to evaporate 1.5 L of water (1.5 kg) at T = 37 °C (normal body temperature); ΔH_{vap} = 43.46 kJ/mol at 37 °C.



Figure 9.4.4: Evaporation of sweat helps cool the body. (credit: “Kullez”/Flickr)

Solution

We start with the known volume of sweat (approximated as just water) and use the given information to convert to the amount of heat needed:

$$1.5 \cancel{\text{ L}} \times \frac{1000 \cancel{\text{ g}}}{1 \cancel{\text{ L}}} \times \frac{1 \cancel{\text{ mol}}}{18 \cancel{\text{ g}}} \times \frac{43.46 \text{ kJ}}{1 \cancel{\text{ mol}}} = 3.6 \times 10^3 \text{ kJ}$$

Thus, 3600 kJ of heat are removed by the evaporation of 1.5 L of water.

Exercise 9.4.1

How much heat is required to evaporate 100.0 g of liquid ammonia, NH_3, at its boiling point if its enthalpy of vaporization is 4.8 kJ/mol?

Answer

28 kJ

Melting and Freezing

When we heat a crystalline solid, we increase the average energy of its atoms, molecules, or ions and the solid gets hotter. At some point, the added energy becomes large enough to partially overcome the forces holding the molecules or ions of the solid in their fixed positions, and the solid begins the process of transitioning to the liquid state, or melting. At this point, the temperature of the solid stops rising, despite the continual input of heat, and it remains constant until all of the solid is melted. Only after all of the solid has melted will continued heating increase the temperature of the liquid (Figure 9.4.5).



Figure 9.4.5: (a) This beaker of ice has a temperature of −12.0 °C. (b) After 10 minutes the ice has absorbed enough heat from the air to warm to 0 °C. A small amount has melted. (c) Thirty minutes later, the ice has absorbed more heat, but its temperature is still 0 °C. The ice melts without changing its temperature. (d) Only after all the ice has melted does the heat absorbed cause the temperature to increase to 22.2 °C. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

If we stop heating during melting and place the mixture of solid and liquid in a perfectly insulated container so no heat can enter or escape, the solid and liquid phases remain in equilibrium. This is almost the situation with a mixture of ice and water in a very good thermos bottle; almost no heat gets in or out, and the mixture of solid ice and liquid water remains for hours. In a mixture of solid and liquid at equilibrium, the reciprocal processes of melting and **freezing** occur at equal rates, and the quantities of solid and liquid therefore remain constant. The temperature at which the solid and liquid phases of a given substance are in equilibrium is called the **melting point** of the solid or the freezing point of the liquid. Use of one term or the other is normally dictated by the direction of the phase transition being considered, for example, solid to liquid (melting) or liquid to solid (freezing).

The enthalpy of fusion and the melting point of a crystalline solid depend on the strength of the attractive forces between the units present in the crystal. Molecules with weak attractive forces form crystals with low melting points. Crystals consisting of particles with stronger attractive forces melt at higher temperatures.

The amount of heat required to change one mole of a substance from the solid state to the liquid state is the enthalpy of fusion, ΔH_{fus} of the substance. The enthalpy of fusion of ice is 6.0 kJ/mol at 0 °C. Fusion (melting) is an endothermic process:

$$\mathrm{H_2O(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O(l)} \quad \Delta H_{\text{fus}} = 6.01 kJ/mol$$

The reciprocal process, freezing, is an exothermic process whose enthalpy change is −6.0 kJ/mol at 0 °C:

$$\mathrm{H_2O(l)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O(s)} \quad \Delta H_{\text{frz}} = -\Delta H_{\text{fus}} = -6.01 kJ/mol$$

Sublimation and Deposition

Some solids can transition directly into the gaseous state, bypassing the liquid state, via a process known as **sublimation**. At room temperature and standard pressure, a piece of dry ice (solid $\mathrm{CO_2}$) sublimes, appearing to gradually disappear without ever forming any liquid. Snow and ice sublime at temperatures below the melting point of water, a slow process that may be accelerated by winds and the reduced atmospheric pressures at high altitudes. When solid iodine is warmed, the solid sublimes and a vivid purple vapor forms (Figure 9.4.6). The reverse of sublimation is called **deposition**, a process in which gaseous substances condense directly into the solid state, bypassing the liquid state. The formation of frost is an example of deposition.



Figure 9.4.6: Sublimation of solid iodine in the bottom of the tube produces a purple gas that subsequently deposits as solid iodine on the colder part of the tube above. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

Like vaporization, the process of sublimation requires an input of energy to overcome intermolecular attractions. The enthalpy of sublimation, ΔH_{sub}, is the energy required to convert one mole of a substance from the solid to the gaseous state. For example, the sublimation of carbon dioxide is represented by:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(s) \longrightarrow CO_2(g)} \qquad \Delta H_{\text{sub}} = 26.1 kJ/mol$$

Likewise, the enthalpy change for the reverse process of deposition is equal in magnitude but opposite in sign to that for sublimation:

$$\mathrm{CO_2(g) \longrightarrow CO_2(s)} \qquad \Delta H_{\text{dep}} = -\Delta H_{\text{sub}} = -26.1 kJ/mol$$

Consider the extent to which intermolecular attractions must be overcome to achieve a given phase transition. Converting a solid into a liquid requires that these attractions be only partially overcome; transition to the gaseous state requires that they be completely overcome. As a result, the enthalpy of fusion for a substance is less than its enthalpy of vaporization. This same logic can be used to derive an approximate relation between the enthalpies of all phase changes for a given substance. Though not an entirely accurate description, sublimation may be conveniently modeled as a sequential two-step process of melting followed by vaporization in order to apply Hess's Law. Viewed in this manner, the enthalpy of sublimation for a substance may be estimated as the sum of its enthalpies of fusion and vaporization, as illustrated in Figure 9.4.7. For example:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{solid} \longrightarrow \text{liquid} & \Delta H_{\text{fus}} \\ \text{liquid} \longrightarrow \text{gas} & \Delta H_{\text{vap}} \\ \hline \text{solid} \longrightarrow \text{gas} & \Delta H_{\text{sub}} = \Delta H_{\text{fus}} + \Delta H_{\text{vap}} \end{array}$$

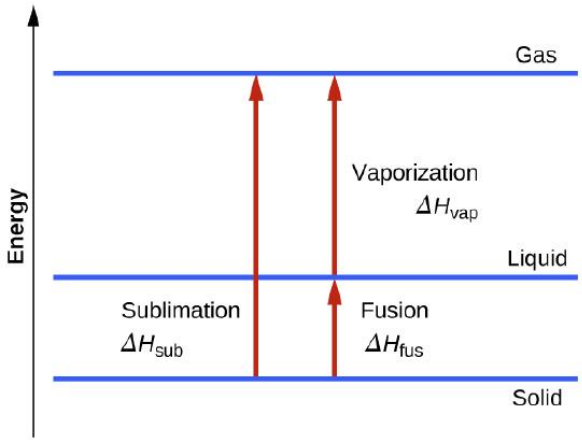


Figure 9.4.7: For a given substance, the sum of its enthalpy of fusion and enthalpy of vaporization is approximately equal to its enthalpy of sublimation.

Heating and Cooling Curves

In the chapter on thermochemistry, the relation between the amount of heat absorbed or released by a substance, q, and its accompanying temperature change, ΔT, was introduced:

$$q = mc\Delta T$$

where m is the mass of the substance and c is its specific heat. The relation applies to matter being heated or cooled, but not undergoing a change in state. When a substance being heated or cooled reaches a temperature corresponding to one of its phase transitions, further gain or loss of heat is a result of diminishing or enhancing intermolecular attractions, instead of increasing or decreasing molecular kinetic energies. While a substance is undergoing a change in state, its temperature remains constant. Figure 9.4.8 shows a typical heating curve.

Consider the example of heating a pot of water to boiling. A stove burner will supply heat at a roughly constant rate; initially, this heat serves to increase the water's temperature. When the water reaches its boiling point, the temperature remains constant despite the continued input of heat from the stove burner. This same temperature is maintained by the water as long as it is boiling. If the burner setting is increased to provide heat at a greater rate, the water temperature does not rise, but instead the boiling becomes more vigorous (rapid). This behavior is observed for other phase transitions as well: For example, temperature remains constant while the change of state is in progress.

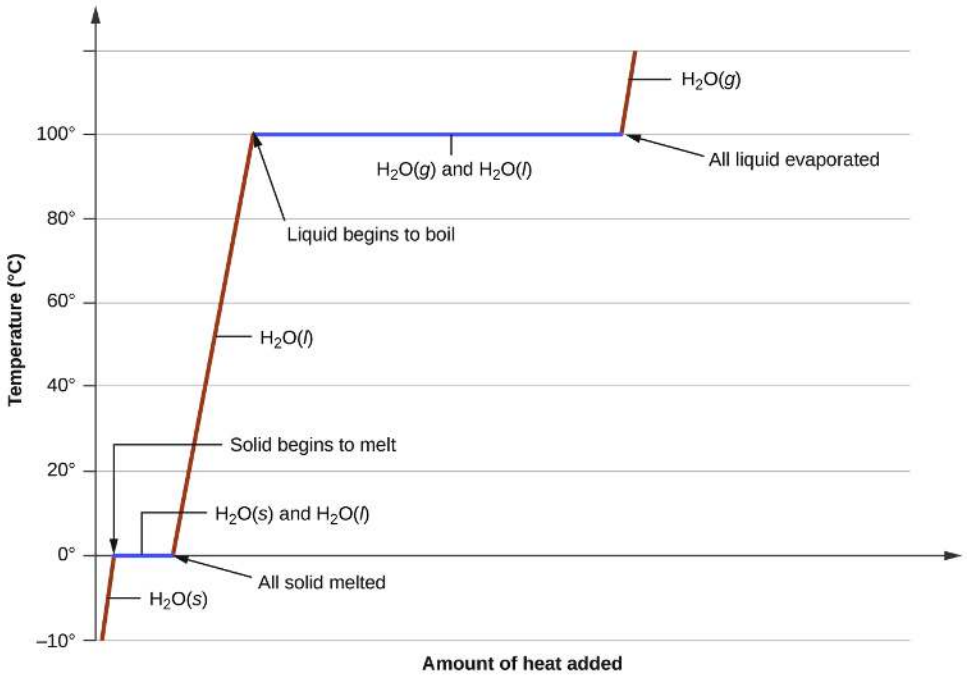


Figure 9.4.8: A typical heating curve for a substance depicts changes in temperature that result as the substance absorbs increasing amounts of heat. Plateaus in the curve (regions of constant temperature) are exhibited when the substance undergoes phase transitions.

Example 9.4.6: Total Heat Needed to Change Temperature and Phase for a Substance

How much heat is required to convert 135 g of ice at −15 °C into water vapor at 120 °C?

Solution

The transition described involves the following steps:

1. Heat ice from −15 °C to 0 °C
2. Melt ice
3. Heat water from 0 °C to 100 °C
4. Boil water
5. Heat steam from 100 °C to 120 °C

The heat needed to change the temperature of a given substance (with no change in phase) is: $q = mc\Delta T$. The heat needed to induce a given change in phase is given by $q = n\Delta H$.

Using these equations with the appropriate values for specific heat of ice, water, and steam, and enthalpies of fusion and vaporization, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} q_{\text{total}} = \; & (m \cdot c \cdot \Delta T)_{\text{ice}} + n \cdot \Delta H_{\text{fus}} + (m \cdot c \cdot \Delta T)_{\text{water}} + n \cdot \Delta H_{\text{vap}} + (m \cdot c \cdot \Delta T)_{\text{steam}} \\ = \; & (135g \cdot 2.09J/g \cdot {}^\circ C \cdot 15^\circ C) + \left(135 \cdot \frac{1mol}{18.02g} \cdot 6.01kJ/mol\right) \\ & + (135g \cdot 4.18J/g \cdot {}^\circ C \cdot 100^\circ C) + \left(135g \cdot \frac{1mol}{18.02g} \cdot 40.67kJ/mol\right) \\ & + (135g \cdot 1.86J/g \cdot {}^\circ C \cdot 20^\circ C) \\ = \; & 4230J + 45.0kJ + 56,500J + 305kJ + 5022J \end{aligned}$$

Converting the quantities in J to kJ permits them to be summed, yielding the total heat required:

$$q_{\text{total}} = 4.23kJ + 45.0kJ + 56.5kJ + 305kJ + 5.02kJ = 416kJ$$

NOTE: The value of ΔH_{vap} at the boiling point of water (40.67 kJ/mol) is used here instead of the value at standard temperature (44.01 kJ/mol).

? Exercise 9.4.6

What is the total amount of heat released when 94.0 g water at 80.0 °C cools to form ice at −30.0 °C?

Answer

68.7 kJ

This page titled 9.4: Phase Transitions is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.3: Phase Transitions** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.5: Phase Diagrams

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Explain the construction and use of a typical phase diagram
- Use phase diagrams to identify stable phases at given temperatures and pressures, and to describe phase transitions resulting from changes in these properties
- Describe the supercritical fluid phase of matter

In the previous module, the variation of a liquid's equilibrium vapor pressure with temperature was described. Considering the definition of boiling point, plots of vapor pressure versus temperature represent how the boiling point of the liquid varies with pressure. Also described was the use of heating and cooling curves to determine a substance's melting (or freezing) point. Making such measurements over a wide range of pressures yields data that may be presented graphically as a phase diagram. A **phase diagram** combines plots of pressure versus temperature for the liquid-gas, solid-liquid, and solid-gas phase-transition equilibria of a substance. These diagrams indicate the physical states that exist under specific conditions of pressure and temperature, and also provide the pressure dependence of the phase-transition temperatures (melting points, sublimation points, boiling points). A typical phase diagram for a pure substance is shown in Figure 9.5.1.

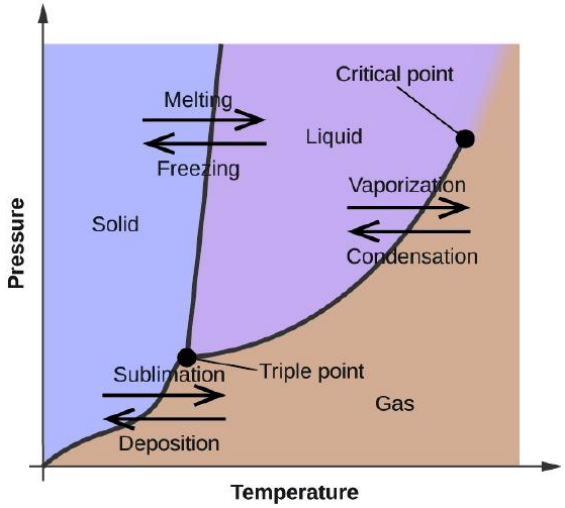


Figure 9.5.1: The physical state of a substance and its phase-transition temperatures are represented graphically in a phase diagram.

To illustrate the utility of these plots, consider the phase diagram for water shown in Figure 9.5.2.

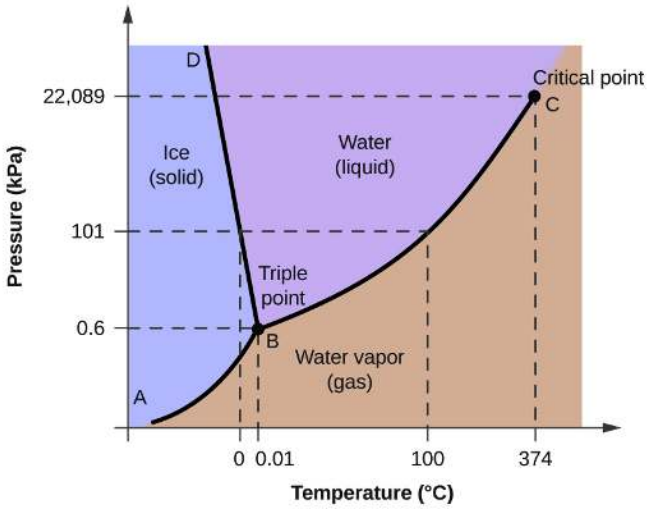


Figure 9.5.2: The pressure and temperature axes on this phase diagram of water are not drawn to constant scale in order to illustrate several important properties.

We can use the phase diagram to identify the physical state of a sample of water under specified conditions of pressure and temperature. For example, a pressure of 50 kPa and a temperature of −10 °C correspond to the region of the diagram labeled “ice.” Under these conditions, water exists only as a solid (ice). A pressure of 50 kPa and a temperature of 50 °C correspond to the “water” region—here, water exists only as a liquid. At 25 kPa and 200 °C, water exists only in the gaseous state. Note that on the H_2O phase diagram, the pressure and temperature axes are not drawn to a constant scale in order to permit the illustration of several important features as described here.

The curve BC in Figure 9.5.2 is the plot of vapor pressure versus temperature as described in the previous module of this chapter. This “liquid-vapor” curve separates the liquid and gaseous regions of the phase diagram and provides the boiling point for water at any pressure. For example, at 1 atm, the boiling point is 100 °C. Notice that the liquid-vapor curve terminates at a temperature of 374 °C and a pressure of 218 atm, indicating that water cannot exist as a liquid above this temperature, regardless of the pressure. The physical properties of water under these conditions are intermediate between those of its liquid and gaseous phases. This unique state of matter is called a supercritical fluid, a topic that will be described in the next section of this module.

The solid-vapor curve, labeled AB in Figure 9.5.2, indicates the temperatures and pressures at which ice and water vapor are in equilibrium. These temperature-pressure data pairs correspond to the sublimation, or deposition, points for water. If we could zoom in on the solid-gas line in Figure 9.5.2, we would see that ice has a vapor pressure of about 0.20 kPa at −10 °C. Thus, if we place a frozen sample in a vacuum with a pressure less than 0.20 kPa, ice will sublime. This is the basis for the “freeze-drying” process often used to preserve foods, such as the ice cream shown in Figure 9.5.3.



Figure 9.5.3: Freeze-dried foods, like this ice cream, are dehydrated by sublimation at pressures below the triple point for water. (credit: "lwao"/Flickr)

The solid-liquid curve labeled BD shows the temperatures and pressures at which ice and liquid water are in equilibrium, representing the melting/freezing points for water. Note that this curve exhibits a slight negative slope (greatly exaggerated for

clarity), indicating that the melting point for water decreases slightly as pressure increases. Water is an unusual substance in this regard, as most substances exhibit an increase in melting point with increasing pressure. This behavior is partly responsible for the movement of glaciers, like the one shown in Figure 9.5.4. The bottom of a glacier experiences an immense pressure due to its weight that can melt some of the ice, forming a layer of liquid water on which the glacier may more easily slide.

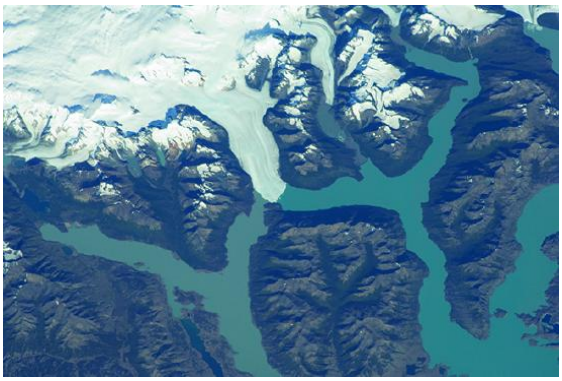


Figure 9.5.4: The immense pressures beneath glaciers result in partial melting to produce a layer of water that provides lubrication to assist glacial movement. This satellite photograph shows the advancing edge of the Perito Moreno glacier in Argentina. (credit: NASA)

The point of intersection of all three curves is labeled B in Figure 9.5.2. At the pressure and temperature represented by this point, three phases of water coexist in equilibrium. This temperature-pressure data pair is called the triple point. At pressures lower than the triple point, water cannot exist as a liquid, regardless of the temperature.

✔ Example 9.5.1: Determining the State of Water

Using the phase diagram for water given in Figure 9.5.2, determine the state of water at the following temperatures and pressures:

a. −10 °C and 50 kPa
b. 25 °C and 90 kPa
c. 50 °C and 40 kPa
d. 80 °C and 5 kPa
e. −10 °C and 0.3 kPa
f. 50 °C and 0.3 kPa

Solution

Using the phase diagram for water, we can determine that the state of water at each temperature and pressure given are as follows: (a) solid; (b) liquid; (c) liquid; (d) gas; (e) solid; (f) gas.

? Exercise 9.5.1

What phase changes can water undergo as the temperature changes if the pressure is held at 0.3 kPa? If the pressure is held at 50 kPa?

Answer

At 0.3 kPa: at −58 °C. At 50 kPa: at 0 °C, l ⟶ g at 78 °C

Consider the phase diagram for carbon dioxide shown in Figure 9.5.5 as another example. The solid-liquid curve exhibits a positive slope, indicating that the melting point for CO_2 increases with pressure as it does for most substances (water being a notable exception as described previously). Notice that the triple point is well above 1 atm, indicating that carbon dioxide cannot exist as a liquid under ambient pressure conditions. Instead, cooling gaseous carbon dioxide at 1 atm results in its deposition into the solid state. Likewise, solid carbon dioxide does not melt at 1 atm pressure but instead sublimes to yield gaseous CO_2. Finally, notice that the critical point for carbon dioxide is observed at a relatively modest temperature and pressure in comparison to water.

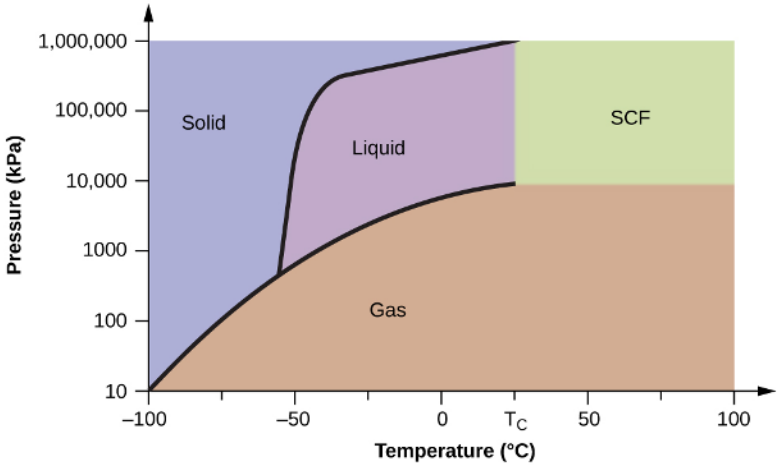


Figure 9.5.5: A phase diagram for carbon dioxide is shown. The pressure axis is plotted on a logarithmic scale to accommodate the large range of values.

Example 9.5.2: Determining the State of Carbon Dioxide

Using the phase diagram for carbon dioxide shown in Figure 9.5.5, determine the state of CO_2 at the following temperatures and pressures:

a. −30 °C and 2000 kPa
b. −90 °C and 1000 kPa
c. −60 °C and 100 kPa
d. −40 °C and 1500 kPa
e. 0 °C and 100 kPa
f. 20 °C and 100 kPa

Solution

Using the phase diagram for carbon dioxide provided, we can determine that the state of CO_2 at each temperature and pressure given are as follows: (a) liquid; (b) solid; (c) gas; (d) liquid; (e) gas; (f) gas.

Exercise 9.5.2

Identify the phase changes that carbon dioxide will undergo as its temperature is increased from −100 °C while holding its pressure constant at 1500 kPa. At 50 kPa. At what approximate temperatures do these phase changes occur?

Answer

at 1500 kPa: at −55 °C, at −10 °C;

at 50 kPa: at −60 °C

Supercritical Fluids

If we place a sample of water in a sealed container at 25 °C, remove the air, and let the vaporization-condensation equilibrium establish itself, we are left with a mixture of liquid water and water vapor at a pressure of 0.03 atm. A distinct boundary between the more dense liquid and the less dense gas is clearly observed. As we increase the temperature, the pressure of the water vapor increases, as described by the liquid-gas curve in the phase diagram for water (Figure 9.5.2), and a two-phase equilibrium of liquid and gaseous phases remains. At a temperature of 374 °C, the vapor pressure has risen to 218 atm, and any further increase in temperature results in the disappearance of the boundary between liquid and vapor phases. All of the water in the container is now present in a single phase whose physical properties are intermediate between those of the gaseous and liquid states. This phase of matter is called a **supercritical fluid**, and the temperature and pressure above which this phase exists is the **critical point** (Figure 9.5.6). Above its critical temperature, a gas cannot be liquefied no matter how much pressure is applied. The pressure required to

liquefy a gas at its critical temperature is called the critical pressure. The critical temperatures and critical pressures of some common substances are given in the following table.

Substance	Critical Temperature (°C)	Critical Pressure (kPa)
hydrogen	−240.0	1300
nitrogen	−147.2	3400
oxygen	−118.9	5000
carbon dioxide	31.1	7400
ammonia	132.4	11,300
sulfur dioxide	157.2	7800
water	374.0	22,000

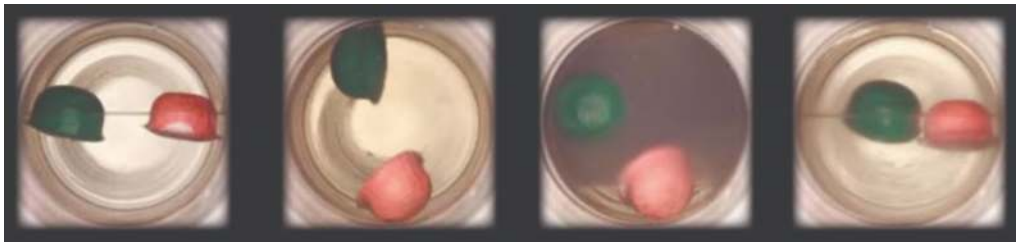


Figure 9.5.6: (a) A sealed container of liquid carbon dioxide slightly below its critical point is heated, resulting in (b) the formation of the supercritical fluid phase. Cooling the supercritical fluid lowers its temperature and pressure below the critical point, resulting in the reestablishment of separate liquid and gaseous phases (c and d). Colored floats illustrate differences in density between the liquid, gaseous, and supercritical fluid states. (credit: modification of work by “mrmrobin”/YouTube)

Link to Learning

Observe the liquid-to-supercritical fluid transition for carbon dioxide.

Like a gas, a supercritical fluid will expand and fill a container, but its density is much greater than typical gas densities, typically being close to those for liquids. Similar to liquids, these fluids are capable of dissolving nonvolatile solutes. They exhibit essentially no surface tension and very low viscosities, however, so they can more effectively penetrate very small openings in a solid mixture and remove soluble components. These properties make supercritical fluids extremely useful solvents for a wide range of applications. For example, supercritical carbon dioxide has become a very popular solvent in the food industry, being used to decaffeinate coffee, remove fats from potato chips, and extract flavor and fragrance compounds from citrus oils. It is nontoxic, relatively inexpensive, and not considered to be a pollutant. After use, the CO_2 can be easily recovered by reducing the pressure and collecting the resulting gas.

Example 9.5.3: The Critical Temperature of Carbon Dioxide

If we shake a carbon dioxide fire extinguisher on a cool day (18 °C), we can hear liquid CO_2 sloshing around inside the cylinder. However, the same cylinder appears to contain no liquid on a hot summer day (35 °C). Explain these observations.

Solution

On the cool day, the temperature of the CO_2 is below the critical temperature of CO_2, 304 K or 31 °C, so liquid CO_2 is present in the cylinder. On the hot day, the temperature of the CO_2 is greater than its critical temperature of 31 °C. Above this temperature no amount of pressure can liquefy CO_2 so no liquid CO_2 exists in the fire extinguisher.

Exercise 9.5.3

Ammonia can be liquefied by compression at room temperature; oxygen cannot be liquefied under these conditions. Why do the two gases exhibit different behavior?

Answer

The critical temperature of ammonia is 405.5 K, which is higher than room temperature. The critical temperature of oxygen is below room temperature; thus oxygen cannot be liquefied at room temperature.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Decaffeinating Coffee Using Supercritical CO_2

Coffee is the world's second most widely traded commodity, following only petroleum. Across the globe, people love coffee's aroma and taste. Many of us also depend on one component of coffee—caffeine—to help us get going in the morning or stay alert in the afternoon. But late in the day, coffee's stimulant effect can keep you from sleeping, so you may choose to drink decaffeinated coffee in the evening.

Since the early 1900s, many methods have been used to decaffeinate coffee. All have advantages and disadvantages, and all depend on the physical and chemical properties of caffeine. Because caffeine is a somewhat polar molecule, it dissolves well in water, a polar liquid. However, since many of the other 400-plus compounds that contribute to coffee's taste and aroma also dissolve in H_2O, hot water decaffeination processes can also remove some of these compounds, adversely affecting the smell and taste of the decaffeinated coffee. Dichloromethane (CH_2Cl_2) and ethyl acetate ($CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$) have similar polarity to caffeine, and are therefore very effective solvents for caffeine extraction, but both also remove some flavor and aroma components, and their use requires long extraction and cleanup times. Because both of these solvents are toxic, health concerns have been raised regarding the effect of residual solvent remaining in the decaffeinated coffee.

Supercritical fluid extraction using carbon dioxide is now being widely used as a more effective and environmentally friendly decaffeination method (Figure 9.5.7). At temperatures above 304.2 K and pressures above 7376 kPa, CO_2 is a supercritical fluid, with properties of both gas and liquid. Like a gas, it penetrates deep into the coffee beans; like a liquid, it effectively dissolves certain substances. Supercritical carbon dioxide extraction of steamed coffee beans removes 97−99% of the caffeine, leaving coffee's flavor and aroma compounds intact. Because CO_2 is a gas under standard conditions, its removal from the extracted coffee beans is easily accomplished, as is the recovery of the caffeine from the extract. The caffeine recovered from coffee beans via this process is a valuable product that can be used subsequently as an additive to other foods or drugs.

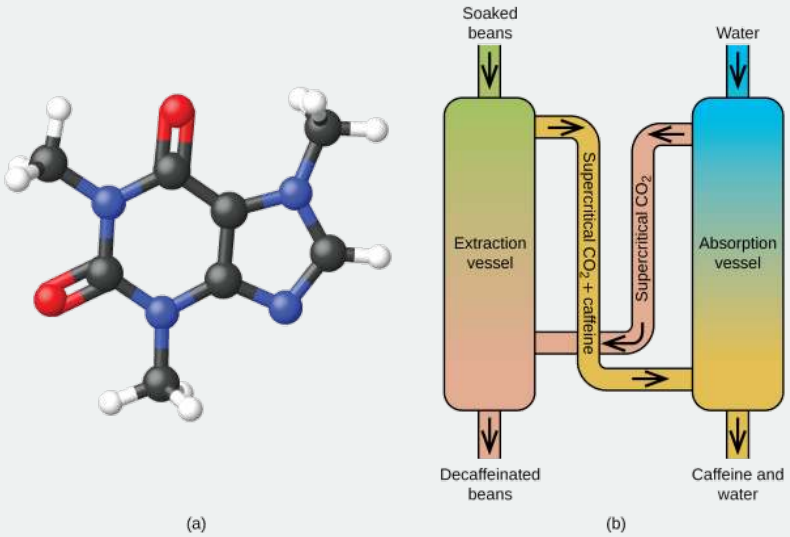


Figure 9.5.7: (a) Caffeine molecules have both polar and nonpolar regions, making it soluble in solvents of varying polarities. (b) The schematic shows a typical decaffeination process involving supercritical carbon dioxide.

This page titled 9.5: Phase Diagrams is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.4: Phase Diagrams** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.6: The Solid State of Matter

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define and describe the bonding and properties of ionic, molecular, metallic, and covalent network crystalline solids
- Describe the main types of crystalline solids: ionic solids, metallic solids, covalent network solids, and molecular solids
- Explain the ways in which crystal defects can occur in a solid

When most liquids are cooled, they eventually freeze and form **crystalline solids**, solids in which the atoms, ions, or molecules are arranged in a definite repeating pattern. It is also possible for a liquid to freeze before its molecules become arranged in an orderly pattern. The resulting materials are called **amorphous solids** or noncrystalline solids (or, sometimes, glasses). The particles of such solids lack an ordered internal structure and are randomly arranged (Figure 9.6.1).

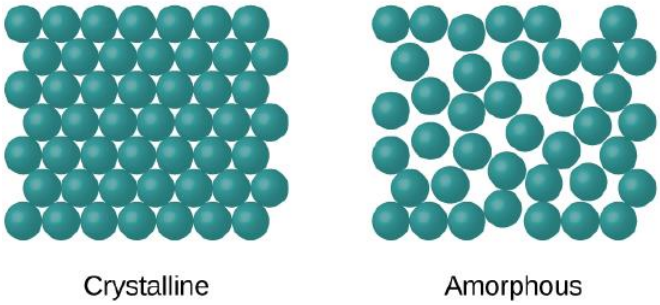


Figure 9.6.1: The entities of a solid phase may be arranged in a regular, repeating pattern (crystalline solids) or randomly (amorphous).

Metals and ionic compounds typically form ordered, crystalline solids. Substances that consist of large molecules, or a mixture of molecules whose movements are more restricted, often form amorphous solids. For examples, candle waxes are amorphous solids composed of large hydrocarbon molecules. Some substances, such as silicon dioxide (shown in Figure 9.6.2), can form either crystalline or amorphous solids, depending on the conditions under which it is produced. Also, amorphous solids may undergo a transition to the crystalline state under appropriate conditions.

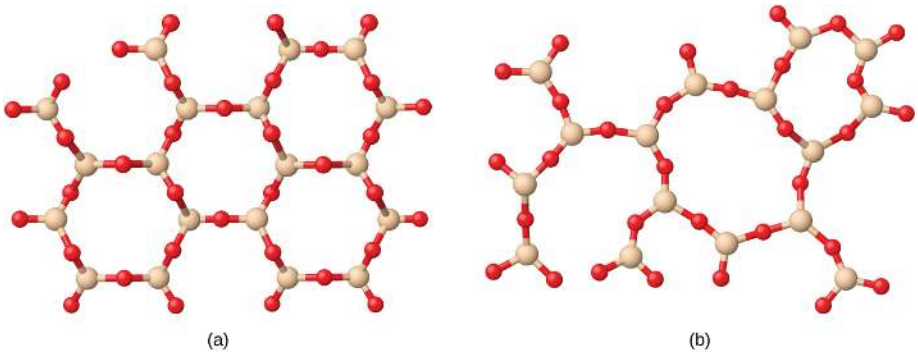


Figure 9.6.2: (a) Silicon dioxide, SiO_2, is abundant in nature as one of several crystalline forms of the mineral quartz. (b) Rapid cooling of molten SiO_2 yields an amorphous solid known as “fused silica”.

Crystalline solids are generally classified according to the nature of the forces that hold its particles together. These forces are primarily responsible for the physical properties exhibited by the bulk solids. The following sections provide descriptions of the major types of crystalline solids: ionic, metallic, covalent network, and molecular.

Ionic Solids

Ionic solids, such as sodium chloride and nickel oxide, are composed of positive and negative ions that are held together by electrostatic attractions, which can be quite strong (Figure 9.6.3). Many ionic crystals also have high melting points. This is due to the very strong attractions between the ions—in ionic compounds, the attractions between full charges are (much) larger than those between the partial charges in polar molecular compounds. This will be looked at in more detail in a later discussion of lattice

energies. Although they are hard, they also tend to be brittle, and they shatter rather than bend. Ionic solids do not conduct electricity; however, they do conduct when molten or dissolved because their ions are free to move. Many simple compounds formed by the reaction of a metallic element with a nonmetallic element are ionic.

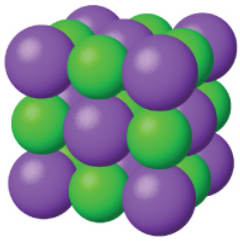


Figure 9.6.3: Sodium chloride is an ionic solid.

Metallic Solids

Metallic solids such as crystals of copper, aluminum, and iron are formed by metal atoms Figure 9.6.4. The structure of metallic crystals is often described as a uniform distribution of atomic nuclei within a "sea" of delocalized electrons. The atoms within such a metallic solid are held together by a unique force known as *metallic bonding* that gives rise to many useful and varied bulk properties. All exhibit high thermal and electrical conductivity, metallic luster, and malleability. Many are very hard and quite strong. Because of their malleability (the ability to deform under pressure or hammering), they do not shatter and, therefore, make useful construction materials. The melting points of the metals vary widely. Mercury is a liquid at room temperature, and the alkali metals melt below 200 °C. Several post-transition metals also have low melting points, whereas the transition metals melt at temperatures above 1000 °C. These differences reflect differences in strengths of metallic bonding among the metals.

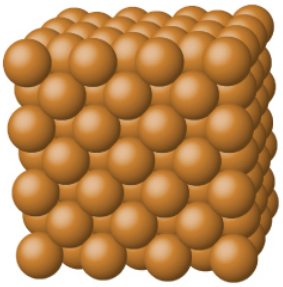


Figure 9.6.4: Copper is a metallic solid.

Covalent Network Solids

Covalent network solids include crystals of diamond, silicon, some other nonmetals, and some covalent compounds such as silicon dioxide (sand) and silicon carbide (carborundum, the abrasive on sandpaper). Many minerals have networks of covalent bonds. The atoms in these solids are held together by a network of covalent bonds, as shown in Figure 9.6.5. To break or to melt a covalent network solid, covalent bonds must be broken. Because covalent bonds are relatively strong, covalent network solids are typically characterized by hardness, strength, and high melting points. For example, diamond is one of the hardest substances known and melts above 3500 °C.

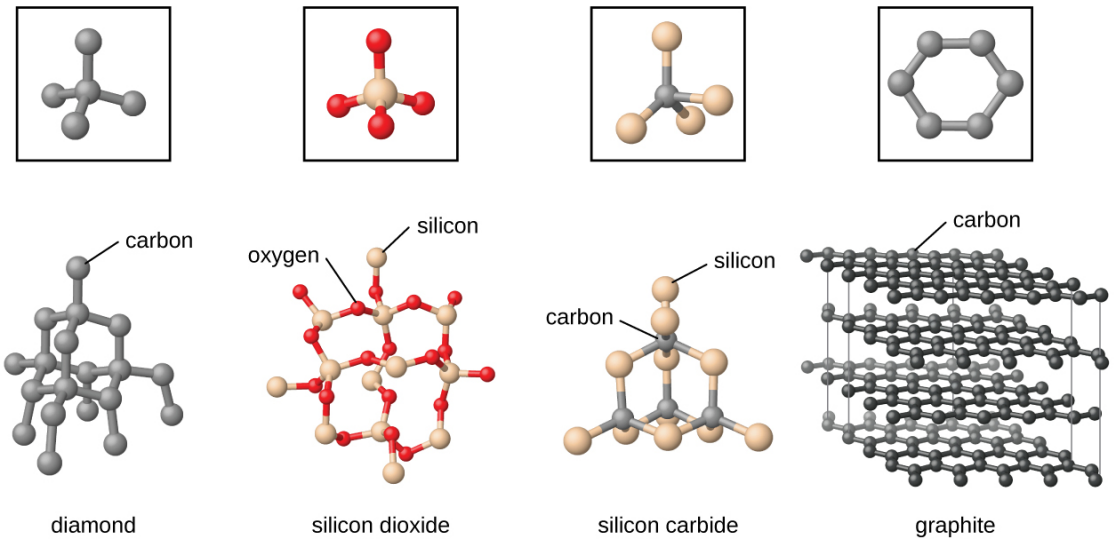


Figure 9.6.5: A covalent crystal contains a three-dimensional network of covalent bonds, as illustrated by the structures of diamond, silicon dioxide, silicon carbide, and graphite. Graphite is an exceptional example, composed of planar sheets of covalent crystals that are held together in layers by noncovalent forces. Unlike typical covalent solids, graphite is very soft and electrically conductive.

Molecular Solids

Molecular solids, such as ice, sucrose (table sugar), and iodine, as shown in Figure 9.6.6: , are composed of neutral molecules. The strengths of the attractive forces between the units present in different crystals vary widely, as indicated by the melting points of the crystals. Small symmetrical molecules (nonpolar molecules), such as H_2, N_2, O_2, and F_2, have weak attractive forces and form molecular solids with very low melting points (below −200 °C). Substances consisting of larger, nonpolar molecules have larger attractive forces and melt at higher temperatures. Molecular solids composed of molecules with permanent dipole moments (polar molecules) melt at still higher temperatures. Examples include ice (melting point, 0 °C) and table sugar (melting point, 185 °C).

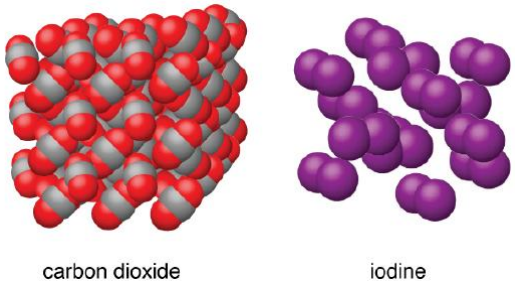


Figure 9.6.6: Carbon dioxide (CO_2) consists of small, nonpolar molecules and forms a molecular solid with a melting point of −78 °C. Iodine (I_2) consists of larger, nonpolar molecules and forms a molecular solid that melts at 114 °C.

Properties of Solids

A crystalline solid, like those listed in Table 9.6.1, has a precise melting temperature because each atom or molecule of the same type is held in place with the same forces or energy. Thus, the attractions between the units that make up the crystal all have the same strength and all require the same amount of energy to be broken. The gradual softening of an amorphous material differs dramatically from the distinct melting of a crystalline solid. This results from the structural nonequivalence of the molecules in the amorphous solid. Some forces are weaker than others, and when an amorphous material is heated, the weakest intermolecular attractions break first. As the temperature is increased further, the stronger attractions are broken. Thus amorphous materials soften over a range of temperatures.

Table 9.6.1: Types of Crystalline Solids and Their Properties

Type of Solid	Type of Particles	Type of Attractions	Properties	Examples

Type of Solid	Type of Particles	Type of Attractions	Properties	Examples
ionic	ions	ionic bonds	hard, brittle, conducts electricity as a liquid but not as a solid, high to very high melting points	NaCl, Al_2O_3
metallic	atoms of electropositive elements	metallic bonds	shiny, malleable, ductile, conducts heat and electricity well, variable hardness and melting temperature	Cu, Fe, Ti, Pb, U
covalent network	atoms of electronegative elements	covalent bonds	very hard, not conductive, very high melting points	C (diamond), SiO_2, SiC
molecular	molecules (or atoms)	IMFs	variable hardness, variable brittleness, not conductive, low melting points	H_2O, CO_2, I_2, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$

How Sciences Interconnect: Graphene: Material of the Future

Carbon is an essential element in our world. The unique properties of carbon atoms allow the existence of carbon-based life forms such as ourselves. Carbon forms a huge variety of substances that we use on a daily basis, including those shown in Figure 9.6.7. You may be familiar with diamond and graphite, the two most common *allotropes* of carbon. (Allotropes are different structural forms of the same element.) Diamond is one of the hardest-known substances, whereas graphite is soft enough to be used as pencil lead. These very different properties stem from the different arrangements of the carbon atoms in the different allotropes.

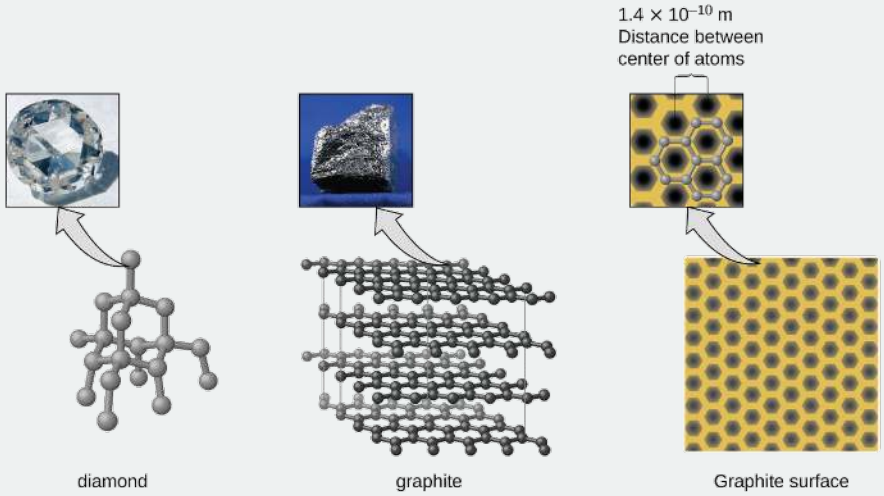


Figure 9.6.7: Diamond is extremely hard because of the strong bonding between carbon atoms in all directions. Graphite (in pencil lead) rubs off onto paper due to the weak attractions between the carbon layers. An image of a graphite surface shows the distance between the centers of adjacent carbon atoms. (credit left photo: modification of work by Steve Jurvetson; credit middle photo: modification of work by United States Geological Survey)

You may be less familiar with a recently discovered form of carbon: graphene. Graphene was first isolated in 2004 by using tape to peel off thinner and thinner layers from graphite. It is essentially a single sheet (one atom thick) of graphite. Graphene, illustrated in Figure 9.6.8: , is not only strong and lightweight, but it is also an excellent conductor of electricity and heat. These properties may prove very useful in a wide range of applications, such as vastly improved computer chips and circuits, better batteries and solar cells, and stronger and lighter structural materials. The 2010 Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Andre Geim and Konstantin Novoselov for their pioneering work with graphene.

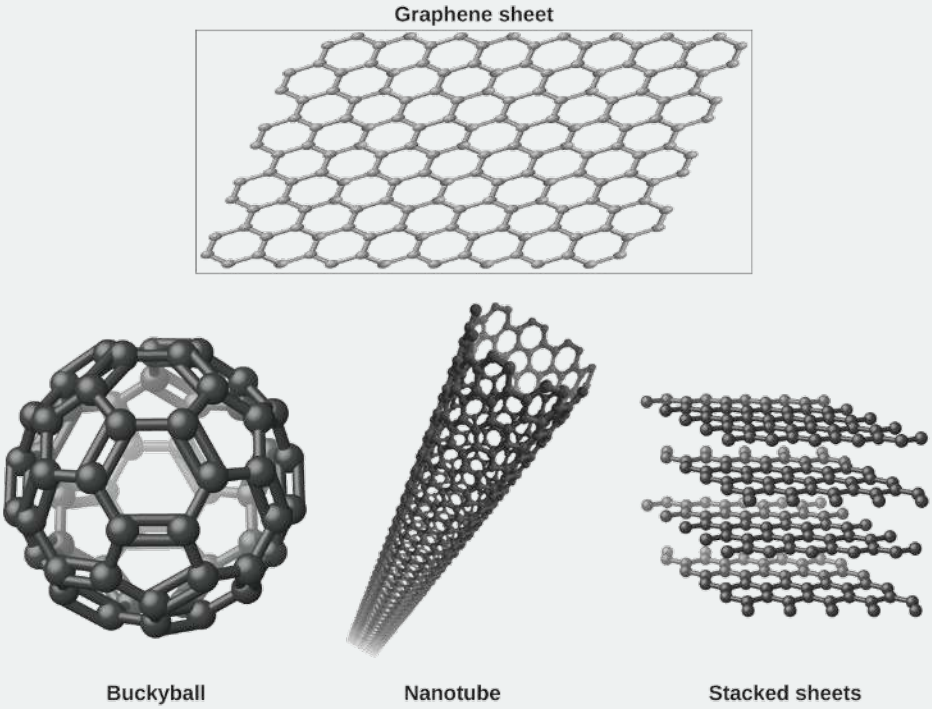


Figure 9.6.8: Graphene sheets can be formed into buckyballs, nanotubes, and stacked layers.

Crystal Defects

In a crystalline solid, the atoms, ions, or molecules are arranged in a definite repeating pattern, but occasional defects may occur in the pattern. Several types of defects are known, as illustrated in Figure 9.6.9. **Vacancies** are defects that occur when positions that should contain atoms or ions are vacant. Less commonly, some atoms or ions in a crystal may occupy positions, called **interstitial sites**, located between the regular positions for atoms. Other distortions are found in impure crystals, as, for example, when the cations, anions, or molecules of the impurity are too large to fit into the regular positions without distorting the structure. Trace amounts of impurities are sometimes added to a crystal (a process known as *doping)* in order to create defects in the structure that yield desirable changes in its properties. For example, silicon crystals are doped with varying amounts of different elements to yield suitable electrical properties for their use in the manufacture of semiconductors and computer chips.

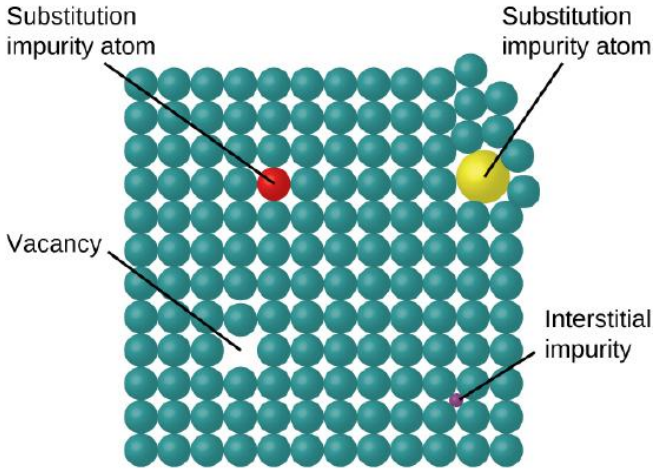


Figure 9.6.9: Types of crystal defects include vacancies, interstitial atoms, and substitutions impurities.

This page titled 9.6: The Solid State of Matter is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.5: The Solid State of Matter** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the arrangement of atoms and ions in crystalline structures
- Compute ionic radii using unit cell dimensions
- Explain the use of X-ray diffraction measurements in determining crystalline structures

Over 90% of naturally occurring and man-made solids are crystalline. Most solids form with a regular arrangement of their particles because the overall attractive interactions between particles are maximized, and the total intermolecular energy is minimized, when the particles pack in the most efficient manner. The regular arrangement at an atomic level is often reflected at a macroscopic level. In this module, we will explore some of the details about the structures of metallic and ionic crystalline solids, and learn how these structures are determined experimentally.

The Structures of Metals

We will begin our discussion of crystalline solids by considering elemental metals, which are relatively simple because each contains only one type of atom. A pure metal is a crystalline solid with metal atoms packed closely together in a repeating pattern. Some of the properties of metals in general, such as their malleability and ductility, are largely due to having identical atoms arranged in a regular pattern. The different properties of one metal compared to another partially depend on the sizes of their atoms and the specifics of their spatial arrangements. We will explore the similarities and differences of four of the most common metal crystal geometries in the sections that follow.

Unit Cells of Metals

The structure of a crystalline solid, whether a metal or not, is best described by considering its simplest repeating unit, which is referred to as its **unit cell**. The unit cell consists of lattice points that represent the locations of atoms or ions. The entire structure then consists of this unit cell repeating in three dimensions, as illustrated in Figure 9.7.1.

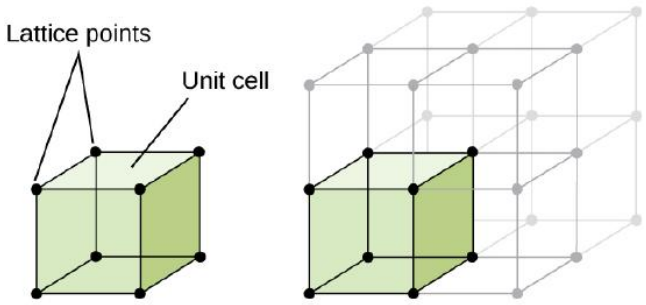


Figure 9.7.1: A unit cell shows the locations of lattice points repeating in all directions.

Let us begin our investigation of crystal lattice structure and unit cells with the most straightforward structure and the most basic unit cell. To visualize this, imagine taking a large number of identical spheres, such as tennis balls, and arranging them uniformly in a container. The simplest way to do this would be to make layers in which the spheres in one layer are directly above those in the layer below, as illustrated in Figure 9.7.2. This arrangement is called **simple cubic structure**, and the unit cell is called the **simple cubic unit cell** or primitive cubic unit cell.

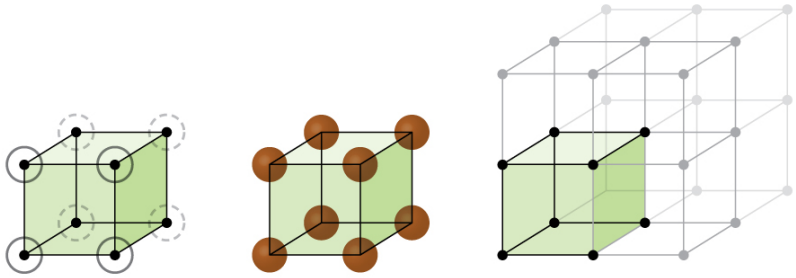


Figure 9.7.2: When metal atoms are arranged with spheres in one layer directly above or below spheres in another layer, the lattice structure is called simple cubic. Note that the spheres are in contact.

In a simple cubic structure, the spheres are not packed as closely as they could be, and they only "fill" about 52% of the volume of the container. This is a relatively inefficient arrangement, and only one metal (polonium, Po) crystallizes in a simple cubic structure. As shown in Figure 9.7.3, a solid with this type of arrangement consists of planes (or layers) in which each atom contacts only the four nearest neighbors in its layer; one atom directly above it in the layer above; and one atom directly below it in the layer below. The number of other particles that each particle in a crystalline solid contacts is known as its **coordination number**. For a polonium atom in a simple cubic array, the coordination number is, therefore, six.

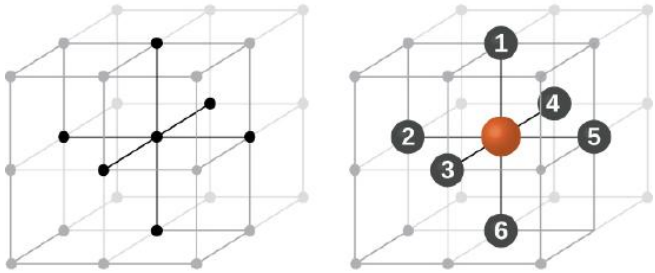


Figure 9.7.3: An atom in a simple cubic lattice structure contacts six other atoms, so it has a coordination number of six.

In a simple cubic lattice, the unit cell that repeats in all directions is a cube defined by the centers of eight atoms, as shown in Figure 9.7.4. Atoms at adjacent corners of this unit cell contact each other, so the edge length of this cell is equal to two atomic radii, or one atomic diameter. A cubic unit cell contains only the parts of these atoms that are within it. Since an atom at a corner of a simple cubic unit cell is contained by a total of eight unit cells, only one-eighth of that atom is within a specific unit cell. And since each simple cubic unit cell has one atom at each of its eight "corners," there is $8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$ atom within one simple cubic unit cell.

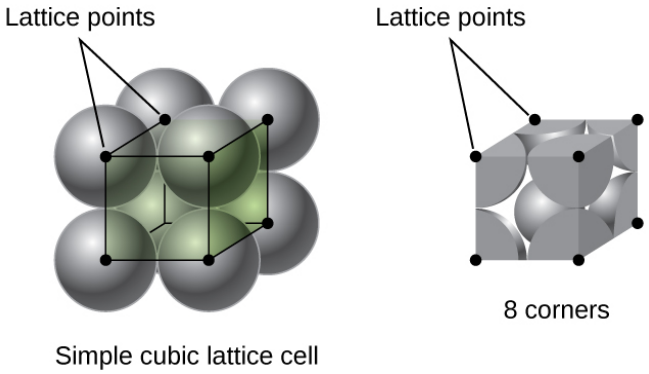


Figure 9.7.4: A simple cubic lattice unit cell contains one-eighth of an atom at each of its eight corners, so it contains one atom total.

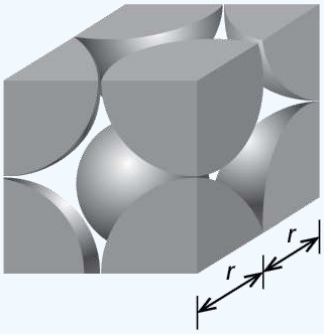
Example 9.7.1: Calculation of Atomic Radius and Density for Metals, Part 1

The edge length of the unit cell of alpha polonium is 336 pm.

a. Determine the radius of a polonium atom.
b. Determine the density of alpha polonium.

Solution

Alpha polonium crystallizes in a simple cubic unit cell:



a. Two adjacent Po atoms contact each other, so the edge length of this cell is equal to two Po atomic radii: $l = 2r$. Therefore, the radius of Po is:

$$r = \frac{l}{2} = \frac{336pm}{2} = 168pm.$$

b. Density is given by $\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$. The density of polonium can be found by determining the density of its unit cell (the mass contained within a unit cell divided by the volume of the unit cell). Since a Po unit cell contains one-eighth of a Po atom at each of its eight corners, a unit cell contains one Po atom.

The mass of a Po unit cell can be found by

$$1 \text{ Po unit cell} \times \frac{1 \text{ Po atom}}{1 \text{ Po unit cell}} \times \frac{1molPo}{6.022 \times 10^{23} \text{ Po atoms}} \times \frac{208.998g}{1molPo} = 3.47 \times 10^{-22}g$$

The volume of a Po unit cell can be found by:

$$V = l^3 = \left(336 \times 10^{-10}cm\right)^3 = 3.79 \times 10^{-23}cm^3$$

(Note that the edge length was converted from pm to cm to get the usual volume units for density.) Therefore, the density is

$$\text{Po } = \frac{3.471 \times 10^{-22}g}{3.79 \times 10^{-23}cm^3} = 9.16g/cm^3$$

Exercise 9.7.1

The edge length of the unit cell for nickel is 0.3524 nm. The density of Ni is 8.90 g/cm^3. Does nickel crystallize in a simple cubic structure? Explain.

Answer

No. If Ni was simple cubic, its density would be given by:

$$1Ni \text{ atom} \times \frac{1molNi}{6.022 \times 10^{23}Ni \text{ atoms}} \times \frac{58.693g}{1molNi} = 9.746 \times 10^{-23}g$$

$$V = l^3 = \left(3.524 \times 10^{-8}cm\right)^3 = 4.376 \times 10^{-23}cm^3$$

Then the density of Ni would be

$$= \frac{9.746 \times 10^{-23} g}{4.376 \times 10^{-23} cm^3} = 2.23 g/cm^3$$

Since the actual density of Ni is not close to this, Ni does not form a simple cubic structure.

Most metal crystals are one of the four major types of unit cells. For now, we will focus on the three cubic unit cells: simple cubic (which we have already seen), **body-centered cubic unit cell**, and **face-centered cubic unit cell**—all of which are illustrated in Figure 9.7.5. (Note that there are actually seven different lattice systems, some of which have more than one type of lattice, for a total of 14 different types of unit cells. We leave the more complicated geometries for later in this module.)

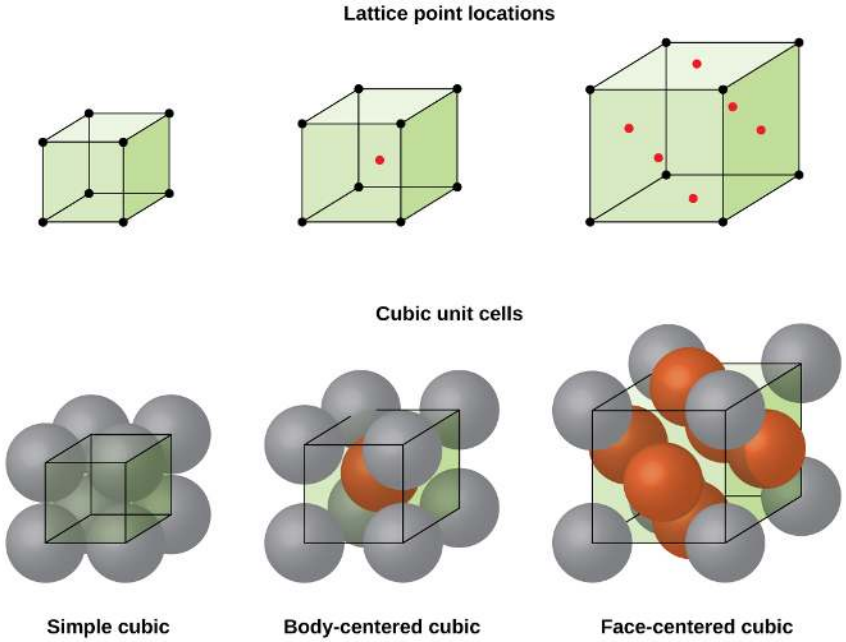


Figure 9.7.5: Cubic unit cells of metals show (in the upper figures) the locations of lattice points and (in the lower figures) metal atoms located in the unit cell.

Some metals crystallize in an arrangement that has a cubic unit cell with atoms at all of the corners and an atom in the center, as shown in Figure 9.7.6. This is called a **body-centered cubic** (BCC) solid. Atoms in the corners of a BCC unit cell do not contact each other but contact the atom in the center. A BCC unit cell contains two atoms: one-eighth of an atom at each of the eight corners atom from the corners ($8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$ atom from the corners) plus one atom from the center. Any atom in this structure touches four atoms in the layer above it and four atoms in the layer below it. Thus, an atom in a BCC structure has a coordination number of eight.

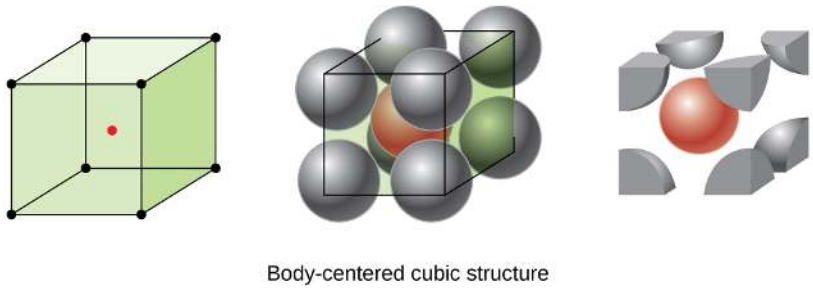


Figure 9.7.6: In a body-centered cubic structure, atoms in a specific layer do not touch each other. Each atom touches four atoms in the layer above it and four atoms in the layer below it.

Atoms in BCC arrangements are much more efficiently packed than in a simple cubic structure, occupying about 68% of the total volume. Isomorphous metals with a BCC structure include K, Ba, Cr, Mo, W, and Fe at room temperature. (Elements or compounds that crystallize with the same structure are said to be **isomorphous**.)

Many other metals, such as aluminum, copper, and lead, crystallize in an arrangement that has a cubic unit cell with atoms at all of the corners and at the centers of each face, as illustrated in Figure 9.7.7. This arrangement is called a **face-centered cubic** (FCC) solid. A FCC unit cell contains four atoms: one-eighth of an atom at each of the eight corners atom from the corners ($8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$ atom from the corners) and one-half of an atom on each of the six faces atoms from the faces ($6 \times \frac{1}{2} = 3$ atom from the faces). The atoms at the corners touch the atoms in the centers of the adjacent faces along the face diagonals of the cube. Because the atoms are on identical lattice points, they have identical environments.

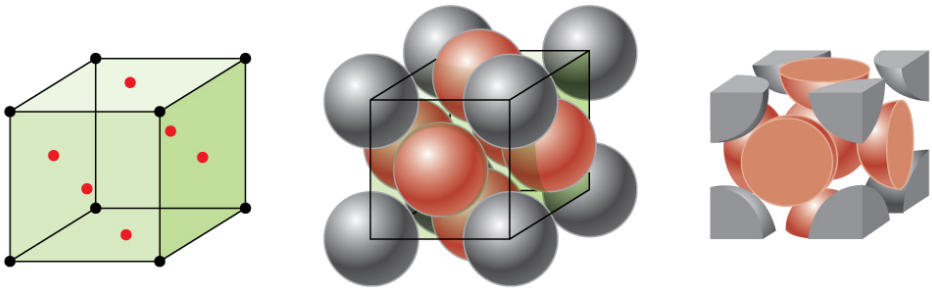


Figure 9.7.7: A face-centered cubic solid has atoms at the corners and, as the name implies, at the centers of the faces of its unit cells.

Atoms in an FCC arrangement are packed as closely together as possible, with atoms occupying 74% of the volume. This structure is also called **cubic closest packing** (CCP). In CCP, there are three repeating layers of hexagonally arranged atoms. Each atom contacts six atoms in its own layer, three in the layer above, and three in the layer below. In this arrangement, each atom touches 12 near neighbors, and therefore has a coordination number of 12. The fact that FCC and CCP arrangements are equivalent may not be immediately obvious, but why they are actually the same structure is illustrated in Figure 9.7.8.

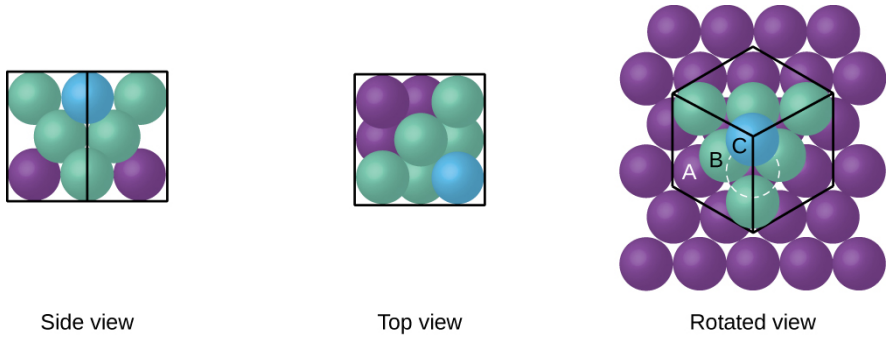


Figure 9.7.8: A CCP arrangement consists of three repeating layers (ABCABC…) of hexagonally arranged atoms. Atoms in a CCP structure have a coordination number of 12 because they contact six atoms in their layer, plus three atoms in the layer above and three atoms in the layer below. By rotating our perspective, we can see that a CCP structure has a unit cell with a face containing an atom from layer A at one corner, atoms from layer B across a diagonal (at two corners and in the middle of the face), and an atom from layer C at the remaining corner. This is the same as a face-centered cubic arrangement.

Because closer packing maximizes the overall attractions between atoms and minimizes the total intermolecular energy, the atoms in most metals pack in this manner. We find two types of closest packing in simple metallic crystalline structures: CCP, which we have already encountered, and hexagonal closest packing (HCP) shown in Figure 9.7.9. Both consist of repeating layers of **hexagonally arranged atoms**. In both types, a second layer (B) is placed on the first layer (A) so that each atom in the second layer is in contact with three atoms in the first layer. The third layer is positioned in one of two ways. In HCP, atoms in the third layer are directly above atoms in the first layer (i.e., the third layer is also type A), and the stacking consists of alternating type A and type B close-packed layers (i.e., ABABAB⋯). In CCP, atoms in the third layer are not above atoms in either of the first two layers (i.e., the third layer is type C), and the stacking consists of alternating type A, type B, and type C close-packed layers (i.e., ABCABCABC⋯). About two–thirds of all metals crystallize in closest-packed arrays with coordination numbers of 12. Metals that crystallize in an HCP structure include Cd, Co, Li, Mg, Na, and Zn, and metals that crystallize in a CCP structure include Ag, Al, Ca, Cu, Ni, Pb, and Pt.

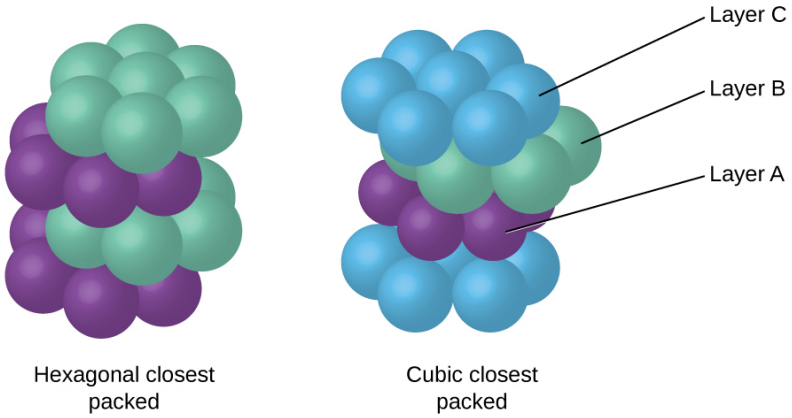


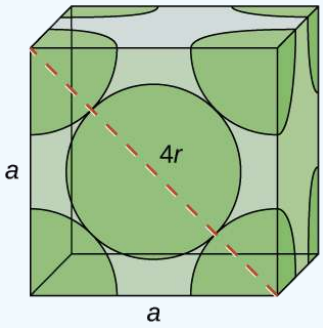
Figure 9.7.9: In both types of closest packing, atoms are packed as compactly as possible. Hexagonal closest packing consists of two alternating layers (ABABAB…). Cubic closest packing consists of three alternating layers (ABCABCABC…).

Example 9.7.2: Calculation of Atomic Radius and Density for Metals, Part 2

Calcium crystallizes in a face-centered cubic structure. The edge length of its unit cell is 558.8 pm.

a. What is the atomic radius of Ca in this structure?
b. Calculate the density of Ca.

Solution



(a) In an FCC structure, Ca atoms contact each other across the diagonal of the face, so the length of the diagonal is equal to four Ca atomic radii (d = 4*r*). Two adjacent edges and the diagonal of the face form a right triangle, with the length of each side equal to 558.8 pm and the length of the hypotenuse equal to four Ca atomic radii:

$$a^2 + a^2 = d^2 \longrightarrow (558.8pm)^2 + (558.5pm)^2 = (4r)^2$$

Solving this gives

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{(558.8pm)^2 + (558.5pm)^2}{16}} = 197.6pm \text{ for a Ca radius.}$$

(b) Density is given by $\text{density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$. The density of calcium can be found by determining the density of its unit cell: for example, the mass contained within a unit cell divided by the volume of the unit cell. A face-centered Ca unit cell has one-eighth of an atom at each of the eight corners ($8 \times \frac{1}{8} = 1$ atom from the corners) and one-half of an atom on each of the six faces ($6 \times \frac{1}{2} = 3$ atom), for a total of four atoms in the unit cell.

The mass of the unit cell can be found by:

$$1Ca \text{ unit cell} \times \frac{4Ca \text{ atoms}}{1Ca \text{ unit cell}} \times \frac{1molCa}{6.022 \times 10^{23} Ca \text{ atoms}} \times \frac{40.078g}{1molCa} = 2.662 \times 10^{-22} g$$

The volume of a Ca unit cell can be found by:

$$V = a^3 = \left(558.8 \times 10^{-10} cm\right)^3 = 1.745 \times 10^{-22} cm^3$$

(Note that the edge length was converted from pm to cm to get the usual volume units for density.)

Then, the density of Ca is

$$\frac{2.662 \times 10^{-22} g}{1.745 \times 10^{-22} cm^3} = 1.53 g/cm^3$$

? Exercise 9.7.2

Silver crystallizes in an FCC structure. The edge length of its unit cell is 409 pm.

a. What is the atomic radius of Ag in this structure?
b. Calculate the density of Ag.

Answer

a. 144 pm
b. 10.5 g/cm^3

In general, a unit cell is defined by the lengths of three axes (*a*, *b*, and *c*) and the angles (*α*, *β*, and *γ*) between them, as illustrated in Figure 9.7.10. The axes are defined as being the lengths between points in the space lattice. Consequently, unit cell axes join points with identical environments.

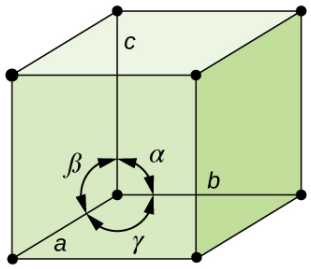


Figure 9.7.10: A unit cell is defined by the lengths of its three axes (*a*, *b*, and *c*) and the angles (*α*, *β*, and *γ*) between the axes.

There are seven different lattice systems, some of which have more than one type of lattice, for a total of fourteen different unit cells, which have the shapes shown in Figure 9.7.11.

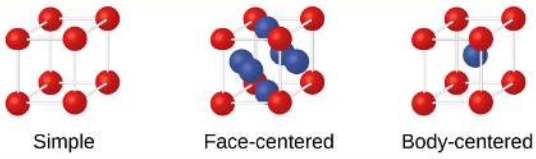
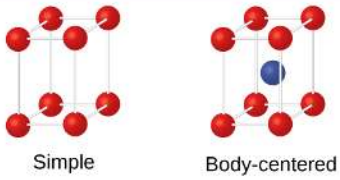
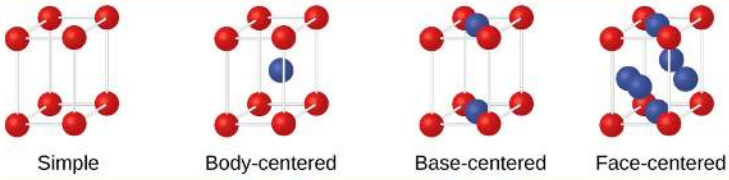
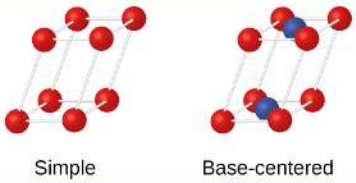
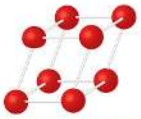
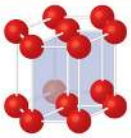
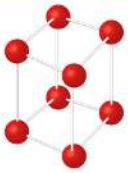
System/Axes/Angles	Unit Cells
Cubic $a = b = c$ $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90^\circ$	
Tetragonal $a = b \neq c$ $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90^\circ$	
Orthorhombic $a \neq b \neq c$ $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90^\circ$	
Monoclinic $a \neq b \neq c$ $\alpha = \gamma = 90^\circ; \beta \neq 90^\circ$	
Triclinic $a \neq b \neq c$ $\alpha \neq \beta \neq \gamma \neq 90^\circ$	
Hexagonal $a = b \neq c$ $\alpha = \beta = 90^\circ; \gamma = 120^\circ$	
Rhombohedral $a = b = c$ $\alpha = \beta = \gamma \neq 90^\circ$	

Figure 9.7.11: There are seven different lattice systems and 14 different unit cells.

The Structures of Ionic Crystals

Ionic crystals consist of two or more different kinds of ions that usually have different sizes. The packing of these ions into a crystal structure is more complex than the packing of metal atoms that are the same size.

Most monatomic ions behave as charged spheres, and their attraction for ions of opposite charge is the same in every direction. Consequently, stable structures for ionic compounds result (1) when ions of one charge are surrounded by as many ions as possible of the opposite charge and (2) when the cations and anions are in contact with each other. Structures are determined by two principal factors: the relative sizes of the ions and the ratio of the numbers of positive and negative ions in the compound.

In simple ionic structures, we usually find the anions, which are normally larger than the cations, arranged in a closest-packed array. (As seen previously, additional electrons attracted to the same nucleus make anions larger and fewer electrons attracted to the same nucleus make cations smaller when compared to the atoms from which they are formed.) The smaller cations commonly occupy one of two types of **holes** (or interstices) remaining between the anions. The smaller of the holes is found between three

anions in one plane and one anion in an adjacent plane. The four anions surrounding this hole are arranged at the corners of a tetrahedron, so the hole is called a tetrahedral hole. The larger type of hole is found at the center of six anions (three in one layer and three in an adjacent layer) located at the corners of an octahedron; this is called an **octahedral hole**. Figure 9.7.12 illustrates both of these types of holes.

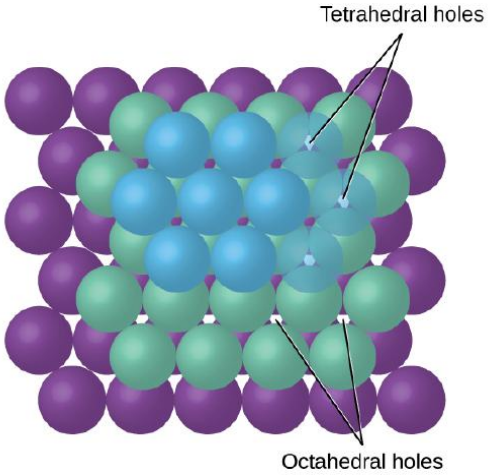


Figure 9.7.12: Cations may occupy two types of holes between anions: octahedral holes or tetrahedral holes.

Depending on the relative sizes of the cations and anions, the cations of an ionic compound may occupy tetrahedral or octahedral holes, as illustrated in Figure 9.7.13. Relatively small cations occupy tetrahedral holes, and larger cations occupy octahedral holes. If the cations are too large to fit into the octahedral holes, the anions may adopt a more open structure, such as a simple cubic array. The larger cations can then occupy the larger cubic holes made possible by the more open spacing.

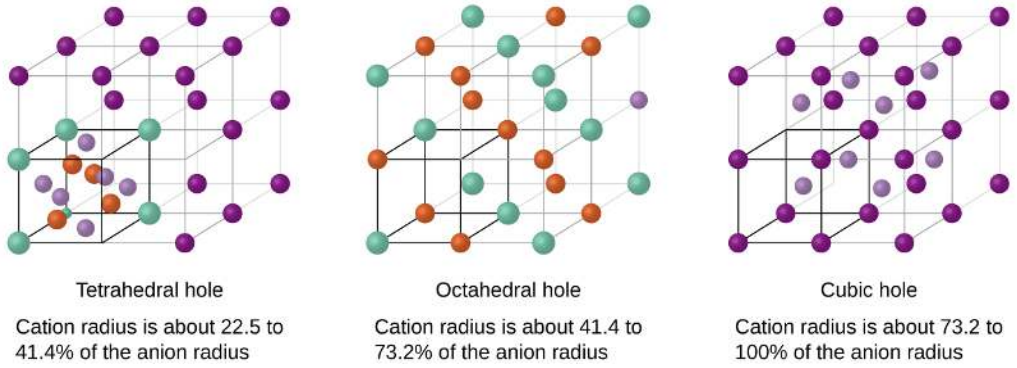


Figure 9.7.13: A cation's size and the shape of the hole occupied by the compound are directly related.

There are two tetrahedral holes for each anion in either an HCP or CCP array of anions. A compound that crystallizes in a closest-packed array of anions with cations in the tetrahedral holes can have a maximum cation:anion ratio of 2:1; all of the tetrahedral holes are filled at this ratio. Examples include Li_2O, Na_2O, Li_2S, and Na_2S. Compounds with a ratio of less than 2:1 may also crystallize in a closest-packed array of anions with cations in the tetrahedral holes, if the ionic sizes fit. In these compounds, however, some of the tetrahedral holes remain vacant.

Example 9.7.3: Occupancy of Tetrahedral Holes

Zinc sulfide is an important industrial source of zinc and is also used as a white pigment in paint. Zinc sulfide crystallizes with zinc ions occupying one-half of the tetrahedral holes in a closest-packed array of sulfide ions. What is the formula of zinc sulfide?

Solution

Because there are two tetrahedral holes per anion (sulfide ion) and one-half of these holes are occupied by zinc ions, there must be $\frac{1}{2} \times 2$ or 1, zinc ion per sulfide ion. Thus, the formula is ZnS.

Exercise 9.7.3

Lithium selenide can be described as a closest-packed array of selenide ions with lithium ions in all of the tetrahedral holes. What it the formula of lithium selenide?

Answer

Li_2Se

The ratio of octahedral holes to anions in either an HCP or CCP structure is 1:1. Thus, compounds with cations in octahedral holes in a closest-packed array of anions can have a maximum cation:anion ratio of 1:1. In NiO, MnS, NaCl, and KH, for example, all of the octahedral holes are filled. Ratios of less than 1:1 are observed when some of the octahedral holes remain empty.

Example 9.7.4: Stoichiometry of Ionic Compounds

Sapphire is aluminum oxide. Aluminum oxide crystallizes with aluminum ions in two-thirds of the octahedral holes in a closest-packed array of oxide ions. What is the formula of aluminum oxide?

Solution

Because there is one octahedral hole per anion (oxide ion) and only two-thirds of these holes are occupied, the ratio of aluminum to oxygen must be $\frac{2}{3}:1$, which would give $Al_{\frac{2}{3}}O$. The simplest whole number ratio is 2:3, so the formula is Al_2O_3.

Exercise 9.7.4

The white pigment titanium oxide crystallizes with titanium ions in one-half of the octahedral holes in a closest-packed array of oxide ions. What is the formula of titanium oxide?

Answer

TiO_2

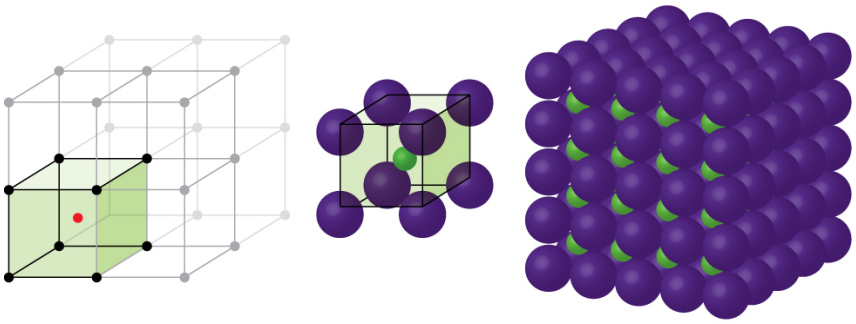
In a simple cubic array of anions, there is one cubic hole that can be occupied by a cation for each anion in the array. In CsCl, and in other compounds with the same structure, all of the cubic holes are occupied. Half of the cubic holes are occupied in SrH_2, UO_2, $SrCl_2$, and CaF_2.

Different types of ionic compounds often crystallize in the same structure when the relative sizes of their ions and their stoichiometries (the two principal features that determine structure) are similar.

Unit Cells of Ionic Compounds

Many ionic compounds crystallize with cubic unit cells, and we will use these compounds to describe the general features of ionic structures.

When an ionic compound is composed of cations and anions of similar size in a 1:1 ratio, it typically forms a simple cubic structure. Cesium chloride, CsCl, (illustrated in Figure 9.7.14) is an example of this, with Cs^+ and Cl^- having radii of 174 pm and 181 pm, respectively. We can think of this as chloride ions forming a simple cubic unit cell, with a cesium ion in the center; or as cesium ions forming a unit cell with a chloride ion in the center; or as simple cubic unit cells formed by Cs^+ ions overlapping unit cells formed by Cl^- ions. Cesium ions and chloride ions touch along the body diagonals of the unit cells. One cesium ion and one chloride ion are present per unit cell, giving the l:l stoichiometry required by the formula for cesium chloride. Note that there is no lattice point in the center of the cell, and CsCl is not a BCC structure because a cesium ion is not identical to a chloride ion.

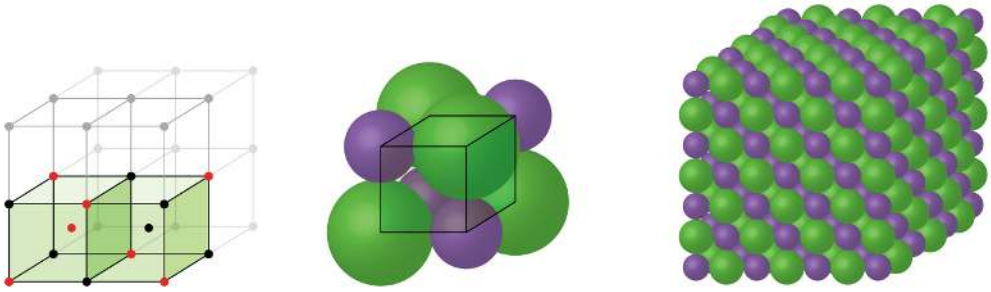


Simple cubic structure

Figure 9.7.14: Ionic compounds with similar-sized cations and anions, such as CsCl, usually form a simple cubic structure. They can be described by unit cells with either cations at the corners or anions at the corners.

We have said that the location of lattice points is arbitrary. This is illustrated by an alternate description of the CsCl structure in which the lattice points are located in the centers of the cesium ions. In this description, the cesium ions are located on the lattice points at the corners of the cell, and the chloride ion is located at the center of the cell. The two unit cells are different, but they describe identical structures.

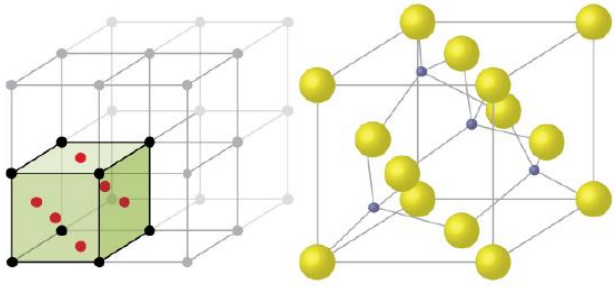
When an ionic compound is composed of a 1:1 ratio of cations and anions that differ significantly in size, it typically crystallizes with an FCC unit cell, like that shown in Figure 9.7.15. Sodium chloride, NaCl, is an example of this, with Na^+ and Cl^- having radii of 102 pm and 181 pm, respectively. We can think of this as chloride ions forming an FCC cell, with sodium ions located in the octahedral holes in the middle of the cell edges and in the center of the cell. The sodium and chloride ions touch each other along the cell edges. The unit cell contains four sodium ions and four chloride ions, giving the 1:1 stoichiometry required by the formula, NaCl.



Face-centered simple cubic structure

Figure 9.7.15: Ionic compounds with anions that are much larger than cations, such as NaCl, usually form an FCC structure. They can be described by FCC unit cells with cations in the octahedral holes.

The cubic form of zinc sulfide, zinc blende, also crystallizes in an FCC unit cell, as illustrated in Figure 9.7.16. This structure contains sulfide ions on the lattice points of an FCC lattice. (The arrangement of sulfide ions is identical to the arrangement of chloride ions in sodium chloride.) The radius of a zinc ion is only about 40% of the radius of a sulfide ion, so these small Zn^{2+} ions are located in alternating tetrahedral holes, that is, in one half of the tetrahedral holes. There are four zinc ions and four sulfide ions in the unit cell, giving the empirical formula ZnS.



ZnS face-centered unit cell

Figure 9.7.16: ZnS, zinc sulfide (or zinc blende) forms an FCC unit cell with sulfide ions at the lattice points and much smaller zinc ions occupying half of the tetrahedral holes in the structure.

A calcium fluoride unit cell, like that shown in Figure 9.7.17, is also an FCC unit cell, but in this case, the cations are located on the lattice points; equivalent calcium ions are located on the lattice points of an FCC lattice. All of the tetrahedral sites in the FCC array of calcium ions are occupied by fluoride ions. There are four calcium ions and eight fluoride ions in a unit cell, giving a calcium:fluorine ratio of 1:2, as required by the chemical formula, CaF_2. Close examination of Figure 9.7.17 will reveal a simple cubic array of fluoride ions with calcium ions in one half of the cubic holes. The structure cannot be described in terms of a **space lattice** of points on the fluoride ions because the fluoride ions do not all have identical environments. The orientation of the four calcium ions about the fluoride ions differs.

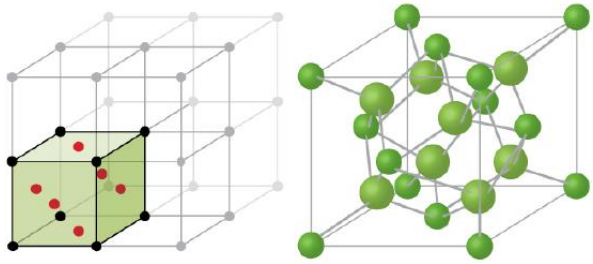


Figure 9.7.17: Calcium fluoride, CaF_2, forms an FCC unit cell with calcium ions (green) at the lattice points and fluoride ions (red) occupying all of the tetrahedral sites between them.

Calculation of Ionic Radii

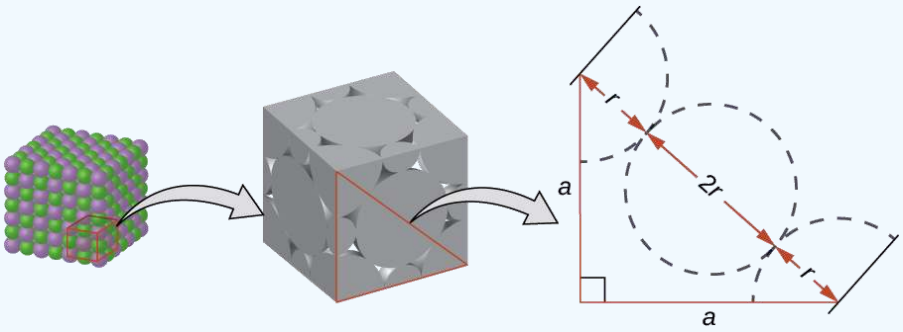
If we know the edge length of a unit cell of an ionic compound and the position of the ions in the cell, we can calculate ionic radii for the ions in the compound if we make assumptions about individual ionic shapes and contacts.

Example 9.7.5: Calculation of Ionic Radii

The edge length of the unit cell of LiCl (NaCl-like structure, FCC) is 0.514 nm or 5.14 Å. Assuming that the lithium ion is small enough so that the chloride ions are in contact, as in Figure 9.7.15, calculate the ionic radius for the chloride ion. Note: The length unit angstrom, Å, is often used to represent atomic-scale dimensions and is equivalent to 10^{-10} m.

Solution

On the face of a LiCl unit cell, chloride ions contact each other across the diagonal of the face:



Drawing a right triangle on the face of the unit cell, we see that the length of the diagonal is equal to four chloride radii (one radius from each corner chloride and one diameter—which equals two radii—from the chloride ion in the center of the face), so $d = 4r$. From the Pythagorean theorem, we have:

a^2+a^2=d^2 \nonumber \]

which yields:

$$(0.514nm)^2 + (0.514nm)^2 = (4r)^2 = 16r^2$$

Solving this gives:

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{(0.514nm)^2 + (0.514nm)^2}{16}} = 0.182nm (1.82\text{Å}) \text{ for a } Cl^- \text{ radius.}$$

Exercise 9.7.1

The edge length of the unit cell of KCl (NaCl-like structure, FCC) is 6.28 Å. Assuming anion-cation contact along the cell edge, calculate the radius of the potassium ion. The radius of the chloride ion is 1.82 Å.

Answer

The radius of the potassium ion is 1.33 Å.

It is important to realize that values for ionic radii calculated from the edge lengths of unit cells depend on numerous assumptions, such as a perfect spherical shape for ions, which are approximations at best. Hence, such calculated values are themselves approximate and comparisons cannot be pushed too far. Nevertheless, this method has proved useful for calculating ionic radii from experimental measurements such as X-ray crystallographic determinations.

X-Ray Crystallography

The size of the unit cell and the arrangement of atoms in a crystal may be determined from measurements of the *diffraction* of X-rays by the crystal, termed X-ray crystallography. Diffraction is the change in the direction of travel experienced by an electromagnetic wave when it encounters a physical barrier whose dimensions are comparable to those of the wavelength of the light. X-rays are electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths about as long as the distance between neighboring atoms in crystals (on the order of a few Å).

When a beam of monochromatic X-rays strikes a crystal, its rays are scattered in all directions by the atoms within the crystal. When scattered waves traveling in the same direction encounter one another, they undergo *interference*, a process by which the waves combine to yield either an increase or a decrease in amplitude (intensity) depending upon the extent to which the combining waves' maxima are separated (see Figure 9.7.18).

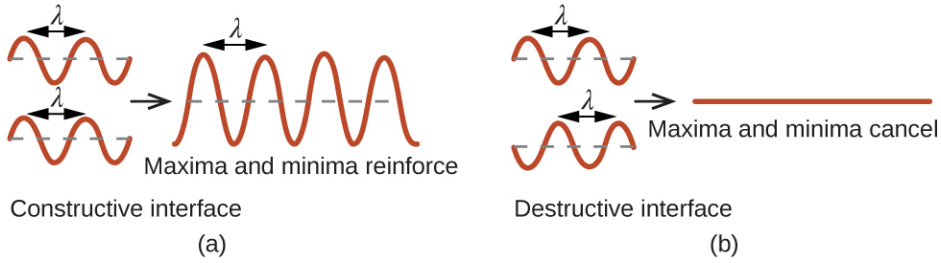


Figure 9.7.18: Light waves occupying the same space experience interference, combining to yield waves of greater (a) or lesser (b) intensity, depending upon the separation of their maxima and minima.

When X-rays of a certain wavelength, λ, are scattered by atoms in adjacent crystal planes separated by a distance, d, they may undergo constructive interference when the difference between the distances traveled by the two waves prior to their combination is an integer factor, n, of the wavelength. This condition is satisfied when the angle of the diffracted beam, θ, is related to the wavelength and interatomic distance by the equation:

$$n\lambda = 2d \sin\theta \tag{9.7.1}$$

This relation is known as the **Bragg equation** in honor of W. H. Bragg, the English physicist who first explained this phenomenon. Figure 9.7.19 illustrates two examples of diffracted waves from the same two crystal planes. The figure on the left depicts waves diffracted at the Bragg angle, resulting in constructive interference, while that on the right shows diffraction and a different angle that does not satisfy the Bragg condition, resulting in destructive interference.

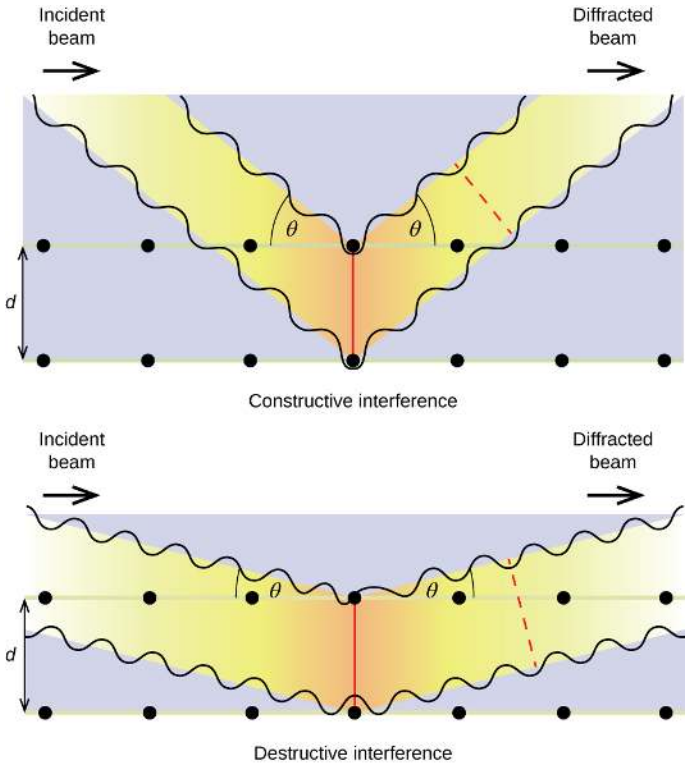


Figure 9.7.19: The diffraction of X-rays scattered by the atoms within a crystal permits the determination of the distance between the atoms. The top image depicts constructive interference between two scattered waves and a resultant diffracted wave of high intensity. The bottom image depicts destructive interference and a low intensity diffracted wave.

Link to Learning

Visit this site for more details on the Bragg equation and a simulator that allows you to explore the effect of each variable on the intensity of the diffracted wave.

An X-ray diffractometer, such as the one illustrated in Figure 9.7.20, may be used to measure the angles at which X-rays are diffracted when interacting with a crystal as described earlier. From such measurements, the Bragg equation may be used to compute distances between atoms as demonstrated in the following example exercise.

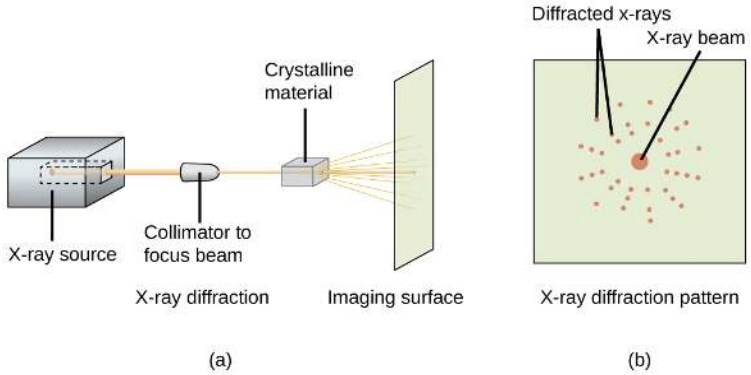


Figure 9.7.20: (a) In a diffractometer, a beam of X-rays strikes a crystalline material, producing (b) an X-ray diffraction pattern that can be analyzed to determine the crystal structure.

Example 9.7.6: Using the Bragg Equation

In a diffractometer, X-rays with a wavelength of 0.1315 nm were used to produce a diffraction pattern for copper. The first order diffraction ($n = 1$) occurred at an angle $\theta = 25.25°$. Determine the spacing between the diffracting planes in copper.

Solution

The distance between the planes is found by solving the Bragg equation (Equation 9.7.1), $n\lambda = 2d\sin\theta$, for d.

This gives:

$$d = \frac{n\lambda}{2\sin\theta} = \frac{1(0.1315nm)}{2\sin(25.25^\circ)} = 0.154nm$$

Exercise 9.7.6

A crystal with spacing between planes equal to 0.394 nm diffracts X-rays with a wavelength of 0.147 nm. What is the angle for the first order diffraction?

Answer

10.8°

Portrait of a Chemist: X-ray Crystallographer Rosalind Franklin

The discovery of the structure of DNA in 1953 by Francis Crick and James Watson is one of the great achievements in the history of science. They were awarded the 1962 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, along with Maurice Wilkins, who provided experimental proof of DNA's structure. British chemist Rosalind Franklin made invaluable contributions to this monumental achievement through her work in measuring X-ray diffraction images of DNA. Early in her career, Franklin's research on the structure of coals proved helpful to the British war effort. After shifting her focus to biological systems in the early 1950s, Franklin and doctoral student Raymond Gosling discovered that DNA consists of two forms: a long, thin fiber formed when wet (type "B") and a short, wide fiber formed when dried (type "A"). Her X-ray diffraction images of DNA (Figure 9.7.21) provided the crucial information that allowed Watson and Crick to confirm that DNA forms a double helix, and to determine details of its size and structure. Franklin also conducted pioneering research on viruses and the RNA that contains their genetic information, uncovering new information that radically changed the body of knowledge in the field. After developing ovarian cancer, Franklin continued to work until her death in 1958 at age 37. Among many posthumous recognitions of her work, the Chicago Medical School of Finch University of Health Sciences changed its name to the Rosalind Franklin University of Medicine and Science in 2004, and adopted an image of her famous X-ray diffraction image of DNA as its official university logo.

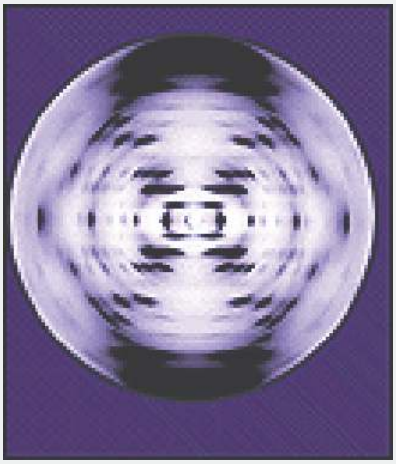


Figure 9.7.21: This illustration shows an X-ray diffraction image similar to the one Franklin found in her research. (credit: National Institutes of Health)

This page titled 9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.6: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

9.8: Key Terms

adhesive force | force of attraction between molecules of different chemical identities

amorphous solid | (also, noncrystalline solid) solid in which the particles lack an ordered internal structure

body-centered cubic (BCC) solid | crystalline structure that has a cubic unit cell with lattice points at the corners and in the center of the cell

body-centered cubic unit cell | simplest repeating unit of a body-centered cubic crystal; it is a cube containing lattice points at each corner and in the center of the cube

boiling point | temperature at which the vapor pressure of a liquid equals the pressure of the gas above it

Bragg equation | equation that relates the angles at which X-rays are diffracted by the atoms within a crystal

capillary action | flow of liquid within a porous material due to the attraction of the liquid molecules to the surface of the material and to other liquid molecules

Clausius-Clapeyron equation | mathematical relationship between the temperature, vapor pressure, and enthalpy of vaporization for a substance

cohesive force | force of attraction between identical molecules

condensation | change from a gaseous to a liquid state

coordination number | number of atoms closest to any given atom in a crystal or to the central metal atom in a complex

covalent network solid | solid whose particles are held together by covalent bonds

critical point | temperature and pressure above which a gas cannot be condensed into a liquid

crystalline solid | solid in which the particles are arranged in a definite repeating pattern

cubic closest packing (CCP) | crystalline structure in which planes of closely packed atoms or ions are stacked as a series of three alternating layers of different relative orientations (ABC)

deposition | change from a gaseous state directly to a solid state

diffraction | redirection of electromagnetic radiation that occurs when it encounters a physical barrier of appropriate dimensions

dipole-dipole attraction | intermolecular attraction between two permanent dipoles

dispersion force | (also, London dispersion force) attraction between two rapidly fluctuating, temporary dipoles; significant only when particles are very close together

dynamic equilibrium | state of a system in which reciprocal processes are occurring at equal rates

face-centered cubic (FCC) solid | crystalline structure consisting of a cubic unit cell with lattice points on the corners and in the center of each face

face-centered cubic unit cell | simplest repeating unit of a face-centered cubic crystal; it is a cube containing lattice points at each corner and in the center of each face

freezing | change from a liquid state to a solid state

freezing point | temperature at which the solid and liquid phases of a substance are in equilibrium; see also *melting point*

hexagonal closest packing (HCP) | crystalline structure in which close packed layers of atoms or ions are stacked as a series of two alternating layers of different relative orientations (AB)

hole | (also, interstice) space between atoms within a crystal

hydrogen bonding | occurs when exceptionally strong dipoles attract; bonding that exists when hydrogen is bonded to one of the three most electronegative elements: F, O, or N

induced dipole | temporary dipole formed when the electrons of an atom or molecule are distorted by the instantaneous dipole of a neighboring atom or molecule

instantaneous dipole | temporary dipole that occurs for a brief moment in time when the electrons of an atom or molecule are distributed asymmetrically

intermolecular force | noncovalent attractive force between atoms, molecules, and/or ions

interstitial sites | spaces between the regular particle positions in any array of atoms or ions

ionic solid | solid composed of positive and negative ions held together by strong electrostatic attractions

isomorphous | possessing the same crystalline structure

melting | change from a solid state to a liquid state

melting point | temperature at which the solid and liquid phases of a substance are in equilibrium; see also *freezing point*

metallic solid | solid composed of metal atoms

molecular solid | solid composed of neutral molecules held together by intermolecular forces of attraction

normal boiling point | temperature at which a liquid's vapor pressure equals 1 atm (760 torr)

octahedral hole | open space in a crystal at the center of six particles located at the corners of an octahedron

phase diagram | pressure-temperature graph summarizing conditions under which the phases of a substance can exist

polarizability | measure of the ability of a charge to distort a molecule's charge distribution (electron cloud)

simple cubic structure | crystalline structure with a cubic unit cell with lattice points only at the corners

simple cubic unit cell | (also, primitive cubic unit cell) unit cell in the simple cubic structure

space lattice | all points within a crystal that have identical environments

sublimation | change from solid state directly to gaseous state

supercritical fluid | substance at a temperature and pressure higher than its critical point; exhibits properties intermediate between those of gaseous and liquid states

surface tension | energy required to increase the area, or length, of a liquid surface by a given amount

tetrahedral hole | tetrahedral space formed by four atoms or ions in a crystal

triple point | temperature and pressure at which three phases of a substance are in equilibrium

unit cell | smallest portion of a space lattice that is repeated in three dimensions to form the entire lattice

vacancy | defect that occurs when a position that should contain an atom or ion is vacant

van der Waals force | attractive or repulsive force between molecules, including dipole-dipole, dipole-induced dipole, and London dispersion forces; does not include forces due to covalent or ionic bonding, or the attraction between ions and molecules

vapor pressure | (also, equilibrium vapor pressure) pressure exerted by a vapor in equilibrium with a solid or a liquid at a given temperature

vaporization | change from liquid state to gaseous state

viscosity | measure of a liquid's resistance to flow

X-ray crystallography | experimental technique for determining distances between atoms in a crystal by measuring the angles at which X-rays are diffracted when passing through the crystal

---

9.8: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.7: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.9: Key Equations

9.9: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.8: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.10: Summary

The physical properties of condensed matter (liquids and solids) can be explained in terms of the kinetic molecular theory. In a liquid, intermolecular attractive forces hold the molecules in contact, although they still have sufficient KE to move past each other.

Intermolecular attractive forces, collectively referred to as van der Waals forces, are responsible for the behavior of liquids and solids and are electrostatic in nature. Dipole-dipole attractions result from the electrostatic attraction of the partial negative end of one polar molecule for the partial positive end of another. The temporary dipole that results from the motion of the electrons in an atom can induce a dipole in an adjacent atom and give rise to the London dispersion force. London forces increase with increasing molecular size. Hydrogen bonds are a special type of dipole-dipole attraction that results when hydrogen is bonded to one of the three most electronegative elements: F, O, or N.

The intermolecular forces between molecules in the liquid state vary depending upon their chemical identities and result in corresponding variations in various physical properties. Cohesive forces between like molecules are responsible for a liquid's viscosity (resistance to flow) and surface tension (elasticity of a liquid surface). Adhesive forces between the molecules of a liquid and different molecules composing a surface in contact with the liquid are responsible for phenomena such as surface wetting and capillary rise.

Phase transitions are processes that convert matter from one physical state into another. There are six phase transitions between the three phases of matter. Melting, vaporization, and sublimation are all endothermic processes, requiring an input of heat to overcome intermolecular attractions. The reciprocal transitions of freezing, condensation, and deposition are all exothermic processes, involving heat as intermolecular attractive forces are established or strengthened. The temperatures at which phase transitions occur are determined by the relative strengths of intermolecular attractions and are, therefore, dependent on the chemical identity of the substance.

The temperature and pressure conditions at which a substance exists in solid, liquid, and gaseous states are summarized in a phase diagram for that substance. Phase diagrams are combined plots of pressure-temperature equilibrium curves representing the relationships between phase transition temperatures and pressures. The point of intersection of any three curves in a phase diagram represents a substance's triple point—the temperature and pressure at which three different phases are in equilibrium. At pressures below a solid-liquid-gas triple point, a substance cannot exist in the liquid state, regardless of its temperature. The terminus of the liquid-gas curve represents the substance's critical point, the pressure and temperature above which a liquid phase cannot exist.

Some substances form crystalline solids consisting of particles in a very organized structure; others form amorphous (noncrystalline) solids with an internal structure that is not ordered. The main types of crystalline solids are ionic solids, metallic solids, covalent network solids, and molecular solids. The properties of the different kinds of crystalline solids are due to the types of particles of which they consist, the arrangements of the particles, and the strengths of the attractions between them. Because their particles experience identical attractions, crystalline solids have distinct melting temperatures; the particles in amorphous solids experience a range of interactions, so they soften gradually and melt over a range of temperatures. Some crystalline solids have defects in the definite repeating pattern of their particles. These defects (which include vacancies, atoms or ions not in the regular positions, and impurities) change physical properties such as electrical conductivity, which is exploited in the silicon crystals used to manufacture computer chips.

The structures of crystalline metals and simple ionic compounds can be described in terms of packing of spheres. Metal atoms can pack in hexagonal closest-packed structures, cubic closest-packed structures, body-centered structures, and simple cubic structures. The anions in simple ionic structures commonly adopt one of these structures, and the cations occupy the spaces remaining between the anions. Small cations usually occupy tetrahedral holes in a closest-packed array of anions. Larger cations usually occupy octahedral holes. Still larger cations can occupy cubic holes in a simple cubic array of anions. The structure of a solid can be described by indicating the size and shape of a unit cell and the contents of the cell. The type of structure and dimensions of the unit cell can be determined by X-ray diffraction measurements.

9.10: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.9: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.11: Exercises

1.

In terms of their bulk properties, how do liquids and solids differ? How are they similar?

2.

In terms of the kinetic molecular theory, in what ways are liquids similar to solids? In what ways are liquids different from solids?

3.

In terms of the kinetic molecular theory, in what ways are liquids similar to gases? In what ways are liquids different from gases?

4.

Explain why liquids assume the shape of any container into which they are poured, whereas solids are rigid and retain their shape.

5.

What is the evidence that all neutral atoms and molecules exert attractive forces on each other?

6.

Open the PhET States of Matter Simulation to answer the following questions:

a. Select the Solid, Liquid, Gas tab. Explore by selecting different substances, heating and cooling the systems, and changing the state. What similarities do you notice between the four substances for each phase (solid, liquid, gas)? What differences do you notice?
b. For each substance, select each of the states and record the given temperatures. How do the given temperatures for each state correlate with the strengths of their intermolecular attractions? Explain.
c. Select the Interaction Potential tab, and use the default neon atoms. Move the Ne atom on the right and observe how the potential energy changes. Select the Total Force button, and move the Ne atom as before. When is the total force on each atom attractive and large enough to matter? Then select the Component Forces button, and move the Ne atom. When do the attractive (van der Waals) and repulsive (electron overlap) forces balance? How does this relate to the potential energy versus the distance between atoms graph? Explain.

7.

Define the following and give an example of each:

a. dispersion force
b. dipole-dipole attraction
c. hydrogen bond

8.

The types of intermolecular forces in a substance are identical whether it is a solid, a liquid, or a gas. Why then does a substance change phase from a gas to a liquid or to a solid?

9.

Why do the boiling points of the noble gases increase in the order He < Ne < Ar < Kr < Xe?

10.

Neon and HF have approximately the same molecular masses.

a. Explain why the boiling points of Neon and HF differ.
b. Compare the change in the boiling points of Ne, Ar, Kr, and Xe with the change of the boiling points of HF, HCl, HBr, and HI, and explain the difference between the changes with increasing atomic or molecular mass.

11.

Arrange each of the following sets of compounds in order of increasing boiling point temperature:

a. HCl, H_2O, SiH_4
b. F_2, Cl_2, Br_2
c. CH_4, C_2H_6, C_3H_8

d. O_2, NO, N_2

12.

The molecular mass of butanol, C_4H_9OH, is 74.14; that of ethylene glycol, $CH_2(OH)CH_2OH$, is 62.08, yet their boiling points are 117.2 °C and 174 °C, respectively. Explain the reason for the difference.

13.

On the basis of intermolecular attractions, explain the differences in the boiling points of *n*–butane (−1 °C) and chloroethane (12 °C), which have similar molar masses.

14.

On the basis of dipole moments and/or hydrogen bonding, explain in a qualitative way the differences in the boiling points of acetone (56.2 °C) and 1-propanol (97.4 °C), which have similar molar masses.

15.

The melting point of $H_2O(s)$ is 0 °C. Would you expect the melting point of $H_2S(s)$ to be −85 °C, 0 °C, or 185 °C? Explain your answer.

16.

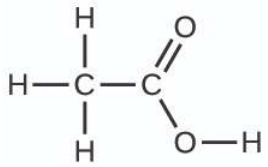
Silane (SiH_4), phosphine (PH_3), and hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) melt at −185 °C, −133 °C, and −85 °C, respectively. What does this suggest about the polar character and intermolecular attractions of the three compounds?

17.

Explain why a hydrogen bond between two water molecules is weaker than a hydrogen bond between two hydrogen fluoride molecules.

18.

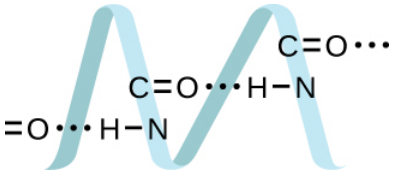
Under certain conditions, molecules of acetic acid, CH_3COOH, form “dimers,” pairs of acetic acid molecules held together by strong intermolecular attractions:



Draw a dimer of acetic acid, showing how two CH_3COOH molecules are held together, and stating the type of IMF that is responsible.

19.

Proteins are chains of amino acids that can form in a variety of arrangements, one of which is a helix. What kind of IMF is responsible for holding the protein strand in this shape? On the protein image, show the locations of the IMFs that hold the protein together:



20.

The density of liquid NH_3 is 0.64 g/mL; the density of gaseous NH_3 at STP is 0.0007 g/mL. Explain the difference between the densities of these two phases.

21.

Identify the intermolecular forces present in the following solids:

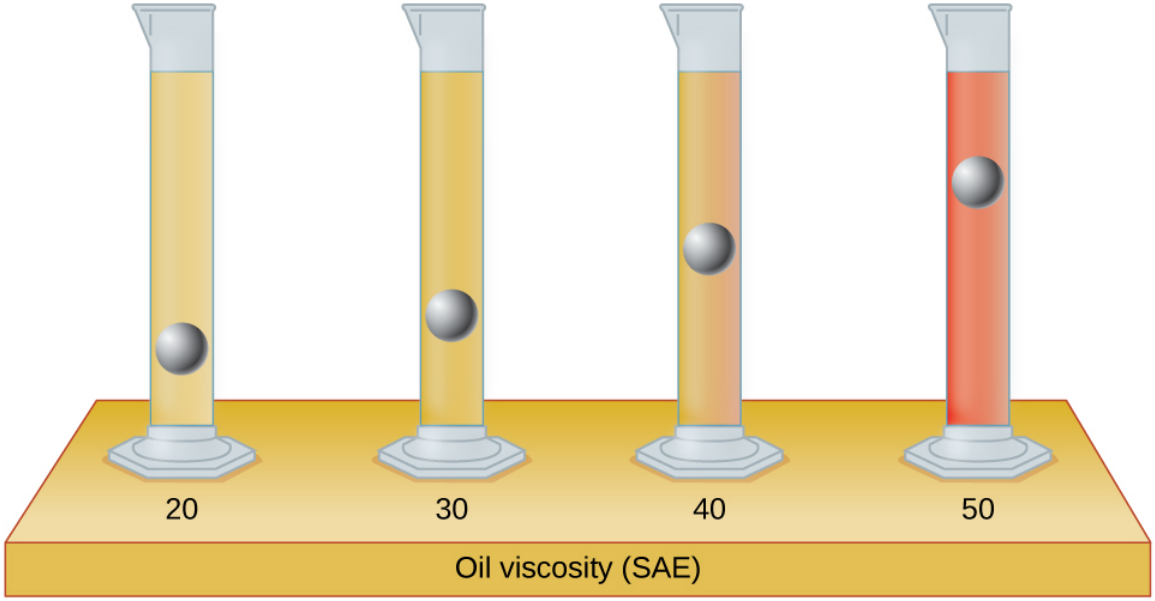
a. CH_3CH_2OH
b. $CH_3CH_2CH_3$

c. CH_3CH_2Cl

22.

The test tubes shown here contain equal amounts of the specified motor oils. Identical metal spheres were dropped at the same time into each of the tubes, and a brief moment later, the spheres had fallen to the heights indicated in the illustration.

Rank the motor oils in order of increasing viscosity, and explain your reasoning:



23.

Although steel is denser than water, a steel needle or paper clip placed carefully lengthwise on the surface of still water can be made to float. Explain at a molecular level how this is possible.

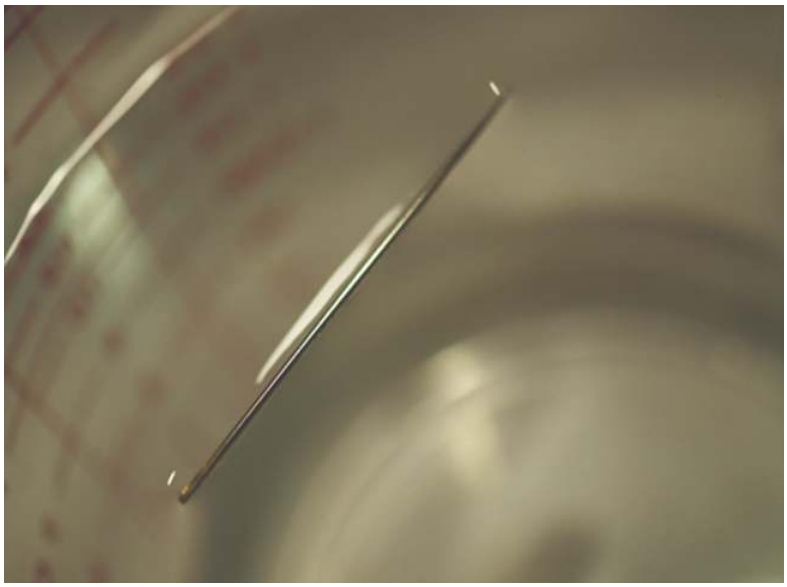
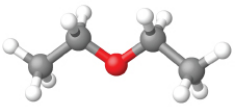
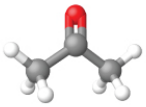
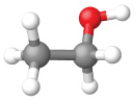
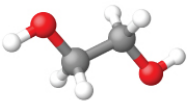


Figure 10.67 (credit: Cory Zanker)

24.

The surface tension and viscosity values for diethyl ether, acetone, ethanol, and ethylene glycol are shown here.

Compound	Molecule	Surface Tension (mN/m)	Viscosity (mPa s)
diethyl ether $C_2H_5OC_2H_5$		17	0.22
acetone CH_3COCH_3		23	0.31
ethanol C_2H_5OH		22	1.07
ethylene glycol $CH_2(OH)CH_2(OH)$		48	16.1

a. Explain their differences in viscosity in terms of the size and shape of their molecules and their IMFs.
b. Explain their differences in surface tension in terms of the size and shape of their molecules and their IMFs:

25.

You may have heard someone use the figure of speech “slower than molasses in winter” to describe a process that occurs slowly. Explain why this is an apt idiom, using concepts of molecular size and shape, molecular interactions, and the effect of changing temperature.

26.

It is often recommended that you let your car engine run idle to warm up before driving, especially on cold winter days. While the benefit of prolonged idling is dubious, it is certainly true that a warm engine is more fuel efficient than a cold one. Explain the reason for this.

27.

The surface tension and viscosity of water at several different temperatures are given in this table.

Water	Surface Tension (mN/m)	Viscosity (mPa s)
0 °C	75.6	1.79
20 °C	72.8	1.00
60 °C	66.2	0.47
100 °C	58.9	0.28

a. As temperature increases, what happens to the surface tension of water? Explain why this occurs, in terms of molecular interactions and the effect of changing temperature.
b. As temperature increases, what happens to the viscosity of water? Explain why this occurs, in terms of molecular interactions and the effect of changing temperature.

28.

At 25 °C, how high will water rise in a glass capillary tube with an inner diameter of 0.63 mm? Refer to Example 10.4 for the required information.

29.

Water rises in a glass capillary tube to a height of 17 cm. What is the diameter of the capillary tube?

30.

Heat is added to boiling water. Explain why the temperature of the boiling water does not change. What does change?

31.

Heat is added to ice at 0 °C. Explain why the temperature of the ice does not change. What does change?

32.

What feature characterizes the dynamic equilibrium between a liquid and its vapor in a closed container?

33.

Identify two common observations indicating some liquids have sufficient vapor pressures to noticeably evaporate?

34.

Identify two common observations indicating some solids, such as dry ice and mothballs, have vapor pressures sufficient to sublime?

35.

What is the relationship between the intermolecular forces in a liquid and its vapor pressure?

36.

What is the relationship between the intermolecular forces in a solid and its melting temperature?

37.

Why does spilled gasoline evaporate more rapidly on a hot day than on a cold day?

38.

Carbon tetrachloride, CCl_4, was once used as a dry cleaning solvent, but is no longer used because it is carcinogenic. At 57.8 °C, the vapor pressure of CCl_4 is 54.0 kPa, and its enthalpy of vaporization is 33.05 kJ/mol. Use this information to estimate the normal boiling point for CCl_4.

39.

When is the boiling point of a liquid equal to its normal boiling point?

40.

How does the boiling of a liquid differ from its evaporation?

41.

Use the information in Figure 10.24 to estimate the boiling point of water in Denver when the atmospheric pressure is 83.3 kPa.

42.

A syringe at a temperature of 20 °C is filled with liquid ether in such a way that there is no space for any vapor. If the temperature is kept constant and the plunger is withdrawn to create a volume that can be occupied by vapor, what would be the approximate pressure of the vapor produced?

43.

Explain the following observations:

a. It takes longer to cook an egg in Ft. Davis, Texas (altitude, 5000 feet above sea level) than it does in Boston (at sea level).
b. Perspiring is a mechanism for cooling the body.

44.

The enthalpy of vaporization of water is larger than its enthalpy of fusion. Explain why.

45.

Explain why the molar enthalpies of vaporization of the following substances increase in the order $CH_4 < C_2H_6 < C_3H_8$, even though the type of IMF (dispersion) is the same.

46.

Explain why the enthalpies of vaporization of the following substances increase in the order $CH_4 < NH_3 < H_2O$, even though all three substances have approximately the same molar mass.

47.

The enthalpy of vaporization of $CO_2(l)$ is 9.8 kJ/mol. Would you expect the enthalpy of vaporization of $CS_2(l)$ to be 28 kJ/mol, 9.8 kJ/mol, or −8.4 kJ/mol? Discuss the plausibility of each of these answers.

48.

The hydrogen fluoride molecule, HF, is more polar than a water molecule, H_2O (for example, has a greater dipole moment), yet the molar enthalpy of vaporization for liquid hydrogen fluoride is lesser than that for water. Explain.

49.

Ethyl chloride (boiling point, 13 °C) is used as a local anesthetic. When the liquid is sprayed on the skin, it cools the skin enough to freeze and numb it. Explain the cooling effect of liquid ethyl chloride.

50.

Which contains the compounds listed correctly in order of increasing boiling points?

a. $N_2 < CS_2 < H_2O < KCl$
b. $H_2O < N_2 < CS_2 < KCl$
c. $N_2 < KCl < CS_2 < H_2O$
d. $CS_2 < N_2 < KCl < H_2O$
e. $KCl < H_2O < CS_2 < N_2$

51.

How much heat is required to convert 422 g of liquid H_2O at 23.5 °C into steam at 150 °C?

52.

Evaporation of sweat requires energy and thus take excess heat away from the body. Some of the water that you drink may eventually be converted into sweat and evaporate. If you drink a 20-ounce bottle of water that had been in the refrigerator at 3.8 °C, how much heat is needed to convert all of that water into sweat and then to vapor? (Note: Your body temperature is 36.6 °C. For the purpose of solving this problem, assume that the thermal properties of sweat are the same as for water.)

53.

Titanium tetrachloride, $TiCl_4$, has a melting point of −23.2 °C and has a $\Delta H_{\text{fusion}} = 9.37$ kJ/mol.

a. How much energy is required to melt 263.1 g $TiCl_4$?
b. For $TiCl_4$, which will likely have the larger magnitude: ΔH_{fusion} or $\Delta H_{\text{vaporization}}$? Explain your reasoning.

54.

From the phase diagram for water (Figure 10.31), determine the state of water at:

a. (f) 60 °C and 50 kPa

55.

What phase changes will take place when water is subjected to varying pressure at a constant temperature of 0.005 °C? At 40 °C? At −40 °C?

56.

Pressure cookers allow food to cook faster because the higher pressure inside the pressure cooker increases the boiling temperature of water. A particular pressure cooker has a safety valve that is set to vent steam if the pressure exceeds 3.4 atm. What is the approximate maximum temperature that can be reached inside this pressure cooker? Explain your reasoning.

57.

From the phase diagram for carbon dioxide in Figure 10.34, determine the state of CO_2 at:

a. (f) −80 °C and 10 kPa

58.

Determine the phase changes that carbon dioxide undergoes as pressure is increased at a constant temperature of (a) −50 °C and (b) 50 °C. If the temperature is held at −40 °C? At 20 °C? (See the phase diagram in Figure 10.34.)

59.

Consider a cylinder containing a mixture of liquid carbon dioxide in equilibrium with gaseous carbon dioxide at an initial pressure of 65 atm and a temperature of 20 °C. Sketch a plot depicting the change in the cylinder pressure with time as gaseous carbon dioxide is released at constant temperature.

60.

Dry ice, $CO_2(s)$, does not melt at atmospheric pressure. It sublimes at a temperature of −78 °C. What is the lowest pressure at which $CO_2(s)$ will melt to give $CO_2(l)$? At approximately what temperature will this occur? (See Figure 10.34 for the phase diagram.)

61.

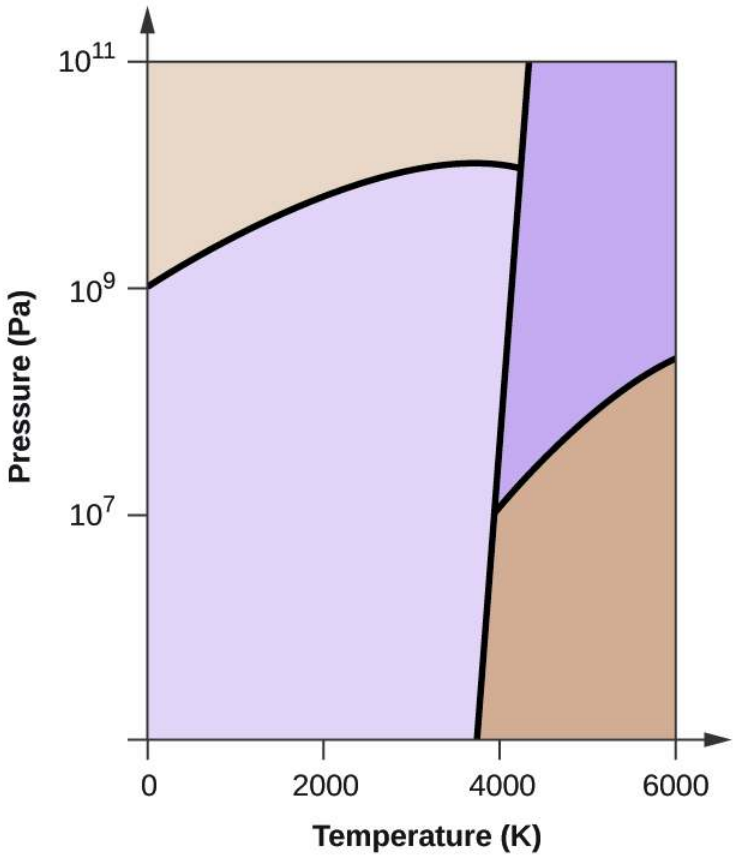
If a severe storm results in the loss of electricity, it may be necessary to use a clothesline to dry laundry. In many parts of the country in the dead of winter, the clothes will quickly freeze when they are hung on the line. If it does not snow, will they dry anyway? Explain your answer.

62.

Is it possible to liquefy nitrogen at room temperature (about 25 °C)? Is it possible to liquefy sulfur dioxide at room temperature? Explain your answers.

63.

Elemental carbon has one gas phase, one liquid phase, and two different solid phases, as shown in the phase diagram:



a. (f) If the temperature of a sample of carbon increases from 3000 K to 5000 K at a constant pressure of 10^6 Pa, which phase transition occurs, if any?

64.

What types of liquids typically form amorphous solids?

65.

At very low temperatures oxygen, O_2, freezes and forms a crystalline solid. Which best describes these crystals?

a. ionic
b. covalent network
c. metallic
d. amorphous
e. molecular crystals

66.

As it cools, olive oil slowly solidifies and forms a solid over a range of temperatures. Which best describes the solid?

a. ionic
b. covalent network
c. metallic
d. amorphous
e. molecular crystals

67.

Explain why ice, which is a crystalline solid, has a melting temperature of 0 °C, whereas butter, which is an amorphous solid, softens over a range of temperatures.

68.

Identify the type of crystalline solid (metallic, network covalent, ionic, or molecular) formed by each of the following substances:

a. (i) C_2H_5OH

69.

Identify the type of crystalline solid (metallic, network covalent, ionic, or molecular) formed by each of the following substances:

a. (i) K_3PO_4

70.

Classify each substance in the table as either a metallic, ionic, molecular, or covalent network solid:

Substance	Appearance	Melting Point	Electrical Conductivity	Solubility in Water
X	lustrous, malleable	1500 °C	high	insoluble
Y	soft, yellow	113 °C	none	insoluble
Z	hard, white	800 °C	only if melted/dissolved	soluble

71.

Classify each substance in the table as either a metallic, ionic, molecular, or covalent network solid:

Substance	Appearance	Melting Point	Electrical Conductivity	Solubility in Water
X	brittle, white	800 °C	only if melted/dissolved	soluble
Y	shiny, malleable	1100 °C	high	insoluble
Z	hard, colorless	3550 °C	none	insoluble

72.

Identify the following substances as ionic, metallic, covalent network, or molecular solids:

Substance A is malleable, ductile, conducts electricity well, and has a melting point of 1135 °C. Substance B is brittle, does not conduct electricity as a solid but does when molten, and has a melting point of 2072 °C. Substance C is very hard, does not conduct electricity, and has a melting point of 3440 °C. Substance D is soft, does not conduct electricity, and has a melting point of 185 °C.

73.

Substance A is shiny, conducts electricity well, and melts at 975 °C. Substance A is likely a(n):

a. ionic solid
b. metallic solid
c. molecular solid
d. covalent network solid

74.

Substance B is hard, does not conduct electricity, and melts at 1200 °C. Substance B is likely a(n):

a. ionic solid
b. metallic solid
c. molecular solid
d. covalent network solid

75.

Describe the crystal structure of iron, which crystallizes with two equivalent metal atoms in a cubic unit cell.

76.

Describe the crystal structure of Pt, which crystallizes with four equivalent metal atoms in a cubic unit cell.

77.

What is the coordination number of a chromium atom in the body-centered cubic structure of chromium?

78.

What is the coordination number of an aluminum atom in the face-centered cubic structure of aluminum?

79.

Cobalt metal crystallizes in a hexagonal closest packed structure. What is the coordination number of a cobalt atom?

80.

Nickel metal crystallizes in a cubic closest packed structure. What is the coordination number of a nickel atom?

81.

Tungsten crystallizes in a body-centered cubic unit cell with an edge length of 3.165 Å.

a. What is the atomic radius of tungsten in this structure?
b. Calculate the density of tungsten.

82.

Platinum (atomic radius = 1.38 Å) crystallizes in a cubic closely packed structure. Calculate the edge length of the face-centered cubic unit cell and the density of platinum.

83.

Barium crystallizes in a body-centered cubic unit cell with an edge length of 5.025 Å

a. What is the atomic radius of barium in this structure?
b. Calculate the density of barium.

84.

Aluminum (atomic radius = 1.43 Å) crystallizes in a cubic closely packed structure. Calculate the edge length of the face-centered cubic unit cell and the density of aluminum.

85.

The density of aluminum is 2.7 g/cm^3; that of silicon is 2.3 g/cm^3. Explain why Si has the lower density even though it has heavier atoms.

86.

The free space in a metal may be found by subtracting the volume of the atoms in a unit cell from the volume of the cell. Calculate the percentage of free space in each of the three cubic lattices if all atoms in each are of equal size and touch their nearest

neighbors. Which of these structures represents the most efficient packing? That is, which packs with the least amount of unused space?

87.

Cadmium sulfide, sometimes used as a yellow pigment by artists, crystallizes with cadmium, occupying one-half of the tetrahedral holes in a closest packed array of sulfide ions. What is the formula of cadmium sulfide? Explain your answer.

88.

A compound of cadmium, tin, and phosphorus is used in the fabrication of some semiconductors. It crystallizes with cadmium occupying one-fourth of the tetrahedral holes and tin occupying one-fourth of the tetrahedral holes in a closest packed array of phosphide ions. What is the formula of the compound? Explain your answer.

89.

What is the formula of the magnetic oxide of cobalt, used in recording tapes, that crystallizes with cobalt atoms occupying one-eighth of the tetrahedral holes and one-half of the octahedral holes in a closely packed array of oxide ions?

90.

A compound containing zinc, aluminum, and sulfur crystallizes with a closest-packed array of sulfide ions. Zinc ions are found in one-eighth of the tetrahedral holes and aluminum ions in one-half of the octahedral holes. What is the empirical formula of the compound?

91.

A compound of thallium and iodine crystallizes in a simple cubic array of iodide ions with thallium ions in all of the cubic holes. What is the formula of this iodide? Explain your answer.

92.

Which of the following elements reacts with sulfur to form a solid in which the sulfur atoms form a closest-packed array with all of the octahedral holes occupied: Li, Na, Be, Ca, or Al?

93.

What is the percent by mass of titanium in rutile, a mineral that contains titanium and oxygen, if structure can be described as a closest packed array of oxide ions with titanium ions in one-half of the octahedral holes? What is the oxidation number of titanium?

94.

Explain why the chemically similar alkali metal chlorides NaCl and CsCl have different structures, whereas the chemically different NaCl and MnS have the same structure.

95.

As minerals were formed from the molten magma, different ions occupied the same cites in the crystals. Lithium often occurs along with magnesium in minerals despite the difference in the charge on their ions. Suggest an explanation.

96.

Rubidium iodide crystallizes with a cubic unit cell that contains iodide ions at the corners and a rubidium ion in the center. What is the formula of the compound?

97.

One of the various manganese oxides crystallizes with a cubic unit cell that contains manganese ions at the corners and in the center. Oxide ions are located at the center of each edge of the unit cell. What is the formula of the compound?

98.

NaH crystallizes with the same crystal structure as NaCl. The edge length of the cubic unit cell of NaH is 4.880 Å.

a. Calculate the ionic radius of H^-. (The ionic radius of Li^+ is 0.0.95 Å.)
b. Calculate the density of NaH.

99.

Thallium(I) iodide crystallizes with the same structure as CsCl. The edge length of the unit cell of TlI is 4.20 Å. Calculate the ionic radius of TI^+. (The ionic radius of I^- is 2.16 Å.)

100.

A cubic unit cell contains manganese ions at the corners and fluoride ions at the center of each edge.

a. What is the empirical formula of this compound? Explain your answer.
b. What is the coordination number of the Mn^{3+} ion?
c. Calculate the edge length of the unit cell if the radius of a Mn^{3+} ion is 0.65 A.
d. Calculate the density of the compound.

101.

What is the spacing between crystal planes that diffract X-rays with a wavelength of 1.541 nm at an angle θ of 15.55° (first order reflection)?

102.

A diffractometer using X-rays with a wavelength of 0.2287 nm produced first order diffraction peak for a crystal angle θ = 16.21°. Determine the spacing between the diffracting planes in this crystal.

103.

A metal with spacing between planes equal to 0.4164 nm diffracts X-rays with a wavelength of 0.2879 nm. What is the diffraction angle for the first order diffraction peak?

104.

Gold crystallizes in a face-centered cubic unit cell. The second-order reflection (n = 2) of X-rays for the planes that make up the tops and bottoms of the unit cells is at θ = 22.20°. The wavelength of the X-rays is 1.54 Å. What is the density of metallic gold?

105.

When an electron in an excited molybdenum atom falls from the L to the K shell, an X-ray is emitted. These X-rays are diffracted at an angle of 7.75° by planes with a separation of 2.64 Å. What is the difference in energy between the K shell and the L shell in molybdenum assuming a first order diffraction?

This page titled 9.11: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.10: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: Solutions and Colloids

In this chapter, we will consider the nature of solutions, and examine factors that determine whether a solution will form and what properties it may have. In addition, we will discuss colloids—systems that resemble solutions but consist of dispersions of particles somewhat larger than ordinary molecules or ions.

10.1: Introduction
10.2: The Dissolution Process
10.3: Electrolytes
10.4: Solubility
10.5: Colligative Properties
10.6: Colloids
10.7: Key Terms
10.8: Key Equations
10.9: Summary
10.10: Exercises

This page titled 11: Solutions and Colloids is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.1: Introduction

Coral reefs are home to about 25% of all marine species. They are being threatened by climate change, oceanic acidification, and water pollution, all of which change the composition of the solution known as seawater. Dissolved oxygen in seawater is critical for sea creatures, but as the oceans warm, oxygen becomes less soluble. As the concentration of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere increases, the concentration of carbon dioxide in the oceans increases, contributing to oceanic acidification. Coral reefs are particularly sensitive to the acidification of the ocean, since the exoskeletons of the coral polyps are soluble in acidic solutions. Humans contribute to the changing of seawater composition by allowing agricultural runoff and other forms of pollution to affect our oceans.



Figure 10.1.1: Coral reefs, such as this one at the Palmyra Atoll National Wildlife Refuge, are vital to the ecosystem of earth's oceans. The health of coral reefs and all marine life depends on the specific chemical composition of the complex mixture known as seawater. (credit: modification of work by "USFWS – Pacific Region"/Wikimedia Commons)

Solutions are crucial to the processes that sustain life and to many other processes involving chemical reactions. This chapter considers the nature of solutions and examines factors that determine whether a solution will form and what properties it may have. The properties of colloids—mixtures containing dispersed particles larger than the molecules and ions of typical solutions—are also discussed.

This page titled 10.1: Introduction is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.0: Introduction** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

10.2: The Dissolution Process

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the basic properties of solutions and how they form
- Predict whether a given mixture will yield a solution based on molecular properties of its components
- Explain why some solutions either produce or absorb heat when they form

An earlier chapter of this text introduced *solutions*, defined as homogeneous mixtures of two or more substances. Often, one component of a solution is present at a significantly greater concentration, in which case it is called the *solvent*. The other components of the solution present in relatively lesser concentrations are called *solutes*. Sugar is a covalent solid composed of sucrose molecules, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$. When this compound dissolves in water, its molecules become uniformly distributed among the molecules of water:

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}(s) \longrightarrow C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}(aq)$$

The subscript "*aq*" in the equation signifies that the sucrose molecules are solutes and are therefore *individually dispersed* throughout the *aqueous solution* (water is the solvent). Although sucrose molecules are heavier than water molecules, they remain dispersed throughout the solution; gravity does not cause them to "settle out" over time.

Potassium dichromate, $K_2Cr_2O_7$, is an ionic compound composed of colorless potassium ions, K^+, and orange dichromate ions, $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$. When a small amount of solid potassium dichromate is added to water, the compound dissolves and dissociates to yield potassium ions and dichromate ions uniformly distributed throughout the mixture (Figure 10.2.1), as indicated in this equation:

$$K_2Cr_2O_7(s) \longrightarrow 2\,K^+(aq) + Cr_2O_7^{2-}(aq)$$

As with the mixture of sugar and water, this mixture is also an aqueous solution. Its solutes, potassium and dichromate ions, remain individually dispersed among the solvent (water) molecules.



Figure 10.2.1: When potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$) is mixed with water, it forms a homogeneous orange solution. (credit: modification of work by Mark Ott)

Link to Learning

Visit this virtual lab to view simulations of the dissolution of common covalent and ionic substances (sugar and salt) in water.

Water is used so often as a solvent that the word solution has come to imply an aqueous solution to many people. However, almost any gas, liquid, or solid can act as a solvent. Many alloys are solid solutions of one metal dissolved in another; for example, US five-cent coins contain nickel dissolved in copper. Air is a gaseous solution, a homogeneous mixture of nitrogen, oxygen, and several other gases. Oxygen (a gas), alcohol (a liquid), and sugar (a solid) all dissolve in water (a liquid) to form liquid solutions. Table 10.2.1 gives examples of several different solutions and the phases of the solutes and solvents.

Table 10.2.1: Different Types of Solutions

Solution	Solute	Solvent
air	$O_2(g)$	$N_2(g)$
soft drinks[1]	$CO_2(g)$	$H_2O(l)$

Solution	Solute	Solvent
hydrogen in palladium	$H_2(g)$	Pd(*s*)
rubbing alcohol	$H_2O(l)$	$C_3H_8O(l)$ (2-propanol)
saltwater	NaCl(*s*)	$H_2O(l)$
brass	Zn(*s*)	Cu(*s*)

Solutions exhibit these defining traits:

- They are homogeneous; after a solution is mixed, it has the same composition at all points throughout (its composition is uniform).
- The physical state of a solution—solid, liquid, or gas—is typically the same as that of the solvent, as demonstrated by the examples in Table 10.2.1.
- The components of a solution are dispersed on a molecular scale; they consist of a mixture of separated solute particles (molecules, atoms, and/or ions) each closely surrounded by solvent species.
- The dissolved solute in a solution will not settle out or separate from the solvent.
- The composition of a solution, or the concentrations of its components, can be varied continuously (within limits determined by the *solubility* of the components, discussed in detail later in this chapter).

The Formation of Solutions

The formation of a solution is an example of a spontaneous process, a process that occurs under specified conditions without the requirement of energy from some external source. Sometimes a mixture is stirred to speed up the dissolution process, but this is not necessary; a homogeneous solution will form eventually. The topic of spontaneity is critically important to the study of chemical thermodynamics and is treated more thoroughly in a later chapter of this text. For purposes of this chapter's discussion, it will suffice to consider two criteria that *favor*, but do not guarantee, the spontaneous formation of a solution:

1. a decrease in the internal energy of the system (an exothermic change, as discussed in the previous chapter on thermochemistry)
2. an increased dispersal of matter in the system (which indicates an increase in the *entropy* of the system, as you will learn about in the later chapter on thermodynamics)

In the process of dissolution, an internal energy change often, but not always, occurs as heat is absorbed or evolved. An increase in matter dispersal always results when a solution forms from the uniform distribution of solute molecules throughout a solvent.

When the strengths of the intermolecular forces of attraction between solute and solvent species in a solution are no different than those present in the separated components, the solution is formed with no accompanying energy change. Such a solution is called an ideal solution. A mixture of ideal gases (or gases such as helium and argon, which closely approach ideal behavior) is an example of an ideal solution, since the entities comprising these gases experience no significant intermolecular attractions.

When containers of helium and argon are connected, the gases spontaneously mix due to diffusion and form a solution (Figure 10.2.2). The formation of this solution clearly involves an increase in matter dispersal, since the helium and argon atoms occupy a volume twice as large as that which each occupied before mixing.

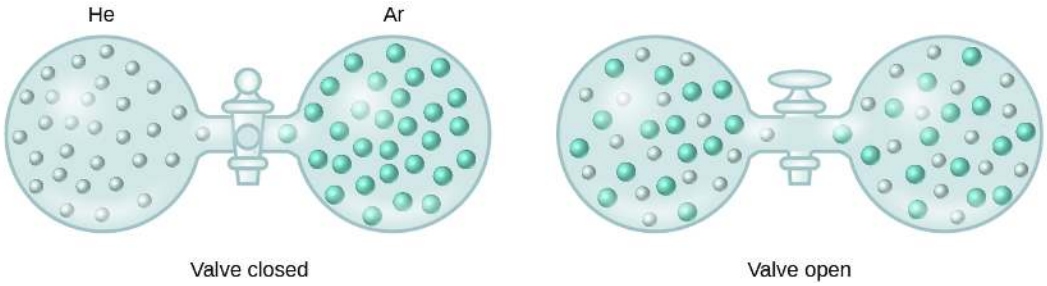


Figure 10.2.2: Samples of helium and argon spontaneously mix to give a solution.

Ideal solutions may also form when structurally similar liquids are mixed. For example, mixtures of the alcohols methanol (CH_3OH) and ethanol (C_2H_5OH) form ideal solutions, as do mixtures of the hydrocarbons pentane, C_5H_{12}, and hexane, C_6H_{14}. Placing methanol and ethanol, or pentane and hexane, in the bulbs shown in Figure 10.2.2 will result in the same diffusion and

subsequent mixing of these liquids as is observed for the He and Ar gases (although at a much slower rate), yielding solutions with no significant change in energy. Unlike a mixture of gases, however, the components of these liquid-liquid solutions do, indeed, experience intermolecular attractive forces. But since the molecules of the two substances being mixed are structurally very similar, the intermolecular attractive forces between like and unlike molecules are essentially the same, and the dissolution process, therefore, does not entail any appreciable increase or decrease in energy. These examples illustrate how increased matter dispersal alone can provide the driving force required to cause the spontaneous formation of a solution. In some cases, however, the relative magnitudes of intermolecular forces of attraction between solute and solvent species may prevent dissolution.

Three types of intermolecular attractive forces are relevant to the dissolution process: solute-solute, solvent-solvent, and solute-solvent. As illustrated in Figure 10.2.3 , the formation of a solution may be viewed as a stepwise process in which energy is consumed to overcome solute-solute and solvent-solvent attractions (endothermic processes) and released when solute-solvent attractions are established (an exothermic process referred to as solvation). The relative magnitudes of the energy changes associated with these stepwise processes determine whether the dissolution process overall will release or absorb energy. In some cases, solutions do not form because the energy required to separate solute and solvent species is so much greater than the energy released by solvation.

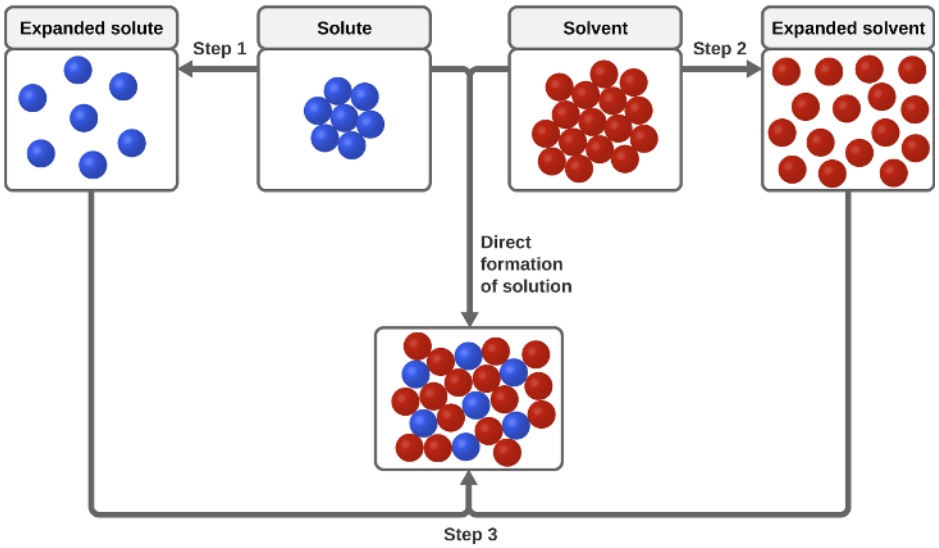


Figure 10.2.3: This schematic representation of dissolution shows a stepwise process involving the endothermic separation of solute and solvent species (Steps 1 and 2) and exothermic solvation (Step 3).

Consider the example of an ionic compound dissolving in water. Formation of the solution requires the electrostatic forces between the cations and anions of the compound (solute–solute) be overcome completely as attractive forces are established between these ions and water molecules (solute–solvent). Hydrogen bonding between a relatively small fraction of the water molecules must also be overcome to accommodate any dissolved solute. If the solute's electrostatic forces are significantly greater than the solvation forces, the dissolution process is significantly endothermic and the compound may not dissolve to an appreciable extent. Calcium carbonate, the major component of coral reefs, is one example of such an "insoluble" ionic compound. On the other hand, if the solvation forces are much stronger than the compound's electrostatic forces, the dissolution is significantly exothermic and the compound may be highly soluble. common example of this type of ionic compound is sodium hydroxide, commonly known as lye.

As noted at the beginning of this module, spontaneous solution formation is favored, but not guaranteed, by exothermic dissolution processes. While many soluble compounds do, indeed, dissolve with the release of heat, some dissolve endothermically. Ammonium nitrate (NH_4NO_3) is one such example and is used to make instant cold packs, like the one pictured in Figure 10.2.4, which are used for treating injuries. A thin-walled plastic bag of water is sealed inside a larger bag with solid NH_4NO_3. When the smaller bag is broken, a solution of NH_4NO_3 forms, absorbing heat from the surroundings (the injured area to which the pack is applied) and providing a cold compress that decreases swelling. Endothermic dissolutions such as this one require a greater energy input to separate the solute species than is recovered when the solutes are solvated, but they are spontaneous nonetheless due to the increase in disorder that accompanies formation of the solution.



Figure 10.2.4: An instant cold pack gets cold when certain salts, such as ammonium nitrate, dissolve in water—an endothermic process.

Link to Learning

Watch this brief video illustrating endothermic and exothermic dissolution processes.

Footnotes

- 1If bubbles of gas are observed within the liquid, the mixture is not homogeneous and, thus, not a solution.

This page titled 10.2: The Dissolution Process is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.1: The Dissolution Process** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

10.3: Electrolytes

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Define and give examples of electrolytes
- Distinguish between the physical and chemical changes that accompany dissolution of ionic and covalent electrolytes
- Relate electrolyte strength to solute-solvent attractive forces

When some substances are dissolved in water, they undergo either a physical or a chemical change that yields ions in solution. These substances constitute an important class of compounds called electrolytes. Substances that do not yield ions when dissolved are called nonelectrolytes. If the physical or chemical process that generates the ions is essentially 100% efficient (all of the dissolved compound yields ions), then the substance is known as a strong electrolyte. If only a relatively small fraction of the dissolved substance undergoes the ion-producing process, it is called a weak electrolyte.

Substances may be identified as strong, weak, or nonelectrolytes by measuring the electrical conductance of an aqueous solution containing the substance. To conduct electricity, a substance must contain freely mobile, charged species. Most familiar is the conduction of electricity through metallic wires, in which case the mobile, charged entities are electrons. Solutions may also conduct electricity if they contain dissolved ions, with conductivity increasing as ion concentration increases. Applying a voltage to electrodes immersed in a solution permits assessment of the relative concentration of dissolved ions, either quantitatively, by measuring the electrical current flow, or qualitatively, by observing the brightness of a light bulb included in the circuit (Figure 10.3.1).

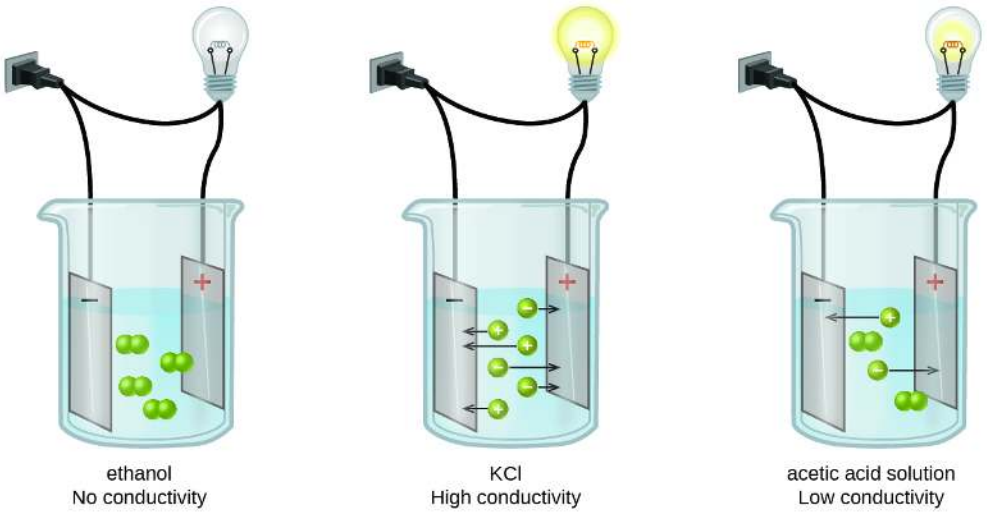


Figure 10.3.1: Solutions of nonelectrolytes such as ethanol do not contain dissolved ions and cannot conduct electricity. Solutions of electrolytes contain ions that permit the passage of electricity. The conductivity of an electrolyte solution is related to the strength of the electrolyte.

Ionic Electrolytes

Water and other polar molecules are attracted to ions, as shown in Figure 10.3.2 The electrostatic attraction between an ion and a molecule with a dipole is called an ion-dipole attraction. These attractions play an important role in the dissolution of ionic compounds in water.

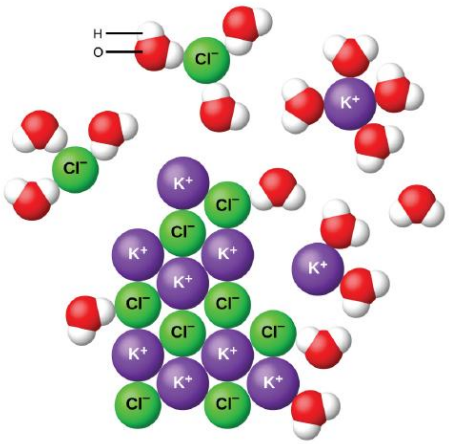


Figure 10.3.2: As potassium chloride (KCl) dissolves in water, the ions are hydrated. The polar water molecules are attracted by the charges on the K^+ and Cl^- ions. Water molecules in front of and behind the ions are not shown.

When ionic compounds dissolve in water, the ions in the solid separate and disperse uniformly throughout the solution because water molecules surround and solvate the ions, reducing the strong electrostatic forces between them. This process represents a physical change known as dissociation. Under most conditions, ionic compounds will dissociate nearly completely when dissolved, and so they are classified as strong electrolytes. Even sparingly, soluble ionic compounds are strong electrolytes, since the small amount that does dissolve will dissociate completely.

Consider what happens at the microscopic level when solid KCl is added to water. Ion-dipole forces attract the positive (hydrogen) end of the polar water molecules to the negative chloride ions at the surface of the solid, and they attract the negative (oxygen) ends to the positive potassium ions. The water molecules surround individual K^+ and Cl^- ions, reducing the strong interionic forces that bind the ions together and letting them move off into solution as solvated ions, as Figure 10.3.2 shows. Overcoming the electrostatic attraction permits the independent motion of each hydrated ion in a dilute solution as the ions transition from fixed positions in the undissolved compound to widely dispersed, solvated ions in solution.

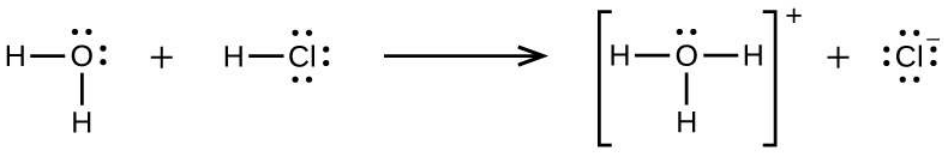
Covalent Electrolytes

Pure water is an extremely poor conductor of electricity because it is only very slightly ionized—only about two out of every 1 billion molecules ionize at 25 °C. Water ionizes when one molecule of water gives up a proton (H^+ ion) to another molecule of water, yielding hydronium and hydroxide ions.

$$H_2O(l) + H_2O(l) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq)$$

In some cases, solutions prepared from covalent compounds conduct electricity because the solute molecules react chemically with the solvent to produce ions. For example, pure hydrogen chloride is a gas consisting of covalent HCl molecules. This gas contains no ions. However, an aqueous solution of HCl is a very good conductor, indicating that an appreciable concentration of ions exists within the solution.

Because HCl is an *acid*, its molecules react with water, transferring H^+ ions to form hydronium ions (H_3O^+) and chloride ions (Cl^-):



This reaction is essentially 100% complete for HCl (i.e., it is a *strong acid* and, consequently, a strong electrolyte). Likewise, weak acids and bases that only react partially generate relatively low concentrations of ions when dissolved in water and are classified as weak electrolytes. The reader may wish to review the discussion of strong and weak acids provided in the earlier chapter of this text on reaction classes and stoichiometry.

This page titled 10.3: Electrolytes is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.2: Electrolytes** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

10.4: Solubility

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the effects of temperature and pressure on solubility
- State Henry's law and use it in calculations involving the solubility of a gas in a liquid
- Explain the degrees of solubility possible for liquid-liquid solutions

Imagine adding a small amount of sugar to a glass of water, stirring until all the sugar has dissolved, and then adding a bit more. You can repeat this process until the sugar concentration of the solution reaches its natural limit, a limit determined primarily by the relative strengths of the solute-solute, solute-solvent, and solvent-solvent attractive forces discussed in the previous two modules of this chapter. You can be certain that you have reached this limit because, no matter how long you stir the solution, undissolved sugar remains. The concentration of sugar in the solution at this point is known as its solubility.

The **solubility** of a solute in a particular solvent is the maximum concentration that may be achieved under given conditions when the dissolution process is *at equilibrium*.

When a solute's concentration is equal to its solubility, the solution is said to be **saturated** with that solute. If the solute's concentration is less than its solubility, the solution is said to be **unsaturated**. A solution that contains a relatively low concentration of solute is called dilute, and one with a relatively high concentration is called concentrated.

Link to Learning

Use this interactive simulation to prepare various saturated solutions.

Solutions may be prepared in which a solute concentration *exceeds* its solubility. Such solutions are said to be supersaturated, and they are interesting examples of *nonequilibrium* states (a detailed treatment of this important concept is provided in the text chapters on equilibrium). For example, the carbonated beverage in an open container that has not yet "gone flat" is supersaturated with carbon dioxide gas; given time, the CO_2 concentration will decrease until it reaches its solubility.

Link to Learning

Watch this impressive video showing the precipitation of sodium acetate from a supersaturated solution.

Solutions of Gases in Liquids

As for any solution, the solubility of a gas in a liquid is affected by the intermolecular attractive forces between solute and solvent species. Unlike solid and liquid solutes, however, there is no solute-solute intermolecular attraction to overcome when a gaseous solute dissolves in a liquid solvent (see Figure 11.4) since the atoms or molecules comprising a gas are far separated and experience negligible interactions. Consequently, solute-solvent interactions are the sole energetic factor affecting solubility. For example, the water solubility of oxygen is approximately three times greater than that of helium (there are greater dispersion forces between water and the larger oxygen molecules) but 100 times less than the solubility of chloromethane, $CHCl_3$ (polar chloromethane molecules experience dipole–dipole attraction to polar water molecules). Likewise note the solubility of oxygen in hexane, C_6H_{14}, is approximately 20 times greater than it is in water because greater dispersion forces exist between oxygen and the larger hexane molecules.

Temperature is another factor affecting solubility, with gas solubility typically decreasing as temperature increases (Figure 10.4.1). This inverse relation between temperature and dissolved gas concentration is responsible for one of the major impacts of thermal pollution in natural waters.

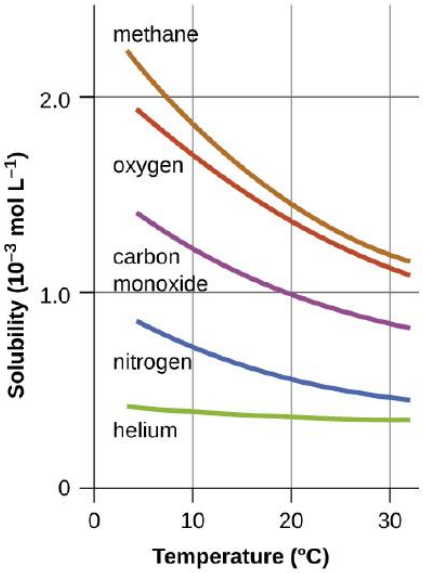


Figure 10.4.1: The solubilities of these gases in water decrease as the temperature increases. All solubilities were measured with a constant pressure of 101.3 kPa (1 atm) of gas above the solutions.

When the temperature of a river, lake, or stream is raised, the solubility of oxygen in the water is decreased. Decreased levels of dissolved oxygen may have serious consequences for the health of the water's ecosystems and, in severe cases, can result in large-scale fish kills (Figure 10.4.2).



Figure 10.4.2: (a) The small bubbles of air in this glass of chilled water formed when the water warmed to room temperature and the solubility of its dissolved air decreased. (b) The decreased solubility of oxygen in natural waters subjected to thermal pollution can result in large-scale fish kills. (credit a: modification of work by Liz West; credit b: modification of work by U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service)

The solubility of a gaseous solute is also affected by the partial pressure of solute in the gas to which the solution is exposed. Gas solubility increases as the pressure of the gas increases. Carbonated beverages provide a nice illustration of this relationship. The carbonation process involves exposing the beverage to a relatively high pressure of carbon dioxide gas and then sealing the beverage container, thus saturating the beverage with CO_2 at this pressure. When the beverage container is opened, a familiar hiss is heard as the carbon dioxide gas pressure is released, and some of the dissolved carbon dioxide is typically seen leaving solution in the form of small bubbles (Figure 10.4.3). At this point, the beverage is *supersaturated* with carbon dioxide and, with time, the dissolved carbon dioxide concentration will decrease to its equilibrium value and the beverage will become "flat."

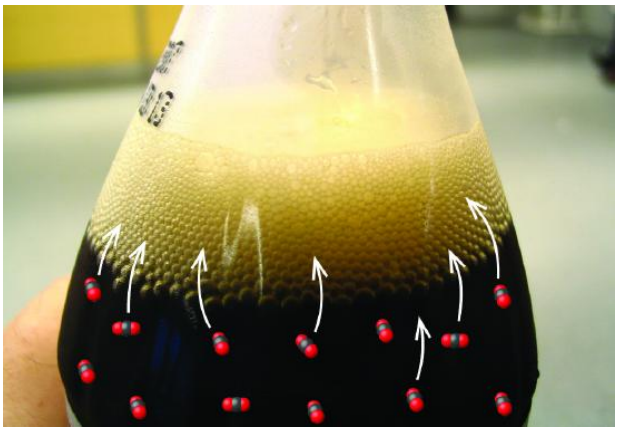


Figure 10.4.3: Opening the bottle of carbonated beverage reduces the pressure of the *gaseous* carbon dioxide above the beverage. The solubility of CO_2 is thus lowered, and some *dissolved* carbon dioxide may be seen leaving the solution as small gas bubbles. (credit: modification of work by Derrick Coetzee)

For many gaseous solutes, the relation between solubility, C_g, and partial pressure, P_g, is a proportional one:

$$C_g = kP_g$$

where *k* is a proportionality constant that depends on the identity of the gaseous solute, the identity of the solvent, and the solution temperature. This is a mathematical statement of Henry's law: *The quantity of an ideal gas that dissolves in a definite volume of liquid is directly proportional to the pressure of the gas.*

Example 10.4.1: Application of Henry's Law

At 20 °C, the concentration of dissolved oxygen in water exposed to gaseous oxygen at a partial pressure of 101.3 kPa is 1.38 \times 10^{−3} mol L^{-1}. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of oxygen when its partial pressure is 20.7 kPa, the approximate pressure of oxygen in earth's atmosphere.

Solution

According to Henry's law, for an ideal solution the solubility, C_g, of a gas (1.38 \times 10^{−3} mol L^{-1}, in this case) is directly proportional to the pressure, P_g, of the undissolved gas above the solution (101.3 kPa in this case). Because both C_g and P_g are known, this relation can be rearranged and used to solve for *k*.

$$\begin{aligned} C_g &= kP_g \\ k &= \frac{C_g}{P_g} \\ &= \frac{1.38 \times 10^{-3} molL^{-1}}{101.3kPa} \\ &= 1.36 \times 10^{-5} molL^{-1}kPa^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Now, use k to find the solubility at the lower pressure.

$$\begin{aligned} C_g =& kP_g \\ & 1.36 \times 10^{-5} molL^{-1}kPa^{-1} \times 20.7kPa \\ =& 2.82 \times 10^{-4} molL^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Note that various units may be used to express the quantities involved in these sorts of computations. Any combination of units that yield to the constraints of dimensional analysis are acceptable.

Exercise 10.4.1

Exposing a 100.0 mL sample of water at 0 °C to an atmosphere containing a gaseous solute at 152 torr resulted in the dissolution of 1.45 \times 10^{−3} g of the solute. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of this gaseous solute when its pressure is 760 torr.

Answer

7.25 \times 10^{−3} in 100.0 mL or 0.0725 g/L

Example 10.4.2: Thermal Pollution and Oxygen Solubility

A certain species of freshwater trout requires a dissolved oxygen concentration of 7.5 mg/L. Could these fish thrive in a thermally polluted mountain stream (water temperature is 30.0 °C, partial pressure of atmospheric oxygen is 0.17 atm)? Use the data in Figure 10.4.1 to estimate a value for the Henry's law constant at this temperature.

Solution

First, estimate the Henry's law constant for oxygen in water at the specified temperature of 30.0 °C (Figure 10.4.1 indicates the solubility at this temperature is approximately ~1.2 mol/L).

\[k=\frac{C_{ g }}{P_{ g }}=1.2 \times 10^{-3} mol / L / 1.00 atm =1.2 \times 10^{-3} mol / L atm]

Then, use this \(k\) value to compute the oxygen solubility at the specified oxygen partial pressure, 0.17 atm.

$$C_g = kP_g = \left(1.2 \times 10^{-3} mol/Latm\right)\left(0.17 atm\right) = 2.0 \times 10^{-4} mol/L$$

Finally, convert this dissolved oxygen concentration from mol/L to mg/L.

$$\left(2.0 \times 10^{-4} mol/L\right)\left(32.0 g/1 mol\right)\left(1000 mg/g\right) = 6.4 mg/L$$

This concentration is lesser than the required minimum value of 7.5 mg/L, and so these trout would likely not thrive in the polluted stream.

Exercise 10.4.2

What dissolved oxygen concentration is expected for the stream above when it returns to a normal summer time temperature of 15 °C?

Answer

8.2 mg/L

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Decompression Sickness or "The Bends"

Decompression sickness (DCS), or "the bends," is an effect of the increased pressure of the air inhaled by scuba divers when swimming underwater at considerable depths. In addition to the pressure exerted by the atmosphere, divers are subjected to additional pressure due to the water above them, experiencing an increase of approximately 1 atm for each 10 m of depth. Therefore, the air inhaled by a diver while submerged contains gases at the corresponding higher ambient pressure, and the concentrations of the gases dissolved in the diver's blood are proportionally higher per Henry's law.

As the diver ascends to the surface of the water, the ambient pressure decreases and the dissolved gases becomes less soluble. If the ascent is too rapid, the gases escaping from the diver's blood may form bubbles that can cause a variety of symptoms ranging from rashes and joint pain to paralysis and death. To avoid DCS, divers must ascend from depths at relatively slow speeds (10 or 20 m/min) or otherwise make several decompression stops, pausing for several minutes at given depths during the ascent. When these preventive measures are unsuccessful, divers with DCS are often provided hyperbaric oxygen therapy in pressurized vessels called decompression (or recompression) chambers (Figure 10.4.4). Researchers are also investigating related body reactions and defenses in order to develop better testing and treatment for decompression sickness. For example, Ingrid Eftedal, a barophysiologist specializing in bodily reactions to diving, has shown that white blood cells undergo chemical

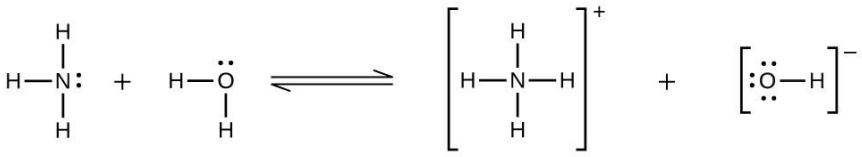
and genetic changes as a result of the condition; these can potentially be used to create biomarker tests and other methods to manage decompression sickness.



(a) (b)

Figure 10.4.4: (a) US Navy divers undergo training in a recompression chamber. (b) Divers receive hyperbaric oxygen therapy.

Deviations from Henry's law are observed when a chemical reaction takes place between the gaseous solute and the solvent. Thus, for example, the solubility of ammonia in water increases more rapidly with increasing pressure than predicted by the law because ammonia, being a base, reacts to some extent with water to form ammonium ions and hydroxide ions.



Gases can form supersaturated solutions. If a solution of a gas in a liquid is prepared either at low temperature or under pressure (or both), then as the solution warms or as the gas pressure is reduced, the solution may become supersaturated. In 1986, more than 1700 people in Cameroon were killed when a cloud of gas, almost certainly carbon dioxide, bubbled from Lake Nyos (Figure 10.4.5), a deep lake in a volcanic crater. The water at the bottom of Lake Nyos is saturated with carbon dioxide by volcanic activity beneath the lake. It is believed that the lake underwent a turnover due to gradual heating from below the lake, and the warmer, less-dense water saturated with carbon dioxide reached the surface. Consequently, tremendous quantities of dissolved CO_2 were released, and the colorless gas, which is denser than air, flowed down the valley below the lake and suffocated humans and animals living in the valley.



(a) (b)

Figure 10.4.5: (a) It is believed that the 1986 disaster that killed more than 1700 people near Lake Nyos in Cameroon resulted when a large volume of carbon dioxide gas was released from the lake. (b) A CO_2 vent has since been installed to help outgas the lake in a slow, controlled fashion and prevent a similar catastrophe from happening in the future. (credit a: modification of work by Jack Lockwood; credit b: modification of work by Bill Evans)

Solutions of Liquids in Liquids

Some liquids may be mixed in any proportions to yield solutions; in other words, they have infinite mutual solubility and are said to be **miscible**. Ethanol, sulfuric acid, and ethylene glycol (popular for use as antifreeze, pictured in Figure 10.4.6) are examples of

liquids that are completely miscible with water. Two-cycle motor oil is miscible with gasoline, mixtures of which are used as lubricating fuels for various types of outdoor power equipment (chainsaws, leaf blowers, and so on).



Figure 10.4.6: Water and antifreeze are miscible; mixtures of the two are homogeneous in all proportions. (credit: “dno1967”/Wikimedia commons)

Miscible liquids are typically those with very similar polarities. Consider, for example, liquids that are polar or capable of hydrogen bonding. For such liquids, the dipole-dipole attractions (or hydrogen bonding) of the solute molecules with the solvent molecules are at least as strong as those between molecules in the pure solute or in the pure solvent. Hence, the two kinds of molecules mix easily. Likewise, nonpolar liquids are miscible with each other because there is no appreciable difference in the strengths of solute-solute, solvent-solvent, and solute-solvent intermolecular attractions. The solubility of polar molecules in polar solvents and of nonpolar molecules in nonpolar solvents is, again, an illustration of the chemical axiom “like dissolves like.”

Two liquids that do not mix to an appreciable extent are called **immiscible**. Separate layers are formed when immiscible liquids are poured into the same container. Gasoline, oil (Figure 10.4.7), benzene, carbon tetrachloride, some paints, and many other nonpolar liquids are immiscible with water. Relatively weak attractive forces between the polar water molecules and the nonpolar liquid molecules are not adequate to overcome much stronger hydrogen bonding between water molecules. The distinction between immiscibility and miscibility is really one of extent, so that miscible liquids are of infinite mutual solubility, while liquids said to be immiscible are of very low (though not zero) mutual solubility.

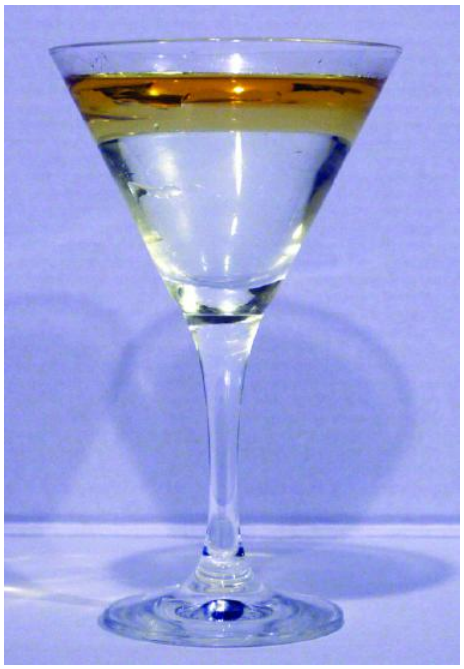


Figure 10.4.7: Water and oil are immiscible. Mixtures of these two substances will form two separate layers with the less dense oil floating on top of the water. (credit: “Yortw”/Flickr)

Two liquids, such as bromine and water, that are of *moderate* mutual solubility are said to be **partially miscible**. Two partially miscible liquids usually form two layers when mixed. In the case of the bromine and water mixture, the upper layer is water, saturated with bromine, and the lower layer is bromine saturated with water. Since bromine is nonpolar, and, thus, not very soluble in water, the water layer is only slightly discolored by the bright orange bromine dissolved in it. Since the solubility of water in bromine is very low, there is no noticeable effect on the dark color of the bromine layer (Figure 10.4.8).



Figure 10.4.8: Bromine (the deep orange liquid on the left) and water (the clear liquid in the middle) are partially miscible. The top layer in the mixture on the right is a saturated solution of bromine in water; the bottom layer is a saturated solution of water in bromine. (credit: Paul Flowers)

Solutions of Solids in Liquids

The dependence of solubility on temperature for a number of solids in water is shown by the solubility curves in Figure 10.4.9. Reviewing these data indicates a general trend of increasing solubility with temperature, although there are exceptions, as illustrated by the ionic compound cerium sulfate.

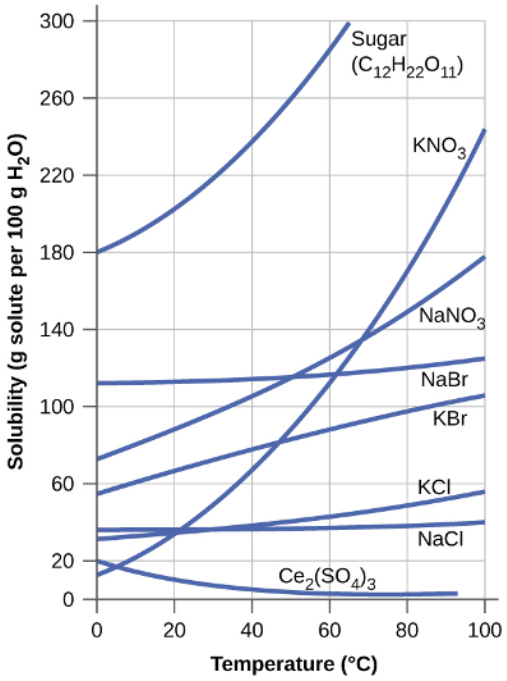


Figure 10.4.9: This graph shows how the solubility of several solids changes with temperature.

The temperature dependence of solubility can be exploited to prepare supersaturated solutions of certain compounds. A solution may be saturated with the compound at an elevated temperature (where the solute is more soluble) and subsequently cooled to a lower temperature without precipitating the solute. The resultant solution contains solute at a concentration greater than its equilibrium solubility at the lower temperature (i.e., it is supersaturated) and is relatively stable. Precipitation of the excess solute can be initiated by adding a seed crystal (see the video in the Link to Learning earlier in this module) or by mechanically agitating the solution. Some hand warmers, such as the one pictured in Figure 10.4.10, take advantage of this behavior.



Figure 10.4.10: This hand warmer produces heat when the sodium acetate in a supersaturated solution precipitates. Precipitation of the solute is initiated by a mechanical shockwave generated when the flexible metal disk within the solution is “clicked.” (credit: modification of work by “Velela”/Wikimedia Commons)

Link to Learning

This video shows the crystallization process occurring in a hand warmer.

This page titled 10.4: Solubility is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.3: Solubility** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

10.5: Colligative Properties

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Express concentrations of solution components using mole fraction and molality
- Describe the effect of solute concentration on various solution properties (vapor pressure, boiling point, freezing point, and osmotic pressure)
- Perform calculations using the mathematical equations that describe these various colligative effects
- Describe the process of distillation and its practical applications
- Explain the process of osmosis and describe how it is applied industrially and in nature

The properties of a solution are different from those of either the pure solute(s) or solvent. Many solution properties are dependent upon the chemical identity of the solute. Compared to pure water, a solution of hydrogen chloride is more acidic, a solution of ammonia is more basic, a solution of sodium chloride is more dense, and a solution of sucrose is more viscous. There are a few solution properties, however, that depend *only* upon the total concentration of solute species, regardless of their identities. These **colligative properties** include vapor pressure lowering, boiling point elevation, freezing point depression, and osmotic pressure. This small set of properties is of central importance to many natural phenomena and technological applications, as will be described in this module.

Mole Fraction and Molality

Several units commonly used to express the concentrations of solution components were introduced in an earlier chapter of this text, each providing certain benefits for use in different applications. For example, molarity (*M*) is a convenient unit for use in stoichiometric calculations, since it is defined in terms of the molar amounts of solute species:

$$M = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{L solution}}$$

Because solution volumes vary with temperature, molar concentrations will likewise vary. When expressed as molarity, the concentration of a solution with identical numbers of solute and solvent species will be different at different temperatures, due to the contraction/expansion of the solution. More appropriate for calculations involving many colligative properties are mole-based concentration units whose values are not dependent on temperature. Two such units are *mole fraction* (introduced in the previous chapter on gases) and *molality*.

The mole fraction, X, of a component is the ratio of its molar amount to the total number of moles of all solution components:

$$X_A = \frac{molA}{\text{total mol of all components}}$$

By this definition, the sum of mole fractions for all solution components (the solvent and all solutes) is equal to one.

Molality is a concentration unit defined as the ratio of the numbers of moles of solute to the mass of the solvent in kilograms:

$$m = \frac{\text{mol solute}}{kg\,\text{solvent}}$$

Since these units are computed using only masses and molar amounts, they do not vary with temperature and, thus, are better suited for applications requiring temperature-independent concentrations, including several colligative properties, as will be described in this chapter module.

Example 10.5.1: Calculating Mole Fraction and Molality

The antifreeze in most automobile radiators is a mixture of equal volumes of ethylene glycol and water, with minor amounts of other additives that prevent corrosion. What are the (a) mole fraction and (b) molality of ethylene glycol, $C_2H_4(OH)_2$, in a solution prepared from 2.22 \times 10^{3} g of ethylene glycol and 2.00 \times 10^{3} g of water (approximately 2 L of glycol and 2 L of water)?

Solution

(a) The mole fraction of ethylene glycol may be computed by first deriving molar amounts of both solution components and then substituting these amounts into the definition of mole fraction.

$$molC_2H_4(OH)_2 = 2.22 \times 10^3 g \times \frac{1 molC_2H_4(OH)_2}{62.07 gC_2H_4(OH)_2} = 35.8 molC_2H_4(OH)_2$$

$$molH_2O = 2.00 \times 10^3 g \times \frac{1 molH_2O}{18.02 gH_2O} = 111 molH_2O$$

$$X_{\text{ethylene glycol}} = \frac{35.8 molC_2H_4(OH)_2}{(35.8 + 111)\text{ mol total}} = 0.244$$

Notice that mole fraction is a dimensionless property, being the ratio of properties with identical units (moles).

(b) Derive moles of solute and mass of solvent (in kg).

First, use the given mass of ethylene glycol and its molar mass to find the moles of solute:

$$2.22 \times 10^3 gC_2H_4(OH)_2 \left(\frac{molC_2H_2(OH)_2}{62.07 g}\right) = 35.8 molC_2H_4(OH)_2$$

Then, convert the mass of the water from grams to kilograms:

$$2.00 \times 10^3 gH_2O \left(\frac{1 kg}{1000 g}\right) = 2.00 kgH_2O$$

Finally, calculate molality per its definition:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{molality} &= \frac{\text{mol solute}}{\text{kg solvent}} \\ &= \frac{35.8 molC_2H_4(OH)_2}{2 kgH_2O} \\ &= 17.9 m\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 10.5.1

What are the mole fraction and molality of a solution that contains 0.850 g of ammonia, NH_3, dissolved in 125 g of water?

Answer

7.14 \times 10^{−3}; 0.399 *m*

Example 10.5.2: Converting Mole Fraction and Molal Concentrations

Calculate the mole fraction of solute and solvent in a 3.0 *m* solution of sodium chloride.

Solution

Converting from one concentration unit to another is accomplished by first comparing the two unit definitions. In this case, both units have the same numerator (moles of solute) but different denominators. The provided molal concentration may be written as:

$$\frac{3.0 molNaCl}{1 kgH_2O}$$

The numerator for this solution's mole fraction is, therefore, 3.0 mol NaCl. The denominator may be computed by deriving the molar amount of water corresponding to 1.0 kg

$$1.0 kgH_2O \left(\frac{1000 g}{1 kg}\right)\left(\frac{molH_2O}{18.02 g}\right) = 55 molH_2O$$

and then substituting these molar amounts into the definition for mole fraction.

$$\begin{aligned} X_{H_2O} &= \frac{molH_2O}{molNaCl + molH_2O} \\ &= \frac{55 molH_2O}{3.0 molNaCl + 55 molH_2O} \\ &= 0.95 \\ &= \frac{molNaCl}{molNaCl + molHH_2O} \\ &= \frac{3.0 molNaCl}{3.0 molNaCl + 55 molH_2O} \\ &= 0.052 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 10.5.2

The mole fraction of iodine, I_2, dissolved in dichloromethane, CH_2Cl_2, is 0.115. What is the molal concentration, *m*, of iodine in this solution?

Answer

1.50 *m*

Example 10.5.3: Molality and Molarity Conversions

Intravenous infusion of a 0.556 *M* aqueous solution of glucose (density of 1.04 g/mL) is part of some post-operative recovery therapies. What is the molal concentration of glucose in this solution?

Solution

The provided molal concentration may be explicitly written as:

$$M = 0.556 mol \text{ glucose } / 1 L \text{ solution}$$

Consider the definition of molality:

$$m = \text{ mol solute } / kg \text{ solvent}$$

The amount of glucose in 1-L of this solution is 0.556 mol, so the mass of water in this volume of solution is needed.

First, compute the mass of 1.00 L of the solution:

$$(1.0 L \text{ soln })(1.04 g/mL)(1000 mL/1 L)(1 kg/1000 g) = 1.04 kg \text{ soln}$$

This is the mass of both the water and its solute, glucose, and so the mass of glucose must be subtracted. Compute the mass of glucose from its molar amount:

$$(0.556 mol \text{ glucose })(180.2 g/1 mol) = 100.2 g \text{ or } 0.1002 kg$$

Subtracting the mass of glucose yields the mass of water in the solution:

$$1.04 kg \text{ solution } - 0.1002 kg \text{ glucose } = 0.94 kg \text{ water}$$

Finally, the molality of glucose in this solution is computed as:

$$m = \frac{0.556 \text{ mol glucose}}{0.94 \text{ kg water}} = 0.59 \ m$$

Exercise 10.5.3

Nitric acid, $HNO_3(aq)$, is commercially available as a 33.7 m aqueous solution (density = 1.35 g/mL). What is the molarity of this solution?

Answer

14.6 M

Vapor Pressure Lowering

As described in the chapter on liquids and solids, the equilibrium vapor pressure of a liquid is the pressure exerted by its gaseous phase when vaporization and condensation are occurring at equal rates:

$$\text{liquid} \rightleftharpoons \text{gas}$$

Dissolving a nonvolatile substance in a volatile liquid results in a lowering of the liquid's vapor pressure. This phenomenon can be rationalized by considering the effect of added solute molecules on the liquid's vaporization and condensation processes. To vaporize, solvent molecules must be present at the surface of the solution. The presence of solute decreases the surface area available to solvent molecules and thereby reduces the rate of solvent vaporization. Since the rate of condensation is unaffected by the presence of solute, the net result is that the vaporization-condensation equilibrium is achieved with fewer solvent molecules in the vapor phase (i.e., at a lower vapor pressure) (Figure 10.5.1). While this interpretation is useful, it does not account for several important aspects of the colligative nature of vapor pressure lowering. A more rigorous explanation involves the property of entropy, a topic of discussion in a later text chapter on thermodynamics. For purposes of understanding the lowering of a liquid's vapor pressure, it is adequate to note that the more dispersed nature of matter in a solution, compared to separate solvent and solute phases, serves to effectively stabilize the solvent molecules and hinder their vaporization. A lower vapor pressure results, and a correspondingly higher boiling point as described in the next section of this module.

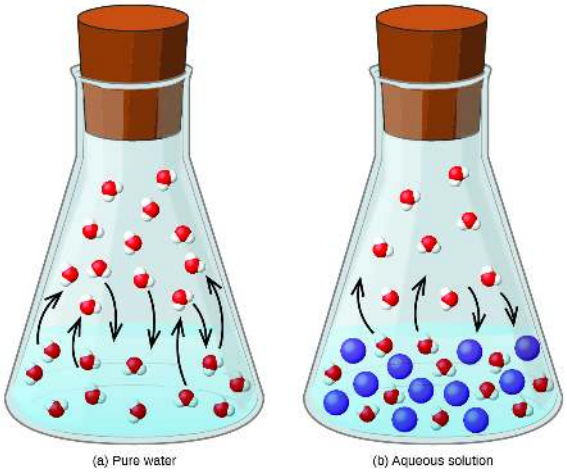


Figure 10.5.1: The presence of nonvolatile solutes lowers the vapor pressure of a solution by impeding the evaporation of solvent molecules.

The relationship between the vapor pressures of solution components and the concentrations of those components is described by **Raoult's law**: *The partial pressure exerted by any component of an ideal solution is equal to the vapor pressure of the pure component multiplied by its mole fraction in the solution.*

$$P_A = X_A P_A^* \tag{10.5.1}$$

where P_A is the partial pressure exerted by component A in the solution, P_A^* is the vapor pressure of pure A, and X_A is the mole fraction of A in the solution.

Recalling that the total pressure of a gaseous mixture is equal to the sum of partial pressures for all its components (Dalton's law of partial pressures), the total vapor pressure exerted by a solution containing *i* components is

$$P_{\text{solution}} = \sum_i P_i = \sum_i X_i P_i^*$$

A nonvolatile substance is one whose vapor pressure is negligible ($P^* \approx 0$), and so the vapor pressure above a solution containing only nonvolatile solutes is due only to the solvent:

$$P_{\text{solution}} = X_{\text{solvent}}\, P^*_{\text{solvent}}$$

Example 10.5.4: Calculation of a Vapor Pressure

Compute the vapor pressure of an ideal solution containing 92.1 g of glycerin, $C_3H_5(OH)_3$, and 184.4 g of ethanol, C_2H_5OH, at 40 °C. The vapor pressure of pure ethanol is 0.178 atm at 40 °C. Glycerin is essentially nonvolatile at this temperature.

Solution

Since the solvent is the only volatile component of this solution, its vapor pressure may be computed per Raoult's law (Equation 10.5.1) as:

$$P_{\text{solution}} = X_{\text{solvent}}\, P^*_{\text{solvent}}$$

First, calculate the molar amounts of each solution component using the provided mass data.

$$92.1 g_3 H_5(OH)_3 \times \frac{1 mol C_3H_5(OH)_3}{92.094 g_5 C_3H_5(OH)_3} = 1.00 mol C_3H_5(OH)_3$$

$$184.4 g_2 C_2H_5OH \times \frac{1 mol C_2H_5OH}{46.069 g_2 CH_5OH} = 4.000 mol C_2H_5OH$$

Next, calculate the mole fraction of the solvent (ethanol) and use Raoult's law to compute the solution's vapor pressure.

$$X_{C_2H_5OH} = \frac{4.000 mol}{(1.00 mol + 4.000 mol)} = 0.800$$

$$P_{\text{solv}} = X_{\text{solv}}\, P^*_{\text{solv}} = 0.800 \times 0.178 atm = 0.142 atm$$

Exercise 10.5.4

A solution contains 5.00 g of urea, $CO(NH_2)_2$ (a nonvolatile solute) and 0.100 kg of water. If the vapor pressure of pure water at 25 °C is 23.7 torr, what is the vapor pressure of the solution assuming ideal behavior?

Answer

23.4 torr

Distillation of Solutions

Solutions whose components have significantly different vapor pressures may be separated by a selective vaporization process known as distillation. Consider the simple case of a mixture of two volatile liquids, A and B, with A being the more volatile liquid. Raoult's law can be used to show that the vapor above the solution is enriched in component A, that is, the mole fraction of A in the vapor is greater than the mole fraction of A in the liquid (see end-of-chapter Exercise 65). By appropriately heating the mixture, component A may be vaporized, condensed, and collected—effectively separating it from component B.

Distillation is widely applied in both laboratory and industrial settings, being used to refine petroleum, to isolate fermentation products, and to purify water. A typical apparatus for laboratory-scale distillations is shown in Figure 10.5.2

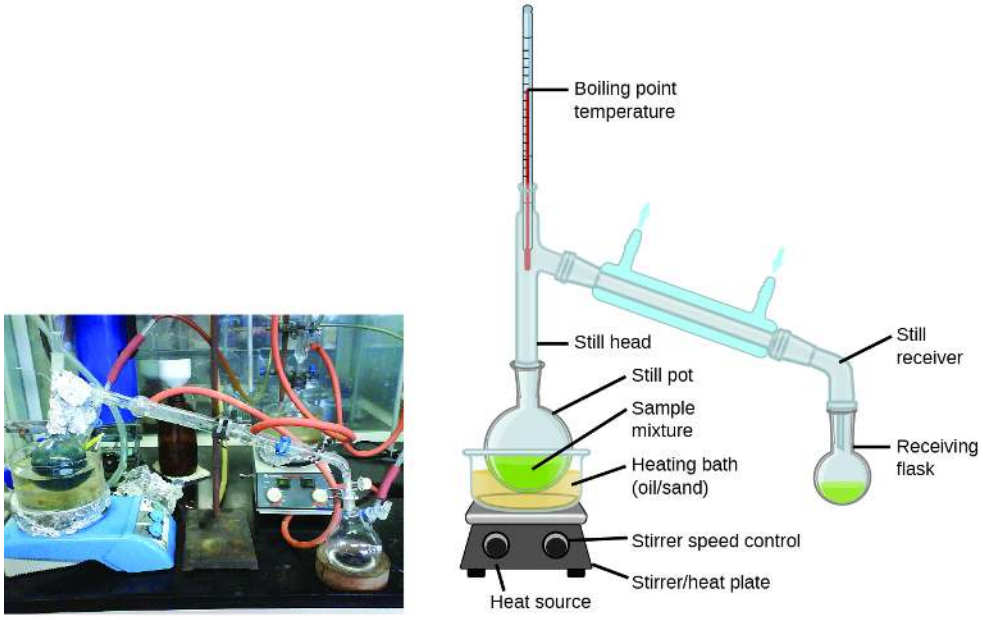


Figure 10.5.2: A typical laboratory distillation unit is shown in (a) a photograph and (b) a schematic diagram of the components. (credit a: modification of work by “Rifleman82”/Wikimedia commons; credit b: modification of work by “Slashme”/Wikimedia Commons)

Oil refineries use large-scale *fractional distillation* to separate the components of crude oil. The crude oil is heated to high temperatures at the base of a tall *fractionating column*, vaporizing many of the components that rise within the column. As vaporized components reach adequately cool zones during their ascent, they condense and are collected. The collected liquids are simpler mixtures of hydrocarbons and other petroleum compounds that are of appropriate composition for various applications (e.g., diesel fuel, kerosene, gasoline), as depicted in Figure 10.5.3

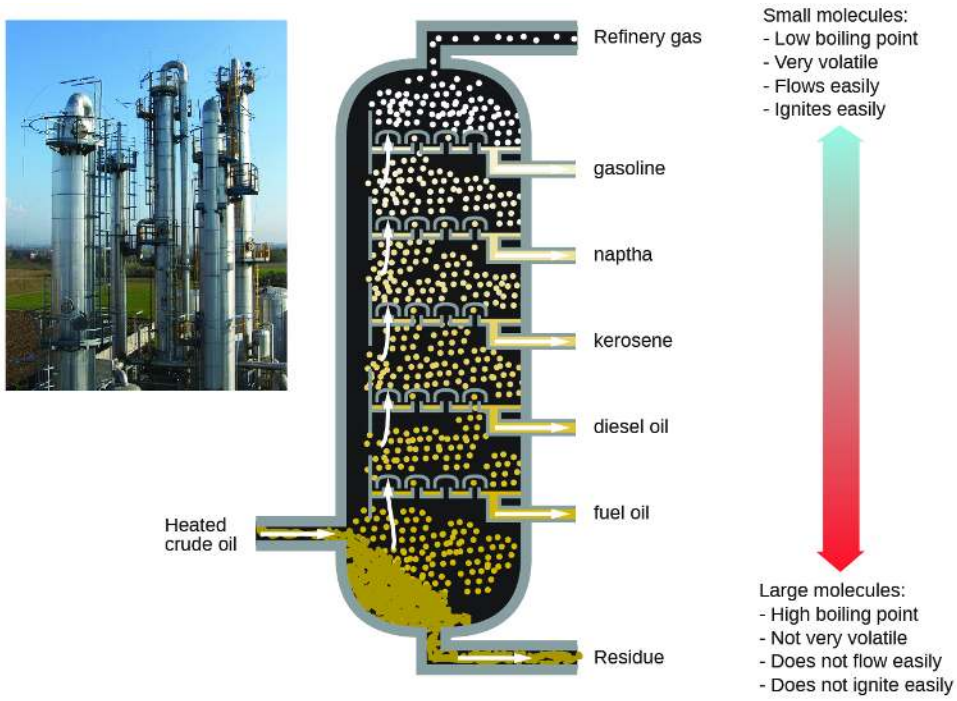


Figure 10.5.3: Crude oil is a complex mixture that is separated by large-scale fractional distillation to isolate various simpler mixtures.

Boiling Point Elevation

As described in the chapter on liquids and solids, the *boiling point* of a liquid is the temperature at which its vapor pressure is equal to ambient atmospheric pressure. Since the vapor pressure of a solution is lowered due to the presence of nonvolatile solutes, it stands to reason that the solution's boiling point will subsequently be increased. Vapor pressure increases with temperature, and so a solution will require a higher temperature than will pure solvent to achieve any given vapor pressure, including one equivalent to that of the surrounding atmosphere. The increase in boiling point observed when nonvolatile solute is dissolved in a solvent, ΔT_b, is called **boiling point elevation** and is directly proportional to the molal concentration of solute species:

$$\Delta T_b = K_b m$$

where K_b is the boiling point elevation constant, or the *ebullioscopic constant* and m is the molal concentration (molality) of all solute species.

Boiling point elevation constants are characteristic properties that depend on the identity of the solvent. Values of K_b for several solvents are listed in Table 10.5.1.

Table 10.5.1: Boiling Point Elevation and Freezing Point Depression Constants for Several Solvents

Solvent	Boiling Point (°C at 1 atm)	K_b (°Cm^{-1})	Freezing Point (°C at 1 atm)	K_f (°Cm^{-1})
water	100.0	0.512	0.0	1.86
hydrogen acetate	118.1	3.07	16.6	3.9
benzene	80.1	2.53	5.5	5.12
chloroform	61.26	3.63	−63.5	4.68
nitrobenzene	210.9	5.24	5.67	8.1

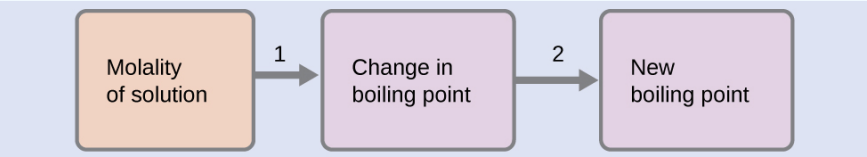
The extent to which the vapor pressure of a solvent is lowered and the boiling point is elevated depends on the total number of solute particles present in a given amount of solvent, not on the mass or size or chemical identities of the particles. A 1 *m* aqueous solution of sucrose (342 g/mol) and a 1 *m* aqueous solution of ethylene glycol (62 g/mol) will exhibit the same boiling point because each solution has one mole of solute particles (molecules) per kilogram of solvent.

Example 10.5.5: Calculating the Boiling Point of a Solution

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the boiling point of a 0.33 *m* solution of a nonvolatile solute in benzene?

Solution

Use the equation relating boiling point elevation to solute molality to solve this problem in two steps.



Step 1: Calculate the change in boiling point.

$$\Delta T_b = K_b m = 2.53^\circ C m^{-1} \times 0.33 m = 0.83^\circ C$$

Step 2: Add the boiling point elevation to the pure solvent's boiling point.

$$\text{Boiling temperature } = 80.1^\circ C + 0.83^\circ C = 80.9^\circ C$$

Exercise 10.5.1

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the boiling point of the antifreeze described in Example 10.5.1?

Answer

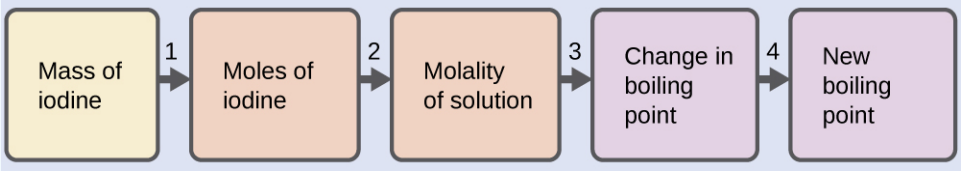
109.2 °C

Example 10.5.6: The Boiling Point of an Iodine Solution

Find the boiling point of a solution of 92.1 g of iodine, I_2, in 800.0 g of chloroform, $CHCl_3$, assuming that the iodine is nonvolatile and that the solution is ideal.

Solution

A four-step approach to solving this problem is outlined below.



Step 1. *Convert from grams to moles of* I_2 *using the molar mass of* I_2 *in the unit conversion factor.*

Result: 0.363 mol

Step 2. *Determine the molality of the solution from the number of moles of solute and the mass of solvent, in kilograms.*

Result: 0.454 *m*

Step 3. *Use the direct proportionality between the change in boiling point and molal concentration to determine how much the boiling point changes.*

Result: 1.65 °C

Step 4. *Determine the new boiling point from the boiling point of the pure solvent and the change.*

Result: 62.91 °C

Check each result as a self-assessment.

Exercise 10.5.5

What is the boiling point of a solution of 1.0 g of glycerin, $C_3H_5(OH)_3$, in 47.8 g of water? Assume an ideal solution.

Answer

100.12 °C

Freezing Point Depression

Solutions freeze at lower temperatures than pure liquids. This phenomenon is exploited in “de-icing” schemes that use salt (Figure 10.5.4), calcium chloride, or urea to melt ice on roads and sidewalks, and in the use of ethylene glycol as an “antifreeze” in automobile radiators. Seawater freezes at a lower temperature than fresh water, and so the Arctic and Antarctic oceans remain unfrozen even at temperatures below 0 °C (as do the body fluids of fish and other cold-blooded sea animals that live in these oceans).



Figure 10.5.4: Rock salt (NaCl), calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$), or a mixture of the two are used to melt ice. (credit: modification of work by Eddie Welker)

The decrease in freezing point of a dilute solution compared to that of the pure solvent, ΔT_f, is called the **freezing point depression** and is directly proportional to the molal concentration of the solute

$$\Delta T_f = K_f m$$

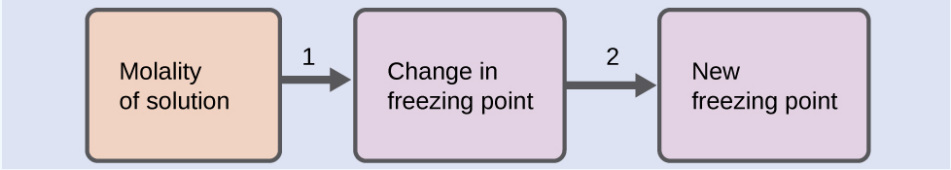
where *m* is the molal concentration of the solute and K_f is called the freezing point depression constant (or *cryoscopic constant*). Just as for boiling point elevation constants, these are characteristic properties whose values depend on the chemical identity of the solvent. Values of K_f for several solvents are listed in Table 10.5.1.

Example 10.5.7: Calculation of the Freezing Point of a Solution

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the freezing point of the 0.33 *m* solution of a nonvolatile nonelectrolyte solute in benzene described in Example 10.5.2?

Solution

Use the equation relating freezing point depression to solute molality to solve this problem in two steps.



Step 1: Calculate the change in freezing point.

$$\Delta T_f = K_f m = 5.12^\circ C m^{-1} \times 0.33 m = 1.7^\circ C$$

Step 2: Subtract the freezing point change observed from the pure solvent's freezing point.

$$\text{Freezing Temperature } = 5.5^\circ C - 1.7^\circ C = 3.8^\circ C$$

Exercise 10.5.1

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the freezing point of a 1.85 *m* solution of a nonvolatile nonelectrolyte solute in nitrobenzene?

Answer

−9.3 °C

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Colligative Properties and De-Icing

Sodium chloride and its group 2 analogs calcium and magnesium chloride are often used to de-ice roadways and sidewalks, due to the fact that a solution of any one of these salts will have a freezing point lower than 0 °C, the freezing point of pure water. The group 2 metal salts are frequently mixed with the cheaper and more readily available sodium chloride (“rock salt”) for use on roads, since they tend to be somewhat less corrosive than the NaCl, and they provide a larger depression of the freezing point, since they dissociate to yield three particles per formula unit, rather than two particles like the sodium chloride.

Because these ionic compounds tend to hasten the corrosion of metal, they would not be a wise choice to use in antifreeze for the radiator in your car or to de-ice a plane prior to takeoff. For these applications, covalent compounds, such as ethylene or propylene glycol, are often used. The glycols used in radiator fluid not only lower the freezing point of the liquid, but they elevate the boiling point, making the fluid useful in both winter and summer. Heated glycols are often sprayed onto the surface of airplanes prior to takeoff in inclement weather in the winter to remove ice that has already formed and prevent the formation of more ice, which would be particularly dangerous if formed on the control surfaces of the aircraft (Figure 10.5.5).



Figure 10.5.5: Freezing point depression is exploited to remove ice from (a) roadways and (b) the control surfaces of aircraft.

Phase Diagram for a Solution

The colligative effects on vapor pressure, boiling point, and freezing point described in the previous section are conveniently summarized by comparing the phase diagrams for a pure liquid and a solution derived from that liquid (Figure 10.5.6).

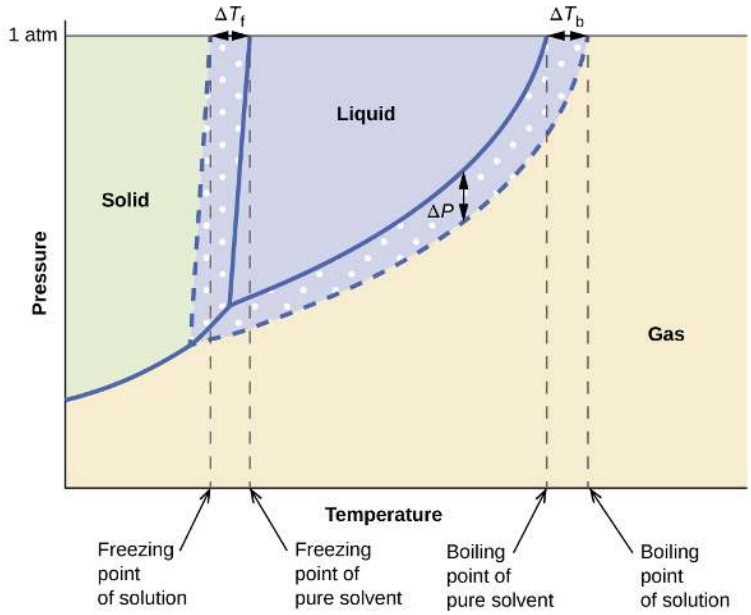


Figure 10.5.6: Phase diagrams for a pure solvent (solid curves) and a solution formed by dissolving nonvolatile solute in the solvent (dashed curves).

The liquid-vapor curve for the solution is located *beneath* the corresponding curve for the solvent, depicting the vapor pressure *lowering*, ΔP, that results from the dissolution of nonvolatile solute. Consequently, at any given pressure, the solution’s boiling point is observed at a higher temperature than that for the pure solvent, reflecting the boiling point elevation, ΔT_b, associated with

the presence of nonvolatile solute. The solid-liquid curve for the solution is displaced left of that for the pure solvent, representing the freezing point depression, ΔT_f, that accompanies solution formation. Finally, notice that the solid-gas curves for the solvent and its solution are identical. This is the case for many solutions comprising liquid solvents and nonvolatile solutes. Just as for vaporization, when a solution of this sort is frozen, it is actually just the *solvent* molecules that undergo the liquid-to-solid transition, forming pure solid solvent that excludes solute species. The solid and gaseous phases, therefore, are composed of solvent only, and so transitions between these phases are not subject to colligative effects.

Osmosis and Osmotic Pressure of Solutions

A number of natural and synthetic materials exhibit *selective permeation*, meaning that only molecules or ions of a certain size, shape, polarity, charge, and so forth, are capable of passing through (permeating) the material. Biological cell membranes provide elegant examples of selective permeation in nature, while dialysis tubing used to remove metabolic wastes from blood is a more simplistic technological example. Regardless of how they may be fabricated, these materials are generally referred to as **semipermeable membranes**.

Consider the apparatus illustrated in Figure 10.5.7, in which samples of pure solvent and a solution are separated by a membrane that only solvent molecules may permeate. Solvent molecules will diffuse across the membrane in both directions. Since the concentration of *solvent* is greater in the pure solvent than the solution, these molecules will diffuse from the solvent side of the membrane to the solution side at a faster rate than they will in the reverse direction. The result is a net transfer of solvent molecules from the pure solvent to the solution. Diffusion-driven transfer of solvent molecules through a semipermeable membrane is a process known as **osmosis**.

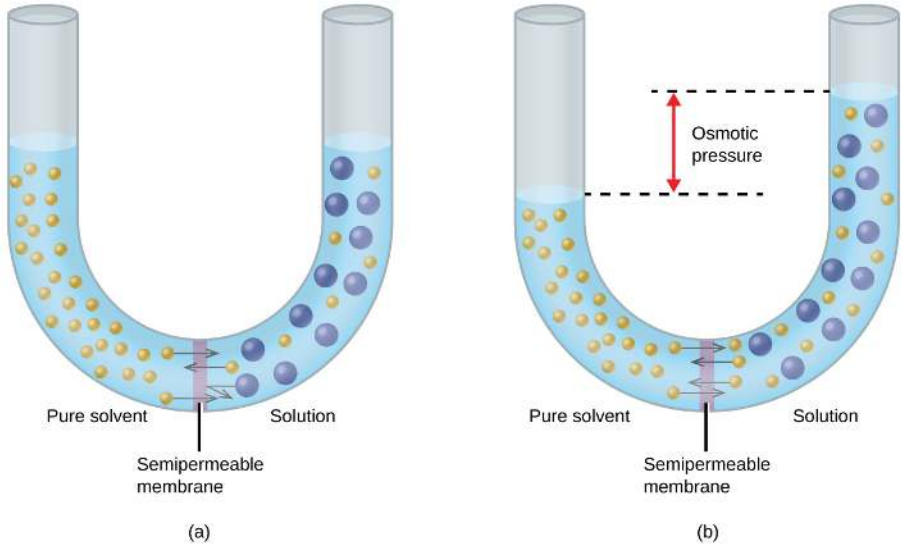


Figure 10.5.7: (a) A solution and pure solvent are initially separated by an osmotic membrane. (b) Net transfer of solvent molecules to the solution occurs until its osmotic pressure yields equal rates of transfer in both directions.

When osmosis is carried out in an apparatus like that shown in Figure 10.5.7, the volume of the solution increases as it becomes diluted by accumulation of solvent. This causes the level of the solution to rise, increasing its hydrostatic pressure (due to the weight of the column of solution in the tube) and resulting in a faster transfer of solvent molecules back to the pure solvent side. When the pressure reaches a value that yields a reverse solvent transfer rate equal to the osmosis rate, bulk transfer of solvent ceases. This pressure is called the **osmotic pressure** (Π) of the solution. The osmotic pressure of a dilute solution is related to its solute molarity, *M*, and absolute temperature, *T*, according to the equation

$$\Pi = MRT \tag{10.5.2}$$

where R is the universal gas constant.

Example 10.5.8: Calculation of Osmotic Pressure

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the osmotic pressure (atm) of a 0.30 M solution of glucose in water that is used for intravenous infusion at body temperature, 37 °C?

Solution

Find the osmotic pressure, Π, using Equation 10.5.2 (\ce{Π = MRT}), where T is on the Kelvin scale (310 K) and the value of R is expressed in appropriate units (0.08206 L atm/mol K).

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi &= MRT \\ &= 0.30 mol/L \times 0.08206 Latm/molK \times 310 K \\ &= 7.6 atm\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 10.5.8

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the osmotic pressure (atm) a solution with a volume of 0.750 L that contains 5.0 g of methanol, CH_3OH, in water at 37 °C?

Answer

5.3 atm

If a solution is placed in an apparatus like the one shown in Figure 10.5.8, applying pressure greater than the osmotic pressure of the solution reverses the osmosis and pushes solvent molecules from the solution into the pure solvent. This technique of reverse osmosis is used for large-scale desalination of seawater and on smaller scales to produce high-purity tap water for drinking.

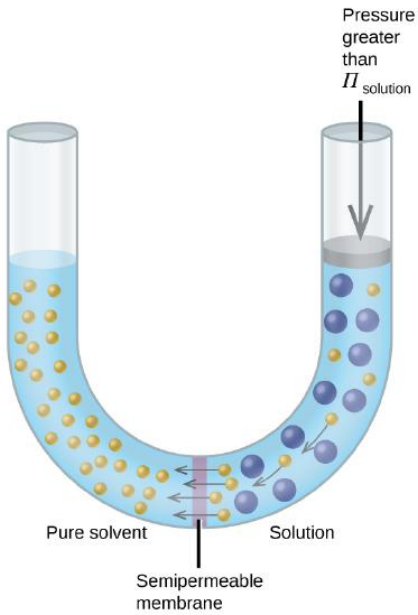


Figure 10.5.8: Applying a pressure greater than the osmotic pressure of a solution will reverse osmosis. Solvent molecules from the solution are pushed into the pure solvent.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Reverse Osmosis Water Purification

In the process of osmosis, diffusion serves to move water through a semipermeable membrane from a less concentrated solution to a more concentrated solution. Osmotic pressure is the amount of pressure that must be applied to the more concentrated solution to cause osmosis to stop. If greater pressure is applied, the water will go from the more concentrated solution to a less concentrated (more pure) solution. This is called reverse osmosis. Reverse osmosis (RO) is used to purify water in many applications, from desalination plants in coastal cities, to water-purifying machines in grocery stores (Figure 10.5.9), and smaller reverse-osmosis household units. With a hand-operated pump, small RO units can be used in third-world

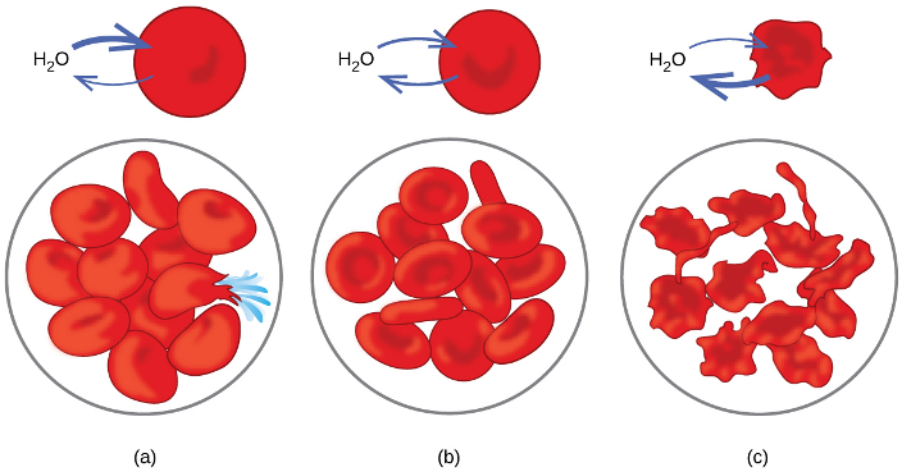
countries, disaster areas, and in lifeboats. Our military forces have a variety of generator-operated RO units that can be transported in vehicles to remote locations.



(a) (b)

Figure 10.5.9: Reverse osmosis systems for purifying drinking water are shown here on (a) small and (b) large scales. (credit a: modification of work by Jerry Kirkhart; credit b: modification of work by Willard J. Lathrop)

Examples of osmosis are evident in many biological systems because cells are surrounded by semipermeable membranes. Carrots and celery that have become limp because they have lost water can be made crisp again by placing them in water. Water moves into the carrot or celery cells by osmosis. A cucumber placed in a concentrated salt solution loses water by osmosis and absorbs some salt to become a pickle. Osmosis can also affect animal cells. Solute concentrations are particularly important when solutions are injected into the body. Solutes in body cell fluids and blood serum give these solutions an osmotic pressure of approximately 7.7 atm. Solutions injected into the body must have the same osmotic pressure as blood serum; that is, they should be **isotonic** with blood serum. If a less concentrated solution, a **hypotonic** solution, is injected in sufficient quantity to dilute the blood serum, water from the diluted serum passes into the blood cells by osmosis, causing the cells to expand and rupture. This process is called **hemolysis**. When a more concentrated solution, a hypertonic solution, is injected, the cells lose water to the more concentrated solution, shrivel, and possibly die in a process called **crenation**. These effects are illustrated in Figure 10.5.9.



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 10.5.9 Red blood cell membranes are water permeable and will (a) swell and possibly rupture in a hypotonic solution; (b) maintain normal volume and shape in an isotonic solution; and (c) shrivel and possibly die in a hypertonic solution. (credit a/b/c: modifications of work by “LadyofHats”/Wikimedia commons)

Determination of Molar Masses

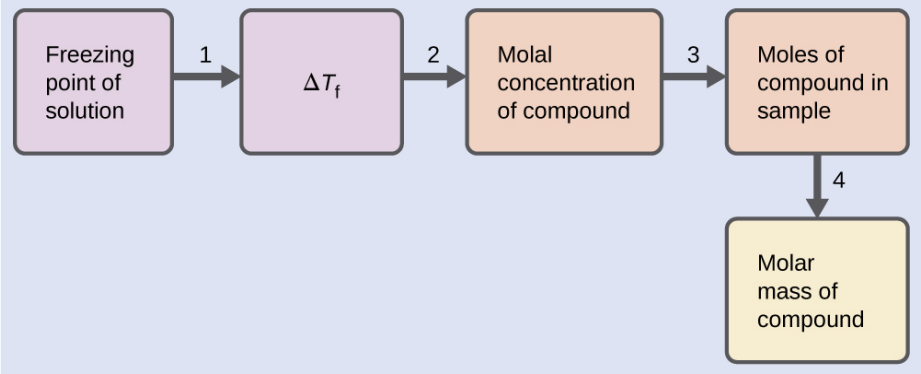
Osmotic pressure and changes in freezing point, boiling point, and vapor pressure are directly proportional to the number of solute species present in a given amount of solution. Consequently, measuring one of these properties for a solution prepared using a known mass of solute permits determination of the solute’s molar mass.

Example 10.5.9: Determination of a Molar Mass from a Freezing Point Depression

A solution of 4.00 g of a nonelectrolyte dissolved in 55.0 g of benzene is found to freeze at 2.32 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molar mass of this compound?

Solution

Solve this problem using the following steps.



Step 1. Determine the change in freezing point from the observed freezing point and the freezing point of pure benzene (Table 10.5.1.

$$\Delta T_f = 5.5^\circ C - 2.32^\circ C = 3.2^\circ C$$

Step 2. Determine the molal concentration from Kf, the freezing point depression constant for benzene (Table 10.5.1), and ΔT_f.

$$\Delta T_f = K_f m$$

$$m = \frac{\Delta T_f}{K_f} = \frac{3.2^\circ C}{5.12^\circ C m^{-1}} = 0.63 m$$

Step 3. Determine the number of moles of compound in the solution from the molal concentration and the mass of solvent used to make the solution.

$$\text{Moles of solute } = \frac{0.63 \text{ mol solute}}{1.00 \text{ kg solvent}} \times 0.0550 \text{ kg solvent} = 0.035 mol$$

Step 4. Determine the molar mass from the mass of the solute and the number of moles in that mass.

$$\text{Molar mass } = \frac{4.00 \text{ g}}{0.035 \text{ mol}} = 1.1 \times 10^2 \text{ g / mol}$$

Exercise 10.5.9

A solution of 35.7 g of a nonelectrolyte in 220.0 g of chloroform has a boiling point of 64.5 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molar mass of this compound?

Answer

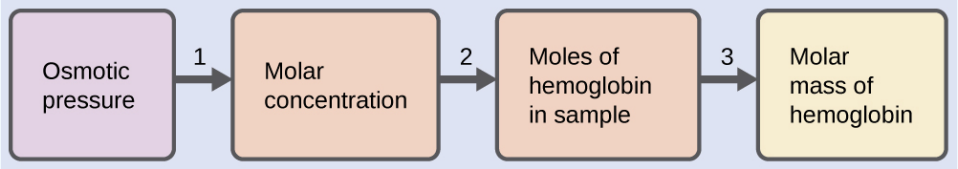
1.8 \times 10^{2} g/mol

Example 10.5.10: Determination of a Molar Mass from Osmotic Pressure

A 0.500 L sample of an aqueous solution containing 10.0 g of hemoglobin has an osmotic pressure of 5.9 torr at 22 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molar mass of hemoglobin?

Solution

Here is one set of steps that can be used to solve the problem:



Step 1. Convert the osmotic pressure to atmospheres, then determine the molar concentration from the osmotic pressure.

$$\Pi = \frac{5.9 \text{ torr } \times 1atm}{760 \text{ torr}} = 7.8 \times 10^{-3} atm$$

$$\Pi = MRT$$

$$M = \frac{\Pi}{RT} = \frac{7.8 \times 10^{-3} atm}{(0.08206 Latm/molK)(295K)} = 3.2 \times 10^{-4} M$$

Step 2. Determine the number of moles of hemoglobin in the solution from the concentration and the volume of the solution.

$$\text{moles of hemoglobin } = \frac{3.2 \times 10^{-4} mol}{1 \text{ L solution}} \times 0.500 \text{ L solution} = 1.6 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mol}$$

Step 3. Determine the molar mass from the mass of hemoglobin and the number of moles in that mass.

$$\text{molar mass } = \frac{10.0 \text{ g}}{1.6 \times 10^{-4} \text{ mol}} = 6.2 \times 10^{4} \text{ g / mol}$$

? Exercise 10.5.10

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molar mass of a protein if a solution of 0.02 g of the protein in 25.0 mL of solution has an osmotic pressure of 0.56 torr at 25 °C?

Answer

3 \times 10^{4} g/mol

Colligative Properties of Electrolytes

As noted previously in this module, the colligative properties of a solution depend only on the number, not on the identity, of solute species dissolved. The concentration terms in the equations for various colligative properties (freezing point depression, boiling point elevation, osmotic pressure) pertain to *all solute species present in the solution*. For the solutions considered thus far in this chapter, the solutes have been nonelectrolytes that dissolve physically without dissociation or any other accompanying process. Each molecule that dissolves yields one dissolved solute molecule. The dissolution of an electroyte, however, is not this simple, as illustrated by the two common examples below:

$$\text{dissociation} \quad NaCl(s) \longrightarrow Na^{+}(aq) + Cl^{-}(aq)$$

$$\text{ionization} \quad HCl(aq) + H_2O(l) \longrightarrow Cl^{-}(aq) + H3O^{+}(aq)$$

Considering the first of these examples, and assuming complete dissociation, a 1.0 *m* aqueous solution of NaCl contains 2.0 mole of ions (1.0 mol Na^{+} and 1.0 mol Cl^{-}) per each kilogram of water, and its freezing point depression is expected to be

$$\Delta T_f = 2.0 mol \text{ ions } / kg \text{ water } \times 1.86^{\circ} C kg \text{ water } / mol \text{ ion } = 3.7^{\circ} C.$$

When this solution is actually prepared and its freezing point depression measured, however, a value of 3.4 °C is obtained. Similar discrepancies are observed for other ionic compounds, and the differences between the measured and expected colligative property values typically become more significant as solute concentrations increase. These observations suggest that the ions of sodium chloride (and other strong electrolytes) are not completely dissociated in solution.

To account for this and avoid the errors accompanying the assumption of total dissociation, an experimentally measured parameter named in honor of Nobel Prize-winning German chemist Jacobus Henricus van 't Hoff is used. The van 't Hoff factor (i) is defined as the ratio of solute particles in solution to the number of formula units dissolved:

$$i = \frac{\text{moles of particles in solution}}{\text{moles of formula units dissolved}}$$

Values for measured van 't Hoff factors for several solutes, along with predicted values assuming complete dissociation, are shown in Table 10.5.2

Table 10.5.2: Predicated and Measured van't Hoff Factors for Several 0.050 *m* Aqueous Solutions

Formula unit	Classification	Dissolution products	*i* (predicted)	*i* (measured)
$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ (glucose)	Nonelectrolyte	$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$	1	1.0
NaCl	Strong electrolyte	Na^+, Cl^-	2	1.9
HCl	Strong electrolyte (acid)	H_3O^+, Cl^-	2	1.9
$MgSO_4$	Strong electrolyte	Mg^{2+}, SO_4^{2-},	2	1.3
$MgCl_2$	Strong electrolyte	Mg^{2+}, $2Cl^-$	3	2.7
$FeCl_3$	Strong electrolyte	Fe^{3+}, $3Cl^-$	4	3.4

In 1923, the chemists Peter Debye and Erich Hückel proposed a theory to explain the apparent incomplete ionization of strong electrolytes. They suggested that although interionic attraction in an aqueous solution is very greatly reduced by solvation of the ions and the insulating action of the polar solvent, it is not completely nullified. The residual attractions prevent the ions from behaving as totally independent particles (Figure 10.5.11). In some cases, a positive and negative ion may actually touch, giving a solvated unit called an ion pair. Thus, the activity, or the effective concentration, of any particular kind of ion is less than that indicated by the actual concentration. Ions become more and more widely separated the more dilute the solution, and the residual interionic attractions become less and less. Thus, in extremely dilute solutions, the effective concentrations of the ions (their activities) are essentially equal to the actual concentrations. Note that the van't Hoff factors for the electrolytes in Table 10.5.2 are for 0.05 *m* solutions, at which concentration the value of *i* for NaCl is 1.9, as opposed to an ideal value of 2.

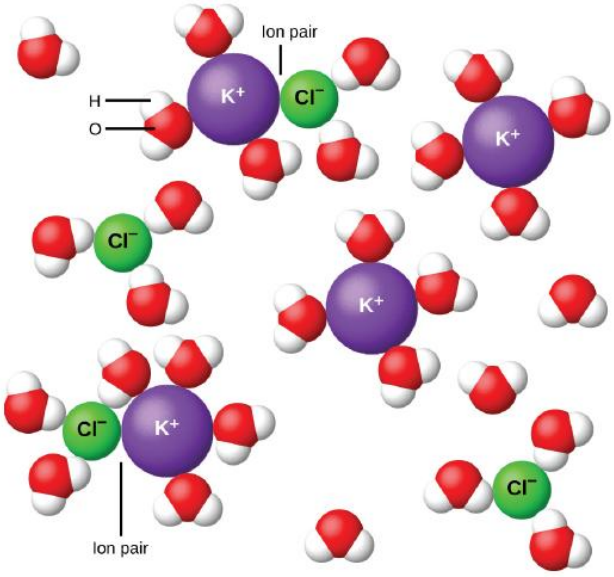


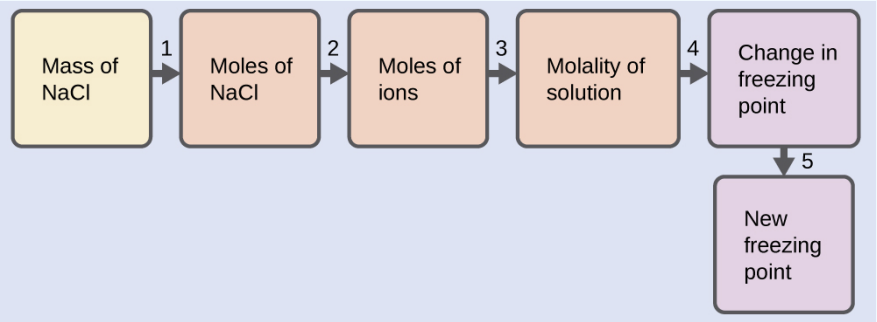
Figure 10.5.11: Dissociation of ionic compounds in water is not always complete due to the formation of ion pairs.

Example 10.5.11: The Freezing Point of a Solution of an Electrolyte

The concentration of ions in seawater is approximately the same as that in a solution containing 4.2 g of NaCl dissolved in 125 g of water. Use this information and a predicted value for the van't Hoff factor (Table 10.5.2) to determine the freezing temperature the solution (assume ideal solution behavior).

Solution

Solve this problem using the following series of steps.



1. Step 1. *Convert from grams to moles of NaCl using the molar mass of NaCl in the unit conversion factor.*
   Result: 0.072 mol NaCl
2. Step 2. *Determine the number of moles of ions present in the solution using the number of moles of ions in 1 mole of NaCl as the conversion factor (2 mol ions/1 mol NaCl).*
   Result: 0.14 mol ions
3. Step 3. *Determine the molality of the ions in the solution from the number of moles of ions and the mass of solvent, in kilograms.*
   Result: 1.2 *m*
4. Step 4. *Use the direct proportionality between the change in freezing point and molal concentration to determine how much the freezing point changes.*
   Result: 2.1 °C
5. Step 5. *Determine the new freezing point from the freezing point of the pure solvent and the change.*
   Result: −2.1 °C

Check each result as a self-assessment, taking care to avoid rounding errors by retaining guard digits in each step's result for computing the next step's result.

Exercise 10.5.11

Assuming complete dissociation and ideal solution behavior, calculate the freezing point of a solution of 0.724 g of $CaCl_2$ in 175 g of water.

Answer

−0.208 °C

This page titled 10.5: Colligative Properties is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.4: Colligative Properties** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

10.6: Colloids

Learning Objectives

By the end of this section, you will be able to:

- Describe the composition and properties of colloidal dispersions
- List and explain several technological applications of colloids

As a child, you may have made suspensions such as mixtures of mud and water, flour and water, or a suspension of solid pigments in water, known as tempera paint. These **suspensions** are heterogeneous mixtures composed of relatively large particles that are visible (or that can be seen with a magnifying glass). They are cloudy, and the suspended particles settle out after mixing. On the other hand, a solution is a homogeneous mixture in which no settling occurs and in which the dissolved species are molecules or ions. Solutions exhibit completely different behavior from suspensions. A solution may be colored, but it is transparent, the molecules or ions are invisible, and they do not settle out on standing. Another class of mixtures called **colloids** (or **colloidal dispersions**) exhibit properties intermediate between those of suspensions and solutions (Figure 10.6.1). The particles in a colloid are larger than most simple molecules; however, colloidal particles are small enough that they do not settle out upon standing.

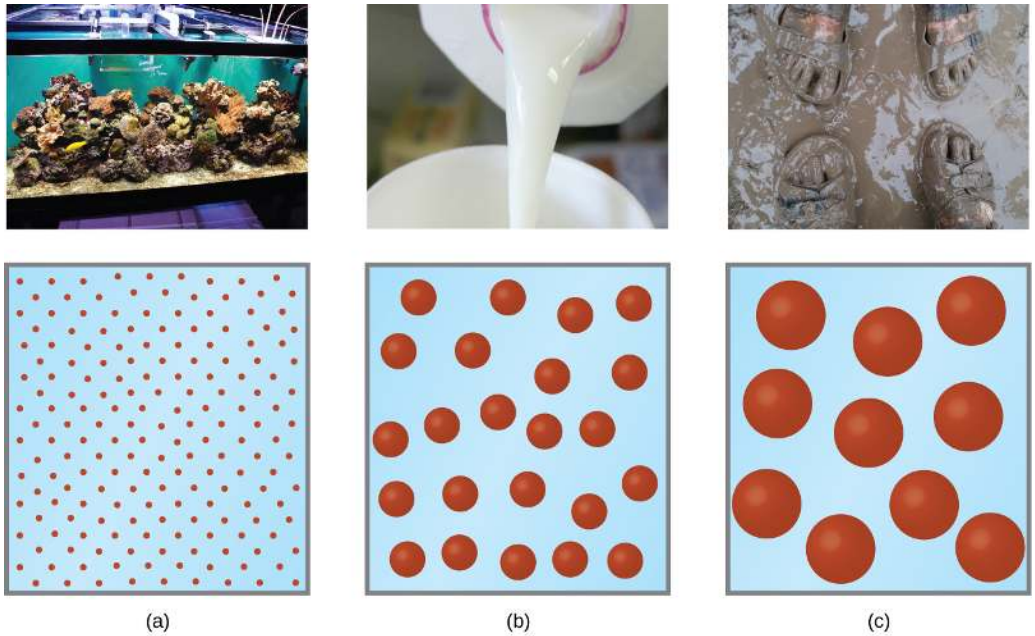


Figure 10.6.1: (a) A solution is a homogeneous mixture that appears clear, such as the saltwater in this aquarium. (b) In a colloid, such as milk, the particles are much larger but remain dispersed and do not settle. (c) A suspension, such as mud, is a heterogeneous mixture of suspended particles that appears cloudy and in which the particles can settle. (credit a photo: modification of work by Adam Wimsatt; credit b photo: modification of work by Melissa Wiese; credit c photo: modification of work by Peter Burgess)

The particles in a colloid are large enough to scatter light, a phenomenon called the Tyndall effect. This can make colloidal mixtures appear cloudy or opaque, such as the searchlight beams shown in Figure 10.6.2 Clouds are colloidal mixtures. They are composed of water droplets that are much larger than molecules, but that are small enough that they do not settle out.



Figure 10.6.2: The paths of searchlight beams are made visible when light is scattered by colloidal-size particles in the air (fog, smoke, etc.). (credit: “Bahman”/Wikimedia Commons)

The term “colloid”—from the Greek words *kolla*, meaning “glue,” and *eidos*, meaning “like”—was first used in 1861 by Thomas Graham to classify mixtures such as starch in water and gelatin. Many colloidal particles are aggregates of hundreds or thousands of molecules, but others (such as proteins and polymer molecules) consist of a single extremely large molecule. The protein and synthetic polymer molecules that form colloids may have molecular masses ranging from a few thousand to many million atomic mass units.

Analogous to the identification of solution components as “solute” and “solvent,” the components of a colloid are likewise classified according to their relative amounts. The particulate component typically present in a relatively minor amount is called the dispersed phase and the substance or solution throughout which the particulate is dispersed is called the dispersion medium. Colloids may involve virtually any combination of physical states (gas in liquid, liquid in solid, solid in gas, etc.), as illustrated by the examples of colloidal systems given in Table 10.6.1.

Table 10.6.1: Examples of Colloidal Systems

Dispersed Phase	Dispersion Medium	Common Examples	Name
solid	gas	smoke, dust	—
solid	liquid	starch in water, some inks, paints, milk of magnesia	sol
solid	solid	some colored gems, some alloys	—
liquid	gas	clouds, fogs, mists, sprays	aerosol
liquid	liquid	milk, mayonnaise, butter	emulsion
liquid	solid	jellies, gels, pearl, opal (H_2O in SiO_2)	gel
gas	liquid	foams, whipped cream, beaten egg whites	foam
gas	solid	pumice, floating soaps	—

Preparation of Colloidal Systems

Colloids are prepared by producing particles of colloidal dimensions and distributing these particles throughout a dispersion medium. Particles of colloidal size are formed by two methods:

1. Dispersion methods: breaking down larger particles. For example, paint pigments are produced by dispersing large particles by grinding in special mills.
2. Condensation methods: growth from smaller units, such as molecules or ions. For example, clouds form when water molecules condense and form very small droplets.

A few solid substances, when brought into contact with water, disperse spontaneously and form colloidal systems. Gelatin, glue, starch, and dehydrated milk powder behave in this manner. The particles are already of colloidal size; the water simply disperses them. Powdered milk particles of colloidal size are produced by dehydrating milk spray. Some atomizers produce colloidal dispersions of a liquid in air.

An emulsion may be prepared by shaking together or blending two immiscible liquids. This breaks one liquid into droplets of colloidal size, which then disperse throughout the other liquid. Oil spills in the ocean may be difficult to clean up, partly because wave action can cause the oil and water to form an emulsion. In many emulsions, however, the dispersed phase tends to coalesce, form large drops, and separate. Therefore, emulsions are usually stabilized by an emulsifying agent, a substance that inhibits the coalescence of the dispersed liquid. For example, a little soap will stabilize an emulsion of kerosene in water. Milk is an emulsion of butterfat in water, with the protein casein serving as the emulsifying agent. Mayonnaise is an emulsion of oil in vinegar, with egg yolk components as the emulsifying agents.

Condensation methods form colloidal particles by aggregation of molecules or ions. If the particles grow beyond the colloidal size range, drops or precipitates form, and no colloidal system results. Clouds form when water molecules aggregate and form colloid-sized particles. If these water particles coalesce to form adequately large water drops of liquid water or crystals of solid water, they settle from the sky as rain, sleet, or snow. Many condensation methods involve chemical reactions. A red colloidal suspension of iron(III) hydroxide may be prepared by mixing a concentrated solution of iron(III) chloride with hot water:

$$\mathrm{Fe^{3+}(aq) + 3\,Cl^-(aq) + 6\,H_2O(l) \longrightarrow Fe(OH)_3(s) + H_3O^+(aq) + 3\,Cl^-(aq)}$$

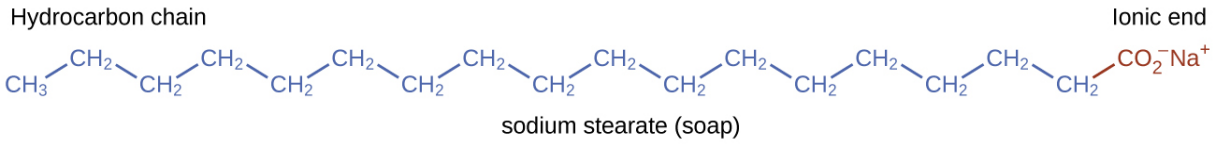
A colloidal gold sol results from the reduction of a very dilute solution of gold(III) chloride by a reducing agent such as formaldehyde, tin(II) chloride, or iron(II) sulfate:

$$\mathrm{Au^{3+} + 3\,e^- \longrightarrow Au}$$

Some gold sols prepared in 1857 are still intact (the particles have not coalesced and settled), illustrating the long-term stability of many colloids.

Soaps and Detergents

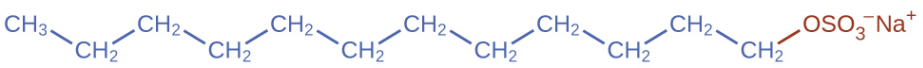
Pioneers made soap by boiling fats with a strongly basic solution made by leaching potassium carbonate, K_2CO_3, from wood ashes with hot water. Animal fats contain polyesters of fatty acids (long-chain carboxylic acids). When animal fats are treated with a base like potassium carbonate or sodium hydroxide, glycerol and salts of fatty acids such as palmitic, oleic, and stearic acid are formed. The salts of fatty acids are called *soaps*. The sodium salt of stearic acid, sodium stearate, has the formula $C_{17}H_{35}CO_2Na$ and contains an uncharged nonpolar hydrocarbon chain, the $C_{17}H_{35}$— unit, and an ionic carboxylate group, the —



sodium stearate (soap)

Figure 10.6.3: Soaps contain a nonpolar hydrocarbon end (blue) and an ionic end (red). The ionic end is a carboxylate group. The length of the hydrocarbon end can vary from soap to soap.

Detergents (soap substitutes) also contain nonpolar hydrocarbon chains, such as $C_{12}H_{25}$—, and an ionic group, such as a sulfate—



sodium lauryl sulfate (detergent)

Figure 10.6.4: Detergents contain a nonpolar hydrocarbon end (blue) and an ionic end (red). The ionic end can be either a sulfate or a sulfonate. The length of the hydrocarbon end can vary from detergent to detergent.

The cleaning action of soaps and detergents can be explained in terms of the structures of the molecules involved. The hydrocarbon (nonpolar) end of a soap or detergent molecule dissolves in, or is attracted to, nonpolar substances such as oil, grease, or dirt

particles. The ionic end is attracted by water (polar), illustrated in Figure 10.6.5. As a result, the soap or detergent molecules become oriented at the interface between the dirt particles and the water so they act as a kind of bridge between two different kinds of matter, nonpolar and polar. Molecules such as this are termed **amphiphilic** since they have both a hydrophobic ("water-fearing") part and a hydrophilic ("water-loving") part. As a consequence, dirt particles become suspended as colloidal particles and are readily washed away.

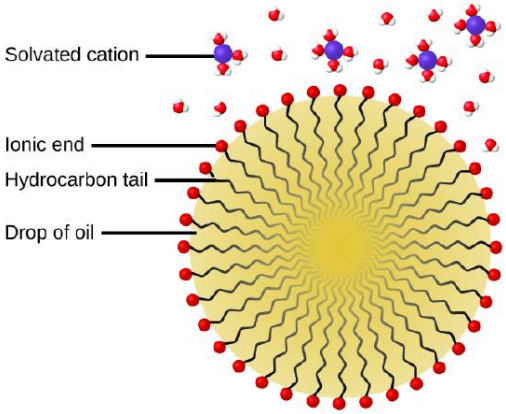


Figure 10.6.5: This diagrammatic cross section of an emulsified drop of oil in water shows how soap or detergent acts as an emulsifier.

Chemistry in Everyday Life: Deepwater Horizon Oil Spill

The blowout of the Deepwater Horizon oil drilling rig on April 20, 2010, in the Gulf of Mexico near Mississippi began the largest marine oil spill in the history of the petroleum industry. In the 87 days following the blowout, an estimated 4.9 million barrels (210 million gallons) of oil flowed from the ruptured well 5000 feet below the water's surface. The well was finally declared sealed on September 19, 2010.

Crude oil is immiscible with and less dense than water, so the spilled oil rose to the surface of the water. Floating booms, skimmer ships, and controlled burns were used to remove oil from the water's surface in an attempt to protect beaches and wetlands along the Gulf coast. In addition to removal of the oil, attempts were also made to lessen its environmental impact by rendering it "soluble" (in the loose sense of the term) and thus allowing it to be diluted to hopefully less harmful levels by the vast volume of ocean water. This approach used 1.84 million gallons of the oil dispersant Corexit 9527, most of which was injected underwater at the site of the leak, with small amounts being sprayed on top of the spill. Corexit 9527 contains 2-butoxyethanol ($C_6H_{14}O_2$), an amphiphilic molecule whose polar and nonpolar ends are useful for emulsifying oil into small droplets, increasing the surface area of the oil and making it more available to marine bacteria for digestion (Figure 10.6.6). While this approach avoids many of the immediate hazards that bulk oil poses to marine and coastal ecosystems, it introduces the possibility of long-term effects resulting from the introduction of the complex and potential toxic components of petroleum into the ocean's food chain. A number of organizations are involved in monitoring the extended impact of this oil spill, including the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (visit this website for additional details).

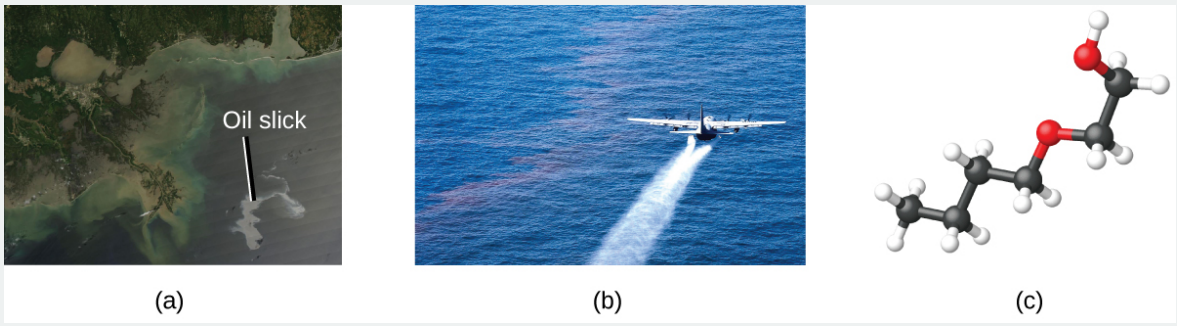


Figure 10.6.6: (a) This NASA satellite image shows the oil slick from the Deepwater Horizon spill. (b) A US Air Force plane sprays Corexit, a dispersant. (c) The molecular structure of 2-butoxyethanol is shown. (credit a: modification of work by "NASA, FT2, demis.nl"/Wikimedia Commons; credit b: modification of work by "NASA/MODIS Rapid Response Team"/Wikimedia Commons)

Electrical Properties of Colloidal Particles

Dispersed colloidal particles are often electrically charged. A colloidal particle of iron(III) hydroxide, for example, does not contain enough hydroxide ions to compensate exactly for the positive charges on the iron(III) ions. Thus, each individual colloidal particle bears a positive charge, and the colloidal dispersion consists of charged colloidal particles and some free hydroxide ions, which keep the dispersion electrically neutral. Most metal hydroxide colloids have positive charges, whereas most metals and metal sulfides form negatively charged dispersions. All colloidal particles in any one system have charges of the same sign. This helps keep them dispersed because particles containing like charges repel each other.

The charged nature of some colloidal particles may be exploited to remove them from a variety of mixtures. For example, the particles comprising smoke are often colloidally dispersed and electrically charged. Frederick Cottrell, an American chemist, developed a process to remove these particles. The charged particles are attracted to highly charged electrodes, where they are neutralized and deposited as dust (Figure 10.6.8). This is one of the important methods used to clean up the smoke from a variety of industrial processes. The process is also important in the recovery of valuable products from the smoke and flue dust of smelters, furnaces, and kilns. There are also similar electrostatic air filters designed for home use to improve indoor air quality.

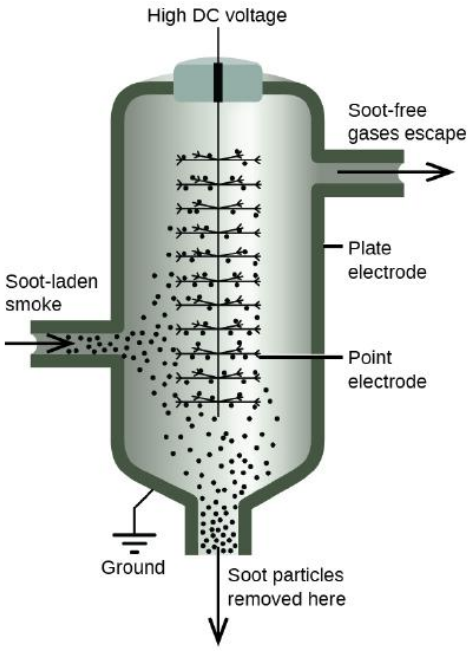


Figure 10.6.8: In a Cottrell precipitator, positively and negatively charged particles are attracted to highly charged electrodes, where they are neutralized and deposited as dust.

Portrait of a Chemist: Frederick Gardner Cottrell

Born in Oakland, CA, in 1877, Frederick Cottrell devoured textbooks as if they were novels and graduated from high school at the age of 16. He then entered the University of California (UC), Berkeley, completing a Bachelor's degree in three years. He saved money from his $1200 annual salary as a chemistry teacher at Oakland High School to fund his studies in chemistry in Berlin with Nobel prize winner Jacobus Henricus van't Hoff, and in Leipzig with Wilhelm Ostwald, another Nobel awardee. After earning his PhD in physical chemistry, he returned to the United States to teach at UC Berkeley. He also consulted for the DuPont Company, where he developed the electrostatic precipitator, a device designed to curb air pollution by removing colloidal particles from air. Cottrell used the proceeds from his invention to fund a nonprofit research corporation to finance scientific research.

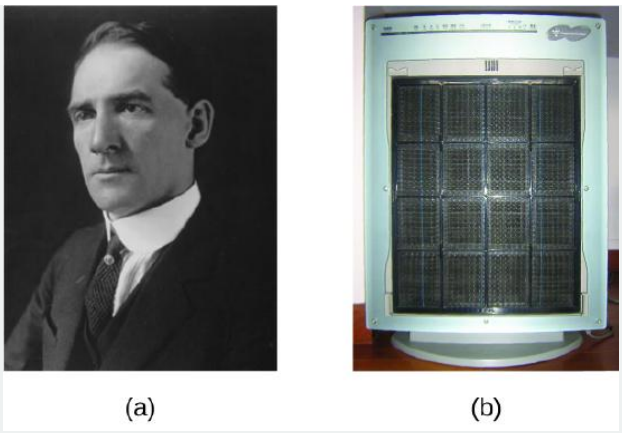


Figure 10.6.7: (a) Frederick Cottrell developed (b) the electrostatic precipitator, a device designed to curb air pollution by removing colloidal particles from air. (credit b: modification of work by “SpLot”/Wikimedia Commons)

Gels

Gelatin desserts, such as Jell-O, are a type of colloid (Figure 10.6.9). Gelatin sets on cooling because the hot aqueous mixture of gelatin coagulates as it cools, yielding an extremely viscous body known as a **gel**. A gel is a colloidal dispersion of a liquid phase throughout a solid phase. It appears that the fibers of the dispersing medium form a complex three-dimensional network, the interstices being filled with the liquid medium or a dilute solution of the dispersing medium.

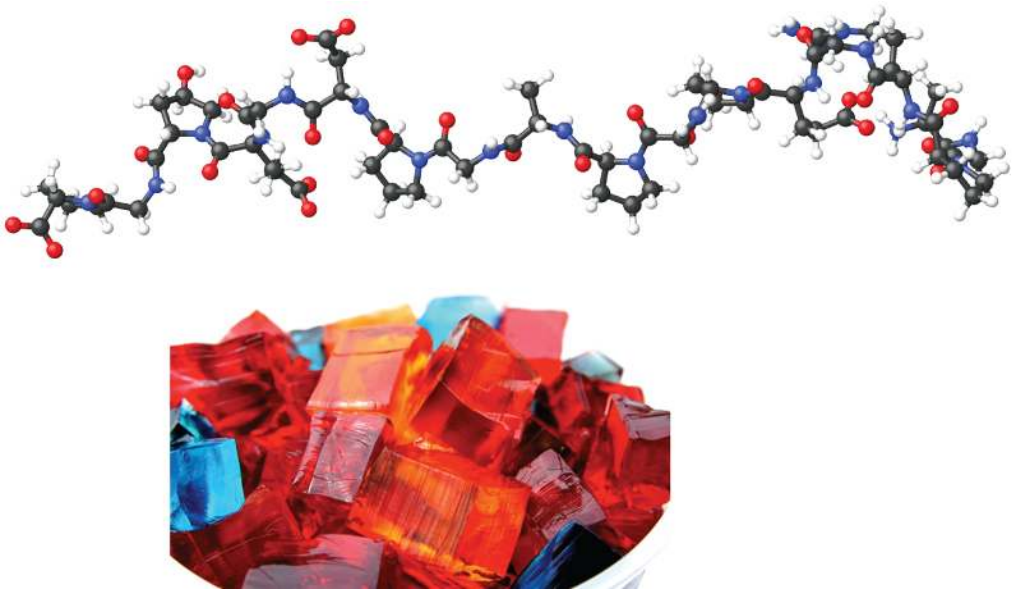


Figure 10.6.9: Gelatin desserts are colloids in which an aqueous solution of sweeteners and flavors is dispersed throughout a medium of solid proteins. (credit photo: modification of work by Steven Depolo)

Pectin, a carbohydrate from fruit juices, is a gel-forming substance important in jelly making. Silica gel, a colloidal dispersion of hydrated silicon dioxide, is formed when dilute hydrochloric acid is added to a dilute solution of sodium silicate. Canned Heat is a flammable gel made by mixing alcohol and a saturated aqueous solution of calcium acetate.

This page titled 10.6: Colloids is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.5: Colloids** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

10.7: Key Terms

alloy | solid mixture of a metallic element and one or more additional elements

amphiphilic | molecules possessing both hydrophobic (nonpolar) and a hydrophilic (polar) parts

boiling point elevation | elevation of the boiling point of a liquid by addition of a solute

boiling point elevation constant | the proportionality constant in the equation relating boiling point elevation to solute molality; also known as the ebullioscopic constant

colligative property | property of a solution that depends only on the concentration of a solute species

colloid | (also, colloidal dispersion) mixture in which relatively large solid or liquid particles are dispersed uniformly throughout a gas, liquid, or solid

crenation | process whereby biological cells become shriveled due to loss of water by osmosis

dispersed phase | substance present as relatively large solid or liquid particles in a colloid

dispersion medium | solid, liquid, or gas in which colloidal particles are dispersed

dissociation | physical process accompanying the dissolution of an ionic compound in which the compound's constituent ions are solvated and dispersed throughout the solution

electrolyte | substance that produces ions when dissolved in water

emulsifying agent | amphiphilic substance used to stabilize the particles of some emulsions

emulsion | colloid formed from immiscible liquids

freezing point depression | lowering of the freezing point of a liquid by addition of a solute

freezing point depression constant | (also, cryoscopic constant) proportionality constant in the equation relating freezing point depression to solute molality

gel | colloidal dispersion of a liquid in a solid

hemolysis | rupture of red blood cells due to the accumulation of excess water by osmosis

Henry's law | the proportional relationship between the concentration of dissolved gas in a solution and the partial pressure of the gas in contact with the solution

hypertonic | of greater osmotic pressure

hypotonic | of less osmotic pressure

ideal solution | solution that forms with no accompanying energy change

immiscible | of negligible mutual solubility; typically refers to liquid substances

ion pair | solvated anion/cation pair held together by moderate electrostatic attraction

ion-dipole attraction | electrostatic attraction between an ion and a polar molecule

isotonic | of equal osmotic pressure

miscible | mutually soluble in all proportions; typically refers to liquid substances

molality (*m*) | a concentration unit defined as the ratio of the numbers of moles of solute to the mass of the solvent in kilograms

nonelectrolyte | substance that does not produce ions when dissolved in water

osmosis | diffusion of solvent molecules through a semipermeable membrane

osmotic pressure (Π) | opposing pressure required to prevent bulk transfer of solvent molecules through a semipermeable membrane

partially miscible | of moderate mutual solubility; typically refers to liquid substances

Raoult's law | the relationship between a solution's vapor pressure and the vapor pressures and concentrations of its components

saturated | of concentration equal to solubility; containing the maximum concentration of solute possible for a given temperature and pressure

semipermeable membrane | a membrane that selectively permits passage of certain ions or molecules

solubility | extent to which a solute may be dissolved in water, or any solvent

solvation | exothermic process in which intermolecular attractive forces between the solute and solvent in a solution are established

spontaneous process | physical or chemical change that occurs without the addition of energy from an external source

strong electrolyte | substance that dissociates or ionizes completely when dissolved in water

supersaturated | of concentration that exceeds solubility; a nonequilibrium state

suspension | heterogeneous mixture in which relatively large component particles are temporarily dispersed but settle out over time

Tyndall effect | scattering of visible light by a colloidal dispersion

unsaturated | of concentration less than solubility

van't Hoff factor (*i*) | the ratio of the number of moles of particles in a solution to the number of moles of formula units dissolved in the solution

weak electrolyte | substance that ionizes only partially when dissolved in water

10.7: Key Terms is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.6: Key Terms** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.8: Key Equations

$\Delta T_b = K_b m$
$\Delta T_f = K_f m$
$\Pi = MRT$

10.8: Key Equations is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.7: Key Equations** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.9: Summary

A solution forms when two or more substances combine physically to yield a mixture that is homogeneous at the molecular level. The solvent is the most concentrated component and determines the physical state of the solution. The solutes are the other components typically present at concentrations less than that of the solvent. Solutions may form endothermically or exothermically, depending upon the relative magnitudes of solute and solvent intermolecular attractive forces. Ideal solutions form with no appreciable change in energy.

Substances that dissolve in water to yield ions are called electrolytes. Electrolytes may be covalent compounds that chemically react with water to produce ions (for example, acids and bases), or they may be ionic compounds that dissociate to yield their constituent cations and anions, when dissolved. Dissolution of an ionic compound is facilitated by ion-dipole attractions between the ions of the compound and the polar water molecules. Soluble ionic substances and strong acids ionize completely and are strong electrolytes, while weak acids and bases ionize to only a small extent and are weak electrolytes. Nonelectrolytes are substances that do not produce ions when dissolved in water.

The extent to which one substance will dissolve in another is determined by several factors, including the types and relative strengths of intermolecular attractive forces that may exist between the substances' atoms, ions, or molecules. This tendency to dissolve is quantified as a substance's solubility, its maximum concentration in a solution at equilibrium under specified conditions. A saturated solution contains solute at a concentration equal to its solubility. A supersaturated solution is one in which a solute's concentration exceeds its solubility—a nonequilibrium (unstable) condition that will result in solute precipitation when the solution is appropriately perturbed. Miscible liquids are soluble in all proportions, and immiscible liquids exhibit very low mutual solubility. Solubilities for gaseous solutes decrease with increasing temperature, while those for most, but not all, solid solutes increase with temperature. The concentration of a gaseous solute in a solution is proportional to the partial pressure of the gas to which the solution is exposed, a relation known as Henry's law.

Properties of a solution that depend only on the concentration of solute particles are called colligative properties. They include changes in the vapor pressure, boiling point, and freezing point of the solvent in the solution. The magnitudes of these properties depend only on the total concentration of solute particles in solution, not on the type of particles. The total concentration of solute particles in a solution also determines its osmotic pressure. This is the pressure that must be applied to the solution to prevent diffusion of molecules of pure solvent through a semipermeable membrane into the solution. Ionic compounds may not completely dissociate in solution due to activity effects, in which case observed colligative effects may be less than predicted.

Colloids are mixtures in which one or more substances are dispersed as relatively large solid particles or liquid droplets throughout a solid, liquid, or gaseous medium. The particles of a colloid remain dispersed and do not settle due to gravity, and they are often electrically charged. Colloids are widespread in nature and are involved in many technological applications.

10.9: Summary is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **11.8: Summary** is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.10: Exercises

1.

How do solutions differ from compounds? From other mixtures?

2.

Which of the principal characteristics of solutions are evident in the solutions of $K_2Cr_2O_7$ shown in Figure 11.2?

3.

When KNO_3 is dissolved in water, the resulting solution is significantly colder than the water was originally.

a. Is the dissolution of KNO_3 an endothermic or an exothermic process?
b. What conclusions can you draw about the intermolecular attractions involved in the process?
c. Is the resulting solution an ideal solution?

4.

Give an example of each of the following types of solutions:

a. a gas in a liquid
b. a gas in a gas
c. a solid in a solid

5.

Indicate the most important types of intermolecular attractions in each of the following solutions:

a. The solution in Figure 11.2.
b. NO(l) in CO(l)
c. Cl_2(g) in Br_2(l)
d. HCl(g) in benzene C_6H_6(l)
e. Methanol CH_3OH(l) in H_2O(l)

6.

Predict whether each of the following substances would be more soluble in water (polar solvent) or in a hydrocarbon such as heptane (C_7H_{16}, nonpolar solvent):

a. vegetable oil (nonpolar)
b. isopropyl alcohol (polar)
c. potassium bromide (ionic)

7.

Heat is released when some solutions form; heat is absorbed when other solutions form. Provide a molecular explanation for the difference between these two types of spontaneous processes.

8.

Solutions of hydrogen in palladium may be formed by exposing Pd metal to H_2 gas. The concentration of hydrogen in the palladium depends on the pressure of H_2 gas applied, but in a more complex fashion than can be described by Henry's law. Under certain conditions, 0.94 g of hydrogen gas is dissolved in 215 g of palladium metal (solution density = 10.8 g cm^3).

a. Determine the molarity of this solution.
b. Determine the molality of this solution.
c. Determine the percent by mass of hydrogen atoms in this solution.

9.

Explain why the ions Na^+ and Cl^- are strongly solvated in water but not in hexane, a solvent composed of nonpolar molecules.

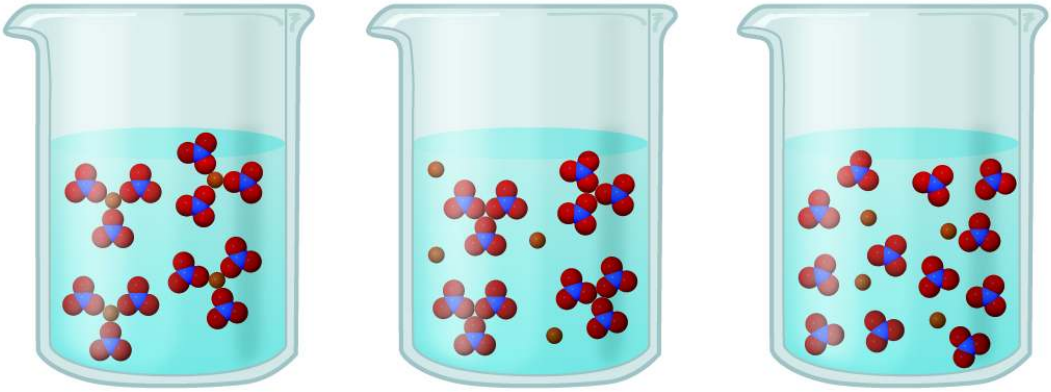
10.

Explain why solutions of HBr in benzene (a nonpolar solvent) are nonconductive, while solutions in water (a polar solvent) are conductive.

11.

Consider the solutions presented:

(a) Which of the following sketches best represents the ions in a solution of $Fe(NO_3)_3(aq)$?



(b) Write a balanced chemical equation showing the products of the dissolution of $Fe(NO_3)_3$.

12.

Compare the processes that occur when methanol (CH_3OH), hydrogen chloride (HCl), and sodium hydroxide (NaOH) dissolve in water. Write equations and prepare sketches showing the form in which each of these compounds is present in its respective solution.

13.

What is the expected electrical conductivity of the following solutions?

a. $NaOH(aq)$
b. $HCl(aq)$
c. $C_6H_{12}O_6(aq)$ (glucose)
d. $NH_3(aq)$

14.

Why are most *solid* ionic compounds electrically nonconductive, whereas aqueous solutions of ionic compounds are good conductors? Would you expect a *liquid* (molten) ionic compound to be electrically conductive or nonconductive? Explain.

15.

Indicate the most important type of intermolecular attraction responsible for solvation in each of the following solutions:

a. the solutions in Figure 11.7
b. methanol, CH_3OH, dissolved in ethanol, C_2H_5OH
c. methane, CH_4, dissolved in benzene, C_6H_6
d. the polar halocarbon CF_2Cl_2 dissolved in the polar halocarbon $CF_2ClCFCl_2$
e. $O_2(l)$ in $N_2(l)$

16.

Suppose you are presented with a clear solution of sodium thiosulfate, $Na_2S_2O_3$. How could you determine whether the solution is unsaturated, saturated, or supersaturated?

17.

Supersaturated solutions of most solids in water are prepared by cooling saturated solutions. Supersaturated solutions of most gases in water are prepared by heating saturated solutions. Explain the reasons for the difference in the two procedures.

18.

Suggest an explanation for the observations that ethanol, C_2H_5OH, is completely miscible with water and that ethanethiol, C_2H_5SH, is soluble only to the extent of 1.5 g per 100 mL of water.

19.

Calculate the percent by mass of KBr in a saturated solution of KBr in water at 10 °C. See Figure 11.16 for useful data, and report the computed percentage to one significant digit.

20.

Which of the following gases is expected to be most soluble in water? Explain your reasoning.

a. CH_4
b. CCl_4
c. $CHCl_3$

21.

At 0 °C and 1.00 atm, as much as 0.70 g of O_2 can dissolve in 1 L of water. At 0 °C and 4.00 atm, how many grams of O_2 dissolve in 1 L of water?

22.

Refer to Figure 11.10.

a. How did the concentration of dissolved CO_2 in the beverage change when the bottle was opened?
b. What caused this change?
c. Is the beverage unsaturated, saturated, or supersaturated with CO_2?

23.

The Henry's law constant for CO_2 is 3.4 \times 10^{−2} *M*/atm at 25 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what pressure of carbon dioxide is needed to maintain a CO_2 concentration of 0.10 *M* in a can of lemon-lime soda?

24.

The Henry's law constant for O_2 is 1.3 \times 10^{−3} *M*/atm at 25 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what mass of oxygen would be dissolved in a 40-L aquarium at 25 °C, assuming an atmospheric pressure of 1.00 atm, and that the partial pressure of O_2 is 0.21 atm?

25.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, how many liters of HCl gas, measured at 30.0 °C and 745 torr, are required to prepare 1.25 L of a 3.20-*M* solution of hydrochloric acid?

26.

Which is/are part of the macroscopic domain of solutions and which is/are part of the microscopic domain: boiling point elevation, Henry's law, hydrogen bond, ion-dipole attraction, molarity, nonelectrolyte, nonstoichiometric compound, osmosis, solvated ion?

27.

What is the microscopic explanation for the macroscopic behavior illustrated in Figure 11.14?

28.

Sketch a qualitative graph of the pressure versus time for water vapor above a sample of pure water and a sugar solution, as the liquids evaporate to half their original volume.

29.

A solution of potassium nitrate, an electrolyte, and a solution of glycerin ($C_3H_5(OH)_3$), a nonelectrolyte, both boil at 100.3 °C. What other physical properties of the two solutions are identical?

30.

What are the mole fractions of H_3PO_4 and water in a solution of 14.5 g of H_3PO_4 in 125 g of water?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

31.

What are the mole fractions of HNO_3 and water in a concentrated solution of nitric acid (68.0% HNO_3 by mass)?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

32.

Calculate the mole fraction of each solute and solvent:

a. 583 g of H_2SO_4 in 1.50 kg of water—the acid solution used in an automobile battery
b. 0.86 g of NaCl in 1.00 \times 10^{2} g of water—a solution of sodium chloride for intravenous injection
c. 46.85 g of codeine, $C_{18}H_{21}NO_3$, in 125.5 g of ethanol, C_2H_5OH
d. 25 g of I_2 in 125 g of ethanol, C_2H_5OH

33.

Calculate the mole fraction of each solute and solvent:

a. 0.710 kg of sodium carbonate (washing soda), Na_2CO_3, in 10.0 kg of water—a saturated solution at 0 °C
b. 125 g of NH_4NO_3 in 275 g of water—a mixture used to make an instant ice pack
c. 25 g of Cl_2 in 125 g of dichloromethane, CH_2Cl_2
d. 0.372 g of tetrahydropyridine, C_5H_9N, in 125 g of chloroform, $CHCl_3$

34.

Calculate the mole fractions of methanol, CH_3OH; ethanol, C_2H_5OH; and water in a solution that is 40% methanol, 40% ethanol, and 20% water by mass. (Assume the data are good to two significant figures.)

35.

What is the difference between a 1 *M* solution and a 1 *m* solution?

36.

What is the molality of phosphoric acid, H_3PO_4, in a solution of 14.5 g of H_3PO_4 in 125 g of water?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

37.

What is the molality of nitric acid in a concentrated solution of nitric acid (68.0% HNO_3 by mass)?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

38.

Calculate the molality of each of the following solutions:

a. 583 g of H_2SO_4 in 1.50 kg of water—the acid solution used in an automobile battery
b. 0.86 g of NaCl in 1.00 \times 10^{2} g of water—a solution of sodium chloride for intravenous injection
c. 46.85 g of codeine, $C_{18}H_{21}NO_3$, in 125.5 g of ethanol, C_2H_5OH
d. 25 g of I_2 in 125 g of ethanol, C_2H_5OH

39.

Calculate the molality of each of the following solutions:

a. 0.710 kg of sodium carbonate (washing soda), Na_2CO_3, in 10.0 kg of water—a saturated solution at 0°C
b. 125 g of NH_4NO_3 in 275 g of water—a mixture used to make an instant ice pack
c. 25 g of Cl_2 in 125 g of dichloromethane, CH_2Cl_2
d. 0.372 g of tetrahydropyridine, C_5H_9N, in 125 g of chloroform, $CHCl_3$

40.

The concentration of glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, in normal spinal fluid is What is the molality of the solution?

41.

A 13.0% solution of K_2CO_3 by mass has a density of 1.09 g/cm^3. Calculate the molality of the solution.

42.

Why does 1 mol of sodium chloride depress the freezing point of 1 kg of water almost twice as much as 1 mol of glycerin?

43.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the boiling point of a solution of 115.0 g of nonvolatile sucrose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$, in 350.0 g of water?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question
b. Answer the question

44.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the boiling point of a solution of 9.04 g of I_2 in 75.5 g of benzene, assuming the I_2 is nonvolatile?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

45.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the freezing temperature of a solution of 115.0 g of sucrose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$, in 350.0 g of water?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

46.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the freezing point of a solution of 9.04 g of I_2 in 75.5 g of benzene?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the following question.
b. Answer the question.

47.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the osmotic pressure of an aqueous solution of 1.64 g of $Ca(NO_3)_2$ in water at 25 °C? The volume of the solution is 275 mL.

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

48.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is osmotic pressure of a solution of bovine insulin (molar mass, 5700 g mol^{-1}) at 18 °C if 100.0 mL of the solution contains 0.103 g of the insulin?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Answer the question.

49.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molar mass of a solution of 5.00 g of a compound in 25.00 g of carbon tetrachloride (bp 76.8 °C; K_b = 5.02 °C/*m*) that boils at 81.5 °C at 1 atm?

a. Outline the steps necessary to answer the question.
b. Solve the problem.

50.

A sample of an organic compound (a nonelectrolyte) weighing 1.35 g lowered the freezing point of 10.0 g of benzene by 3.66 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, calculate the molar mass of the compound.

51.

A 1.0 *m* solution of HCl in benzene has a freezing point of 0.4 °C. Is HCl an electrolyte in benzene? Explain.

52.

A solution contains 5.00 g of urea, $CO(NH_2)_2$, a nonvolatile compound, dissolved in 0.100 kg of water. If the vapor pressure of pure water at 25 °C is 23.7 torr, what is the vapor pressure of the solution (assuming ideal solution behavior)?

53.

A 12.0-g sample of a nonelectrolyte is dissolved in 80.0 g of water. The solution freezes at −1.94 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, calculate the molar mass of the substance.

54.

Arrange the following solutions in order by their decreasing freezing points: 0.1 *m* Na_3PO_4, 0.1 *m* C_2H_5OH, 0.01 *m* CO_2, 0.15 *m* NaCl, and 0.2 *m* $CaCl_2$.

55.

Calculate the boiling point elevation of 0.100 kg of water containing 0.010 mol of NaCl, 0.020 mol of Na_2SO_4, and 0.030 mol of $MgCl_2$, assuming complete dissociation of these electrolytes and ideal solution behavior.

56.

How could you prepare a 3.08 *m* aqueous solution of glycerin, $C_3H_8O_3$? Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the freezing point of this solution?

57.

A sample of sulfur weighing 0.210 g was dissolved in 17.8 g of carbon disulfide, CS_2 (K_b = 2.34 °C/*m*). If the boiling point elevation was 0.107 °C, what is the formula of a sulfur molecule in carbon disulfide (assuming ideal solution behavior)?

58.

In a significant experiment performed many years ago, 5.6977 g of cadmium iodide in 44.69 g of water raised the boiling point 0.181 °C. What does this suggest about the nature of a solution of CdI_2?

59.

Lysozyme is an enzyme that cleaves cell walls. A 0.100-L sample of a solution of lysozyme that contains 0.0750 g of the enzyme exhibits an osmotic pressure of 1.32 \times 10^{−3} atm at 25 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molar mass of lysozyme?

60.

The osmotic pressure of a solution containing 7.0 g of insulin per liter is 23 torr at 25 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molar mass of insulin?

61.

The osmotic pressure of human blood is 7.6 atm at 37 °C. What mass of glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$, is required to make 1.00 L of aqueous solution for intravenous feeding if the solution must have the same osmotic pressure as blood at body temperature, 37 °C (assuming ideal solution behavior)?

62.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the freezing point of a solution of dibromobenzene, $C_6H_4Br_2$, in 0.250 kg of benzene, if the solution boils at 83.5 °C?

63.

Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the boiling point of a solution of NaCl in water if the solution freezes at −0.93 °C?

64.

The sugar fructose contains 40.0% C, 6.7% H, and 53.3% O by mass. A solution of 11.7 g of fructose in 325 g of ethanol has a boiling point of 78.59 °C. The boiling point of ethanol is 78.35 °C, and K_b for ethanol is 1.20 °C/*m*. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molecular formula of fructose?

65.

The vapor pressure of methanol, CH_3OH, is 94 torr at 20 °C. The vapor pressure of ethanol, C_2H_5OH, is 44 torr at the same temperature.

a. Calculate the mole fraction of methanol and of ethanol in a solution of 50.0 g of methanol and 50.0 g of ethanol.
b. Ethanol and methanol form a solution that behaves like an ideal solution. Calculate the vapor pressure of methanol and of ethanol above the solution at 20 °C.
c. Calculate the mole fraction of methanol and of ethanol in the vapor above the solution.

66.

The triple point of air-free water is defined as 273.16 K. Why is it important that the water be free of air?

67.

Meat can be classified as fresh (not frozen) even though it is stored at −1 °C. Why wouldn't meat freeze at this temperature?

68.

An organic compound has a composition of 93.46% C and 6.54% H by mass. A solution of 0.090 g of this compound in 1.10 g of camphor melts at 158.4 °C. The melting point of pure camphor is 178.4 °C. K_f for camphor is 37.7 °C/*m*. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the molecular formula of the solute? Show your calculations.

69.

A sample of $HgCl_2$ weighing 9.41 g is dissolved in 32.75 g of ethanol, C_2H_5OH (K_b = 1.20 °C/*m*). The boiling point elevation of the solution is 1.27 °C. Is $HgCl_2$ an electrolyte in ethanol? Show your calculations.

70.

A salt is known to be an alkali metal fluoride. A quick approximate determination of freezing point indicates that 4 g of the salt dissolved in 100 g of water produces a solution that freezes at about −1.4 °C. Assuming ideal solution behavior, what is the formula of the salt? Show your calculations.

71.

Identify the dispersed phase and the dispersion medium in each of the following colloidal systems: starch dispersion, smoke, fog, pearl, whipped cream, floating soap, jelly, milk, and ruby.

72.

Distinguish between dispersion methods and condensation methods for preparing colloidal systems.

73.

How do colloids differ from solutions with regard to dispersed particle size and homogeneity?

74.

Explain the cleansing action of soap.

75.

How can it be demonstrated that colloidal particles are electrically charged?

This page titled 10.10: Exercises is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by OpenStax via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **11.9: Exercises** by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

Index

A

actinide
1.6: The Periodic Table
Actinide series
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
actual yield
3.5: Reaction Yields
addition reaction
8.2: Hydrocarbons
adhesive force
9.3: Properties of Liquids
alcohol
8.3: Alcohols and Ethers
aldehyde
8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters
alkali metal
1.6: The Periodic Table
alkaline earth metal
1.6: The Periodic Table
alkane
8.2: Hydrocarbons
alkene
8.2: Hydrocarbons
alkyl group
8.2: Hydrocarbons
alkyne
8.2: Hydrocarbons
alloy
10.2: The Dissolution Process
alpha particle
1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory
amide
8.5: Amines and Amides
amine
8.5: Amines and Amides
amorphous solid
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
amphiphilic
10.6: Colloids
amplitude
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
analyte
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
angular momentum quantum number
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
anion
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
aqueous solution
2.4: Molarity
aromatic hydrocarbon
8.2: Hydrocarbons
atomic mass
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
atomic mass unit
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
atomic number
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
atomic orbital
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
Aufbau principle
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
Avogadro's number
2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
axial position
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity

B

balanced equation
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
bidentate ligand
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
binary acid
1.8: Chemical Nomenclature
binary compound
1.8: Chemical Nomenclature
blackbody
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom
4.3: The Bohr Model
boiling point
9.4: Phase Transitions
boiling point elevation
10.5: Colligative Properties
boiling point elevation constant
10.5: Colligative Properties
bond angle
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
bond dipole moment
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
bond distance
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
bond energy
5.6: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds
bond length
5.3: Covalent Bonding
Bragg equation
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
buret
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis

C

capillary action
9.3: Properties of Liquids
carbonyl group
8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters
carboxylic acid
8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters
cation
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
central metal
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
chalcogen
1.6: The Periodic Table
chelate
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
chelating ligand
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
chemical equation
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
chemical symbol
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
cis configuration
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
coefficient
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
cohesive force
9.3: Properties of Liquids
colligative property
10.5: Colligative Properties
colloid
10.6: Colloids
combustion analysis
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
combustion reaction
3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
complete ionic equation
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
concentrated
2.4: Molarity
concentration
2.4: Molarity
condensation
9.4: Phase Transitions
continuous spectrum
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
coordination compound
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
coordination number
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
coordination sphere
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
core electron
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
covalent bond
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
5.3: Covalent Bonding
covalent compound
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
covalent network solid
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
covalent radius
4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties
crenation
10.5: Colligative Properties
critical point
9.5: Phase Diagrams
crystal field splitting
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
crystal field theory
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
crystalline solid
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
cubic closest packing
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids

D

d orbital
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
Dalton unit
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
Dalton's Atomic Theory
1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory

deposition
9.4: Phase Transitions
diffraction
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
dilution
2.4: Molarity
dipole moment
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
dispersed phase
10.6: Colloids
dispersion
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
dispersion medium
10.6: Colloids
dissociation
10.3: Electrolytes
dissolved
2.4: Molarity
donor atom
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
double bond
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
dynamic equilibrium
9.4: Phase Transitions

E

effective nuclear charge
4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties
eg orbitals
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
electrolyte
10.3: Electrolytes
electromagnetic radiation
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
electromagnetic spectrum
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
electron
1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory
electron affinity
4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties
electron configuration
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
electron density
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
electronegativity
5.3: Covalent Bonding
empirical formula
1.5: Chemical Formulas
empirical formula mass
2.3: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas
emulsifying agent
10.6: Colloids
emulsion
10.6: Colloids
end point
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
equatorial position
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
equivalence point
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
ester
8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters
ether
8.3: Alcohols and Ethers
excess reactant
3.5: Reaction Yields
excited state
4.3: The Bohr Model

F

f orbital
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
first transition series
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
formal charge
5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance
formula mass
2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
fourth transition series
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
free radical
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
freezing
9.4: Phase Transitions
freezing point
9.4: Phase Transitions
freezing point depression
10.5: Colligative Properties
freezing point depression constant
10.5: Colligative Properties
frequency
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
functional group
8.2: Hydrocarbons
fundamental unit of charge
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism

G

gel
10.6: Colloids
geometric isomers
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
goiter
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
gravimetric analysis
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
ground state
4.3: The Bohr Model
group
1.6: The Periodic Table

H

halogen
1.6: The Periodic Table
Heisenberg uncertainty principle
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
hemolysis
10.5: Colligative Properties
Henry's Law
10.4: Solubility
hertz
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
hexagonal closest packing
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
hole
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
Hund's rule
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
Hybridization
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
hydrogen bonding
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
hydrometallurgy
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
hypertonic
10.5: Colligative Properties
hypervalent molecule
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
hypotonic
10.5: Colligative Properties

I

ideal solution
10.2: The Dissolution Process
immiscible
10.4: Solubility
indicator
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
induced dipole
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
inert gas
1.6: The Periodic Table
inert pair effect
5.2: Ionic Bonding
inner transition metal
1.6: The Periodic Table
instantaneous dipole
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
intensity
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
interference pattern
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
intermolecular force
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
interstitial sites
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
ion
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
ion pair
10.5: Colligative Properties
ionic bond
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
5.2: Ionic Bonding
ionic compound
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
ionic solid
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
ionization energy
4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties
ionization isomer
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
isoelectronic
4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties
isomers
1.5: Chemical Formulas
isomorphous
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
isotonic
10.5: Colligative Properties

isotope
1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory

K

ketone
8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters

L

lanthanide
1.6: The Periodic Table
lanthanide series
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
Lattice Energy
5.6: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds
law of constant composition
1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory
Law of Definite Proportions
1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory
law of multiple proportions
1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory
Lewis structure
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
Lewis symbol
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
ligand
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
limiting reactant
3.5: Reaction Yields
line spectrum
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
linear
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
linkage isomer
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
lone pair
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures

M

magnetic quantum number
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
mass number
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
mass percentage
2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations
melting
9.4: Phase Transitions
melting point
9.4: Phase Transitions
metal
1.6: The Periodic Table
metallic solid
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
metalloid
1.6: The Periodic Table
miscible
10.4: Solubility
molality
10.5: Colligative Properties
molar mass
2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
molarity
2.4: Molarity
mole
2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept
molecular compound
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
molecular equation
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
molecular formula
1.5: Chemical Formulas
molecular orbital theory
6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory
molecular solid
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
molecular structure
5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
monatomic ion
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
monodentate
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals

N

net ionic equation
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
neutron
1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory
noble gas
1.6: The Periodic Table
node
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
nomenclature
1.8: Chemical Nomenclature
nonelectrolyte
10.3: Electrolytes
nonmetal
1.6: The Periodic Table
nonpolar covalent bond
5.3: Covalent Bonding
normal boiling point
9.4: Phase Transitions
nucleus
1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory

O

octahedral
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
octahedral hole
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
octet rule
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
optical isomer
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
orbital diagram
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
Organic Compound
8.2: Hydrocarbons
osmosis
10.5: Colligative Properties
osmotic pressure
10.5: Colligative Properties
overlap
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
oxidation
3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
oxidizing agent
3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
oxyacid
1.8: Chemical Nomenclature
oxyanion
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds

P

p orbital
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
pairing energy
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
partially miscible
10.4: Solubility
parts per billion
2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations
parts per million
2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations
Pauli exclusion principle
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
percent composition
2.3: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas
percent yield
3.5: Reaction Yields
period
1.6: The Periodic Table
periodic law
1.6: The Periodic Table
periodic table
1.6: The Periodic Table
phase diagram
9.5: Phase Diagrams
photon
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
pi bond
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
platinum metals
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
pnictogen
1.6: The Periodic Table
polar covalent bond
5.3: Covalent Bonding
polar molecule
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
polarizability
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
polyatomic ion
1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds
polydentate ligand
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
precipitate
3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
precipitation reaction
3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
principal quantum number
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
product
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
proton
1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory
pure covalent bond
5.3: Covalent Bonding

Q

quantitative analysis
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
quantization
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy

quantum mechanics
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
quantum number
4.3: The Bohr Model

R

Raoult's law
10.5: Colligative Properties
rare earth element
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
reactant
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
reduction
3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions
representative element
1.6: The Periodic Table
resonance
5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance
6.4: Multiple Bonds
resonance forms
5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance
resonance hybrid
5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance

S

s orbital
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
saturated
10.4: Solubility
saturated hydrocarbon
8.2: Hydrocarbons
second transition series
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
semipermeable membrane
10.5: Colligative Properties
series
1.6: The Periodic Table
shell
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
sigma bond
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
simple cubic structure
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
simple cubic unit cell
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
single bond
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
skeletal structure
8.2: Hydrocarbons
smelting
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
solubility
10.4: Solubility
solute
2.4: Molarity
solvation
10.2: The Dissolution Process
solvent
2.4: Molarity
sp hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp2 hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp3 hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp3d hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
sp3d2 hybrid orbital
6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals
space lattice
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
spatial isomers
1.5: Chemical Formulas
spectator ion
3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations
spectrochemical series
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
spin quantum number
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
spontaneous process
10.2: The Dissolution Process
standing wave
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
steel
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
stoichiometric factor
3.4: Reaction Stoichiometry
stoichiometry
3.4: Reaction Stoichiometry
strong electrolyte
10.3: Electrolytes
structural formula
1.5: Chemical Formulas
structural isomers
1.5: Chemical Formulas
sublimation
9.4: Phase Transitions
subshell
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
substituent
8.2: Hydrocarbons
substitution reaction
8.2: Hydrocarbons
superconductor
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
supercritical fluid
9.5: Phase Diagrams
supersaturated
10.4: Solubility
surface tension
9.3: Properties of Liquids

T

t2g orbitals
7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds
Tetrahedral
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
tetrahedral hole
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
theoretical yield
3.5: Reaction Yields
third transition series
7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds
titrant
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
titration analysis
3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis
trans configuration
7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals
transition metal
1.6: The Periodic Table
trigonal bipyramidal
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
Trigonal Planar
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
triple bond
5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures
triple point
9.5: Phase Diagrams
Tyndall effect
10.6: Colloids

U

unified atomic mass unit
1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism
unit cell
9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids
unsaturated
10.4: Solubility

V

vacancy
9.6: The Solid State of Matter
valence bond theory
6.2: Valence Bond Theory
valence electrons
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
valence shell
4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations)
valence shell electron pair repulsion theory
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity
van der Waals force
9.2: Intermolecular Forces
van't Hoff factor
10.5: Colligative Properties
vapor pressure
9.4: Phase Transitions
vaporization
9.4: Phase Transitions
viscosity
9.3: Properties of Liquids
volume percentage
2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations
VSEPR
5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity

W

wave
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
wavefunction
4.4: Development of Quantum Theory
wavelength
4.2: Electromagnetic Energy
weak electrolyte
10.3: Electrolytes

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Chem 107: Textbook

Webpages: 117

All licenses found:

- CC BY 4.0: 91.5% (107 pages)
- Undeclared: 8.5% (10 pages)

By Page

- Chem 107: Textbook - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.2: Early Ideas in Atomic Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.3: Evolution of Atomic Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.4: Atomic Structure and Symbolism - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.5: Chemical Formulas - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.6: The Periodic Table - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.7: Molecular and Ionic Compounds - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.8: Chemical Nomenclature - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.9: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.10: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.11: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.12: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 2: Composition of Substances and Solutions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.2: Formula Mass and the Mole Concept - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.3: Determining Empirical and Molecular Formulas - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.4: Molarity - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.5: Other Units for Solution Concentrations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.6: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.7: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.8: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.9: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 3: Stoichiometry of Chemical Reactions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.2: Writing and Balancing Chemical Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.3: Classifying Chemical Reactions - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.4: Reaction Stoichiometry - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.5: Reaction Yields - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.6: Quantitative Chemical Analysis - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.7: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.8: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.9: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 3.10: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 4: Electronic Structure and Periodic Properties - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.2: Electromagnetic Energy - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.3: The Bohr Model - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.4: Development of Quantum Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.5: Electronic Structure of Atoms (Electron Configurations) - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.6: Periodic Variations in Element Properties - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.7: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.8: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.9: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 4.10: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 5: Chemical Bonding and Molecular Geometry - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.2: Ionic Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.3: Covalent Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.4: Lewis Symbols and Structures - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.5: Formal Charges and Resonance - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.6: Strengths of Ionic and Covalent Bonds - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.7: Molecular Structure and Polarity - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.8: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.9: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.10: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 5.11: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 6: Advanced Theories of Covalent Bonding - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.2: Valence Bond Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.3: Hybrid Atomic Orbitals - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.4: Multiple Bonds - *CC BY 4.0*

- 6.5: Molecular Orbital Theory - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.6: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.7: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.8: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
- 6.9: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*

- 7: Transition Metals and Coordination Chemistry - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7.2: Occurrence, Preparation, and Properties of Transition Metals and Their Compounds - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7.3: Coordination Chemistry of Transition Metals - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7.4: Spectroscopic and Magnetic Properties of Coordination Compounds - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7.5: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7.6: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 7.7: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
- 8: Organic Chemistry - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.2: Hydrocarbons - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.3: Alcohols and Ethers - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.4: Aldehydes, Ketones, Carboxylic Acids, and Esters - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.5: Amines and Amides - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.6: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.7: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 8.8: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
- 9: Liquids and Solids - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.2: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.3: Properties of Liquids - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.4: Phase Transitions - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.5: Phase Diagrams - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.6: The Solid State of Matter - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.7: Lattice Structures in Crystalline Solids - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.8: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.9: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.10: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9.11: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
- 10: Solutions and Colloids - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.1: Introduction - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.2: The Dissolution Process - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.3: Electrolytes - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.4: Solubility - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.5: Colligative Properties - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.6: Colloids - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.7: Key Terms - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.8: Key Equations - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.9: Summary - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10.10: Exercises - *CC BY 4.0*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*